Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology

Series Editors
Kenneth N. Timmis (Editor-in-Chief)
Emeritus Professor
Institute of Microbiology
Technical University Braunschweig
Braunschweig, Germany

Matthias Boll
Microbiology, Faculty of Biology
Albert-Ludwigs-Universität Freiburg
Freiburg, Germany

Institute of Biology II, Microbiology
Albert-Ludwigs-Universität Freiburg
Freiburg, Germany

Otto Geiger
Centro de Ciencias Genómicas
Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México
Cuernavaca, Morelos, Mexico

Howard Goldfine
Department of Microbiology
Perelman School of Medicine
University of Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, PA, USA

Tino Krell
Department of Environmental Protection
Estación Experimental del Zaidín
Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, Granada, Granada, Spain

Sang Yup Lee
Dept. Chem. Engineer. and BioProcess
Taejon, Korea (Republic of)

Terry J. McGenity
School of Life Sciences
University of Essex
Colchester, UK

Fernando Rojo
CSIC
Centro Nacional de Biotecnología
Madrid, Spain

Diana Z. Sousa
Laboratory of Microbiology
Wageningen University and Research
Wageningen, The Netherlands

Alfons J. M. Stams
Laboratory of Microbiology
Wageningen University and Research
Wageningen, The Netherlands

Robert J. Steffan
Blue Crab Lure Company
Cape Coral, FL, USA

Centre of Biological Engineering
University of Minho
Braga, Portugal

Heinz Wilkes
Organic Geochemistry, Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM)
Carl von Ossietzky University
Oldenburg, Germany
This handbook is the unique and definitive resource of current knowledge on the diverse and multifaceted aspects of microbial interactions with hydrocarbons and lipids, the microbial players, the physiological mechanisms and adaptive strategies underlying microbial life and activities at hydrophobic material:aqueous liquid interfaces, and the multitude of health, environmental and biotechnological consequences of these activities.

**Scientific Advisory Board**

More information about this series at [http://www.springer.com/series/13884](http://www.springer.com/series/13884)
Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate

With 227 Figures and 42 Tables
This book is dedicated to my partner Susanne.
Preface

Hydrocarbons and lipids comprise extremely diverse organic compounds that play fundamental roles in biosphere and geosphere. They constitute important functional components in all living organisms as well as a major fraction of fossil organic matter in sedimentary systems. Representing the most reduced forms of carbon, they are essential for human food and energy supply. However, both agriculture and the exploitation of fossil fuels have a profound influence on climate and thus on the ecosystems of our planet. In all these contexts, interactions of microorganisms with hydrocarbons and lipids play an integral role. With this in mind, this volume of the Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology introduces the structural diversity and properties as well as the origin and fate of hydrocarbons and lipids in nature. It discusses their environmental context both from a bio- as well as a geoscience perspective and thus provides a system framework for the subsequent volumes dealing with specific aspects of their microbiology.

This volume is subdivided into four parts. Part 1 treats the structural diversity of hydrocarbons and lipids occurring naturally which is directly associated with the great variability of their physical and chemical properties and their multi-faceted biological activity. In Part 2, the diversity of hydrocarbons and lipids occurring in different biota including autotrophs and heterotrophs as well as eukaryotes and prokaryotes is covered. This includes aspects of biosynthesis and degradation but also biological functions. Part 3 examines the distribution of hydrocarbons and lipids in the geosphere and fundamental processes controlling the fate of fossil organic matter, the formation of petroleum, and the various manifestations of hydrocarbon accumulations. Part 4 addresses important aspects of the environmental biogeochemistry of hydrocarbons and lipids as well as transfer processes between different compartments of bio- and geosphere. Various chapters in this volume describe the use of hydrocarbons and lipids as marker compounds of natural processes in time and space including microbiologically relevant aspects. The assignment of chapters to the one or other part of this volume may certainly appear arbitrary to some extent as it is obvious that the topics addressed are often not exclusively related to one of the overall themes only, that is, biosphere, geosphere, or environment. This, however, also illustrates nicely that there are no strict boundaries between environmental compartments which are often studied by relatively enclosed disciplinary communities. In this sense, this volume hopefully will contribute to overcoming artificial
walls between scientific work areas and thus foster interdisciplinary research on the microbiology of lipids and hydrocarbons.

This volume would not have been possible without the excellent contributions by the authors – thanks a lot to all of you! I am very grateful to the Editor-in-Chief, Kenneth Timmis, who gave me the opportunity to participate in this exciting journey. Finally, I would like to thank the people at Springer, in particular Sylvia Blago, for great support and patience.

Oldenburg

Heinz Wilkes

September 2020
# Contents

## Part I  Structures and Properties of Hydrocarbons and Lipids  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Hydrocarbons and Lipids: An Introduction to Structure, Physicochemical Properties, and Natural Occurrence</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heinz Wilkes, René Jarling, and Jan Schwarzbauer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Introduction to Oil Chemistry and Properties Related to Oil Spills</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Merv Fingas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Gas Hydrates: Formation, Structures, and Properties</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Judith Maria Schicks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Part II  Hydrocarbons and Lipids in the Biosphere  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Factors Controlling Carbon and Hydrogen Isotope Fractionation During Biosynthesis of Lipids by Phototrophic Organisms</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nikolai Pedentchouk and Youping Zhou</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Plant Cuticular Waxes: Composition, Function, and Interactions with Microorganisms</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Viktoria Valeska Zeisler-Diehl, Wilhelm Barthlott, and Lukas Schreiber</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Biosynthesis of the Plant Cuticle</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jérôme Joubès and Frédéric Domergue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Lipids of Geochemical Interest in Microalgae</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>John K. Volkman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Abiotic Transformation of Unsaturated Lipids and Hydrocarbons in Senescent Phytoplanktonic Cells</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jean-François Rontani</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Cuticular Hydrocarbons and Pheromones of Arthropods</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gary J. Blomquist, Claus Tittiger, and Russell Jurenka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Lipidomic Analysis of Lower Organisms</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tomáš Řezanka, Irena Kolouchová, Lucia Gharwalová, Andrea Palyzová,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Karel Sigler</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Part III Hydrocarbons and Lipids in the Geosphere</strong></td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Composition and Properties of Petroleum</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R. Paul Philp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Petroleomics</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clifford C. Walters and Meytal B. Higgins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Stable Isotopes in Understanding Origin and Degradation Processes of</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrocarbons and Petroleum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. Vieth-Hillebrand and Heinz Wilkes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>The Origin of Organic Sulphur Compounds and Their Impact on the</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paleoenvironmental Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ilya Kutuzov, Yoav O. Rosenberg, Andrew Bishop, and Alon Amrani</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>History of Life from the Hydrocarbon Fossil Record</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clifford C. Walters, Kenneth E. Peters, and J. Michael Moldowan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Phospholipids as Life Markers in Geological Habitats</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kai Mangelsdorf, Cornelia Karger, and Klaus-G. Zink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Formation of Organic-Rich Sediments and Sedimentary Rocks</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ralf Littke and Laura Zieger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Thermogenic Formation of Hydrocarbons in Sedimentary Basins</td>
<td>493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nicolaj Mahlstedt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Oil and Gas Shales</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brian Horsfield, Hans-Martin Schulz, Sylvain Bernard, Nicolaj</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mahlstedt, Yuanjia Han, and Sascha Kuske</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Hydrothermal Petroleum</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bernd R. T. Simoneit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Environmental and Economic Implications of the Biogeochemistry of</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil Sands Bitumen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H. Huang, R. C. Silva, J. R. Radović, and S. R. Larter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Secondary Microbial Gas</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alexei V. Milkov</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Geological, Geochemical, and Microbial Factors Affecting Coalbed Methane</td>
<td>623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Curtis Evans, Karen Budwill, and Michael J. Whiticar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Gas Hydrates as an Unconventional Hydrocarbon Resource</td>
<td>651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Klaus Wallmann and Judith Maria Schicks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part IV</strong></td>
<td>Hydrocarbons and Lipids in the Environment</td>
<td><strong>667</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>The Biogeochemical Methane Cycle</td>
<td>669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Michael J. Whiticar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Marine Cold Seeps: Background and Recent Advances</td>
<td>747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Erwin Suess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Mud Volcano Biogeochemistry</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Helge Niemann</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Methane Carbon Cycling in the Past: Insights from Hydrocarbon and Lipid Biomarkers</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volker Thiel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Chemistry of Volatile Organic Compounds in the Atmosphere</td>
<td>811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ralf Koppmann</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Organic Matter in the Hydrosphere</td>
<td>823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jan Schwarzbauer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Lessons from the 2010 Deepwater Horizon Accident in the Gulf of Mexico</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terry C. Hazen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>865</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kenneth N. Timmis
Emeritus Professor
Institute of Microbiology
Technical University Braunschweig
Braunschweig, Germany

Kenneth Timmis studied microbiology and obtained his Ph.D. at Bristol University. He undertook postdoctoral training at the Ruhr-University Bochum, Yale and Stanford, at the latter two as a Fellow of the Helen Hay Whitney Foundation. He was then appointed Head of an independent research group at the Max Planck Institute for Molecular Genetics in Berlin and subsequently Professor of Biochemistry in the University of Geneva, Faculty of Medicine. Thereafter, for almost 20 years, he was Director of the Division of Microbiology at the National Research Centre for Biotechnology (GBF)/now the Helmholtz Centre for Infection Research (HZI), and concomitantly Professor of Microbiology in the Institute of Microbiology of the Technical University Braunschweig. He is currently Emeritus Professor in this institute.

The Editor-in-Chief has worked for more than 30 years in the area of environmental microbiology and biotechnology, has published over 400 papers in international journals, and is an ISI Highly Cited Microbiology-100 researcher. His group has worked for many years, inter alia, on the biodegradation of oil hydrocarbons, especially the genetics and regulation of toluene degradation, and on the ecology of hydrocarbon-degrading microbial communities, discovered the new group of marine oil-degrading hydrocarbonlastic bacteria, initiated genome sequencing
projects on bacteria that are paradigms of microbes that degrade organic compounds (\textit{Pseudomonas putida} and \textit{Alcanivorax borkumensis}), and pioneered the topic of experimental evolution of novel catabolic activities.

He is Fellow of the Royal Society, Member of the European Molecular Biology Organisation, Fellow of the American Academy of Microbiology, Member of the European Academy of Microbiology, and Recipient of the Erwin Schrödinger Prize. He is the founder and Editor-in-Chief of the journals \textit{Environmental Microbiology}, \textit{Environmental Microbiology Reports}, and \textit{Microbial Biotechnology}. 
Heinz Wilkes
Organic Geochemistry
Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM),
Carl von Ossietzky University
Oldenburg, Germany

Heinz Wilkes studied chemistry at the University of Hamburg. During his Ph.D., he investigated the bacterial degradation of dibenzo-p-dioxins, dibenzofurans, and other aromatic compounds. He was a Research Scientist in the Institute of Petroleum and Organic Geochemistry at the Research Centre Jülich and in the Organic Geochemistry Section at the German Research Centre for Geosciences in Potsdam. Since 2015, he is a Full Professor of Organic Geochemistry at Carl von Ossietzky University of Oldenburg in the Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment where he is responsible for the B.Sc. program in Environmental Sciences. His research has focused on molecular mechanisms of biogeochemical key reactions and metabolic pathways in microorganisms; the origin, fate, and transformation of hydrocarbons and petroleum in the environment and in the geosphere; and the reconstruction of past environments and climates using organic-geochemical proxy parameters. For many years he has been particularly interested in elucidating degradation pathways of hydrocarbons in anaerobic bacteria. He has published more than 120 articles in peer-reviewed journals and books. Since 2015, he is a Member of the Board of the European Association of Organic Geochemists.
Contributors

Alon Amrani  The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Jerusalem, Israel

Wilhelm Barthlott  Nees Institut for Biodiversity of Plants, University of Bonn, Bonn, Germany

Sylvain Bernard  Muséum National d’Histoire Naturelle, Sorbonne Université, CNRS UMR 7590, IRD, Institut de Minéralogie, de Physique des Matériaux et de Cosmochimie, IMPMC, Paris, France

Andrew Bishop  Power, Environmental and Energy Research Institute, Covina, CA, USA

Gary J. Blomquist  Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Nevada, Reno, NV, USA

Karen Budwill  Processing Technologies, InnoTech Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Frédéric Domergue  Laboratoire de Biogenèse Membranaire, UMR5200, Université de Bordeaux, Bordeaux, France

Curtis Evans  School of Earth and Ocean Sciences, University of Victoria, Victoria, BC, Canada

Merv Fingas  Spill Science, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Lucia Gharwalová  Department of Biotechnology, University of Chemical Technology Prague, Prague, Czech Republic

Yuanjia Han  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

Terry C. Hazen  Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, Department of Earth and Planetary Sciences, Department of Microbiology, Institute for Secure and Sustainable Environment, Methane Center, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN, USA

Biosciences Division, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN, USA
Meytal B. Higgins  Corporate Strategic Research, ExxonMobil Research and Engineering Company, Annandale, NJ, USA

Brian Horsfield  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

H. Huang  PRG, Department of Geoscience, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

René Jarling  Organic Geochemistry, Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM), Carl von Ossietzky University of Oldenburg, Oldenburg, Germany

Jérôme Joubès  Laboratoire de Biogénèse Membranaire, UMR5200, Université de Bordeaux, Bordeaux, France

Russell Jurenka  Department of Entomology, Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA

Cornelia Karger  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences – Helmholtz Centre Potsdam, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

Irena Kolouchová  Department of Biotechnology, University of Chemical Technology Prague, Prague, Czech Republic

Ralf Koppmann  Institute for Atmospheric and Environmental Research, University of Wuppertal, Wuppertal, Germany

Sascha Kuske  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

Ilya Kutuzov  The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Jerusalem, Israel

S. R. Larter  PRG, Department of Geoscience, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Ralf Littke  Institute of Geology and Geochemistry of Petroleum and Coal, Energy and Mineral Resources Group, RWTH Aachen University, Aachen, Germany

Nicolaj Mahlstedt  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

Kai Mangelsdorf  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences – Helmholtz Centre Potsdam, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

Alexei V. Milkov  Department of Geology and Geological Engineering, Colorado School of Mines, Golden, CO, USA

J. Michael Moldowan  Biomarker Technology, Rohnert Park, CA, USA
Department of Geological Sciences, Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA

Helge Niemann  Department of Marine Microbiology and Biogeochemistry, and Utrecht University, NIOZ Royal Netherlands Institute for Sea Research, ’t Horntje, the Netherlands
CAGE – Centre for Arctic Gas Hydrate, Environment and Climate, Department of Geology, UiT the Arctic University of Norway, Tromsø, Norway

Andrea Palyzová  Institute of Microbiology, Academy of Sciences of the Czech Republic, Prague, Czech Republic

Nikolai Pedentchouk  School of Environmental Sciences, University of East Anglia, Norwich, UK
Institute of Plant Physiology, Russian Academy of Sciences, Moscow, Russia

Kenneth E. Peters  Schlumberger, Mill Valley, CA, USA

R. Paul Philp  School of Geosciences, University of Oklahoma, Norman, OK, USA

J. R. Radović  PRG, Department of Geoscience, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Tomáš Řezanka  Institute of Microbiology, Academy of Sciences of the Czech Republic, Prague, Czech Republic

Jean-François Rontani  Aix Marseille Université, Mediterranean Institute of Oceanography (MIO), Université de Toulon, CNRS/INSU/IRD, Marseille, France

Yoav O. Rosenberg  The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Jerusalem, Israel
Geological Survey of Israel, Jerusalem, Israel

Judith Maria Schicks  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Potsdam, Germany

Lukas Schreiber  Institute of Cellular and Molecular Botany (IZMB), University of Bonn, Bonn, Germany

Hans-Martin Schulz  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany

Jan Schwarzbauer  Institute of Geology and Geochemistry of Petroleum and Coal, Energy and Mineral Resources Group (EMR), School of Geosciences, RWTH Aachen University, Aachen, Germany

Karel Sigler  Institute of Microbiology, Academy of Sciences of the Czech Republic, Prague, Czech Republic

R. C. Silva  PRG, Department of Geoscience, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Bernd R. T. Simoneit  BRT Simoneit, Department of Chemistry, College of Science, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR, USA
Erwin Suess  Marine Biogeochemistry, GEOMAR Helmholtz Centre for Ocean Research Kiel, Kiel, Germany
College of Earth, Ocean, and Atmospheric Sciences, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR, USA

Volker Thiel  Geobiology, Geoscience Centre, Georg-August University of Göttingen, Göttingen, Germany

Claus Tittiger  Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Nevada, Reno, NV, USA

A. Vieth-Hillebrand  Organic Geochemistry, GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Potsdam, Germany

John K. Volkman  CSIRO Oceans and Atmosphere, Hobart, TAS, Australia

Klaus Wallmann  GEOMAR – Helmholtz Centre for Ocean Research Kiel, Kiel, Germany

Clifford C. Walters  Corporate Strategic Research, ExxonMobil Research and Engineering Company, Annandale, NJ, USA

Michael J. Whiticar  Biogeochemistry Facility (BF-SEOS), School of Earth and Ocean Sciences, University of Victoria, Victoria, BC, Canada
Hanse-Wissenschaftskolleg, HWK (Institute for Advanced Study), Delmenhorst, Germany

Heinz Wilkes  Organic Geochemistry, Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM), Carl von Ossietzky University, Oldenburg, Germany

Viktoria Valeska Zeisler-Diehl  Institute of Cellular and Molecular Botany (IZMB), University of Bonn, Bonn, Germany

Youping Zhou  School of Chemistry and Chemical Engineering, Shaanxi University of Science & Technology, Xi’an, China

Laura Zieger  Institute of Geology and Geochemistry of Petroleum and Coal, Energy and Mineral Resources Group, RWTH Aachen University, Aachen, Germany

Klaus-G. Zink  GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences – Helmholtz Centre Potsdam, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany
Part I

Structures and Properties of Hydrocarbons and Lipids
Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................................ 4
2 Covalent Bonding .................................................................. 5
3 Hydrocarbons .......................................................................... 7
   3.1 Saturated Hydrocarbons .................................................. 7
   3.2 Unsaturated Hydrocarbons ................................................. 12
   3.3 Aromatic Hydrocarbons ................................................... 15
4 Functionalized Organic Compounds and Lipids .................. 18
   4.1 Oxygen- and Sulfur-containing Compounds ...................... 18
   4.2 Nitrogen-containing Compounds ..................................... 26
   4.3 Halogenated Compounds ................................................ 28
5 Physical Properties ................................................................. 31
6 Reactions ................................................................................ 38
   6.1 Reactions of Saturated Hydrocarbons ...................... 38
   6.2 Reactions of Unsaturated Hydrocarbons ................... 40
   6.3 Reactions of Aromatic Hydrocarbons ......................... 42
   6.4 Specific Reactions of Functionalized Organic Compounds 45
References .................................................................................. 46

H. Wilkes (*)
Organic Geochemistry, Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM),
Carl von Ossietzky University, Oldenburg, Germany
e-mail: heinz.wilkes@uni-oldenburg.de

R. Jarling
Organic Geochemistry, Institute for Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM),
Carl von Ossietzky University of Oldenburg, Oldenburg, Germany
e-mail: rene.jarling1@uni-oldenburg.de

J. Schwarzbauer
Institute of Geology and Geochemistry of Petroleum and Coal, Energy and Mineral Resources
Group (EMR), School of Geosciences, RWTH Aachen University, Aachen, Germany
e-mail: jan.schwarzbauer@emr.rwth-aachen.de

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_34
Abstract

Hydrocarbons and lipids are among the most abundant organic compound classes in the biogeosphere. They are formed directly by living organisms as biosynthetic products or through geological transformation of biomass in sedimentary systems. This chapter provides an introduction to the structural diversity of hydrocarbons and lipids and their occurrence in natural environments. Besides saturated, unsaturated, and aromatic hydrocarbons, also selected types of functionalized organic compounds including lipids which play key roles in biogeochemical processes are presented. Important physicochemical parameters are discussed in relation to the structural characteristics of the presented compound classes. For each compound type, reactivity and important reaction types with a special focus on mechanisms relevant to biochemical transformations are presented.

1 Introduction

Hydrocarbons occur in great structural diversity as biosynthetic products of living organisms in the biosphere or as abiotic transformation products of biogenic organic matter in the geosphere. They are the main constituents of petroleum and thus are extremely abundant in geological systems. Increasing exploitation of hydrocarbon-based energy resources was one of the driving forces of the industrial revolution with dramatic impact on the evolution of human culture (e.g., Hall et al. 2003) but has also led to the ongoing anthropogenic perturbation of the Earth’s climate system with still not foreseeable consequences for societies worldwide. The presence of hydrocarbons already on the early Earth has promoted the evolution of metabolic pathways which allow microorganisms to exploit them as energy sources as well. The interactions of microorganisms and hydrocarbons are manifold.

Hydrocarbons by definition contain exclusively the elements carbon and hydrogen. This chapter attempts to provide a compact introduction to fundamental aspects of hydrocarbon structure, properties, and occurrence which are most relevant for environmental and microbiological processes. Hydrocarbons are divided into three main compound classes, namely, saturated, unsaturated, and aromatic hydrocarbons which are discussed separately in subsequent sections of this chapter. In addition to hydrocarbons sensu stricto, this chapter also provides an introduction to naturally occurring lipids and technical lipid-like compounds. In contrast to hydrocarbons, lipids are not defined by their elemental composition but rather by their solubility. In strict terms, a lipid is a natural product which is well soluble in nonpolar organic solvents (lipophilic) but almost insoluble in water (hydrophobic). Beside unfunctionalized hydrocarbons, this definition may include all important types of functionalized natural organic compounds containing the halogens fluorine, chlorine, bromine, or iodine or the hetero elements nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen (NSO compounds). Halogenated organic compounds occurring in the environment are mainly released by anthropogenic activity although numerous natural products containing halogen atoms are known. NSO compounds may occur in natural environments along with complex assemblages of hydrocarbons, e.g., crude oils always
contain non-hydrocarbons in highly variable but often significant amounts. Moreover, functionalized organic compounds, particularly oxygen compounds, represent important biological transformation products of hydrocarbons and play a crucial role as intermediates/products of biodegradation pathways. The discussion will consider both natural products and xenobiotics, i.e., compounds found in organisms which are not produced by these organisms or expected to occur in them.

We will not give any introduction to the nomenclature of organic compounds. The common rules of organic nomenclature as defined by the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) are accessible via suitable resources (Favre and Powell, Nomenclature of Organic Chemistry – IUPAC Recommendations and Preferred Names 2013; see also http://www.acdlabs.com/iupac/nomenclature/). Furthermore, software packages are available that generate the correct names of organic compounds from drawn structures (e.g., http://www.acdlabs.com/products/name_lab/).

### 2 Covalent Bonding

A characteristic feature of hydrocarbons is that they contain covalent bonds exclusively. In covalent bonds, pairs of electrons are shared between atoms. Covalent bonds are typically formed between elements which do not differ too strongly in electronegativity (see below). The quantum mechanical valence bond model describes the nature of covalent bonds based on orbitals which are regions around a single atom or in a molecule in which electrons may be found with a certain probability. Covalent bonding is explained based on the assumption that two or more atomic orbitals from two atoms overlap to form the same number of molecular orbitals but with different energies (higher and lower than the parent atomic orbitals). The electrons of the former atomic orbitals can now occupy the molecular orbitals with lower energy (binding orbitals) and leave the higher-energy orbitals (anti-binding) unoccupied. This leads to an energy gain, which stabilizes the system, i.e., the covalent bond.

In atoms of elements of the second period of the periodic table of the chemical elements, such as carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, and fluorine, only atomic orbitals of the first and second shell, i.e., the $1s$, $2s$, $2p_x$, $2p_y$, and $2p_z$ orbitals, may be occupied by electrons. $1s$, $2s$, and $2p$ orbitals correspond to particular increasing energy levels of the electrons. Central to the understanding of covalent bonding is the concept of orbital hybridization, which assumes that mixing of energetically different atomic orbitals forms the same number of energetically equivalent hybrid orbitals. The three modes of orbital hybridization that may occur in carbon form four $sp^3$, three $sp^2$, or two $sp$ orbitals by mixing of three, two, or one $2p$ orbital(s) with the $2s$ orbital, respectively.

Covalent bonds formed by overlapping of a $sp^3$, $sp^2$, or $sp$ hybrid orbital with the $1s$ orbital of a hydrogen atom or a hybrid orbital of another carbon atom (or an atom of another element) are termed σ-bonds. Carbon atoms with $sp^3$ hybridization form four single bonds along the connecting lines to the bonding partners. Methane, the simplest organic molecule, is built up by four equivalent C–H σ-bonds. The structure of methane is that of a regular tetrahedron in which all bond lengths (110 pm) and bond angles (109.5°) are identical (Fig. 1). The length of a C–C σ-bond between two $sp^3$ hybridized carbon atoms as in ethane is 154 pm (Fig. 1). The A–C–B
Bond angles in tetrahedral carbon atoms may deviate from 109.5° depending on the electronic and steric properties of the bonding partners. Varying lengths (150–120 pm) are found for σ-bonds between differently hybridized carbon atoms. Three or two σ-bonds are formed by sp² and sp hybridized carbon atoms, respectively. The remaining non-hybridized 2p orbital(s) overlap(s) with (a) non-hybridized 2p orbital(s) of other atoms to form π-bonds in addition to the σ-bond. In π-bonds the molecular orbital is located above and below the connecting line between the atoms. Bonding between two sp² and two sp hybridized carbon atoms thus leads to C–C double or triple bonds, respectively. Simple examples are ethene (H₂C=CH₂) with a C–C double bond length of 134 pm and ethyne (HC≡CH) with a C–C triple bond length of 120 pm (Fig. 1). The bonding angles at sp² and sp hybridized carbon atoms are 120° and 180°, respectively.

Carbon atoms may also form covalent bonds to atoms of elements other than carbon and hydrogen. Most relevant in naturally occurring organic compounds are halogens, nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen (Table 1). As the halogens are monovalent elements, only single bonds are possible between carbon and halogen atoms. In contrast, oxygen and sulfur are divalent elements and nitrogen is a trivalent element. Therefore, C–O and C–S single and double bonds as well as C–N single, double, and triple bonds are possible.

The chemical reactivity of organic compounds depends directly on the properties of the individual bonds within their molecules. The strength of a bond is measured by the bond dissociation energy which is directly related to the bond distance. In chemical reactions, bond cleavage may occur by homolytic or heterolytic mechanisms. An example of a homolytic mechanism would be the cleavage of an alkane into an alkyl radical and a hydrogen radical, i.e., both cleavage products retain one of the shared electrons. By contrast, the dissociation of a carboxylic acid into a carboxylate anion and a proton represents a heterolytic mechanism. Here, both electrons are retained in one of the cleavage products, viz., the carboxylate ion. The most important control on the bond energy is the electronegativity of the atoms bonding together. Electronegativity denominates the ability of an atom in a covalent bond to attract the shared electrons to itself (Table 1). This will result in an asymmetric charge distribution, whose magnitude depends on the electronegativity difference between the bonding atoms. In the periodic table of the chemical elements, electronegativity increases from left to right within periods and from bottom
to top within groups. As a general rule, reactivity of covalent bonds increases with increasing polarity. Therefore, compounds containing exclusively nonpolar σ-bonds such as saturated hydrocarbons are rather unreactive or inert (see below).

### 3 Hydrocarbons

#### 3.1 Saturated Hydrocarbons

##### 3.1.1 \( n \)-Alkanes

The term \( n \)-alkane refers to linear hydrocarbons with the general formula \( \text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+2} \). The prefix \( n \) stands for normal indicating that the molecule does not contain branches so that it represents a straight chain of carbon atoms (Fig. 2). Each carbon atom (except the two terminal ones) is bound via σ-bonds to two other carbon atoms. The two remaining free valences are occupied by hydrogen atoms, respectively; only the terminal carbon atoms have three hydrogen atoms as bonding partners. The structurally simplest organic molecule, methane (Fig. 1), can be regarded as the lower end member of the homologues series of \( n \)-alkanes. There is no principal upper limit as to the chain length of \( n \)-alkanes. Polyethylene is a synthetic polymer consisting of extremely long carbon chains principally representing \( n \)-alkanes (up to about 400,000 carbon atoms per molecule).

A characteristic structural feature of \( n \)-alkanes is the existence of conformers. Conformers are isomers which are transformed into each other by rotation about individual C–C bonds without breaking chemical bonds. The stability of different conformers depends on (a) hyperconjugation, i.e., the energy gained by overlapping of a fully occupied binding molecular orbital (e.g., from a C–H bond) with an unoccupied anti-binding orbital on an adjacent bond, which is possible only when the conformation is staggered, and (b) steric repulsion, whose extent is determined by the size of the substituents. In \( n \)-alkanes the rotation barrier (= the activation energy required to transform one conformer to another) is relatively low, thus the rotatability about C–C σ-bonds can be regarded as relatively unrestricted under conditions relevant to most natural environments.

Methane, likely the most abundant low-molecular-weight organic compound on the planet Earth, is formed by both biological and geological processes. Biogenic and thermogenic methane are easily discriminated by their stable carbon isotopic compositions (for review, see Chap. 13, “Stable Isotopes in Understanding Origin and Degradation Processes of Hydrocarbons and Petroleum”, this volume). Isotopically light methane in deep natural gas reservoirs may be regarded as an indication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>Cl</th>
<th>Br</th>
<th>I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atomic number</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronegativity(^a)</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>2.55</td>
<td>3.04</td>
<td>3.44</td>
<td>3.98</td>
<td>2.19</td>
<td>2.58</td>
<td>3.16</td>
<td>2.96</td>
<td>2.66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Allred (1961)
Fig. 2 Structures of selected saturated hydrocarbons. *n-Alkanes*, (a) n-butane C₄H₁₀, (b) n-pentane C₅H₁₂, (c) n-hexane C₆H₁₄, (d) n-heptane C₇H₁₆; *branched alkanes*, (e) 2-methylpropane (isobutane) C₄H₁₀, (f) 2-methylbutane (isopentane) C₅H₁₂, (g) 2-methylpentane C₆H₁₄, (h) 2-methylhexane C₇H₁₆, (i) 2,2,4-trimethylpentane (isooctane) C₈H₁₈, (j) 3-methylpentane C₆H₁₄, (k) 3-methylhexane C₇H₁₆, (l) 2,6,10,14-tetramethylhexadecane (phytane) C₂₀H₄₂; *cycloalkanes*, (m) cyclopentane C₅H₁₀, (n) cyclohexane C₆H₁₂, (o) decalin C₁₀H₁₈, (p) adamantane C₁₀H₁₆, (q) diamantane C₁₄H₂₀, (r) cholestane C₂₇H₄₂, (s) hopane C₃₀H₄₂. Isooctane, a branched saturated hydrocarbon which defines the 100 point on the octane rating scale, contains primary (1°), secondary (2°), tertiary (3°), and quaternary (4°) carbon atoms. Stereogenic centers are present in 3-methylhexane, phytane, cholestane, and hopane as indicated by asterisks.
for the existence of a deep subterraneous biosphere (e.g., Schoell 1980). Conven-
tional and unconventional (clathrate hydrates, shale gas, coal seams) gas resources
represent the by far largest pool of hydrocarbons in the geosphere (e.g., Chaps. 19,
“Oil and Gas Shales”, 22, “Secondary Microbial Gas”, 23, “Geological, Geo-
chemical, and Microbial Factors Affecting Coalbed Methane”, and 24, “Gas
Hydrates as an Unconventional Hydrocarbon Resource”, this volume. Moreover,
evidence has been provided that higher natural gas hydrocarbons, i.e., ethane and
propane, are not exclusively formed by thermal processes but may also be produced
biologically in the deep marine subsurface (Hinrichs et al. 2006; Xie et al. 2013).
Higher \(n\)-alkanes occur as major constituents of leaf waxes of macrophytes and land
plants, which can be distinguished chemotaxonomically according to the carbon
number range of the homologues (e.g., Ficken et al. 2000). Due to the biosynthesis
from fatty aldehydes with even-numbered carbon chains via decarbonylation (e.g.,
Schneider-Belhaddad and Kolattukudy 2000), carbon numbers of biogenic alkanes
typically show a significant odd-over-even predominance. \(n\)-Alkanes are also the
main constituents of crude oils which have not been affected by biodegradation.
Here, typically no clear carbon number predominance is observed due to the
unspecific formation via thermally controlled reactions. It is important to note that
the majority of the global oil reserves is more or less significantly biodegraded and
thus may lack \(n\)-alkanes.

3.1.2 Branched Alkanes
For hydrocarbons represented by the general formula \(C_nH_{2n+2}\), more than one
constitutional isomer is possible if \(n \geq 4\). In these structural isomers, the atoms are
connected in different ways; thus interconversion is not possible without breaking
chemical bonds. These alkanes do not possess straight chains of carbon atoms and
therefore, in contrast to the normal alkanes, are termed branched alkanes (Fig. 2).
The number of possible constitutional isomers increases exponentially with increas-
ing number of carbon atoms in the molecule. In general, the higher the degree of
substitution is, the more will the molecule have a spherical rather than a rodlike
shape. This has a significant influence on the physical properties of isomers with
implications for features such as bioavailability.

Carbon atoms in these molecules are classified according to the number of 1, 2,
3, or 4 other carbon atoms to which they are connected as primary, secondary,
tertiary, and quaternary carbon atoms, respectively, as illustrated for isooctane in
Fig. 2. Tertiary and quaternary carbon atoms which are connected to four different
substituents are termed chiral or stereogenic centers. Molecules containing chiral
carbon atoms may exist as configurational isomers (or stereoisomers) which cannot
be converted into each other without breaking of chemical bonds, although the
connectivity of the atoms is identical. This class of isomers is subdivided into
enantiomers, which are nonsuperimposable mirror images of each other, and diaste-
reoisomers, which are not. A structurally simple example of the former is
3-methylhexane (Fig. 2), a common constituent of fossil fuels, which exists as two
enantiomers, while 2,6,10,14-tetramethylhexadecane (phytane, Fig. 2), another
ubiquitous constituent of fossil fuels, contains three stereogenic centers and therefore
exists as eight different stereoisomers (four pairs of diastereoisomeric enantiomers). In general, diastereoisomers possess different physical properties, while enantiomers do not. However, in biological systems the two enantiomers of a molecule may behave different if chiral components (e.g., enzymes) are involved in a process.

In fossil fuels some branched alkanes (Fig. 2, e.g., isobutane, isopentane, 2-methylpentane, 3-methylpentane, 2-methylhexane, 3-methylhexane) are relatively abundant in the molecular range up to approximately C_{10}H_{22}. With increasing molecular weight, individual isomers become less pronounced in comparison to the prevailing n-alkanes; however, the mixtures become more complex. It appears that biodegradability generally decreases with increasing degree of branching which is often observed as the relative enrichment of an unresolved complex mixture (UCM, also called the “hump”) during biodegradation of crude oil and related petroleum products. The lower biodegradability of highly branched alkanes might be related to the low natural abundance of individual isomers having not favored the evolution of appropriate degradation pathways.

### 3.1.3 Cycloalkanes

Formally, cycloalkanes are generated by (homolytic) removal of two hydrogen atoms from two different carbon atoms in n-alkanes or branched alkanes; formation of a σ-bond between these carbon atoms (which have to be interrupted by at least one carbon atom) will then result in a cycloalkane. The minimum number of carbon atoms in a cyclic hydrocarbon is three (cyclopropane derivatives), while there is no principal upper limit as to the ring size. Cycloalkanes are also called naphthenes, a term which particularly refers to a petroleum-related origin. Cycloalkanes with alkyl substituents may be called alklycycloalkanes or cycloalkylalkanes. The structural diversity becomes even greater if the various types of polycyclic hydrocarbons are taken into account. Among these, annulated structures which formally are built up from side-on condensed cyclic segments are most prominent in naturally occurring hydrocarbon assemblages of fossil fuels. A simple example is decalin (Fig. 2) which consists of two annulated cyclohexane rings. Cycloalkanes can be represented by the general formula C_{n}H_{2(n+r)} where n is the number of carbon atoms and r the number of rings in the molecule.

Ring carbon atoms in cycloalkanes, as in n-alkanes and branched alkanes, are sp^3 hybridized and therefore ideally should have tetrahedral bond angles of 109.5°. However, depending on the ring size, the actual structure will deviate more or less from a tetrahedral arrangement which will result in more or less pronounced ring strain. Cyclohexane (Fig. 2) in the chair conformation allows almost ideal tetrahedral angles; therefore ring strain is negligible. Similarly, no strong deviation from the tetrahedron will occur for the C–C–C bond angles in cyclopentane (Fig. 2). Cyclopropane with C–C–C bond angles of 60° and, to a lesser extent, cyclobutane with C–C–C bond angles of 90° deviate most from the tetrahedral angle. They therefore are highly strained and significantly less stable than larger rings. The strain of rings with more than six carbon atoms varies irregularly but in general decreases with increasing ring size and is negligible in larger ring systems.
In cyclohexane, the two hydrogen atoms attached to each carbon atom are chemically not equivalent. The torsional strain is lowest if the molecule adopts the so-called chair conformation in which 6 of the 12 hydrogen atoms are in the plane of the ring (equatorial) while the other 6 are perpendicular to it (axial). Ring flipping leads to the interchange of equatorially and axially attached substituents (Fig. 3). For spatial reasons, axial substituents interact more strongly with each other than equatorial substituents. Therefore, substituted cyclohexane conformers will be generally more stable if more of the larger substituents are in the equatorial position.

The natural occurrence of rings of different sizes reflects their different stability. Cyclohexane and, to a lesser extent, cyclopentane moieties are by far predominating in natural products and naphthenic petroleum constituents. A broad variety of lipids in eukaryotes and prokaryotes, such as steroids, hopanoids, and other triterpenoids, possess carbon skeletons which are based on annulated cyclohexane and cyclopentane rings. These important constituents of biomass are a relevant source of the structurally diverse mixtures of naphthenes found in fossil fuels. During diagenetic and catagenetic transformation of sedimentary organic matter, biogenic lipids loose functional groups and structural elements such as C–C double bonds (see below) but usually retain the original carbon skeleton. In geochemistry, hydrocarbons such as phytane, cholestane, and hopane (Fig. 2), which can be regarded as chemical fossils, are called biomarkers as their carbon skeletons can directly be related to those of the respective biological precursors (for a detailed introduction to biomarkers, see Peters et al. 2005).

Cyclopropyl moieties occur, for example, in certain fatty acids and steroid derivatives. They are also a structural element of pyrethrins such as chrysanthemic acid, a natural insecticide from *Tanacetum cinerariifolium* (Trev.) Sch. Bip. and *T. coccineum* (Willd.) Grierson (Staudinger and Ruzicka 1924). Ladderane lipids produced by anammox bacteria are an interesting example of natural products containing annulated cyclobutane rings (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2002). Such three- and four-membered rings normally will not survive diagenetic and catagenetic transformation of biogenic organic compounds deposited in the geosphere. Therefore, cyclopropane and cyclobutane derivatives are not relevant as constituents of fossil fuels. Likewise, there is only very limited evidence that larger rings with more than six carbon atoms play any significant role.

If the fusion occurs across a sequence of atoms rather than at two mutually bonded atoms, bi- and polycyclic hydrocarbons may form bridged structures. α-Pinene (2,6,6-trimethyl[3.1.1]hept-2-ene) (Fig. 5), a widely distributed constituent of plants and in particular of conifer resins, represents a typical example of a bridged
hydrocarbon (additionally containing a double bond; see below). In general, bridged hydrocarbons are of subordinate relevance as constituents of fossil fuels. However, the so-called diamondoids are a class of petroleum constituents with bridged structures which apparently are generated at higher levels of thermal maturity (possibly from annulated hydrocarbons such as steranes or hopanes) (Dahl et al. 1999). These cage-like structures (e.g., adamantane, diamantane, Fig. 2) can be regarded as representing the building blocks of diamonds (in contrast to polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons which represent the building blocks of graphite). Polymantanes containing up to 11 diamond-crystal cages (undecamantane) have been isolated from natural gas condensates (Dahl et al. 2003a,b). These constituents of fossil fuels appear to be highly resistant to biodegradation (Grice et al. 2000) and therefore may represent major constituents of severely altered crude oils.

3.2 Unsaturated Hydrocarbons

Unsaturated hydrocarbons are molecules that contain at least one C–C double bond or one C–C triple bond. These types of compounds are termed alkenes (resp. cycloalkenes) or olefins (resp. cycloolefins), if the structure contains one or more double bonds, and alkyynes (resp. cycloalkynes), if it contains one or more triple bonds. Unsaturated hydrocarbons can be represented by the general formula C_nH_{2(n+1-r-d-2t)} where n is the number of carbon atoms, r the number of rings, d the number of C–C double bonds, and t the number of C-C triple bonds in the molecule. The simplest alkene is ethene (ethylene); the simplest alkyne is ethyne (acetylene) as depicted in Fig. 1. The term conjugated double bond denominates two or more double bonds in a molecule which are not separated by CH2 groups or other structural moieties, i.e., alternating double and single bonds. This is a significant structural element of naturally occurring hydrocarbons such as the carotenes lycopene, β-carotene, or isorenieratene (Figs. 5 and 7).

As it requires significant amount of energy to break a C–C π-bond, free rotation about C–C double bonds is essentially impossible. (This is in contrast to the saturated hydrocarbons where rotation about C–C σ-single bonds is relatively unrestricted as pointed out.) As a consequence, asymmetrically substituted alkenes such as but-2-ene may occur as two distinct constitutional isomers, which are classified according to the cis-/trans- or Z-/E-nomenclature (Fig. 4). No cis-/trans-isomerism can occur in alkenes in which at least one of the two carbon atoms forming the C–C double bond is connected to two identical substituents. In general, cis- and trans-isomers of a given alkene (or, more generally, of an unsaturated

Fig. 4 Structures of (a) Z-but-2-ene (cis-isomer) and (b) E-but-2-ene (trans-isomer) C_4H_8.
Fig. 5  Structures of selected unsaturated hydrocarbons. **Linear and branched alkenes**, (a) \((Z\)-tricos-9-ene \(\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{46}\) (muscalure, sex pheromone of the housefly *Musca domestica*), (b) 2-methylbuta-1,3-diene \(\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\) (isoprene), (c) 7-methyl-3-methylocta-1,6-diene \(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\) (myrcene, constituent of essential oils), (d) \((3E,6E)-3,7,11\)-trimethyldodeca-1,3,6,10-tetraene \(\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{24}\) (\(\alpha\)-farnesene, natural coating of apples and other fruits); **cycloalkenes and monoterpenes**, (e) cyclohexene \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{10}\), (f) cyclohexa-1,3-diene \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\), (g) cyclohexa-1,4-diene \(\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\), (h) 1,4,5,8-tetrahydroxynaphthalene \(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{12}\), (i) 2,6,6-trimethylbicyclo[3.1.1]hept-2-ene \(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\) (\(\alpha\)-pinene, monoterpenes from conifer resins), (j) 1-isopropyl-4-methylcyclohexa-1,3-diene \(\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\) (\(\alpha\)-terpinene, monoterpenes from cardamom and marjoram oils), (k) 1-isopropyl-4-...
organic compound) exhibit different physical properties. Isomerization of cis- to trans-double bonds and vice versa is a physiologically significant process, e.g., the transformation of 11-cis-retinal to all-trans-retinal (and the recycling of the latter to the former) is an integral element of the vision cycle.

Alkenes (and cycloalkenes) of great structural diversity occur as natural products in numerous living organisms (Fig. 5). Even the simplest alkene, ethene, occurs as a biosynthetic product and acts as a hormone on various stages in the life cycle of plants. Many alkenes and cycloalkenes with one or more double bonds act as insect pheromones (Francke and Schulz 1998). Carotenoids (both carotenes = hydrocarbons and xanthophylls = non-hydrocarbons) are pigments, which may be involved in energy transfer in photosynthetic organisms or act as antioxidants in living organisms in general, due to their system of conjugated double bonds. Moreover, C–C double bonds play an important role in many types of heteroatom-containing natural products, such as unsaturated fatty acids, steroids, and other triterpenoids. Examples of natural products containing C–C triple bonds are tridec-1-ene-3,5,7,9,11-pentayne, a polyyne hydrocarbon isolated from Echinacea spp.; (Z)-13-hexadecen-11-yn-1-yl acetate, a pheromone of processory moths (Thaumetopoea spp.); and histrionicotoxin, a toxin of the harlequin poison-dart frog Oophaga histrionica.

Unsaturated hydrocarbons, in contrast to saturated and aromatic hydrocarbons, appear to play a minor role in fossil fuels. C–C double (and triple) bonds in most biogenic compounds are too reactive to survive the diagenetic and catagenetic transformations occurring in geological systems over geological timescales. For example, hydrogenation processes with reduced sulfur species such as H2S (generated by microbial activity, i.e., bacterial sulfate reduction) as hydrogen donors may be responsible for the loss of double bonds (Hebting et al. 2006). An example is the diagenetic transformation of the already mentioned carotenoidal hydrocarbon isorenieratene to isorenieratane (Fig. 7) which may lose all conjugated double bonds on the aliphatic chain connecting the two benzene rings, while the aromatic systems survive even elevated thermal stress due to their high stability (see below). Concentrations of olefins in crude oils are generally low (mostly below 1% by weight), although significantly higher concentrations have been reported in some instances. Curiale and Frolov (1998) reviewed various possible origins of olefins in crude oil. These compounds may migrate with other soluble organic compounds directly from the source rock or get into oils through the process of migration-contamination, wherein light oils act as solvents for syntepositional olefins that occur along the migration route or within the reservoir section. Olefins in crude oils may also derive from “cold” radiolytic dehydrogenation of saturated hydrocarbons, introduced as a by-product of decay of uranium, thorium, and other radioactive elements among the

---

**Fig. 5** (continued) methylcyclohexa-1,4-diene C_{16}H_{16} (γ-terpinene, various plant sources), (l) cycloocta-1,3,5,7-tetraene C_{8}H_{8}; tri- and tetratetrapenes, (m) (6E,10E,14E,18E)-2,6,10,14,18,22-hexamethyltetracosea-2,6,10,14,18,22-hexaene C_{30}H_{50} (squalene, shark liver oil), (n) lycopene C_{40}H_{56}, (o) β-carotene C_{40}H_{56}
reservoir minerals, or from pyrolysis due to thermal impact from igneous intrusions that occur close to the reservoired oil.

### 3.3 Aromatic Hydrocarbons

#### 3.3.1 Aromaticity

Aromaticity denominates a chemical property which is found in certain (but not all) cyclic molecules containing conjugated double bonds. Due to resonance stabilization, aromatic compounds are more stable than would be expected from the conjugation of the double bonds alone. The basic example of an aromatic hydrocarbon is benzene (Fig. 7), for which two indistinguishable resonance structures exist (Fig. 6).

In benzene all six carbon atoms forming the six-membered ring are \(sp^2\) hybridized; therefore all C–C–C bond angles must be 120°, which is only possible if all carbon atoms lie in the same plane. The six unhybridized \(p\)-orbitals which are out of the plane of the atoms can freely overlap and are thought to form conjugated molecular orbitals above and below the ring plane in which the six \(\pi\)-electrons are delocalized. As a consequence, all six C–C bonds in the benzene ring have the same length (140 pm). In general, aromatic compounds are planar cyclic molecules with a fully conjugated double bond system which obeys the Hückel rule, i.e., it must contain \(4n + 2\) delocalized \(\pi\)-electrons (\(n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \) and so on; please note that the Hückel rule is strictly applicable to monocyclic aromatic compounds only). Accordingly, cycloocta-1,3,5,7-tetraene (Fig. 5), a molecule with eight \(\pi\)-electrons which does exist, is not aromatic and also not planar. Any (bio)chemical reaction leading to a breakdown of the aromatic system has to overcome the resonance stabilization (~151 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) for benzene).

![Resonance structures of benzene](image)

*Fig. 6* Resonance structures of benzene (resonance between two structures is indicated by a double arrow). Aromaticity in benzene rings may also be depicted by an inner circle. (Note: Inner circles often are used in a misleading way to depict aromaticity in PAHs. Each circle represents 6 delocalized \(\pi\)-electrons; thus in the case of, e.g., naphthalene, two inner circles would represent 12 delocalized \(\pi\)-electrons, although naphthalene has only 10 delocalized \(\pi\)-electrons; a system with 12 delocalized \(\pi\)-electrons would even not obey the Hückel rule. This is best avoided if one of the possible resonance structures with its alternating double and single bonds is depicted.) Mono-substituted benzene derivatives possess three distinguishable hydrogen atoms on the aromatic ring, two in ortho- (o-; 1,2-) and meta- (m-; 1,3-) and one in para- (p-; 1,4-) position to the substituent, respectively.
3.3.2 Benzene Derivatives
All six hydrogen atoms in benzene, which are chemically equivalent, may be substituted by alkyl and aryl groups resulting in two principal classes of aromatic hydrocarbons, alkylbenzenes and polyphenyls. Mixed types are also possible. Three different isomers of disubstituted benzene derivatives are possible which are classified according to their substitution pattern as ortho-, meta-, or para-isomers (Fig. 6). Environmentally most significant are benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and the three xylene isomers (BTEX, Fig. 7), which occur in relatively high amounts in fossil fuels, are rather bioavailable due to their physicochemical properties (see below) and have significant health effects. Fossil fuels contain complex mixtures of alkylbenzenes. Linear alkylbenzenes are produced industrially as intermediates in the fabrication of tensides. Biphenyl is the structurally simplest representative among the polyphenyls (Fig. 7). Especially ortho-substituted biphenyls may exhibit restricted rotatability about the C–C single bond between the two aromatic rings which can result in atropisomers in which the individual C2-isomers are optically stable. More complex polyphenyls such as o-, m-, and p-terphenyl (Fig. 7) may occur in small amounts in fossil fuels (Marynowski et al. 2001).

3.3.3 Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) are fused aromatic hydrocarbons consisting of two or more aromatic rings. The structurally simplest representative of this class of compounds is naphthalene (Fig. 7). The number of condensed aromatic rings is essentially unlimited; larger PAHs can be regarded as structural subunits of graphite. Main environmental sources of PAHs are fossil fuels and incomplete combustion of organic materials. Thermogenic (origin from fossil fuels) and pyrogenic PAHs typically can be distinguished by the relative amounts of alkyl-substituted derivatives versus the parent (unsubstituted) carbon skeleton with the former being enriched in petroleum-related products and depleted in combustion-derived products. More specific PAH ratios are used to distinguish pyrogenic or petrogenic PAHs (Yunker et al. 2002). Certain PAHs are carcinogenic, mutagenic, and/or teratogenic.

While all hydrogen atoms are chemically equivalent in benzene, this is typically not the case in PAHs, with few exceptions such as in coronene (Fig. 7). Naphthalene contains two sets of four chemically equivalent hydrogen atoms, which are classified as α- and β-positions. Therefore two isomers of monosubstituted naphthalene derivatives exist, e.g., 1- and 2-methylnaphthalene (Fig. 7). Anthracene and phenanthrene have three and five chemically nonequivalent hydrogen atoms and may thus form the corresponding number of monosubstituted derivatives, respectively. Chemically nonequivalent carbon and hydrogen atoms may behave different in (bio)chemical reactions which may result in certain regioselectivities. Furthermore, the degree of aromaticity may be different for each ring segment; e.g., in phenanthrene the central ring is less aromatic and therefore more reactive than the outer rings according to Clar’s rule (Portella et al. 2005; Randic 2003).

Based on an operational definition, the term “aromatic hydrocarbon” is often used for certain heterocyclic aromatic compound types, such as dibenzofurans and
Fig. 7 Structures of selected aromatic hydrocarbons. **Monocyclic aromatic hydrocarbons**, (a) benzene C6H6, (b) toluene, C7H8, (c) ethylbenzene C8H10, (d) o-xylene C8H10, (e) m-xylene C8H10, (f) p-xylene C8H10, (g) 1-isopropyl-4-methylbenzene C10H14 (*p*-cymene, constituent of essential oils); **polyphenyls**, (h) biphenyl C12H10, (i) o-terphenyl C18H14, (j) m-terphenyl C18H14, (k) p-terphenyl C18H14; **polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons**, (l) naphthalene C10H8, (m)
dibenzothiophenes, in environmental and petroleum geochemistry. As these compounds contain heteroatoms, they do not represent hydrocarbons sensu stricto. Therefore, these compound classes will be discussed in the appropriate parts of the next chapters.

4 Functionalized Organic Compounds and Lipids

In contrast to hydrocarbons, lipids are natural products defined by their property to be soluble in nonpolar organic solvents like \( n \)-hexane (McNaught and Wilkinson 1997) but insoluble in water, i.e., they are hydrophobic. This implies that biosynthetic hydrocarbons can be considered as lipids, too. However, except for hydrocarbons, many biogenic lipids are amphiphilic, i.e., they contain both lipophilic and hydrophilic groups, and therefore are able to form vesicles or membranes in an aqueous environment. Thus, any heteroatom-containing compound, like alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, esters, sulfur compounds, amines, amides, and halides, of biogenic origin can be a lipid, as long as its hydrocarbon backbone is adequate to achieve a sufficient lipophilicity (see also chapter 5 Physical Properties). In the following, basic information on functionalized organic compounds with a special emphasis on lipids and lipid-like compounds is given in the order of their main heteroatom. Rules for the “nomenclature of lipids” are provided by the IUPAC-IUB Commission on Biochemical Nomenclature (see, e.g., the World Wide Web version prepared by G. P. Moss at “www.qmul.ac.uk/sbcs/iupac/lipid/” and updated references therein).

4.1 Oxygen- and Sulfur-containing Compounds

Since chalcogens (group 16 of the periodic table) are divalent elements, they are able to form either single or double bonds with carbon atoms. Inserting oxygen or sulfur into C–H bonds leads to alcohols in the case of aliphatic moieties as well as the sulfur-analog thiols. The corresponding oxygen containing functional group is called hydroxy group, whereas for S–H it is called sulfanyl group. Since sulfur has a lower electronegativity than oxygen (Table 1), a higher polarity and bond strength of the C–O single bond and, correspondingly, different bond length of C–O (ca. 143 pm) and C–S (ca. 180 pm) single bonds as well as differing reactivities are evident. Based on their high polarity, hydroxy groups are forming strong so-called hydrogen bonds, special intermolecular forces between partially positively charged hydrogen atoms.
and partially negatively charged heteroatoms (like oxygen) of neighbored molecules (see also Chapter 5). Such strong intermolecular interactions do not exist between thiols, but on the contrary thiols exhibit a higher acidity in comparison to alcohols as the result of lower bond strength of S–H as compared to O–H bonds.

Hydroxy and sulfanyl groups can also be attached to aromatic moieties, representing the phenols (resp. thiophenols) named according to the simplest representative of this compound class, phenol. Noteworthy, a direct linkage of hydroxy groups to aromatic rings strongly influences the acidity of the functional group. Aliphatic alcohols exhibit only a weak acidity and, consequently, strong bases like alkali metal hydrides are needed to generate the corresponding salts, viz., the alkoxides. The acidity depends dominantly on the inductive effects of further substituents. Thus, perfluorination of the methyl group in ethanol (high negative inductive effect as the result of the high electronegativity of fluorine) shifts the p\(K_a\) value from 16 (ethanol) to 12.5 (2,2,2-trifluoroethanol). On the contrary, the p\(K_a\) value of 10 of phenol indicates a relatively high acidity as the result of resonance stabilization; hence, phenols react principally as weak acids. However, their acidity is also influenced by inductive effects of further substituents (e.g., halogens) attached to the aromatic ring.

The reactivity of aliphatic alcohols is also influenced by the structural properties of the hydroxylated carbon atoms. Three different types, namely, primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols, are differentiated according to the number of 1, 2, or 3 carbon atoms to which the hydroxylated carbon atom is bonded (e.g., ethanol, isopropanol, and tert-butanol in Fig. 9). Due to differences in resonance stabilization, the reactivity of these different alcohols varies. For example, the type of elimination reactions shifts from a more unimolecular mechanism (E1) in tertiary alcohols to a more bimolecular mechanism (E2) in primary alcohols. The latter are commonly found in nature, e.g., ethanol as the main product of alcoholic fermentation. Primary alcohols with long hydrocarbon chains occur as lipids, for example, in plant waxes, and can result from the enzymatic reduction of respective fatty acids or during metabolic activation of \(n\)-alkanes in aerobic organisms.

More than one hydroxy group may be attached to aliphatic and aromatic moieties in diverse compound classes. In case of two hydroxy groups bound to adjacent carbon atoms, the term vicinal substitution (vic-) has been established. Polyhydroxybenzene derivatives are well-known metabolic intermediates, and mono- or dihydroxylation of aromatic rings is a key reaction in degradation pathways of aromatic hydrocarbons. However, aliphatic polyols play a more prominent role in biochemistry. 1,2,3-Propanetriol (Fig. 9), named glycerol, being the backbone of many lipid compounds, is itself fully mixable with water due to the high degree of hydroxylation. This is also the case in carbohydrates, where most of the carbon atoms carry a hydroxy group leading to a high relative oxygen content. In geminal (\(gem\)-) diols, two hydroxy groups are bonded to the same carbon atom. Typically, these compounds are unstable and form carbonyl compounds (see below) by elimination of water. Only very few \(gem\)-diols such as formalin and chloral hydrate (Fig. 9) are stable under normal conditions.

Alkylated phenols are common constituents of crude oil; likewise, phenolic moieties occur widespread in biogeomacromolecules (lignin, humic substances,
kerogen). In contrast, aliphatic alcohols are less represented in geologic organic matter. However, alcohols are a fundamental compound class in the chemical industry. Methanol, the simplest aliphatic alcohol, is one of the most important industrial chemicals with an annual production rate of around 30 million tons. Further specific alcohols used in plasticizers and additives are 2-ethylhexanol and tert-butanol (Fig. 9).

An exchange of the hydrogen atom in hydroxy groups by aliphatic or aromatic moieties leads to the compound classes of ethers \((R-O-R')\). The sulfur analogues are named thioethers. Principally, alkyl/alkyl-, aryl/aryl-, and alkyl/arylamers exist in cyclic (e.g., tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxan, polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and dibenzofurans PCDD/F) or acyclic constitution (e.g., diethyl ether, diphenyl ether, anisole, Fig. 9). The smallest cyclic ether, oxirane, consists of a three-membered ring and is highly reactive due to high ring strain; it also occurs as a functional group, the epoxy group, in larger molecules. The generation of epoxides by insertion of oxygen in C=C double bonds is an important reaction to form reactive intermediates in biochemistry. For example, epoxidation is the starting reaction for the cyclization of steroids from squalene or for the initial activation of aromatic hydrocarbons as a part of their degradation pathways. Cyclic ether moieties of higher stability occur in numerous xenobiotics (e.g., crown ethers) and natural products such as \(\alpha\)-tocopherol. As the ether group is no hydrogen bond donor, ethers are poorly soluble in water and, therefore, can be considered as lipids or lipid-like compounds. A prominent group of ether lipids found in archaeal cell membranes are the GDGTs (glycerol dialkyl glycerol tetraethers).

The chemical behavior of ethers differs significantly from that of alcohols. Most ethers are less reactive and, consequently, are often used as solvents in the chemical industry or inert additives in commercial products (e.g., methyl-tert-butyl ether MTBE, Fig. 9, as antiknocking agent in gasoline). Polyether synthesis using ethylene oxide leads to the polymer groups of polyethylene glycols or polyethylene oxides with molecular weights of up to 10,000,000 g/mol. This compound class is used widespread in industrial, pharmaceutical, medicinal, and personal care products, in detergents, and as additives in other polymers. Thioether moieties are also present in natural products (e.g., dimethyl sulfide, methionine) as well as in xenobiotic compounds (e.g., the chemical warfare agent bis(2-chloroethyl)sulfide known as mustard gas or S-Lost, Fig. 9).

Linkages between carbon and oxygen atoms are not restricted to single bonds but may also occur as C=O double bonds forming the carbonyl group which is an important moiety in organic compounds. The formation of C=O double bonds needs the reorganization of the \(sp^3\) hybridization of the carbon and oxygen atoms in C–O single bonds to \(sp^2\) hybrid orbitals for generating the C–O \(\sigma\)-bond as well as the \(\pi\)-bond by interaction of the remaining \(p\)-orbitals. As a result the geometry of this functional group is planar. In case of asymmetrically substituted carbonyl groups, both plains (below and beyond the planar group) are enantiotopic. Thus, the direction of addition of a nucleophilic reaction partner to the carbon atom determines the resulting stereochemical properties of the generated enantiomer.
Carbonyl groups occur in two different compound types, the aldehydes in case of terminal attachment, and ketones, in which the C=O double bond is located at secondary carbon atoms. The conversion of primary alcohols to aldehydes or secondary alcohols to ketones is an oxidation reaction. Aldehyde lipids deriving from long-chain fatty acids are constituents of plant waxes as well as intermediates in the enzymatic formation of \( n \)-alkanes in plants, while unsaturated long-chain ketones (alken-2-ones) are found in the cosmopolitan marine coccolithophore *Emiliania huxleyi*. Carbonyl groups may also be incorporated into cyclic structures, for example, in cyclohexanone. The need of two free valences prohibits the formation of C=O double bonds directly at aromatic carbon atoms. However, the specific cyclic structure of \( p \)-quinone (cyclohexa-2,5-diene-1,4-dione) is a building block of many natural products, especially in plant pigments or vitamins (vitamin K), but is also a known moiety in abiotically formed oxidation products of PAHs (e.g., anthra-9,10-quinone derived from photooxidation of anthracene, Fig. 9).

As a result of the high polarity of the carbonyl group, addition and condensation reactions dominate the chemical behavior of aldehydes and ketones. The primary reaction step is the attack of the carbon atom by a nucleophilic reagent. However, for several ketones and to a minor extent for aldehydes, two different reaction characteristics exist in parallel. Carbonyl groups can undergo a so-called keto-enol tautomerism, where two different forms (tautomers) of one molecule, the carbonyl form and an unsaturated alcohol, coexist in a rapid equilibrium (Fig. 8). The interconversion of tautomers requires the shift of \( \sigma \)- and \( \pi \)-bonds as well as the transfer of one hydrogen atom via the enolate anion. For most of the ketones and nearly all aldehydes, the keto tautomer is energetically favorable and thus much more abundant (enol tautomer of acetone approx. 0.00025%). However, in \( \beta \)-dicarbonyl compounds, an extended resonance and the additional inductive effect of the second C=O bond induce a higher stability of the enol tautomers highly influenced by the solvent (e.g., enol tautomer of ethyl acetoacetate in water approx. 0.4%, in hexane approx. 46.4%). Furthermore, the \( \alpha \)-hydrogen atom can be easily abstracted as a proton, because of the mesomeric stabilization of the corresponding anion. This effect leads to an increasing acidity of \( \beta \)-dicarbonyl compounds. An interesting example for a “frozen” keto-enol tautomerism is the biochemically important

![Fig. 8](image_url)
phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP, Fig. 8), which, from a formal point of view, is the ester of phosphoric acid and pyruvic acid in its enol form.

Acetals and hemiacetals are compounds with two C–O single bonds at one carbon atom but without a double bond. These derivatives of aldehydes and ketones are
formally two ether groups or one ether and one hydroxy group attached to one carbon atom and, therefore, represent mono- or dialkylated *gem*-diols. In contrast to the unstable *gem*-diols, acetals exhibit a higher stability, whereas hemiacetals are also of minor stability. However, the most important natural products exhibiting hemiacetal groups are carbohydrates in their cyclic form, in which one hydroxy group is added intramolecularly to the double bond of the keto or aldehyde group. Further intermolecular reactions of these hemiacetals with hydroxy groups of other carbohydrate molecules form acetals, and the frequent repetition of this intermolecular reaction by numerous monomers builds up oligo- and polysaccharides. Such oligosaccharides can also be part of lipid molecules, e.g., glycolipids.

A C–O single and a C=O double bond at one carbon atom are present in carboxylic acids, the oxidation products of aldehydes, and certain of their derivatives. Carboxylic acids with long carbon chain lengths (more than six carbon atoms) are lipophilic and termed fatty acids. These lipids are also prominent building blocks of many other lipid classes and responsible for their low aqueous solubility. Abstraction of a proton from the carboxy group results in an anion highly stabilized by resonance which explains the high acidity of this compound class. Beside acid/base reactions, carboxylic acid derivatives are known in which the hydroxy group is replaced by other functional moieties like amines, alkoxy groups, or halogen atoms resulting in amides, esters, and acyl halides, respectively. In particular amides and esters are important biologic and anthropogenic compounds. Esters can be also formed from inorganic acids (sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid, etc.) and alcohols. Phosphoric acid and carbohydrate derivatives are the monomers building up the backbone of the nucleic acids DNA and RNA.

Ester groups are the central structural feature of many lipid classes (see Fig. 10 for structures of selected examples). As they, like the ether group, do not represent a hydrogen bond donor, esters are quite hydrophobic. Wax esters are esters of long-chain fatty acids with long-chain fatty alcohols and found in different insects (e.g., ants, honey bees) but also in plant epicuticular impregnation (e.g., carnauba wax). Triglycerides (fats) are triesters of glycerol and fatty acids, used by mammals and plants as storage compounds. Lipids of biological membranes need to have an amphiphilic character, i.e., one side of their molecules is hydrophilic, while the other is hydrophobic. In glycolipids fatty acids are bond across ester linkages with glycerol (glyceroglycolipids) or across amide bonds with sphingosine (glycosphingolipids) which are themselves bond to mono- or oligosaccharides, to achieve the amphiphilicity. Phospholipids (also termed glycerophospholipids) are the most important membrane components in eukaryotes and bacteria and comprise a phosphate residue carrying a further small molecule (e.g., ethanolamine, choline, inositol) instead of the sugar moiety in glyceroglycolipids. Sphingolipids (also termed phosphosphingolipids) are the respective compounds containing sphingosine instead of glycerol.

Cyclic esters, referred to as lactones, are realized in numerous natural products. Remarkable examples are the so-called macrolides, cyclic biomolecules with rings of usually 14 to 16 atoms (maximum variation of ring size 6 to 62) frequently used as antibiotics. Cyclic amides, the so-called lactams, are of lesser importance, and their
Fig. 10 Structures of selected biogenic lipids. (a) 1-hexadecanol C₁₆H₃₄O (a fatty alcohol), (b) hexadecanal C₁₆H₃₂O (a fatty aldehyde); (c) hexadecanoic acid C₁₆H₃₂O₂ (a fatty acid); (d) pentacycloanamnomic acid C₁₈H₂₆O₂ (a ladderane fatty acid), (e) tripalmitin C₅₁H₉₈O₆ (a triglyceride), (f) hexadecanoyl hexadecanoate C₃₂H₆₄O₂ (a wax ester), (g)
structural properties are less diverse as compared to lactones. However, the core structure of penicillin consists of a four-membered lactam ring, and five to seven ring lactams are useful starting materials for technical polyamide synthesis (e.g., ε-caprolactam, Fig. 9). Macrocyclic compounds comprising ester as well as amide (peptide) bonds are represented by the depsipeptides – a diverse group of pharmaceutically active substances.

Beside sulfur analogues of alcohols and ethers, sulfur is also involved in other more specific functional groups. One special structural feature of sulfur is the possibility to form oligosulfides by insertion of sulfur atoms into S–S, S–H, or S–C bonds of thioethers or thiols. This reaction is the result of a weak oxidation, during which the oxidation state of the sulfur atoms increases with ongoing rate of insertion. Disulfides are also formed by oxidative coupling of two thiols. Since this reaction is reversible, the thiol/disulfide redox reaction system plays a particular role in the three-dimensional arrangement of various biomacromolecules (e.g., enzymes and hormones). Naturally occurring polysulfides with a very simple molecular structure are dimethyl disulfide and dimethyl trisulfide (Fig. 9).

In organic molecules sulfur can be present also in higher oxidation states than in thiols and thioethers. Formal oxidation of the latter results in the formation of sulfoxides (R-SO-R’) and sulfones (R-SO2-R’). Exchanging an alkyl or aryl substituent in sulfones by a hydroxy group or amines leads to the compound classes of sulfonic acids and sulfonamides, which are frequently found in technical products, e.g., plasticizers, pharmaceuticals, or detergents, like N-butylbenzenesulfonamide (NBBS) or linear alkylbenzenesulfonates (LAS, Fig. 9).

Special molecular structures, in which oxygen and sulfur atoms are involved in aromatic systems with sp²-hybridization, are five-membered rings containing heteroatoms. The conjugated C=C double bonds form together with the remaining p-orbital of the heteroatom the delocalized aromatic π-system. Basic compounds of this group of so-called heterocyclic aromatic compounds are furan and thiophene. Their aromaticity is lower (lowest for furan) when compared to aromatic hydrocarbons sensu stricto, but they exhibit typical aromatic properties with respect to their reactivity, spectroscopic behavior, and thermodynamic stability. Higher ring systems are built up by fusion of further benzene moieties leading to benzofuran, dibenzo-furan, or benzothiophene, dibenzothiophene, or benzonaphthothiophenes (Fig. 9), respectively. Furan and thiophene derivatives are common constituents of coals, tar, and petroleum. Furthermore, one of the most prominent groups of anthropogenic pollutants, the dioxins or PCDD/PCDFs, consist to a major part of chlorinated congeners of dibenzofuran (Fig. 9).

![Fig. 10](continued) dihexadecanoylphosphatidylcholine C₄₀H₈₀N₀₂P (a phosphatidylcholine), (h) dihexadecanoylglyceroglucopyranose C₄₁H₇₈O₁₀ (a glycolipid), (i) hexadecanoylsphingomyelin C₃₉H₇₉N₂O₆P (a sphingolipid), (j) crenarchaeol C₈₂H₁₅₄O₆ (an ether lipid), (k) (15E,22E)-heptatriaconta-15,22-dien-2-one C₃₇H₇₀O (a sterol), (l) cholesterol C₂₇H₄₆O (a sterol), (m) ergosterol C₂₈H₄₄O (a sterol), (n) β-amyrin C₃₀H₅₀O (a triterpenol)
4.2 Nitrogen-containing Compounds

The elements of group 15 of the periodic table of the chemical elements, viz., the pnictogens, that are involved significantly in organic chemistry, are nitrogen and to a much lower extent phosphorus. The latter element appears in biogenic organic compounds dominantly as phosphoric acid coupled to organic moieties via ester bonds. Although the structural diversity of organically bound phosphorus is limited, certain of these compounds are of essential relevance in biochemical processes. Well-known examples highlighting this importance are adenosine tri- and diphosphate (ATP, ADP), the nucleic acids (RNA, DNA), phospholipids, or phosphoglycerates.

The structural diversity of nitrogen-containing organic compounds is much higher and comparable to those of oxygen- and sulfur-containing compounds. A group of simple nitrogen-containing compounds can be obtained by sequential alkylation of ammonia forming the amines which, depending on the degree of alkylation, are classified as primary, secondary, and tertiary amines. Compared with the ammonium cation, quaternary alkylation results in the formation of quaternary ammonium cations and corresponding salts. Aliphatic ring systems involving secondary or tertiary amines are common structural moieties (e.g., pyrrolidine, piperidine, Fig. 11). Furthermore, the functional group of amines, the amino group, can be attached manifold to carbon backbones leading to diamines, triamines, etc. such as spermidine (Fig. 11), a biogenic compound involved in cellular metabolism. In analogy to the corresponding oxygen compounds (alcohols, phenols), also amines form intermolecular hydrogen bonds and are therefore well soluble in water. However, amines are prominent parts of membrane lipids, especially of the polar head groups, like ethanolamine, choline, and sphingosine (Fig. 11).

Under physiological conditions, amines are usually protonated due to their strong basicity. The replacement of hydrogen atoms in ammonia by alkyl groups enhances the basicity by a positive inductive effect, which can partially be compensated by an opposite direction of the inductive impact or by steric hindrance. Therefore, first and second alkylation leads to a slightly elevated basicity, whereas tertiary amines exhibit similar pKb values when compared to ammonia. On the contrary, amines with aromatic substituents exhibit a lesser alkalinity as a result of the strong negative mesomeric effect of the aromatic substituent. This compound class refers to anilines denominated according to its simplest member, aniline (Fig. 11).

Amines are widespread constituents of the biosphere. Amino substitution is a basic structural feature of amino acids and enables this group of essential compounds to build up peptides and proteins by polycondensation. Further important biogenic nitrogen compounds act as neurotransmitters, like serotonin and dopamine, or as hormones, like histamine and adrenalin (Fig. 11). Volatile aliphatic amines exhibit bad odor and represent degradation products of more complex nitrogen-containing compounds. Industrially, amines are frequently used directly or act as raw material for the synthesis of dyes, in particular azo dyes (e.g., methyl orange), and drugs (e.g., amphetamine and derivatives, Fig. 11).

As introduced in Sect. 4.1 Oxygen- and Sulfur-containing Compounds, amines as well as anilines react readily with carboxylic acids to form amides or anilides,
respectively. In accordance with the nomenclature of substituted amines, also amides are differentiated by their degree of substitution forming primary, secondary, and tertiary amides. Of particular interest is the stabilization of carbonic acid by the formation of its mono- or diamide resulting in carbamate or urea derivatives. Beside its natural occurrence, these structural moieties are building up important classes of pesticides, e.g., aldicarb and isoproturone with carbamate or urea structures.

Fig. 11 Structures of selected nitrogen-containing compounds. Amines, (a) pyrrolidine C₄H₉N, (b) piperidine C₅H₁₁N, (c) spermidine C₇H₁₉N₃ (N-(3-aminopropyl)butane-1,4-diamine), (d) ethanolamine C₂H₇NO (2-aminoethanol), (e) choline C₅H₁₄NO (2-(trimethylammonium)ethanol), (f) aniline C₆H₅N; biogenic nitrogen compounds, (g) serotonin C₁₀H₁₂N₂O (3-(2-aminoethyl)-1H-indol-5-ol), (h) dopamine C₈H₁₁NO₂ (4-(2-aminoethyl)benzene-1,2-diol), (i) histamine C₅H₁₀N₃ (2-(1H-imidazol-4-yl)ethanamine), (j) adrenalin C₉H₁₃NO₃ (4-[1-hydroxy-2-(methylamino)ethyl] benzene-1,2-diol); synthetic nitrogen compounds, (k) methyl orange C₁₄H₁₄N₃O₃SNa (4-[(E)-[4-(dimethylamino)phenyl]diazenyl]-2-methylbenzenesulfonic acid), (l) amphetamine C₉H₁₃N (1-methyl-2-phenylethylamine), (m) aldicarb C₇H₁₄N₂O₂S ((1E)-2-methyl-2-(methylthio)propanal O-[(methylamino)carbonyl]oxime), (n) isoproturon C₁₂H₁₈N₂O₅ (N-(4-isopropylphenyl)-N,N-dimethyleurea), (o) 2,4,6-trinitrotoluene (TNT) C₇H₅N₃O₆, (p) nitrofene C₁₂H₇Cl₂NO₆ (1-(4-nitrophenoxyl)-2,4-dichlorobenzene), (q) nitroglycerine C₃H₅N₃O₉, (r) atrazine C₈H₁₄ClN₅ (6-chloro-N-ethyl-N′-isopropyl-1,3,5-triazine-2,4-diamine)
respectively (Fig. 11). Noteworthy, the formation of amides is not limited to carboxylic acids but also possible with sulfonic acids (sulfonamides) and phosphoric acid (phosphoramides).

Carbon-nitrogen bonds are also realized as double or triple bonds. Imines, which exhibit a C–N double bond, are usually easily hydrolyzed in aqueous system and, thus, play a minor role with respect to structural diversity in the environment. However, imine formation is known as an initial reaction in the nonenzymatic browning reaction between amino acids and carbohydrates, the so-called Maillard reaction. The C≡N triple bond, the functional group of nitriles, is mainly found in anthropogenic products; for example, acetonitrile is an important solvent, and the polymerization of nitriles, especially acrylonitrile, forms resistant polymers. However, various nitrile-containing natural products have been described (Fleming 1999). From a chemical point of view, nitriles are classified as carboxylic acid derivatives, since depletive hydrolysis of nitriles yields carboxylic acids.

The nitrogen atom in amino groups is amenable to oxidation forming the nitro group. Principally, nitro groups can be attached to aliphatic and aromatic moieties. However, in terms of environmental occurrence, only the nitro arenes are of greater importance. The nitro group exhibits an elevated relative oxygen content, which is the reason for the highly explosive properties of polynitro arene derivatives. Best known nitro-containing explosives are 2,4,6-trinitrotoluene (TNT), tetryl (2,4,6-trinitrophenyl-N-methylnitramine), and picric acid (2,4,6-trinitrophenol). Nitro substitution can also be found in selected personal care products, especially as fragrances like musk xylene or musk ketone, and pesticides (e.g., nitrofene). Nitro compounds should not be confused with organic nitrates, which represent the esters of nitric acid with alcohols also forming explosives (e.g., nitroglycerin) and are used as pharmaceuticals, like isosorbide mononitrate. Some structural examples are given in Fig. 11.

Nitrogen atoms are often incorporated in aromatic systems. With respect to sulfur and oxygen, heterocyclic aromatic compounds are dominated by five-membered ring systems containing one heteroatom. However, the possibility to form heterocyclic aromatic systems is not restricted to five-membered rings or to one heteroatom. In particular, nitrogen is forming a more complex family of heterocyclic aromatic compounds including different ring sizes with one (e.g., pyrrole, pyridine, azepine cation) or more (e.g., imidazole, pyrazine, triazine) nitrogen atoms. Bicyclic structures include nitrogen atoms in one or both ring systems, like in quinoline and purine. Despite their aromatic character, many of these compounds exhibit weak basicity. These structural moieties appear widespread in natural products comprising alkaloids, amino acids, nucleic acids, various coenzymes, and chlorophylls (Table 2). Xenobiotics with nitrogen containing heteroaromatic moieties are, for example, the triazine pesticides including atrazine (Fig. 11), simazine, and terbutylazine.

4.3 Halogenated Compounds

Halogen atoms are attached to aliphatic as well as aromatic moieties. From a formal point of view, halogen atoms substitute hydrogen atoms in C–H bonds resulting in
alkyl and aryl halides. Chemical reactions leading to halogenated organic compounds include radical, nucleophilic, or electrophilic substitutions of hydrogen atoms in hydrocarbons or functional groups in functionalized compounds (primarily alcohols) as well as electrophilic additions to unsaturated compounds. Dominantly chlorine and bromine are organically bound halogens, whereas fluorinated and iodinated compounds are less represented, especially in natural products (prominent exceptions are sodium fluoracetate, an antiherbivore poison in various plants, or the iodine-containing thyroid hormones thyroxine and triiodothyronine). However, fluorine-containing compounds are still important xenobiotics with partially high environmental impact, e.g., chlorofluorocarbons (CFC) or perfluorinated detergents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2</th>
<th>Selected nitrogen containing heterocyclic systems and corresponding biogenic compounds exhibiting these moieties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pyrrolidine</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pyrrolidine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperidine</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Piperidine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrrole</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pyrrole" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyridine</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pyridine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imidazole</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Imidazole" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrimidine</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pyrimidine" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indole</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Indole" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinoline</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Quinoline" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purine</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Purine" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(PFAS, PFCA). Even for iodine-organic compounds, some very special applications are known, e.g., the iodine-containing X-ray contrast medium iopromide, leading also to an environmental occurrence of these compounds.

The high structural diversity of halogenated organic compounds is based on three independent factors. Firstly, the degree of halogenation may cover a wide range from monohalogenated to perhalogenated compounds. Secondly, the location of halogen substituents at different carbon atoms of aliphatic or aromatic moieties leads to numerous constitutional isomers. Finally, mixed halogenation strongly expands the compositional variability. Thus, halogenated compounds with a given carbon skeleton exist as large sets of so-called congeners, as exemplified for chlorinated/brominated benzenes in Table 3.

Numerous congener groups of xenobiotic halogenated organic compounds represent important environmental contaminants featuring the described structural diversity. Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and dibenzofurans (usually summarized as “dioxins”) exhibit specific congener patterns allowing to differentiate their typical emission sources (e.g., Fiedler 1996). Also polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) or polybrominated diphenyl ethers, which are widespread used flame retardants, appear with characteristic patterns of congeners (Ballschmiter et al. 1987; de Boer et al. 2000). Due to the moderate polarity of the C–halogen bond and their inability to form hydrogen bonds, organic halogen compounds are often quite lipophilic and thus behave like lipids.

Over decades it has been assumed that halogenated compounds can be found only infrequently in living organisms. However, over the last 20 years, the information on natural chlorinated and brominated compounds increased dramatically and disclosed a high diversity of halogenated natural products in fungi, algae, terrestrial plants, mammals, and further biota (Gribble 1994, 2000; Ballschmiter 2003). The molecular structures range from simple haloalkanes to complex and highly functionalized compounds as partially illustrated in Fig. 12. It is also shown that a high degree of halogenation is not restricted to xenobiotic compounds but can be also observed in natural products.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree of halogenation</th>
<th>Number of distinct substitution patterns for chlorine only</th>
<th>Number of distinct substitution patterns for chlorine + bromine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Cl(_1): 1</td>
<td>Cl(_1) + Br(_1): 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Cl(_2): 3</td>
<td>Cl(_2) + ClBr + Br(_2): 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cl(_3): 3</td>
<td>Cl(_3) + BrCl(_2) + Br(_2)Cl + Br(_3): 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Cl(_4): 3</td>
<td>Cl(_4) + BrCl(_3) + Br(_2)Cl(_2) + Br(_3)Cl + Br(_4): 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Cl(_5): 1</td>
<td>Cl(_5) + BrCl(_4) + Br(_2)Cl(_3) + Br(_3)Cl(_2) + Br(_4)Cl + Br(_5): 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Cl(_6): 1</td>
<td>Cl(_6) + BrCl(_5) + Br(_2)Cl(_4) + Br(_3)Cl(_3) + Br(_4)Cl(_2) + Br(_5)Cl + Br(_6): 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resulting number of congeners</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Physical Properties

The environmental behavior of an organic compound, like its bioavailability or its tendency to accumulate in certain compartments, is controlled by its macroscopic physicochemical properties, such as melting and boiling point, density, viscosity, vapor pressure, or aqueous solubility. These properties show systematic variations directly related to the molecular structure of a compound which determines the ability of its molecules to interact with other molecules (or other components of their direct environment such as the surfaces of solids). Relevant structural features are the presence or absence (as in hydrocarbons) of certain functional groups, intramolecular interactions of different substituents (e.g., shielding effects), or molecular size and shape.

The most important intermolecular forces in order of increasing strength are van der Waals interactions, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding. Van der Waals interactions depend on weak forces between molecules and/or ions, whose energy decreases by the sixth power of the distance between the involved species. Asymmetric distribution of electron density or electronic charge in molecular or ionic species generates permanent dipole moments. A comparison of dipole moments of selected hydrocarbons and functionalized organic compounds illustrates the influence of heteroatoms and functional groups (Table 4). Dipole moments are typically weak in hydrocarbons. Due to the high degree of structural symmetry, certain hydrocarbons such as methane, 2,2-dimethylpropane, or benzene do not even
possess a permanent dipole moment. Notably, carbonyl compounds (aldehydes and ketones) possess rather elevated dipole moments which contribute to their relatively high melting and boiling points and aqueous solubilities. Hydrogen bonding requires the presence of functional groups in which hydrogen is covalently bound to a heteroatom such as nitrogen or oxygen. Carboxylic acids, alcohols, phenols, or amines are typical compound classes which exhibit the ability to form hydrogen bonds. A negative partial charge is at the more electronegative heteroatom, whereas carbon and hydrogen atoms carry a positive partial charge in these structural moieties. The resulting dipole moments induce electrostatic forces between functional groups of two different molecules leading to intermolecular interactions or of the same molecule, resulting in intramolecular interactions. Importantly, functional groups, without hydrogen being bound to a heteroatom such as carbonyl groups, may be involved in hydrogen bonding by interacting with heteroatom-bound hydrogen atoms of functional groups in the same or another molecule. The bond strength ranges from \(<5\) to \(155\) kJ mol\(^{-1}\); the average bond length of hydrogen bridges in water is approximately \(180\) pm. Such intra- and intermolecular interactions of low energy play an important role in secondary and tertiary structures of biogenic macromolecules such as proteins or nucleic acids.

### Table 4 Dipole moments of selected organic compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aliphatic compounds</th>
<th>Aromatic compounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Formula</strong></td>
<td><strong>Name</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(CH(_3))(_3)</td>
<td>Isobutane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-CH (CH(_3))(_2)</td>
<td>Isopentane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C(_6)H(_6)</td>
<td>Cyclopentene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_2=)CH-CH(_3)</td>
<td>Propene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_2=)CH-CH(_2)-CH(_3)</td>
<td>1-Butene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_2=)CH-CH(_2)-CH(_2)H</td>
<td>1-Pentene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-O-CH(_3)</td>
<td>Ethylmethyl ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-NH(_2)</td>
<td>Ethylamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-SH</td>
<td>Ethenethiol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-OH</td>
<td>Ethanol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-(C=O)-O-CH(_3)</td>
<td>Methyl acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-Cl</td>
<td>Chloroethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-CHO</td>
<td>Propanal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-(C=O)-CH(_3)</td>
<td>2-Butanone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-NO(_2)</td>
<td>Nitroethane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH(_3)-CH(_2)-CN</td>
<td>Propionitrile</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In homologous series of various compound classes, there is a systematic increase in melting and boiling points (Fig. 13). The difference in boiling points of the most (methane) and least (formic acid) volatile C$_1$ compound is as high as 262.5 °C. The total range of boiling points for representatives of different compound classes at a given carbon number decreases with increasing carbon number and is below 100 °C at C$_{16}$ for the compound classes depicted in Fig. 13. Hydrocarbons generally show the lowest, and compound classes such as carboxylic acids and 1-alkanols, which are able to form strong hydrogen bonds, the highest melting and boiling points. According to Carnelley’s rule, high molecular symmetry is associated with high melting points, for example, the melting point of benzene (5.5 °C) is significantly higher than that of toluene (−94.9 °C) despite the lower molecular weight (Brown and Brown 2000).

Differences in density between members of different compound classes are large for the lower homologues and become systematically smaller with increasing molecular size (Fig. 14a). As for the boiling points, the largest overall difference among the compound classes depicted in Fig. 14a is observed between methane and formic acid. The plot also reveals that the density increases with increasing carbon number for hydrocarbons, while it decreases for $n$-alkanoic acids and their methyl esters. Some compound classes such as 1-alkanols, alkanals, and 2-alkanones do not show significant variations of density in relation to the carbon number. At a given carbon number, the densities of $n$-alkanes and 1-alkenenes are relatively similar, while those of alkylbenzenes and alkylcyclohexanes are significantly higher. An increasing degree of halogenation of organic compounds leads to a significant increase in

![Fig. 13 Boiling points at atmospheric pressure versus carbon number for selected compound classes. (All data are from Lide 2002)](image-url)
density as illustrated for haloethanes in Fig. 14b; the effect increases in the order fluorine < chlorine < bromine < iodine. Density should not be confused with specific gravity which is calculated as the ratio of the density of a given compound to that of water. In the petroleum industry, the API gravity (¼ American Petroleum Institute gravity) is the most important measure for the quality of crude oils. It is calculated according to the formula

\[
\text{API gravity} = \left(\frac{141.5}{\text{specific gravity at 15.5°C}}\right) - 131.5;
\]

thus API gravity is inversely proportional to density. In-reservoir biodegradation is one of the most important processes leading to a decrease of API gravity and thus a quality deterioration of crude oils. The increase of density in such oils is due to the specific loss of hydrocarbons of relatively low density and a resulting relative enrichment of functionalized organic compounds of higher density.

Viscosity is an important physicochemical property which characterizes the resistance of a fluid being deformed and may be applied to pure organic compounds or mixtures. Within homologous series of compounds, it increases exponentially with increasing carbon number as illustrated for selected \(n\)-alkanes in Fig. 15. As a consequence crude oils containing high proportions of long-chain \(n\)-alkanes may be highly viscous and therefore difficult to produce. Viscosity decreases with increasing temperature (Fig. 15); therefore, some crude oils which are produced as a liquid from
their deep hot subsurface reservoirs become solid under surface conditions. For crude oils, a rough positive correlation of API gravity and viscosity is observed.

The interaction with different phases in multiphase systems is crucial for the environmental behavior of organic compounds. In natural environments, various gaseous (air, natural gas, gas condensates), liquid (aqueous phases, nonaqueous phase liquids (NAPL)) and solid (inorganic sediment particles and rock matrices, organic particles, and amorphous kerogen) phases have to be considered. Very important with respect to the effects of organic compounds on biota is their transport behavior in mobile gaseous and liquid phases. Boiling point and vapor pressure are relevant properties controlling the abundance of hydrocarbons and other organic compounds in air, while aqueous solubility represents a key parameter with respect to their occurrence and distribution in the hydrosphere.

Only certain organic compounds are miscible with water. Typically, these consist of rather polar molecules containing functional groups that may form hydrogen bonds. For a broad range of organic compound classes including all known types of hydrocarbons, aqueous solubility shows a systematic relationship to specific structural features. In homologous series of various compound classes, the aqueous solubility decreases with increasing carbon number (Fig. 16a). It is evident from Fig. 16a, that the aqueous solubility of hydrocarbons is typically lower than that of functionalized organic compounds with the same number of carbon atoms. Among the hydrocarbons, acyclic saturated compounds are 1–3 orders of magnitude less water soluble than aromatic hydrocarbons of similar molecular weight (Fig. 16b). As a consequence, compounds structurally as different as \( n \)-dodecane (C\(_{12}\)H\(_{26}\), molecular weight 170) and picene (C\(_{22}\)H\(_{14}\), molecular weight 278) have very similar

![Fig. 15 Viscosity at different temperatures versus carbon number for selected \( n \)-alkanes.](image)

(All data are from Lide 2002)
Fig. 16 (a) Aqueous solubility versus carbon number for different compound classes. Formic, acetic, propionic, and butanoic acid as well as methanol, ethanol, and 1-propanol are fully miscible with water and therefore do not occur in this plot. (b) Aqueous solubility versus molecular weight for different types of hydrocarbons. With very few exceptions, solubility data determined at 25 °C were used. (All data are from Lide 2002). Please note the logarithmic scale of the y-axes.
aqueous solubilities at 25 °C (\(n\)-dodecane 0.00000037 mass %, picene 0.00000025 mass %). The aqueous solubility of cycloalkanes, alkenes, and cycloalkenes is typically slightly higher than that of saturated hydrocarbons of similar molecular weight reflecting their slightly higher polarity.

Importantly, some of the mentioned physicochemical properties show a significant dependence on environmental parameters which have to be taken into account when evaluating the behavior of a specific compound. For example, boiling points show a strong pressure dependence, while viscosities strongly depend on temperature (Fig. 15). The phase behavior of hydrocarbon fluids (exclusive occurrence as gas or liquid or co-occurrence of both phases) in subsurface petroleum systems is governed by the given temperature-pressure regime. The aqueous solubility of hydrocarbons typically increases with increasing temperature but decreases with increasing salinity.

An environmentally highly relevant parameter of organic compounds is their octanol-water partition coefficient, which characterizes the distribution of a compound between 1-octanol (as a model phase for lipophilic compartments) and water phases which are in equilibrium. Increasing octanol-water partition coefficients as typically seen in homologous series of organic compounds (Fig. 17) indicate the increasingly lipophilic nature of these compounds. However, there is no specific threshold value for the octanol-water coefficient above which a compound is classified as a lipid. At a given carbon number, hydrocarbons but also halogenated

---

**Fig. 17** Octanol-water partition coefficients versus carbon number for selected compound classes. Please note that \( \log P \) is used in this plot. (All data are from Lide 2002)
organic compounds typically show higher octanol-water partition coefficients than (other) functionalized compounds. Octanol-water partition coefficients should be used cautiously when assessing the behavior of a compound in a natural environment. For example, crude oil-water partition coefficients determined for alkyl phenols (Taylor et al. 1997) differ significantly from the octanol-water partition coefficients of these compounds with respect to the differences between isomers. Analogously, Henry’s law constant may be used to characterize the behavior of gases. According to Henry’s law, the amount of a given gas dissolved in a given type and volume of liquid is directly proportional to the partial pressure of that gas in equilibrium with that liquid.

All physicochemical data used in this chapter were taken from the *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (Lide 2002) which represents a very useful source of information. In its Appendix B, it also provides a comprehensive compilation of sources of physical and chemical data including web-based resources. It should be noted that in addition to experimental determination of such data, modern tools of molecular modeling provide a complementary approach toward an improved understanding of the environmental behavior of hydrocarbons and other organic compounds.

### 6 Reactions

#### 6.1 Reactions of Saturated Hydrocarbons

Saturated hydrocarbons (*n*-alkanes, branched alkanes, and cycloalkanes) contain exclusively $\sigma$-bonds but no (polar) functional groups. The difference in electronegativity of carbon (2.55) and hydrogen (2.00) is small; therefore C–H bonds are rather nonpolar. As a consequence, saturated hydrocarbons are quite unreactive or inert. The term *paraffin* in fact describes this lack of affinity in chemical reactions. Efficient, specific, and selective methods for C–H bond activation in nonreactive substrates can continuously be regarded as one of the great challenges in synthetic organic chemistry. Despite the enormous progress within the last decades in understanding the biochemical (enzymatic) mechanisms of C–H bond activation (e.g., Rabus et al. 2016) – as an integral component of any hydrocarbon oxidation pathway – new still undiscovered modes of C–H bond activation can potentially contribute to an forward-looking use of fossil fuel hydrocarbons beyond combustion.

Due to the lack of polar bonds in saturated hydrocarbons, reactions with polar species via heterolytic mechanisms are relatively unimportant. In fact, the main reactions of saturated hydrocarbons proceed via (free) radical species (= atomic or molecular species with unpaired electrons). Alkyl radicals may be generated from saturated hydrocarbons by a homolytic cleavage of a C–H or a C–C bond. This process requires significant amounts of energy, known as the homolytic bond dissociation energy (see Table 5 for homolytic C–H bond dissociation energies of saturated hydrocarbons). The amount of energy required is related to the stability of the formed radical which increases in the order primary < secondary < tertiary due
Table 5  Homolytic C–H bond dissociation energies of saturated hydrocarbons. (Data from McMillen and Golden 1982)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hydrocarbon</th>
<th>Product radical</th>
<th>kJ mol(^{-1})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopropane</td>
<td>Cyclopropyl-</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methane</td>
<td>Methyl-</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,2-Dimethylpropane</td>
<td>Neopentyl-</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethane</td>
<td>Ethyl-</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propane</td>
<td>Propyl-</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylocyclopropane</td>
<td>Cyclopropylmethyl-</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclobutane</td>
<td>Cyclobutyl-</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Butane</td>
<td>sec-Butyl-</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclohexane</td>
<td>Cyclohexyl-</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propane</td>
<td>Isopropyl-</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isobutane</td>
<td>tert-Butyl-</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycloheptane</td>
<td>Cycloheptyl-</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

to hyperconjugation. In other words, the homolytic cleavage of a terminal C–H bond in alkanes requires more energy than the homolytic cleavage of a subterminal C–H bond. This is a possible reason for the observation that \(n\)-alkane activation in anaerobic bacteria (via radical addition to the double bond of fumarate) takes place at the subterminal but not at the terminal carbon atom, despite the unfavorable fact that this introduces an additional branch into the initial activation product (Rabus et al. 2001).

Radicals may undergo a number of reaction types, including substitution, addition to double bonds, intramolecular rearrangement, and fragmentation. Radical halogenation is an important process in synthetic chemistry, in which haloalkanes are formed from alkanes and molecular halogen by substitution of a hydrogen atom by a halogen atom via radical intermediates. In the production of synthetic polymers (e.g., of polyethylene from ethene), the multiple steps of chain elongation can proceed via radical addition to the double bond of the respective unsaturated monomers. Addition of hydrocarbons to fumarate during their activation in anaerobic metabolism is thought to involve alkyl and arylalkyl radicals which can be formed from their parent hydrocarbon via homolytic cleavage of a C–H bond by glycyl radical enzymes (e.g., Buckel and Golding 2006; Heider 2007). However, Jarling et al. (2012) identified the stereoisomers of (1-methylpentyl)succinate formed from anaerobic activation of \(n\)-hexane by an anaerobically cultivated bacterial strain, leading to the assumption that no alkyl radical intermediate but rather a concerted mechanism is involved in that reaction. Activation of toluene might still proceed via a benzyl radical (Szaleniec and Heider 2016; Seyhan et al. 2016).

Combustion denominates the complete oxidation of saturated hydrocarbons to carbon dioxide and water with oxygen being the other reactant. The overall process is a complex interplay of numerous types of chemical reactions in which diverse radical species are key players. Activated oxygen itself is a diradical, which forms various reactive intermediates such as hydroperoxide or hydroxyl radicals. Again homolytic cleavage yielding alkyl or aryl radicals is a key step in the activation of the
inert hydrocarbons to be converted to functionalized (oxygenated) species that can be further oxidized in subsequent reactions. Likewise, highly reactive oxygen species play a crucial role as co-substrates in the activation of hydrocarbons for aerobic biodegradation.

Radical reactions are also of major importance in the formation of fossil fuels, especially natural gas and crude oil. It is generally accepted that these petroleum fluids are formed via thermal breakdown of a geomacromolecule termed kerogen during deep burial of biogenic organic matter in sedimentary basins. As temperatures increase with burial depth, pyrolytic reactions, i.e., radical reactions, will lead to the fragmentation of larger structural moieties and the formation of low molecular weight organic compounds, predominantly hydrocarbons. Depending on the temperature-pressure regime and the geological history, secondary cracking through radical reactions leads to further processing of the original petroleum fluids, e.g., oil-to-gas cracking is a significant process in many petroleum systems (Schenk et al. 1997). There are controversial discussions as to which extent these processes are controlled by thermal or catalytic mechanisms (e.g., Mango 2000). Similar reactions are employed in the industrial reformation of crude oil.

### 6.2 Reactions of Unsaturated Hydrocarbons

Due to the minor relevance of alkynes as natural products or constituents of fossil fuels, only the reactivity of C–C double bonds is considered in this section. Alkenes undergo three main types of reactions, namely, addition to the double bond, oxidation, and polymerization. Polymerization of unsaturated hydrocarbons occurs in some plants, i.e., formation of natural rubber and gutta-percha from isoprene (Fig. 5). Polymerization of a wide range of unsaturated organic compounds (both hydrocarbons and non-hydrocarbons) via ionic or radical mechanisms is a key industrial process in the production of synthetic polymers.

Due to the π-electrons, C–C double bonds are characterized by an elevated electron density and act as nucleophiles in chemical reactions. Therefore, their most important reaction type is electrophilic addition in which the C–C double bond is converted to a C–C single bond by removal of the π-bond under concomitant formation of two new covalent σ-bonds (Fig. 18). In the first step a suitable

![Fig. 18](image-url)  
*Fig. 18* General mechanism of electrophilic addition to C–C double bonds. Typical reactants X–Y that may be added to C–C double bonds in electrophilic addition reactions are molecular hydrogen (H–H), molecular halogen (F–F, Cl–Cl, Br–Br), hydrogen halide (H–Cl, H–Br, H–I), and water (H–OH)
electrophile, i.e., a species with an electron deficiency, typically a cation, forms a covalent bond with one of the two carbon atoms of the double bond, while the positive charge is located on the other carbon atom. In a second step, a neutral molecule is formed by connection of the originally formed cation to a nucleophile, i.e., a species with an electron surplus, typically an anion. A specific situation occurs if both reactants are unsymmetrical, e.g., two different products are possible from the addition of HCl to propene, namely, 1- and 2-chloropropane. In such cases the Markovnikov rule helps to predict the expected product distribution. According to the Markovnikov rule, the addition of the electrophile in the first step of the reaction occurs in a mode that the more stable carbenium ion (= trivalent carbocation) is formed preferentially. The stability of carbenium ions depends mainly on the extent of hyperconjugation of the unoccupied $p$-orbital with binding molecular orbitals of the substituents. As a general rule of thumb, in alkenes the electrophile will be connected to the carbon atom of the double bond with the higher number of hydrogen atoms because the stability of the formed carbenium ions decreases in the order tertiary $>$ secondary $>$ primary due to the stabilization by hyperconjugation with C–H or C–C bonds of the adjacent alkyl groups. Many electrophilic additions are reversible, i.e., alkenes (or unsaturated organic compounds) may be formed by suitable elimination reactions.

Beside combustion which completely oxidizes unsaturated hydrocarbons (in analogy to saturated hydrocarbons) to carbon dioxide and water, various reactions with different types of oxygenating reagents are known that yield specific products. Catalytic oxidation with oxygen or the reaction with percarboxylic acids yields epoxides which can be ring-opened to vicinal trans-diols by acid-catalyzed hydrolysis. The reaction of alkenes with osmium tetroxide on the other hand yields vicinal cis-diols. Ozonolysis, i.e., the reaction of alkenes with ozone, produces either ketones/aldehydes upon reductive work-up or ketones/carboxylic acids upon oxidative work-up depending on the structure of the alkene. In the case of cycloalkenes with a double bond in the ring system, diketones, dialdehydes, or oxoaldehydes are formed.

It should be noted that these reactions of double bonds do not form new C–C bonds and therefore are not directly useful for (bio)synthesis of more complex carbon skeletons. However, they are very suitable for introducing functional groups. Thus, most of the synthetic reactions have enzymatic analogues which play important roles in many metabolic pathways. Hydrogenation of C–C double bonds is a step in the biosynthesis of fatty acids. Hydration of C–C double bonds occurs in the TCA cycle (transformation of cis-aconitate to isocitrate and of fumarate to malate) and in $\beta$-oxidation of fatty acids.

Various examples illustrate the relevance of oxidation of C–C double bonds for activation and further metabolism of alkenes and aromatic hydrocarbons. Alkene monoxygenase catalyzes the transformation of propene to 1,2-epoxypropane, the first step in the aerobic metabolism of this hydrocarbon. Epoxidation of C–C double bonds plays a key role in biosynthetic pathways, e.g., squalene-2,3-epoxide formed from the hydrocarbon squalene (Fig. 5) is a central intermediate in biosynthesis of steroids and triterpenoids.
Similar monooxygenase-catalyzed reactions may also be involved in the aerobic transformation/activation of aromatic hydrocarbons. Such transformations formally are epoxidations of one specific double bond in a “cyclohexa-1,3,5-triene” moiety (rather than a reaction of an aromatic system) although the reaction has to overcome the aromatic resonance stabilization. The resulting arene oxides may be rearranged to phenols (NIH-shift) or attacked by nucleophiles; an example of the latter is the stereospecific ring opening of arene oxides to trans-cyclohexa-3,5-diene-1,2-diol moieties. Likewise, the activation of aromatic hydrocarbons by dioxygenases resembles the synthesis of vicinal cis-diols from alkenes using osmium tetroxide. The assumed initial step is the addition of dioxygen to one specific double bond of a “cyclohexa-1,3,5-triene” moiety; the resulting 1,2-dioxetane is hydrogenated in a NADH-dependent reaction to form a cis-cyclohexa-3,5-diene-1,2-diol moiety. Intra- and extra-diol (ortho- and meta-) ring cleavage in the further aerobic metabolism of catechols oxidize double bonds in a way which to a certain extent is similar to the reaction of alkenes with ozone.

6.3 Reactions of Aromatic Hydrocarbons

The most important reaction of aromatic hydrocarbons is electrophilic aromatic substitution, where the hydrocarbon reacts as a nucleophile due to the high electron density on the aromatic ring. In electrophilic aromatic substitution, one hydrogen atom of the aromatic hydrocarbon is substituted by a functional group (Fig. 19a). The first step in the reaction mechanism is the formation of a π-complex through the interaction of an electrophile with the π-electron system. The π-complex is then converted to a σ-complex in which the σ-bond between the electrophile and a carbon atom of the aromatic ring already exists. The reaction is completed by removal of the hydrogen that is substituted as a proton. Classical electrophilic aromatic substitutions are halogenation, nitration, sulfonation, and Friedel-Crafts acylation and alkylation (Fig. 19b).

It is important to note that substituents in aromatic molecules have a significant effect on the course of electrophilic aromatic substitutions in a twofold manner. Firstly, they may either activate or deactivate the aromatic system for subsequent reactions (Fig. 19c, Table 6). The ability of substituents to activate or deactivate an aromatic compound with respect to an electrophilic attack depends on their ability to increase or decrease the electron density on the aromatic ring by inductive or resonance effects. Benzene derivatives containing deactivating substituents such as chlorobenzene or nitrobenzene react significantly slower in electrophilic substitutions than benzene, while derivatives containing activating substituents such as toluene or phenol react significantly faster. Therefore, the introduction of oxygen substituents is an important mechanism of biological activation of aromatic hydrocarbons for further metabolism. Secondly, substituents have a directing influence on the regioselectivity of subsequent reactions (Table 6). Ortho-/para-directors typically are substituents with unshared electron pairs such as the hydroxy group in phenol which support the attack of electrophiles in the o- and p-position by
**Table 6** Classification of substituents with respect to their effects on electrophilic aromatic substitution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(o-/p)-directing</th>
<th>(m)-directing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Activating</strong></td>
<td>-NH₂, -NHR, -NR₂</td>
<td>Amino-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-OH, -OR</td>
<td>Hydroxy-, Alkoxy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-NHCOR</td>
<td>Acylamino-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-R</td>
<td>Alkyl-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deactivating</strong></td>
<td>-F, -Cl, -Br, -I</td>
<td>Halogen-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-COR, CO₂H</td>
<td>Acyl-, carboxy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-CONH₂, -CO₂R</td>
<td>Carboxamido-, carboalkoxy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-SO₃H</td>
<td>Sulfonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-CN</td>
<td>Cyano-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-NO₂</td>
<td>Nitro-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fig. 19** (a) General mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution. (b) Selected examples. (c) The activating or deactivating influence of substituents on the reactivity compared to that of benzene is illustrated for nitration of different benzene derivatives.
resonance stabilization of the intermediate σ-complexes. The o-/p-directing effect of alkyl substituents is best explained by hyperconjugation. Sterical effects are most important for observed deviations from the statistical distribution (2:1) of o- and p-products. Meta-directors such as the nitro group destabilize the σ-complexes formed by attack of an electrophile in o- and p-position due to resonance structures with positive (partial) charges on adjacent atoms; therefore, the reaction in meta position is favored.

Aromatic molecules may also react with nucleophiles; however, such reactions are not typical for aromatic hydrocarbons, i.e., the nucleophilic substitution of hydrogen in aromatic compounds is uncommon. Important mechanisms of reactions with nucleophiles are the substitution of suitable leaving groups such as chloride, bromide, or sulfite via an addition-elimination mechanism (similar to electrophilic aromatic substitution) or the attack of the nucleophile on a free aryl cation that has been generated by elimination of nitrogen from an aryl diazonium salt. Some substitution reactions proceed via addition of nucleophiles to arynes (e.g., 1,2-dehydrobenzene) generated from suitable aromatic substrates by the removal of two o-substituents. Nucleophilic substitution plays a role in coupling reactions such as the Ullmann reaction used to synthesize biaryls.

Homolytic cleavage of aromatic C–H bonds is energetically unfavorable (the homolycic C–H bond dissociation energy to form the phenyl radical from benzene is as high as 464 kJ mol⁻¹; McMillen and Golden 1982). Therefore reactions of aromatic molecules via free aryl radical intermediates are not very common. An interesting reaction involving aryl radicals is the hydroxylation of benzene to phenol by Fenton’s reagent. Fenton’s reagent, a solution of hydrogen peroxide and an iron catalyst which generates hydroxyl and hydroperoxide radicals as reactive species, is used to oxidize contaminants and wastewater.

Aromatic hydrocarbons may be catalytically hydrogenated to the corresponding cycloalkanes at high temperature and pressure. Reactions of aromatic hydrocarbons leading to a partial reduction of the aromatic ring are rare because of the high resonance energy. In fact, cyclohexa-1,3-diene and cyclohexa-1,4-diene (Fig. 5) are excellent hydrogen donors in transfer hydrogenation as they readily oxidize to benzene. The reduction of benzene to cyclohexa-1,4-diene with sodium and an alcohol in liquid ammonia is known as the Birch reduction. Likewise, naphthalene may be reduced under these conditions to 1,4,5,8-tetrahydronaphthalene (Fig. 5). The Birch reaction proceeds via alternating single electron- and proton-transfer steps to the aromatic ring. It is assumed that the enzymatic reduction of benzoyl-CoA, a key step in anaerobic metabolism of aromatic compounds, proceeds via a Birch-like mechanism, although the product is a conjugated 1,3-diene but not a nonconjugated 1,4-diene (Boll et al. 2002; Thiele et al. 2008). It is worth mentioning that hydrocarbons with a cyclohexa-1,3- or -1,4-diene moiety occur as natural products, e.g., α- and γ-terpinene (Fig. 5); however, biosynthesis does not proceed via reduction of the corresponding aromatic hydrocarbon p-cymene which is a common constituent of essential oils.
6.4 Specific Reactions of Functionalized Organic Compounds

Since functional groups influence dramatically the polarity in organic molecules, these moieties are likewise primary regions of chemical reactivity. Reactions leading to their exchange are predominantly substitution reactions. Nucleophilic substitution is of great relevance for functional groups in which more electronegative heteroatoms shift off negative electronic charge from the attached carbon atoms; in nucleophilic substitution reactions, the nucleophilic agents primarily attack these carbon atoms. Typical nucleophiles are anions or agents with atoms exhibiting free electron pairs such as ammonium and amines, halides, hydroxide ions, alkoxylates, and sulfur analogues. Important nucleophilic substitution reactions are, for example, the conversion of alcohols to halides, the methylation of alcohols generating methyl ethers or the alkylation of primary amines to form secondary or tertiary derivatives. Depending on the number of reactants involved in the rate determining step of substitution reactions (one or two), a mono- and bimolecular reaction mechanism has to be distinguished. Beside kinetic effects these mechanistic differences have implications for the stereochemistry of the substitution product. In monomolecular substitutions (SN1), a triplanar ionic transition state is attacked in the second reaction step from two sides or directions leading to racemization in the case of prochiral compounds. On the contrary, a bimolecular reaction (SN2) proceeds via a fixed bipyramidal structure of the intermediate and thus results in the inversion of the stereochemistry.

Note that nucleophilic substitutions are not restricted to the exchange of functional groups but are also useful tools to link individual molecules via heteroatoms. For example, ether bridges are generated by the nucleophilic attack of alkoxy ions on appropriate substrates; they are key structural elements in archaeal and bacterial lipids (isoprenoidal and non-isoprenoidal glycerol diethers). The inverse reaction in which the ether bond cleavage is typically initiated by strong Lewis acids also ranks among nucleophilic substitutions. A specific reaction type, in which solely functionalized molecules are involved is the condensation. This important reaction type is characterized by the linkage of two functional groups leading to a larger product molecule accompanied by the release of a second small-sized molecule. This second product is typically a thermodynamically highly stable compound (H2O, HCl, or similar), whose generation represents the propulsion of the reaction. Basically, condensation reactions are a subcategory of substitution reactions. Essential condensation reactions are performed by carboxylic groups with alcohols and amines forming esters and amides. These condensation reactions are used not only to build up dimers (e.g., aspartame) but also (in case of polyfunctionalized molecules) to form oligomers (e.g., valinomycin) or natural as well as xenobiotic polymers (e.g., proteins, suberins, nylon). Beside intermolecular reactions, also intramolecular substitution and condensation are realized abundantly. In particular, for oxygen-containing compounds, the formation of (a) cyclic ethers via nucleophilic substitution, (b) cyclic acetal and hemiacetals via addition/condensation, or (c) esters via condensation are important modes of transformation.
As a result of heteroatom functionalization, the state of oxidation at the affected carbon atoms may change. By introducing a more electronegative binding partner or more bonds to heteroatoms, the oxidation state shifts to a more positive value as the result of depleted electron density at the carbon atom. Reactions leading to increasing oxidation states are oxidation reactions; the inverse reactions are reduction reactions. Oxidation and reduction are not limited to carbon atoms since heteroatoms also exhibit different oxidation states. Essential oxidation reactions are the sequential transformation of primary alcohols to carboxylic acids via aldehydes as exemplified in the initial steps of the aerobic degradation pathway of citronellol forming citronellic acid. In this reaction sequence, two new carbon-oxygen bonds are introduced shifting the oxidation state of the involved carbon atom.

References

Abstract

This chapter is a review of petroleum chemistry particularly as it relates to oil spills. The traditional separation of saturates, aromatics, resins, and asphaltenes (SARA) oil components is summarized. Details on these groupings and many compounds within the groupings and, where available, the typical amounts found in some oils are given. A detailed look at compounds found in oil and the amount of these is presented. The compounds are related to the overall composition and the SARA composition. Details of more than 500 compounds will be given in the chapter.
The composition can be related to bulk properties and bulk composition. Examples of bulk composition and relation to properties are given.

1 Introduction

Oil is a general term that describes a wide variety of natural substances of plant, animal, or mineral origin and a range of synthetic compounds. This chapter covers crude oil and petroleum products derived from such oils. Crude oils are made up of hundreds of major constituents and thousands of minor ones. As their composition varies, each type of oil or petroleum product has certain unique characteristics or properties. These properties influence how the oil behaves when it is spilled and subsequently determines the fate and effects of the oil in the environment. Oil properties strongly influence the efficiency of cleanup operations.

2 The Composition of Oil

Crude oils are complex mixtures of hydrocarbons and organic compounds containing other elements ranging from smaller, volatile compounds to very large, nonvolatile compounds (Fingas 2011). The mixture of compounds varies with the geological formation of the area in which the crude oil is found. Crude oils are often similar in a given region and when drawn from a similar reservoir. Petroleum products such as gasoline and diesel fuel are mixtures of fewer compounds and are refined to specific standards. Thus, their properties are more specific and less variable. Crude oil contains many compounds of different sizes and different classes. In fact, there are so many that, as time goes by, more and more compounds are identified in oil. Analysts have preliminarily identified up to 17,500 compounds in an oil (Kinghorn 1983). At this time, about 100,000 are identified.

Hydrocarbon compounds are composed of hydrogen and carbon, which are the main elements in oils. Oils also contain varying amounts of sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, and trace metals such as nickel, vanadium, and chromium. This section will detail some of these compounds. In general, the hydrocarbons found in oils are characterized by their structures.

A common and older method of classification is by SARA – saturates, aromatics, resins, and asphaltenes. Table 1 illustrates the SARA classification along with classes of compounds typically found in this overall classification. The saturate group of components in oils consists primarily of alkanes, which are compounds of hydrogen and carbon with the maximum number of hydrogen atoms around each carbon atom. Thus, the term saturate is used because the carbon atoms are saturated with hydrogen atoms. The saturate group includes straight-chain alkanes and branched-chain alkanes and also includes cycloalkanes, which are compounds made up of the same carbon and hydrogen constituents, but with the carbon atoms
bonded to each other in rings. Straight-chain saturate compounds from C\textsubscript{18} and up are often referred to as waxes.

The elemental composition of oil is sometimes of interest. Crude oils have a typical composition as shown in Table 2 (Speight 2015).

### Table 1 Illustration of SARA and compound classes in oils

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Groupings</th>
<th>Chemical class</th>
<th>Alternate name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example compound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturates</td>
<td>Alkanes</td>
<td>Paraffins</td>
<td>n-alkanes are designated as waxes</td>
<td>Dodecane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cycloalkanes</td>
<td>Naphthenes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Decalin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatics</td>
<td>BTEX</td>
<td></td>
<td>Benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, (o)-, (m)- and (p)-xylene</td>
<td>Benzene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PAHs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anthracene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Naphthenoaromatics</td>
<td></td>
<td>Combinations of aromatics and cycloalkanes</td>
<td>Tetralin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resins</td>
<td></td>
<td>Class of mostly polar compounds typically containing nitrogen, sulfur, oxygen, or metals</td>
<td>Carbazole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphaltenes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Class of large non-hydrocarbon compounds containing nitrogen, sulfur, oxygen, or metals</td>
<td>Exact structures Not known</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2 Elemental composition of oil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Contents (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon</td>
<td>83–87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogen</td>
<td>10–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen</td>
<td>0.05–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur</td>
<td>0.1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen</td>
<td>0.05–1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The saturates, aromatics, resins, and asphaltenes (SARA) composition of oil is a more general analytical method which defines oils by precipitation and then by weight. Newer methods now employ thin-layer chromatography, and the values from both methods vary somewhat. This method is still useful however, and it provides useful data both to the refiner and to the environmentalist. Table 1 illustrates the typical compositions designated by SARA and some example compounds. Table 3 shows the gross composition of some typical oils and petroleum products. It is noted that the ranges of these compositions vary widely. Saturates are hydrocarbon compounds with the maximum number of hydrogen atoms. Aromatics are hydrocarbon compounds with at least one benzene ring. Resins and asphaltenes are
larger compounds containing mostly carbon and hydrogen, but containing other elements such as oxygen, sulfur, nitrogen, and metals.

Figure 1 shows the SARA composition of some typical oils and petroleum products. It can be seen that SARA content varies widely for the various products. The products illustrated in Fig. 1 are gasoline, diesel fuel, a light crude oil, a heavy crude oil, IFO (intermediate fuel oil), and Bunker C. These represent a large cross section of oils and petroleum products and serve to illustrate the broad spectrum of hydrocarbon liquids.

### Table 3  Typical composition of some oils and petroleum products in % except for metals which are given in ppm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Compound class</th>
<th>Gasoline</th>
<th>Diesel</th>
<th>Light crude</th>
<th>Heavy crude</th>
<th>IFO*</th>
<th>Bunker C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycloalkanes</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25–50</td>
<td>5–35</td>
<td>0–10</td>
<td>0–5</td>
<td>0–5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olefins</td>
<td>5–10</td>
<td>0–10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTEX</td>
<td>15–25</td>
<td>0.5–2.0</td>
<td>0.1–2.5</td>
<td>0.01–2.0</td>
<td>0.05–1.0</td>
<td>0.00–1.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAHs</td>
<td>0–5</td>
<td>10–35</td>
<td>15–40</td>
<td>30–50</td>
<td>30–50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polar compounds</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>1–15</td>
<td>5–40</td>
<td>15–25</td>
<td>10–30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resins</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0–10</td>
<td>2–25</td>
<td>10–15</td>
<td>10–20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphaltenes</td>
<td>0–10</td>
<td>0–20</td>
<td>5–10</td>
<td>5–20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.1–0.5</td>
<td>0–2</td>
<td>0–5</td>
<td>0.5–20</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metals</td>
<td></td>
<td>30–250</td>
<td>100–500</td>
<td>100–1000</td>
<td>100–2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*IFO is intermediate fuel oil which is residual fraction diluted by diesel fractions

**Fig. 1** An illustration of the typical amounts of SARA in various oils and fuel
2.1.1 Saturates
As noted in the general discussion on SARA, saturates are important economical constituents of oils. Saturates are often the most abundant compounds in any oil or petroleum product. Saturates are so-called because they are compounds containing the maximum number of hydrogen atoms and thus are saturated with hydrogen.

2.1.2 Alkanes
Alkanes, an important part of saturate composition, are hydrocarbons with a chain-like structure and without double bonds or atoms of other elements such as sulfur, nitrogen, or oxygen attached (Neumann et al. 1981). Alkanes, sometimes called paraffins, are typically the most abundant compounds in crude oils as well as in most fuels such as diesel fuel and gasoline. Most crude oils have anywhere between a few percent up to 30% alkanes. Alkanes are typically the target compounds sought by petroleum producers. It should be noted, however, that larger alkanes are also called waxes, and these are sometimes less desirable from a petroleum producer’s point of view.

Normal alkanes are those which are unbranched. All normal and branched alkanes have the generalized molecular formula of \( C_nH_{n+2} \) where \( n \) is the number of carbon atoms present. All alkanes are saturated, that is, they contain the most hydrogen that the configuration can have. The branching potential for alkanes increases as the size of the alkane increases. Table 4 shows the typical alkanes contained in crude oils and some fuels (Wang et al. 1993; 2003; CRC 2016–2017; Yalkowsky et al. 2010; Mackay et al. 1992; Verchueren 2001; Faksness et al. 2010; Wang and Brown 2008). Some properties and content of \( n \)-alkanes in some crude oils are also shown in this table. Figure 2 shows the structural isomers possible for \( C_6H_{14} \) (\( n \)-hexane, 2- and 3-methylpentane, 2,2- and 2,3-dimethylbutane), as an example of the diversity of branched alkanes. The column in Table 4 indicating the number of isomers shows the possible number of branched compounds. As can be seen in this table, the number of possible branched compounds rises to over one million by the time that carbon atom number 22 is reached. In fact, it is impossible to separate most branched compounds during chemical analysis. Thus, the specific nature of branched compounds in crude oils may be unknown for some time to come.

Table 5 shows the known subdivisions of the SARA contents. Table 5 shows that the \( n \)-alkanes typically account for about 10% of the saturates. It is suspected that the branched alkanes account for about two to five times that amount and that the cycloalkanes may account for about the same amount as the \( n \)-alkanes. Much more analytical work is required to adequately describe the detailed composition of oil.

2.1.3 Cycloalkanes
Cycloalkanes, compounds containing rings or cyclic structural moieties, are also saturated alkanes. These are sometimes called naphthenes. Monocyclic alkanes have the general formula \( C_nH_{2n} \). Typical base structures for cycloalkanes are shown in Fig. 2 (cyclopentane, cyclohexane, decalin). These base structures contribute to the
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Number of isomers</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>IUPAC name</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water (^a) g/L</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C(<em>5)H(</em>{12})</td>
<td>Pentane</td>
<td>72.149</td>
<td>109-66-0</td>
<td>3.9E(^{-2})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>C(<em>6)H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>Hexane</td>
<td>86.175</td>
<td>110-54-3</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>C(<em>7)H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>Heptane</td>
<td>100.202</td>
<td>142-82-5</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>C(<em>8)H(</em>{18})</td>
<td>Octane</td>
<td>114.229</td>
<td>111-65-9</td>
<td>0.7E(^{-3})</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>C(<em>9)H(</em>{20})</td>
<td>Nonane</td>
<td>128.255</td>
<td>111-84.2</td>
<td>1.2E(^{-4})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{22})</td>
<td>Decane</td>
<td>142.282</td>
<td>124-18-5</td>
<td>5E(^{-5})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{24})</td>
<td>Undecane</td>
<td>156.309</td>
<td>1120-21-4</td>
<td>6E(^{-6})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>C(<em>{12})H(</em>{26})</td>
<td>Dodecane</td>
<td>170.334</td>
<td>112-40-3</td>
<td>2E(^{-6})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>802</td>
<td>C(<em>{13})H(</em>{28})</td>
<td>Tridecane</td>
<td>184.361</td>
<td>629-50-5</td>
<td>4E(^{-7})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1858</td>
<td>C(<em>{14})H(</em>{30})</td>
<td>Tetradecane</td>
<td>198.388</td>
<td>629-59-4</td>
<td>3E(^{-7})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>4347</td>
<td>C(<em>{15})H(</em>{32})</td>
<td>Pentadecane</td>
<td>212.415</td>
<td>629-62-9</td>
<td>4E(^{-8})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>1.04E +04</td>
<td>C(<em>{16})H(</em>{34})</td>
<td>Hexadecane</td>
<td>226.441</td>
<td>544-76-3</td>
<td>&lt;6E(^{-6})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>2.49E +04</td>
<td>C(<em>{17})H(</em>{36})</td>
<td>Heptadecane</td>
<td>240.468</td>
<td>629-78-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>6.05E +04</td>
<td>C(<em>{18})H(</em>{38})</td>
<td>Octadecane</td>
<td>254.495</td>
<td>593-45-3</td>
<td>5.8E(^{-6})</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>1.48E +05</td>
<td>C(<em>{19})H(</em>{40})</td>
<td>Nonadecane</td>
<td>268.521</td>
<td>629-92-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>3.66E +05</td>
<td>C(<em>{20})H(</em>{42})</td>
<td>Icosane</td>
<td>282.547</td>
<td>112-95-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>9.11E +05</td>
<td>C(<em>{21})H(</em>{44})</td>
<td>Henicosane</td>
<td>296.574</td>
<td>629-94-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>2.28E +06</td>
<td>C(<em>{22})H(</em>{46})</td>
<td>Dososane</td>
<td>310.600</td>
<td>629-97-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>5.73E +06</td>
<td>C(<em>{23})H(</em>{48})</td>
<td>Tricosane</td>
<td>324.627</td>
<td>638-67-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>1.45E +07</td>
<td>C(<em>{24})H(</em>{50})</td>
<td>Tetracosane</td>
<td>338.654</td>
<td>646-31-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>3.68E +07</td>
<td>C(<em>{25})H(</em>{52})</td>
<td>Pentacosane</td>
<td>352.681</td>
<td>629-99-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>9.38E +07</td>
<td>C(<em>{26})H(</em>{54})</td>
<td>Hexacosane</td>
<td>366.707</td>
<td>630-01-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
majority of the cycloalkanes found in oil. The smaller cycloalkanes such as cyclo-
propane and cyclobutane are not common because they are not as stable as the
smaller-ring carbon bonds which have considerable ring strain, being stretched
above the normal carbon-carbon tetrahedral angle of 109°. Cycloalkanes with
more than one side chain may exist as stereoisomers (e.g., cis- and trans-isomers).
Some cycloalkanes found in oils are shown in Table 6. Because cycloalkanes are low
in abundance and may be difficult to separate in chromatographic analysis, there is
not much data on their abundance in oils.

### 2.1.4 Alkenes or Olefins

The olefins, or unsaturated compounds, are another group of compounds that contain
less hydrogen atoms than the maximum possible. Olefins have at least one carbon-
to-carbon double bond which displaces two hydrogen atoms. Significant amounts of
olefins are found only in refined products; however, some cyclic alkenes have been
observed in crude oils. It should be noted that SARA analysis does not include
alkenes in the analysis and does not specifically provide a method to separate them
from many other hydrocarbons.

### 2.1.5 Aromatic Compounds

The aromatic compounds include at least one benzene ring of six carbon atoms.
Three carbon-to-carbon double bonds float around the ring, and all six carbon atoms
are equivalent, thus providing high stability to the ring. Because of this stability,
benzene rings are very persistent and can have toxic effects on the environment. The
most common smaller aromatic compounds found in oil are often referred to as
BTEX, or benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylenes. BTEX compounds and data
on them are shown in Table 7. Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons or PAHs are
compounds consisting of at least two benzene rings. PAHs make up between
0 and 60% of the composition of crude oil. Common PAHs and their substituted
counterparts are shown in Table 8. As these are easily separated, there are much data

---

**Table 4 (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Number of isomers</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>IUPAC name</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water[^a] g/L</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>2.40E+08</td>
<td>C_{27}H_{56}</td>
<td>Heptacosane</td>
<td>380.734</td>
<td>593-49-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>6.17E+08</td>
<td>C_{28}H_{58}</td>
<td>Octacosane</td>
<td>394.761</td>
<td>630-02-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>1.59E+09</td>
<td>C_{29}H_{60}</td>
<td>Nonacosane</td>
<td>408.786</td>
<td>630-03-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>4.11E+09</td>
<td>C_{30}H_{62}</td>
<td>Triacontane</td>
<td>422.813</td>
<td>638-68-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[^a]: Approximate sign ~ indicates solubility values are variable

1 Yalkowsky et al. (2010)
2 Verschueren (2001)
on their presence in oils. These compounds have also been used somewhat as indicators of presence of certain types of oils. There exists a set of compounds designated by the US EPA as priority PAHs (Wang et al. 1993). The list of 34 EPA priority PHAs is given in Table 9, and the structures of 16 EPA priority PAHs are shown in Fig. 3. The concern with these compounds is that many of them are known to be relatively toxic and some to be carcinogenic as indicated in Table 9.

Aromatic compounds have the general formula \( C_nH_{2n-6r} \), where \( r \) is the number of rings. The amounts of aromatics in crude oils vary, but range from 0 to 15%. Aromatics are frequently concentrated by distillation in the refining processes into the heavier or residual fractions. Diesel fuel typically contains 5 to 25% aromatics,
### Table 5  Gross composition of some crude oils and petroleum products (all values in %)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ANS</th>
<th>Arabian heavy</th>
<th>Arabian light</th>
<th>ASMB</th>
<th>Cook inlet</th>
<th>Diesel fuel</th>
<th>Fuel #5</th>
<th>Heavy fuel</th>
<th>Mars TLP</th>
<th>Maya</th>
<th>Orimulsion</th>
<th>Platform Elly</th>
<th>Prudhoe Bay</th>
<th>Sockeye</th>
<th>South Louisiana</th>
<th>South Louisiana</th>
<th>Troll</th>
<th>West Delta Block 143</th>
<th>West Texas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saturates</td>
<td>75.0</td>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>75.5</td>
<td>77.3</td>
<td>66.7</td>
<td>88.2</td>
<td>44.2</td>
<td>42.5</td>
<td>58.4</td>
<td>46.5</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>34.6</td>
<td>60.8</td>
<td>49.2</td>
<td>80.8</td>
<td>79.4</td>
<td>66.9</td>
<td>61.0</td>
<td>78.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Alkanes</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatics</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>39.5</td>
<td>29.0</td>
<td>27.5</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>32.4</td>
<td>28.3</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTEX and C3</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAHs</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated UCM</td>
<td>65.7</td>
<td>69.1</td>
<td>58.3</td>
<td>76.3</td>
<td>78.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated remainder</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>9.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resins</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>5.7</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphaltenes</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*aUCM is the GC unresolved complex mixture as calculated from Wang and Brown (2008) by estimating that total petroleum hydrocarbons consist of the total saturates and aromatics.*
while gasoline contains 25 to 40% aromatics, mostly BTEX compounds. In crude oils, the alkylated compounds occur more frequently than the parent un-alkylated rings. This can be of use in identifying the source of contamination as many PAH pollution sources have more abundant parent compounds than alkylated ones.

### 2.1.6 Naphthenoaromatic Compounds

There exists a series of compounds which contain aromatic and cycloalkane rings. These are not typically analyzed for either petroleum or environmental purposes, and thus there is not a large amount of data on their contents in crude oils or in petroleum products. Table 10 shows some of the naphthenoaromatic compounds found in crude oils and petroleum products.

**Table 6** Cycloalkanes found in oils and petroleum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>IUPAC name</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in watera,1 g/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>C₅H₁₀</td>
<td>Cyclopentane</td>
<td>70.133</td>
<td>287-92-3</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C₆H₁₂</td>
<td>Methylocyclopentane</td>
<td>84.159</td>
<td>96-37-7</td>
<td>4.1E⁻²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>C₇H₁₄</td>
<td>Dimethylocyclopentane</td>
<td>98.186</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C₈H₁₆</td>
<td>Trimethylocyclopentane</td>
<td>112.213</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>~3.7E⁻³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C₆H₁₂</td>
<td>Cyclohexane</td>
<td>84.159</td>
<td>110-82-7</td>
<td>5.5E⁻²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>C₇H₁₄</td>
<td>Methylcyclohexane</td>
<td>98.186</td>
<td>108-87-2</td>
<td>~1.6E⁻²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C₈H₁₆</td>
<td>Dimethylcyclohexane</td>
<td>112.213</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>6E⁻³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C₈H₁₆</td>
<td>Ethylcyclohexane</td>
<td>112.213</td>
<td>1678-91-7</td>
<td>&lt;6E⁻³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>C₉H₁₈</td>
<td>Trimethylcyclohexane</td>
<td>126.239</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>1.7E⁻³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>C₁₀H₁₈</td>
<td>cis-Decahydrnaphalene</td>
<td>138.254</td>
<td>493-01-6</td>
<td>~8.5E⁻⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>C₁₀H₁₈</td>
<td>trans-Decahydrnaphalene</td>
<td>138.254</td>
<td>493-02-7</td>
<td>~8.5E⁻⁴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A, 1,1- 1638-26-2; cis-1,2- 1192-18-3; trans-1,2- 822-50-4; cis-1,3- 2532-58-3; trans-1,3- 1759-58-6
B, 1,1,2- 4259-00-1; 1,1,3- 4516-69-2; 1α,2α,4β-1,2,4- 4850-28-6; 1α,2β,4α-1,2,4- 16883-48-0
C, 1,1- 590-66-9; cis-1,2- 2207-01-4; trans-1,2- 6876-23-9; cis-1,3- 638-04-0; trans-1,3- 2207-03-6; cis-1,4- 624-29-3; trans-1,4- 2207-04-7
D, 1,1,2- 7094-26-0; 1,1,3- 3073-66-3; 1α,2β,4β-1,2,4- 7667-60-9; 1α,3α,5β-1,3,5- 1795-26-2

aApproximate sign ~ indicates solubility values are variable

Yalkowsky et al. (2010)

2.2 Sulfur Compounds

Sulfur compounds constitute a significant percentage of some crude oils and are also found in petroleum products as an unwanted contaminant (Neumann et al. 1981). The sulfur compounds found in oils and petroleum are generally found as one of four groups:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; g/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Benzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>78.112</td>
<td>71-43-2</td>
<td>~1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;8&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>92.139</td>
<td>108-88-3</td>
<td>0.5 to 0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Ethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;8&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>106.165</td>
<td>100-41-4</td>
<td>0.15 to 0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>&lt;i&gt;m&lt;/i&gt;-Xylene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;8&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>106.165</td>
<td>108-38-3</td>
<td>0.14 to 0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>&lt;i&gt;p&lt;/i&gt;-Xylene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;8&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>106.165</td>
<td>95-47-6</td>
<td>0.17 to 0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1,2,3-Trimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>526-73-8</td>
<td>~7E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1,2,4-Trimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>95-63-6</td>
<td>5.9E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1,3,5-Trimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>108-67-8</td>
<td>~5E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1-Ethyl-2-methylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>611-14-3</td>
<td>~7.5E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1-Ethyl-3-methylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1-Ethyl-4-methylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>622-96-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Isopropylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>98-82-8</td>
<td>5 to 6E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Propylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>120.191</td>
<td>103-65-1</td>
<td>~5E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,2,3,4-Tetramethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>488-23-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,2,3,5-Tetramethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>537-53-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,2,4,5-Tetramethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>95-93-2</td>
<td>3.5E&lt;sup&gt;-3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,2-Diethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>135-01-3</td>
<td>~7E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,3-Diethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>141-93-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,4-Diethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>105-5-5</td>
<td>~2.5E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1-Ethyl-2,2,4-dimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>874-41-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1-Ethyl-3,5-dimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>934-74-7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1-Methyl-2-propylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>1074-17-5</td>
<td>~1E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1-Methyl-3-propylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>1074-43-7</td>
<td>~1E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1-Methyl-4-propylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>1074-55-1</td>
<td>~1E&lt;sup&gt;-2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2-Ethyl-1,3-dimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>2870-04-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2-Ethyl-1,4-dimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>1758-88-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>3-Ethyl-1,2-dimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>933-98-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>4-Ethyl-1,2-dimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;H&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>934-80-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
1. Mercaptans or thiols with the general structure H–S–R where R is an alkyl or aryl group
2. Sulfides with the general structure R–S–R
3. Thiophenes with the general structure of five-membered rings containing a sulfur atom and with two double bonds
4. As part of asphaltene constituents, whose structures are unknown

Dibenzothiophenes, as shown in Table 11, are often used as forensic markers to track oil spills (Wang et al. 2003). Table 11 also shows the typical sulfur compounds found in oils.

Gaudalupe analyzed oils for total sulfur and for sulfides (Gaudalupe et al. 1991). Sulfides and asphaltenes correlate with the total sulfur found in the oil. Nishioka and Tomisch developed a method for analyzing oils for thiols noting that many thiols had not yet been identified (Nishioka and Tomisch 1993).

Most sulfur compounds in oil are foul-smelling and corrosive. The presence of these compounds lowers the price of the crude oils, as sulfur compounds have to be removed before or during refining. In recent years, the standards for the sulfur content of fuels have been lowered, increasing the expense of refining.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water(^{a, 1}) g/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Butylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>104-51-8</td>
<td>1.2 to 1.4E(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>sec-Butylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>135-98-8</td>
<td>1.1 to 1.8E(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Isobutylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>538-93-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>m-Cymene</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>535-77-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>p-Cymene</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>99-87-6</td>
<td>~3E(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>tert-Butylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{10})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>134.218</td>
<td>98-06-6</td>
<td>1.8 to 3E(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Pentylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td>538-68-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Isopentylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td>2049-94-7</td>
<td>~3.5E(^{-3})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Diethyltrimethylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Ethyltetramethylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Diethylmethylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Butylmethylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Pentamethylbenzene</td>
<td>C(<em>{11})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>148.245</td>
<td>700-12-9</td>
<td>~1.5E(^{-2})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>C(_{6})-Benzenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{12})H(</em>{18})</td>
<td>162.271</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>C(_{7})-Benzenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{14})H(</em>{20})</td>
<td>176.298</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>C(_{8})-Benzenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{16})H(</em>{32})</td>
<td>190.325</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{a}\)Approximate sign ~ indicates solubility values are variable; a range indicates the range of values
\(^{1}\)Yalkowsky et al. (2010)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Number of rings</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>Solubility in water&lt;sub&gt;a,1,2&lt;/sub&gt; g/L</th>
<th>Diesel fuel&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt; μg/g oil</th>
<th>Heavy fuel oil&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt; μg/g oil</th>
<th>ASMB&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt; μg/g oil</th>
<th>ANS&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt; μg/g oil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Naphthalene</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>91-20-3</td>
<td>128.717</td>
<td>30-30E⁻³</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Methylnaphthalene</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>120-18-3</td>
<td>142.157</td>
<td>26-28E⁻³</td>
<td>1180</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>3700</td>
<td>1300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Dimethylnaphthalene</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>156.233</td>
<td>156.233</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>7000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Ethylnaphthalene</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>160.255</td>
<td>170.255</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>7000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;2&lt;/sub&gt;-Naphthalenes</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>184.282</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>~2.4E⁻³</td>
<td>1560</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>6600</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Phenanthrene</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>178.229</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>2800</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;3&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>206.288</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;4&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>220.315</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>670</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;5&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>234.342</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>3100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;6&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>268.375</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;7&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>292.402</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;8&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>316.432</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;9&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>340.462</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>670</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;10&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>364.492</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>3100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;11&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>388.522</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>940</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>412.552</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;13&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>436.582</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>C&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>460.612</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>~1.0E⁻³</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>670</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>2900</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Table 8 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Number of rings</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water(^a)(^,)(^b) g/L</th>
<th>ASMB(^3) μg/g oil</th>
<th>ANS(^4) μg/g oil</th>
<th>Diesel fuel(^4) μg/g oil</th>
<th>Heavy fuel oil(^4) μg/g oil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C(_2)-Chrysenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{20})H(</em>{16})</td>
<td>256.348</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C(_3)-Chrysenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{21})H(</em>{18})</td>
<td>270.375</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>~4E(^{-7})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Perylene</td>
<td>C(<em>{20})H(</em>{12})</td>
<td>252.309</td>
<td>198-55-0</td>
<td>~4E(^{-7})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Approximate sign ~ indicates solubility values are variable; a range indicates the range of values
\(^b\)Yalkowsky et al. (2010)
\(^c\)Verschueren (2001)
\(^d\)Wang et al. (1993)
\(^e\)Wang et al. (2003)
Table 9  EPA 34 priority PAHs found in oils and petroleum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Naphthalene</td>
<td>C_{10}H_{8}</td>
<td>128.717</td>
<td>91-20-3</td>
<td>~3.5E^{-2}</td>
<td>193.47</td>
<td>6802</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1-Methylnaphthalene</td>
<td>C_{11}H_{10}</td>
<td>142.197</td>
<td>90-12-0</td>
<td>~2.8E^{-2}</td>
<td>72.16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2-Methylnaphthalene</td>
<td>C_{11}H_{10}</td>
<td>142.197</td>
<td>91-57-6</td>
<td>~1.8E^{-2}</td>
<td>75.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C_{2}-Naphthalenes</td>
<td>C_{12}H_{12}</td>
<td>156.233</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>1 to 8E^{-3}</td>
<td>30.24</td>
<td>16002</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>7000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C_{3}-Naphthalenes</td>
<td>C_{13}H_{14}</td>
<td>170.255</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>~2E^{-3}</td>
<td>11.10</td>
<td>15602</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>6600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>C_{4}-Naphthalenes</td>
<td>C_{14}H_{16}</td>
<td>184.282</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.05</td>
<td>4502</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>2800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Acenaphthene</td>
<td>C_{12}H_{10}</td>
<td>154.207</td>
<td>83-32-9</td>
<td>3.4E^{-3}</td>
<td>306.85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Acenaphthylene</td>
<td>C_{12}H_{8}</td>
<td>152.192</td>
<td>208-96-8</td>
<td>~4E^{-3}</td>
<td>55.85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fluorene</td>
<td>C_{13}H_{10}</td>
<td>166.218</td>
<td>86-73-7</td>
<td>~2E^{-3}</td>
<td>39.30</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C_{1}-Fluorenes</td>
<td>C_{14}H_{12}</td>
<td>180.245</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>~1E^{-3}</td>
<td>13.99</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C_{2}-Fluorenes</td>
<td>C_{15}H_{14}</td>
<td>194.277</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.30</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C_{3}-Fluorenes</td>
<td>C_{16}H_{16}</td>
<td>208.304</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.92</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Anthracene</td>
<td>C_{14}H_{10}</td>
<td>178.229</td>
<td>120-12-7</td>
<td>~1E^{-3}</td>
<td>19.13</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Phenanthrene</td>
<td>C_{14}H_{10}</td>
<td>178.229</td>
<td>85-01-8</td>
<td>2.7E^{-4}</td>
<td>20.72</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C_{1}-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>C_{15}H_{12}</td>
<td>192.256</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>~2.7E^{-4}</td>
<td>7.44</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>670</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C_{2}-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>C_{16}H_{14}</td>
<td>206.288</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.20</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>710</td>
<td>620</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Number of rings</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water(^{a,1}) g/L</th>
<th>US. EPA Toxicity value(^{b})</th>
<th>AsMB(^{2,3}) µg/g oil</th>
<th>ANS(^{3}) µg/g oil</th>
<th>Diesel fuel(^{3}) µg/g oil</th>
<th>Heavy fuel oil(^{4}) µg/g oil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C(_3)-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{17}H</em>{16})</td>
<td>220.315</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>3100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>C(_4)-Phenanthrenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{18}H</em>{16})</td>
<td>232.326</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>2200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fluoranthene</td>
<td>x C(<em>{16}H</em>{10})</td>
<td>202.256</td>
<td>2.7(^{-4})</td>
<td>711</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pyrene</td>
<td>x C(<em>{16}H</em>{10})</td>
<td>202.256</td>
<td>0.9 to 1.4(\times)10(^{-4})</td>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>230</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C(_1)-Fluoranthenes/</td>
<td>C(<em>{17}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>216.277</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>4.89</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pyrenes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Chrysene</td>
<td>x C(<em>{18}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>228.288</td>
<td>2 to 1.6(\times)10(^{-6})</td>
<td>2.04</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>380</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C(_1)-Chrysenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{19}H</em>{14})</td>
<td>242.314</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>~6(\times)10(^{-5})</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C(_2)-Chrysenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{20}H</em>{16})</td>
<td>256.348</td>
<td>~3(\times)10(^{-5})</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>C(_3)-Chrysenes</td>
<td>C(<em>{21}H</em>{18})</td>
<td>270.375</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Benz[a]anthracene</td>
<td>x C(<em>{18}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>228.288</td>
<td>0.9 to 1.3(\times)10(^{-5})</td>
<td>2.23</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Perylene</td>
<td>C(<em>{20}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>252.309</td>
<td>4(\times)10(^{-7})</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Benzo[a]pyrene</td>
<td>x C(<em>{20}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>252.309</td>
<td>1.4 to 3.8(\times)10(^{-6})</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Benzo[e]pyrene</td>
<td>C(<em>{20}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>252.309</td>
<td>~1.5(\times)10(^{-6})</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Benzo[b]fluoranthene(^{6})</td>
<td>x C(<em>{20}H</em>{12})</td>
<td>252.309</td>
<td>~10(^{-6})</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Dibenz[(a,h)]anthracene</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>C(<em>{22})H(</em>{14})</td>
<td>278.346</td>
<td>53-70-3</td>
<td>(~1\times10^{-6})</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Indeno[1,2,3-(cd)]pyrene</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>C(<em>{22})H(</em>{12})</td>
<td>276.338</td>
<td>193-39-5</td>
<td>(~2\times10^{-7})</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Benzo[(g,h,i)]perylene</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>C(<em>{22})H(</em>{12})</td>
<td>276.338</td>
<td>191-24-2</td>
<td>1.8 to 2.6</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\)Approximate sign ~ indicates solubility values are variable; a range indicates the range of values
\(^b\)US EPA chronic toxicity value taken from EPA. 2003 – smaller numbers indicate higher toxicity
\(^c\)These two compounds are combined for EPA-34 considerations

A, Dimethylnaphthalenes 1,2- 573-98-8; 1,3- 575-41-7; 1,4- 571-58-4; 1,5- 571-61-9; 1,6- 575-43-9; 1,7- 575-37-1; 1,8- 569-41-5; 2,3- 581-40-8; 2,6- 581-42-0; 2,7- 582-16-1; ethynylnaphthalenes 1- 1127-76-0; 2- 939-27-5
B, 1,4,5- 2131-41-1
C, 1- 1730-37-6; 9- 2523-37-7
D, 1- 832-69-9; 3- 832-71-3; 4- 832-64-4
E, 1- 2381-21-7; 2- 3442-78-2
F, 3- 3351-31-3; 5- 3697-24-3; 6- 1705-85-7

\(^1\)Yalkowsky et al. (2010)
\(^2\)Verschueren (2001)
\(^3\)Wang et al. (1993)
\(^4\)Wang et al. (2003)
2.3 Oxygen Compounds

Oxygen compounds are found in oils and petroleum. Measurement of these compounds is not frequent because they do not have known forensic potential and because they may be relatively well soluble in water. They are more difficult to measure than many hydrocarbons. The common groups of oxygen compounds found in oils are:

1. Naphthenic acids or their salts
2. Phenols and phenolic compounds
3. Fatty acids
4. Inclusions in asphaltenes

Table 10 Naphthenoaromatic compounds found in oils and petroleum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopropylbenzene</td>
<td>C₉H₁₀</td>
<td>118.175</td>
<td>873-49-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopentylbenzene</td>
<td>C₁₁H₁₄</td>
<td>146.229</td>
<td>700-88-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,2,3,4-Tetrahydronaphthalene (Tetralin)</td>
<td>C₁₀H₁₂</td>
<td>132.202</td>
<td>119-64-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene</td>
<td>C₁₁H₁₄</td>
<td>146.229</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimethyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene</td>
<td>C₁₁H₁₄</td>
<td>160.255</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene</td>
<td>C₁₁H₁₄</td>
<td>174.282</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,2,3,4-Tetrahydrophenanthrene</td>
<td>C₁₄H₁₄</td>
<td>182.261</td>
<td>1013-08-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopentanephenanthrene</td>
<td>C₁₇H₁₄</td>
<td>218.299</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A, 1-methyl - 1559-81-5; 5-methyl - 2809-64-5; 6-methyl - 1680-561-9
B, 1,5-dimethyl - 21564-91-0
C, 1,1,6-trimethyl - 475-03-6

Fig. 3 Structures of 16 EPA priority PAHs
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water g/L</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Dimethyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₂H₆S</td>
<td>62.134</td>
<td>75-18-3</td>
<td>6.3E⁻³</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Diethyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₄H₁₀S</td>
<td>90.187</td>
<td>352-93-2</td>
<td>3.1E⁻³</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Diethyl disulfide</td>
<td>C₄H₁₀S₂</td>
<td>122.252</td>
<td>110-81-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Dipropyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₆H₁₄S</td>
<td>118.238</td>
<td>111-47-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Dibutyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₈H₁₈S</td>
<td>146.294</td>
<td>544-40-1</td>
<td>3.4E⁻²</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Di-sec-butyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₈H₁₈S</td>
<td>146.294</td>
<td>626-26-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Di-tert-butyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₈H₁₈S</td>
<td>146.294</td>
<td>107-47-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Dibutyl disulfide</td>
<td>C₈H₁₈S₂</td>
<td>178.359</td>
<td>629-45-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Di-tert-butyl disulfide</td>
<td>C₈H₁₈S₂</td>
<td>178.359</td>
<td>110-06-5</td>
<td>2E⁻³</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Dihexyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₁₂H₃₀S</td>
<td>202.399</td>
<td>6294-31-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Diheptyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₁₄H₃₀S</td>
<td>230.453</td>
<td>629-65-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Dioctyl sulfide</td>
<td>C₁₆H₃₄S</td>
<td>258.506</td>
<td>2690-08-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Thiols (Mercaptans)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water g/L</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Ethanethiol</td>
<td>C₂H₆S</td>
<td>62.134</td>
<td>75-08-1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1,2-Ethanedithiol</td>
<td>C₂H₆S₂</td>
<td>94.199</td>
<td>540-63-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1-Propanethiol</td>
<td>C₃H₈S</td>
<td>76.161</td>
<td>107-03-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2-Propanethiol</td>
<td>C₃H₈S</td>
<td>76.161</td>
<td>75-33-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,2-Propanedithiol</td>
<td>C₃H₈S₂</td>
<td>108.226</td>
<td>814-67-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,3-Propanedithiol</td>
<td>C₃H₈S₂</td>
<td>108.226</td>
<td>109-80-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1-Butanethiol</td>
<td>C₄H₁₀S</td>
<td>90.187</td>
<td>109-79-5</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2-Butanethiol</td>
<td>C₄H₁₀S</td>
<td>90.187</td>
<td>91840-99-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1,4-Butanedithiol</td>
<td>C₄H₁₀S₂</td>
<td>122.252</td>
<td>1191-08-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1-Pentanethiol</td>
<td>C₅H₁₂S</td>
<td>104.214</td>
<td>110-66-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2-Pentanethiol</td>
<td>C₅H₁₂S</td>
<td>104.214</td>
<td>2084-19-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>3-Pentanethiol</td>
<td>C₅H₁₂S</td>
<td>104.214</td>
<td>616-31-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 11 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carbon number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Formula</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>CAS number</th>
<th>Solubility in water g/L</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1-Hexanethiol</td>
<td>C₆H₁₄S</td>
<td>118.238</td>
<td>111-31-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2-Hexanethiol</td>
<td>C₆H₁₄S</td>
<td>118.238</td>
<td>1679-06-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,6-Hexanediethiol</td>
<td>C₆H₁₄S₂</td>
<td>150.305</td>
<td>1191-43-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,2-Benzenedithiol</td>
<td>C₆H₁₀S₂</td>
<td>142.242</td>
<td>17534-15-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,3-Benzenedithiol</td>
<td>C₆H₁₀S₂</td>
<td>142.242</td>
<td>626-04-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Benzenemethanethiol</td>
<td>C₇H₈S</td>
<td>124.204</td>
<td>100-53-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1-Heptanethiol</td>
<td>C₇H₁₆S</td>
<td>132.267</td>
<td>1639-09-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Dibenzothiophenes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Dibenzothiophene</td>
<td>C₁₂H₈S</td>
<td>184.257</td>
<td>132-65-0</td>
<td>1.4E⁻³</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>C₁-Dibenzothiophenes</td>
<td>C₁₃H₁₀S</td>
<td>198.283</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>C₂-Dibenzothiophenes</td>
<td>C₁₄H₁₂S</td>
<td>212.310</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>C₃-Dibenzothiophenes</td>
<td>C₁₄H₁₂S</td>
<td>212.310</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some of the compounds that have been found in oils are shown in Table 12. Analysis has shown that some of the acid species include complex compounds with two to six aromatic rings and often including sulfur and nitrogen compounds (Tomczyk et al. 2001). Porter et al. analyzed several resins and determined the presence of carbazole and similar compounds in these oils (Porter et al. 2004).

### Table 12 Oxygenated compounds sometimes found in oils and petroleum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Molecular formula</th>
<th>CAS No.</th>
<th>Molecular weight</th>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Solubility in water 1 g/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Naphthenic acids</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopentanecarboxylic acid</td>
<td>C₆H₁₀O₂</td>
<td>3400-45-1</td>
<td>114.142</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclohexanecarboxylic acid</td>
<td>C₇H₁₂O₂</td>
<td>98-89-5</td>
<td>128.169</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclohexanecarboxylic acid</td>
<td>C₈H₁₄O₂</td>
<td>5292-21-7</td>
<td>142.196</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phenols</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenol</td>
<td>C₆H₆O</td>
<td>108-95-2</td>
<td>94.111</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resorcinol</td>
<td>C₆H₆O₂</td>
<td>108-46-3</td>
<td>110.111</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-Cresol</td>
<td>C₇H₈O</td>
<td>95-48-7</td>
<td>108.138</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m-Cresol</td>
<td>C₇H₈O</td>
<td>108-39-4</td>
<td>108.138</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p-Cresol</td>
<td>C₇H₈O</td>
<td>106-44-5</td>
<td>108.138</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylenol</td>
<td>C₈H₁₀O</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>122.164</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4 to 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-Naphthol</td>
<td>C₁₀H₈O</td>
<td>90-15-3</td>
<td>144.173</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-Naphthol</td>
<td>C₁₀H₈O</td>
<td>135-19-3</td>
<td>144.173</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fatty acids</strong></td>
<td>CH₃-(CH₂)ₙ-COOH</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>different</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Yalkowsky et al. (2010)
A, 2,3- 526-75-0; 2,4- 105-67-9; 2,5- 95-87-4; 2,6- 576-26-1; 3,4- 95-65-8; 3,5- 108-69-9

Some of the compounds that have been found in oils are shown in Table 12. Analysis has shown that some of the acid species include complex compounds with two to six aromatic rings and often including sulfur and nitrogen compounds (Tomczyk et al. 2001). Porter et al. analyzed several resins and determined the presence of carbazole and similar compounds in these oils (Porter et al. 2004).

### 2.4 Nitrogen Compounds

Nitrogen compounds are abundant in most crude oils and constitute about 0.1 to 2 wt.% of the total. Several workers have carried out qualitative and quantitative analysis on nitrogen compounds in oils (Oliveira et al. 2006; Li et al. 2010; Von Muehlen et al. 2010; Zhang et al. 2010). Nitrogen compounds in oils are often divided into two groups of basic or nonbasic compounds. This division is also useful for separation schemes. Most compounds are present as cyclic compounds as shown...
Furthermore, there is significant nitrogen content in the asphaltenes and in metal-binding compounds such as porphyrins.

### 2.5 Metals

Crude oils and their heavy refined petroleum products often contain significant amounts of metals. Metals are found in oils as:

1. Inorganic salts
2. Metal soaps
3. Organic metal-complex compounds
4. Attached to asphaltenes

Table 14 shows the metal content in several oils. The metals shown here are the most common metals identified in oils. In the past some metals, notably chromium, vanadium, and nickel, were used for crude oil identification. The ratios of these metals have a tendency to remain constant. Further, the ratios of these metals can be used to identify tanks from which the oils may have come, as there is exchange of metals with the tank bodies. At the present time, there is little use of this type of identification as the use of biomarkers is easier and better understood.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Light fuels</th>
<th>Aviation gas 80</th>
<th>Aviation gas 100</th>
<th>Jet A</th>
<th>Jet B</th>
<th>Diesel</th>
<th>Heavy fuel oils</th>
<th>IFO – marine</th>
<th>Refinery intermediates</th>
<th>FCC heavy cycle</th>
<th>Heavy reformate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>29.5</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>795</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>23.9</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molybdenum</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>29.5</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanadium</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>76.4</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Light crude oils</th>
<th>Brent</th>
<th>Panuke</th>
<th>Norman Wells</th>
<th>Pitas Point</th>
<th>Oseberg</th>
<th>Ninian</th>
<th>Empire</th>
<th>Iranian heavy</th>
<th>Maya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>39.5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molybdenum</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>22.6</td>
<td>46.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal</td>
<td>Light fuels</td>
<td>Refinery intermediates</td>
<td>Heavy fuel oils</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aviation gas 100</td>
<td>Gasoline</td>
<td>Heavy fuel oils</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Aviation gas 80</td>
<td>IFO – marine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanadium</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>&lt; 2.7</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>&lt; 0.8</td>
<td>&lt; 3.3</td>
<td>&lt; 2.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>&lt; 4.4</td>
<td>&lt; 16</td>
<td>&lt; 16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>&lt; 0.3</td>
<td>&lt; 3.1</td>
<td>&lt; 3.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molybdenum</td>
<td>&lt; 3.8</td>
<td>&lt; 23.7</td>
<td>&lt; 237</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>6.05</td>
<td>60.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titanium</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanadium</td>
<td>&lt; 1.1</td>
<td>&lt; 0.6</td>
<td>&lt; 0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>&lt; 5.1</td>
<td>&lt; 4.3</td>
<td>&lt; 4.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Quadros et al. studied the simultaneous measurement of nickel and vanadium in Brazilian and Venezuelan crude oils (Quadros et al. 2010). They found that the total nickel in three Brazilian crudes ranged from 9 to 25 μg g⁻¹ and from 29 to 69 μg g⁻¹ in three Venezuelan crudes. The total vanadium in the same Brazilian crudes ranged from 13 to 32.7 μg g⁻¹ and in the Venezuelan crudes ranged from 224.7 to 277.0 μg g⁻¹.

The bonding of metals, particularly nickel, vanadium, iron, and cobalt into porphyrins, is a known source of metal stability in oils. Figure 2 shows the porphyrin skeleton. These compounds are residuals of chlorophyll which has a similar structure.

Metals are concentrated into petroleum residuals and often in the asphalt fractions of the oil. Metals are very low in the diesel fraction and absent in gasoline.

### 2.6 Resins

Resins are polar compounds that are defined by precipitation or by open-column chromatography. The composition of resins is largely unknown. The nitrogen compounds noted above may be present in resins, largely as alkylated variants of the basic compounds.

Porter et al. (2004) analyzed several resins and determined the presence of carbazole and similar compounds in these oils. They also looked at the average molecular weight of resins using electrospray tandem mass spectrometry and found that the residual resins in diesel are of smaller molecular weight than in crude oils.

### 2.7 Asphaltenes

The important fact concerning asphaltenes is that currently the structure and composition of this broad class of compounds is unknown (Mullins et al. 2007). Currently asphaltenes are defined by their precipitation from oil in pentane, hexane, or heptane. The mass of asphaltenes, typically defined as percentage by weight, increases as one uses smaller compounds as solvents. As Mullins points out in his recent volume on the topic, that until a number of structures of asphaltenes have been identified, asphaltenes will remain a mystery such as the whole field of genetics before Watson and Crick identified the structure of DNA (Groenzin and Mullins 2007). Despite recent progress in the field, not one single compound has been positively characterized in the asphaltene mix.

Recent progress on the study of asphaltenes will be summarized below, but includes the fact the for the first time the molecular weight has been found to be about 760, ranging from 500 to 1000 (Rodgers and Marshall 2007). The aromatic ring system is felt to contain about seven fused rings, a range of four to ten rings, and that these rings are fused and thus the asphaltene is felt to have a “hand shape” with the aliphatic chains (fingers) radiating outward from the central fused ring (palm). Further, analysis has been problematic because asphaltene molecules aggregate at
low concentrations, typically about 150 mg/L in toluene. These nano-aggregates can range up to ten or more individual molecules and do not easily lend themselves to analysis or separation.

Studies up to about 2006 concluded that the molecular weight of asphaltenes varied from about 500 to about 70,000 amu or Daltons (Mullins et al. 2007). More recent studies, using more refined techniques, show that the molecular weight of asphaltenes is smaller than previously thought. One of the problems of determining the molecular weight is the aggregation tendency of asphaltenes. As noted above, this is a severe problem for any analysis of asphaltenes. Vapor pressure osmometry (VPO), gel permeation chromatography (GPC), and certain introduction methods for mass spectrometry such as laser desorption methods can result in asphaltene aggregation and therefore high molecular weight values. Electrospray ionization Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance spectroscopy (ESI-FT-ICR) has been successful in studying asphaltenes and other heavy oil components (Rodgers and Marshall 2007). Electrospray ionization (ESI) is a useful introduction method for heavy oil components as the analyte molecule is not evaporated, rather the solvent is. The molecules do not reaggregate as they are charged in the process, and electrostatic repulsion keeps them separated. All these methods do not result in separation of the asphaltene mixture, rather just enable a bulk analysis which can lead to some structure indications and idea of the molecular weight. Further details on the information that mass spectrometry can in the characterization of such complicated mixtures are provided by Walters and Higgins (Chap. 12, “Petroleomics”).

Groenzin and Mullins (2007) report on the use of time-resolved fluorescence depolarization (TRFD) to assess the molecular weight of asphaltenes. This method is basically a look at the decay of fluorescent molecules. Molecular weight is estimated by comparison to the decay rate of molecules of known molecular weight. The results of this analysis show the typical molecular weight is 750 g/mol and that this varies from about 500 to 1000 g/mol. Interestingly, coal asphaltenes displayed an average molecular weight of about 500 g/mol.

Dr. Yen proposed that asphaltene molecule aggregates are like micelles and will behave like stacks of fused aromatic ring systems (Rodgers and Marshall 2007). This is now known as the “Yen” model. The micelles will grow to a limiting size and reaggregate into “aggregates” until there is again a limiting size. So, there is a double mode of aggregation. Groenzin and Mullins used the sum total of information found to date to propose a structure for one oil asphaltene as shown in Fig. 2.

3 Properties of Oil

The properties of oil discussed here are viscosity, density, specific gravity, solubility, flash point, pour point, distillation fractions, interfacial tension, and vapor pressure. These properties for the oils noted as examples above are listed in Table 15 (Wang et al. 2004).

Viscosity is the resistance to flow at a given shear rate. The lower the viscosity, the more readily the liquid flows. For example, water has a low viscosity and flows
readily. Molasses with a high viscosity flow slowly. The viscosity of the oil is largely determined by the amount of lighter and heavier fractions that it contains. The greater the percentage of light components such as small saturates and the lesser the amount of asphaltenes, the lower the viscosity. Conversely, oils with a high asphaltene content have high viscosities. Viscosity is affected by temperature, with a lower temperature giving a higher viscosity. For most oils, the viscosity varies as the logarithm of the temperature. Oils that flow readily at high temperatures can become a slow-moving, viscous mass at low temperatures. In terms of oil spill cleanup, viscosity is important. Viscous oils do not spread rapidly, do not penetrate soil as readily, but are difficult to pump and skim.

Density is the mass of a unit volume of oil and is typically expressed in grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm³). It is the property often used by the petroleum industry to define light or heavy crude oils. The density of fresh water is 1.0 g/cm³ at 15 °C, and the density of most oils ranges from 0.7 to 0.99 g/cm³; thus most oils will float on water. As the density of seawater is 1.03 g/cm³, even heavier oils will usually float on seawater. The density of oil increases with time, as the light fractions evaporate. When the density of an oil becomes greater than the density of freshwater or seawater, the oil will sink. Sinking is rare and happens only with a few oils, usually residual fuels such as Bunker C or raw products such as bitumen. Significant amounts of oil have sunk in only about 50 incidents out of thousands. However, as

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Gasoline</th>
<th>Diesel</th>
<th>Light crude</th>
<th>Heavy crude</th>
<th>Intermediate fuel oil</th>
<th>Bunker C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Viscosity</td>
<td>mPa·s at 15°C</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5–50</td>
<td>50–50,000</td>
<td>1000–15,000</td>
<td>10,000–50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>g/mL at 15°C</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.78–0.88</td>
<td>0.88–1.00</td>
<td>0.94–0.99</td>
<td>0.96–1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash point</td>
<td>°C</td>
<td>−35</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>−30–30</td>
<td>−30–60</td>
<td>80–100</td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solubility in water</td>
<td>ppm</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10–50</td>
<td>5–30</td>
<td>10–30</td>
<td>1–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pour point</td>
<td>°C</td>
<td>NR</td>
<td>−35–10</td>
<td>−40–30</td>
<td>−40–30</td>
<td>−10–10</td>
<td>5–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API gravity</td>
<td></td>
<td>65</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>30–50</td>
<td>7–15</td>
<td>10–20</td>
<td>5–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interfacial tension</td>
<td>mN/m at 15°C</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>10–30</td>
<td>15–30</td>
<td>25–30</td>
<td>25–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distillation fractions</td>
<td>% distilled at</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100°C</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2–15</td>
<td>1–10</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200°C</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>15–40</td>
<td>2–25</td>
<td>2–5</td>
<td>2–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300°C</td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
<td>30–60</td>
<td>15–45</td>
<td>15–25</td>
<td>5–15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400°C</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>45–85</td>
<td>25–75</td>
<td>3–40</td>
<td>15–25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual</td>
<td></td>
<td>15–55</td>
<td>25–75</td>
<td>60–70</td>
<td>75–85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NR not relevant
heavier and heavier oils are being used more frequently, sinking may become more common in the future.

Specific gravity is another measure of density and is an oil’s relative density compared to that of water. If the oil specific gravity is greater than 1, it sinks; if less than 1, it floats. Another gravity scale is that of the American Petroleum Institute (API). The API gravity is based on the density of pure water which has an arbitrarily assigned API gravity value of 10° (10 degrees). Oils with progressively lower specific gravities have higher API gravities. The following is the formula for calculating API gravity:

\[
\text{API gravity} = \left[ \frac{141.5}{\text{oil density at } 15.5 \degree C} \right] - 131.5
\]

### 3.1 Oils with High Densities Have Low API Gravities and Vice Versa

Oil solubility in water is the measure of how much will dissolve in water on a molecular basis. Solubility is important in that the soluble fractions of the oil are sometimes toxic to aquatic life, especially at higher concentrations. As the amount of oil lost to solubility is always small, this is not a large loss mechanism and is typically ignored in mass balance calculations. In fact, the solubility of oil in water is so low (generally less than 100 parts per million) that it would be the equivalent of approximately one grain of sugar dissolving in a cup of water. This small amount is important to the environment as even small amounts may be toxic to certain biota.

The flash point of an oil is the temperature at which the liquid oil yields sufficient vapors to ignite upon exposure to an open flame. A liquid is considered to be flammable if its flash point is less than 60 °C. There is a broad range of flash points for oils and petroleum products, many of which are considered flammable, especially when fresh. Gasoline, which is flammable under all ambient conditions, poses a serious fire hazard when spilled. Many fresh crude oils have an abundance of volatile components and may be flammable for as long as 1 day until the more volatile components have evaporated. On the other hand, Bunker C and heavy crude oils generally are not flammable even when freshly spilled.

The pour point of an oil is the temperature at which it takes longer than a specified time to pour from a standard measuring vessel. It is important to note that pour point is not the solidification temperature. As oils are made up of hundreds of compounds, some of which may still be liquid at the pour point, the pour point is not the temperature at which the oil will no longer pour. The pour point represents a consistent temperature at which an oil will pour very slowly from a standard container. Therefore, pour point has limited use as an indicator of the state of the oil. In fact, pour point has been overused in the past to predict how oils will behave in the environment. For example, waxy oils can have very low pour points, but may
continue to spread slowly at low temperatures and can evaporate to a significant degree. As produced crude oils become heavier, pour point becomes less relevant.

Distillation fractions of an oil represent the fraction (generally measured by volume) of an oil that is boiled off at a given temperature. This data is obtained on crude oils so that oil refineries can adjust parameters to handle the oil. This data also provides environmentalists with useful insights into the chemical composition of oils. For example, while 70% of gasoline will boil off at 100 °C, only about 5% of one selected crude oil will boil off at that temperature and an even smaller amount of a typical Bunker C. The distillation fractions correlate to the composition as well as to other physical properties of the oil. Distillation fraction data is sometimes used for estimation equations of evaporation.

The oil-water interfacial tension, sometimes called surface tension, is the force of attraction or repulsion between the surface molecules of oil and water. Together with viscosity, surface tension is one indication of how rapidly and to what extent an oil will spread on water. The lower the interfacial tension with water, the greater the extent of spreading. In actual practice, the interfacial tension must be considered along with the viscosity because it has been found that interfacial tension alone does not account for spreading behavior.

The vapor pressure of an oil is a measure of how the oil partitions between the liquid and gas phases or how much vapor is in the space above a given amount of liquid oil at a fixed temperature. Because oils are a mixture of many compounds, the vapor pressure changes as the oil weathers. Vapor pressure is difficult to measure and is not frequently used to assess oil spills. Oil is a mixture of hundreds of compounds; therefore vapor pressure is not entirely relevant to spill control.

While there is a high correlation between the various properties of an oil, these correlations should be used cautiously as oils vary so much in composition. For example, the density of many oils can be predicted using their viscosity values. For other oils, however, this could result in errors. For example, waxy oils have much higher viscosities than would be predicted from their densities. There are several mathematical equations for predicting one property of an oil from another property, but these must be used carefully as there are many exceptions.

4  Research Needs

The issues around oil composition and properties certainly are complex, and therefore the research needs are very diverse. The foremost need is the continuance of existing efforts along the various research lines to define and clarify oil composition. The second need is to correlate and compile the various findings to ascertain if there are patterns or relationships between the various data. The measurement of both oil composition and properties needs to follow international standards. Finally, there needs to be central or readily available sources of data. Data needs to be available to potential users.
References


In this chapter, the characteristics of clathrate hydrates of natural gases, generally called gas hydrates, will be presented. After an introduction to hydrate structures, which have been verified in nature as well as the associated hydrate formers, the phase diagrams exhibiting the stability fields and thermodynamic properties of these natural systems depending on their composition will be discussed. Natural gas hydrates are methane-rich but may also contain CO₂, H₂S, and other hydrocarbons and hence vary in their thermodynamic properties.

Different models regarding the formation and growth processes, including kinetics with respect to heat and mass transfer effects, experimental observations...
regarding the cage occupancy during the formation process as well as the
influence of sediments and pore water salinity will be presented and discussed.

1 Introduction

Gas hydrates are ice-like, nonstoichiometric, crystalline solids composed of a three-
dimensional network of hydrogen-bonded water molecules enclosing gas molecules
in defined cavities of different sizes. The (nonpolar) gas molecules in turn prevent
the water cages from collapsing (e.g., von Stackelberg 1949, Sloan 1998, and
literature within). From a chemical point of view, gas hydrates are assigned to
inclusion compounds or clathrates. The required conditions for hydrate formation
are elevated pressures, low temperatures, and sufficient amounts of gas and water.
In general, these conditions are given at the seafloor and in permafrost regions, but
they may also occur in pipelines. In nature, gas hydrate deposits could be verified
worldwide (e.g. Cherskiy et al. 1985; Dallimore et al. 1999; Kvenvolden and
Lorenson 2001; Suess et al. 2001 – see also Chap. 24, “Gas Hydrates as an
Unconventional Hydrocarbon Resource”).

Natural gas hydrates encase predominantly methane, but also higher hydro-
carbons as well as CO₂ and H₂S. Depending on the source of the feed gas, the
amount of additional gases besides methane varies from less than 1 mol% to more
than 40 mol% (Kvenvolden and Lorenson 2001; Lu et al. 2011). Investigations on
hydrocarbon gases in natural gas hydrates with respect to the carbon-isotopic
(δ¹³C) composition provide data for the interpretation of the origin of these
gases. Analyses of marine gas hydrates show that most of these samples have a
carbon-isotopic composition of methane lighter than –60% (relative to the PeeDee
Belemnite standard), indicating a microbial methane origin. It is very likely that
this microbial methane is a product of CO₂ reduction from organic matter to
methane as a result of methanogenic processes occurring in shallow sediments
(Kvenvolden 1995; Kvenvolden and Lorenson 2001). A carbon-isotopic compo-
sition above –50% and the occurrence of higher hydrocarbons such as ethane or
propane in the hydrate indicate a predominantly thermogenic gas origin (Bernard
et al. 1976; Schoell 1988). These gases result from thermal decomposition of
organic matter in sediment depths generally greater than 1000 m. H₂S, which is
occasionally incorporated in marine gas hydrates occurring in shallow sediments
above the SMI (sulfate-methane interface), is locally produced here by the reduc-
tion of sulfate via anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM) as a result of a complex
interaction of microbes which use the sulfate to oxidize the methane anaerobically
(Kastner et al. 1998; Barnes and Goldberg 1976; Zehnder and Brock 1979; Boetius
et al. 2000).

The composition of the feed gas determines the structure and composition and
thus the thermodynamic properties of the resulting hydrate phase. The feed gas
composition also influences the hydrate formation process and its kinetics. This will
be discussed in detail in the following paragraphs.
2 Structure and Composition

Simple methane hydrates as well as complex mixed hydrates alone or as coexisting phases with different composition and structures have been recovered from natural samples (Sloan and Koh 2008, and literature within). Three hydrate structures have been confirmed in these natural gas hydrate samples: the cubic structures I (sI) and II (sII) and the hexagonal structure H (sH). Structures I and II were already described in 1951 and 1952 by von Stackelberg and Müller, whereas structure H was identified 35 years later by Ripmeester and co-workers (von Stackelberg and Müller 1951; Müller and von Stackelberg 1952; Ripmeester et al. 1987). All structures are composed of various kinds of cages as shown in Table 1.

In structure I, two small pentagonal dodecahedrons (5^{12}) are combined with six tetrakaidecahedrons (5^{12}6^2) into a unit cell. The pentagonal dodecahedron consists of 20 water molecules forming a 12-sided cavity which has pentagonal faces with equal angles and edge length. It is the smallest cavity type with an average radius of 0.39 nm and part of all hydrate structures. The tetrakaidecahedron combines 12 pentagons with 2 hexagons, and, therefore, the radius of these cavities increases to 0.433 nm (McMullan and Jeffrey 1965; Sloan 1998).

A unit cell of structure II consists of 16 pentagonal dodecahedrons (5^{12}) and 8 hexakaidecahedrons (5^{12}6^4). The latter cage combines 12 pentagonal faces with 4 hexagonal faces and has a radius of about 0.473 nm (Mak and McMullan 1965; Sloan 1998) (see also Fig. 1).

Structure H is the only structure containing a cavity with three square faces in addition to pentagonal and hexagonal faces (4^35^66^3). The combination of three pentagonal dodecahedrons (5^{12}), two irregular dodecahedrons (4^35^66^3), and one icosahedron 5^{12}6^8, which is the largest cavity (average radius 0.579 nm), forms the characteristic unit cell of structure H (Ripmeester et al. 1987; Sloan 1998).

The formed structure depends – among others – on the composition of the feed gas, namely, the size of the enclathrated gas molecules: small guest molecules, such as nitrogen or oxygen, form structure II hydrates with both large and small cavities being filled. Slightly larger guest molecules such as methane, CO₂, or H₂S form structure I hydrates, with partial filling of the small cavities, whereas larger molecules such as propane form structure II hydrates with small cavities being empty. Even larger molecules such as 2,2-dimethylbutane (neohexane) form structure H hydrates in the presence of a supporting gas that fills smaller cavities of the structure (e.g., methane). However, in the presence of a gas mixture, the relationship between

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cavities</th>
<th>5^{12}</th>
<th>5^{12}6^2</th>
<th>5^{12}6^4</th>
<th>4^35^66^3</th>
<th>5^{12}6^8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structure I</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure II</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure H</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1 Number of cavities per unit cell for different gas hydrate structures (Sloan 1998)
structure and size is not always straightforward. Gas molecules which individually form structure I hydrates may form structure II in a mixture, as has been demonstrated for methane-ethane hydrates in certain proportions (Subramanian et al. 2000). All three structures have been confirmed on natural hydrate samples (Sloan and Koh 2008, and literature within). Structure I CH₄ hydrates with very little amounts of additional gases such as CO₂ or H₂S are the most common species. In 2007, oceanic gas hydrates on the Cascadian margin were investigated for the first time in situ using Raman spectroscopy. They have also been identified as structure I hydrates containing predominately methane (Hester et al. 2007). A more complex hydrate, composed of coexisting structure II and structure H hydrate, has been identified in a sample from the Barkley Canyon on the northern Cascadian margin. Surprisingly, the samples contain, besides methane and other lighter hydrocarbons, some molecules which were not known as hydrate formers before, such as n-pentane and n-hexane. For the first time, these hydrate structures and compositions could be verified directly using powder X-ray diffraction and solid-state ¹³C NMR (Lu et al. 2007). The coexistence of hydrate phases with different structures and compositions could also be confirmed at the Chapolopote Knoll, southern Gulf of Mexico. Raman spectroscopic and X-ray diffraction measurements on the recovered gas hydrate indicated the coexistence of a structure I CH₄-C₂H₆ hydrate in addition to a

Fig. 1 Variety of hydrate cavities: (a) Pentagonal dodecahedron 5₁² occupied with a methane molecule. (b) Hexakaidecahedron 5₁²6⁻⁴ occupied with a n-butane molecule. (c) Combination of two hexakaidecahedron 5₁²6⁻⁴ occupied with n-butane and iso-butane molecules, respectively, and a pentagonal dodecahedron 5₁² occupied with a methane molecule. (Modified from Luzi et al. 2008)
complex structure II hydrate containing C₂ through C₄ hydrocarbons besides CH₄ (Klapp et al. 2010).

3 Hydrate Formation Processes

Hydrate formation can be specified as hydrate nucleation as the first step and hydrate growth as the second step. The nucleation process can be defined as a microscopic process involving tens of thousands of molecules which first form small clusters and then further develop into hydrate nuclei. By the time these small nuclei obtain a critical size, a continuous hydrate growth process starts. Three different hypotheses for hydrate nucleation are discussed here: the labile cluster nucleation hypothesis, the nucleation at the interface hypothesis, and the local structuring hypothesis.

3.1 Hypothesis of the Nucleation at the Interface

The hypothesis of the nucleation at the interface was presented by Rodger (1990) and Kvamme (1996). It suggests the transportation of the gas molecules to the water-gas interface, where the gas molecules are adsorbed at the aqueous surface and diffuse to a suitable location. At this location, the gas molecules will be enclathrated into the cavity, formed from water molecules. These cavities either agglomerate or grow by the addition of gas and water molecules into the vapor side of the interface. The general observation of the formation of a hydrate film at the interface between gas and an aqueous phase, for example, during a methane hydrate formation process, may support this hypothesis on the one hand. On the other hand, it is probably not a satisfying concept for those hydrates with a higher density compared to the density of water. Those hydrates show a preferential nucleation and growth on the subsurface which could be observed, for example, for CO₂ – SO₃ hydrates (Beeskow-Strauch et al. 2011). The labile cluster model presented in the following shows a higher universal validity since it can be applied for hydrate nucleation processes with or without a free gas or liquid phase of the guest molecule.

3.2 Labile Cluster Nucleation Hypothesis

The labile cluster nucleation hypothesis was first presented by Sloan and Fleyfel (1991) for the formation of hydrates from gas and ice and modified and extended by Christiansen and Sloan (1994): It starts with the presumption that the molecules of pure water without any dissolved gas molecules form labile ring structures of pentamers and hexamers. This assumption is supported by Ludwig who could show by means of ab initio calculations that besides tetrahedrally coordinated water molecules, ring structures in the pure liquid water phase are very likely (Ludwig 2007). According to Christiansen and Sloan, these labile water rings will construct labile clusters around gas molecules after gas is dissolved in the water phase. The
coordination number of the water molecules depends on the size of the guest molecules, e.g., 20 water molecules surrounding 1 CH₄ molecule, whereas 24 water molecules surround 1 C₃H₆ molecule, and 28 water molecules cover 1 C₃H₈ molecule. The clusters of the dissolved species combine to form unit cells. For the formation of a unit cell, the coordination number of the water molecules surrounding the dissolved gas molecules has to be changed. This transformation of the cluster coordination number of the water molecules needs activation energy, and therefore this step becomes a barrier in the formation process (Christiansen and Sloan 1994). The approach of the labile cluster nucleation hypothesis was developed further by Walsh et al. (2009) who modeled with direct molecular dynamics simulations the spontaneous nucleation and growth of CH₄ hydrate. Walsh and co-workers could show nucleation steps similar to the labile cluster hypothesis: pentagonal faces of water molecules exist in the water phase and arrange close to a dissolved CH₄ molecule and partial cages form around the CH₄ molecule. Small cavities (coordination number of water molecules is 20) form around a methane molecule, and additional CH₄ molecules and partial water cages try to attach. The early cages are mostly face-sharing partial small cages, favoring structure II. An extended growth of these partial cavities into face-sharing pentagonal dodecahedrons around the central pentagonal dodecahedron is now hindered by steric constraints. Therefore, the coordination number of the water molecules has to be changed to build a unit cell of structure I with well-defined cavities. An interesting outcome of this study is the formation of uncommon 5₁₂₆³ cavities during the formation process, which was already suggested by Vatamanu and Kusalik (2006). This cavity type is not part of any final hydrate structure but may act as some kind of transition state toward the formation of large cavities of structure I (5₁₂₆²) and structure II (5₁₂₆⁴), respectively. The 5₁₂₆³ cavity seems to form as a link to promote the growth of the thermodynamically preferred structure I hydrate phase from the kinetically preferred structure II hydrate phase which was formed initially (Walsh et al. 2009; Vatamanu and Kusalik 2006). Jacobson et al. described the nucleation of clathrate hydrates from various guest molecules also using molecular dynamics simulations as a multistep mechanism. They observed the formation of so-called “blobs” which can be understood as large analogues of the labile clusters proposed by Christiansen and Sloan (Jacobson et al. 2010a; Christiansen and Sloan 1994). These “blobs” persist in the aqueous solution and consist of gas molecules separated by half-cages of water molecules. After becoming a critical nucleus, the water molecules of the “blob” order to hydrate cavities. The nucleus recruits more gas and water molecules from the solution, resulting in an amorphous clathrate hydrate nucleus. Within the amorphous nucleus, the water molecules are locally ordered, but the gas molecules do not show the necessary order for a crystalline hydrate structure. In a third step, the amorphous clathrate nuclei rearrange to form a crystalline hydrate with elements of both, structure I and structure II (Jacobson et al. 2010b). In situ Raman spectroscopic investigations on CH₄ hydrate and mixed hydrates during the formation process may support the labile cluster hypothesis in general and in particular the formation of an amorphous hydrate phase (e.g., Subramanian and Sloan 1999; Uchida et al. 2000; Schicks and Luzi-Helbing 2013). Even though the nucleation process itself is very short comprising a few micro seconds and thus
cannot be detected by Raman spectroscopy, it could be shown that during the initial stages of hydrate formation pentagonal dodecahedrons $5^{12}$ of structure I are formed preferentially and that the formation of tetrakaidecahedrons $5^{12}6^2$ may be the rate-limiting factor (Subramanian and Sloan 1999; Uchida et al. 2000). Time-resolved Raman spectroscopic investigations on the formation of mixed hydrates also clearly show the incorporation of CH$_4$ into pentagonal dodecahedrons $5^{12}$ as a first step during the initial hydrate formation process, whereas the formation of all other cavity types occurs later. This could also be observed for all investigated systems, regardless of these cavities being occupied with CH$_4$ or larger molecules, such as CO$_2$, H$_2$S, C$_3$H$_8$, 2-methylpropane, or 2-methylbutane (Schicks and Luzi-Helbing 2015).

3.3 Local Structuring Nucleation Hypothesis

The local structuring nucleation hypothesis is based on the Landau free energy calculations performed by Radhakrishnan and Trout (2002). These calculations for carbon dioxide hydrate nucleation at the water-liquid carbon dioxide interface lead to the assumption that a group of CO$_2$ molecules arrange in a configuration similar to that in the hydrate phase. This causes a local order of the surrounding water molecules which is different from that in the bulk water phase. If the number of CO$_2$ molecules in this arrangement with a local order exceeds that of a critical hydrate nucleus, the formation of a hydrate nucleus starts.

3.4 Hydrate Growth

After the small hydrate nuclei obtain a critical size, a continuous hydrate growth starts. Regarding the hydrate growth, three important aspects have to be considered: the transportation of gas and water molecules (mass transfer), the kinetics of the hydrate growth process, and – due to the fact that hydrate formation is an exothermic process – the heat transfer away from the reaction (growth) site. The clathrate hydrate growth model presented by Englezos et al. (1987) is based on mass transfer theories. It describes the growth of the hydrate as a three-step process. The first step is the transport of the gas molecule into the liquid phase, the second step is the diffusion of the gas molecule through a stagnant liquid diffusion layer which surrounds the hydrate particle, and the last step is the incorporation of the gas molecule into the structured water framework of the hydrate particle, in the so-called “reaction” layer. Due to the fact that a concentration gradient of the gas molecules in the stagnant liquid layer is not allowed, the diffusion rate of the gas molecule through the stagnant liquid layer and the incorporation rate of the gas molecule into the hydrate structure are equal at steady state. In this context, it should be noted that the solubility of gases varies. CO$_2$ and H$_2$S, for example, show a much better solubility in water than CH$_4$, resulting in a higher concentration of these gases in the liquid phase. A higher concentration of CO$_2$ or H$_2$S in the aqueous phase again results in an
enrichment of these gases in the hydrate phase (Schicks and Luzi-Helbing 2015). In this context, a clear preference of the guest molecules regarding formation and occupancy of cavities could also be shown. The Raman spectra in Fig. 2 indicate a preferred incorporation of \( \text{H}_2\text{S} \) into tetrakaidecahedrons \( 5^{12}6^2 \) during the initial
stages of hydrate formation, whereas CH₄ is preferentially incorporated into dodecahedrons 5₁² of structure I (Schicks et al. 2008). The observed cage occupancies with methane or H₂S during the initial stages of hydrate formation do not correspond to those of the hydrate phase at equilibrium conditions.

The presence of additional gases besides CH₄ in the feed gas affects the hydrate formation kinetics. The formation of a simple CH₄ hydrate seems to be preferred compared to the formation of a mixed hydrate. This could be shown for mixed hydrate containing C₃H₈ or iso-C₄H₁₀ besides CH₄. Figure 3 shows the transformation rates of ice into simple CH₄ or a mixed CH₄-C₃H₈ hydrate over time. The results indicate that the formation of CH₄ hydrate is faster during the first 40 min compared to the formation rate of CH₄-C₃H₈ hydrate (Schicks and Luzi-Helbing 2015).

Uchida et al. (1999) presented a model focusing on heat transfer which describes the formation of a hydrate film at the water-liquid carbon dioxide interface. They observed the primary nucleation at the interface and occasionally a secondary nucleation on the primary film. However, the propagation rate was temperature-dependent which indicates that the heat diffusion is a restrictive factor. The model was recently modified and generalized by Mochizuki and Mori (2006) describing a heat-transfer-controlled lateral growth of a hydrate film at the interface between liquid water and an immiscible hydrate-forming fluid.

### 3.5 Hydrate Formation in Nature: Effects of Sediments

Regarding gas hydrate formation in nature, it is questionable if a hydrate-forming fluid phase – e.g., a free gas phase – is available. In the absence of a free gas phase, the formation of gas hydrates is limited to the availability of dissolved gas molecules. Furthermore, the presence of sediments and their influence on the hydrate formation
process has to be considered when modeling hydrate formation processes. Recent studies show that not only the presence of particles is favorable for gas hydrate formation but that the particle size has an effect on the gas hydrate formation kinetics: A high concentration of fine grains (<125 μm) led to an explicitly faster gas hydrate formation compared to medium or coarse sands (Heeschen et al. 2016).

For the estimation of stabilization effects of gas hydrates on continental slopes, it is necessary to know how and where hydrate forms in the sediments. In the case of hydrate particle formation in contact with sediment grains, the hydrate phase may interact as cement, and a hydrate saturation of less than 3% may already result in a stabilizing effect (Bernabé et al. 1992). Recent studies showed that the formation process of hydrates in sediments strongly depends on the water content and the absence or presence of a free gas phase. Klapproth et al. (2007) showed that hydrates between sediment (quartz) grains behave like cement in the presence of a free gas phase and with a water content of 10–17 wt%. However, other authors describe hydrate growth without any contact to the sediment grains (pore filling) when the water content is high both in presence of a free gas phase (Tohidi et al. 2001) and in absence of a free gas phase (Schicks et al. 2007; Spangenberg et al. 2015).

4 Thermodynamic Properties of Simple and Mixed Hydrates

The thermodynamic properties of a hydrate phase describe the phase behavior including stability fields and decomposition conditions as well as metastable states and transition processes. In particular, the stability field of a hydrate phase depends on its composition. Gas hydrates, containing N2 besides CH4, are less stable than pure CH4 hydrates: the stability field of these hydrates is shifted to higher pressures and lower temperatures compared to the stability conditions of pure methane hydrates (Jhaveri and Robinson 1965). In contrast, mixed gas hydrates containing H2S, CO2, or higher hydrocarbons such as C3H8 besides CH4 show a larger stability field compared to simple CH4 hydrates. An optimal interaction between the size and shape of the guest molecule on the one hand and the size and form of the cavity on the other hand seems to enhance the stability of the resulting hydrate phase. Experimental data presented in Fig. 4 show that the stability fields of these mixed hydrates are shifted to lower pressures and higher temperatures. The experimental data are in good agreement with calculated data (e.g., using CSMGem, Sloan and Koh 2008).

Investigations on mixed gas hydrates containing small amounts of C3H8 (less than 5 vol% C3H8 besides CH4 in the feed gas) reveal an interesting phase behavior in the course of a transformation process as pressure and temperature conditions approach the decomposition line of pure CH4 hydrate (Schicks et al. 2006). During this transformation process, a simultaneous formation and decomposition of hydrate crystals was observed. Additionally, the morphology of the system changed from larger euhedral crystals to a foamy fine crystal mass. Raman
spectroscopic and X-ray diffraction measurements indicate that the formation and decomposition of structure I hydrate in coexistence with structure II CH₄-C₃H₈ hydrate are characteristic. The process could be observed by passing over the defined pressure and temperature conditions (transformation conditions) in both

Fig. 4 P-T diagrams based on experimental data presenting the stability fields of methane hydrate and mixed hydrates. The diagram above shows the stability fields for pure methane hydrate versus CO₂-CH₄ and H₂S-CH₄ hydrates. The diagram below shows the stability fields of pure methane hydrate versus CH₄-C₃H₈ and CH₄-C₂H₆-C₃H₈ hydrates. Independent from structure I or structure II formers, the decomposition conditions for the mixed hydrates are shifted to lower pressures and higher temperatures compared to pure methane hydrate.
directions. This observation does not describe an equilibrium state but indicates kinetic preference versus thermodynamic factors. The excess supply of CH$_4$ compared to C$_3$H$_8$ in the aqueous solution on the one hand and the kinetic preference of CH$_4$ hydrate formation compared to the mixed hydrate formation on the other hand may result in the formation of a CH$_4$ hydrate phase besides the mixed hydrate phase, although the mixed hydrate phase should be thermodynamically preferred. In case formation of CH$_4$ hydrate starts at temperature and pressure conditions close to (but out of) the CH$_4$ hydrate stability field, the formed crystals are unstable and decompose immediately. If the CH$_4$ hydrate formation occurs at temperature and pressure conditions within the CH$_4$ hydrate stability field, this metastable structure I CH$_4$ hydrate phase coexists besides the structure II mixed hydrate phase (Schicks et al. 2006). A coexistence of structure I CH$_4$ hydrate and structure H CH$_4$-iso-C$_5$H$_{12}$ mixed hydrate could also be observed when studying the hydrate formation from a gas mixture containing 1% 2-methylbutane in CH$_4$ (Schicks and Luzi-Helbing 2015). As mentioned before, the coexistence of hydrates with different structures and compositions could also be proven in nature, e.g., in gas hydrate samples from the Cascadia margin with coexisting structure II and structure H hydrate phases (Lu et al. 2007).

In addition to the composition of the gas hydrate, the presence of sediment may also affect their stability conditions. Several experiments show a shift of gas hydrate equilibrium toward higher pressure and lower temperature in the presence of small particles, such as clays, silica sand, and glass beads, and in accordance with the salinity of the pore water (e.g., Uchida et al. 2004; Østergaard et al. 2002). However, the interaction between the sediment and the hydrate seems to be quite complex and does not only depend on the grain site but also on the mineral composition (Heeschen et al. 2016).

5 Research Needs

Before gas hydrates were discovered in natural environments, they were recognized as a problem in natural gas pipelines due to the formation of undesirable hydrate plugs. Therefore, laboratory investigations on hydrate formation and decomposition conditions were performed before the first hydrate deposit in the Messoyakha field was discovered in 1967 (Sloan 1998). However, the results of laboratory and field studies are documented in a huge amount of publications. Nevertheless, there are still open questions in many areas of gas hydrate research, beginning at molecular level with the understanding of hydrate nucleation and growth processes. The formation of coexisting hydrate phases with different structures and compositions in a natural environment is not yet understood. Furthermore, as already mentioned the influence of sediments on gas hydrates and vice versa is still not sufficiently clarified. The formation of gas hydrates in nature is a very complex process and involves many aspects which have to be investigated systematically.
References


Part II

Hydrocarbons and Lipids in the Biosphere
Abstract

The analysis of carbon and hydrogen stable isotope ratios of lipids from natural products is an integral component of research in Earth sciences. The isotopic composition of lipids from algae and higher plants can be linked with various environmental parameters, which makes lipid biomarkers a rich source of information about biological, chemical, and physical processes in the environment. This chapter reviews the key external and internal factors that affect C and H isotopic fractionation during biosynthesis of lipids. Significant advances need to
be made to increase our level of understanding of the processes that control
carbon and hydrogen stable isotope compositions of lipids from natural products has become an integral component of
research in biogeochemistry, Earth history, and petroleum exploration. The pioneering
studies using compound-specific $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C (Freeman et al. 1990; Hayes et al. 1990) and $^2$H/$^1$H (Sessions et al. 1999; Sauer et al. 2001) analyses have shown the potential of
this methodology to address a broad spectrum of research questions in various
branches of Earth sciences (Evershed et al. 2007; Sachse et al. 2012; Sachs 2014;
Sessions 2016; Diefendorf and Freimuth 2017; Pedentchouk and Turich 2017).

Lipids produced by photosynthesizing organisms serve several key metabolic
and structural functions including the storage of energy and protection against
dehydration and pathogens. Because of their recalcitrant nature, lipid biomarkers
are among the most widely used geomolecules in organic geochemistry (Peters et
al. 2005a, b). Lipids differ greatly in their chemical structure and complexity
within and between terrestrial and aquatic organisms. In spite of these differences,
however, ultimately, all lipids are generated from biosynthetic precursors that
require inorganic sources of carbon and hydrogen, i.e., CO$_2$ and H$_2$O. The fact
that the isotopic composition of lipids can incorporate information about various
environmental parameters (e.g., the concentration and $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C ratios of atmos-
spheric CO$_2$, $^2$H/$^1$H ratios of meteoric H$_2$O, etc.) makes lipid biomarkers a rich
source of information about present and past biological, chemical, and physical
processes operating in the environment.

To get this information, the researcher needs to evaluate various pathways and
mechanisms that affect carbon and hydrogen isotopes during assimilation, biosyn-
thesis, and subsequent burial and transformation of an organic compound. The
pathways and mechanisms will vary depending on the nature of investigation. For
instance, studies dealing with biogeochemical and paleoclimatic investigations focus
on extracting an environmental signal and disentangling it from physiological and
metabolic processes that impact isotopic composition of lipids during biosynthesis
(Fig. 1). The evaluation of $\delta^{13}$C and $\delta^2$H data of lipid biomarkers in petroleum
exploration, however, has to take into account additional physicochemical processes
that affect the isotopic composition of these compounds in the source rocks and
petroleum during diagenesis and catagenesis (Fig. 1). In both cases, however, the
initial isotopic composition of inorganic C and H sources, environmental conditions
during biological assimilation, and biosynthetic and metabolic isotope effects are
key factors that influence the isotopic composition of lipid biomarkers.

This chapter reviews the role of these factors on C and H isotopic compositions of
lipids derived from phototrophic sources. A full description of the current state of
knowledge regarding individual pathways and mechanisms that affect stable isotope
signatures of lipid biomarkers and their precursors is beyond the scope of this chapter. (Interested readers will be guided to key original and review publications.) Rather, the focus is on the broad picture that shows the hierarchy of controls on the isotopic composition of lipids derived from algal and higher plant sources.

2 Controls on Isotopic Fractionation

Depending on the nature of the depositional environment, sedimentary lipids can originate either from aquatic or terrestrial biota, or both. Algae exist in an aqueous environment and rely on CO₂ (aq) and/or HCO₃⁻ as their source of carbon. Higher plants, however, obtain water mainly from the soil and use atmospheric CO₂. Additionally, while algae depend primarily on the availability of light and nutrients, higher terrestrial plants are very sensitive to water availability and ambient temperature. These different life habits result in significant differences in the nature of controls that affect the δ¹³C and δ²H values of lipid biomarkers during biosynthesis.

Broadly speaking, these controls can be classified as “external” and “internal” to the organism in which isotope fractionation takes place. Even if somewhat subjective, this division provides a framework for discussing these controls as well as for clarifying the link between the δ¹³C and δ²H values of lipids and biochemical, physicochemical, and environmental information that can be gleaned from these data.
Carbon and hydrogen compositions of plants have been the subject of research since the 1950s (Wickman 1952; Craig 1954) and 1970s (Smith and Epstein 1970), respectively. Numerous reviews of $^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ (Deines 1980; O’Leary 1981; Farquhar et al. 1989; Fogel and Cifuentes 1993; Hobbie and Werner 2004; Diefendorf et al. 2010; Tcherkez et al. 2011; Cernusak et al. 2013) and $^2\text{H}/^1\text{H}$ (Estep and Hoering 1980; White 1988; Ziegler 1988; Fogel and Cifuentes 1993) isotope systematics at the bulk plant level provide an excellent starting point for evaluating the role of external and internal controls. Further insight regarding the role of internal factors – particularly the role of compound type as well as biosynthetic and metabolic pathways – requires investigation of the processes that take place at the compound-specific level. The reviews of $^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ (Hayes 2001; Pancost and Pagani 2006; Chikaraishi 2014; Freeman and Pancost 2014; Diefendorf and Freimuth 2017) and $^2\text{H}/^1\text{H}$ (Hayes 2001; Schmidt et al. 2003; Sachse et al. 2012; Sachs 2014; Sessions 2016) provide state-of-the-art coverage of pathways and processes operating on lipids and their precursors. What follows is a discussion of the key external and internal controls on $^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ and $^2\text{H}/^1\text{H}$ fractionation in the most common lipid biomarkers in algae (Fig. 2) and higher plants (Fig. 3).

---

**Fig. 2** External and internal controls on $^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ and $^2\text{H}/^1\text{H}$ compositions of algal lipids. Numbers in bold refer to the sections that cover the topic. Representative references (not all of them are discussed in the text) are given as well.
Alkenones, long-chain (C_{37}–C_{39}) polyunsaturated alkyl ketones, are by far the most commonly used algal lipids in paleoenvironmental studies. They are synthesized by only a small number of haptophyte species (Volkman et al. 1980; Marlowe et al. 1984) and are used as a proxy for sea surface temperature (Brassell et al. 1986) and paleo-pCO2 levels (Pancost and Pagani 2006). They are diagenetically robust and relatively easy to prepare for GC separation and can be readily analyzed by GC-IRMS. They are one of the main targets for investigating the role of various external and internal factors controlling δ^{13}C/δ^{12}C and δ^{2H}/δ^{1H} compositions of algal lipids.

Steroids are another group of algal lipids that have been investigated for their isotopic composition. Even though they can be diagnostic of specific taxa, e.g., dinosterol as a biomarker for dinoflagellates (Robinson et al. 1984), and are well preserved in the sedimentary record, they are easily isomerized and can create complex chromatographic patterns making precise δ^{13}C measurements difficult.
Sterol $\delta^{13}$C values have been used previously to determine their sources (Pancost et al. 1999), but because of the complexity of their patterns during chromatographic separation and potentially multiple sources in sedimentary mixtures, deriving a particular environmental signal from their $\delta^{13}$C or $\delta^2$H values remains a challenge.

Even though they lack species or taxon specificity, short- and long-chain $n$-alkanes can be used as an indicator of contribution from aquatic sources. Short-chain $n$-alkanes ($C_{15}$, $C_{17}$, and $C_{19}$) are typical of phytoplankton (Cranwell 1982). However, the longer $n$-alkanes maximizing at $C_{21}$, $C_{23}$, and $C_{25}$ are characteristic of submerged and floating aquatic macrophytes (Ficken et al. 2000). Previous studies have shown that the $\delta^{13}$C values of $n$-alkanes from algae can help delineate sources of vegetation (Mead et al. 2005). Algal $\delta^2$H values, on the other hand, can provide information about the $\delta^2$H values of source water (Pagani et al. 2006) and changes in moisture availability (Rach et al. 2014).

Another group of algal lipid biomarkers are $C_{20}$, $C_{25}$, and $C_{30}$ highly branched isoprenoid (HBI) alkenes, which are thought to be derived from a limited number of diatom genera (Rowland and Robson 1990; Volkman et al. 1994). Even though the diagenetic stability and pathways of these compounds and the extent to which they can be used back in time are uncertain (Belt and Müller 2013), recent research has shown that these compounds can be used as a proxy for seasonal Arctic and Antarctic sea ice extent (Belt and Müller 2013; Belt et al. 2016). Though potentially promising, the ability of the $\delta^{13}$C and $\delta^2$H values of these biomarkers to provide information about more specific biogeochemical (carbon cycling, photooxidation of organic matter) and physical parameters (ice thickness and/or snow cover) has not yet been explored.

### 3.2 Carbon Isotopes in Algal Lipids

The systematics of carbon isotopes of lipid biomarkers from algae has been the focus of intensive research by biogeochemists and paleoclimatologists primarily because of the use of $\delta^{13}$C values of alkenones as a proxy for paleo-$p$CO$_2$ (Pagani 2014). Hence, the major focus of previous investigations on algal lipids has been on understanding the influence of both external and internal factors on the link between these parameters.

#### 3.2.1 External Controls

**$\delta^{13}$C of Carbon Source**

It is well established that the carbon isotopic composition of algal lipids depends on that of dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC). The chemical equilibrium of the carbonate system is linked with temperature-dependent isotopic fractionation of carbon resulting in distinct carbon isotope compositions of the CO$_2$ (aq), CO$_3^{2-}$, and HCO$_3^-$ species. Thus, CO$_2$ (aq) is typically $^{13}$C-depleted in comparison to CO$_3^{2-}$ and HCO$_3^-$ relative to gaseous CO$_2$ (Mook et al. 1974). Additionally, due to shifts in the global sources and sinks of carbon, there can be variations in the $\delta^{13}$C values of
CO$_2$ in the entire atmosphere-ocean reservoir, e.g., the δ$^{13}$C values of DIC increased by 2–3‰ during the Mesozoic oceanic anoxic events (Scholle and Arthur 1980). Both possible shifts in the concentration/δ$^{13}$C of aqueous carbon species and changes in the δ$^{13}$C values of CO$_2$ over geologic time need to be considered when investigating the role of external variables on the δ$^{13}$C values of algal lipids.

**Concentration of CO$_2$**

The link between CO$_2$ concentration and the δ$^{13}$C values of marine algae has been explored in detail since the 1990s (Rau et al. 1992). The link exists because the magnitude of $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C fractionation during carbon transport and fixation in algae depends on the concentration of extra- and intracellular CO$_2$. Theoretical calculations, laboratory experiments, and field studies have shown that growth rate, algal shell geometry, and the availability of trace elements (Se, Co, and Ni) can also influence the δ$^{13}$C values of the algal biomass (Bidigare et al. 1997; Laws et al. 2001). Using the concentration of soluble phosphate as a proxy for these physiological variables, it then becomes possible to relate alkenone δ$^{13}$C values to CO$_2$ levels. The success of this approach has been clearly demonstrated by multiple studies (Pagani 2014).

### 3.2.2 Internal Controls

**Fractionation During Carbon Uptake**

The uptake of carbon in the aqueous environment can proceed either (a) passively when CO$_2$ (aq) diffuses across the cell membrane or (b) actively when CO$_2$ (aq) and/or HCO$_3^-$ is enzymatically transported across the cell membrane. In both cases, a large $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C fractionation takes place during photosynthesis because of the role of ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (RuBisCO) which fixes carbon as part of the Calvin cycle. Laboratory experiments have shown that $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C fractionation by RuBisCO is approximately 29‰ in comparison with aqueous CO$_2$ (Bidigare et al. 1997).

**Lipid Type and Metabolic Pathways**

Following carbon assimilation, the process of post-photosynthetic processes biosynthesis leads to additional $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C fractionation and significant variation in the δ$^{13}$C values among algal lipids (Table 1). The isotopic heterogeneity results from different sets of reactions that take place during the biosynthesis of acetogenic ($n$-alkanoic acids, $n$-alkanes, $n$-alkanols) and isoprenoid (sterols, hopanols, phytol) lipids. (A further detailed review of these reasons for differences can be found in Hayes 2001 and Chikaraishi 2014.) Generally, the acetogenic lipids are expected to be ca. 4‰ $^{13}$C-depleted relative to bulk tissue (Hayes 1993). The magnitude of $^{13}$C-depletion of isoprenoid lipids, however, is less clear. While isoprenoids synthesized by the mevalonic acid pathway are thought to be $^{13}$C-depleted by ca. 2‰ relative to biomass, the magnitude of $^{13}$C-depletion in isoprenoids synthesized via glyceraldehyde phosphate/pyruvate pathway is quite variable. The data in Table 1 clearly shows that the general patterns predicted for acetogenic and
Table 1  Differences in the isotopic composition (net isotopic fractionation) of lipids relative to biomass carbon; the units are in per mil. Extracted, expanded, and redrawn from Chikaraishi (2014)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>C3 angiosperms</th>
<th>C3 gymnosperms</th>
<th>C4 plants</th>
<th>CAM plants</th>
<th>Algae</th>
<th>Cyanobacteria</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n-alkanoic acids</td>
<td>3.1–6.5</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>10.1–10.3</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>4.6–5.4</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>van Dongen et al. (2002), Sakata et al. (1997), Ballentine et al. (1998), Schouten et al. (1998), Conte et al. (2003), Chikaraishi et al. (2004a, b, c), Chikaraishi and Naraoka (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-alkanes</td>
<td>3.1–10.0</td>
<td>2.5–4.6</td>
<td>8.9–13.0</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Conte et al. (2003), Chikaraishi et al. (2004a), Collister et al. (1994), Chikaraishi and Naraoka (2003), Bi et al. (2005), Dieffendorf et al. (2011), Eley et al. (2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-alkanols</td>
<td>4.0–5.4</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>8.9–9.5</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sakata et al. (1997), Chikaraishi et al. (2004a, b), Chikaraishi and Naraoka (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sterols</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>1.3–6.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>van Dongen et al. (2002), Schouten et al. (1998), Chikaraishi et al. (2004a, b), Chikaraishi (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phytol</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>2.5–3.8</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>van Dongen et al. (2002), Sakata et al. (1997), Chikaraishi et al. (2004a, b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkenone</td>
<td>3.1–4.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>van Dongen et al. (2002), Schouten et al. (1998), Bidigare et al. (1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hopanoids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>08.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sakata et al. (1997)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
isoprenoid lipids by theoretical and controlled laboratory studies are only a crude approximation of the natural variability of $^{13}$C-discrimination in algal (and higher plant) lipids. For example, even though algal $n$-alkanes show a $^{13}$C-depletion by 9.6‰, there is a significant overlap between $n$-alkanoic acids with 4.6–5.4‰ depletion and sterols, which are depleted by 1.3–6.5‰.

3.3 Hydrogen Isotopes in Algal Lipids

Several paleohydrological studies have used the $\delta^{2}H$ values of algal lipids to reconstruct changes in the $\delta^{2}H$ values of environmental water (Pagani et al. 2006; Pahnke et al. 2007) as well as shifts in moisture availability (Rach et al. 2014). Both approaches rely on the assumption that – because water is the only source of H for plants – the $\delta^{2}H$ values of lipid biomarkers are tightly linked with the $\delta^{2}H$ values of source water (external factor) and thus they can be used to track changes of this environmental parameter over time. Thus, a significant research effort has focused on demonstrating this link. Other studies have also focused on several other external factors, such as water salinity, temperature, and irradiance, which can potentially modify or override the above link.

3.3.1 External Controls on H Isotopes

$^{2}H/^{1}H$ of Source Water

Since the first study to demonstrate it (Sauer et al. 2001), the link between $\delta^{2}H$ of lipids and environmental water has been explored both in the field and laboratory settings. Hydrogen isotope data for $n$-heptadecane ($n$-C$_{17}$ alkane; Sachse et al. 2004) and palmitic acid (Huang et al. 2002) showed correlation with the $\delta^{2}H$ values of source water across climatic gradients in western Europe and the eastern USA, respectively. Research on alkenone and dinosterol biomarkers in the Chesapeake Bay estuary, USA, has further demonstrated the link between lipid and source water $\delta^{2}H$ values (Sachs and Schwab 2011, Schwab and Sachs 2011). Tightly controlled culture growth experiments, using several freshwater and marine algal species, have provided a solid confirmation for the relationship (Englebrecht and Sachs 2005; Zhang and Sachs 2007).

Salinity

Demonstrating and quantifying the link between the $\delta^{2}H$ values of lipid biomarkers from algae and salinity has significant implications not only for understanding what drives $^{2}H/^{1}H$ fractionation in algae but would also provide a new research tool for algal physiologists and paleoclimatologists. Schouten et al. (2006) were the first to show that the $^{2}H/^{1}H$ fractionation in alkenones decreases as salinity increases. Research on algal and cyanobacterial lipids in environmental samples from Christmas Island in the Pacific has supported this earlier result (Sachse and Sachs 2008). More recent studies that focused on alkenones significantly expanded the applicability of this potential proxy by demonstrating the same effect of salinity on $^{2}H/^{1}H$
fractionation in coastal and open ocean haptophyte algae (Chivall et al. 2014; M’boule et al. 2014).

Sachs (2014) offered three mechanisms – in the form of hypotheses to be tested – that could explain the observed relationship between salinity and $^{2}$H/$^{1}$H fractionation in algal lipids. First, greater salinities could reduce water transport through the cell membrane and lead to greater recycling of internal water, thus increasing the pool of $^{2}$H-enriched water. Second, higher salinities could reduce growth rates leading to a reduction of $^{2}$H/$^{1}$H fractionation between extracellular water and biosynthates. Third, greater salinities would increase the rate of production of osmolytes, which would attract $^{2}$H-depleted water molecules, thus resulting in a $^{2}$H-enriched pool of water for biosynthesis. These hypotheses provide a fertile ground for further research into the effect of salinity on hydrogen isotopes in algal lipids.

Temperature and Irradiance

Even though they could potentially modify the link between the $\delta^{2}$H values of environmental water and algal lipids, these two external variables have not yet been explored in detail. Several studies on the effect of temperature have suggested an increase in $^{2}$H/$^{1}$H fractionation at higher temperatures in fatty acids (Zhang et al. 2009) and alkenones (Schouten et al. 2006; Wolhowe et al. 2009). Because only a few different temperatures (2 to 3), species, and algal lipids were investigated in these studies, it is too early to make any definitive conclusions about the robustness of temperature effects.

Investigation of the effect of light intensity on $^{2}$H/$^{1}$H fractionation has shown that the direction of response might depend on the type of algal lipids. While an increase in light intensity was observed to decrease fractionation in alkenones from the haptophyte *Emiliania huxleyi* (van der Meer et al. 2015) and phytol and tetradecanoic acid (C14:0 fatty acid), an opposite effect was found in a sterol biomarker from a marine diatom (Sachs et al. 2017). The discrepancy in the lipid response from the diatom was explained as a result of shifts toward a greater contribution of $^{2}$H-enriched biosynthates to phytol and the C14:0 fatty acid and $^{2}$H-depleted compounds to the sterol. If confirmed, the proposed mechanism is an excellent example of the interaction between the roles of both external and internal controls on $^{2}$H/$^{1}$H in algal lipids. Further research is certainly needed to confirm lipid- (and species-?) specific trends and mechanisms proposed by these initial investigations.

3.3.2 Internal Controls on H Isotopes

**Lipid Type and Metabolic Pathways**

The photolysis of water during biosynthesis leads to the formation of NADP(H) which is thought to have $\delta^{2}$H values between ca. $–250‰$ and $–600‰$ (Luo et al. 1991; Schmidt et al. 2003). Further biochemical steps lead to a progressive $^{2}$H-enrichment, the magnitude of which will depend on the biosynthetic pathway, i.e., whether the compound is synthesized using the acetogenic or isoprenoid
pathways. Field and laboratory studies investigating the differences in the $\delta^2H$ values of various algal biomarker lipids have shown that the acetogenic lipids (fatty acids, alkenones, alkadienes) are $^2H$-enriched relative to isoprenoidal lipids (sterols, phytol, botryococcenes, and phytadienes) by ca. 100–200‰ (Sessions et al. 1999; Sauer et al. 2001; Zhang and Sachs 2007). The magnitude and the details of these differences between and within individual algal lipid classes in relation to the external environmental parameters ($\delta^2H$ of source water, salinity, temperature, and irradiance) require further research.

4 Higher Plants

4.1 Higher Plant Lipids

Long-chain $n$-alkanes, $n$-alkanols, $n$-alkanoic acids, and wax esters are a major group of leaf wax biochemicals in vascular plants (Eglinton et al. 1962). These $n$-alkyl compounds are among the most resistant lipid structures and are considered to be diagnostic geochemical biomarkers for higher plants (Brassell et al. 1978). Leaf wax $n$-alkanes are characterized by carbon chain lengths ranging from C$_{25}$ to C$_{35}$ (Kolattukudy 1976) and by a strong predominance of odd-carbon-number homologues. $n$-Alkanoic acids and $n$-alkanols range from C$_{26}$ to C$_{34}$ with a strong even-over-odd predominance (Kolattukudy 1976, Eglinton and Hamilton 1967). Even though these compounds cannot be readily assigned to a particular higher plant species or taxonomic group, they have been used extensively for paleoclimatic and paleoecological reconstructions based on their molecular distribution and stable isotopic compositions. These compounds are very abundant in the sedimentary record, are mostly resistant to degradation (particularly $n$-alkanes), and require only relatively simple cleanup and derivatization procedures to make them amenable to GC-IRMS analysis. These characteristics make sedimentary $n$-alkanes and $n$-alkanoic acids key targets for $\delta^{13}C$ and $\delta^2H$ measurements in paleoecological (e.g., leaf wax lipids from C$_3$ vs. C$_4$ vegetation) and paleohydrological (changes in $^2H/^1H$ composition of meteoric water and/or humidity) studies, respectively.

Terpenoids are another common group of lipids in higher plants. The fact that some diterpenoids and triterpenoids can be assigned to particular taxa, e.g., oleanoids to angiosperms (Moldowan et al. 1994) and taraxeroids to mangroves (Versteegh et al. 2004), makes them diagnostic biomarkers for certain groups of terrestrial plants. They can be used to investigate shifts in plant paleocommunities (Diefendorf et al. 2014) and for identifying differences in the values of $\delta^{13}C$ of angiosperm vs. gymnosperm plants (Schouten et al. 2007) during periods of climate change. Even though significant advances have been made in understanding the role of salinity on $\delta^{13}C$ and $\delta^2H$ of $n$-alkanes in mangroves (Ladd and Sachs 2012; Ladd and Sachs 2013; Ladd and Sachs 2017), little is currently known about the effect of this environmental parameter on the isotopic composition of taraxerol.
4.2 Carbon Isotopes in Higher Plant Lipids

The carbon isotope composition of lipid biomarkers from higher plants is a rich source of information for plant biochemists, plant ecologists, and paleoclimatologists. The $\delta^{13}C$ values of leaf wax lipids provide information about plant ecology and evolution, e.g., the origin and expansion of C$_4$ vegetation (Tipple and Pagani 2007; Tipple and Pagani 2010), and for tracking changes in the $\delta^{13}C$ values of atm. CO$_2$ during periods of dramatic climate change, e.g., the Paleocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum (Pagani et al. 2006; Schouten et al. 2007; McInerney and Wing 2011). When dealing with these types of applications, a thorough understanding of the contribution of key internal factors (i.e., C$_3$ or C$_4$ biosynthetic pathway) vs. those that operate externally (e.g., $\delta^{13}C$ values of CO$_2$, moisture availability, etc.), particularly on C$_3$ plants, is required when interpreting the carbon isotope record of leaf wax lipid biomarkers.

4.2.1 External Controls on C Isotopes

$\delta^{13}C$ of Carbon Source

Carbon dioxide is the sole source of carbon for higher plants; therefore, the $\delta^{13}C$ value of atmospheric CO$_2$ is a key variable that influences the $\delta^{13}C$ values of leaf wax lipids. Depending on the scale of investigation and the nature of sample material, this factor can operate at two different levels. First, there could be changes in the global patterns of $\delta^{13}C$ values of atmospheric CO$_2$ over decadal, millennial, and longer timescales. For instance, changes over the Cenozoic on the order of ca. 2‰ (Tipple et al. 2010) and certain dramatic changes during climatic events like the Paleocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum with leaf wax n-alkane records showing excursions of up to ca. 5‰ (McInerney and Wing 2011) could take place. Second, on a more local, short-term scale, the contribution of $^{13}C$-depleted CO$_2$ from soil respiration in the closed canopy could play a role. The extent of this effect on plant $\delta^{13}C$ values varies substantially among different types of forests but can lead to ca. 1.5 to 5.0‰ differences between lower and upper canopy leaves (Broadmeadow and Griffiths 1993).

Atmospheric Concentration of CO$_2$

Changes in the concentration of atmospheric CO$_2$ will shift the ratio between intracellular and extracellular concentrations of CO$_2$ leading to a shift in the $\delta^{13}C$ values of plant tissues (Farquhar et al. 1982). Even though the effect is clearly seen on relatively short timescales, e.g., up to a month (Schubert and Jahren 2012), the response is not as obvious on the geological timescales (Diefendorf et al. 2015a). Diefendorf and Freimuth (2017) provided an up-to-date review on the subject including short- and long-term studies and concluded that on geological timescales, $^{13}C/^{12}C$ discrimination in higher plants is not sensitive to $p$CO$_2$. 

Moisture Availability
Low soil moisture and low relative humidity restrict evapotranspiration, which results in a decrease in the ratio of inter- and extracellular CO2. Multiple studies have shown that wetter conditions are characterized by lower δ13C values of plant biomass. Globally, plant δ13C values are linked with mean annual precipitation (Pataki et al. 2003; Diefendorf et al. 2010) and with a vapor pressure deficit (Bowling et al. 2001) suggesting that differences in 13C/12C fractionation in C3 plants correlate with the availability of moisture.

Irradiance
A greater exposure to sunlight will increase the rate of carbon assimilation and plant’s growth rate. Higher assimilation rates would in turn lower the ratio between inter- and extracellular concentration of CO2. This correlation between light intensity and plant δ13C values has been observed not only at the bulk plant level (Ehleringer et al. 1987; Zimmerman and Ehleringer 1990) but also in leaf wax n-alkanes (Lockheart et al. 1997; Grice et al. 2008). These studies have shown that the leaves that had greater exposure to light were 13C-enriched in comparison with those at low light levels.

4.2.2 Internal Controls on C Isotopes

Biosynthetic Pathways
The key factor that controls the carbon isotope composition of higher plants is the type of carbon assimilation mechanism used by the plant. The difference in the δ13C values of C3 and C4 plants arises from different carbon isotope fractionations associated with different mechanisms of carbon assimilation. In C3 plants, CO2 diffusion through stomata leads to 4.4‰ fractionation (O’Leary 1981) followed up by a much greater fractionation – in the range of ca. 27–29‰ (Farquhar et al. 1989; Lloyd and Farquhar 1994) – during CO2 fixation catalyzed by RuBisCO. In C4 plants, however, the 13C/12C fractionation is much smaller because the additional CO2-concentrating mechanism, which involves phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) carboxylase, and structural and biochemical modifications of the carbon assimilation process reduce the realized isotope effect associated with RuBisCO (Farquhar et al. 1989).

Global compilations have shown that C3 plants employing the Calvin-Benson-Bassham (CBB) cycle are typically characterized by bulk δ13C values of ca. −25‰ to −27‰, though they can range from ca. −20 to −36‰. However, δ13C values of C4 plants which employ the Hatch-Slack pathway have a less 13C-depleted and overall less broad range of −9‰ to −15‰, with the most common values around −11‰ to −12‰ (Tipple and Pagani 2007). Differences of similar magnitude are observed between n-alkanes from leaf waxes of C3 and C4 plants (Collister et al. 1994; Chikaraishi and Naraoka 2003; Eley et al. 2016) though they are significantly 13C-depleted relative to leaf tissue (Table 1). It is of interest that even within the same group of C3 plants, there is a considerable difference with regard to the extent of the
net isotope fractionation (relative to biomass) between and within each group of C₃ angiosperm and C₃ gymnosperm plants (3.1–10.0‰ vs. 2.5–4.6‰, respectively). Recent work by Diefendorf and colleagues has linked these differences to phylogenetic variability among the plants (Diefendorf et al. 2011, 2015a).

Lipid Type and Metabolic Pathways
Similar to the patterns observed in algae, the process of photosynthesis imposes significant isotopic heterogeneity among acetogenic and isoprenoid lipids in higher plants (Table 1). For example, within both C₃ and C₄ plant groups, net fractionation between n-alkane and biomass carbon is noticeably greater than that in sterols. In C₃ plant angiosperms, n-alkanes differ from biomass by 3.1–10.0‰, while sterols differ by 1.3‰. In C₄ plants, n-alkanes differ by 8.9–13.0‰ and sterols by 5.0‰.

Differences in ¹³C/¹²C fractionation can also be observed within individual compound classes in a single organism. For instance, Grice et al. (2008) found that due to different biosynthetic precursors, the anteiso- and isoalkanes were ¹³C-enriched by ca. 3.0–4.5‰ in comparison with n-alkanes in tobacco leaves.

4.3 Hydrogen Isotopes in Higher Plant Lipids
Since the advent of the hydrogen isotope compound-specific methodology, the use of δ²H values of lipids from leaf waxes is one of the fastest-growing research areas in paleoclimatology. The methodology provides an opportunity to investigate the link between the global carbon and hydrological cycles in the past and thus project how the distribution and amount of precipitation might respond to increasing levels of atmospheric CO₂ in the future. The focus of current research into the systematics of hydrogen isotopes in leaf waxes is to provide a better understanding and to quantify the link between the δ²H values of leaf wax lipids and those of the source water used by plants. Of great additional interest is the role of relative humidity and transpiration (external factors) as well as several internal factors, such as the biosynthetic pathway and the lipid type, which have a strong additional effect on leaf wax hydrogen isotope composition.

4.3.1 External Controls on H Isotopes
²H/¹H of Source Water
Similar to the case with algal lipids, the use of the δ²H values of leaf wax lipids as proxy for paleohydrology requires demonstrating that these values are closely linked with those of source water. The link is shown best when looking at large environmental gradients in the δ²H of meteoric precipitation. Field studies in western Europe (Sachse et al. 2006), eastern North America (Tipple and Pagani 2013), and South America (Feakins et al. 2016) have clearly demonstrated that n-alkyl lipids from different C₃ species generally track the δ²H values of meteoric water across climatic zones in those regions. The global and/or regional pattern of this relationship can however be modified locally by the timing of lipid synthesis.
Currently, there is no agreement as to whether leaf wax $\delta^{2}H$ values reflect $\delta^{2}H$ values of source water during leaf flush only and are then essentially “locked in” for the rest of the growth season (Sachse et al. 2010; Tipple et al. 2013) or whether they continue to respond to environmental changes over the rest of the season (Sessions 2006; Sachse et al. 2009; Newberry et al. 2015; Freimuth et al. 2017). This potential complication certainly needs to be considered when interpreting sedimentary $\delta^{2}H$ record of higher plant lipid biomarkers.

Relative Humidity and Transpiration
In addition to the uncertainty of the effect of timing of leaf wax synthesis, another external variable has the potential to significantly modify the link with the $\delta^{2}H$ values of meteoric precipitation. The isotopic composition of water taken by the plant can be substantially altered by the evaporation of water from the leaf through stomata. While several studies have claimed that transpiration has no significant effect on lipid $\delta^{2}H$ values (Feakins and Sessions 2010; McInerney et al. 2011), other studies involving both theoretical considerations and empirical data have reported a major effect (Sachse et al. 2010; Shanahan et al. 2013; Kahmen et al. 2013a, b; Tipple et al. 2015; Gamara et al. 2016). A compilation of multiple studies used to investigate the dependence of $\delta^{2}H/\delta^{1}H$ fractionation on relative humidity (RH) suggests that at RH $< 70\%$, leaf waxes are ca. 50–60\‰ $\delta^{2}H$-enriched in comparison with those at $> 70\%$ RH (Sachse et al. 2012). Even though the compilation uses multiple plant types with different physiologies, it does show a general trend of increasing $\delta^{2}H/\delta^{1}H$ fractionation between lipids and source water when RH decreases.

4.3.2 Internal Controls on H Isotopes

Biosynthetic Pathways
Unlike the case with carbon isotope systematics, where there is a clear understanding of the effect of the C$_3$ versus C$_4$ photosynthetic pathways on the $\delta^{13}C$ values of leaf wax lipids, the role of this factor on $\delta^{2}H/\delta^{1}H$ fractionation between leaf wax lipids and source water is still not very clear. An early study that investigated a broad range of C$_3$ and C$_4$ plants in Japan and Thailand did not show any appreciable difference in fractionation between leaf wax n-alkanes and source water (Chikaraishi and Naraoka 2003). On the one hand, a compilation of multiple studies that included various growth forms showed that the median value of $\delta^{2}H/\delta^{1}H$ fractionation between n-nonacosane (n-C$_{29}$ alkane) and mean annual precipitation in C$_3$ graminoids is ca. 10\‰ greater than that in C$_4$ graminoids, though there is a considerable overlap when all the reported data are considered (Sachse et al. 2012). A more recent study reported a significantly greater difference between these two groups: ca. 200\‰ in C$_3$ grasses and ca. 160\‰ in C$_4$ grasses. On the other hand, another recent study has shown an opposite trend, whereby $\delta^{2}H/\delta^{1}H$ fractionation is greater in C$_4$ grasses – by ca. 30\‰ when acetogenic lipids are considered. The situation is complicated by the fact that the trend is reversed in isoprenoid lipids, with fractionation in C$_4$ grass smaller by ca. 200\‰ in phytol and ca. 50\‰ in sterols (Zhou et al. 2016).
Another way of looking at the patterns observed in higher plant leaf wax δ²H values is to consider phylogenetic relationships as suggested by several recent studies that investigated n-alkanes and n-fatty acids grouped by phylogeny. For instance, monocots were found to be 30–70‰ more ²H-depleted in comparison with dicots (Gao et al. 2014; Liu et al. 2016).

**Lipid Type and Metabolic Pathways**

Early investigations of lipid biomarkers from higher plants highlighted major differences between n-alkyl and isoprenoid compounds, with isoprenoid lipids being ²H-depleted by more than 100‰, within a single organism (Sessions et al. 1999; Chikaraishi et al. 2004a, b, 2009). Further research has shown that significant variability can also be observed within n-alkyl lipids, e.g., by 20–30‰ among n-alkanes, n-alkanols, and n-fatty acids (Hou et al. 2007; Chikaraishi and Naraoka 2007; Freimuth et al. 2017; Daniels et al. 2017) and even different types of alkanes, e.g., n-alkanes, isoalkanes, and anteisoalkanes, may vary in their δ²H values by ca. 50–60‰ (Zhou et al. 2010). The biochemical mechanisms responsible for these differences are currently not well understood, and further research is certainly needed to get fundamental understanding of what drives the observed differences in ²H/¹H fractionation between and within individual lipid groups in higher plants.

---

**5 Research Needs**

Previous research has demonstrated that the isotopic composition of lipids from algae and higher plants can provide a wealth of information about current and past biological, chemical, and physical processes operating in the environment. To increase the level of our understanding of the link between the δ¹³C and δ²H values of lipids and environmental signals and to get a better grasp of the fundamental processes controlling carbon and hydrogen fractionation during photosynthesis, the following research issues should be addressed (Fig. 4):

**Internal factors.** The exact pathways and mechanisms controlling carbon and hydrogen isotopic composition of lipids are still poorly known. Even though general trends concerning key fractionation steps have been described (e.g., Hayes 2001; Schmidt et al. 2003; Chikaraishi 2014), there is little empirical data about the biochemical precursors of algal and higher plant lipids. Information about precursor δ¹³C and δ²H values – both at intramolecular and intermolecular levels – of acetogenic and isoprenoid lipids is needed to narrow this gap.

Paleoclimatic and paleoecological studies would benefit from an improved understanding of isotopic differences within and between lipid groups. Thus, future research should explore the extent of ¹³C/¹²C and ²H/¹H fractionation in lipids from individual plants and plant groups. More attention should also be given to exploring a possible role of phylogeny that might provide key insights into the isotopic differences among different plant groups.

Algal response to different levels of salinity has been described previously; however, a mechanistic understanding of the internal biochemical processes that
are responsible for $^2\text{H}/^1\text{H}$ fractionation is still lacking. Further research using both culture and field studies will increase our level of confidence about this promising proxy.

The effect of leaf transpiration on the $\delta^2\text{H}$ values of lipids is one of the key factors that need to be better understood and quantified to make the leaf wax hydrogen isotope paleohydrology proxy more robust. Studies focusing on individual higher plant species as well as plant groups will provide further insight into the link between moisture availability and hydrogen isotope response in lipids.

**External factors.** The role of some of the external factors on the $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ and $\delta^2\text{H}$ values of algae and higher plants is still not clear. Conflicting data dealing with short- and long-term scales about the effect of CO$_2$ concentration on $^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$ fractionation in higher plants precludes an effective use of carbon isotope composition of lipid...
biomarkers in paleoclimatology. Studies integrating data from other proxies (e.g., δ^{13}C values of cellulose and lignin from tree rings) on longer-term scales (hundreds to thousands of years) would provide more clarity about the effect of this external variable.

The effect of temperature on the δ^{2}H values of algal lipids needs further research. The link is unlikely to be robust enough to provide a new proxy for water paleotemperature. However, a possible effect of this parameter needs to be better understood to use the δ^{2}H values as a proxy for paleosalinity with more confidence.

The effect of irradiance on 2H/1H fractionation in algal lipids is barely known, particularly with regard to how different lipid groups respond to this variable. The great diversity of microalgae that occupy various ecological niches with different light levels, e.g., in the polar regions with different amounts and types of ice, provides an exciting opportunity for future research. Future studies using both culture and environmental studies could explore whether the link between light intensity and 2H/1H fractionation of algal lipids is robust enough to make δ^{2}H of algal lipids a new proxy for ice/snow pack thickness.

References


Chikaraishi Y, Naraoka H (2007) $\delta^{13}C$ and $\delta^D$ relationships among three $n$-alkyl compound classes (n-alkanoic acid, $n$-alkane and $n$-alkanol) of terrestrial higher plants. Org Geochem 38:198–215


Chikaraishi Y, Naraoka H, Poulson SR (2004b) Hydrogen and carbon isotopic fractionations of lipid biosynthesis among terrestrial (C3, C4 and CAM) and aquatic plants. Phytochemistry 65:1369–1381


Craig H (1954) Carbon-13 in plants and the relationships between carbon-13 and carbon-14 variations in nature. J Geol 62:115–149


Diefendorf AF, Freimuth EJ (2017) Extracting the most from terrestrial plant-derived n-alkyl lipids and their carbon isotopes from the sedimentary record: a review. Org Geochem 103:1–21


Grice K, Lu H, Zhou Y et al. (2008) Biosynthetic and environmental effects on the stable carbon isotopic compositions of anteiso- (3-methyl) and iso- (2-methyl) alkanes in tobacco leaves. Phytochemistry 69:2807–2814


Ladd SN, Sachs JP (2013) Positive correlation between salinity and \( n \)-alkane \( \delta^{13}C \) values in the mangrove *Avicennia marina*. Org Geochem 64:1–8


Lloyd J, Farquhar GD (1994) \( ^{13}C \) discrimination during \( CO_2 \) assimilation by the terrestrial biosphere. Oecologia 99:201–215


Maloney AE, Shinneman ALC, Hemeon K et al (2016) Exploring lipid \( ^2H/^{1H} \) fractionation mechanisms in response to salinity with continuous cultures of the diatom *Thalassiosira pseudonana*. Org Geochem 101:154–165


Sachse D, Dawson TE, Kahmen A (2015) Seasonal variation of leaf wax n-alkane production and δ2H values from the evergreen oak tree, Quercus agrifolia. Isot Environ Heal S 51:124–142


The interface between leaves and the surrounding environment is formed by the wax-covered plant cuticle, which is hydrophobic and highly impermeable to water and dissolved solutes. The surface itself may become superhydrophobic by complex three-dimensional wax crystals. There is evidence that this system evolved already early with the colonization of land some 450 million years ago. Although the leaf surface represents a hostile environment, because water and nutrient availability is very limited and variations in temperature and light intensity can be quite large, it forms the habitat for specialized epiphytic microorganisms successfully colonizing the leaf surface which is also called phyllosphere. Certain strategies improving living conditions within the phyllosphere have been developed by epiphytic microorganisms. They can significantly enhance leaf surface wetting and water permeability of the hydrophobic cuticle. This interaction
significantly increases the abundance of water on the leaf surface, and as a consequence, leaching of nutrients to the leaf surface should be increased, thus becoming available for epiphylltic microorganisms. This strategy is supported by the ability of biosurfactant production, which represents a common and important adaptation of epiphylltic microorganisms.

1 Introduction

Outer epidermal cell walls of leaves and fruits are covered by the plant cuticle (Riederer and Müller 2006). It represents an extracellular lipid polymer of hydroxy fatty acids, which are esterified and in addition often linked by ether bonds and direct carbon/carbon bonds between the monomers (Pollard et al. 2009; Villena et al. 1999). Furthermore, the cuticle contains cell wall carbohydrates extending from the epidermal cell into the cutin polymer (Guzman et al. 2014; Segado et al. 2016). Cuticular waxes are deposited on the outer surface (epicuticular wax) and within (intracuticular wax) the cutin polymer (Samuels et al. 2009). Cuticular waxes, which are diverse in their chemical composition (Buschhaus and Jetter 2011), are solid and partially crystalline at room temperature (Reynhardt and Riederer 1994). Due to this highly ordered structure of cuticular waxes on the molecular level, they seal the plant cuticle and make it highly impermeable to water and dissolved organic and inorganic solutes (Schreiber and Schönherr 2009). The evolutionary invention of cuticles sealing aboveground parts of higher land living plants represented an important adaptation for successfully colonizing the mainland about 450 to 500 million years ago (Kenrick and Crane 1997). There is good evidence that superhydrophobicity caused by epicuticular wax crystals already evolved in the late Ordovician or Silurian (Barthlott et al. 2016). Apoplastic hydrophobic barriers were a key innovation in plants for life outside of water (Niklas et al. 2017).

The largest fraction of the terrestrial biomass is formed by plants representing the main primary producers by photosynthesis (Groombridge and Jenkins 2002). Leaves as the sites of photosynthesis are designed as two-dimensional organs with larger surface area/volume ratios for efficiently absorbing sun light. Consequently, leaf surfaces form a large surface area which amounts to 1 billion square kilometers, thus being 6.8-times larger than the surface of the mainland on earth (Vorholt 2012). All leaf surfaces are covered by a waxy cuticle forming the habitat for microorganisms which has been named phyllosphere (Ruinen 1961). Since more than half a century, the microbial ecology of the phyllosphere represents interdisciplinary research conducted by a small but diverse group of scientists mostly from either microbial ecology or plant sciences (Bailey et al. 2006). They are interested in studying and understanding the hydrophobic leaf surfaces as habitats for microorganisms (Fig. 1) investigating basic ecological questions such as abiotic and biotic factors in this habitat (Meyer and Leveau 2012), microbial diversity (Whipps et al. 2008), interactions between microorganisms (Hunter et al. 2010) and between microorganisms and waxy leaf surfaces (Knoll and Schreiber 2004), and immigration and emigration of microorganisms (Kinkel 1997). It has been estimated that 10^6 to 10^7 bacteria per square
centimeter can live on the surface of an individual leaf (Lindow and Brandl 2003). Compared to bacteria, fungi as further important group of microorganisms have been less studied.

In this review, we will focus on leaf surfaces from a plant scientist’s view. We will shortly describe the chemical composition of epicuticular waxes, forming the chemical basis of this habitat, and we will discuss the function of cuticular waxes essentially establishing the barrier properties of the leaf surface. Finally, modifications of the waxy leaf surface by microorganisms and interactions between microorganisms (mainly bacteria) and waxy leaf surfaces will be discussed. The focus will be mostly, but not exclusively, on epiphylllic nonpathogenic bacteria. However, pathogenic as well as nonpathogenic microorganisms (bacteria and fungi) face the same conditions and problems when arriving on the leaf surface and trying to establish there; thus, examples given here could also apply to pathogenic microorganisms.

2 Composition of Plant Cuticular Waxes

Plant cuticular waxes represent a highly diverse mixture of aliphatic compounds (Jetter et al. 2006). They can be extracted with organic solvents from the surfaces of leaves, fruits, and shoots in their primary developmental state (Riederer and Schneider 1989). The chemical composition of cuticular wax can best be analyzed using gas chromatography and mass spectroscopy (Kolattukudy and Walton 1973).
Two major fractions have been described: linear long-chain aliphatics and penta-cyclic triterpenoids (Jetter et al. 2006). Biosynthesis of cuticular wax is described in a separate article of this volume (▶ Chap. 6, “Biosynthesis of the Plant Cuticle”); thus, it will not be discussed in detail here. Linear long-chain aliphatic compounds are essentially derivatives of C16 and C18 fatty acids, which are elongated and in addition functionally modified (Kunst and Samuels 2003). Pentacyclic triterpenoids are derived from the terpenoid pathway composed of 6 C5 units finally leading to C30 molecules (Wang et al. 2011).

The fraction of linear, long-chain aliphatic molecules mainly consists of fatty acids, alcohols, aldehydes, and alkanes with chain lengths varying between C16 and C35 (Fig. 2). Esters formed between fatty acids and alcohols are consequently characterized by extraordinarily long chain lengths between C32 and C64. Besides these most common compound classes, a large number of additional more specialized compound classes (ketones, secondary alcohols, diols, etc.) have been described and characterized as more specific wax constituents occurring within certain taxonomic groups (Jetter et al. 2006). Whereas linear long-chain aliphatic compounds occur as a relevant fraction in all samples of cuticular wax analyzed so far, pentacyclic triterpenoids can form a significant or even the major wax fraction in certain taxonomic groups (Jetter et al. 2006), whereas they are almost or completely absent in other species. This chemical diversity of plant waxes is visualized by the high complexity and diversity of the three-dimensional crystalline epicuticular wax covers, which is determined by their chemistry (Barthlott et al. 1998).

3 Function of Plant Cuticular Waxes

Cuticular waxes, which are deposited within the outer fraction of the cutin polymer and on the outer surface of the cutin polymer, form the interface between the plant and the surrounding atmosphere. Depending on the plant species, the organ and the developmental state wax coverage can significantly vary (Wang et al. 2015). Most leaves are characterized by a wax coverage varying between 10 and 100 μg per square centimeter (Schreiber and Riederer 1996). When assuming a wax density of 1 g per cm3, this leads to a thickness of the wax layer on leaf surfaces between 10 and
100 nm. This very thin wax layer in fact forms the actual interface between the leaf and the environment.

Making leaf surfaces non-wettable or even superhydrophobic represents one of the main functions of epicuticular waxes. This phenomenon is best known as Lotus effect (Barthlott and Neinhuis 1997). Wax molecules, which are mostly composed of methyl and methylene groups, are hydrophobic and thus water-repellent leading to contact angles of 90 degree (Holmes-Farley et al. 1988). However, with the formation of three-dimensional epicuticular wax crystallites, contact angles can be significantly increased reaching values of 140 to 175 degrees, which is also of considerable interest for biomimetic technical applications (Barthlott et al. 2017). This renders leaf surfaces essentially non-wettable. This effect prevents guard cells from infiltration with water, which would inhibit gas exchange, and it would offer microorganisms, colonizing the leaf surface, a route into the leaf interior (apoplastic space), which must be avoided.

Besides rendering leaf surfaces non-wettable, cuticular waxes have to seal the cuticle, making it highly impermeable to water and dissolved molecules (Schönherr and Riederer 1989). The cutin polymer itself is highly permeable since upon wax extraction with organic solvents, permeability of plant cuticles increases by 2 to 3 orders of magnitude (Fig. 3; Schönherr 1976; Schönherr and Lendzian 1981). Thus, only with cuticular waxes, which are solid and partially crystalline at room temperature, cuticles represent efficient transport barriers. It is still a matter of debate whether intracuticular or both epi- and intracuticular waxes establish the transport barrier of cuticles. Epicuticular waxes can selectively be removed from the cuticle surface by mechanical stripping (Jetter et al. 2000). Thus, cuticular permeability can be measured before and after removal of epicuticular wax. Whereas in some experiments it was found that the cuticular transport barrier is essentially established

![Fig. 3](image-url)  
Fig. 3 Effect of cuticular wax extraction on permeability of leaf cuticles. Permeances for water [m s\(^{-1}\)] were measured for intact cuticular membranes (CM) and wax-free cuticular membranes (MX). Upon wax extraction with organic solvent, permeances increased by factors between 100 and 1000. (Data from Schönherr and Lendzian 1981)
by the intracuticular wax fraction (Zeisler and Schreiber 2016), in other experiments, a contribution of both epi- and intracuticular waxes to total barrier properties was described for some species (Jetter and Riederer 2016).

Since it is the cuticular wax establishing the transport barrier, methods have been developed studying transport properties of isolated cuticular wax. Chloroform-extracted wax can be re-crystallized as thin layers, and sorption and diffusion of organic molecules in these wax layers using radiolabeled probes can be measured (Schreiber and Schönherr 1993). These experiments confirmed that it is the cuticular wax layer sealing the cutin polymer and thus establishing the cuticular transport barrier. Diffusion coefficients of solutes, which were sufficiently soluble in re-crystallized wax, e.g., benzoic acid or salicylic acid, was as low as $10^{-17} \text{ m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ (Kirsch et al. 1997). These are diffusion coefficients which are several orders of magnitude lower compared to diffusion of comparable molecules in water, where diffusions coefficients are in the range of $10^{-10}$ to $10^{-12} \text{ m}^2 \text{s}^{-1}$ (Cussler 1984).

It was described within the last decades that polar compounds, e.g., ions and charged organic molecules, which are basically insoluble in the lipophilic cutin and wax phase, can diffuse along a polar path of transport across the cuticle (Schönherr 2006). It is postulated that these polar paths of transport are formed at sites in the cuticle where carbohydrates from the outer epidermal cell wall extend into the cutin polymer and thus form these polar regions within the hydrophobic cutin polymer. The occurrence of these polar paths of transport, which are preferentially observed in the cuticle covering guard cells, trichomes, and anticlinal cell walls (Schreiber 2005), should be of special relevance for microorganisms sitting on the leaf surfaces. At these sites of the leaves, higher amounts of essential nutrients diffuse from the leaf interior to the leaf surface, where they could be metabolized by epiphytic microorganisms. It was in fact described that epiphytic microorganisms preferentially colonized these niches (base of trichomes, surrounding of guard cells, and anticlinal cell walls) of the leaf surfaces (Krimm et al. 2005; Leveau and Lindow 2001).

### 4 Interactions of Microorganisms with Plant Cuticular Waxes

The leaf surface represents a very harsh habitat with unfavorable environmental conditions. Light conditions, including UV light, temperature, and humidity can vary extremely on a diurnal and annual scale (Lindow and Brandl 2003; Vorholt 2012). Due to the high impermeability and the pronounced lipophilicity of the cuticle, nutrient and water availability is very limited, because (1) wetting of the leaf surface is poor if not impossible (Koch et al. 2008) and (2) the diffusion resistance of the cuticle is very high, although the outer epidermal cell wall below the cuticle is fully saturated with water and the apoplast (plant cell wall space) contains ions, sugars, and amino acids (Lohaus et al. 2001; Ruan et al. 1996). Nevertheless, leaf surfaces are frequently colonized by microorganisms, although depending on the corresponding environmental conditions, colonization can vary largely (Kinkel 1997). Consequently, any strategy of microorganisms changing physicochemical properties of leaf surface, e.g., increasing leaf surface wettability
or cuticular permeability for water and dissolved nutrients, should be beneficial for survival in the phyllosphere.

It has been shown that leaf (Knoll and Schreiber 1998) and needle surface wettability (Schreiber 1996), quantified by contact angles of water, significantly increased with the intensity of colonization by microorganisms. With conifer needles, it was observed by scanning electron microscopy that colonization of the wax-covered needle surfaces with microorganisms significantly increased with needle age increasing from the current year to the fourth year (Fig. 4). Artificial colonization of silanized, hydrophobic glass surfaces with specific bacteria (*Pseudomonas fluorescens*) confirmed these observations. The degree of the contact angle of water was highly correlated and decreased with increasing relative fractions of the glass surface covered by bacteria (Fig. 5). Obviously, the droplet of water used for measuring the contact angle is in contact with the polar outer surface of the bacterial cell wall instead of the lipophilic waxy leaf surface, and depending on the intensity of bacterial colonization, this leads to a continuous decrease in contact angles.

In addition, it has been described that epiphytic bacteria living on the hydrophobic leaf surface can form an extracellular matrix (EPS: extracellular polymeric substances), which protects microorganisms from rapid dehydration and direct exposure to UV light (Morris and Monier 2003). Since EPS are composed of carbohydrates, which by nature are polar compared to the lipophilic water-repellent wax molecules, consequently this also leads to enhanced leaf surface wettability. The occurrence of biosurfactants can be considered as a further efficient strategy increasing leaf surface wetting. Many epiphytic bacteria (Burch et al. 2016) and also some epiphytic fungi (Bhardwaj et al. 2013) are characterized by the ability to synthesize biosurfactants and export them to the leaf surface. Biosurfactants, as synthetic surfactants, are amphiphilic and thus can efficiently mediate between the hydrophobic water-repellent waxy leaf surface and polar water. Biosurfactants covering a

![Fig. 4](image_url)  
**Fig. 4** Contact angles of water droplets measured on *Abies grandis* needle surfaces. Contact angles decreased with increasing needle age between the current year (0) and the fourth year (4). Data from Schreiber (1996)
hydrophobic leaf surface can lead to significantly improved wetting of the water-repellent hydrophobic waxy leaf surface (Bunster et al. 1989).

In addition, biosurfactants will also significantly increase overall water availability in the phyllosphere since they are hygroscopic and tend to efficiently bind water to the leaf surface at a given humidity normally much lower than 100%, at which water would not tend to bind to a clean bacteria- and biosurfactant-free lipophilic leaf surface. Since water is very limited in the phyllosphere and biosurfactants can increase water availability, they also enhance survival of epiphytic bacteria. Biosurfactant-deficient mutants sowed a significantly decreased survival rate in the phyllosphere with varying humidity compared to the biosurfactant-producing wildtype (Burch et al. 2014). Bacterial population densities significantly decreased in periods of reduced humidity, and recovery of bacterial population density of the biosurfactant-producing strain compared to the biosurfactant-deficient mutant was much higher.

Bacteria living on the outer hydrophobic leaf surface could use three different sources of nutrients. (1) They can use nutrients deposited via rain and fog droplets or dust from the atmosphere to the leaf surface (Lindberg et al. 1986). (2) The living leaf interior below the cuticle represents a nutrient-rich source which contains essentially all inorganic (ions) and organic (C-, N-sources, etc.) nutrients needed by microorganisms. (3) Finally, the leaf surface itself composed of wax and cutin monomers could represent a carbon and energy source. Concerning the leaf interior as a potential nutrient source, it must be kept in mind that the outer leaf surface is highly isolated from the leaf interior (symplastic as well as apoplastic space) by the fairly impermeable plant cuticle. Especially permeability of charged ions and polar organic compounds, e.g., sugars and amino acids, across the lipophilic plant cuticle is very low (Schönherr 2006). In the past model calculations predicted that the plant

---

**Fig. 5** Contact angles of water droplets measured on silanized glass surfaces colonized with bacterial cells (*Pseudomonas fluorescens*). Contact angles decreased with increasing density of surface colonization by bacterial cells from 95 to about 30 degree. (Data from Knoll and Schreiber 1998)
cuticle would not allow diffusion of significant amounts of ions and polar organic solutes across cuticles to be used by epiphylls as nutrient sources (Schönherr and Baur 1996).

These model calculations however were based on a very specialized experimental system exclusively using isolated cuticular membranes which were free of guard cells and trichomes. In following transport and permeability studies using intact leaves, which had guard cells and trichomes, it became evident that the cuticle-covering guard cells, trichomes, and also anticlinal cell walls represented sites where polar compounds obviously could more efficiently leach through the cuticle to the leaf surface (Schlegel et al. 2005; Schreiber 2005; Schönherr 2006). Microscopic observations studying the distribution of epiphylls on the leaf surface in fact found that trichomes, guard cells, and anticlinal cell walls represented niches preferentially colonized by epiphylls (Krimm et al. 2005; Leveau and Lindow 2001). Obviously, epiphylls select these specific sites in the phyllosphere because of increased nutrient availability. Thus, this lateral heterogeneity within the leaf surface, which is very common with many leaf surfaces, should not be ignored when studying the interaction between leaf surfaces and microorganisms. It was also observed that lower leaf sides are often more densely colonized by epiphylls compared to the upper leaf side (Krimm et al. 2005). The reasons for this are probably the protection of microorganisms from direct irradiation and the higher abundance or exclusive occurrence of guard cells on the lower leaf side, which will lead to higher ambient humidity at the leaf surface due to the stomatal transpiration. Thus, exposure of microorganisms to various environmental conditions is less harsh on the lower compared to the upper leaf side.

Utilization of wax (and potentially cutin) constituents as carbon and energy sources could also represent a nutrition strategy of epiphylls. However, up to now, direct experimental results verifying that wax (and cutin) could be used as carbon and energy source are still missing. There are observations that epiphylls can lead to significant visual changes in the appearance of the leaf surface (Ueda et al. 2015). This has been interpreted as a potential enzymatic degradation of cutin and/or wax; however, direct chemical or biochemical evidence for the metabolism of cutin or wax constituents is not yet available. Scanning electron microscopic investigations of a fungus growing on the leaf surface of a Euphorbiaceae (Euphorbia myrsinites), characterized by a dense coverage with epicuticular wax platelets, show for the first time impressively that wax platelets along the growing hyphae disappear (Fig. 6). The underlying mechanism, whether it is “wax melting,” eventually induced by biosurfactants, or enzymatic wax degradation by extracellular enzymes, or the presence of an extracellular fungal substance similar to EPS just covering the wax platelets is not yet solved. Nevertheless, these dramatic changes of the highly ordered leaf surface waxes should lead to significant changes in the physicochemical properties of the waxy leaf surface, e.g., enhanced wetting, and thus be advantageous for the epiphyll fungus.

It is remarkable that epiphylls are often characterized by the ability of biosurfactant production (Bhardwaj et al. 2013; Burch et al. 2016). Besides
enhancing leaf surface wetting and increasing water availability, biosurfactants might be essential for microbial wax degradation. It is well known that certain environmental strains of bacteria are capable of degrading petroleum constituents (Ron and Rosenberg 2002). An essential prerequisite for degrading these lipophilic compounds represents the ability of these bacteria to synthesize biosurfactants, which solubilize the petroleum molecules in water and thus make them available to bacteria for the enzymatic degradation. Different from plant waxes, which are solid and partially crystalline at room temperature (Reynhardt and Riederer 1994) due to their chain lengths between C_{20} and C_{64}, chain lengths of petroleum start at C_{1} and can extend to C_{70} and even higher. The liquid petroleum fraction with chain lengths between C_{1} and C_{20} is characterized by higher water solubilities and lower octanol-water partition coefficients compared to the solid fraction with chain lengths higher than C_{20}. Thus, this petroleum fraction with short chain lengths is more accessible to biosurfactant-mediated degradation by extracellular microbial enzymes. Bacterial degradation of very lipophilic and highly water-insoluble plant waxes, where chain lengths start at C_{20}, will be a lot more challenging.

**Fig. 6** Fungal hyphae growing on the leaf surface of *Euphorbia myrsinites* densely covered with epicuticular wax platelets. (a) Overview, (b) detail. Wax platelets completely disappeared in the vicinity of the fungal hyphae.
With the production of biosurfactants, enhancing leaf surface wetting and water availability, living conditions in the leaf surface habitats are already changed in favor of epiphytic microorganisms. As a further strategy, it should also be of major advantage to enhance leaf surface permeability and thus potentially increase nutrient leaching from inside of the leaf to the leaf surface. It is well known that synthetic surfactants used in spray solutions in agrochemistry not only enhance leaf surface wetting of the spray droplets (Kirkwood 1999) but also act as plasticizers within the transport-limiting barrier of the plant cuticle made of wax (Schreiber 2006). As a consequence, diffusion rates of agrochemicals across the transport-limiting plant cuticle into the leaf are significantly enhanced (Shi et al. 2005).

It has been described that epiphytic bacteria when inoculated to the surface of isolated cuticles could increase cuticular water permeability by two-fold (Fig. 7; Burch et al. 2014; Schreiber et al. 2005). This effect was most pronounced with bacteria-producing biosurfactants. Although water itself does not represent a nutrient, this enhanced cuticular permeability of water increases water availability for epiphytic microorganisms living in the phyllosphere. Furthermore, increased amounts of water present on the leaf surface, especially in the presence of biosurfactants, should form a sink for ions and organic solutes and enhance the leaching of these compounds through the cuticle to the leaf surface, which will not occur on a dry water-free leaf surface.

![Figure 7](image_url)

**Fig. 7** Effect of bacteria colonizing the surface of cuticles isolated from cherry laurel (bars 1 to 4) and ivy (bars 5 to 8) on cuticular water permeability. Water permeability increased by factors up to 1.5-fold in the presence of the bacteria compared to the control (treatment of the cuticle surface with water). (Data from Schreiber et al. 2005)
The exact mechanism how this increase in rates of cuticular water permeability is achieved is not yet known. However, it is unlikely that the mechanism increasing cuticular permeability, which has been described for technical surfactants used in agrochemistry (Schreiber 2006), is the same here. These technical surfactants reducing barrier properties of plant cuticles are on average much smaller (molecular weights around 300–500) compared to biosurfactants (molecular weights around 1000), and they are generally uncharged and fairly lipophilic. These technical surfactants, which enhance cuticular permeability by one order of magnitude or even more, are sorbed in significant amounts in the transport-limiting wax layer and thus cause this described plasticizing effect (Burghardt et al. 1998). With much larger, polar, and charged biosurfactants (Parra et al. 1989), such a mode of action seems to be less probable. Nevertheless, this effect of biosurfactants enhancing rates of cuticular water permeability, although the mode of action remains to be solved, represents an important strategy improving living conditions within the phyllosphere.

A very specific type of recognition between a fungal pathogen (*Blumeria*) and its host (barley) based on the chemical composition of the epicuticular wax fraction has been discovered recently (Hansjakob et al. 2010; Zabka et al. 2008). It was found that specifically linear-long chain aldehydes, with \( n \)-hexacosanal being the most effective compound, were strongly inducing germination and further differentiation of conidia on both the surface of barley leaves and on artificial model surfaces which were spiked with the corresponding aldehydes varying in chain length. Other linear long-chain aliphatic compounds also occurring in barely wax, including primary fatty acids, \( n \)-alkanes, primary alcohols, or esters, were obviously not sensed by the conidia since germination was affected.

Within the last years, genomic and proteomic approaches and the smart combination of both approaches (proteogenomics) revealed that there is also sensing across the cuticle between epiphylllic bacteria and the plant leading to specific gene expression and protein synthesis in bacteria (Delmotte et al. 2009). In adaptation to the availability of specific nutrients available on the leaf surface, characteristic patterns of proteins were detectable, which were synthesized by bacteria. This included enzymes utilizing methanol, which is evolving from the leaf interior reaching the leaf surface via diffusion through guard cells and thus can be utilized by epiphylllic bacteria. Furthermore, expression and synthesis of transporters involved in bacterial transport of carbohydrates, originating from the leaf interior and being available in the phyllosphere, has been described. Using this approach in future, specific interactions between leaves and epiphylllic microorganisms on the molecular level can be studied in more detail.

## 5 Research Needs

Future research questions regarding leaf surfaces and the interaction with microorganisms should address specific questions related to the three areas: (i) diversity of wax chemistry, (ii) function of the cuticular transport barrier, and (iii) active modification of the leaf surface by microorganisms.
Wax chemistry: Why is there such a tremendous diversity in wax chemistry (chain lengths, compound classes, and functionalities) between different plant organs but also between different plant species? Each species has its unique wax composition, but to date, there is no convincing answer why this is needed. Is it the specific “wax flavor” at the outer surface of the leaf, which regulates the interaction of every individual species with the surrounding abiotic and biotic environment including epiphylllic microorganisms? Can an individual species-specific wax composition be recognized by a specific microorganism thus allowing the identification of its host?

Cuticular transport barrier: Further research is needed to clarify why certain regions of the leaf surface (guard cells, trichomes, anticlinal cell walls) are characterized by an enhanced diffusion of polar compounds through the cuticle to the leaf surface. Guard cells, trichomes, cuticular permeability? However, since trichomes and guard cells represent structures which are abundant on many leaf surfaces, future studies in phyllosphere microbiology should focus on intact leaves characterized by these structures, which seem to be of major significance for nutrient availability for epiphylllic microorganisms living on leaves.

Leaf surface/microorganism interactions: Besides increasing leaf surface wetting, there is good evidence that epiphylllic microorganisms can increase cuticular water permeability to some extent. However, the mechanism how this is achieved still remains unknown. The questions to be solved are whether biosurfactants themselves could cause this effect or if there is any activity of wax- and/or cutin-degrading enzymes contributing to this effect of enhanced cuticular water permeability? If there would be any active microbial metabolisms involved, this also raises the question whether cuticular wax and/or cutin could be used as a carbon and energy source? There is convincing microscopical evidence that epiphylllic fungi can significantly change the three-dimensional epicuticular wax structure (Fig. 6), but the underlying mechanisms causing this observation are not known to date. It is also not known in detail what signals can be exchanged across the cuticle between epiphylllic microorganisms and the living leaf tissue below and whether this could lead to mutual responses in both plants and epiphylllic microorganisms?

Acknowledgments Long-lasting financial support by the DFG (Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft) to LS is gratefully acknowledged.

References


Biosynthesis of the Plant Cuticle

Jérôme Joubès and Frédéric Domergue

Contents

1 Introduction ............................................................................. 140
2 Cutin Biosynthesis ................................................................. 141
  2.1 Cutin Monomer Synthesis ..................................................... 142
  2.2 Cutin Polymerization ............................................................ 144
3 Pathways for Cuticular Wax Biosynthesis .................................. 145
  3.1 Fatty Acid Elongases Produce Very-Long-Chain Fatty Acids .......... 145
  3.2 Alcohol-Forming Pathway .................................................... 147
  3.3 Alkane-Forming Pathway ..................................................... 148
  3.4 Other Compounds ................................................................ 150
4 Export of Cutin Monomers and Wax Compounds ......................... 150
5 Research Needs ....................................................................... 151
References ..................................................................................... 152

Abstract

Cuticular waxes and cutin form the cuticle, a hydrophobic layer covering the aerial surfaces of land plants, mainly preventing non-stomatal water loss and acting as a protective barrier against environmental stresses. Fatty acid-derived
compounds that compose the building blocks of the cuticle are produced in the endoplasmic reticulum of epidermal cells before being exported to the environmental face of the epidermis. Thirty years of plant genetic studies and the recent development of analytical tools for lipid identification have led to the molecular and biochemical characterization of the enzymes catalyzing the major steps in cuticular compound biosynthesis.

1 Introduction

Four hundred and fifty million years ago, the development of the cuticle, a thin translucent waterproof barrier, represented an important adaptation of plants for colonizing the terrestrial environment. Covering the surface of all aerial organs, the cuticle is strategically located at the plant/air interface, thereby, playing essential functions in plant interactions with the environment mainly by limiting water loss. The protective capacities of the cuticle are based on the physical and biochemical properties of its two highly hydrophobic components, cutin and cuticular waxes, which are assembled ultrastructurally in several layers (Nawrath et al. 2013). The cutin polymer, with embedded intracuticular waxes, constitutes the cuticle proper that is connected to the cell wall by a cuticular layer made of cutin and polysaccharides. Covering the cutin matrix, the outermost layer of the cuticle is composed of epicuticular waxes that can form wax crystal microstructures. Cuticle synthesis starts in early stages of embryo development and is tightly co-regulated with plant growth to provide constant cuticle deposition (Delude et al. 2016). Although the biochemical composition and the thickness of the cuticle vary among different plant species and/or among organs and developmental stages, a set of primary compounds is ubiquitously found in plant cuticles. Cutin, a three-dimensional biopolyester of long-chain polyhydroxy- and epoxyhydroxy-fatty acids cross-esterified to each other or via glycerol backbones, provides the main mechanical strength of the cuticle (Dominguez et al. 2015). Cuticular waxes consist of a complex mixture of homologue series of very-long-chain (VLC) aliphatic compounds, as well as non-acyl lipid cyclic components including terpenoids and flavonoids (Buschhaus and Jetter 2011; Bernard and Joubès 2013). In the past 30 years, the development of sensitive quantitative and qualitative technologies to accurately analyze cuticle composition, coupled with plant reverse genetic analyses, has yielded significant advances toward unraveling the many aspects of plant cuticle metabolism.

Cuticle biosynthetic pathway can be divided into several metabolic blocks (Fig. 1). Initially, the C16:0, C18:0, or C18:1 fatty acids resulting from de novo fatty acid synthesis in the plastids are transferred to the acyl-coenzyme A (CoA) pool, which will be used as precursor for the synthesis of cutin monomers and wax components. The subsequent generation of the cutin polymer can be divided in three successive steps, fatty acyl-chain oxidation, esterification of oxygenated fatty acyl...
chains to glycerol, and their export and extracellular polymerization. During wax biosynthesis, VLC acyl-CoAs derived from fatty acid elongation may be converted into primary alcohols and alkyl esters by the alcohol-forming pathway or into aldehydes, alkanes, secondary alcohols, and ketones by the alkane-forming pathway. Cuticle precursors synthesized within the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) are then transported in a directional manner through the Golgi apparatus and trans-Golgi network (TGN) to reach the plasma membrane before being secreted to cover the cell wall of epidermal cells facing the external environment.

2 Cutin Biosynthesis

Although the cutin monomer acyl composition is now well characterized, its macromolecular structure, as well as its association with the outermost cell wall layer of epidermal cells, remains poorly described (Yeats and Rose 2013). Through the use of particular plants and organs for which the physical isolation of cuticle by chemical and/or hydrolytic enzyme treatments had been achieved, the first analyses of cutin composition revealed that long-chain polyhydroxy- and epoxyhydroxy-fatty acids represent the major components of the polymer (Kolattukudy 1980). In the early twenty-first century, the adaption of isolation procedures to the plant model Arabidopsis thaliana (Franke et al. 2005), as well as the establishment of protocols based on extensive delipidation of plant tissues to eliminate all soluble lipids (Bonaventure et al. 2004), resulted in rapid progress toward elucidation of the major biochemical pathways generating cutin.
2.1 Cutin Monomer Synthesis

The most recent discoveries concerning cutin synthesis suggest that the basic building block of the cutin polymer is sn-2 mono(oxygenated)acyl-glycerol (2MAG; Yeats et al. 2014). In most plants, the major oxidized acyl chains are long-chain ω-hydroxy- and polyhydroxy-fatty acids, of which the latter are hydroxylated at positions 9 and/or 10 as well as at the ω-position (Fig. 2). In that respect, the cutin of Arabidopsis leaves and stems, which is richer in dicarboxylic acids (DCA) than in hydroxy-fatty acids, may represent a unique composition. If it is highly likely that fatty acids produced in the plastids are first activated, then oxidized, and finally transferred to glycerol in the ER, the sequential order of the different enzymatic reactions yielding 2MAGs has not been unambiguously determined.

Fig. 2 Cutin monomer biosynthetic pathways
In *Arabidopsis*, the C16:0, C18:0, and C18:1 free fatty acids derived from the de novo synthesis within plastids are activated in the form of acyl-CoAs by two ER-resident, long-chain acyl-CoA acyltransferases, LACS1 and LACS2 (Weng et al. 2010). Mutations in LACS2 globally impact cuticle development and especially wax content (Schnurr et al. 2004), whereas mutations in LACS1 affect both cutin and wax loads (Lü et al. 2009). The double *lacs1lacs2* mutant is more afflicted than either single mutant, and the many pleiotropic effects, including the fusion of organs, suggest that LACS1 and LACS2 have overlapping activities that are obligatory for normal cuticle establishment (Weng et al. 2010; Lü et al. 2009). However, the exact role of these enzymes remains elusive as the type of acyl chains activated in planta remains unknown. In addition, the observation that LACS2 displays more activity toward 16-hydroxy-palmitic acid than to palmitic acid in vitro (Schnurr et al. 2004) raises further questions about the exact position of these enzymes within the metabolic pathway.

Oxidation of the acyl chains is catalyzed by various cytochrome P450 enzymes (Fig. 2). First, members of the *Arabidopsis* CYP86 subfamily produce ω-hydroxy-fatty acids. In *Arabidopsis* leaves and stems, CYP86A8 (LCR) and CYP86A2 (ATT1) were shown to be the major cytochrome P450s involved in the acyl oxidation of cutin precursors (Wellesen et al. 2001; Xiao et al. 2004). Although the cutin composition of these tissues contains substantial amounts of 16:0, 18:1, and 18:2 ω-hydroxy-fatty acids, it is strongly dominated by the corresponding DCA (Li-Beisson et al. 2013). Nevertheless, the enzymes responsible for the conversion of ω-hydroxy-fatty acids to DCA remain uncharacterized. Since cytochrome P450 enzymes that are able to oxidize the terminal methyl group of a fatty acid to a carboxyl group have been previously characterized, at least in vitro (Le Bouquin et al. 2001), it is possible that CYP86A8 (LCR), CYP86A2 (ATT1), or another cytochrome P450 enzyme produces DCA from ω-hydroxy-fatty acids and/or generates oxo-fatty acids. Oxidoreductases, such as HOTHEAD (HTH), might also be involved in this process, since the corresponding mutants have reduced levels of DCAs (Krolikowski et al. 2003; Kurdyukov et al. 2006). In *Arabidopsis* flowers, CYP86A4 converts palmitic acid to 16-hydroxy-palmitic acid. Another cytochrome P450 enzyme, CYP77A6, catalyzes the in-chain hydroxylation to produce 10,16-dihydroxypalmidate, which represents 80% of acyl monomers in floral cutin (Li-Beisson et al. 2009). The cytochrome P450 enzymes from this subfamily might also produce epoxy-fatty acids, since microsomes from yeast expressing CYP77A4 are able to catalyze the epoxidation of monounsaturated fatty acids (Sauveplane et al. 2009).

The generation of 2MAGs relies on a specific family of glycerol-3-phosphate: acyl-CoA acyltransferases (GPAT) that are only present in land plants and that are specifically involved in lipid polyester synthesis (Yang et al. 2012). GPATs involved in cutin biosynthesis differ from the classical acyltransferases involved in membrane and storage lipid biosynthesis by specifically acylating the sn-2 position of glycerol-3-phosphate instead of the sn-1 position for classical GPATs. Additionally, they carry a phosphatase activity allowing subsequent conversion of 2-acyl-lysophosphatidic acids into 2MAGs. In addition, in vitro assays using yeast microsomes from cells
expressing these GPATs showed a clear preference for ω-hydroxy-fatty acids and DCAs. These special features most probably allow the epidermis to separate the glycerolipid precursors of cutin from those of membrane glycerolipids (Yang et al. 2010, 2012). In Arabidopsis, the gpat4 gpat8 double mutant has strongly reduced cutin loads in both leaves and stems (Li et al. 2007), whereas the gpat6 mutant is affected in the cutin load of flowers (Li-Beisson et al. 2009), thus indicating that this small clade of GPATs is specifically devoted to cutin biosynthesis. It should be noted that these acyltransferases are not responsible for the incorporation of phenylpropanoids into the cutin polyester; instead, this reaction is carried out by the BAHD acyltransferases. In particular, DCF (for Deficient in Cutin Ferulate) was shown in Arabidopsis to control cutin ferulate content and, in vitro, to transfer ferulic acid to ω-hydroxyacids (Rautengarten et al. 2012). Another BAHD, DCR (for Deficient in Cuticular Ridges), was shown to strongly affect flower cutin content (Panikashvili et al. 2009), although its principal activity remains unknown (Molina and Kosma 2015).

2.2 Cutin Polymerization

Whereas all the reactions yielding 2MAGs have been shown to occur in the endoplasmic reticulum, the enzymes responsible for the polymerization process of cutin have been localized within the cell wall (Girard et al. 2012; Yeats et al. 2012). Therefore, cutin precursors must be transported within the epidermal cell and, then, through both the plasmalemma and the cell wall to reach their final location. Some components of these steps have been characterized, but the entire transport of cutin monomers remains poorly described as discussed in Sect. 4.

The long-running mystery of cutin polymerization was recently solved by two groups, both of which simultaneously reported the identification of an extracellular enzyme that strongly influences cutin cross-linking in tomato, and which is capable of polymerizing 2MAGs in vitro (Girard et al. 2012; Yeats et al. 2012). This enzyme, now referred to as cutin synthase, belongs to the Gly-Asp-Ser-Leu family of esterases/acylhydrolases, commonly called GDSL-lipases. Fruits from GDSL1-silenced tomato lines have a much thinner cuticle with strongly reduced amounts of cutin monomers and display increased brightness, permeability, and post-harvested water loss, as well as significant decreases in cutin polymerization according to FTIR (Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy) analyses (Girard et al. 2012). At the same time, the cd1 mutant (for cutin deficient 1), with a point mutation resulting in an early stop codon in the same gene, shows a similar fruit phenotype with cutin load being reduced by 90 to 95% (Yeats et al. 2012). Most importantly, these authors also reported that the CD1 protein, upon heterologous expression in Nicotiana benthamiana and purification, was able to polymerize 2-mono(10,16-dihydroxyhexadecanoyl)glycerol in vitro, confirming its acyltransferase activity and fundamental role in cutin polymerization (Yeats et al. 2012). A putative Arabidopsis orthologue, AtCUS1/LTL1, was shown to have similarly strong polyester synthase activity but displayed negligible hydrolytic activity (Yeats et al. 2014).
In addition, plants expressing an artificial microRNA that silences \textit{LTL1} show flowers with fused petals devoid of adaxial nanoridges (Shi et al. 2011). The fact that the oligomers synthesized in vitro by cutin synthases are linear may, nevertheless, suggest that other enzymes are responsible for the branching and cross-linking of the polymer.

3 Pathways for Cuticular Wax Biosynthesis

Cuticular wax aliphatic compounds consist of a mixture of VLC molecules ranging from 22 to 38 carbon atoms. Produced by the elongase complexes, VLC acyl-CoAs can be transformed into free VLC fatty acids (VLCFAs) and/or processed through two distinct pathways. The alcohol-forming pathway produces even-numbered primary alcohols and alkyl esters, and the alkane-forming pathway yields aldehydes as well as odd-chain-numbered alkanes, secondary alcohols, and ketones (Fig. 1).

In the last 30 years, visual screens of ethyl methanesulfonate (EMS) mutant libraries identified wax-deficient mutants such as \textit{eceriferum} (\textit{cer}, waxless), \textit{glossy} (\textit{gl}), \textit{bloomless} (\textit{bm}), or \textit{wax crystal-sparse} leaf (\textit{wsl}) in \textit{Arabidopsis}, barley, maize, sorghum, or rice. In \textit{Arabidopsis thaliana}, 89 \textit{cer} mutants were isolated and shown to be affected on 21 independent loci, defining a set of 21 genes with potential function in wax biosynthesis, transport, or regulation (Koornneef et al. 1989). Moreover, new candidate genes with a role in the wax pathways were identified based on gene co-regulation data and gene expression enrichment in the epidermis of young developing organs as compared to the entire organs, a typical expression pattern of wax associated genes, allowing the characterization of the major steps in wax biosynthetic pathways (Lee and Suh 2015).

3.1 Fatty Acid Elongases Produce Very-Long-Chain Fatty Acids

Fatty acid elongation initially uses C16:0 and C18:0 fatty acids resulting from the plastidial de novo synthesis that are esterified to coenzyme A before entering the ER-bound, multienzyme fatty acid elongase (FAE) complexes (Fig. 3). Each FAE cycle catalyzes four successive reactions generating an acyl chain extended by two carbon atoms: formation of \( \beta \)-ketoacyl-CoA by condensation of malonyl-CoA with an acyl-CoA catalyzed by a \( \beta \)-ketoacyl-CoA synthase (KCS), reduction of \( \beta \)-ketoacyl-CoA to \( \beta \)-hydroxyacyl-CoA by a \( \beta \)-ketoacyl-CoA reductase (KCR), dehydration of \( \beta \)-hydroxyacyl-CoA to enoyl-CoA by a \( \beta \)-hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydratase (HCD), and reduction of enoyl-CoA by an enoyl-CoA reductase (ECR).

Studies, including photoperiod and chemical inhibition of elongase activities, initially raised the idea for existence of multiple elongase complexes, each with a distinct chain-length specificity that perform sequential and/or parallel reactions to produce the broad chain-length range of VLCFAs found in plants (von Weisstein-Knowles 1982). The KCR, HCD, and ECR enzymes are thought to have broad substrate specificity and may be shared by all FAE complexes (Kunst and Samuels 2009).
In contrast, KCS enzymes determine the chain-length substrate specificity of each elongation reaction.

Consistent with the coexistence of multiple FAE complexes, approximately 20 KCS members have been annotated in several angiosperm genomes (Guo et al. 2016). Expression pattern analyses and heterologous expression in yeast of a subset of the 21 Arabidopsis KCS indicated that some of them have overlapping functions, or they are specialized to particular environmental conditions (Joubès et al. 2008; Haslam and Kunst 2013). To date, several KCS have been shown to be involved in cuticle precursor synthesis (KCS1, KCS2, KCS5/CER60, KCS6/CER6, KCS9, KCS10/FDH, KCS13/HIC, KCS16, and KCS20) (Haslam and Kunst 2013; Hegebarth et al. 2017). Nevertheless, based on expression patterns and mutant phenotypes, KCS5/CER60 and KCS6/CER6 appear as major actors involved in the elongation of fatty acids longer than C26 for the production of cuticular waxes (Haslam et al. 2015). However, KCS are not the only factors that dictate elongation of VLCFAs, as the functional characterization of the Arabidopsis and rice CER2-LIKE proteins has suggested a role of these proteins in the regulation of FAE activities for the elongation of VLCFAs (Haslam et al. 2012, 2015; Pascal et al. 2013; Wang et al. 2017). As such, they could facilitate the formation of VLC acyl-CoAs by stabilizing the FAE complexes, by enhancing their activity, or by allowing the newly elongated acyl-CoA to be presented back to the KCS enzyme after an elongation cycle. However, further work is needed to determine the mode of action of these proteins. The Arabidopsis PAS1 protein is another example of a FAE complex regulator (Roudier et al. 2010). PAS1 is a member of the immunophilin family of chaperones that are known to target protein complexes and regulate their

Fig. 3 Fatty acid elongation
assembly or activity. Similar to a loss of one of the elongase core components, a defect in PAS1 was shown to reduce the amounts of all VLCFA-containing lipids.

In the last decade, major findings on VLCFA synthesis in yeast allowed the identification of the corresponding KCR, HCD, and ECR enzymes in Arabidopsis. Complementation assays of yeast mutants revealed that KCR1 and PASTICCINO2 (PAS2) encode a functional KCR and HCD, respectively (Bach et al. 2008; Beaudoin et al. 2009). Complementation of the Arabidopsis cer10 mutant and the yeast tsc13-1elo2Δ mutant by expression of AtECR demonstrated that CER10 encodes a functional ECR (Zheng et al. 2005). Consistent with the assumption that the three enzymes are common to all FAE complexes, the total loss of KCR1 or PAS2 is embryo lethal, whereas the loss of CER10 and partial loss of KCR1 or PAS2 activity result in a severe reduction of all major classes of VLCFA-containing lipids (waxes, triacylglycerols, and sphingolipids) causing major developmental impairment (Zheng et al. 2005; Bach et al. 2008; Beaudoin et al. 2009).

3.2 Alcohol-Forming Pathway

The alcohol-forming pathway, also called reduction pathway, produces even-numbered primary alcohols and alkyl esters (Fig. 4).

The first biochemical studies of primary alcohol formation suggested a two-step reaction in which fatty acyl-CoA reductase (FAR) reduces VLC acyl-CoAs to aldehydes, which are further reduced to primary alcohols by an aldehyde reductase (Kolattukudy 1971). However, biochemical studies on jojoba seeds and pea leaves, as well as expression of genes encoding alcohol-forming activities in heterologous systems, revealed that a single enzyme produced fatty alcohols, with the intermediate aldehyde remaining bound to the enzyme (Rowland and Domergue 2012). In Arabidopsis, the cer4 mutant shows a severe reduction of primary alcohols and wax esters, suggesting that CER4 (also called FAR3) could play a role in this biosynthetic pathway (Jenks et al. 1995). Expression of CER4 in yeast results in the production of VLC primary alcohols confirming the FAR activity of CER4 (Rowland et al. 2006).

Detailed analysis of wax ester chain lengths from the stems of Arabidopsis cer4 mutants indicated that primary alcohols formed by CER4 are substrates for subsequent alkyl ester formation (Lai et al. 2007). Wax synthase (WS) enzymes catalyze the esterification of primary alcohols to acyl-CoAs in higher plants, mammals, and bacteria (Lardizabal et al. 2000; Cheng and Russell 2004; Stoveken et al. 2005). In Arabidopsis, the search for sequences similar to the jojoba WS and bifunctional WS/diacylglycerol acyltransferases (DGATs) from Acinetobacter calcoaceticus revealed 12 and 11 sequences, respectively. Analysis of a WS/DGAT-encoding gene (WSD1), which is highly expressed in the epidermis, subsequently confirmed its involvement as the major WS in cuticular wax synthesis (Li et al. 2008).
3.3 Alkane-Forming Pathway

The alkane-forming pathway, also called the decarbonylation pathway, produces aldehydes and odd-numbered alkanes, secondary alcohols, and ketones (Fig. 4).

Analyses of Arabidopsis cer mutants and complementary biochemical experiments proposed an alkane-forming pathway in which VLC acyl-CoAs are used as precursors to form alkanes through aldehydes (Bernard and Joubès 2013). However, how even-numbered VLCFAs are transformed into odd-numbered alkanes remains an intriguing question, although significant advances have been made recently in the characterization of the alkane-forming complex (Bernard et al. 2012). Initially, biochemical analyses led to the proposal that alkanes could be produced from VLCFAs through the formation of an intermediate aldehyde (Cheesbrough and Kolattukudy 1984; Dennis and Kolattukudy 1991; Vioque and Kolattukudy 1997; Schneider-Belhaddad and Kolattukudy 2000). Although this hypothesis has never been demonstrated for plants, it is the only one that has been experimentally tested in microsomal fractions from pea leaves (Vioque and Kolattukudy 1997) and from the green alga Botryococcus braunii (Cheesbrough and Kolattukudy 1984; Dennis and Kolattukudy 1991; Schneider-Belhaddad and Kolattukudy 2000). Contrary to the NADPH-cytochrome P450 reductase mechanism of hydrocarbon synthesis in insects, in which aldehydes are converted to alkanes by a decarboxylation mechanism that releases a CO2 molecule (Reed et al. 1994; Qiu et al. 2012), the coproduct of the aldehyde conversion in pea and Botryococcus braunii was a CO molecule.

![Diagram of Cuticular wax compounds biosynthetic pathways](image)
suggesting a decarbonylation mechanism. Therefore, it was proposed for plants that VLC acyl-CoAs are reduced by a fatty acyl-CoA reductase into corresponding even-numbered aldehydes, which are converted by an aldehyde decarbonylase into alkanes with the loss of one carbon atom.

Several *Arabidopsis cer* mutants with a decreased alkane load have been biochemically characterized. The *cer3* mutant shows a dramatic reduction in aldehydes, alkanes, secondary alcohols, and ketones. The *cer1* mutant exhibits a dramatic decrease in alkanes and a near abolition of secondary alcohol and ketone production, accompanied by a slight increase in aldehyde content (Aarts et al. 1995; Chen et al. 2003; Kurata et al. 2003; Bourdenx et al. 2011). It has been proposed from these phenotypes that CER3 may encode the VLC-acyl-CoA reductase that produces aldehydes, whereas CER1 may encode the alkane-forming enzyme that catalyzes the presumed decarbonylation of aldehydes to alkanes. Wax analyses of CER1 overexpressors have revealed a specific increase in alkanes with chain lengths of between 27 and 33 carbon atoms, which is consistent with CER1 encoding an alkane-forming activity with a strict substrate specificity for compounds containing more than 27 carbon atoms (Bourdenx et al. 2011). Recently, the proof that CER1 and CER3 act synergistically as a heterodimer complex that catalyzes the conversion of VLC-acyls-CoAs to alkanes, with the intermediate aldehyde remaining bound to the complex, was provided by co-expression of the two proteins in yeast (Bernard et al. 2012).

Early characterization of the aldehyde decarbonylase partially purified from pea leaves indicated that this activity requires metal ions and is inhibited by O₂ and reducing powers, suggesting that the reaction would be redox independent (Schneider-Belhaddad and Kolattukudy 2000). Nevertheless, CER1 was shown to interact with the ER-localized cytochrome b₅ (CYTB5), and co-expression of CYTB5-B with the CER1/CER3 complex in yeast was shown to increase VLC-alkane production. This suggests that CYTB5 is a redox cofactor of the CER1/CER3 alkane-forming activity (Bernard et al. 2012). The observation that CER1 contains catalytic histidine-clusters typical of a di-iron-binding site and that CYTB5 physically interacts with CER1 highlights the analogy between CER1 and the cyanobacterial aldehyde decarbonylase. This latter is structurally related to nonheme di-iron enzymes, uses iron as the only active metal for its activity, and appears to catalyze a redox-neutral aldehyde decarbonylase reaction even though a reducing system is strictly required (Warui et al. 2011; Das et al. 2011). Experimental evidence and functional analogy to cyanobacterial aldehyde decarbonylase strongly suggest that CER1 serves as the alkane-forming enzyme even though the enzymatic activity of the protein is still unknown. On the other hand, as neither aldehydes nor other potential intermediates were detected in yeast expressing CER3 alone, or co-expressed with CER1, the role of CER3 in VLC-alkane synthesis remains unknown.

As mentioned above, alkanes can be further modified, for instance, in *Arabidopsis* stems, by consecutive oxidation to produce secondary alcohols and, subsequently, ketones (Fig. 4). Evidence for alkanes as precursors of these compounds has been provided by the following experiments. Feeding experiments have
demonstrated that alkanes and secondary alcohols can be transformed into ketones in *Brassica oleracea* (Kolattukudy et al. 1973). There exists an apparent correlation between secondary alcohols, ketones, and alkane chain lengths in *Arabidopsis*, as well as mutant phenotypes showing a deficit in alkanes accompanied by a similar deficit in these compounds (Aarts et al. 1995; Chen et al. 2003). By looking for genes upregulated in the *Arabidopsis* stem epidermis, and which encode proteins potentially involved in lipid oxidation, a cytochrome P450 encoding gene, CYP96A15, was identified as a candidate for a catalytic role in secondary alcohol and ketone formation (Greer et al. 2007). Ectopic expression of CYP96A15 in *Arabidopsis* leaves yielded the production of secondary alcohols and ketones demonstrating that CYP96A15 functions as a mid-chain alkane hydroxylase (MAH1) that can produce secondary alcohols and catalyze their subsequent oxidation into ketones (Greer et al. 2007).

### 3.4 Other Compounds

Wax mixtures typically contain homologous series of VLC saturated alkanes or alcohols derived from the alkane- and alcohol-forming pathways, but VLC acyl-CoAs that are produced by the FAE complexes can be also converted to free VLCFAs or aldehydes (Fig. 4). Indeed, detection of significant amounts of homologous series of these compounds in extracellular lipids in almost all plant wax mixtures indicated that at least a proportion of VLC acyl-CoAs can be converted to VLCFAs by an unknown, ER-localized VLC-acyl-CoA thioesterase. The other possibility is that they are reduced to aldehydes, potentially independently, from the alcohol- or alkane-forming pathway, by an unknown aldehyde-forming enzyme (Fig. 4).

Furthermore, wax compounds with modified carbon chains have been reported in many species. Iso- and anteiso-alkanes or alcohols have been found in several *Brassicaceae* or *Solanaceae* species (Busta and Jetter 2017), alkanes with within-chain methyl branches or cyclopropyl rings have been identified in barley (von Wettstein-Knowles 2007), and β-diketones have been found in waxes of many *Gramineae* species (von Wettstein-Knowles 2012). However, the biochemical reactions yielding these unusual wax components and the sequence of the corresponding metabolic steps are not fully understood, and the enzymes involved in these biosynthetic pathways remain uncharacterized.

### 4 Export of Cutin Monomers and Wax Compounds

As indicated by the subcellular localization of the cuticular biosynthetic pathway enzymes, it is now well established that the biosynthesis of the different cuticular compounds occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum (Fig. 1). The recent use of *Arabidopsis* mutants defective in vesicle trafficking and protein secretion suggests that the transfer of these hydrophobic molecules through the hydrophilic cytoplasm...
involves vesicles that transit through the ER-Golgi interface and the trans-Golgi network to deliver cargo to the plasma membrane (Fig. 1) (McFarlane et al. 2014).

Once the cuticle compounds have reached the plasmalemma, their export is carried out by ABC transporters (ATP-binding cassette transporters). The gene encoding the first ABC transporter identified in Arabidopsis facilitating wax transport was ABCG12/CER5 (Pighin et al. 2004). A search for ABC protein-encoding genes with an expression pattern similar to ABCG12 revealed ABCG11 as a candidate for wax export (Bird et al. 2007; Panikashvili et al. 2007). The abcgl1 mutant and the double mutant abcg11 abcg12 show similar wax composition, suggesting that both transporters act in the same pathway or ABC transporter unit. Furthermore, abcg11 showed organ fusions, defects in cuticle permeability, and a reduced cutin load, indicating that ABCG11 is also involved in cutin monomer export (Panikashvili et al. 2007, 2010). ABCG11 and ABCG12 are half-transporters, and, whereas ABCG11/ABCG12 heterodimers have a function in wax export, ABCG11 may also homodimerize or heterodimerize with unknown component(s) to transport cutin monomers (McFarlane et al. 2010). However, residual export of waxes and cutin monomers onto the plant surface in the absence of ABCG11 and ABCG12 indicates that other ABC transporters might also export these compounds. Recently, several other ABCG transporters have been characterized in Arabidopsis. ABCG13, which is closely related to ABCG11 and ABCG12, contributes to cutin formation in flowers (Panikashvili et al. 2011). ABCG9 and ABCG14 can also form dimers with ABCG11, and these, as well as ABCG31, affect sterol ester levels in vegetative tissues or pollen grains (Le Hir et al. 2013; Choi et al. 2014). In contrast, ABCG32/PEC1, which is a full-length transporter, is required for hydroxy-fatty acid transport in leaves and flowers (Bessire et al. 2011).

Based on transcriptome analysis of Arabidopsis stems and stem epidermal cells, seven candidate LTPs (lipid transfer proteins), which could play a role in cuticular precursor transport, were isolated (Suh et al. 2005). The cuticle phenotype of ltpg1 and ltpg2 mutants suggests that both of these glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored LTPs (LTPGs) could be involved in cuticle formation (DeBono et al. 2009; Lee et al. 2009; Kim et al. 2012). However, the subtle changes in wax composition observed in ltpg1 or ltpg2 mutants have given rise to the proposition that multiple, specialized LTPs, but with overlapping functions, are required to deliver the entire diversity of cuticle compounds to the epidermal surface.

5 Research Needs

Over the last years, significant progress has been made in the understanding of the molecular and biochemical mechanisms underlying cuticle biosynthesis. These advances have greatly benefitted from the development of molecular reverse and forward genetic tools in different species and the simultaneous development of analytical methods for detailed lipid characterization. However, several processes still remain to be clarified, especially those following:
1. The exact order of the reactions involved in cutin monomer synthesis needs to be unambiguously established. For this purpose, it will be important to establish when LACS activity is exactly required, to determine the substrates of the different cytochrome P450 enzymes identified thus far, and to discover the enzymes responsible for the other reactions of the proposed pathways.

2. The processes whereby VLC acyl-CoAs are generated and subsequently converted to the VLC aliphatic wax compounds found on the surfaces of many plant species are now well understood. However, the catalytic activities of several enzymes involved in these metabolic pathways have to be characterized in more detail. The activities of the KCS subunits of the different FAE complexes and the regulation of these activities, for example, by the CER2-LIKE proteins, have to be puzzled out. Similarly, the exact enzymatic activity of the alkane-forming complex remains to be solved. Furthermore, the enzymes involved in the biosynthesis of free VLFCAs and aldehydes must be identified and characterized.

3. As many unusual compounds are found in the plant wax mixtures, the biosynthetic pathways and the related genes or enzymes involved in their generation have to be discovered. The development of molecular and biochemical tools to characterize the synthesis of these components in species that accumulate them will be a major challenge for the next few years.

4. If some information concerning the transport of cuticular compounds across the plasma membrane are now available, future reporting must take into account the intra- and extracellular transport of the cuticular components to provide a cell-wide understanding of these processes.

References


Sauveplane V, Kandel S, Kastner PE, EhIting J, Compagnon V, Werck-Reichhart D, Pinot F (2009) Arabidopsis thaliana CYP77A4 is the first cytochrome P450 able to catalyze the epoxidation of free fatty acids in plants. FEBS J 276:719–735
Sauveplane V, Kandel S, Kastner PE, Ehlting J, Compagnon V, Werck-Reichhart D, Pinot F (2009) Arabidopsis thaliana CYP77A4 is the first cytochrome P450 able to catalyze the epoxidation of free fatty acids in plants. FEBS J 276:719–735
Lipids of Geochemical Interest in Microalgae

John K. Volkman

Contents
1 Introduction ................................................................. 160
2 Hydrocarbons .............................................................. 161
  2.1 n–Alkanes and n–Alkenes .................................................. 161
  2.2 Isoprenoid Alkanes and Alkenes ........................................... 163
  2.3 Highly Branched Isoprenoid (HBI) Alkenes in Diatoms ............... 163
  2.4 Cyclic Hydrocarbons ......................................................... 166
3 Fatty Acids ................................................................. 166
  3.1 Hydroxy Fatty Acids ........................................................ 167
4 Fatty Alcohols .............................................................. 168
5 Alkenones and Alkyl Alkenoates .............................................. 169
6 Alkyl Diols ................................................................. 173
7 Algaenan ................................................................. 175
8 Sterols ................................................................. 177
9 Other Biochemical Constituents .............................................. 180
10 Research Needs .......................................................... 180
References ............................................................... 182

Abstract

Microalgae have a long geological history and a diversity of biochemical constituents which vary systematically between algal classes. This review provides an update on those lipid constituents that have proven useful in organic geochemical studies as biomarkers for assigning sources of organic matter in seawater and sediments. These functionalized biomarkers are degraded in sediments by well-established pathways ultimately yielding hydrocarbons which can also be used to assign organic matter sources in ancient sediments and crude oils. Compound classes covered here include hydrocarbons, fatty acids, hydroxy fatty acids, fatty

J. K. Volkman (∗)
CSIRO Oceans and Atmosphere, Hobart, TAS, Australia
e-mail: john.volkman@csiro.au

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate, Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_10
alcohols, alkyl diols, alkenones, alkenoates, and sterols. Information on biopolymeric substances called algaenans found in just a few algal classes is also provided.

1 Introduction

Microalgae are often the major primary source of organic matter in aquatic ecosystems and hence they are a significant source of the lipids in sediments, together with contributions from bacteria, archaea, higher plants, and animals such as zooplankton and benthic species. Microalgae have a long geological history and have evolved into numerous different classes since the first appearance of red algae at least 1.6 billion years ago (Bengtson et al. 2017). These eukaryotes share many common features in their lipid biochemistry, but with evolutionary change some have developed specific biochemical characteristics. For example, some diatoms developed the ability to synthesize unusual highly branched isoprenoid (HBI) alkenes about 92 million years ago (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2004), while the unusual branched isoprenoidal botryococcenes made by the green alga Botryococcus braunii may only have evolved in the Eocene less than 50 million years ago (Volkman 2014).

Comprehensive studies of microalgal lipids are unfortunately fairly sparse, but a sufficiently large number of species have now been studied to formulate some of the more important features. Much of this literature is spread over many journals reflecting the different areas where such data are of interest. For example, with the growing interest in growing microalgae for biodiesel production, there has been an upsurge in algal lipid analyses although many of these simply focus on the fatty acid distributions.

Traditionally recognized phyla in microalgae include Rhodophyta (red algae), Euglenophyta (euglenoids), Cryptophyta (cryptomonads), Pyrrophyta (dinoflagellates), Raphidophyta (raphidophytes), Chrysophyta (chrysophytes, golden-brown algae), Xanthophyta (= Tribophyta, yellow-green algae), Chlorophyta (green algae), Eustigmatophyta (eustigmatophytes), Prasinophyta (green algae, prasinophytes), Phaeophyta (brown algae), Bacillariophyta (diatoms), and Glaucophyta (glaucophytes). Cyanophyta are referred to as blue-green algae in the older literature, but they are actually prokaryotic cyanobacteria and thus not microalgae at all. I have chosen not to cover their lipids in this review. Unfortunately, many of these algal classifications are in a state of flux, and some of the early identifications have been modified with some species reassigned to other classes as more information from molecular biology becomes available. This can make assessment of some of the earlier literature problematic, and so modern assignments are used where possible in this review.

Lipid biomarkers are often used to assign sources of organic matter in aquatic systems and sediments and, with appropriate calibration and knowledge of diagenetic effects, can be used as a proxy for contributions of organic matter from different organisms, even in ancient sediments (Briggs and Summons 2014). Microalgae contain a number of distinctive biomarkers not found in other organisms which
affords an opportunity to use them as palaeoproxies. For example, the contents of C$_{37}$ alkenones, dinosterol, “brassicasterol” (strictly epi-brassicasterol, since diatoms usually make sterols with 24α-alkyl stereochemistry), and C$_{30}$ alkyl diols in sediments have been used as productivity proxies for haptophytes, dinoflagellates, diatoms, and eustigmatophytes, respectively (He et al. 2008). This approach can only be semi-quantitative since these compounds have very different susceptibility to the effects of biodegradation and diagenesis. Moreover, the abundance of these biomarkers per unit biomass is very different in the different algae and can be quite variable due to a range of environmental factors.

This review mainly focuses on new developments in our understanding of lipid biochemistry in microalgae with an emphasis on data that are relevant to the field of organic geochemistry. For a summary of the earlier literature, the reader is referred to Volkman et al. (1998) and other reviews mentioned in each section.

2 Hydrocarbons

Hydrocarbons are rarely significant components of the lipids in microalgae. Perhaps the most common is the hexa-unsaturated alkene n-C$_{21:6}$ which is formed by decarboxylation of the polyunsaturated fatty acid 22:6n-3 (Lee and Loeblich 1971). For convenience, a shorthand nomenclature is used for hydrocarbons (n-C$_{x,y}$) where x is the number of carbon atoms and y is the number of double bonds. For fatty acids, the nomenclature used here is X:Yn-Z where X is the number of carbon atoms, Y is the number of double bonds, and Z is the position of the closest methylene-interrupted double bond to the methyl (ω) end of the molecule. High contents of n-C$_{21:6}$ can be found in diatoms due to efficient conversion of the fatty acid 22:6n-3 which, as a consequence, is not abundant in diatoms. In a few species, n-C$_{21:6}$ is accompanied by small amounts of n-C$_{21:5}$ (e.g., Cranwell et al. 1988; Volkman et al. 1994a).

2.1 n–Alkanes and n–Alkenes

Shorter-chain n-C$_{15}$, n-C$_{17}$, and n-C$_{19}$ alkanes and monounsaturated alkenes occur in some microalgae (e.g., Gelpi et al. 1970; Weete 1976) and are particularly common in chlorophytes (Cranwell et al. 1990). However, the amounts of hydrocarbons are typically low compared to other lipid classes. Recent work has confirmed that alkanes are likely to be formed by decarboxylation of the corresponding fatty acids (Sorigué et al. 2016). Some alkenes with longer chain lengths have been reported. For example, the freshwater chlorophyte Scenedesmus spp. contain C$_{21}$, C$_{23}$, and C$_{25}$ n-alk-1-enes (Cranwell et al. 1990), and Scenedesmus quadricauda contains high amounts of the C$_{27}$ monoene (Gelpi et al. 1970). Polyunsaturated C$_{25}$ and C$_{27}$ n-alkenes have also been found in a strain of the diatom Rhizosolenia setigera (Schouten et al. 1998; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1999a). From these data, it is clear that some microalgae are able to biosynthesize long-chain alkenes although
reliable reports of long-chain \( n \)-alkanes are rare. For example, Nagashima et al. (1986) reported \( n \)-alkanes \((n\text{-}C_{14} \text{--} n\text{-}C_{30})\) with a predominance of \( n\text{-}C_{17} \) (46.3\%) and a diene \( \text{C}_{19,2} \) in \textit{Cyanidium caldarium} (RK-1 strain), while \textit{Cyanidium} (M-8 strain) contained \( n \)-alkanes \((n\text{-}C_{15} \text{--} n\text{-}C_{25})\) and alkenes \((C_{19,1} \text{ and smaller amounts of } C_{21,1})\).

Allard and Templier (2000) studied the lipids in nine species of freshwater and marine green microalgae from the class Chlorophyceae that make distinctive thin trilaminar outer walls. \( C_{23} \text{--} C_{29} \) straight-chain hydrocarbons were identified in most of the algaenan-producing \textit{Chlorella} and in the algaenan-devoid \textit{Chlorella minutissima marina}, whereas only low molecular weight hydrocarbons were detected in algaenan-producing \textit{Scenedesmus subspicatus} and in algaenan-devoid \textit{C. marina}. The hydrocarbon compositions of different races of the geochemically important green alga \textit{Botryococcus braunii} (Trebusiophyceae) are of particular interest. Early work established the presence of odd-chain \( C_{27} \text{--} C_{33} \) \( n \)-alkadienes (Brown et al. 1969; Gelpi et al. 1970) in Race A as well as isoprenoid alkenes (see next section).

Some eustigmatophytes also contain significant amounts of long-chain hydrocarbons. Odd-chain saturated and polyunsaturated \( C_{14} \text{--} C_{31} \) hydrocarbons have been isolated from two marine \textit{Nannochloropsis} species and show a predominance of \( C_{25}, \) \( C_{27}, \) and \( C_{29} \) \( n \)-alkenes which vary in abundance in the different species (Gelin et al. 1997b). Indeed, Zhang et al. (2015) showed a correlation between long-chain alkyl diols in sediments of Lake Lugu and long-chain alkenes. Chlorophytes, on the other hand, cannot be excluded as a possible contributor of the long-chain \( n \)-alkenes because these algae are common in Lake Lugu and they are known to biosynthesize an \( n\text{-}C_{27,1} \) alkene.

Alkenone-producing haptophytes such as \textit{Emiliania}, \textit{Chrysotila}, and \textit{Isochrysis} contain high amounts of two classes of long-chain alkenes (Volkman et al. 1980a, b; Marlowe et al. 1984a, b; Patterson et al. 1994a; Conte et al. 1995; Grossi et al. 2000; Rontani et al. 2004; Theroux et al. 2013; Nakamura et al. 2015). Volkman et al. (1980b) first showed that \textit{E. huxleyi} contains high amounts of very-long-chain \( C_{31,2} \) (3 isomers), \( C_{33,3} \) (2 isomers), \( C_{33,4} \) (2 isomers), \( C_{37,3} \), and \( C_{38,3} \) \( n \)-alkenes. Rontani et al. (2004) showed that \textit{Chrysotila lamellosa} contained a mixture of \( C_{29} \text{--} C_{33} \) \( n \)-alkenes, dominated by the \( C_{31,1} \) monoene, although previous analysis of other strains reported only the presence of a \( C_{31,2} \) diene (Marlowe et al. 1984a). These variations can reflect biochemical differences between strains and the effects of differing culturing conditions such as temperature (Grossi et al. 2004). The hydrocarbons in cultures of \textit{E. huxleyi} NIES837 and \textit{G. oceanica} NIES1315 were analyzed by Nakamura et al. (2015) who found \( C_{29,2} \) and \( C_{31,2} \) dienes as major constituents together with smaller amounts of \( C_{29,1} \) and \( C_{31,1} \) monoenes and di-, tri-, and tetra-unsaturated \( C_{33} \) alkenes. Rather surprisingly, \( C_{37} \) and \( C_{38} \) alkenes were not detected.

The major alkenes of \textit{I. galbana} CCAP 927/14 and \textit{E. huxleyi} (strains CCAP 920/2 and VAN 556) were identified by Rieley et al. (1998) using NMR and GC–MS analysis of DMDS adducts. The dominant alkene in \textit{I. galbana} is \((Z)\)-hentriaconta-1,22-diene, with hentriaconta-1,24-diene and tritriaconta-1,24-diene present in much lower abundance; \((Z)\)-hentriaconta-1,22-diene also occurs in \textit{E. huxleyi} (strain
CCAP 920/2), together with (2Z,22Z)-hentriaconta-2,22-diene (the major hydrocarbon) and (3Z,22Z)-hentriaconta-3,22-diene. Minor amounts of hentriaconta-2,24-diene and hentrihentriaconta-2,24-diene are also present in this strain. Nakamura et al. (2015) also used DMDS adducts to show that the C29 alkenes in *E. huxleyi* NIES837 and *G. oceanica* NIES1315 included nonacosa-2,20-diene (most abundant), as well as nonacosa-1,20-diene, nonacosa-3,20-diene (both novel reports) and nonacos-9-ene.

The work of Rieley et al. (1998) and Grossi et al. (2000) clearly showed the presence of two biochemically different groups of hydrocarbons in haptophytes, each with a different biosynthesis and presumably biological function. The C31–C33 alkenes with cis (Z) double bonds are likely derived from chain extension and decarboxylation of (Z)-octadec-9-enoic acid or (Z)-hexadec-7-enoic acid, using a pathway analogous to that in *B. braunii* (Rieley et al. 1998; Nakamura et al. 2015). In contrast to the C29–C33 alkenes, the C37–C39 alkenes have trans (E) double bonds indicating that their biosynthesis is closely related to the alkenones.

Hydrocarbon contents and compositions can be affected by growth conditions, but there have been few systematic studies. Dodson and Leblond (2015) examined the hydrocarbons made by the common diatom *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* at different temperatures. At 20 °C, the diatom made C8, C11, C19, and C21 n-alkanes, but at 30 °C it produced C17, C17:1, C18:1, C19, C19:1, and C20 n-alkanes and n-alkenes. The alkenes were not present at the lower temperature.

### 2.2 Isoprenoid Alkanes and Alkenes

It is now known that *B. braunii* exists in four distinct races (A, B, L, and S) based on their hydrocarbon compositions and DNA profiles (Metzger and Largeau 2005; Kawachi et al. 2012; Volkman 2014). Race A contains C25–C33 n-alkadienes and n-alkatrienes derived from fatty acids (Templier et al. 1992). Race B contains C30–C37 isoprenoid-based hydrocarbons called botryococenes (Metzger et al. 1985) (Fig. 1) as well as squalene and methylated squalenes as minor components (Huang and Poulter 1989; Achitoue et al. 2004) (Fig. 1). Strains of Race L contain the C40 isoprenoid alkene lycopadiene [[6R,10R,14E,18E,23R,27R]-2,6,10,14,19,23,27,31-octamethyldotriaconta-14,18-diene] (Metzger and Casadevall 1987; Metzger et al. 1990) (Fig. 1). The newly defined S Race produces C18 and C20 n-alkanes and epoxy alkanes, but lacks botryococenes and lycopadiene (Kawachi et al. 2012) and thus is closer to race A.

### 2.3 Highly Branched Isoprenoid (HBI) Alkenes in Diatoms

This unusual class of C20, C25, and C30 “T-shaped” highly branched isoprenoid (HBI) alkanes and alkenes was first recognized by the identification of an unusual C20 alkane 2,6,10-trimethyl-7-(3-methylbutyl)dodecane (termed Gx) in the Rozel Point oil (Yon et al. 1982). A biological source was not known until Nichols et al. (1988) found high amounts of a C25 HBI diene in Antarctic sea ice samples.
Volkman et al. (1994a) confirmed a diatom source by demonstrating the occurrence of C$_{25}$ HBI alkenes with 3, 4, and 5 double bonds in cultured cells of the diatom *Haslea ostrearia* and C$_{30}$ HBI alkenes with 4, 5, and 6 double bonds in the diatom *R. setigera*. Once an algal source had been identified, it was possible to isolate sufficient material for full structures of the C$_{25}$ HBIs to be elucidated using NMR, epoxide derivatization and mass spectrometry by researchers at Plymouth University (Rowland et al. 1995; Belt et al. 1996; Wraige et al. 1997). A few representative structures are shown in Fig. 2. HBIs are widespread in sediments, but to date the only natural source identified is diatoms. Intriguingly, a biological source for C$_{20}$ HBIs has not yet been found. The early literature is summarized by Rowland and Robson (1990) and Volkman et al. (1998).

C$_{25}$ HBIs (sometimes called haslenes – examples are shown in Fig. 2a–e) have now been found in laboratory cultures of species within the genera *Haslea* (Volkman et al. 1994a; Belt et al. 1996, 2007; Wraige et al. 1997; Allard et al. 2001; Poulin et al. 2004), *Rhizosolenia* (Volkman et al. 1994a; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1999a,b; Belt et al. 2001a, 2002; Rowland et al. 2001), *Navicula* (Belt et al. 2001c, d), *Pleurosigma* (Belt et al. 2000a, 2001b; Grossi et al. 2004), and *Berkeleya* (Brown et al. 2014). Recent work by Kaiser et al. (2016) has shown that the marine planktonic diatom *Pseudosolenia calcar-avis* (Schultze) isolated from near surface waters in Mecklenburg Bay in the southwestern Baltic Sea biosynthesizes one C$_{25}$:2 and two C$_{25}$:3 HBI alkenes as previously reported in some benthic diatoms. C$_{30}$ HBIs (rhizenes; e.g., Fig. 2f and g) have only been identified in laboratory cultures of *R. setigera* (Volkman et al. 1994a; Belt et al. 2001a, 2002; Rowland et al. 2001; Massé et al. 2004b).

This taxonomic specificity has practical application in taxonomy. For example, Poulin et al. (2004) proposed the transfer of *Gyrosigma nipkowii* Meister to *Haslea nipkowii* (Meister) Poulin & Massé based on morphology, SEM, molecular analyses, and the presence of characteristic HBIs.

A mono-unsaturated C$_{25}$ highly branched isoprenoid (HBI) alkene termed IP$_{25}$ (Belt and Müller 2013; Belt et al. 2007; Fig. 2d) is produced by sea ice diatoms including *Haslea crucigeroides*, *H. spicula*, *H. kjellmanii*, and *Pleurosigma stuxbergii* var. *rhomboides* that bloom in the underside of seasonal sea ice (Brown...
et al. 2014). Since IP\textsubscript{25} is deposited in underlying sediment following ice melt in the late spring, this HBI alkene has been used as a proxy for the extent of Arctic sea ice (Belt and Müller 2013; Smik and Belt 2017). Another 25:2 HBI termed IPSO\textsubscript{25} (Fig. 2e) may be a comparable sea ice marker for the Antarctic (Belt et al. 2016). Brown et al. (2014) have also shown that not all species within the \textit{Haslea}, \textit{Pleurosigma}, and \textit{Navicula} genera produce HBI alkenes. For example, species such as \textit{H. ostrearia} and \textit{P. intermedium} produce HBIs, but \textit{H. wawrikae} and \textit{P. angulatum} do not. Also, note that IP\textsubscript{25} was identified in \textit{H. kjellmanii} but was absent in \textit{H. vitrea}.

Within the genus \textit{Rhizosolenia}, strains of \textit{R. setigera} have been reported that contain only the C\textsubscript{30} HBIs (strain CS-62: Volkman et al. 1994a; strain Nante 99: Belt et al. 2001a). In contrast, Rowland et al. (2001) detected both C\textsubscript{25} and C\textsubscript{30} HBIs in \textit{R. setigera} (strain CS 389/A); Belt et al. (2017) found C\textsubscript{25} HBIs but not C\textsubscript{30} HBIs in \textit{R. polydactyla f. polydactyla} and \textit{R. hebetata f. semispina}. C\textsubscript{30} HBIs were also absent in cultures of \textit{R. setigera} isolated from the east coast of the USA (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1999b). Different distributions of HBIs have also been identified in \textit{R. fallax}, \textit{R. shrubshrolei}, and \textit{R. pungens} (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2004).

Some of the factors affecting HBI distributions have been elucidated, but a complete picture is yet to emerge. Rowland et al. (2001) showed that there was an increase in the degree of unsaturation in the haslenes and \textit{E to Z} isomerization in the C\textsubscript{25} triene as well as an increase in unsaturation in the rhizenes, with hexaenes dominant over the pentaenes, in strain CS 389/A of \textit{R. setigera} with increasing growth temperature from 18 to 25 °C, which is opposite the behavior usually seen in membrane lipids with temperature. Increased salinity from 15 to 35 ppt increased cell growth and rhizene production but decreased haslene production. Belt et al. (2002) showed that HBI distributions are strongly influenced by stages within the

---

**Fig. 2** Structures of some of the C\textsubscript{25} and C\textsubscript{30} highly branched isoprenoid (HBI) alkenes (haslenes and rhizenes) found in some diatoms

(a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) (g)
life cycle, with the biosynthesis of $C_{25}$ HBIs stimulated during sexual reproduction (i.e., the auxosporulation stage).

Recent work has shown that HBIs in sediments and extracts can degrade on storage with significant changes to the compositions (Sanz et al. 2016), so it is preferable to work on fresh or frozen material. This also indicates that the analytical window in sediment studies needs to be widened to include HBI degradation products, particularly since HBIs undergo facile acid-catalyzed isomerization and cyclization reactions in sediments (Belt et al. 2000b).

2.4 Cyclic Hydrocarbons

The HBI-synthesizing diatom *R. setigera* also contains unusual $C_{30}$ monocyclic alkenes (Belt et al. 2003; Massé et al. 2004a). These have an isoprenoid structure and a single 6-membered ring but are apparently unrelated to the HBI alkenes. It is thought that they are biosynthesized by coupling of a geranyl ($C_{10}$) moiety to either a farnesyl ($C_{15}$) or geranylgeranyl unit ($C_{20}$) at C-7 to yield $C_{25}$ and $C_{30}$ compounds, respectively.

3 Fatty Acids

Monocarboxylic fatty acids with 0–6 double bonds are the most abundant lipids in microalgae. These occur in a variety of different lipid types including triacylglycerols, phospholipids, glycolipids, and other less common forms such as betaine lipids (e.g., Pedro Canavate et al. 2016). For a detailed recent review of the various polar lipids in microalgae, their biosynthesis, and genetic aspects see Khozin-Goldberg (2016). The proportions of these lipids can vary significantly under different environmental and physiological conditions (e.g., Li et al. 2016 and references therein). For example, Dodson et al. (2014) examined the effects of growth temperature on galactolipids, the primary component of chloroplast membranes, in two pennate diatoms. At 20 °C, both *P. tricornutum* and *H. ostrearia* possessed different galactolipid profiles, with the former possessing mostly $C_{20}/C_{16}$ (sn-1/sn-2) forms of mono- and digalactosyldiacylglycerol (MGDG and DGDG, respectively) and the latter possessing mostly $C_{18}/C_{16}$ forms of MGDG and DGDG. However, both diatoms had similar lipid profiles when grown at 30 °C and were characterized by a higher proportion of more saturated lipids, an increase in $C_{18}$ fatty acids at the sn-1 position of the lipid, and an absence of $C_{20}$ fatty acids.

Polar lipids are rapidly hydrolyzed on cell death or senescence and so the major form of fatty acids found in sediments is typically as free fatty acids. Intact polar lipids such as phospholipids have been used as a measure of living cells (both prokaryotic and eukaryotic) in sediments (e.g., Lipp and Hinrichs 2009).

Fatty acid distributions vary systematically between algal classes (reviewed by Lang et al. 2011; Khozin-Goldberg 2016) and so can often be used to assign organic matter sources in sediments. For example, diatoms often have simple distributions
dominated by 16:0 (palmitic acid), 16:1n-7 (palmitoleic acid), 20:5n-3 (icosapentaenoic acid), and sometimes 14:0 (e.g., Dunstan et al. 1994). Eustigmatophytes can have similar distributions dominated by 14:0, 16:0, 16:1n-7, and 20:5n-3 (Volkman et al. 1993, 1999b; Olofsson et al. 2012, 2014; Mitra et al. 2015). In contrast, the fatty acids in green algae are typically dominated by unsaturated C18 fatty acids such as 18:1n-9 (oleic acid), 18:2n-6 (linoleic acid), and 18:3n-3 (linolenic acid), much like higher plants, although some green algae also have appreciable amounts of 18:4n-3 (Cranwell et al. 1990). Dinoflagellates have quite different distributions with high contents of 16:0 and 18:0 (stearic acid), together with unsaturated C18 fatty acids (including uncommon 18:5n-3) and 22:6n-3 (docosahexaenoic acid), the latter being common in marine zooplankton. A few species of dinoflagellates make small amounts (< 2.3%) of very-long-chain C28 highly unsaturated fatty acids (HUFAs) including 28:7n-6 and 28:8n-3 by chain elongation and further desaturation (Mansour et al. 1999; Rezanka et al. 2017). Several fatty acid patterns are found in haptophytes with 14:0, 16:0, 16:1n-7, 18:1n-9, and 22:6n-3 abundant in many species together with low contents of C18 PUFA other than 18:4 (e.g., Wang et al. 2015). *Pavlova* species also show high contents of 20:5n-3, but this is not the case for *E. huxleyi* (Jeffrey et al. 1994; Lang et al. 2011).

The double bond positions of some PUFA can be distinctive if chain shortening or elongation of preformed unsaturated fatty acids is involved in their biosynthesis. For example, Volkman and Johns (1977) were able to distinguish fatty acid sources in intertidal sediments from elucidation of double bond positions in the C16 polyunsaturated fatty acids. The 16:2 fatty acids consisted mainly of the n-4 and n-7 isomers, and 16:3n-4 was the only 16:3 isomer detected. These are typical of diatoms (Ackman et al. 1968), whereas in green microalgae the main isomers are n-3 and n-6 fatty acids (Cranwell et al. 1990).

Fatty acid contents and distributions can be strongly affected by environmental conditions such as differing nutrient, irradiance, and salinity conditions as well as growth stage (exponential vs. stationary phase) as shown by many culture studies (e.g., Dunstan et al. 1993; Xu et al. 2008; Pal et al. 2011; Martinez-Roldan et al. 2014; Pan et al. 2017). Under nitrogen-deficient conditions, phytoplankton cells typically accumulate storage lipids such as triacylglycerols (Dunstan et al. 1993; Jia et al. 2015). Green algae *Chlorella kessleri* and *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* substantially increase their fatty acid content upon desiccation (Shiratake et al. 2013).

3.1 Hydroxy Fatty Acids

Mono- and dihydroxy fatty acids have been reported in very few microalgae, but comprehensive studies have not been carried out. Matsumoto and Nagashima (1984) reported 3-hydroxy fatty acids (β-hydroxy acids) in cultured microalgae from the Chlorophyta (*Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* and *Chlorella pyrenoidosa*) and Rhodophyta (two strains of the rhodophyte *Cyanidium caldarium*) and cyanobacteria. Matsumoto et al. (1984) found C16–C26 2-hydroxy acids (α-hydroxy acids) in the green algae *C. reinhardtii* and *C. pyrenoidosa*, *C. caldarium*, and...
various cyanobacteria ranging in concentrations from 40 to 320 pg/g dry alga. Volkman et al. (1999b) detected a series of 2- and 3-hydroxy fatty acids ranging from C_{26} to C_{30} (with traces of C_{18} but no intermediate chain-lengths) in the freshwater eustigmatophytes *Vischeria punctata*, *Vischeria helvetica*, and *Eustigmatos vischeri*. C_{27} and C_{29} 12-hydroxy methyl alkanoates have been identified in the rhizosolenid diatoms *Proboscia indica* and *Proboscia alata* (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2003).

Hydroxylated fatty acids in green algae and eustigmatophytes appear to be involved in the structure of the algaenan made by these species. For example, Blokker et al. (1998a) identified ester-bound C_{30}, C_{32}, and C_{34} mono- and C_{30} and C_{32} diunsaturated ω-hydroxy fatty acids in some freshwater green microalgae *Tetraedron minimum*, *Scenedesmus communis*, and *Pediastrum boryanum*. These compounds were not identified in the cytosol of the algae but were released by saponification of the cell implying that they were a main building block of the highly cross-linked algaenan present in the cell walls.

C_{30}–C_{34} mid-chain hydroxy fatty acids were identified in hydrolyzed extracts from marine eustigmatophytes of the genus *Nannochloropsis* (Gelin et al. 1997b). These all contained a hydroxy group at the ω18 position suggesting that the series is produced by chain-shortening or elongation (at the carboxyl end) from a single major precursor. Two dihydroxy fatty acids identified as 15,16-dihydroxydotriacontanoic acid and 16,17-dihydroxytritriacontanoic acid were also found. Balzano et al. (2017) also suggested that long-chain hydroxy fatty acids (LCHFAs) could originate from 14:0 and 16:0 fatty acids via hydroxylation and chain elongation. LCHFAs were previously suggested to share the same biosynthetic pathways as the long-chain alkenones (LCAs) and the long-chain n-alkyl diols (LCDs) in *Nannochloropsis* spp. because compounds from these three classes exhibit the same carbon number range and are functionalized at the same position (Volkman et al. 1992; Gelin et al. 1997b). However, LCHFAs, C_{14:0}, and C_{16:0} fatty acids did not cluster with LCDs as well as LCAs abundance in the PCA, suggesting that not all the LCHFAs biosynthesized by *Nannochloropsis* spp. were converted to LCDs and LCAs (Balzano et al. 2017).

## 4 Fatty Alcohols

Fatty alcohols other than phytol are rarely reported in microalgae. A summary of reported occurrences can be found in Volkman et al. (1999a). These include 18:1 and 34:4 alcohols in two diatoms, C_{10}–C_{20} saturated and monounsaturated *n*-alcohols in the green alga *Chlorella*, C_{12}–C_{20} *n*-alkanols (as esters) in various freshwater green algae, and saturated C_{12}–C_{20} and monoenes 20:1, 22:1 (as esters) in some freshwater chrysophytes.

Acid hydrolysis of the lipids extracted from marine eustigmatophytes of the genus *Nannochloropsis* liberated mainly even-chain C_{30}–C_{32} mono and diunsaturated straight-chain alcohols with C_{32} the dominant chain-length. The distributions of the alcohols were very similar to the long-chain alkyl diols in the
same species suggesting that both compound classes are formed by the same biosynthetic pathway (Volkman et al. 1999a). Base hydrolysis of lipids from *Nannochloropsis gaditana* yielded *n*-alkenols in which C29:2 and C30:1 predominated (Méjanelle et al. 2003). This species also contained novel C28–C32 hydroxy ketones. Freshwater eustigmatophytes *Eustigmatos vischeri*, *Vischeria helvetica* and *Vischeria punctata* have been found to contain long-chain *n*-alcohols. C16–C30 monounsaturated alcohols were abundant with 26:1 and 28:1 as the major constituents. Saturated *n*-alcohols ranged from 14:0 to 28:0 (both present in trace amounts), with 22:0 as the major alkanol (Volkman et al. 1999a). The latter has been reported as the major *n*-alkanol in some lacustrine sediments. The distributions of long-chain *n*-alkanols and *n*-alkenols were very similar in all species.

Allard and Templier (2000) observed that fatty alcohols were the major constituents of the polar fraction of the neutral lipids of each of the nine species of chlorophytes these authors investigated. High molecular weight saturated or mono-unsaturated alcohols were detected in *Chlorella emersonii* and in all the microalgae belonging to the genus *Scenedesmus*. Monoesters were composed predominantly of saturated C16 or C18 fatty acids and saturated C8, C16, or C18 alcohols. Interestingly, long-chain methyl ketones from C25 to C31 were detected in several species.

Rontani et al. (2001) developed a new technique based on NaBH4 reduction of alkenones to the corresponding alkenols as a useful tool for characterizing alkenones in natural samples. The TMSi-ethers of these alcohols provide very useful El mass spectra, which show strong fragment ions at m/z 117 or m/z 131 due to cleavage at the functional group, allowing methyl and ethyl alkenols (and hence the parent alkenones) to be readily differentiated. This technique provided a suite of standard long-chain *n*-alkenols that could be used to confirm that small amounts (< 1% of alkenone abundance) of these compounds do occur in *G. oceanica* and *I. galbana*.

### 5 Alkenones and Alkyl Alkenoates

Long-chain alkenones is a term coined by Volkman et al. (1980b) for an unusual class of unsaturated C37–C39 straight-chain methyl ketones (MK: alken-2-ones; Fig. 3) and ethyl ketones (EK: alken-3-ones) found widely in sediments (de Leeuw et al. 1980; Volkman et al. 1980a) and synthesized by the cosmopolitan marine haptophyte *E. huxleyi* (Volkman et al. 1980a, b). The double bond positions in the diunsaturated 37:2 MK and 36:2 EK were established as ω15 and ω22 by de Leeuw et al. (1980) using GC–MS analysis of DMDS adducts of the double bonds. The triunsaturated compounds have double bonds at ω15, ω22, and ω29 and the tetra-unsaturated ketones at ω7, ω15, ω22, and ω29 (Zheng et al. 2016; Fig. 3) and trans (E) geometry (Rechka and Maxwell 1988; Volkman et al. 1988). It had been thought that the double bonds were a fixed number of carbon atoms from the methyl end of the molecule (e.g., ω15 and ω22), but Rontani et al. (2006b) were able to show from double bond analysis of a wider range of compounds that it is actually the number of carbon atoms from the carbonyl group that is fixed (see Fig. 3). For this reason, Zheng et al. (2016) adopted a Δ nomenclature where the double bond is measured
from the carbonyl group, rather than the IUPAC-preferred nomenclature which numbers the longest alkyl chain. Both Rontani et al. (2006b) and Zheng et al. (2016) have speculated on possible modes of biosynthesis, but to date, the actual enzymes and genes involved in alkenone biosynthesis have not been elucidated.

The proportions of the various isomers having two, three, or four double bonds, expressed as $U_{37}^{K} = [37:2]/([37:2] + [37:3])$, respond approximately linearly to growth temperatures from 5°C to 25°C (Brassell et al. 1986; Prahl and Wakeham 1987; Prahl et al. 1988; Conte et al. 1998) and exhibit a nonlinear response at more extreme temperatures (Prahl et al. 1988; Sikes and Volkman 1993; Conte et al. 1998). The occurrence of alkenones in modern and ancient sediments has been reviewed by Brassell (2014).

Marlowe et al. (1984a, b) carried out the first extensive survey for alkenones in haptophytes. They examined 13 species from 9 genera and established that alkenones and alkenoates (methyl and ethyl esters of a 36:2 fatty acid; Volkman et al. 1980a) occur in Chrysothila lamellosa (now Ruttnella) and three species of Isochrysis as well as in E. huxleyi. They were absent from five other members of the order Isochrysidales and from representatives of the orders Coccosphaerales, Prymnesiales, and Pavlovales. Indeed, only a few genera of haptophytes have been reported to contain alkenones (Volkman et al. 1980a, b; 1995; Marlowe et al. 1984a, b; Conte et al. 1994; Versteegh et al. 2001; Zink et al. 2001; Andersen et al. 2014; Pelusi et al. 2016; Zheng et al. 2016; Longo et al. 2016 and references therein). These include the fully marine species E. huxleyi (Volkman et al. 1980a, b; Conte et al. 1994) and G. oceanica (Volkman et al. 1995), both belonging to the family Noëlaerhabdaceae (formerly known as the Gephyrocapsaceae). Brackish water species include...
Tisochrysis (formerly Isochrysis sp., strain T.iso), Isochrysis galbana, and Ruttnera lamellosa (formerly Chrysotila lamellosa), all belonging to the family Isochrysidaceae. The phylogenetic relationships between the Isochrysidaceae and Noëlaerhabdaceae have not been fully elucidated, but 18S rRNA sequence data confirm that the genera Emiliania, Gephyrocapsa, and Isochrysis are monophyletic (Pelusi et al. 2016).

Sufficient data are now available to recognize distinct patterns of alkenone compositions in different groups of haptophytes. Various groups have been proposed based on alkenone/alkenoate compositions, but Theroux et al. (2010) noted from DNA data from sediments that a simple marine/coastal vs. lacustrine separation does not adequately represent the extent of variation. Similarly, Coolen et al. (2004) had noted from 18S rRNA data that changes in the abundance of six phylotypes, all related to Isochrysis, in an Antarctic lake data accounted for the subtle changes in alkenone distributions with sediment depth.

Based on their work on a number of lakes, particularly those from Greenland, Theroux et al. (2010) proposed three groups of haptophytes. Group I comprised representative sequences from operational taxonomic units (OTUs) 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 and occurred in a number of lake sediments including published sequences from the Greenland lakes (D’Andrea et al. 2006). Group II comprised of OTU 6, OTU 7, and OTU 8 sequences and occurred in various Isochrysis species; C. lamellosa, I. litoralis, and Dicrateria sp. sequences; and sequences from Ace Lake, Antarctica (Coolen et al. 2004). Group III consisted of marine species E. huxleyi and G. oceanica and an unidentified marine coccoid haptophyte (U40924). D’Andrea and Huang (2005) have shown that the presence of C38 methyl ketones distinguishes Greenland LCA distributions from those found in other saline lakes in cold regimes and D’Andrea et al. (2016) have demonstrated that the “Greenland strain” of alkenone-producing haptophytes, as represented by OTU5, is able to occupy a wide range of environmental conditions. Isomeric tri-unsaturated alkenones seem to be unique to Group I haptophytes and are not found in other phylogenetic groups (Longo et al. 2013). The marine non-calcifying Isochrysidales Tisochrysis lutea apparently does not produce tetraunsaturated alkenones (Bendif et al. 2013; Nakamura et al. 2016).

In a recent review, Ho et al. (2013) constructed two alkenone distributions as type A (Emiliania-like) and type B (Chrysotila-like). While all the above-mentioned alkenone producers belong to the order Isochrysidales – a coccolithophorid order thought to be composed exclusively of marine to brackish haptophytes – recent studies based on molecular phylogenetic analyses of a variety of freshwater ecosystems have revealed the presence of monophyletic groups without described close relatives that branch within the order Isochrysidales (Theroux et al. 2010; Toney et al. 2012).

In addition to the three main alkenone distribution patterns discussed above, a number of usual alkenones have been found in cultures or in sediments indicating additional alkenone-producers. For example, Rontani et al. (2001) were also able to show the presence of small amounts of a 35:1 MK and two isomers of a 35:2 alkenone in G. oceanica and monounsaturated C35–C38 alkenones in E. huxleyi by
analysis of alcohols produced by reduction of alkenones. Prahl et al. (2006) reported that the benchmark strain (CCMP1742) of *E. huxleyi* used for temperature calibrations had started producing, for reasons not yet clear, major amounts of three new alkenones identified as ω15,22-C35 MK, ω15,22-C36 EK, and ω16,23-C36 MK (see Fig. 3 for structures) when cultured at 15 °C. Prahl et al. (2006), and Rontani et al. (2006a) showed the presence of unusual long-chain, diunsaturated alkenones and alkyl alkenoates exhibiting double bonds separated by three methylene units in Holocene Black Sea sediments. The positions of the double bonds were confirmed after OsO4 treatment and silylation resulting in tetra(trimethylsilyloxy) derivatives. Xu et al. (2001) had previously shown that (16E,21E)-hexatriaconta-16,21-dien-3-one (i.e., the ω15,20-C36 EK isomer; Fig. 3) is particularly abundant in Holocene Black Sea Unit II sediments. Zheng et al. (2016) surmised that it and related alkenones were produced by certain mutant Group II brackish haptophytes (i.e., related to *R. lamellosa* or *I. galbana*).

Zheng et al. (2016) found that *E. huxleyi* CCMP2758 had abundant ω15,22-C35 MK when cultured at 15 °C, but when this strain was cultured at 4–10 °C it produces abundant C35:3 MK, C36:3 MK, and small amounts of C36:3 EK alkenones with unusual double bond positions at Δ7, Δ12, and Δ19 (as measured from the carbonyl group). Zhao et al. (2014) have noted very long-chain C41 and C42 alkenones in the surface sediments of hypersaline lakes from China suggesting that they may be produced by an unknown haptophyte species living in these hypersaline environments. Ho et al. (2013) found novel pentaunsaturated C38 and C39 alkenones in the surface sediments of a perennially ice-covered Lake Fryxell in the Antarctica, which they suggest were synthesized by *Isochrysis* and/or *R. lamellosa* based on a previous genetics study.

There have been a number of studies with cultured microalgae of possible non-temperature effects on alkenone distributions that might lead to erroneous palaeotemperature estimations (e.g., Volkman 2000; Prahl et al. 2003; Ho et al. 2013). These include nutrient and light availability as shown by culture studies (e.g., Epstein et al. 1998, 2001; Prahl et al. 2003; Versteegh et al. 2001; Pan et al. 2017), as well as the effects of microbial degradation (Rontani et al. 2008; Zabeti et al. 2010). Conte et al. (1998) examined physiological effects on alkenone and alkenoate distributions in *E. huxleyi* and *G. oceanica*. Cells in late logarithmic and stationary growth had significantly increased abundance of alkenoates and C38 EKs relative to C38 MKs. The unsaturation ratios of both C37 and C38 alkenones also significantly decreased when cells entered the late log phase. They concluded that the average physiological state of alkenone-synthesizers in the open ocean differs from cultured cells growing under exponential growth and appears to be more similar to cells in late log or stationary growth phases. Prahl et al. (2006) showed that anomalously warm alkenone-derived SSTs are obtained under light-deprived conditions, while the opposite is true for nutrient-depleted conditions. They also showed that the alkenone/alkenoate composition responds to these physiological stresses.

There has been considerable interest in the possibility that high contents of the 37:4 MK in sediments might be an indicator of higher salinity conditions (Rosell-Melé 1998). The robustness of this proxy was questioned by Sikes and
Sicre (2002) based on alkenone distributions in 106 surface water and sediment trap samples from the Atlantic, Pacific, and Southern oceans. Of interest is their finding that $U^{37}_{37}$ showed a correlation with salinity in the Atlantic, but not in other oceans. Recently, Chivall et al. (2014) showed that while salinity does have a direct effect on alkenone distributions, the effects of growth phase and species composition also have a marked impact complicating the use of alkenone distributions as a salinity proxy. They found that 37:4 was much more abundant in *C. lamellosa* (30–44%) than in *I. galbana* (4–12%). $U^{37}_{37}$ values decreased slightly with salinity for *C. lamellosa* but were largely unaffected for *I. galbana*. The values decreased with incubation time in both species. The proportion of 37:4 increased in both species (0.16–0.20% per salinity unit), except during the stationary phase for *I. galbana*.

A number of studies have shown that the hydrogen isotope composition ($^{2}$H/$^{1}$H or $\delta^{2}$H) of microalgal lipids increases systematically with salinity opening the way for development of lipid-based paleosalinity proxy. Sachs et al. (2016) showed that $\delta^{2}$H values in *E. huxleyi* grown in chemostats increased by 1.6 ± 0.3 per unit ppt in eight individual alkenones and by 2.0 ± 0.1 per unit ppt in three individual fatty acids over the salinity range 20–42 ppt. Hydrogen isotope ratios of phytol and the sterol 24-methylcholesta-5,22E-dien-3β-ol also increased with salinity, but the correlations were weaker.

Zheng et al. (2017) have examined various capillary columns for alkenone and alkenoate analysis and found that the Rtx-200 column (105 m × 250 μm × 0.25 μm film thickness) provides the best resolution allowing simultaneous analysis of alkenones and alkenoates and baseline resolution of closely eluting double bond positional isomers. They also used DMDS adducts to show that the double bond positions in two isomers of triunsaturated C$_{36}$:3 EKs in *Ruttnera lamellosa* isolated from a brackish lacustrine environment and the Group III marine strain *E. huxleyi* Van556 isolated from northeast Pacific, both cultured at 9 °C, were $\Delta^{7,14,21}$ and $\Delta^{14,21,28}$ (measured from the carbonyl group). Group I haptophytes produce little alkenoates as shown by Braya So sample, whereas both the Group II Lake George *R. lamellosa* and Group III Van 556 *E. huxleyi* produce large amounts of alkenoates (C$_{36}$OMe and C$_{36}$OEt) (Longo et al. 2013, 2016). Group II haptophytes produce C$_{38}$ EK, but not (or only trace amounts of) C$_{38}$ MK, whereas both C$_{38}$ EK and C$_{38}$ MK are produced by Group I and III haptophytes (e.g., Conte et al. 1998; Nakamura et al. 2014; Longo et al. 2016).

### 6 Alkyl Diols

Long-chain *n*-alkyl diols (LCDs) of algal origin (Fig. 4) have been found in a wide range of marine and lacustrine environments (de Leeuw et al. 1981; Villanueva et al. 2014a; De Bar et al. 2016 and references therein). C$_{30}$–C$_{32}$ alkyl diols with hydroxyl groups mainly at positions C-1 and C-15 with small amounts of the 1,13 isomers and a monounsaturated C$_{32}$ 1,15-diol were first identified in acid hydrolyzed lipids from cultures of the marine eustigmatophyte *Nannochloropsis oculata*.
(Volkman et al. 1992). More recent work by Méjanelle et al. (2003) found saturated and monounsaturated C28 to C36 n-alkyl diols in *Nannochloropsis gaditana*. These occurred as a mixture of hydroxyl positional isomers with ω16 predominating in the C28 alkyl diols, ω18 among the C30, C32, C34 and C36 alkyl diols and ω17 for the odd chain alkyl diols. This species also contained C28–C32 hydroxy ketones with a similar chain-length distribution to the alkyl diols suggesting a biosynthetic relationship between the two lipid classes. C28–C32 LCDs have also been isolated from freshwater eustigmatophytes (Volkman et al. 1999a).

An additional algal source for alkyl diols was identified when Sinninghe Damsté et al. (2003) found C28, C28:1, C30, and C30:1 1,14-LCDs in the rhizosolenid diatoms *Proboscia indica* and *Proboscia alata* (Fig. 4). Notably, *Proboscia* diatoms can contribute 20–35% of the total lipid flux in the Arabian Sea during the start of the upwelling season (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2003) giving rise to the idea that these compounds could be used as upwelling indicators. However, this idea is challenged by the observation by Rampen et al. (2011) of saturated C28, C30, and C32 1,14-LCDs in the marine heterokont alga *Apedinella radians* (Class Dictyochophyceae, order Pedinellales). *Apedinella* spp. occur globally and are particularly found in estuarine waters.

Compositional changes in LCDs with growth temperature have been reported by Rampen et al. (2014) for *N. gaditana*.

Long-chain alkyl diols occur in some freshwater microalgae such as species of *Ochromonas* (Mercer and Davies 1974, 1979). In both *O. danica* and *O. malhamensis*, the major alkyl diol is the C22 compound docosane-1,14-diol disulfate. *O. danica* also contained small amounts of the C24 tetracosane-1,15-diol disulfate and *O. malhamensis* contained some tetracosane-1,14-diol disulfate (Mercer and Davies, 1979). These chain lengths are much shorter than those commonly found in sediments, but the 1,14- and 1,15-dihydroxylation pattern is the same as that found in diatoms and *Nannochloropsis*, respectively.

![Fig. 4](image_url) Structures of some alkyl diols found in microalgae. (a) C30 1,15- and C32 1,15-diols found in eustigmatophytes; (c) C28 1,14- and C30 1,14-diols found in some diatoms
Application of a 18S rRNA gene-based method has revealed the presence of both known and novel groups of Eustigmatophyceae in Lake Challa (Villanueva et al. 2014a). The maximum abundance of Eustigmatophyceae gene sequences coincided with maximum LCD abundance at 9 m water depth, suggesting an important role of eustigmatophytes as LCD-producers. Seasonal variation in LCD distributions suggested that successive LCD-producing blooms were due to different eustigmatophyte algae or changes in the LCDs produced by a unique algal population as environmental conditions changed.

7 Algaenan

A number of studies have now shown that an aliphatic, solvent-insoluble, cross-linked and chemically resistant biopolymeric material termed “algaenan” occurs in some species of microalgae (e.g., Tegelaar et al. 1989; Derenne et al. 1990; de Leeuw and Largeau, 1993; Gelin et al., 1999). It is a significant component of the outer cell wall in B. braunii (e.g., Berkaloff et al. 1983; Templier et al. 1993; Derenne et al. 1989, 1990; Gatellier et al. 1993; Gelin et al. 1994); in other green algae including Tetraedron minimum, Scenedesmus communis, and Pediastrum boryanum (e.g., Blokker et al., 1998b); in eustigmatophytes of the genus Nannochloropsis (Gelin et al. 1996, 1997a,b, 1999); and the dinoflagellate Gymnodinium catenatum (Gelin et al. 1999).

In Nannochloropsis species, LCAs, LCDs, and LCHFAs are thought to be bound together via ether or ester bonds to form algaenans (Gelin et al. 1996, 1997a, 1999; Volkman et al. 1998; Zhang and Volkman, 2017). A partial structure of the algaenan in N. oculata is shown in Fig. 5 (Gelin et al. 1996; Zhang and Volkman, 2017). Algaenans are thought to be highly resistant to degradation (Tegelaar et al. 1989; Volkman et al. 1998) and are likely to be present in the outer layers of the cell walls, forming a trilaminar structure (Gelin et al. 1999). Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy on the cell wall of N. gaditana confirmed the ether-linked aliphatic structures of algaenans and revealed also the presence of C=O bonds (Scholz et al. 2014), which likely correspond to ketone or carboxylic functional groups of long-chain keto-ols, LCHFAs, and dihydroxy fatty acids, respectively, which were previously reported to occur in Nannochloropsis spp. (Volkman et al. 1992; Gelin et al. 1997a; Versteegh et al. 1997).

Algaenans have also been described in several genera of Chlorophyta (Derenne et al. 1988, 1990; Gelin et al. 1997b; Blokker et al. 1998b; Allard and Templier 2001). Allard and Templier (2001) showed using flash pyrolysis with in situ methylation using tetramethylammonium hydroxide (TMAH) and alkaline hydrolysis that the high molecular weight lipids isolated from Chlorella emersonii and Scenedesmus communis are mainly composed of saturated n-C26 and n-C28 fatty acids and alcohols and of saturated n-C30 and n-C32 α,ω-diols and ω-hydroxy acids. In contrast, the high molecular weight lipids isolated from T. minimum are predominantly composed of long-chain fatty acids and ω-hydroxy acids.

Algaenan is found in the A, B, and L races of Botryococcus and is thought to have a similar structure based on an ether-linked highly aliphatic structure.
Fig. 5 (a) Mass fragmentograms showing distribution of mid-chain ketones from stepwise pyrolysis of the algaenan from *N. oculata* (after Zhang and Volkman 2017). Note that this species is now known as *N. oceanica*. (b) Mass spectrum of the major component showing cleavage at either side of the carbonyl group to produce the m/z 239 ion. (c) Structural element of the algaenan in *N. oceanica* (after Gelin et al. 1996) showing how a repeating C$_{32}$ 1,17-diol can account for the major pyrolysis products (HC = alkenes; MK = methyl ketones, MCK = mid-chain ketones). For a C$_{32}$ diol, x + y = 28, the major alkan-2-one is C$_{17}$ (Zhang and Volkman 2017), so x = 14, and hence y = 14. The C$_{31}$ n-alkan-16-one also has x = 14 and y = 14, so the basic repeating unit is the C$_{32}$ alkyl-1,17-diol precursor.
Bertheas et al. (1999) showed the presence of a high molecular weight polyaldehyde in the L race and proposed that it is derived from the condensation-polymerization of a $n$-C$_{32}$ diunsaturated dialdehyde, involving an aldolization-dehydration mechanism similar to that in the A race. However, it differed by the multi-incorporation of 14,15-dihydroxylycopa-18-ene, derived from lycopadiene, by acetalization of ca. seven aldehyde functions out of ten. This study demonstrated that ether functions are not the major cross-linking groups in the algaenan of the L race, as had been previously proposed (Derenne et al. 1989; Gelin et al. 1994). The polymeric nature of the algaenan results from the formation of C=C bonds (conjugated to the formyl groups), during the condensation-polymerization reaction.

8 Sterols

Sterols are tetracyclic triterpenoids biosynthesized by all eukaryotic organisms although a few bacteria contain simple sterol distributions. A generalized structure with numbered carbon atoms is shown in Fig. 6 together with structures of some common algal sterols. The occurrence of sterols alkylated in the side-chain appears to be a diagnostic feature of eukaryote sterol biosynthesis (e.g., Volkman, 2016). In sediments, sterols are converted to sterenes and then steranes which thus provide a valuable biomarker for studying the first appearance of eukaryotes. Molecular clock calculations by Gold et al. (2017) show that simple sterol biosynthesis probably existed well before the diversification of living eukaryotes and predates the oldest detected sterane biomarkers in sediments deposited in the Barney Creek Formation about 1.64 Gyr ago (Brocks et al. 2005). This new work by Gold et al. (2017) implies that sterol biosynthesis is tied to the first widespread availability of molecular oxygen in the ocean–atmosphere system.

Microalgae display a wide range of structures reflecting differences in the sterol biosynthetic pathway used by different organisms (e.g., Volkman, 1986, 2003, 2016; Volkman et al. 1998; Nes, 2011; Villanueva et al. 2014b, Ahmed et al. 2015). Some algal classes show characteristic distributions, but in others a wide range of structures can be found either because the taxonomic grouping is polyphyletic or the different algae accumulate sterols produced at different stages in the biosynthetic pathway – perhaps due to evolutionary changes in some of the biosynthetic steps.

A comprehensive overview of the sterols in microalgae was recently published by Volkman (2016) so only the salient features will be discussed here. A sufficiently large number of species of green microalgae, diatoms, dinoflagellates, and haptophytes have been studied (over 100 species in the case of diatoms) that reasonable generalizations can be made about their typical sterol patterns.

Diatoms contain a surprising diversity of sterol distributions, and over 40 different sterols have been identified (Rampen et al. 2010). Common sterols include (22E)-24-methylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol (epi-brassicasterol since the C-24 stereochemistry is alpha; Fig. 6), 24-methylcholesta-5,24(28)-dien-3β-ol (24-methylenecholesterol), and cholesterol (Fig. 6). A few diatom species display
distinctive distributions such as *Amphora* which contains high contents of the C_{29} sterol (22E)-24-ethylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol (stigmasterol). Belt et al. (2017) identified desmosterol (cholesta-5,24-dien-3β-ol) as the major sterol in the sample from West Svalbard, containing >90% diatoms assigned as *R. setigera*. 4-Methylsterols are rare in diatoms, but a species of *Navicula* contains dinosterol or its isomer (Volkman et al. 1993). Indeed, sterols with a methyl group at C-23 in the side-chain (Fig. 6) are also surprisingly common in diatoms (Volkman et al. 1993; Volkman 2003; Rampen et al. 2009a, 2010) showing that this feature is not unique to dinoflagellate sterols. One of the more unusual findings is the identification of the

---

**Fig. 6** (a) Basic sterol skeleton with numbering system and shorthand nomenclature as well as structures of some common sterols found in microalgae. Methyl groups can be found at positions C-4 (mainly dinoflagellates and rarely in some haptophytes and diatoms), C-24 (common), sometimes at C-23 (some diatoms and dinoflagellates), and rarely at C-26. Ethyl and propyl groups can also be found at position C-24. Double bonds in the ring system can be found at positions 5, 7, 8(9), and 8(11); double bonds in the side chain typically occur at C-22, C-24(25), and C-24(28). The stereochemistry of the alkyl group at C-24 can be either α (typical of diatoms and haptophytes, as in (e)) or β (typical of some green microalgae and dinoflagellates); (b) structure of cholesterol which is found in many microalgae despite being considered a sterol characteristic of animals; (c) ergosterol found in yeasts and some green algae; (d) dinosterol found in some, but not all, dinoflagellates; (e) epi-brassicasterol (diatomsterol) with C-24α stereochemistry for the methyl group as found in diatoms and haptophytes.
C₃₀ sterol gorgosterol (22,23-methylene-23,24-dimethylcholest-5-en-3β-ol) in diatoms of the genus Delphineus (Rampen et al. 2009b); this sterol is more commonly found in some corals. Delphineus species also contain (22E)-24-methylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol and (22E)-cholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol, both often present in diatoms, and (22E)-23,24-dimethylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol.

Green microalgae (chlorophytes, prasinophytes, and trebouxiophytes) display a wide variety of compositions including some with simple distributions of sterols dominated by the C₂₉ sterol 24-ethylcholest-5-en-3β-ol (sitosterol or more likely its 24(S)-epimer) more commonly associated with higher plants. In some chlorophytes, a predominance of Δ⁷-unsaturated sterols is found dominated by (22E)-24-methylcholesta-5,7,22-trien-3β-ol (ergosterol; Fig. 6) (Patterson, 1969; Ahmed et al. 2015) which is commonly found in yeast. Some prasinophytes such as Pyramimonas cordata and Pycnococcus provasolii contain simple distributions of Δ⁸-sterols including 24-methylenecholesterol, 24-methylcholesterol (campsterol, also found in higher plants), and [24(28)Z]-24-ethylcholesta-5,24(28)-dien-3β-ol (28-isofucosterol) (Volkman et al. 1994b). Tetraselmis spp. also contain high contents of 24-methylcholesterol (e.g., Ahmed et al. 2015). In marked contrast, Pyramimonas grossii contains a complex mixture of C₂₈ and C₂₉ sterols with Δ⁷, Δ⁵, and Δ⁵,⁷,⁹(11) nuclear double bond systems (Patterson et al. 1992) and the freshwater Scenedesmus quadricauda contains only Δ⁷ sterols including 24-methyl-5α-cholest-7-en-3β-ol, (22E)-24-ethyl-5α-cholesta-7,22-dien-3β-ol, and 24-ethyl-5α-cholesta-7-en-3β-ol (Cranwell et al. 1990).

Many dinoflagellates contain mixtures of 4-methylsterols including the C₃₀ sterol (22E)-4α,23,24-trimethyl-5α-cholesta-22-en-3β-ol (dinosterol; Fig. 6), as well as related 5α(H)-stanols. It is important to recognize that not all dinoflagellates contain dinosterol (Volkman, 1986). A few genera contain unusual sterols such as Amphidinium and Karenia species which contain Δ⁸(14)-unsaturated sterols (e.g., Leblond et al., 2011).

Haptophytes, in contrast, usually have simple sterol distributions of one to five compounds, often dominated by either cholesterol or (22E)-24-methylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol (as also found in diatoms). Moderate amounts of the C₂₉ sterols 24-ethylcholesterol and (22E)-24-ethylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol are found in several species (Conte et al. 1994). For example, the geochemically important coccolithophorids E. huxleyi and G. oceanica have simple sterol distributions dominated (> 90%) by (22E)-24-methylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol. Species of the genus Pavlova also contain 5α(H)-stanols lacking a Δ⁵ double bond and unusual dihydroxylated 4-methylsterols called pavlovols including 4α,24-dimethylcholestan-3β,4β-diol (Volkman et al., 1997; Xu et al., 2008; Ahmed et al., 2015).

Compositional data for eustigmatophytes are rather limited. Volkman et al. (1999a) showed that three freshwater species contained simple distributions consisting predominantly of the C₂₉ sterol 24-ethylcholesterol (more typical of plants) with small amounts of cholesterol, 24-methylcholesterol, (22E)-24-ethylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol and isofucosterol. In contrast, marine species from the genus Nannochloropsis contain mainly cholesterol (>75%) together with small amounts of the C₂₉ sterols [24(28)E]-24-ethylcholesta-5,24(28)-dien-3β-ol.
(fucosterol) and \([24(28)Z]-24\text{-ethylcholesta-5,24(28)-dien-3}\beta\text{-ol}\) (isofucosterol) (Volkman et al. 1992; Patterson et al. 1994b). The sterol composition of *Nannochloropsis gaditana* is similar with a predominance of cholesterol and small amounts of 24-ethylcholesterol (Méjanelle et al. 2003) as also found in *N. salina*.

Only a few microalgal species from the Rhodophyta (red algae) have been examined and some contain unusual compositions (Volkman, 2016). For example, *Porphyridium cruentum* contains 24-methylcholesta-5,7,22-trien-3\beta-ol (ergosterol) and cholesta-5,22-dien-3\beta-ol, whereas other species of *Porphyridium* contain unusual 4-methyl \(\Delta^8\)-unsaturated sterols including 4\alpha-methyl-5\alpha-cholesta-8,22-dien-3\beta-ol, 4\alpha,24-dimethyl-5\alpha-cholesta-8,22-dien-3\beta-ol, 4-methylcholest-8-en-3\beta-ol, and 4,24-dimethylcholest-8-en-3\beta-ol (Beastall et al. 1974).

### 9 Other Biochemical Constituents

In addition to lipids, microalgae contain a diverse range of other biochemicals making them useful substrates for nutritional feeds used in aquaculture, as health supplements, food additives, and a source of bioactives (e.g., Volkman and Brown, 2005; Gouveia et al. 2010; Shukla and Dhar, 2013; Stonik and Stonik, 2015; D’Alessandro and Antoniosi Filho, 2016). Some species also produce toxins which can cause food poisoning when people consume mollusks or fish that have accumulated the toxin. Microalgae are known for their variety of colors – and were initially classified on that basis – due to a wide range of chlorophylls and phaeopigments present in their cells. The distributions of these can be taxonomically distinct (e.g., Serive et al. 2017) and have been used to assign microalgal sources to organic matter in seawater and sediments (see review by Bianchi and Canuel, 2011). Microalgae contain abundant amino acids and sugars although abundances can vary with growth conditions (Volkman and Brown, 2005). They also contain several important vitamins (Volkman and Brown, 2005) including tocopherols (vitamin E) which after degradation can be an important source of isoprenoids in sediments (Goossens et al. 1984).

### 10 Research Needs

One of the recurring problems with algal lipid research is the use of poorly defined algal strains compounded by the fact that phycologists are now redefining the taxonomic position of many species as new information becomes available from molecular biology. There are examples in the early literature where the origins of a sample are unclear and the results can’t be duplicated. The use of properly defined and curated unialgal strains, preferably grown under axenic conditions, is essential. DNA data are vital for correct identification and there is a growing interest in genes associated with lipid biosynthesis. There is also a need for careful attention to strain designation since it is now clear that there can be significant differences in lipid
composition between strains of the same species (e.g., Conte et al. 1994) and even of changes when a strain is cultured for long periods (e.g., Prahl et al. 2006).

As pointed out throughout the text, there are still many algal groups for which data are limited and additional species need to be analyzed. Unfortunately, this is often because only a limited number of species are held in culture collections and it is expensive to isolate, identify, and culture new species. Even where a reasonable number of species are available, there are still only a few cases, such as the diatoms, where more than 100 species have been analyzed for lipids. In the case of the haptophytes, there is a clear need for a comprehensive survey of alkenone producers that includes DNA typing to firmly establish which genera synthesize these compounds and to relate the data to the geological record of haptophytes. Identification of the genes involved in alkenone and alkenoate biosynthesis would also be valuable.

Given the many thousands of microalgal species, and difficulties in culturing many of them, more rapid methods for screening of novel lipids in microalgae are needed. Pyrolysis techniques have rarely been applied to algae, but recently Zhang and Volkman (2017) showed that stepwise pyrolysis could be used to provide structural information about the constituents of algaenan made by a marine eustigmatophyte (Fig. 5). The technique uses initial low pyrolysis temperatures which can yield distributions of lipids similar to those obtained by extraction, although some breakdown of labile compounds does of course occur. This technique does not require prior extraction of the cells and so could be used to rapidly screen algal biomass for novel components.

Most lipid studies of microalgae have used GC–MS with non-polar GC stationary phases. While these columns are useful for analyzing a wide range of lipids they lack selectivity and more targeted analyses (such as polar columns for polyunsaturated fatty acid esters) can be useful. New methods using different capillary GC columns have been developed for high resolution separation of alkenones and alkenoates (Zheng et al. 2017), which provides an indication of what can be achieved. GC–MS analysis is not well suited for highly polar or higher molecular weight lipids which are better studied using HPLC–MS. New methods are needed here in an analogous way to which better methods have been developed for GDGT analysis in archaea. Stranska-Zachariasova et al. (2016) have studied microalgae using a range of solvent extraction methods to fractionate lipid constituents. In their work, they examined compounds with a broad range of polarities using ultra-high-performance liquid chromatography coupled with high resolution tandem mass spectrometric detection (UHPLC–MS–MS). While this methodology was designed for bioactives, it could be modified to look for compounds of geochemical interest.

Culture studies that can elucidate the effects of environmental conditions on lipid compositions and isotope ($\delta^{13}C$, $\delta^{2}H$) values continue to provide much valuable data and should be expanded particularly for microalgal species which synthesize compounds being used as palaeoproxies for temperature, salinity, CO$_2$, etc. Continuous cultures are preferred here since individual environmental parameters can be isolated, whereas in batch culture there is the added complication of varying growth stage and growth rate. Studies of natural populations of microalgae would also be
useful, even though it is difficult to obtain pure samples, since many algal species have not been cultured and few data are available for microalgae living under natural conditions. In favorable cases, flow cytometry or other concentrating methods can yield samples sufficiently pure for lipid analysis.

References


Bendif EM, Probert I, Schroeder DC, de Vargas C (2013) On the description of *Tisochrysis lutea* gen. nov. sp. nov. and *Isochrysis nuda* sp. nov. in the Isochrysidales, and the transfer of *Dicrateria* to the Prymnesiales (Haptophyta). J Appl Phycol 25:1763–1776


Huang Z, Poulter CD (1989) Tetramethylsqualene, a triterpene from *Botryococcus braunii* var Showa. Phytochemistry 28:1467–1470


Massé G, Belt ST, Rowland SJ (2004a) Biosynthesis of unusual monocyclic alkenes by the diatom Rhizosolenia setigera (Brightwell). Phytochemistry 65:1101–1106

Massé G, Belt ST, Rowland SJ, Rohmer M (2004b) Isoprenoid biosynthesis in the diatoms Rhizosolenia setigera (Brightwell) and Haslea ostrearia (Simonsen). Proc Nat Acad Sci USA 101:4413–4418


Abiotic Transformation of Unsaturated Lipids and Hydrocarbons in Senescent Phytoplanktonic Cells

Jean-François Rontani

Contents

1 Introduction ............................................................................. 194
2 Photo- and Autoxidation during the Senescence of Phytoplankton ................................................. 194
  2.1 Photosensitized Oxidation ...................................................... 194
  2.2 Free Radical Oxidation (Autoxidation) ..................................... 196
3 Photo- and Autoxidation of the Main Unsaturated Lipid Components of Algae ......................... 197
  3.1 Chlorophyll Phytol Side-Chain ............................................ 197
  3.2 Alkenes ............................................................................ 199
  3.3 Alkenones ............................................................................ 202
  3.4 Unsaturated Fatty Acids ...................................................... 205
  3.5 $\Delta^5$-Sterols ..................................................................... 205
4 Conclusion ............................................................................. 208
References ................................................................................... 209

Abstract

The present paper reviews the effects of photooxidation and autoxidation (free radical oxidation) processes on the main unsaturated lipid components (branched and linear alkenes, chlorophyll phytol side-chain, alkenones, unsaturated fatty acids, and $\Delta^5$-sterols) of phytoplankton. A particular attention is given to the mechanisms of these degradation processes and to the potential role of tracers of the products formed. With these specific lipid tracers of abiotic degradation in hand, a more precise estimation of the behavior of particulate organic matter during sedimentation is expected.

J.-F. Rontani (*)
Aix Marseille Université, Mediterranean Institute of Oceanography (MIO), Université de Toulon, CNRS/INSU/IRD, Marseille, France
e-mail: jean-francois.rontani@mio.osupytheas.fr

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_23
1 Introduction

Although less widely studied than its biologically mediated (heterotrophic) counterpart, abiotic degradation by processes such as photooxidation and autoxidation (spontaneous free radical reaction of organic compounds with oxygen) is now understood to play a non-negligible role in the fate of particulate organic matter in the ocean (Rontani 2005). During the two last decades, a particular attention was given to the role played by photochemical and free radical-mediated processes in the degradation of most unsaturated lipid components: n-alkenes (Mouzdahir et al. 2001), highly branched isoprenoid (HBI) alkenes (Rontani et al. 2011, 2014), alkenones (Rontani et al. 1997, 2006), chlorophyll phytyl side-chain (Rontani et al. 1994, 2003; Rontani and Aubert 2005), unsaturated fatty acids (Marchand and Rontani 2001), and Δ^5-sterols (Christodoulou et al. 2009), during the senescence of phytoplankton. The present paper reviews the results obtained in the course of these different studies.

2 Photo- and Autoxidation during the Senescence of Phytoplankton

2.1 Photosensitized Oxidation

Photochemical damages in phytodetritus are not a monopoly of UV radiation (Christodoulou et al. 2010). In fact, numerous organic components of phytoplankton are susceptible to being photodegraded during senescence by photosynthetically active radiation (PAR) (Rontani 2012). During the last years, it was demonstrated that irradiation of senescent phytoplanktonic cells by the PAR light employed for their growth resulted in fact in the photodegradation of most of their unsaturated lipid components (Rontani 2012).

Due to the presence of chlorophyll, a very efficient photosensitizer (Foote 1976; Knox and Dodge 1985), visible light-induced photosensitized processes act intensively during phytoplankton senescence. When chlorophyll absorbs a quantum of light energy, an excited singlet state (1Chl) is formed which, in healthy cells, leads predominately to the fast reactions of photosynthesis (Foote 1976). However, a small proportion (<0.1%) undergoes intersystem crossing (ISC) to form the longer lived triplet state (3Chl; Knox and Dodge 1985). 3Chl is not only in itself potentially damaging in type I reactions (hydrogen atom or electron abstraction) (Knox and Dodge 1985) but can also generate singlet oxygen (1O2), by reaction with ground state oxygen (3O2) via type II processes (Fig. 1). In order to avoid oxidative damage, there are many antioxidant protective mechanisms that operate in chloroplasts. For example, carotenoids quench 3Chl and 1O2 by energy transfer mechanisms (Foote 1976), while tocopherols (e.g., vitamin E) can remove 1O2 by acting as sacrificial scavengers (Halliwell 1987).

The stopping of photosynthetic reactions in senescent phytoplanktonic organisms results in an accelerated rate of formation of 3Chl and 1O2 (Nelson 1993). The rate of
formation of these potentially damaging species can then exceed the quenching capacity of the photoprotective system, and photodegradation can occur (photodynamic effect; Merzlyak and Hendry 1994) (Fig. 1). In phytodetritus, when the ordered structure of the thylakoid membranes has been disrupted, pigments tend to remain associated with other hydrophobic cellular components such as membrane lipids (Nelson 1993). The photooxidative effect of chlorophyll sensitization is strongly amplified within such a hydrophobic microenvironment. Moreover, the lifetime of $^{1}\text{O}_2$ produced from sensitizers in a lipid-rich hydrophobic environment could be longer, and its potential diffusive distance greater, than in aqueous solution (Suwa et al. 1977). Consequently, it is not surprising that photodegradation processes act on the majority of unsaturated lipid components of senescent phytoplankton.

**Fig. 1** Potential pathways for chlorophyll excitation energy in healthy and senescent phototrophic cells (simplified scheme taking into account only the involvement of $^{1}\text{O}_2$)
Type II photosensitized oxidation of phytoplankton lipids appeared to be strongly enhanced at high latitudes (Rontani et al. 2012a). This apparent paradox (i.e., increased photooxidation despite relatively low temperature and solar irradiance) has been attributed recently by Amiraux et al. (2016) to (i) the relative preservation of the sensitizer (chlorophyll) at low irradiance allowing a longer production time for $^{1}\text{O}_2$ and (ii) the slower diffusion rate of $^{1}\text{O}_2$ through the cell membranes at low temperature (Ehrenberg et al. 1998), thereby favoring the intracellular involvement of type II photosensitized reactions.

### 2.2 Free Radical Oxidation (Autoxidation)

Autoxidation has long been recognized as a free radical chain reaction (Schaich 2005). It thus includes an initiation, a propagation, and a termination phase. In senescent algae, homolytic cleavage (catalyzed by some metal ions, temperature, or UV radiations) (Schaich 2005) of hydroperoxides resulting from type II photosensitized oxidation (Fig. 1) seems to be at the origin of the initiation of this process (Girotti 1998; Rontani et al. 2003). Redox-active metal ions play a very important role in this homolysis as they are ubiquitous, active in many forms, and only needed in trace quantities for effective catalysis. Only metals undergoing one electron transfers appear to be active catalysts; they may direct the cleavage of hydroperoxides either through alkoxyl or peroxy radicals (Schaich 2005). The driving force in this chain reaction is the repeated abstraction of hydrogen atoms by peroxy radicals to form hydroperoxides plus free radicals on new substrate molecules (Fig. 2). The process continues indefinitely (propagation phase) until no hydrogen source is available or the chain is intercepted. The radical reaction stops when radicals recombine and produce non-radical species (termination phase).

![Free radical oxidation reaction](image)

**Fig. 2** Free radical oxidation reaction
Until now, autoxidative degradation in the marine environment has been largely ignored. Specific markers of these reactions have been highlighted by in vitro studies (Frankel 1998; Rontani et al. 2003; Rontani and Aubert 2005). Using these markers, it was demonstrated in situ that autoxidation processes play an important role in the degradation of phytoplankton (Marchand et al. 2005; Rontani et al. 2009; Christodoulou et al. 2009). It was also demonstrated that viral infection (Evans et al. 2006) and autocatalytic programmed cell death (Bidle and Falkowski 2004) of phytoplanktonic cells could also lead to elevated production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) able to induce the degradation of cell components.

The importance of autoxidative damages in phytodetritus depends on several parameters, among them: their hydroperoxide content, the temperature, the solar irradiance and the concentration of some metal ions. Hydroperoxides are mainly formed photochemically during the senescence of phytoplankton (see previous chapter), and their homolytic cleavage is likely at the origin of the involvement of autoxidative processes (Girotti 1998; Rontani et al. 2003). This cleavage being favored by high temperatures and strong solar irradiance (Foote et al. 1995), an intense autoxidative degradation of phytodetritus at low latitudes could be expected. However, it was recently demonstrated that high temperatures and strong solar irradiance can limit photooxidative damages in senescent phytoplanktonic cells (Amiraux et al. 2016) and thus their hydroperoxide content. It is thus very difficult to predict the zones where autoxidation of phytoplankton should be favored.

### 3 Photo- and Autoxidation of the Main Unsaturated Lipid Components of Algae

#### 3.1 Chlorophyll Phytyl Side-Chain

It was previously demonstrated in phytodetritus that the photodegradation rates were only three to five times higher for the chlorophyll tetrapyrrolic structure than for its phytyl side-chain (Cuny et al. 1999; Christodoulou et al. 2010). Photodegradation of the chlorophyll phytyl side-chain involved mainly $^1$O$_2$ and leads to the production of photoproducts of structures $a$ and $b$ (Fig. 3), quantifiable after NaBH$_4$-reduction and alkaline hydrolysis, respectively, in the form of 6,10,14-trimethylpentadecan-2-one (phytone) (1) and 3-methylidene-7,11,15-trimethyl-hexadecan-1,2-diol (phytyldiol) (2) (Fig. 3) (Rontani et al. 1994). Phytyldiol is ubiquitous in the marine environment and has been proposed as specific tracer for photodegradation of the chlorophyll phytyl side-chain (Rontani et al. 1994, 1996; Cuny and Rontani 1999). Further, the molar ratio phytyldiol/phytol (Chlorophyll Phytyl side-chain Photodegradation Index, CPPI) was employed to estimate the extent of chlorophyll photodegraded in natural marine samples by the empirical equation (Eq. 1) (Cuny et al. 2002).

\[
\text{Chlorophyll photodegradation}\% = \left(1 - \left(\text{CPPI} + 1\right)^{-18.5}\right) \times 100 \tag{1}
\]
Fig. 3 Type II photosensitized and free radical oxidation of the chlorophyll phytol side-chain
Autoxidation of the chlorophyll phytyl side-chain involves either addition of peroxy radicals to the double bond or hydrogen atom abstraction at the allylic carbon atom 4 (Rontani and Aubert 1994, 2005). Addition of a peroxy radical to the double bond gives a tertiary radical (Fig. 3). This radical can then (i) lead to Z and E epoxides by fast intramolecular homolytic substitution (Fossey et al. 1995) or (ii) react with molecular oxygen affording (after hydrogen atom abstraction on another molecule of substrate) a diperoxide (Fig. 3). Subsequent NaBH₄-reduction and alkaline hydrolysis of these compounds gives 3,7,11,15-tetramethylhexadecan-1,2,3-triol (3) (Fig. 3). In contrast, abstraction of a hydrogen atom at the allylic carbon atom 4 of the phytyl chain and subsequent oxidation of the allylic radicals thus formed affords (after NaBH₄-reduction and alkaline hydrolysis) Z and E 3,7,11,15-tetramethylhexadec-3-en-1,2-diols (4,5) and Z and E 3,7,11,15-tetramethylhexadec-2-en-1,4-diols (6,7) (Fig. 3). These isomeric compounds, which are widespread in the marine environment, were proposed as specific tracers of autoxidation processes in phytodetritus (Rontani and Aubert 2005).

It is interesting to note that free radical oxidation of the chlorophyll phytyl side-chain appeared to be different in senescent cells of the diatom Skeletonema costatum (Rontani et al. 2003). The differences observed were attributed to the well-documented high chlorophyllase activity of this strain (Jeffrey and Hallegraeff 1987) catalyzing the hydrolysis of chlorophyll to free phytol and chlorophyllide. Indeed, it is well known that in the case of free allylic alcohols hydrogen atom abstraction at carbon atom 1 is strongly favored to the detriment of addition reactions (Huyser and Johnson 1968).

### 3.2 Alkenes

The reactivity of alkenes toward ¹⁰₂ increases logically with their number of unsaturations (Frankel 1998) but also with the substitution degree of their double bonds (Hurst et al. 1985). Indeed, the order of photoreactivity of the double bonds in alkenes follows the order: tetrasubstituted > trisubstituted > disubstituted > monosubstituted.

The type II photosensitized oxidation of n-alkenes was previously studied in killed cells of Emiliania huxleyi and Nannochloropsis salina (Mouzdahir et al. 2001). In the case of E. huxleyi, minor C₃₁ and C₃₃ n-alkenes were strongly photo-degraded, while the major C₃₇ and C₃₈ n-alkenes appeared particularly recalcitrant toward photochemical processes. The photochemical recalcitrance of C₃₇ and C₃₈ n-alkenes was partly attributed to the E geometry of their internal double bonds known to be five- to sevenfold less reactive toward ¹⁰₂ than the Z geometry (Hurst et al. 1985) but also to a localization of these compounds elsewhere than in cellular membranes. This last hypothesis is in good agreement with the results of Eltgroth et al. (2005), who showed that C₃₇ n-alkenes were localized mainly in chloroplasts or cytoplasmic vesicles of E. huxleyi cells. In the case of N. salina killed cells, the authors failed to detect significant photo-degradation of monounsaturated hydrocarbons (Mouzdahir et al. 2001); this result
was attributed to the terminal position of the double bond in these compounds, which is poorly reactive toward $^{1}\text{O}_2$ (Hurst et al. 1985). In contrast, di, tri-, and tetraenes were strongly photodegraded during irradiation. The photodegradation of phytoplanktonic alkenes showed apparent second-order kinetics with respect to light exposure, and the half-life doses obtained logically decrease with increasing number of double bonds in these compounds.

Photoreactivity of HBI alkenes was studied in dead cells of the diatom *Haslea ostrearia* (Rontani et al. 2011). Despite their believed localization in the cytoplasm (Massé 2003), HBI alkenes with at least one trisubstituted double bond appeared to be photodegraded at similar or higher rates compared to other highly reactive membrane lipids (e.g., polyunsaturated fatty acids, vitamin E, and chlorophyll-a). In contrast, HBIs with only di- and monosubstituted double bonds were relatively inert with respect to type II photoprocesses. In polyolefinic systems, attack by $^{1}\text{O}_2$ occurs preferentially at the more highly substituted double bond, which also has the lowest ionization potential (Frimer 1983). The reaction of $^{1}\text{O}_2$ with such a double bond results in the formation of two allylic hydroperoxides, which after homolytic cleavage and subsequent hydrogen atom abstraction mainly afford the corresponding alcohols (Fig. 4).

A kinetic study of several HBI alkenes in solution allowed to propose the following order of reactivity toward autoxidation: HBI with one bis-allylic position $>>$ HBI with two trisubstituted double bonds $>$ HBI with one trisubstituted double bond $>>$ HBI with only di- or monosubstituted double bonds (Rontani et al. 2014). HBI trienes possessing one bis-allylic position (where hydrogen atom abstraction is highly favored) were found to be particularly reactive toward autoxidation and degraded at similar rates compared to polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA) in dead diatom cells. Epoxidation of olefins under autoxidation conditions is well known and arises from the addition of peroxyl radicals (ROO$^•$) to the C═C bond, followed by a unimolecular ring-closure and elimination of an alkoxy radical (RO$^•$) (Fossey et al. 1995). The ROO$^•$ addition to the C═C bond competes with allylic hydrogen atom abstraction when there is a double bond that is either conjugated or 1,1-disubstituted (Schaich 2005). In the case of HBIs possessing one trisubstituted double bond such as 2,6,10,14-tetramethyl-7-(3-methylpent-4-enyl)-pentadeca-6(17),9E-diene, the majority (more than 90%) of autoxidation products thus appeared to result from the initial addition of a peroxyl radical to the nine to ten double bond (Fig. 5). The very low amounts of autoxidation products detected in the case of HBIs possessing two trisubstituted double bonds (Rontani et al. 2014) resulted likely from the secondary oxidation of primary oxidation products to polar and oligomeric compounds, which were not detectable using the GC-MS methods employed.

The very low reactivity of the monounsaturated HBI IP$_{25}$ (2,6,10,14-tetramethyl-7-(3-methylpent-4-enyl)-pentadecane) ($^9$) toward autooxidative (Rontani et al. 2014) and photooxidative (Rontani et al. 2011) degradation processes, both support the proposed use of this compound as a proxy for paleo sea ice by Belt et al. (2007). However, it may be noted that the stay of ice algal material within the oxic zone of some Arctic sediments may be $>100$ years (Belt, unpublished results). Despite its very low autooxidative reactivity, IP$_{25}$ could thus be strongly...
autoxidized during the crossing of the oxic zone of such sediments (Rontani et al. 2018). A greater understanding of the factors that influence the sedimentary environments is clearly required before more detailed and quantitative assessments based on IP25 can be made.

Fig. 4 Type II photosensitized oxidation of the HBI alkene 2,6,10,14-tetramethyl-7-(3-methylpent-4-enyl)-pentadeca-6(17),9E-diene (8) (RH = hydrogen donors)
3.3 Alkenones

Alkenones are a class of mono-, di-, tri-, tetra-, and pentaunsaturated C\textsubscript{35}−C\textsubscript{40} methyl and ethyl ketones (De Leeuw et al. 1980; Volkman et al. 1980; Marlowe et al. 1984; Prahl et al. 2006; Jaraula et al. 2010) produced by certain haptophytes (\textit{E. huxleyi}, \textit{Gephyrocapsa oceanica}, \textit{Isochrysis galbana}, and \textit{Chrysotila lamellosa})

\textbf{Fig. 5} Free radical oxidation of the HBI alkene 2,6,10,14-tetramethyl-7-(3-methylpent-4-enyl)-pentadeca-6(17),9\textit{E}-diene (8) (RH = hydrogen donors)
The unsaturation ratio of C37 alkenones, defined as $U^{K'}_{37} = [C_{37:2}] / ([C_{37:2}] + [C_{37:3}])$, where $[C_{37:2}]$ and $[C_{37:3}]$ are the concentrations of di- and triunsaturated C37 alkenones, respectively, varies positively with the growth temperature of the alga (Prahl and Wakeham 1987; Prahl et al. 1988). This index is now routinely used for paleotemperature reconstruction. For alkenones to be useful as measures of sea surface temperature in the geological record, it is essential that any effects of degradation in the water column and in sediments do not affect the temperature signal established during their initial biosynthesis by the alga (Harvey 2000; Grimalt et al. 2000).

Photochemical degradation of alkenones is not sufficiently fast enough in dead cells of *E. huxleyi* to induce strong modification of the $U^{K'}_{37}$ ratio before the photodestruction of the photosensitizing substances (the increase in $U^{K'}_{37}$ ranges from 0 to +0.04; Rontani et al. 1997; Mouzdahir et al. 2001). This poor photo-reactivity was attributed not only to the E geometry of the double bonds of alkenones poorly reactive toward $^1O_2$ (Hurst et al. 1985) but also to the compartmentalization effects. Indeed, these compounds occur in parts of the cell (chloroplasts or cytoplasmic vesicles; Elgroth et al. 2005), which are less accessible for $^1O_2$ than cell membranes. It may be expected that if the geometry of their double bonds had been Z (as for usual lipids), then selective photolysis of di- and triunsaturated alkenones would occur intensively during the senescence of haptophytes, thus confounding the use of the alkenone unsaturation index for paleotemperature estimation.

The autoxidative reactivity of alkenones in the laboratory has been studied (Rontani et al. 2006). They appeared to be more sensitive toward oxidative free radical processes than analogues of other common marine lipids such as phytol acetate (model for the chlorophyll phytol side-chain), methyl oleate (model for esterified FAs), and cholesteryl acetate (model for esterified sterols), and their oxidation rates increase in proportion to the number of double bonds. As a result of this increasing reactivity with degree of unsaturation, $U^{K'}_{37}$ values increased significantly (up to 0.20) during the incubation. Free radical oxidation of isolated 1,2-disubstituted double bonds generally involves allylic hydrogen atom abstraction (Schaich 2005). Effectively, the autoxidation of alkenones appears to involve mainly allylic hydrogen atom abstraction and subsequent oxidation of the allylic radical thus formed (Fig. 6). Alkenone autoxidation, measured indirectly as alkenediols produced from post-extraction NaBH$_4$-reduction of the corresponding allylic hydroperoxyalkenones (Fig. 6), has been observed in cultures of *E. huxleyi* strain CS-57 that exhibited anomalously high $U^{K'}_{37}$ values (Rontani et al. 2007) and in surface sediments from the SE Alaska (Rontani et al. 2013). Autoxidation of alkenones may thus be significant in some marine areas and could explain some discrepancies between sea surface temperatures (SST) and alkenone-based temperature estimates for marine particles (Freeman and Wakeham 1992) and oxic sediments (Hoefs et al. 1998; Gong and Hollander 1999).
Fig. 6 Free radical oxidation of the C₃₇ : ₃ alkenone involving allylic hydrogen atom abstraction (only the attack of the allylic carbon atom 17 is shown)
3.4 Unsaturated Fatty Acids

Algal unsaturated fatty acids, which generally predominate in the photosynthetic membranes (Woods 1974), are particularly susceptible to type II photooxidation (Heath and Packer 1968) and free radical oxidation (Girotti 1990). In killed phytoplankton cells, the photo- (Rontani et al. 1998) and autoxidation (Rontani et al. 2014) rates of unsaturated fatty acids logically increase with their unsaturation degree. Despite the very high reactivity of their parent compounds with $^1$$\text{O}_2$ and radicals, oxidation products of polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) could not be detected in natural samples. This is possibly due to (i) the instability of the hydroperoxides formed or (ii) the involvement of cross-linking reactions leading to the formation of macromolecular structures (Neff et al. 1988) non-amenable to gas chromatography. In contrast, high proportions of oxidation products of monounsaturated fatty acids (MUFAs) are often present in particulate matter (Marchand and Rontani 2001; Christodoulou et al. 2009) and sediment (Rontani et al. 2012b) samples. The quantification of these compounds involved NaBH$_4$-reduction of the labile hydroperoxides yielding the corresponding alcohols, which are more amenable to analysis using gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS) and subsequent saponification.

Singlet oxygen-mediated photooxidation of MUFAs involves a direct reaction of $^1$$\text{O}_2$ with the carbon-carbon double bond by a concerted “ene” addition (Frimer 1979) and leads to formation of hydroperoxides at each carbon atom of the original double bond. Thus, photooxidation of oleic acid produces a mixture of 9- and 10-hydroperoxides with an allylic $E$-double bond (Frankel et al. 1979; Frankel 1998), which can subsequently undergo stereoselective radical allylic rearrangement to 11-$E$ and 8-$E$ hydroperoxides, respectively (Porter et al. 1995) (Fig. 7).

Autoxidation of MUFAs mainly involves allylic hydrogen atom abstraction and subsequent oxidation of the allylic radicals thus formed. For example, autoxidation of oleic acid mainly results in the formation of a mixture of 9-$E$, 10-$E$, 11-$E$, 11-$Z$, 8-$E$, and 8-$Z$ hydroperoxides (Frankel 1998) (Fig. 7). Free radical oxidative processes can be easily characterized based on the presence of $Z$ allylic hydroperoxyacids, which cannot be produced photochemically (Fig. 7) and are specific products of these degradation processes (Porter et al. 1995; Frankel 1998).

During early diagenesis, photo- and autoxidative isomeric hydroperoxyacids undergo allylic rearrangement, heterolytic cleavage to aldehydes and $\omega$-oxocarboxylic acids (Frimer 1979), or homolytic cleavage and subsequent transformation to the corresponding alcohols or ketones (Fig. 8).

3.5 $\Delta^5$-Sterols

As important unsaturated components of biological membranes, $\Delta^5$-sterols are highly susceptible to photooxidative degradation during the senescence of phytoplankton. Type II photosensitized oxidation of $\Delta^5$-sterols produces mainly $\Delta^5$-5$\alpha$-hydroperoxides with smaller amounts of $\Delta^4$-6$\alpha$/6$\beta$-hydroperoxides (Kulig and Smith 1973).
The latter were selected as tracers of photooxidation of $\Delta^5$-sterols due to their high specificity and relative stability (Christodoulou et al. 2009; Rontani et al. 2009). As $\Delta^4$-6\(\alpha\)/6\(\beta\)-hydroperoxides could not be analyzed directly by GC-MS techniques, they are generally quantified after NaBH$_4$-reduction to the corresponding diols (Rontani and Marchand, 2000). On the basis of the ratio $\Delta^4$-6\(\alpha\)/6\(\beta\)-hydroperoxides/$\Delta^6$-5\(\alpha\)-hydroperoxides observed in biological membranes (0.30) (Korytowski et al. 1992), equation (Eq. 2) was previously proposed for sterol photooxidation proportion estimates (Christodoulou et al. 2009).

\[
\text{Sterol photooxidation\%} = \left( \frac{\Delta^4 - 3\beta, 6\alpha/\beta\text{-dihydroxysterol\%}}{1 + 0.3} \right) / 0.3
\]  

(Fig. 9). Due to the trisubstitution of the $\Delta^5$ double bond, free radical autoxidation of $\Delta^5$-sterols involves both allylic hydrogen atom abstraction and epoxidation reactions and yields 7\(\alpha\)- and 7\(\beta\)-hydroperoxides, 5\(\alpha\)/6\(\alpha\)/6\(\beta\)-epoxy-sterols, and 3\(\beta\),5\(\alpha\),6\(\beta\)-tri-hydroxysterols (Smith 1981) (Fig. 9). 3\(\beta\),5\(\alpha\),6\(\beta\)-trihydroxysterols were selected as specific tracers of sterol autoxidation. 7-hydroperoxides were ruled out as possible markers due to their lack of specificity and instability (Christodoulou et al. 2009; Rontani et al. 2009), and 5\(\alpha\)/6\(\alpha\)/6\(\beta\)-epoxy-sterols could not be used since they are
Fig. 8  Degradation of allylic hydroperoxides resulting from type II photosensitized or free radical oxidation of monounsaturated fatty acids (the example given is that of 9-hydroperoxyoctadec-10-enoic acid) (10)
converted to the corresponding triol during saponification. The extent of sterol autoxidation was estimated using Eq. (3) based on autoxidation rate constants previously obtained (Christodoulou et al. 2009; Rontani et al. 2009; Morrisey and Kiely 2006) (averaged value of $k_{\text{epoxidation}}/k_{\text{allylic abstraction}} = 0.725$).

$$\text{Sterol autoxidation\%} = (3\beta, 5\alpha, 6\beta - \text{trihydroxysterols\%}) \\ \times (1 + 0.725)/0.725 \quad \text{(3)}$$

4 Conclusion

Numerous works summarized in the present review demonstrated that most of the unsaturated lipid components of phytoplankton could be degraded intensively by visible light-induced photochemical and free radical-mediated (autooxidative) processes during senescence. Some lipid oxidation products sufficiently specific of these two kinds of abiotic degradative processes have been proposed as tracers. These compounds could be very useful for the monitoring of the abiotic degradation of particulate organic matter in the marine realm.

On the basis of the different photodegradation rate constants measured after irradiation of dead phytoplanktonic cells (Christodoulou et al. 2010; Rontani et al. 2011), the following order of photoreactivity of phytoplanktonic lipids may be proposed: HBIs with three trisubstituted double bonds $>\text{HBIs with two trisubstituted double bonds} >\text{HBIs with one trisubstituted double bond} \approx \text{PUFAs} \approx \text{vitamin}$
E > MUFAs > chlorophyll phytyl side-chain > $\Delta^5$-sterols > HBI with zero trisubstituted double bonds > alkenones.

Concerning autoxidation, dark incubations of dead phytoplanktonic cells in the presence of Fe$^{2+}$ ions (Rontani et al. 2014) allow to propose the following order of reactivity: HBIs with bis-allylic position ≈ alkenones ≈ PUFAs > HBIs with one trisubstituted double bond ≈ chlorophyll phytyl side-chain > MUFAs > $\Delta^5$-sterols ≈ HBI with zero trisubstituted double bonds.

Acknowledgments Financial support over many years from the Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique (CNRS) and the Aix-Marseille University is gratefully acknowledged.

References


Frankel EN (1998) Lipid oxidation. The Oily Press, Dundee


Cuticular Hydrocarbons and Pheromones of Arthropods

Gary J. Blomquist, Claus Tittiger, and Russell Jurenka

Contents
1 Introduction: Cuticular Hydrocarbons and Pheromones ................................... 214
2 Insect Cuticular Hydrocarbons ........................................................................ 217
3 Insect Pheromones ........................................................................................... 218
  3.1 Lepidopteran Fatty Acid Derived (Type I Pheromones) .............................. 219
  3.2 Polynene Hydrocarbons (Type II) Pheromones ........................................ 219
  3.3 Terpenoid Pheromones ..................................................................... 219
  3.4 Other Pheromones ..................................................................... 220
4 Hydrocarbon Biosynthesis ........................................................................... 220
5 Pheromone Biosynthesis .............................................................................. 224
  5.1 Alcohol, Aldehyde, and Acetate Ester Pheromones .................................. 224
  5.2 Polynene Hydrocarbons ................................................................ 229
  5.3 Terpenoid Pheromones ................................................................ 230
  5.4 Other Pheromones ..................................................................... 232
6 Research Needs ............................................................................................. 235
References ........................................................................................................... 235

Abstract
Cuticular hydrocarbons and pheromones of insects are often derived from fatty acids and terpenoid lipid components. This chapter describes the chemistry and biochemistry of insect hydrocarbons and pheromones and emphasizes recent work. Cuticular hydrocarbons consist of complex mixtures of straight chain, unsaturated, and methyl-branched components with 21 to 40+ carbon atoms. They function both to restrict water loss to prevent a lethal rate of desiccation
and serve in chemical communication in many species. The major volatile insect pheromones consist of modified fatty acids and terpenoids. Many of the lepidopteran pheromones arise from fatty acid precursors, are modified with desaturases, and undergo limited chain shortening or elongation followed by modification of the carboxyl group to produce acetate esters, aldehydes, alcohols, and hydrocarbons. Many coleopteran pheromones are terpenoids, while still other insects use a variety of other compounds. The volatile, long range pheromones produced by insects are often produced in specific glands, and pheromone glands on the abdomen of many lepidopterans produce 10–21 carbon atom pheromone components. In some coleopterans, midgut tissue produces terpenoid pheromones. Recent work on hydrocarbon and pheromone production is taking advantage of the tools of molecular biology to better understand hydrocarbon and pheromone biosynthesis, and this information is summarized.

1 Introduction: Cuticular Hydrocarbons and Pheromones

Due to their small size, insects have large surface area to volume ratios and are therefore susceptible to water loss and desiccation. Cuticular lipids on the surface of insects are essential to prevent desiccation and death of insects. They are often comprised primarily of long-chain hydrocarbon components of 21 to 40+ carbon atoms. The ability of insects to withstand desiccation was recognized in the 1930s to be due in part to the epicuticular wax layer on the cuticle. The presence of hydrocarbons in this wax layer was suggested by Chibnall et al. (1934) and Blount et al. (1937). Over the next few decades, the importance of hydrocarbons in the cuticular wax of insects was established and the first components were identified by Baker et al. (1963) from the American cockroach, Periplaneta americana, as n-pentacosane, 3-methylpentacosane, and (Z,Z)-6,9-heptacosadiene. The development and application of combined gas-liquid chromatography and mass spectrometry was key to the rapid and efficient analyses of insect hydrocarbons. In the late 1960s and during the next few decades, GC-MS analyses of insect hydrocarbons were established (Nelson and Sukkestad 1970), and since that time the hydrocarbons of thousands of insect species were analyzed, first on packed columns and then much more efficiently on capillary columns. It became recognized that for many insect species, very complex mixtures of normal (straight-chain), methyl-branched, and unsaturated components exist (Howard and Blomquist 2005; Blomquist 2010; Ginzel and Blomquist 2016). In many insect species, cuticular hydrocarbons function in chemical communication where relatively nonvolatile pheromones are needed. Thus, it appears that many species have evolved unique blends of hydrocarbon components that serve both to prevent a lethal rate of water loss and to provide informational cues.

The biosynthetic pathways for insect hydrocarbons were examined with radioactive and stable isotopes in the 1970s and 1980s, and it was established that fatty acids are elongated and converted to hydrocarbons by the loss of the carboxyl carbon
atom. More recent studies have examined the origin of the fatty acyl precursors by selective desaturation and incorporation of methyl-branch groups, the subsequent elongation of the fatty acyl-CoAs to very-long-chain fatty acids, and their reduction and oxidative decarbonylation by insect-specific cytochromes P450 (Ginzel and Blomquist 2016).

The elucidation of the structure of the first insect sex pheromone, bombykol ((E, Z)-10,12-hexadecadien-1-ol) (Butenandt et al. 1959) (Fig. 1), from the silkworm moth, Bombyx mori, spanned more than 20 years and required a half million female abdomens. A few years later, (Z)-7-dodecenyl acetate (Fig. 1) was identified as the sex pheromone of the cabbage looper, Trichoplusia ni (Berger 1966). At about the same time, Silverstein et al. (1966) identified three terpenoid alcohols, ipsenol, ipsdienol, and verbenol (Fig. 1), as the aggregation pheromone of the bark beetle, Ips paraconfusus. This latter finding led to the recognition that most insect pheromones consisted of multicomponent blends. This has since been shown to be true for most insects, and single component pheromones are rare. Rapid improvements in analytical instrumentation and techniques reduced the number of insects needed for pheromone analysis from a half million or more to where now individual insects can sometimes provide sufficient material for chemical analysis. Over the last half century, extensive research on insect pheromones has resulted in the chemical and/or behavioral elucidation of pheromone components from well over 3000 insect species, with much of the work concentrating on sex pheromones from economically important pests with the aim of using this knowledge in insect control.

An early issue addressed in pheromone production was the origin of pheromone components. A question asked in several systems was whether pheromone components were derived from dietary components that were altered only minimally or whether they were synthesized de novo. This simple question proved surprisingly difficult to answer, and different answers were obtained for different groups of insects. It is now clear that most insect pheromone components are synthesized de novo by insect tissue (Tillman et al. 1999; Jurenka et al. 2017), with a number of notable exceptions that include several bark beetle pheromones (Tittiger and Blomquist 2016) and polyunsaturated hydrocarbons (Millar 2010).

By the mid-1980s, it had become apparent that the products of normal metabolism, particularly those of the fatty acid and isoprenoid pathways, were modified by a few pheromone-tissue-specific enzymes to produce the myriad of pheromone molecules. The elegant work of the Roelofs laboratory (Bjostad et al. 1987) demonstrated that many lepidopteran pheromones could be formed by the appropriate interplay of unique Δ11 and other desaturases and highly selective chain shortening followed by modification of the carboxyl group. This work has been extended, and there now exists a clear understanding of the biosynthetic pathways for many of the lepidopteran pheromones (Jurenka et al. 2017). The honeybee also uses highly specific chain shortening of fatty acids to produce the major components of the queen pheromone (Plettner et al. 1996, 1998). In some insects, the elongation of polyunsaturated dietary fatty acids followed by loss of the carboxyl carbon atom produces hydrocarbon and hydrocarbon-derived pheromones (Tillman et al. 1999; Millar 2010; Ginzel and Blomquist 2016). Ips and Dendroctonus spp. produce their
Fig. 1  Selected hydrocarbon and pheromone components representing major groups of compounds. Components were selected based on historical interest and work performed on their biosynthesis.
monoterpenoid-derived pheromones ipsenol, ipsdienol, and frontalin de novo by modification of isoprenoid pathway products (Blomquist et al. 2010; Tittiger and Blomquist 2016) (Fig. 4).

2 Insect Cuticular Hydrocarbons

The hundreds of different cuticular hydrocarbon components reported in insects can be divided into three major classes: \( n \)-alkanes, saturated methyl-branched components, and unsaturated hydrocarbons (Fig. 1). There are examples of other types of hydrocarbons including unsaturated methyl-branched components, but these are rare and often are present in small amounts. Methyl-branched hydrocarbons have up to four methyl branches, and the alkenes have up to four double bonds (Ginzel and Blomquist 2016). Most of the alkenes have \( cis \) double bonds, and the positions of the double bonds, while often in the 9-position, can be found almost anywhere on the carbon chain among various insect groups.

A long standing question regarding the methyl-branched alkanes was “what is their absolute stereochemistry”? In a landmark study, the Millar laboratory (Bello et al. 2015) isolated 36 monomethylalkanes from 20 species of insects representing nine orders and, using digital polarimetry with comparisons to known standards, showed all to be “\( R \).” The (\( R \)) configuration of the monomethylalkanes has interesting ramifications for the biosynthesis of methyl-branched hydrocarbons, indicating that the reduction of the alkene intermediate during biosynthesis is stereochemically specific. The stereochemistry of di- and trimethylalkanes has not been explored, but since they would likely be inserted by the same enzyme, the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th methyl groups would likely have the same orientation. Because of the assignment of the four groups on the chiral carbon atom, the second carbon atom on a dimethylalkane would likely have the “\( S \)” configuration.

The variety of chain lengths and the number and positions of the methyl branches and double bonds provides insects that use cuticular hydrocarbons in chemical communication with a large number of possible structures, the chemical equivalent of the variably colored plumage of birds. The chain lengths of insect hydrocarbons vary from about 21 up to 40 and in some rare cases even 50+ carbon atoms. There are a number of reviews of the chemistry of cuticular hydrocarbons and the use of mass spectrometry to identify components (Howard and Blomquist 2005; Blomquist 2010; Millar 2010). It is difficult to determine the positions of double bonds without first derivatizing the alkene. Dimethyl-disulfide derivatives are the method of choice (Carlson et al. 1989) and methoxymercurication-demercuration has also been used (Blomquist et al. 1980).

Oxygenated components of cuticular lipids are also often associated with cuticular hydrocarbons. These include wax esters, sterols, primary and secondary alcohols, diols, ethers, epoxides, ketones, and other components that serve as semiochemicals in some cases (Buckner 2010).

For chemical communication, insects have evolved to form very complicated mixtures of \( n \)-, mono-, di-, tri-, and tetramethyl branched and unsaturated
components at apparently low cost, as they have modified existing components and use them both to restrict water loss and in chemical communication. A single component or a mixture of hydrocarbon components of the cuticular wax layer of many arthropods serve as a chemical signal to answer questions such as “Are you a member of my species? Are you the same sex as me?” For subsocial insects, “Are you a member of my family, cohort or group?” For eusocial insects, “Are you a member of my colony? Are you a member of my nest? To which caste do you belong? Are you a queen or perhaps brood? Are you a worker trying to convey to me the need to accomplish a certain task? Are you closely related kin?” And for many arthropods that exist as inquilines in the nest of social insects, “Can you recognize that I am alien?” (Howard and Blomquist 2005; Blomquist and Bagnères 2010; Ginzel and Blomquist 2016).

We now recognize that hydrocarbons serve critical roles as sex pheromones, kairomones, species and sex recognition cues, nestmate recognition, dominance and fertility cues, chemical mimicry, primer pheromones, task specific cues, as cues for maternal care of offspring (Blomquist and Bagnères 2010; Ginzel and Blomquist 2016), and even cues for overwintering sites of lady beetles (Wheeler and Cardé 2014). The complex mixture of hydrocarbons on the surface of insects allows them to be used in chemotaxonomy and they are gaining importance in forensic entomology (Drijfhout 2010; Braga et al. 2013). In retrospect, the diversity of hydrocarbons and hydrocarbon blends on insect cuticles might have suggested that hydrocarbons could play important roles in chemical communication. Only after the recognition of the number and variety of roles they do play in chemical communication have we come to more fully appreciate the importance of hydrocarbons in insect communication (Ginzel and Blomquist 2016).

3 Insect Pheromones

The pheromones of over 3000 insect species are now known. The website Pherobase.com is an up-to-date compilation of pheromones and other behavior-modifying chemicals found in insects and other organisms. While some of the cuticular hydrocarbons have dual functions, both restricting water loss and providing information, usually over short distances, the volatile pheromones are usually of lower molecular weight and have a singular purpose in chemical communication. Pheromones play critical roles in communication between insects and are usually species specific. Some of their roles in communication include attracting the opposite sex for mating (sex pheromones), attracting both sexes into aggregations for feeding and mating (aggregation pheromones), alerting other insects of danger (alarm pheromones), and creating feeding site paths (trail pheromones). These are all considered to be fast acting releaser pheromones while social insects utilize primer pheromones that control the long-term behavior of the receiver.
3.1 Lepidopteran Fatty Acid Derived (Type I Pheromones)

Within Lepidoptera (butterflies and moths), pheromones can be classified into two major groups, Type I and Type II, according to their chemical structures (Ando et al. 2004). Type I pheromones are the most abundant in Lepidoptera. They are comprised of straight chain acetates, aldehydes, and alcohols with chain lengths of 10–18 carbon atoms and as many as four double bonds. These compounds are usually synthesized de novo in pheromone glands. Most of these are produced from fatty acids and have carbon atom numbers from 7 to 29, with 12, 14, and 16 carbon atom components predominating. The modification of the carbonyl carbon atom of the fatty acid precursor results in acetate esters, alcohols, and aldehydes. Many of the lepidopteran pheromones have one or more double bonds with specific blends of (Z) and (E) isomers (Jurenka et al. 2017).

3.2 Polyene Hydrocarbons (Type II) Pheromones

Type II pheromones represent ~15% of known lepidopteran pheromones and are primarily restricted to the families Erbidae and Geometridae (Löfstedt et al. 2017). These polyunsaturated hydrocarbons and epoxy derivatives can be produced from diet-derived unsaturated fatty acids (i.e., linoleic and α-linolenic acid) and characterized by $C_{12-25}$ carbon atoms with double bonds located at carbon atom 3, 6, 9, 12, or 15 (all in the Z-configuration) and separated by methylene groups (Millar 2010).

In Coleoptera (beetles), volatile hydrocarbon pheromones can be found in a few species of beetles (Bartelt 2010). However, the most studied example of hydrocarbons as volatile pheromones is in the sap beetles (Coleoptera: Nitidulidae), with conjugated trienes and tetracenes serving as long-range pheromones in *Carpophilus* and *Colopterus* species (Bartelt 2010). These male-specific compounds all have alkyl branches and are on alternating carbon atoms, with double bonds in the E-configuration.

3.3 Terpenoid Pheromones

A number of coleopteran pheromones are isoprenoid in origin and many contain multiples of five carbon atoms (Francke et al. 1995). The shortest chain pheromone described is 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol from *Ips typographus* (Lanne et al. 1989). Figure 1 shows a number of isoprenoid pheromone components, including ipsdienol, ipsenol, and frontalin. Frontalin contains eight carbon atoms but is clearly isoprenoid in origin (Barkawi et al. 2003; Keeling et al. 2013). In addition to isoprenoids, the pheromones from coleopterans also consist of components derived from fatty acids and components of unknown origin (Tittiger and Blomquist 2016).
3.4 Other Pheromones

Many dipteran (fly) pheromones are longer chain hydrocarbons (21 carbon atoms and longer) and function as short range or contact pheromones. The housefly sex pheromone consists of \((Z)\)-9-tricosene (Fig. 1) an epoxide and ketone derived from this hydrocarbon, and methyl-branched alkanes (Blomquist 2003). Among the longest chain pheromones are the contact pheromones from the tsetse flies, which are often multimethyl branched hydrocarbons with up to 40 carbon atoms (Fig. 1) (Carlson et al. 1984, 1998). The role of long-chain hydrocarbons in chemical communication in insects has become increasingly recognized over the past two decades (Howard 1993; Howard and Blomquist 2005; Blomquist and Bagnères 2010; Ginzel and Blomquist 2016).

The honey bee queen retinue pheromone, consisting primarily of \((E)\)-9-oxodec-2-enoic acid (9-ODA) and 9-hydroxy-2(E)-decenoic acid (9-HDA) (Callow and Johnston 1960; Barbier and Lederer 1960), is used by virgin queens to attract drones for mating. It is also used for attracting a retinue of worker bees inside the nest. It is produced by the queen mandibular gland and is one of the best understood of the social insect pheromones. Keeling et al. (2003) identified a number of additional compounds that function synergistically with 9-ODA and 9-HDA, making this a complex pheromone blend.

4 Hydrocarbon Biosynthesis

The biosynthesis of hydrocarbons occurs in specialized cells called oenocytes which are primarily found in the abdomen associated with epidermal cells or in some cases with fat body cells. The hydrocarbons produced by oenocytes are transported through the hemolymph by lipophorin to epidermal cells throughout the body for transfer to the cuticular surface. A variety of studies demonstrated this route of hydrocarbon biosynthesis and deposition; however, the mechanism of unloading and transport of hydrocarbon across the cuticle is still unknown. In the German cockroach only the abdominal sternites and tergites synthesize hydrocarbons which are then loaded onto hemolymph lipophorin for transport to sites of deposition (Gu et al. 1995). *Drosophila melanogaster* Cyp4g1, which encodes the cytochrome P450 catalyzing the terminal step in hydrocarbon production, is expressed predominantly in oenocytes (Qiu et al. 2012), and the fatty acid synthase (FAS) that is involved in producing 2-methylalkanes is also localized to the oenocytes (Chung et al. 2014).

The biosynthesis of insect hydrocarbons can be divided into four steps: (1) formation of the straight chain saturated, unsaturated and methyl-branched fatty acid precursors, (2) elongation of these fatty acids to very long chain fatty acyl-CoAs, (3) conversion of the very long chain fatty acyl-CoAs to aldehydes, and (4) the reductive decarbonylation of aldehydes to hydrocarbons and carbon dioxide (Fig. 2).

2-Methylalkanes arise from the elongation of the carbon skeleton of either valine (even number of carbon atoms in the chain) or isoleucine (odd number of carbon atoms in the chain) (BlaiIlock et al. 1976). The gene that forms the \(n\)-2 methyl
branched fatty acid precursors to the 2-methylalkanes was identified in *D. melanogaster*. RNAi-mediated silencing showed that a fatty acid synthase gene (FASN^{CG3524}), one of three FAS genes in *D. melanogaster*, markedly decreased production of 2-methylalkanes but not *n*-alkanes or alkenes (Chung et al. 2014). This provides strong evidence that this FAS is required for 2-methylalkane synthesis. An alternate FAS, FASN^{CG3523}, is expressed in the fat body but not the oenocytes, suggesting that all the enzymes necessary for hydrocarbon production are localized to the oenocytes, but some fatty acids are imported to oenocytes for *n*-alkane production (Wicker-Thomas et al. 2015).

The 3-methyl- and internally branched methyl-branched hydrocarbons arise from the incorporation of propionate during chain elongation (Blomquist et al. 1975; Blomquist and Kearney 1976). The labeled carbon atom from [1-13C]propionate is found exclusively in the 4-position of 3-methylpentacosane as demonstrated by carbon-13 NMR in the American cockroach (Dwyer et al. 1981), indicating that it is incorporated as methylmalonyl-CoA as the second group added to the growing chain.

Fig. 2 Proposed biosynthetic pathways for insect cuticular hydrocarbons
The internally branched methylalkanes also arise from the insertion of a propionate group, as a methylmalonyl-CoA, derived from valine, isoleucine, or methionine in place of a malonyl-CoA at specific points during chain elongation (Dillwith et al. 1982). $^{13}$C-NMR studies were used to determine if the methyl branching group was inserted early or late in hydrocarbon formation and in every case the methyl branch is put on early in chain synthesis (Dwyer et al. 1981; Chase et al. 1990; Dillwith et al. 1982). An examination of the methyl-branched fatty acids from the integument of the German cockroach (Juarez et al. 1992) and the housefly (Blomquist et al. 1994) showed that small amounts of fatty acids with the appropriate methyl branching to serve as precursors to hydrocarbons were present. The presence of a unique FAS that is involved in synthesizing 2-methylalkanes was identified (Chung et al. 2014), suggesting that there may also be specific FASs that insert methylmalonyl-CoA at specific points during the formation of the methyl-branched fatty acids that are precursors to the internally branched hydrocarbons. All insect genomes studied to date appear to have two or more FASs, lending credibility to the hypothesis for a unique FAS that produces the internally methyl-branched fatty acid precursors to hydrocarbons.

Introduction of double bonds with desaturases has been investigated in *D. melanogaster*. Desaturase 1 (*desat1*) accepts both palmitic acid and stearic acid to form palmitoleic ($\Delta^9$C 16:1) and oleic ($\Delta^9$C 18:1) acids. This gene is expressed in both fat body and oenocytes and appears to play a role in general lipid metabolism and in hydrocarbon production (Wicker-Thomas and Chertemps 2010). A *desat2* converts myristic (C14:0) to myristoleic ($\Delta^9$C 14:1, an n-5 double bond) in flies that produce a 5,9-alkadiene (Dallerac et al. 2000). A second desaturation is required for females that produce 7,11-alkadiene, and RNA interference was used to study this gene (Chertemps et al. 2007). This desaturase is active only in females and thus is named *desatF* (Wicker-Thomas and Chertemps 2010).

The regulation of chain length to produce the specific blend of hydrocarbons often used in chemical communication appears to reside in the microsomal fatty acyl-CoA elongase reactions and the fatty acyl-CoA reductases. The American cockroach, *P. americana*, produces three major hydrocarbons: n-pentacosane, 3-methylpentacosane, and (Z,Z)-9,12-heptacosadiene (Baker et al. 1963). Studies with microsomes from integument tissue showed that stearyl-CoA was elongated up to a 26 carbon atom acyl-CoA that could serve as the precursor to n-pentacosane. In contrast, linoleoyl-CoA was readily elongated to 28 carbon atoms (but not longer) to serve as the precursor to the 27:2 hydrocarbon (Vaz et al. 1988).

The *D. melanogaster* genome has 19 elongases, with only two of them characterized to date (Wicker-Thomas and Chertemps 2010). Fatty acyl-CoA elongases catalyze the condensation of malonyl-CoA and a fatty acyl-CoA, and three additional steps are required to reduce the ketone to an alcohol, followed by dehydration and reduction. The elongase *eloF* from *D. melanogaster* (Chertemps et al. 2007) was expressed in yeast, and the results showed that *eloF* elongated both saturated and unsaturated fatty acids up to C$_{30}$. A dramatic decrease in C$_{29}$ dienes and an increase in C$_{25}$ dienes were observed when *eloF* was knocked down by RNAi, with a concomitant decrease in courtship and mating activities. Expression of *eloF* was
much higher in females than in males. These data support a role for eloF in regulating the chain length of hydrocarbon components.

Fatty acyl-CoA reductase (FAR) activity in microsomes of integument-enriched tissue from the housefly apparently produces aldehydes (Reed et al. 1994). Acyl-CoA reductases for production of primary alcohols have been described in insects for the production of pheromones in Lepidoptera (Antony et al. 2009). AmFAR1 converts C_{14} to C_{22} fatty acyl-CoAs to primary alcohols in the honey bee (Teerawanichpan et al. 2010). All acyl-CoA reductases described in insects to date (Lassance et al. 2013) reduce the acyl-CoA to the primary alcohol, and this raises the possibility that the acyl-CoA reductases in hydrocarbon production produce the alcohol which is then oxidized to the aldehyde by CYP4Gs as described below.

The mechanism of long-chain fatty acid derived hydrocarbon biosynthesis in insects is now coming into focus. It is now clear that very long chain fatty acyl-CoAs are reduced to aldehydes and then converted to hydrocarbons by the loss of the carbonyl carbon atom. Insects use an aerobic mechanism for oxidative decarbonylation of aldehydes, whereas plants use an anaerobic mechanism (Vioque and Kolattukudy 1997). This is consistent with plants appearing on land much earlier than insects and under oxygen levels that were much lower (Payne et al. 2009), while insects developed an aerobic mechanism for hydrocarbon production consistent with higher oxygen levels when their ancestors came to land. It is now clear that a cytochrome P450 is involved in the conversion of the aldehyde to hydrocarbon and carbon dioxide in a process that requires molecular oxygen and NADPH (Reed et al. 1994, 1995). All insects whose genomes have been studied have one or two CYP4G genes where one or both function in hydrocarbon biosynthesis (Balabanidou et al. 2016).

Full confirmation of the oxidative decarbonylation system proposed in insects was verified by the cloning, expression, and characterization of the enzymes involved. Integument-enriched cytochrome P450 cDNAs in the housefly *Musca domestica* were isolated (Qiu et al. 2012). One of these, CYP4G2, has 71.7% amino acid identity and 81.8% similarity to its ortholog, CYP4G1, from *D. melanogaster*. Numerous attempts to express CYP4G2 by itself (Blomquist et al. unpublished) led to inactive enzyme that did produce the 450 nm CO difference spectrum peak that is characteristic of all correctly folded P450s. The relatively high ratio of cytochrome P450 reductase (CPR) to P450 in oenocytes (Qiu et al. 2012) suggested the possibility that CPR was needed for CYP4G2 to properly fold. Expression of the CYP4G2-CPR fusion protein yielded an enzyme that in the presence of CO absorbed at 450 nm and converted long chain aldehydes to alkanes (Qiu et al. 2012). Similarly, production and assay of aCYP4G16-CPR fusion protein (CYP4G16 being from *Anopheles gambiae*) showed hydrocarbon production (Balabanidou et al. 2016). CYP4G16 associates with the cell membrane of oenocytes and not the endoplasmic reticulum suggesting its hydrocarbon products could be directly loaded onto lipophorin for transport (Blomquist and Bagnères 2010). Further work is needed on the subcellular location of enzymes involved in hydrocarbon synthesis.
5 Pheromone Biosynthesis

There is much variability among insects in the anatomical location of volatile pheromone production, just as there are many differences in the gross morphology and function of pheromone producing tissue. Complexity varies from simple unicellular glands distributed throughout the integument to elaborate internal cellular aggregates connected to a reservoir. Of the orders emphasized in this chapter (Lepidoptera, Coleoptera, and Diptera), the most common location for pheromone production is the abdomen. There are excellent reviews of the ultrastructure of exocrine cells in general (Percy-Cunningham and MacDonald 1987; Quennedey 1998; Ma and Ramaswamy 2003) and social insects in particular (Billen and Morgan 1998). Definitive proof that pheromone production and release occur in certain tissues comes from studies where the isolated tissue incorporates labeled precursors into pheromone components.

By the mid-1980s, studies on biosynthetic pathways of pheromones for a limited number of species were underway, and work was progressing toward the characterization of some of the unique enzymes involved (Prestwich and Blomquist 1987). It became apparent that the products and intermediates of normal metabolism, particularly those of the fatty acid and isoprenoid pathways, were modified by a few specific enzymes in pheromone gland tissue to produce the myriad of pheromone molecules. Many of the lepidopteran pheromones could be formed by the appropriate interplay of highly selective chain shortening and a unique $\Delta^{11}$ and other desaturases followed by modification of the carboxyl carbon atom (Bjostad et al. 1987). This work has been extended, and a clear understanding of the biosynthetic pathways for many of the lepidopteran pheromones is now known (Jurenka 2003; Jurenka et al. 2017). The $\Delta^{11}$ and other pheromone-specific desaturases in Lepidoptera have been characterized at the molecular level (Knipple and Roelofs 2003; Lassance et al. 2010). In some insects, fatty acid elongation followed by loss of the carboxyl carbon atom produces the hydrocarbon pheromones, and this process includes examples of lepidopterans (Jurenka 2003), dipterans (Blomquist 2003; Jallon and Wicker-Thomas 2003), the German cockroach (Schal et al. 2003), and the social insects (Blomquist and Howard 2003).

5.1 Alcohol, Aldehyde, and Acetate Ester Pheromones

A combination of acetyl-CoA carboxylase and fatty acid synthase produce saturated fatty acids. Although no direct enzymatic studies have been conducted using pheromone gland cells, these enzymes are presumably similar to enzymes found in other cell types. Labeling studies conducted with acetate indicated that pheromone glands produce 16:0 and 18:0 acid saturated products (Bjostad and Roelofs 1984; Tang et al. 1989; Jurenka et al. 1994). Indirect evidence showed that when the activity of acetyl-CoA carboxylase was inhibited by herbicides, sex pheromone biosynthesis was also inhibited in Helicoverpa armigera and Plodia interpunctella (Eliyahu et al. 2003).
Desaturases introduce a double bond into the fatty acid chain. A variety of desaturases identified so far including enzymes that act on saturated and mono-unsaturated substrates are involved in the biosynthesis of female moth sex pheromones. These include $\Delta5$ (Foster and Roelofs 1996; Hagström et al. 2013a), $\Delta9$ (Löfstedt and Bengtsson 1988), $\Delta10$ (Foster and Roelofs 1988), $\Delta11$ (Bjostad and Roelofs 1983), and $\Delta14$ (Zhao et al. 1990) desaturases that utilize saturated substrates. The combination of these desaturases along with chain shortening can account for the majority of double bond positions in the various chain-length mono-unsaturated pheromones so far identified (Roelofs and Wolf 1988). Figure 3 illustrates the large number of monounsaturated compounds that can be generated through a combination of monounsaturation and chain shortening. Addition of

![Diagram of desaturase pathways](image)

Fig. 3 Biosynthesis of lepidopteran monounsaturated pheromones. A combination of desaturation and chain shortening can produce a variety of acyl-CoA precursors that can be modified to form acetate esters, aldehydes, and alcohols. The indicated desaturase at the top of each column introduces a double bond into the first acyl-CoA, and the arrow pointing down indicates limited chain-shortening by two carbons. A superscript indicates the acyl-CoA could be produced by the desaturase without chain-shortening. Modification of all 16-, 14-, 12-, and 10-carbon acyl-CoA derivatives on the carbonyl carbon can account for the majority of monounsaturated acetate esters, aldehydes, and alcohols identified as moth sex pheromones.
various functional groups, acetate esters, alcohols, and aldehydes increases the potential number of pheromone components. It is important to note that some intermediate compounds could be produced in two different ways and the order in which desaturation and chain-shortening occur must be determined experimentally.

Some pheromone components are dienes and these can be produced by either the action of two desaturases or one desaturase and isomerization around the double bond. Some dienes with a 6,9-double bond configuration are produced using dietary linoleic acid. Desaturases that utilize monounsaturated acyl-CoA substrates include Δ5 (Ono et al. 2002; Hagström et al. 2013a), Δ9 (Martinez et al. 1990), Δ11 (Foster and Roelofs 1990), Δ12 (Jurenka 1997), and Δ13 (Arsequell et al. 1990). These can act sequentially to produce the diene (Foster and Roelofs 1990; Jurenka 1997), or conjugated dienes could be produced by the action of one desaturase followed by isomerization (Ando et al. 1988; Löfstedt and Bengtsson 1988; Fang et al. 1995a). A unique Δ6 desaturase has been found in Antheraea pernyi that couples with a Δ11 desaturase to produce the (E,Z)-6,11-hexadecadienoic acid intermediate to the aldehyde and acetate ester pheromone (Wang et al. 2010a).

The biosynthesis of triene pheromone components has not been extensively investigated. Pheromones with a triene double bond system, that is, n-3 (3,6,9-), are produced from dietary α-linolenic acid (Choi et al. 2007; Millar 2010). This was demonstrated in the saltmarsh caterpillar, Estigmene acrea, and the ruby tiger moth, Phragmatobia fuliginosa (Rule and Roelofs 1989). Moths in the families Geometridae and Erbidae apparently utilize linoleic and α-linolenic acid as precursors for their pheromones. Most of these pheromones are produced by chain elongation and decarboxylation to form hydrocarbons. Oxygen is added across one of the double bonds in the polyunsaturated hydrocarbon to produce an epoxide (Millar 2010). A unique terminal desaturase was found to be involved in production of 1,Z3,Z6,Z9-nonadecatetraene, the pheromone of the winter moth, Operophtera brumata, via a 20 carbon atom intermediated fatty acid derived from linolenic acid (Ding et al. 2011).

A study using Manduca sexta identified a desaturase with Z11-desaturase/conjugase activity (Matouskova et al. 2007). Additional desaturases with Z11, Z/E14, and E13 desaturation activity were also identified (Buček et al. 2015). Site directed mutagenesis indicated that a single amino acid substitution could change the Z11-desaturase/conjugase enzyme to one that produces Z/E14 products (Buček et al. 2015).

Insects in general have the ability to shorten long-chain fatty acids to specific shorter chain lengths (Stanley-Samuelson et al. 1988). This chain-shortening pathway has not been characterized at the enzymatic level in insects. It presumably is similar to the characterized pathway as it occurs in vertebrates which is essentially a partial β-oxidation pathway located in peroxisomes (Hashimoto 1996). The evidence for limited chain-shortening enzymes in pheromone glands was originally demonstrated by Bjostad and Roelofs (1983) using the cabbage looper moth, T. ni, in which it was shown that Z11–16:acid labeled the intermediate fatty acid Z7–12:acid. A similar study, using Argyrotaenia velutinana, demonstrated that deuterium-labeled
16:acid was chain-shortened to 14:acid, which was used to make Z and E11–14:acid (Bjøstad and Roelofs 1984). Since then considerable evidence in a number of moths has accumulated to indicate that limited chain shortening occurs in a variety of pheromone biosynthetic pathways (Jurenka et al. 2017).

Once a specific chain-length pheromone intermediate that has the appropriate double bonds is produced, the carbonyl carbon atom is modified to form a functional group. The majority of oxygenated pheromone components are acetate esters, alcohols, and aldehydes. Production of these components requires the reduction of a fatty-acyl precursor to an alcohol that is catalyzed by a fatty acyl reductase. The fatty acyl reductase has been identified in *B. mori* for production of bombykol (Moto et al. 2003). It has been functionally characterized by expression in yeast cells and shown to preferentially reduce *E,Z*-10,12–16:acid, which thus forms bombykol (Matsumoto 2010).

Fatty acyl reductases have subsequently been identified in several other moths in which the alcohol serves as an intermediate for production of acetate esters. The reductase has been identified in the adzuki bean borer *O. scapulalis*, European corn borer *O. nubilalis*, and small ermine moths *Yponomeuta* spp. (Antony et al. 2009; Lassance et al. 2010; Liénard et al. 2010). In the European corn borer, two reductases were identified: one from each of the two strains that produce primarily Z11–14:OAc or E11–14:OAc. The reductase from each strain preferentially reduces Z11–14:acid or E11–14:acid resulting in a strain-specific pheromone blend (Lassance et al. 2010). Sequences of the two desaturases exhibited a 3.8% nucleotide divergence and corresponding 7.5% amino acid divergence. These small differences apparently change the substrate preference for the enzyme (Lassance et al. 2013). The reductases from three species of *Yponomeuta* have about 36% amino acid identity with the *Ostrinia* reductases, but they have a broad substrate specificity (Liénard et al. 2010). The pheromone gland fatty acyl reductases found in four species of heliothine moths also had a relatively broad substrate specificity (Hagström et al. 2012) as did a reductase identified from *Spodoptera littoralis* (Carot-Sans et al. 2015). Fatty acid reductases from eight species of *Ostrinia* were compared, and it was determined that amino acid changes in the enzyme active site could account for changes in reductase activity with the net result of changes in pheromone composition (Lassance et al. 2013). The subcellular location of the fatty acyl reductase found in pheromone glands is the endoplasmic reticulum (Hagström et al. 2013b). Two fatty acyl reductases were also found in the butterfly, *B. anynana*, and are used in the biosynthesis of male courtship pheromone components (Liénard et al. 2014).

Formation of aldehydes requires the oxidation of primary alcohols, and a cuticular oxidase has been characterized from pheromone glands of *Helicoverpa zea* and *Manduca sexta* that produce aldehydes as pheromones (Teal and Tumlinson 1988; Fang et al. 1995b). In those insects that utilize both an alcohol and an aldehyde as part of their pheromone, it is unclear how the production of both components occurs. Luxova and Svatos (2006) isolated a membrane-bound alcohol oxidase from *M. sexta* pheromone glands with high specificity for primary alcohols, as occurs in yeast alcohol dehydrogenase. Oxidase activity of the fall webworm, *Hyphantria*
cunea, was determined to occur in pheromone glands but had broad substrate specificity (Kiyota et al. 2011).

Production of acetate ester pheromone components utilizes acetyl-CoA:fatty alcohol acetyltransferase that converts a fatty alcohol to an acetate ester (Morse and Meighen 1987a). Therefore, alcohols could be utilized as substrates for both aldehyde and acetate ester formation. Morse and Meighen (1987a) first demonstrated its presence in the spruce budworm, Choristoneura fumiferana, where it is involved in producing the acetate ester that serves as a precursor to the aldehyde pheromone (Morse and Meighen 1987b). In some other tortricids, A. velutinana, C. rosaceana, and Platynota idaeusalis, an in vitro enzyme assay was utilized to demonstrate specificity of the acetyltransferase for the Z isomer of 11–14:OH (Jurenka and Roelofs 1989). This specificity contributes to the final ratio of pheromone components. These results indicate that the family Tortricidae has members that have an acetyltransferase that is specific for the Z isomer of monounsaturated fatty alcohols. In contrast, several studies have shown no substrate preference for the acetyltransferase in other moths (Bestmann et al. 1987; Teal and Tumlinson 1987; Jurenka and Roelofs 1989). Therefore, this unique acetyltransferase apparently evolved within the Tortricidae.

The use of RNAi has illustrated the function of many of these enzymes in B. mori. Injecting dsRNA to silence the Z11/Δ10,12 desaturase, fatty acyl reductase, and acyl-CoA-binding protein into pupae resulted in a reduction of gene transcripts and sex pheromone production in the adult female (Ohnishi et al. 2006; Matsumoto et al. 2007). Matsumoto (2010) reviewed the molecular mechanisms of pheromone production in moths.

More recent studies have examined the transcriptomes or sequenced genomes of insects. For example, Vogel et al. (2010) identified 8310 putative genes in the pheromone gland of Heliothis virescens, 6435 of which were unique to the pheromone gland (by comparison with larval tissue). Comparison with EST databases from other moth species revealed 86 candidate genes encoding enzymes that could be involved in moth sex pheromone biosynthesis, including two Δ11 and six Δ9 desaturases. Other transcriptomic studies have been conducted using pheromone glands from various moths (Chilo suppressalis, Xia et al. 2015; Helicoverpa armigera and Helicoverpa assulta, Li et al. 2015; Agrotis segetum, Strandh et al. 2008, 2009; Ding and Löfstedt 2015; Agrotis ipsilon, Gu et al. 2013; Sesamia inferens, Zhang et al. 2014a; Grapholita molesta and Grapholita dimorpha, Jung and Kim 2014; Ephestia cautella, Antony et al. 2015). These transcriptomic studies have revealed the presence of all the enzymes involved in pheromone biosynthesis as described above. However, the acetyltransferase and oxidase enzymes have yet to be functionally characterized, and it remains unknown as to which transcript(s) are functional in pheromone glands.

The heterologous expression of pheromone biosynthetic enzymes in various expression systems (primarily yeast cells) has aided in the characterization of desaturases and fatty-acyl-reductases as described above. Co-expression of a desaturase and fatty-acyl-reductase in yeast led to the production of a moth sex pheromone component Z11–16:OH (Hagström et al. 2013c). Transformation of plants
with moth pheromone biosynthetic enzymes could provide a source of pure pheromones that could be used in mating control strategies. Introduction of a Δ11 desaturase into the plant *Nicotiana tabacum* produced Z11–16:acid that could be extracted and chemically modified to produce sex pheromones (Nesnerova et al. 2004). Transformation of plants to produce a pheromone as a product was achieved by introducing an (E)-β-farnesene synthase gene into *Arabidopsis thaliana*, which produced the aphid alarm pheromone, (E)-β-farnesene (Beale et al. 2006). Transformation of the plant *Nicotiana benthamiana* with moth Δ11 desaturases and fatty-acyl-reductases coupled with a plant thioesterase and a diacylglycerol acetyltransferase produced E/Z-14:OAc and Z11–16:OAc products, which are sex pheromone components of a number of moths (Ding et al. 2014).

Most female moths utilize a blend of components produced in a specific ratio for pheromone attraction of conspecific males. A major question is how these species-specific ratios of components are produced. Research from several sources indicates that these ratios are produced by the inherent specificity of certain enzymes present in the biosynthetic pathways. The combination of these enzymes acting in concert produces the species-specific pheromone blend.

### 5.2 Polyene Hydrocarbons

Moths in the families Geometridae, Amatidae, Lyonetiidae, and Erbidae utilize hydrocarbons or epoxides of hydrocarbons as their sex pheromones. Biosynthesis of hydrocarbons occurs in oenocyte cells that are associated with either epidermal cells or fat body cells (Romer 1991). Once the hydrocarbons are biosynthesized, they are transported to the sex pheromone gland by lipophorin (Schal et al. 1998). When the transport of hydrocarbon sex pheromones in arctiid moths was investigated in detail by Schal et al. (1998), it was found that a very specific uptake was occurring at pheromone glands. Lipophorin was shown to contain both the sex pheromone and cuticular hydrocarbons; however, only the pheromone gland had the sex pheromone. Other studies have shown similar pathways in other moths (Jurenka and Subchev 2000; Subchev and Jurenka 2001; Wang et al. 2013).

A few even-chain-length hydrocarbon sex pheromones have been identified that also have 3,6,9- or 6,9-double bond configurations (Millar 2010), indicating that they are derived from linolenic or linoleic acids. A study using the winter moth, *Erannis bajaria*, which produces Z3,Z6,Z9–18:Hc, has demonstrated how these even-chained hydrocarbons are produced (Goller et al. 2007). The pathway involves chain-elongating α-linolenic acid to Z11,Z14,Z17–20:acid followed by the key step of α-oxidation to produce Z10,Z13,Z16–19:acid. The 19C acid is then converted to the hydrocarbon Z3,Z6,Z9–18:Hc. The odd-chain-length pheromone component Z3,Z6,Z9–19:Hc is formed from Z11,Z14,Z17–20:acid as usual for odd-chain-length hydrocarbons.

A study using the gypsy moth, *Lymantria dispar*, illustrates the overall pathways involved in production of epoxide pheromone components (Jurenka et al. 2003). This insect uses disparlure, 2me-18:7,8Epox, as a pheromone component.
Incubation of isolated abdominal epidermal tissue with deuterium-labeled valine resulted in incorporation into 2me-Z7–18:Hc. This indicates that the oenocyte cells associated with the epidermal tissues biosynthesize 2me-Z7–18:Hc using the carbon atoms of valine to initiate the chain. The double bond is probably introduced by a Δ12-desaturase as determined by using specific deuterium-labeled intermediates. Hemolymph transport of 2me-Z7–18:Hc is indicated by the finding of this alkene in the hemolymph (Jurenka and Subchev 2000). Demonstration that 2me-Z7–18:Hc is converted to the epoxide in the pheromone gland was shown by using deuterium-labeled 2me-Z7–18:Hc and incubation with isolated pheromone glands. Disparlure is a stereoisomer that has the 7R, 8S or (+) configuration, and chiral chromatography indicated that only the (+)-isomer was produced by pheromone glands (Jurenka et al. 2003).

A few moths, primarily in the families Pyralidae and Crambidae, utilize a combination of hydrocarbon and fatty-acid-derived pheromone components. The navel orangeworm moth is one of these, and labeling studies supported different pathways producing the hydrocarbons and the aldehydes. The aldehydes were produced through a fatty acid biosynthetic route in pheromone glands, while the hydrocarbons were produced by oenocytes and transported to the pheromone gland for release (Wang et al. 2010b).

5.3 Terpenoid Pheromones

Pheromone biosynthesis in the Coleoptera is as diverse as the taxon involving several types of pheromone biosynthetic pathways has been demonstrated (Vanderwel and Oehlschlager 1987; Vanderwel 1994; Seybold and Vanderwel 2003; Tittiger 2003; Blomquist et al. 2010; Tittiger and Blomquist 2016). Bark beetles can generate pheromones either by modification of dietary host compounds or de novo biosynthesis, with the latter accounting for the majority of beetle pheromone components (Tittiger and Blomquist 2016).

Most of the knowledge about beetle pheromone biosynthesis and endocrine regulation comes from studies of various bark beetles, especially *Ips* and *Dendroctonus* species (Scolytidae). Some bark beetles may modify fatty acyl or amino acid precursors (Vanderwel and Oehlschlager 1987; Birgersson et al. 1990); however, the majority of pheromone components are isoprenoid (Schlyter and Birgersson 1999; Seybold et al. 2000).

Our understanding of the origin of bark beetle pheromone components underwent a paradigm shift in the 1990s. Until then, it was widely accepted that bark beetles obtained their pheromone components by simple modification of host tree dietary precursors (Bordon 1985; Vanderwel and Oehlschlager 1987; Vanderwel 1994). Key genes in pheromone production, including *HMG-R* and *HMG-CoA synthase (HMG-S)*, have expression patterns consistent with their roles in participating in de novo isoprenoid pheromone biosynthesis (Tittiger et al. 1999; Keeling et al. 2004, 2006). A geranyl diphosphate synthase/myrcene synthase (GPPS/MS) cDNA from *Ips pini* was also isolated, functionally expressed, and modeled (Gilg et al. 2005, 2009).
existence of this novel enzyme argues strongly for the evolution of de novo pheromone biosynthetic capacity in bark beetles. Taken together, the data emerging from *Ips* species overwhelmingly indicate the de novo production of some monoterpenoid pheromone components.

The capacity for de novo biosynthesis does not preclude the conversion of host precursors to pheromone components. For example, the incorporation of acetate and mevalonolactone into ipsdienol and ipsenol proceeds through the conversion of geranyl diphosphate to myrcene, which could then be directly hydroxylated to ipsdienol and E-myrcenol and indirectly, perhaps through a ketone intermediate, to ipsenol (Martin et al. 2003). In this scheme, host myrcene ingested during feeding would enter the de novo pathway downstream of geranyl diphosphate. Similarly, cotton plant monoterpenes (myrcene and limonene) could enter a de novo biosynthetic pathway to grandlure in *Anthonomus grandis*. The question then arises as to whether de novo biosynthesis or host precursor conversion is the preferred route to pheromone production. Male *I. pini* exposed to myrcene vapors produce a racemic mixture of ipsdienol, whereas the naturally occurring pheromone of Western *I. pini* is about 95:5 (−)/(+). (Seybold et al., 1995).

A proposed biosynthetic scheme for several coleopteran isoprenoid pheromone components is presented in Fig. 4. Hemiterpene pheromone components of bark beetles are similarly synthesized de novo. Lanne et al. (1989) demonstrated the incorporation of labeled acetate, glucose, and mevalonate into 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol in *I. typographus*. This also argues for the de novo synthesis of 3-methyl-3-buten-1-ol and 3-methyl-2-buten-1-ol. The mevalonate pathway intermediate, dimethylallyl diphosphate, likely provides the carbon skeleton for 3-methyl-2-buten-1-ol by dephosphorylation. The other five-carbon atom intermediate, isopentenyl diphosphate, could be directly converted to 3-methyl-3-buten-1-ol and, perhaps through several steps, to 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol.

Geranyl diphosphate synthase (GPPS) catalyzes the condensation of dimethylallyl diphosphate (DMAPP) and isopentenyl diphosphate (IPP) to form geranyl diphosphate (GPP). GPP is the precursor of monoterpenes, a large family of naturally occurring C10 compounds predominately found in plants. Martin et al. (2003) showed myrcene synthase activity in *I. paraconfusus*. Conclusive evidence for de novo monoterpene biosynthesis in an animal was obtained by assays of functionally expressed recombinant GPPS/MS, which showed geranyl diphosphate as its major product but can also produce myrcene (Gilg et al. 2009) and thus likely provides the myrcene synthase activity reported by Martin et al. (2003).

Cytochrome P450 monooxygenases (P450s) constitute a diverse superfamily of enzymes with crucial roles in the metabolism of a wide range of both endogenous and foreign compounds. Insect genomes have approximately 100 cytochrome P450 genes, so the preliminary identification of *I. pini* myrcene hydroxylase relied on expression profiling. CYP9T2 was the only P450 with an expression pattern consistent with pheromone biosynthesis. A functional assay using microsomes of Sf9 cells infected with baculoviral constructs encoding CYP9T2 and housefly (*M. domestica*) P450 reductase (CPR) demonstrated that CYP9T2 is a myrcene hydroxylase that converts myrcene to ipsdienol (Sandstrom et al. 2006).
Recombinant CYP9T2 produces 81% $R$–(−)-ipsdienol, whereas the major monoterpenoid aggregation pheromone component released by *I. pini* is 95% $R$–(−)-ipsdienol. Similarly, the ortholog (CYP9T1) from *Ips confusus* produces a similar ratio of 85% $R$–(−) to $S$–(+)ipsdienol as does CYP9T2, even though the pheromone blend from *I. confusus* is approximately a 10/90 $R$–(−)/$S$–(+) (Sandstrom et al. 2008). These data strongly suggest that enzymatic steps downstream from the hydroxylation step are required to produce the final enantiomeric blend. Candidate enzymes involved in “tuning” the enantiomeric ratio of ipsdienol were first identified from microarray and PCR data, leading to the eventual characterization of ipsdienol dehydrogenase (IDOLDH). IDOLDH is a short chain dehydrogenase/reductase (SDR) (Kavanagh et al. 2008). IDOLDH readily oxidizes $R$–(−)-ipsdienol to ipsdienone and stereo-specifically catalyzes the reverse reaction (Figueroa-Teran et al. 2012, 2016).

![Proposed biosynthetic pathways for monoterpenoid pheromone components in the Coleoptera.](image-url)

*Fig. 4* Proposed biosynthetic pathways for monoterpenoid pheromone components in the Coleoptera. Intermediates and products are in normal font. Enzymes are in **bold**, and enzymes that have not been identified or characterized are in *bold italics*.

### 5.4 Other Pheromones

Recombinant CYP9T2 produces 81% $R$–(−)-ipsdienol, whereas the major monoterpenoid aggregation pheromone component released by *I. pini* is 95% $R$–(−)-ipsdienol. Similarly, the ortholog (CYP9T1) from *Ips confusus* produces a similar ratio of 85% $R$–(−) to $S$–(+)ipsdienol as does CYP9T2, even though the pheromone blend from *I. confusus* is approximately a 10/90 $R$–(−)/$S$–(+) (Sandstrom et al. 2008). These data strongly suggest that enzymatic steps downstream from the hydroxylation step are required to produce the final enantiomeric blend. Candidate enzymes involved in “tuning” the enantiomeric ratio of ipsdienol were first identified from microarray and PCR data, leading to the eventual characterization of ipsdienol dehydrogenase (IDOLDH). IDOLDH is a short chain dehydrogenase/reductase (SDR) (Kavanagh et al. 2008). IDOLDH readily oxidizes $R$–(−)-ipsdienol to ipsdienone and stereo-specifically catalyzes the reverse reaction (Figueroa-Teran et al. 2012, 2016).
*Dendroctonus ponderosae* isoprenoid pheromone components include frontalin and \((-)-\text{trans-verbénol}\). Similar to the situation in *Ips* spp., frontalin biosynthesis requires carbon to be shunted from the mevalonate pathway at some point. Microarray data show coordinate regulation between *HMGR*, *HMGS* (both encoding enzymes acting early in the pathway), and a putative *GGPPS* (Aw et al. 2010). mRNA levels for all three genes are highest in males after they have mated with females, consistent with frontalin production. The activity of the putative GGPPS verified that it produced C\(_{20}\) monoterpenes and RNAi inhibition markedly decreased frontalin production (Keeling et al. 2013). An RNA-seq study (Nadeau et al. 2017) complemented and verified many of the conclusions from RT-PCR data and pointed out several new target genes in the *D. ponderosa* pheromone biosynthetic pathway.

A second isoprenoid pheromone component in *D. ponderosae* is \((-)-\text{trans-verbénol}\), which is a hydroxylated derivative of \(\alpha\)-pinene derivative. It is produced by females when they enter a host tree. Pierce et al. (1987) used surveys of volatiles and extracts of female *D. ponderosae* to hypothesize that \((-)-\text{trans-verbénol}\) arises from a dedicated monoterpene hydroxylating activity specific to \(-\alpha\)-pinene, while a second activity hydroxylates a broad range of monoterpene resin components as a detoxification mechanism.

Numerous beetle genera use modified fatty-acyl compounds as pheromone components. Less is known about their biosynthesis compared to that of isoprenoid pheromones, but the same general strategy of modifying or combining existing biosynthetic pathways is conserved.

*exo*-Brevicomin (exo-7-Ethyl-5-methyl-6,8-dioxabicyclo[3.2.1]octane) is a bicyclic acetal that synergizes the aggregation effect of female-produced \(\text{trans-verbénol}\) in *D. ponderosae*. It is produced in the fat body of newly emerged males (but not females) (Song et al. 2014), and production drops when the males arrive at a new tree and mate (Pureswaran et al. 2000). While many of the steps required to convert longer chain fatty acyl-CoA precursors to *exo*-brevicomin remain uncharacterized, two enzymes have been identified: 6(\(Z\))-nonen-2-one dehydrogenase (ZnoDH) oxidizes 6(\(Z\))-nonen-2-ol to its corresponding methyl-ketone, which is then epoxidized by Cyp6CR1 to 6,7-epoxy-nonen-2-one, the direct precursor that is then cyclized to *exo*-brevicomin (Song et al. 2014b).

For some beetles, the modifications to produce pheromones are relatively minor. For example, *Attagenus* spp. (Dermentidae) myristic acid may be desaturated at the \(\Delta5\) and \(\Delta7\) positions to produce tetradeicadionic acid pheromone components. The stereochemistries of the double bonds apparently provide specificity between species (Fukui et al. 1977). It is unclear whether the short-chain fatty acid precursors to these pheromone components are synthesized through normal fatty acid elongations or are the \(\beta\)-oxidation products of longer fatty acids. For other beetles, modifications can become more complex. Female *Tenebrio molitor* produce 4-methyl-1-nonanol from propionyl-, malonyl-, and methylmalonyl-precursors (Islam et al. 1999). This is an example of carbon being shunted away from fatty-acyl elongation before long fatty acids are completed. The use of methylmalonate to produce methyl-branched hydrocarbons is well established in other insect systems (Ginzel and Blomquist 2016),
though it is unknown if beetles have a secondary fatty acyl synthase which, similar to that in houseflies, incorporates methylmalonyl-CoA precursors efficiently.

The flexibility of the fatty acid biosynthetic pathway is extended in some nitidulid beetles (Carpophilus spp.), where males use propionate and butyrate (presumably as methylmalonate and ethylmalonate) to make methyl and ethyl-branched triene and tetraene pheromone components (Fig. 1), apparently also via the fatty acid biosynthetic pathway (Bartelt et al. 1992). The branched hydrocarbons generally have 10–12 carbon atom backbones with conjugated double bonds. In contrast to other systems, where pheromone component biosynthesis is highly specific, Carpophilus spp. males produce a mixture of related structures, some of which act as pheromones and some of which do not. Since di-substituted tetraenes are less abundant than mono- or unsubstituted tetraenes, it appears that nonacyl units placed in the growing hydrocarbon chains represent “mistakes” made by a synthesis machinery with a low stringency for substrate selection (Bartelt 1999). Such nonspecific hydrocarbon biosynthesis may serve speciation, since changes in antennal receptivity may accommodate preexisting compounds (Bartelt 1999). Interestingly, the desaturated nature of these hydrocarbons is not due to fatty acyl desaturases, but to the inactivity of enoyl-ACP reductase during biosynthesis so that the enoyl-ACP intermediate formed during elongation is not reduced (Petroski et al. 1994). This suggests that carbon is shunted out of the fatty acid biosynthetic pathway when the chains are of the correct length, similar to the situation in T. molitor.

Rather than modifying the normal biosynthetic pathway to produce pheromone components, some beetles modify normal products of the pathway. For example, lactone pheromone components of some scarab beetles are produced by the stereospecific alterations of long chain fatty acids. Female Anomala japonica (Scarabaeidae) are perhaps best studied among scarab beetles for the biosynthesis of japonilure and buibuilactone, which involves the successive Δ9 desaturation, hydroxylation, two rounds of β-oxidation to shorten the chain length, and cyclization of stearic and palmitic acids (Leal et al. 1999). Of all these, only the hydroxylation step appears to be stereospecific (Leal 1998). This step is important because different enantiomers have different functions in different Anomala species (Leal et al. 1999).

In an elegant set of experiments, Plettner et al. (1996, 1998) elucidated the biosynthetic pathways for the honeybee queen mandibular pheromone (QMP) components 9-ODA and 9-HDA and compared their biosynthesis to that of worker produced 10-hydroxy-2(E)-decenoic acid (10-HDA) and the corresponding diacid. Plettner et al. (1996, 1998) demonstrated the de novo synthesis of stearic acid in worker mandibular glands, the hydroxylation of stearic acid at the n- (workers) and n-1 (queens) positions, chain shortening through β-oxidation to the 10- and 8-carbon atom hydroxy acids, and oxidation of n and n-1 hydroxy groups to give diacids and 9-keto-2(E)-decenoic acid, respectively. Stearic acid was shown to be the main precursor of the pheromone molecules as it was converted to C10 hydroxy acids and diacids more efficiently than either 16 or 14 carbon atom fatty acids.

Hormonal regulation of pheromone production: Three hormones have been shown to regulate pheromone production in insects. Pheromone biosynthesis activating neuropeptide (PBAN) has been studied in female moths and alters enzyme
activity through second messengers at one or more steps during or subsequent to fatty acid synthesis during pheromone production (Rafaeli and Jurenka 2003). In contrast, 20-hydroxyecdysone and juvenile hormone (JH) induce or repress the synthesis of specific enzymes at the transcription level. The action of JH has been studied most thoroughly in bark beetles. Ecdysteroid regulation of pheromone production occurs in Diptera and has been most extensively studied in the housefly, *M. domestica* (Blomquist 2003).

### 6 Research Needs

Our increased understanding of the chemistry, biochemistry, and molecular biology of hydrocarbons and pheromone production in insects over the last four decades has been impressive. The work in Lepidoptera has moved from simply demonstrating that pheromone components were synthesized de novo to the molecular characterization of the unique Δ11-desaturase and other desaturases that are involved in many female moths and their interplay with specific chain shortening steps. Similarly, a number of the genes involved in Coleoptera pheromone biosynthesis have been cloned, expressed, and assayed. While it is still true that in no system do we have a complete understanding of both the biochemical pathways and their endocrine regulation, we do have a much better understanding of how pheromones are made and in some systems are developing an understanding of their regulation at the molecular level. The continued application of the powerful tools of molecular biology along with studies using genomics and proteomics will only increase the rate at which we increase our understanding of pheromone and hydrocarbon production. Ultimately, just as behavioral chemicals themselves have been extended into pest control, research on pheromone production needs to be directed toward practical applications in insect control. This offers large challenges and large potential rewards.

### References


Chibnall AC, Piper SH, Pollard A, Willimas EF, Sahai PN (1934) The constitution of the primary alcohols, fatty acids and paraffins present in plant and insect waxes. Biochem J 28:2189–2208


Morse D, Meighen EA (1987a) Biosynthesis of the acetate ester precursors of the spruce budworm sex pheromone by an acetyl CoA: fatty alcohol acetyltransferase. Insect Biochem 17:53–59


**Relevant Website**

Lipidomic Analysis of Lower Organisms

Tomáš Řezanka, Irena Kolouchová, Lucia Gharwalová, Andrea Palyzová, and Karel Sigler

Contents

1 Introduction ............................................................................. 246
2 Fatty Acids .................................................................................. 247
3 Archaea ...................................................................................... 250
4 Bacteria ...................................................................................... 252
  4.1 Plasmalogens .......................................................................... 253
  4.2 Mycobacteria .......................................................................... 255
5 Yeast ......................................................................................... 256
6 Cyanobacteria and Algae .............................................................. 258
  6.1 Cyanobacteria .......................................................................... 258
  6.2 Algae ........................................................................................ 258
7 Research Needs .............................................................................. 261
References ....................................................................................... 262

Abstract

Current lipidomics is a modern method of analysis of lipids, important cell constituents found in all microbial cells and fulfilling vital roles as structural components of cell membranes, cell energy storage sources, and in some cases as signaling compounds. In either of its current branches, i.e., shotgun lipidomics and LC-MS lipidomics, it provides a fast and reliable information on the lipids present in microorganisms such as archaea, bacteria, cyanobacteria,
algae, and yeast, including those inhabiting unusual (psychrophilic, halophilic, thermophilic, etc.) habitats. The number of lipids and more specifically molecular species of lipids ranges from hundreds to thousands, and lipidomics is thus expected to provide a huge amount of data to be processed and evaluated. Further development of lipidomic analysis can be expected to involve the use of new ionization techniques, e.g., atmospheric pressure photoionization MS or high-resolution mass spectrometry of time-of-flight MS analysis of lipids containing unusual head groups, very-long chain saturated, or very-long chain polyunsaturated fatty acids and the application and use of chemical compounds labeled with stable isotopes in the study of dynamic changes of metabolic pathways.

1 Introduction

Lipidomics is a new research field, which has recently begun to be used in the study of lipids in biological systems based on the principles of analytical chemistry. The main tool is a mass spectrometric analysis of lipids, often implemented on devices with a high resolution, which allows determination of the molecular formula of analyzed compounds. There are two major and mutually complementary approaches in lipidomics. The first consists in the direct entry of the sample into the mass spectrometer and is called “shotgun lipidomics.” The second uses a classical connection of a chromatograph, almost exclusively liquid, with mass spectrometer.

The main advantage of shotgun lipidomics over liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry (LC-MS) is the fact that the mass spectrum of molecular ions of each molecular species of occurring lipid classes can be obtained at a constant concentration of the lipid solution during direct infusion. Another advantage is the short analysis time (several tens of seconds). Conversely, a huge drawback is the inability to separate and identify the regioisomers and enantiomers of the individual molecular species (see Table 1 for the number of triacylglycerols (TAGs)). Both approaches can of course use tandem mass spectrometry including neutral loss scans and precursor ion scans of one or more ionic reactions. An ideal way is the combination of both methods for sample analysis, see e.g., the lipidomic profile of snow algae (Rezanka et al. 2014).

Rapid development of lipidomic analysis began in essence 10 years ago with the advent of commercially available mass spectrometers using soft ionization techniques (electrospray ionization (ESI), atmospheric pressure chemical ionization (APCI), and matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI)).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>The number of possible TAGs from algal oil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
<td><strong>Number of possible TAGs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without isomers</td>
<td>$x = \frac{y^3 + 3y^2 + 2y}{6}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without enantiomers</td>
<td>$x = \frac{y^2 + y^3}{2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All isomers</td>
<td>$x = y^3$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where $x$ is the number of TAGs, $y$ is the number of FAs in TAGs
Lipids are structurally diverse chemical compounds that perform many key biological functions, serving as structural components of cell membranes, reservoirs and sources of energy, or as signaling molecules. Lipids may be broadly defined as hydrophobic or amphipathic molecules which, at least in part, are formed by condensation of thioesters (fatty acids, polyketides, etc.) or isoprene units (prenols, sterols, etc.).

Lipids are generally divided into “simple” and “complex” ones. Simple lipids are those which on hydrolysis provide at most two types of products, whereas complex lipids yield upon hydrolysis three or more products. Examples are shown in Fig. 1.

The variability of cell lipids reaches tens of thousands of molecular species, see, e.g., Table 1 showing the number of possible TAGs.

Obviously, all theoretically predicted molecular species may not be present or even detected. Many of them are below the detection limit of the instrumentation used. Even so, several thousand molecular species of phospho- and glycolipids have, for instance, been identified in *Staphylococcus aureus* (Hewelt-Belka et al. 2014).

### 2 Fatty Acids

Though as such they are not a subject of lipidomic analysis, fatty acids (FAs) play an important and irreplaceable role in the analysis of lipids. Their analysis has been performed for more than 50 years and the number of analyzed microorganisms therefore exceeds several times the number of organisms that have been analyzed as to their lipidomic profile. Furthermore, analysis of FAs, whether concerning total FAs or individual classes of lipids, is far easier to implement, and at a much lower cost per analysis. With certain exceptions (see below) routine determination of FAs presents no problem. Therefore, an introduction to this chapter describes the types of fatty acids (Fig. 2) that can be encountered in different groups of organisms.

In bacteria, the situation is different and is characterized by a huge variety and diversity of FAs. Besides the common bacteria such as *Escherichia coli* (gram-negative bacteria) that contains saturated FAs, often with a cyclopropane ring in the middle of the alkyl chain, or *Bacillus subtilis* (gram-positive bacteria) which are characterized by the presence of iso- and anteiso-FAs having amino acids Val, Leu, or Ile as biosynthetic precursors, bacteria contain also less common FAs. These are mainly polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) of a structure that may be identical with those of PUFAs of eukaryotes (algae, mammals). These PUFAs were surprisingly identified primarily in extremophilic bacteria, e.g., the genus *Shewanella* and many others (Russell and Nichols 1999). Their biosynthesis is also quite different; unlike the biosynthesis of PUFAs in animals, plants, fungi, and cyanobacteria, which are biosynthesized by a combination of elongation and oxygen-dependent desaturation of existing fatty acids catalyzed by fatty acid synthetase, in these bacteria they are biosynthesized using polyketide synthases, i.e., very much like antibiotics such as tetracyclines.
As mentioned above, bacterial FAs may contain a cyclopropane ring, with mycobacteria containing even more rings. Anaerobic ammonium oxidizing (anammox) bacteria belonging to the phylum Planctomycetes, which oxidize ammonium to N₂ with nitrite as the terminal electron acceptor, contain ladderanes, which are compounds containing cyclobutane ring(s) (see below). Cyclopentane fatty acids were identified in, e.g., Gibberella fujikuroi which is a fungal plant pathogen, or in the plant family Flacourtiaceae. ω-Cyclohexyl and ω-cycloheptyl FAs have

![Diagram](image_url)
Fig. 2 Types of fatty acids (A – saturated, i.e., stearic acid, B – iso-branched, i.e., isopalmitic acid, C – anteisobranched, i.e., anteisomargaric acid, D – oleic acid, E – α-linolenic acid, F – tuberculostearic acid, G – lactobacillic acid, H, I – ladderane fatty acids, J – 11-cyclohexylundecanoic acid, K – 11-cycloheptylundecanoic acid)
been identified in thermoacidophilic bacteria of the genus *Alicyclobacillus* (Rezanka et al. 2009).

It can thus be said that bacteria contain all known types FAs with the exception of those with a cyclopentane ring.

Eukaryotic organisms from algae through lower plants (mosses, ferns, lichens) to flowering plants contain mainly straight-chain FAs, either saturated or monounsaturated, and also PUFAs. Many plants contain so-called very-long-chain fatty acids, which are considered to include FAs with a chain longer than 22 carbon atoms. Typical examples are wax esters on the surface of vascular plants, which are important biomarkers found in sediments.

By contrast, specialized tissues (organs) of mammals, e.g., sperm, brain, or eye, contain very-long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (VLCPUFAs) of the type of C28–C36 FAs belonging to the n-3 and n-6 families and containing 4–6 double bonds. It is surprising that similar FAs, although only up to the C28, but with up to eight double bonds are found in dinoflagellates, which are a large group of flagellate protists, mostly from the marine plankton that constitute the phylum Dinoflagellata.

This brief introduction about the types of fatty acids and their presence or absence in various organisms is intended to show the enormous diversity of their structure. According to Chemical Abstracts (SciFinder database), there are reportedly around one thousand known naturally occurring FAs.

### 3 Archaea

Archaea are a large domain of prokaryotic unicellular organisms whose independence from bacteria and eukaryotes was recognized in 1977. First, one should note that the Archaea (formerly archaebacteria) form a large kingdom of unicellular prokaryotic organisms that is independent of other domains of life (bacteria and eukaryotes). They differ from bacteria and eukaryotes in the structure of their cell membrane, cell wall, the genome, and certain metabolic processes. These differences include, for example, the presence of different stereochemistry of the archaeal glycerol moiety (another enantiomer) and the fact that none of the hitherto analyzed archaeal microorganisms contains fatty acids. Complex phospholipids contain isoprenoid chains with multiple side-branches coupled to the glycerol backbone by ether bond (see below). Archaea might be found in areas with extremely high temperatures, extreme pH, or high salt content.

The chemical structure of archaeal membrane is unique. As mentioned above, their lipids do not contain FAs. Archaeal phospholipids are unusual in several respects; above all, they consist of glycerol-ether lipids (De Rosa et al. 1986). The ether linkages are highly stable and this enables Archaea to inhabit extreme environments (Albers et al. 2000). Chains are not straight but mostly branched and are based on isoprene units (Damste et al. 2002) and therefore have no double bond(s) (Koga and Morii 2005). As stated above, the complex lipids contain
L-glycerol, which is the enantiomer of D-glycerol occurring in all other organisms (Koga and Morii 2005). The main problems with Archaea are the difficult analysis and their non-culturability. This problem, however, far exceeds the scope of this chapter. For more details, see, e.g., Woese et al. (1990).

The use of lipidomics for Archaea is illustrated by several studies reporting on the possibilities of lipidomic analysis. HPTLC and MALDI-TOF/MS of the archaeon Pyrococcus furiosus, which grows at 100 °C, were used to identify polar lipids of the type of archaeol (diethers) and caldarchaeol (tetraethers) (Lobasso et al. 2012). MALDI with 9-aminoacridine-like matrix identified the structure shown in Fig. 3.

Lipidomic analysis of two extremely haloalkaliphilic archaea, Natronococcus occultus and N. amylolyticus, combined the use of TLC and MALDI-TOF/MS analysis (Angelini et al. 2012). The major lipids were phosphatidylglycerol and phosphatidylglycerophosphate methyl ester, including cardiolipin that contained four isoprenoid chains. This lipid was also hypothesized to play a crucial part in the adaptation to high pH and high salinity.

MALDI-TOF/MS was again used in the lipidomic analysis of the halophilic archaeon Halobacterium salinarum (Angelini et al. 2010) which identified many glyco- and phospholipids up to a molecular weight of 2,000 Da, among them, e.g., (3′-sulfo)Galpβ1-6Manpα1-2Glcpx1-1-[sn-2,3-di-O-phytanylglycerol] or (3′-sulfo) Galpβ1-6Manpα1-2Glcpx1-1-[sn2,3-di-O-phytanylglycerol]-6-[phospho-sn-2,3-di-O-phytanylglycerol].

In two halophilic microorganisms, Halorubrum trapanicum and Haloferax volcania isolated from a salt lake near Malaga (Spain), Lobasso et al. (2015) identified unusual sulfated bis-diglycosyl diphytanylglyceroldiethers with m.w. around 1000 Da using a TLC-MALDI-TOF/MS and discussed their effect on the bacterial resistance to high salinity.

The frequently studied archaeon Sulfolobus islandicus was found to contain common archaeal lipids, i.e., dialkyl glycerol diethers and tetraethers substituted with polar phosphate groups often further substituted by, e.g., inositol, glycerol, or from one to four monosaccharides (Jensen et al. 2015a). In another study, Jensen et al. (2015b) investigated the influence of temperature on the number of cyclopentane rings in the lipid molecule.

![Fig. 3](image-url) The structure of diglycosyl phosphatidylglycerol tetraether (hexose2-PG-T) from marine hyperthermophilic archaeon Pyrococcus furiosus
Gagen et al. (2016) described a change in lipids (mainly tetraethers) in *Thermococcus kodakarensis* during cultivation; the lipids were separated by UHPLC and identified by tandem ESI/MS.

RP-HPLC with tandem QTOF-ESI-MS was used to analyze the lipids of the thaumarchaeon *Nitrosopumilus maritimus* (Elling et al. 2014). The value of the organic paleothermometer (TEX$\textsubscript{86}$) was found to depend on membrane dibiphytanyl glycerol tetraether lipids (GDGTs).

The above examples constitute a mere fraction of published works and should allow readers to get familiar with the analysis of archaeal lipids. The main problem in the field does not seem to be the actual analysis of lipids but the collection and especially cultivation of these microorganisms (Blum 2008), or their contamination by other organisms.

A very nice example of a connection of cultivation and analysis of Archaea is given in the study performed on *T. kodakarensis* by (Gagen et al. 2016; Meador et al. 2014); it should be however noted that the research team has extensive experience with cultivation of hardly cultivable microorganisms.

### 4 Bacteria

Bacteria are a separate domain of unicellular prokaryotic organisms and are the most widespread living organisms. This is reflected in the large number of different classes of lipids, see Fig. 1.

It is believed that the lipids of a single bacterial cell can include many thousands of molecular lipid species (Breslow et al. 2008; Schuldiner et al. 2005; Yetukuri et al. 2008). As mentioned above, bacteria contain in addition to conventional-type straight-chain FAs (saturated, unsaturated, and polyunsaturated) (Russell and Nichols 1999) also branched (iso and anteiso) fatty acids and FAs with cycles, see Fig. 2 (Lanehoff and Karlsson 2010).

Data on the diversity of bacterial lipid structures were published in several reviews (Parsons and Rock 2013; Sohlenkamp and Geiger 2016). Lipidomic analysis of these lipid structures has also been published (Leray 2012; Rezanka et al. 2012).

*Escherichia coli* and *Bacillus subtilis* are two typical representatives of gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria, and it is therefore not surprising that one of the first studies dealing with lipidomic analysis of bacteria was devoted to them (Gidden et al. 2009). MALDI-TOF/tandem MS showed that both fatty acids and lipids of the two species differ widely. For instance, *B. subtilis* contains lysyl-PG and diglucosyl diglycerides that are missing in *E. coli*.

Zhang et al. (2011) analyzed lipids up to m.w. 1,000 Da in 2 gram-positive and 14 gram-negative bacteria by DESI and ESI and used principal component analysis to determine the taxonomy of the bacteria.

Analysis of *S. aureus*, one of the best known human pathogens, was performed by HPLC-QTOF-MS (Hewelt-Belka et al. 2014). The authors identified over 7000 molecular species belonging to 18 major classes and 36 subclasses of lipids.
This provided the possibility to compare strains with different phenotypic characteristics and hence different sensitivity to antibiotics.

Garrett et al. (2012) used NP-LC/ESI-MS to identify molecular species of cardiolipin in *E. coli* grown at different temperatures; the content of these lipids was found to vary depending on temperature.

Lipidomic analysis of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, a known pathogen that forms biofilms, showed changes in the inner and outer membrane of the cells depending on their age (Benamara et al. 2014). Kondakova et al. (2015) described lipidomic analysis of *P. fluorescens* by HPTLC-MALDI-TOF/MS, which detected PC otherwise contained in eukaryotes.

Lipids in *B. subtilis, Streptomyces coelicolor, Mycobacterium smegmatis*, and *P. aeruginosa* were determined using nanospray MS-DESI directly from Petri dishes without performing the extraction of lipids (Watrous et al. 2012).

Identification of different species of *Bacillus* was performed by MALDI-TOF/MS and the cells were found to contain phospholipids – PE, PC, PG, DGDG (Shu et al. 2012).

Hansen et al. (2015) investigated the plasma membrane of the probiotic *Lactobacillus acidophilus* La-5 using high-resolution shotgun lipidomics. They described changes in the composition of fatty acids in plasma membrane lipids, mainly in cardiolipin and monolysocardiolipin, after addition of Tween 20, a polysorbate surfactant like Tween 80, but primarily containing lauric and myristic acids as well as linoleic and alpha-linolenic acids.

### 4.1 Plasmalogens

One of the most interesting groups of lipids is plasmalogens. These compounds are glycerol derivatives wherein alcohol is bound to the *sn*-1 position via ether bonds and a fatty acid esterifies the *sn*-2 position. The alcohol binds as vinyl ether, the acid by an ester linkage, see Fig. 4 for the structure of plasmalogen-phosphatidyl ethanolamine (pPE).

The alcohol usually has 16 or 18 carbon atoms, whereas the acid is always characteristic for the given group of organisms, for instance, straight chain or branched chain saturated (iso or anteiso) acid in bacteria (Rezanka et al. 2012), or polyunsaturated acids in mammals.

![Fig. 4](image-url) 
*Fig. 4* The structure of plasmalogen-phosphatidyl ethanolamine (pPE)
At the 3-position of the glycerol, backbone is a phosphate group, so that plasmalogens include plasmalogen-phosphatidylserine, plasmalogen-phosphatidylglycerol, plasmalogen-phosphoethanolamine, etc.

Much more interesting than their structure is their distribution in nature. They are found only in anaerobic bacteria and in animals (Braverman and Moser 2012; Magnusson and Haraldsson 2011) and have not been found in aerobic bacteria, fungi, and plants, including algae (Felde and Spiteller 1994). Their presence in fungi is highly debatable (Horrocks and Sharma 1982).

Plasmalogens were analyzed in recent years almost exclusively by LC-MS. Other methods are time-consuming and inaccurate and usually do not provide information about native plasmalogens and their molecular species. Identification of plasmalogens is usually not complicated, see the paper of Hsu et al. (2003) which describes very well the analysis and provides excellent background information.

Lipidomic analysis can be used in industrial practice for instance in the brewing industry to identify the contamination of beer by anaerobic bacteria of the genus *Pectinatus* and *Megasphaera* (Rezanka et al. 2015). Analysis of *Pectinatus frisingensis* was performed by LC-MS, see Fig. 5, and it was found that the major plasmalogen is cyclo-plasmenyl-19:0/17:1 PE. Alanyl, lysyl-, and glucosyl-phosphatidylglycerols and CLS have been identified in thermophilic bacteria of the genus *Anoxybacillus* using HILIC-LC / ESI-MS/MS (Rezanka et al. 2012). Bacteria of genus *Clostridium* have been found to contain plasmalogens (Goldfine and Guan 2017; Kolek et al. 2015).

![Fig. 5 HILIC/APCI-MS chromatogram of the phospholipids from *Pectinatus frisingensis* DSM 20465](image-url)
Basically the same facts that were said about cultivability and/or noncultivability of Archaea also apply to bacteria. The review by Alain and Querellou (2009) stated that more than 90% of bacteria found in nature are noncultivable. Their presence can obviously be proved in substrates such as geothermal water, forest soil, active sludge from wastewater treatment, but during subsequent culture of bacteria from these substrates only some are able to multiply and grow. The overall population is thus overgrown by several fastest propagating bacteria, which reduces the species diversity of the population.

4.2 Mycobacteria

As suggested by their name, mycobacteria were for many years considered to belong to fungi, among others for the unusual structure of their lipids, particularly mycolic acids and mycolates (Fig. 6). Many of them are human pathogens (*M. tuberculosis* or *M. leprae*). The lipids of mycobacteria include both nonpolar lipids, such as phthiocerol dimycocerosates, and polar ones (phosphatidylinositol mannosides). Lipidomic analysis identified over 5000 molecular species (Layre et al. 2011).

Fig. 6  Unusual structure of mycolic acids
Three databases of these lipids were created, i.e., MTB LipidDB, MycoMass, and MycoMap (Layre et al. 2011; Madigan et al. 2012; Sartain et al. 2011).

Lipids can form over half of cell mass and, in addition to the already mentioned mycolic acids, they include complex lipids and FAs such as palmitic, oleic and tuberculostearic acids. The complex lipids have not been found to include sphingolipids, PE, PC, PG, and diphosphatidylglycerol, whereas the presence of phosphatidylinositol and phosphatidylinositol mannosides is common (Hsu et al. 2007a, b).

Mycolic acids, which have a totally unique structure and have not been found in other bacteria, consist of α- and β-hydroxymeromycolic chains differing in length and chain branching, unsaturation, and substitution of polar groups (Guenin-Mace et al. 2009). They provide essential structure information that can be used in taxonomy (Butler and Guthertz 2001).

The use of isoniazid, an important drug which inhibits the biosynthesis of mycobacterial lipids, led to the understanding of the structure of cell membranes (Layre et al. 2014).

Lipidomic analysis of bacteria including mycobacteria revealed the great variability of complex lipids, the use of which can be seen especially in chemotaxonomy, but also in the elucidation of resistance to antibiotics including the knowledge of the behavior of bacteria in the biofilm.

5 Yeast

Yeast is one of the most important microorganisms used in biotechnology. Yeasts are basically single-celled fungi that usually reproduce by budding or fission and are used primarily for the production of beer, wine, and bread. However, some yeasts, e. g., Candida albicans, are pathogenic.

Lipidomics of yeast was the subject of several major studies that mostly analyzed the famous yeast species Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Shotgun lipidomic analysis of two million cells allowed the identification of 21 classes of lipids and more than 250 molecular species. Changes were found in the lipid content of yeast cultured at 24 °C and 37 °C (Ejsing et al. 2009).

Lipidomic studies using UHPLC-MS/MS performed on a wild and a recombinant strain of S. cerevisiae showed a correlation between PI metabolism of xylose and glucose (Xia et al. 2011).

A study of the dependence of the 21 classes of lipid in S. cerevisiae on the duration of cultivation showed a change in the contents of 34:2-PC versus 32:2-PC or 34:2-PA versus 32:2-PA (Casanovas et al. 2015).

Cultivation of two yeasts, S. cerevisiae and Zygosaccharomyces bailii, on an atypical carbon source (acetic acid) was investigated by lipidomic analysis, and it was found that the tolerance to acetic acid is related to the increase in the content of sphingolipids (Lindberg et al. 2013).
Da Silveira dos Santos et al. (2014) studied the effect of deletion of nonessential genes encoding kinases or phosphatases on lipid content. The results showed changes in some molecular species, e.g., 32:2 and 34:2-PC.

The absence of YBR141C and YJR015W genes, whose function is unknown, was studied in mutants of \textit{S. cerevisiae} (Tarasov et al. 2014).

Lipidomic profile of \textit{S. cerevisiae}, \textit{S. bayanus}, \textit{Kluyveromyces thermotolerans}, \textit{Pichia angusta}, and \textit{Yarrowia lipolytica} showed that the yeast contain 9 classes of phospholipids (mainly CL, PE, PI PC, PS, and PG) with more than 100 molecular species (Hein and Hayen 2012).

Lipidomic analysis of the wild type strain of \textit{S. cerevisiae} and its mutants cultured at four different temperatures (15°C, 24°C, 30°C, and 37°C) was performed in order to investigate changes in phospholipids (Klose et al. 2012). The analysis showed that increased temperature enhances PI content and reduces the content of TAG and PE.

Comparison of lipidomic profiles of homogenate and microsomes in methylotrophic yeast \textit{Pichia pastoris} showed changes in the content of TAG, PC, and PI (Klug et al. 2014).

As stated above, with a few exceptions the authors examined only \textit{S. cerevisiae}. Further developments in this area can be seen particularly in the lipidomic analysis of less and less easily cultivable yeasts, for example, psychrophilic yeasts (Fig. 7) (Rezanka et al. 2016).

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{figure7.png}
\caption{Fig. 7 Tandem mass spectrum of natural PC of \textit{K. malvinella} cultivated at different temperatures and two commercial standards, i.e., molecular species 1-palmitoyl-2-oleylphosphatidylethanolamine and (PO-PC) and 1-oleyl-2-palmitoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (OP-PC), respectively.}
\end{figure}
6 Cyanobacteria and Algae

6.1 Cyanobacteria

Algae and cyanobacteria are taxonomically very different, but they biosynthesize basically very similar lipids. Also both their occurrence and cultivation are very much the same. That is why they are here discussed together, although algae are eukaryotes while cyanobacteria are prokaryotes.

Cyanobacteria were found to contain glycolipids (MGDG, DGDG, and SQDG) as well as phospholipids, with PG as a major lipid. In this cyanobacterial lipids resemble lipids of algae and are different from most bacteria, which are taxonomically much closer.

Marques et al. (2016) examined the effects of As (III) on the lipidomic profiles of two cyanobacterial species (Anabaena and Planktothrix agardhii) using LC-MS with simultaneous processing of the results by the multivariate curve resolution alternating least squares. They found that As (III) induced significant changes in the lipid composition of the cyanobacteria. The biggest changes occurred primarily in the content of pigments (chlorophyll $a$ and its degradation product pheophytin $a$, as well as in carotene compounds such as 3-hydroxycarotene and 3-carotene-3,3'-dione) and in the content of MGDG.

6.2 Algae

Algae are lower plants, both unicellular and multicellular (see thallus). They live in fresh or salt water, or in symbiosis in lichens. Although algae are typical photosynthetic organisms, they can be cultivated exclusively heterotrophically, which is widely used in various biotechnological applications. Algae contain a variety of lipids, including the less common ones, e.g., betaine lipids or sulfolipids. Typical examples are diacylglyceryltrimethylhomoserine (DGTS), diacylglycerylhydroxymethyltrimethylalanine (DGTA), and diacylglycerylcarboxyhydroxymethylcholine (DGCC), see Fig. 8.

Unlike bacteria and yeasts, algal dry weight often contains more than 50% PUFAs, for instance, 18:5, 20:5, and 22:6 acids that are missing in higher plants. To produce PUFAs, algae are commonly cultured in fermenters with volumes of tens of thousands liters (e.g., the commercially available preparation containing docosahexaenoic acid from different strains of algae).

Lipidomic analysis has often been performed in order to determine the behavior of algae under abnormal cultivation conditions. One of the stressful conditions is a salt content higher than that at which algae usually grow. For freshwater algae, it is, e.g., cultivation in sea water. Lu et al. (2012, 2013) studied the alga Chlamydomonas nivalis (snow alga that lives in the snow, which is basically almost pure water) for its content of lipid biomarkers (DGTS, MGDG, DGDG, or SQDG) using ESI
in positive- and negative-ion mode. They identified a noncommonly occurring hexadecatetraenoic acid and identified lipids in algae cultured under different conditions using multivariate statistical analysis.

Two geographic varieties of the alga *Nannochloropsis oceanica*, which are morphologically and taxonomically (via 18S rRNA) indistinguishable, showed, using UHPLC-Q-TOF-MS, a completely different taxonomically pertinent lipid profile (Li et al. 2015). As biomarkers have been identified, e.g., 20:4/20:5-DGTS, 20:5/14:0-MGDG, 20:5/16:1-DGDG, and 16:1/20:5/20:5-TAG.

Geographic varieties of the snow alga *Chloromonas pichinchae* were analyzed by silver LC/APCI-MS and LC-NARP/APCI-MS (Rezanka et al. 2014), see Fig. 9, who identified uncommon molecular species of 16:4/16:4/18:4-TAGs, 16:3/16:3/18:4-TAGs or 18:4/18:4-SQDG.

The dependence of the lipidomic profile on culture conditions of the red alga *Galdieria sulphuraria* growing at low pH was determined by LC-MS (Vitova et al. 2016). Cultivation was carried out at pH 1–4 and 14 classes of lipids were identified including many tens of molecular species of lipids, including regioisomers. Low pH promotes the biosynthesis of betaine lipids and causes variation in the ratio of regioisomers.

![Fig. 8 Examples of structures of diacylglycercyletrimethylhomoserine (DGTS), diacylglycerol hydroxymethyl trimethylalanine (DGTA) and diacylglycerolcarboxyhydroxymethylcholine (DGCC)]
Analysis of the psychrophilic alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* (Yang et al. 2015) using positive and negative mode ESI identified polar lipids, and their molecular species, e.g., 16:0/18:4-DGTS, 16:0/18:3-SQDG, and 16:1/18:3-PG.

Fig. 9 (a) Silver-LC chromatograms of the TAGs mixture from snow alga *Chloromonas pichinchae* with labeled double bonds groups (sample UDOLI). (b) Analysis of TAGs from snow alga *C. pichinchae* by NARP-HPLC/APCI-MS (sample UDOLI)

Analysis of the psychrophilic alga *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* (Yang et al. 2015) using positive and negative mode ESI identified polar lipids, and their molecular species, e.g., 16:0/18:4-DGTS, 16:0/18:3-SQDG, and 16:1/18:3-PG.
Danielewicz et al. (2011) studied the possibility of using lipidomic analysis for potentially oleaginous saltwater microalgae *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*, *Nannochloropsis salina*, *Nannochloropsis oculi*, and *Tetraselmis suecica*. Using MALDI and ESI-TOF profile, they detected dozens of triacylglycerols, for example, 20:5/20:5/20:4-TAG or 16:1/16:3/20:5-TAG. The method is very suitable for the rapid screening of algae for biofuel production.

The alga *Nannochloropsis salina* was investigated using several ionization techniques (ESI, APCI, APPI, and MALDI) and showed differences in the representation of individual lipid classes (Lee et al. 2013). This study pointed out how important it is to use internal standards for the quantification. It is to be regretted that not all necessary standards are commercially available.

Investigation of the influence of temperature changes on the lipidome of red alga *Pyropia haitanensis* revealed that the alga contains 39 lipids that can serve as lipid biomarkers (Chen et al. 2016).

MacDougall et al. (2011) used UHPLC-MS to identify and quantify the contents of TAGs in 6 algae of the genus *Botryococcus*, *Nannochloropsis*, *Neochloris*, *Phaeodactylum*, *Porphyridium*, and *Scenedesmus*. They detected the presence of 28:1/28:2/18:1 TAG or 28:2/28:2/18:1-TAG belonging to TAGs with the longest known chain found in nature. In addition, the alga *Scenedesmus obliquus* contains polyunsaturated TAGs, e.g., 20:5/18:3/16:3-TAG. Although the publication is 6 years old, it points to further possibilities of lipidomic analysis of algae and other organisms.

In their excellent review, da Costa et al. (2016) summarized the findings obtained by lipidomic analysis of glycolipids of many tens of microalgae.

### 7 Research Needs

We believe that further development of lipidomic analysis is expected in four directions.

**New ionization techniques.** The first is the use of new ionization techniques, e.g., atmospheric pressure photoionization MS which is connected to tandem MS, or the use of high-resolution mass spectrometry of time-of-flight MS, connected with ultra-performance liquid chromatography.

**Wider range of samples.** The second direction is the analysis of a much wider range of samples, particularly from the group of microorganisms not commonly found, such as extremophilic Archaea, bacteria, yeast or cyanobacteria, and algae harvested from unusual (psychrophilic, halophilic, thermophilic, etc.) habitats. Shotgun and LC-MS lipidomics has so far been rarely used for analysis of lipids containing unusual head groups, very-long chain or very-long chain polyunsaturated FAs.

**Chemical compounds labeled with stable isotopes.** The third direction involves the application and use of chemical compounds labeled with stable isotopes in the study of dynamic changes of metabolic pathways. This approach is at the beginning and suffers so far from the lack of suitable and commercially available precursors.
and metabolites and their high price. Nevertheless, the use of labeled compounds leads to a complex analysis of lipid metabolism on the molecular level and a better understanding of the role of lipids in biotechnological applications.

**Single cell lipidomics.** The fourth area concerns the sensitivity of currently produced mass spectrometers, which has already reached the attomole ($10^{-18}$) level, i.e., the concentration of lipids in a single cell. This creates a new highly promising discipline, which we may call single cell lipidomics.

**Acknowledgments** The research was supported by GACR project 17-00027S and by Institutional Research Concept RVO61388971.

**References**


Braverman NE, Moser AB (2012) Functions of plasmalogen lipids in health and disease. Biochim Biophys Acta 1822:1442–1452. [https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbadis.2012.05.008](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbadis.2012.05.008)


Leray C (2012) Introduction to lipidomics: from bacteria to man. CRC Press, Boca Ratton


Part III

Hydrocarbons and Lipids in the Geosphere
Composition and Properties of Petroleum

R. Paul Philp

Contents
1 Introduction ................................................................................ 270
2 How to Define a Crude Oil? ............................................................... 270
3 Characterization of Crude Oils .......................................................... 272
   3.1 Bulk Parameters ...................................................................... 272
   3.2 Molecular Characteristics ............................................................ 275
4 Where Does the Oil Come From? Photosynthesis and How Things Change Over Time ... 288
5 Productivity Versus Preservation .......................................................... 290
6 What Are the Major Factors Involved in Determining the Composition of Crude Oils? ... 290
7 What Is the Impact of Depositional Environment? ....................................... 292
8 What Is the Impact of Maturity? ........................................................... 295
9 How Does the Molecular Composition of an Oil Change During and After Generation? .......................................................... 296
10 Expulsion and Migration ................................................................... 300
11 Biodegradation and Preservation .......................................................... 301
12 Summary ................................................................................... 305
References ....................................................................................... 306

Abstract
Our understanding of the composition and related properties of crude oils has changed significantly over time. Many of the most significant changes have occurred in parallel with developments in analytical techniques. Until the mid-1900s, techniques available for characterizing crude oils were relatively crude by today’s standards and for the most part could only determine bulk properties such as color, optical activity, API gravity, bulk isotope composition, and limited compositional analyses. The development of techniques such as gas chromatography, gas chromatography-mass spectrometry in the 1960s and 1970s, and gas
chromatography-isotope ratio mass spectrometry in the 1980s saw a significant change in the way oils could be characterized. The molecular compositions of crude oils could be determined, and with the development of the biomarker concept, it became possible to identify individual compounds in crude oils that could be used to provide a significant amount of information on the origin and history of crude oils. Information such as source, maturity, depositional environments, migration pathways, and geological age became available. Furthermore, correlation of biomarker fingerprints from oils and source rock extracts permitted oil/source rock correlations to be undertaken to evaluate the actual source of an oil. Developments in these areas have continued up until the present, and new information is continually becoming available. With the age of shale oil and shale gas upon us, the knowledge gained on the composition of crude oils over the past five or six decades has become invaluable in the development of these resources. Analytical techniques continue to become more sophisticated and at the same time shed new light on the history of crude oils and their origin.

1 Introduction

This chapter is concerned with the composition and properties of crude oils. With such a title, there are numerous topics that could be covered, and obviously it would not be possible to cover all such topics in this chapter. Instead the chapter is broken down into a number of sections that highlight major features that impact the composition and properties of crude oils. Each of these sections will highlight major issues related to a specific topic and provide some additional references. It should be noted at the outset that for general information on crude oil compositions there are a number of excellent monographs including *Petroleum Geochemistry and Geology* by Hunt (1979, 1996), *Petroleum Formation and Occurrence* by Tissot and Welte (1978, 1984), the second edition of *The Biomarker Guide: Volume 2* by Peters and Moldowan (1992) and Peters et al. (2005), and the Holland and Turekian (2014) treatise plus extensive publications in the peer-reviewed journals in such journals as the *AAPG Bulletin* and *Organic Geochemistry*. A paper by Hunt et al. (2002) also provides a comprehensive overview of early developments in petroleum geochemistry going back to the early twentieth century.

2 How to Define a Crude Oil?

Crude oils are complex mixtures of hundreds of thousands of organic compounds along with varying concentrations of metals such as nickel and vanadium. The organic components are many and varied and include hydrocarbons and heteroatomic compounds, which are commonly defined on the basis of their PIANO or SARA composition. The PIANO composition is comprised of the relative proportions of the paraffins (P), isoalkanes (I), aromatics (A), naphthenes (N), and olefins (O). Initially this parameter was developed for use in refineries to provide
information on the composition of crude oils and the types and amounts of products that could be produced from a specific crude oil. Many years ago these values were obtained by high-resolution mass spectrometry, but today this compositional parameter is generally determined following the calibration of a gas chromatograph (GC) with a complex mixture of standards from each of the five aforementioned classes of compounds. The compounds in the standard that are present in the crude oil are quantified, and the PIANO composition determined. The SARA composition is comprised of the relative proportions of saturates (S), aromatics (A), resins or polars (R), and asphaltenes (A) as determined following the precipitation of the asphaltenes and fractionation of the remaining maltenes by column chromatography. While characterizing crude oils using these bulk approaches is very basic, it is useful to get general information on the composition of the crude oils and provide information on the range of products that may be expected to be produced from a crude oil. Both parameters can be used for correlation purposes or making comparisons between different crude oils, but it must be remembered these are bulk parameters, and there will be many oils that are totally unrelated that have similar PIANO and SARA values. Correlations based on these parameters need to be confirmed using more specific properties or parameters. Many years ago Tissot and Welte (1978) showed that in general crude oils could be divided into five different groups ranging from very heavy biodegraded to far lighter condensate like products as shown in Fig. 1.

Fig. 1 Tissot and Welte (1978) showed that crude oils could, in general, be divided into five different groups ranging from very heavily biodegraded sulfur-rich oils to light condensate-type products. (Reproduced with permission from Tissot and Welte 1984)
The variations observed in these crude oils were determined from bulk fraction parameters, but ultimately these parameters are derived from the original source materials and processes that impacted the oils after generation.

3 Characterization of Crude Oils

3.1 Bulk Parameters

Crude oils can be characterized on a number of different levels using bulk characterization methods or more sophisticated techniques that characterize oils on a molecular level. The composition of crude oils can be viewed in a number of different ways depending upon the nature of the information obtained from the characterization process, but in general the information will be used either for upstream or downstream purposes. From a downstream perspective, the most important information required is a determination of the products that can be produced from that oil as it is refined, for example, how much gasoline vs. heating oil might be produced since this in turn will determine the value of the oil. Much of this information can be obtained directly from the bulk properties of the oil. Historically the most important methods for characterizing crude oils were based on distillation where different boiling point fractions were determined by conventional distillation. More recently distillation has been replaced by simulated distillation that can be undertaken by gas chromatography. In gas chromatography, one of the major properties responsible for separating compounds chromatographically is based on vapor pressure differences between individual compounds. A generic gas chromatogram showing a typical non-degraded crude oil is shown in Fig. 2 along with an indication of the range of products that can be produced from the different carbon number ranges in the crude. The separation of these individual compounds is largely determined by differences in vapor pressures of the individual compounds. Historically going back to the 1920s, the US Bureau of Mines used the so-called Hempel distillation method to differentiate or correlate crude oils (Smith 1940; Hunt et al. 2002).

Other bulk properties of crude oils were used for many years for correlation purposes prior to the advent of molecular geochemistry starting in the early 1970s. Such bulk parameters may have included simple properties such as color, optical activity, API gravity, simulated distillation curves, Hempel distillation and correlation indices, bulk carbon isotopes, relative proportions of hydrocarbon and polar fractions in the oil based on SARA and PIANO analyses, and many other properties.

One very important parameter, still used extensively today, was the API (American Petroleum Institute) gravity (Ruh et al. 1959; Hunt et al. 2002). This is a parameter related to the specific gravity (SG) of the oil through the simple formula shown below:

$$API = \frac{141.3}{SG} - 131.3$$
The heavier the oil, the lower its API gravity; hence an oil that may be very extensively biodegraded and enriched in asphaltenes, polar and aromatic compounds, will have a very low API gravity around 10. However, a very light condensate oil will have a very high value around 50–55. Between the two extremes, there will be a wide range of oils with intermediate API values. Many years ago these values were used for correlation purposes, but there are many oils that have similar API values but are not related to each other since there cannot be an infinite range of API values. There are of course many factors that can complicate interpretation of the API gravities since you could have a very heavily degraded oil which ultimately mixes with a very light condensate, and the resulting API gravity would be somewhere between the heavy and the light values depending on the extent of mixing. However the integration of GC data can reveal the extent of such mixing. Also oils with low API values are not necessarily heavily biodegraded since oils generated at low levels of maturity from sulfur-rich kerogens will also have low API values. Heavy oils with low API gravities are worthless since they will produce less

**Fig. 2** A gas chromatogram for a typical non-degraded crude oil along with an indication of the boiling point range of products that can be produced from the different carbon number ranges in the crude oil. The carbon number ranges of the major families of biomarkers are also indicated on this chromatogram.
gasoline and require specialized conditions for refining. Not only will the asphaltene fractions produce less gasoline, but heavy metals, such as nickel and vanadium, and also sulfur are concentrated in that fraction and will possibly have detrimental effects on the catalysts used in the refining process.

Even further back in history, more basic properties such as color, or optical activity, were used to differentiate or correlate crude oils (Whitehead 1971; Hunt et al. 2002). Despite what many people think, not all oils are black. There is a wide range of colors ranging from a deep black or brown through colors such as green and yellow until the very light clear condensates. However again this is not a very specific tool for correlating oils from similar sources or discriminating those from different sources and is generally not used extensively today. Most oils have the ability to rotate plane-polarized light as a result of being optically active. This results from the fact that when many molecules are being biosynthesized only one optical isomer or enantiomer is synthesized and preserved in the sediments and source rocks. However as the maturity level increases, the other enantiomer will be formed and change the optical activity of the oil. The extent of this optical activity has been used in the past to correlate or discriminate between oils from the same or different sources.

For upstream purposes the crude oil compositional data are used in a very different manner since both bulk and molecular characteristics can play important roles in the characterization of crude oils. Historically, prior to approximately the mid-1960s, as mentioned above, bulk characteristics were the major tools available for use in correlating oils with source rocks and establishing the relationship between oils within different families of oils prior to the availability of the analytical techniques in common use today such as GC, gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS) and gas chromatography-isotope ratio mass spectrometry (GC-IRMS). Most of these bulk techniques were not very specific and in general not very useful for correlation or characterization purposes but all that was available. Early applications of bulk carbon isotope values included a study by Silverman and Epstein (1958) of several tertiary crude oils from different environments. The molecular characteristics that became routinely available from the 1970s soon replaced the use of many of the bulk parameters (Eglinton and Murphy 1969; Seifert and Moldowan 1978), although parameters such as bulk isotope values and API gravity are still commonly used.

API gravity and stable isotope values of the whole oil are generally determined at the outset of any characterization and provide useful guidelines concerning the relationship between samples and provide information that will assist in ultimately establishing relationships between groups or families of oils. There is a limited range of isotope values for crude oils covering the range of approximately −20 to −35 per mil, and therefore one can expect many oils for totally unrelated sources will have similar isotope values. The reason for this being that the primary source material present in the source rocks that generate the crude oils is derived from photosynthesis where the primary producers are incorporating CO₂ from the atmosphere and converting it into cell wall and other components (Philp 2014), since there has been a finite range of C isotope values for atmospheric CO₂ over time that will translate
into the finite range of values for the resulting crude oils as discussed in more detail below.

### 3.2 Molecular Characteristics

Characterization of crude oils on the molecular level developed rapidly with commercial availability of GC-MS systems in the early 1970s and followed a little later in that decade with GC-MS systems equipped with associated data systems (Hunt et al. 2002). Prior to this the only tool for molecular level of characterization was gas chromatography. This permitted a basic fingerprint showing the \( n \)-alkanes and major isoprenoids but showed nothing related to the complex mixture of compounds present in lower concentrations but hidden in the baseline of the chromatogram. These compounds, known as biomarkers, required the use of GC-MS for their detection, and from the 1970s until today, an ever-increasing number of these compounds have been discovered (Eglinton and Calvin 1967). By definition biomarkers are generally hydrocarbons present in oils and source rock extracts that have carbon skeletons that can be related directly to the carbon skeletons of their precursors that were present in the original source material. A significant number of these compounds are now used to provide information of the source, maturity, depositional environments, level of biodegradation, geologic age, and other parameters related to the origin and history of the oil (Eglinton and Calvin 1967; Peters et al. 2005; Philp 2014).

Before entering a discussion related to biomarkers, a brief introduction to the sophisticated analytical methods in current use to characterize crude oils will be provided. It is fair to say that the most commonly used methods to characterize crude oils are those related to determining molecular composition of crude oils, namely, GC and GC-MS. There are many additional and associated methods, such as 2D GC which provides more details on the composition of the crude oils by undertaking the chromatographic separation in two dimensions.

A generic gas chromatogram for a conventional crude oil is shown in Fig. 2, and the dominant components being a homologous series of \( n \)-alkanes (structures I and II; Fig. 3 – note that representative structures for compounds mentioned in the text are shown in this figure. In the following text, structures are indicated by roman numerals and can be found in this figure). There can be a tremendous variation in the distribution of the \( n \)-alkanes in crude oils as a result of source materials, maturity, depositional environment, and partial, or total, absence of these compounds as a result of biodegradation. The more important issue here is the boiling point range of the various products that can be produced from a crude oil as illustrated in Fig. 2. It should be evident that the composition of a crude oil will closely control the nature of the products that can be produced and their relative yields.

Routine GC analyses permit the determination of compounds present in crude oils ranging from \( C_1 \) to approximately \( C_{40} \) as shown in Fig. 2. However it should be noted that hydrocarbons in crude oils do not stop at \( C_{40} \) but rather can be shown to be present up to \( C_{120} \) by using high-temperature GC (HTGC) as illustrated in Fig. 4.
But again hydrocarbons do not stop at C_{120} and probably extend to much higher carbon numbers although there are probably limits on the migration of such really large hydrocarbons from the source to reservoir to surface collection facilities. However routine GC analyses permit significant information to be determined and related to the properties of the oils, whether biodegraded, a condensate, a mixture of oils, nature of source material, depositional environment, and then as mentioned above some indication of the nature of refined products that could be produced from a specific crude oil.

The molecular characteristics of crude oils form a very broad topic by itself, and only some of the major topics can be described and discussed in a chapter of this nature. Major uses of these compounds are related to providing information on the history and origin of crude oils. This can be broken down into information related to source, depositional environments, and maturity, possible levels of biodegradation,
and finally undertaking oil-to-oil and oil-to-source rock correlations. The majority, if not all, of these topics have evolved from the original concept of biomarkers, or hydrocarbons in crude oils that are derived from, and have very similar carbon skeletons, to the functionalized compounds that occur in the original source materials (Peters et al. 2005).

Biomarkers can be traced back to the work of Treibs in the 1920s and 1930s (Treibs 1934a, b, 1936) but were further refined following the efforts of Eglinton and Calvin (1967) in the late 1960s and 1970s and Seifert and co-workers at the Chevron Oil Company in Richmond, California, in the mid-1970s (Seifert and Moldowan 1978, 1981, 1986) and many others since those days have continued to develop this very important concept. The reason for this rapid development can be traced to advances in the analytical field, particularly the combined GC-MS system permitting the identification of trace amounts of individual compounds using the concept of single ion or multiple ion detection pioneered by the work of Klaus Biemann at MIT in the early 1970s (Hites and Biemann 1970). This led to the ability to obtain fingerprints of specific families of compounds present in crude oils such as the steranes and terpanes and other widely used families of biomarkers. The distributions of the biomarkers in crude oils have been used for a variety of purposes, but the major uses can be summarized as providing information on source, depositional environments, maturity, extent of crude oil biodegradation, age dating of crude oils, and possible information on migration distances (Peters et al. 2005).

Fig. 4 Hydrocarbons in crude oils do not stop at C$_{40}$ but extend up to at least C$_{120}$ as revealed by high-temperature GC (HTGC). This diagram compares the same sample of ozocerite run on a conventional column and a high-temperature column to compare the differences in distributions obtained by the two methods (Philp et al. 2004)
oils and source rocks can be used for correlation purposes which are a very important part of any exploration effort. More recently there has been a more concerted effort into the integration of biomarker data in sequence stratigraphic models (Curiale et al. 1992) particularly with unconventional oil and gas systems, in order to demonstrate the heterogeneity of the shales and define the more productive facies within the shales that provide the more attractive horizontal drilling targets (Slatt and Rodriguez 2012).

A brief overview of some of the more important biomarkers and their important applications and interpretations is provided below. Many of the early biomarker interpretations have changed as more samples from different petroleum systems, i.e., sedimentary basins, have been characterized and novel biomarkers have also been discovered and are now in routine use. In the early days, the rate of novel biomarker discoveries increased exponentially which was not surprising as documented in a landmark paper by Mackenzie et al. (1982). All of these discoveries really stemmed from the development of the GC-MS systems and then a little later the introduction of the data systems. Later the development of the GC-MSMS systems also led to a renewed surge in the number of novel biomarkers being discovered. Today the number of novel biomarkers being discovered in crude oils and source rock extracts has slowed, but when the number of compounds in any crude oil is compared to the actual number identified, it should not surprise anyone to learn that there are still many compounds awaiting discovery.

*n*-Alkanes (I and II) and the isoprenoids, pristane (III; Pr, 2,6,10,14-tetramethylpentadecane) and phytane (IV; Ph, 2,6,10,14-tetramethylhexadecane), have been studied extensively since the mid-1960s primarily because their distributions can be determined by GC and GC-MS is not required (i.e., Powell and McKirdy 1973). The *n*-alkane distributions have been widely used to get some indication of possible source materials, primarily marine vs. terrigenous. *n*-Alkane distributions can also be impacted by factors such as maturity and biodegradation in particular. Increasing maturation will lead to thermal degradation of the longer-chain alkanes shifting the carbon maximum to lower carbon numbers and ultimately if the maturity level becomes high enough leading to the formation of gas. Biodegradation will preferentially remove the *n*-alkanes over all the other compounds and starting at the lower carbon-numbered alkanes.

The isoprenoids, Pr (III) and Ph (IV), have also been widely studied since the late 1960s and have produced one of the most widely used geochemical parameters, the Pr/Ph ratio. This ratio was initially proposed by Powell and McKirdy (1973), further refined by Didyk et al. (1978) in the mid-1970s, and has been discussed extensively since that time. It was initially proposed that high Pr/Ph ratios (>3) were indicative of an oxic depositional environment and a low ratio (<1) indicative of an anoxic or reducing environment. However this interpretation is based upon Pr and Ph both being derived from degradation of chlorophyll. But over the years, a number of additional sources have been proposed for both Pr and Ph, and under those circumstances, there can be problems with the interpretation of the ratio. In order to determine whether or not the Pr and Ph are derived from the same source, it is necessary to measure the stable isotope composition of both compounds. Despite
this issue, the Pr/Ph ratio is still a very useful oil/oil or oil/source rock correlation parameter which is relatively resistant to biodegradation and does not change significantly with maturation.

Other classes of biomarkers generally require GC-MS and multiple ion detection for their characterization since they are present in relatively low concentrations and generally not visible on the GC chromatograms unless the oils are biodegraded enhancing the relative concentrations of the steranes and terpanes. In the following sections, a few of the more widely used biomarkers will be discussed to provide some examples of the utility of these compounds from an exploration perspective (Philp and Lewis 1978; Peters and Fowler 2002; Peters et al. 2005).

There are four major families of biomarkers that are present in the saturate fraction of a crude oil that are extremely useful in petroleum exploration and production. The four groups of compounds are the sesquiterpanes, steranes, terpanes, and diamondoids, and below a brief summary for each of these compound classes is provided.

### 3.2.1 Sesquiterpanes

The family of sesquiterpanes is generally comprised of C_{14}–C_{16} bicyclic sesquiterpanes (V and VI) which are generally present in virtually all crude oils in varying proportions (Alexander et al. 1984). Care needs to be taken such they are not lost during sample preparation since a little too much enthusiasm in evaporating the solvent during sample preparation can greatly affect the distribution of these compounds. The identity of most of these compounds can be found in *The Biomarker Guide: Volume 2* (Peters et al. 2005) or papers in the exploration literature going back to the late 1970s. Drimane and homodrimane are typically the most abundant compounds and are thought to have a microbial origin. There are variations in the distributions of these compounds between oils coming from different sources, and this provides one of the first sets of fingerprints for differentiating oils from different sources. The impact of weathering on these compounds has not been widely studied since the major weathering impact with these samples is evaporation rather than biodegradation which will remove the compounds faster than biodegradation.

The second important family of biomarkers is referred to as the terpanes (VII and VIII; Aquino Neto et al. 1983; Peters et al. 2005). This is a family of compounds widely used in exploration studies, and despite the fact that the pentacyclic compounds are derived from precursors ubiquitous in bacteria and the tricyclic compounds are thought to probably be sourced from *Tasmanites*, a tremendous amount of useful exploration information can be derived from these fingerprints. A classic terpane fingerprint is shown below (Fig. 5), and the areas where the tricyclic and pentacyclic compounds elute are clearly labeled. The identities of virtually all the compounds in the chromatogram are known.

In Fig. 6 a number of different terpane chromatograms are shown to illustrate differences that may be expected for oils derived from different source rocks. Close examination of these fingerprints reveals both relatively subtle differences and some significant differences. In general the major differences should be used initially to differentiate unrelated samples coming from different sources, and once samples that
have significantly different fingerprints are excluded, further differentiation can be undertaken using these more subtle differences. It should also be noted that over geological time periods terpanes can be impacted by biodegradation. Under certain reservoir conditions, compounds such as the 25-norhopane series (VIII- $R'$=H) generally provide evidence of an episode of biodegradation (Bennett et al. 2006).

An illustration of the power of individual biomarkers to differentiate samples can be shown with the use of 18$\alpha$(H)-oleanane (IX; Samuel et al. 2010). This compound is thought to be uniquely sourced from angiosperms or flowering plants. The presence of oleanane in one oil and not another is a very strong piece of evidence to suggest that the two oils are not related. However, as with all of these compounds, one should not depend upon one parameter alone. This piece of information is one line of evidence and can be used to build the case that the two samples are not related. Another individual terpane that can be used in this manner is a compound called gammacerane (X; ten Haven et al. 1988). This is generally associated with oils coming from a saline or hypersaline depositional environment and a stratified water column, but presence in one sample and absence in another would be strong evidence that the two samples are not related.

### 3.2.2 Steranes

There are multiple families of steranes (XI–XIV) in most crude oils, and these typically range in carbon number from C$_{20}$ to C$_{30}$ with additional minor series of steranes present extending to C$_{35}$. The sterane families commonly used for
correlation purposes in exploration studies include regular steranes (XI), rearranged steranes (XII), monoaromatic steroid hydrocarbons (XIII), triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons (XIV), methylsteranes, and minor series of alklysteranes (Mackenzie et al. 1982; Peters et al. 2005). Many of these family members also provide information on other aspects of exploration such as maturity and depositional environments. There are multiple components within each family as can be seen in the figure below that shows examples of steranes and diasteranes from two crude oils (Fig. 7). These sterane fingerprints clearly show the complexity of these mixtures although with increasing aromaticity, the number of isomers and epimers tends to decrease due to removal of hydrogen atoms (as well as methyl groups) with progress of the aromatization process (Fig. 8).

The most useful sterane source parameter is based on the relative proportions of the $C_{27}/C_{28}/C_{29}$ steranes plotted on a ternary diagram (Fig. 9). The relative proportions of steranes can be determined using either the distribution of the regular steranes (XI) or the monoaromatic steroid hydrocarbon (XIII) fingerprint that is less...
complex making it easier to calculate the relative proportions of these individual steranes (Moldowan et al. 1985). However, the goal here is to establish the relationship between the groups of samples. Those that are related will group very close to each other, while those from a different source will show signs of separation.

A more detailed separation of the steranes can be obtained through the use of the GC-MSMS approach, as discussed above, which will introduce an additional element of separation based on mass spectral characteristics rather than

Fig. 7 The second most commonly monitored biomarkers in a crude oil are the steranes, both regular and rearranged steranes. In this figure the steranes from three unrelated sources are shown to illustrate the differences resulting from different source materials.
chromatography. In most environmental cases, this level of investigation may not be necessary but suffice it to mention that it may provide additional pieces of information when evaluating points of release or looking for an unknown source of release. For example, components which may be present in relatively low concentrations can be very important in establishing relationships between samples. Such compounds may be the C_{30} n-propylsteranes or the C_{26} steranes (Moldowan et al. 1990; Holba et al. 1998). The former which are uniquely related to marine-sourced oils are clearly evident from the regular GC-MS analyses. The C_{26} steranes can only be detected through the use of GC-MSMS as illustrated below (Fig. 10). The important point to indicate here is that minor components such as these, which are relatively unique, may provide important correlation parameters and may differentiate between two samples that were previously thought to be related.

### 3.2.3 Diamondoids

Diamondoids (XV and XVI) are another family of compounds used in exploration studies for many years (Moldowan et al. 2015; Liu et al. 2016b). Diamondoids exist as a homologous series of structural isomers and ranging from adamantanes, diamantanes, and triamantanes and continuing into significantly higher carbon numbers. These compounds can be readily detected by GC-MS and multiple ion detection. The lower members of the adamantanes series are volatile and can easily be lost during sample preparation. If it is necessary to obtain the isotopic
It is necessary to isolate the diamondoids using published methods (Fig. 11; Wei et al. 2007; Moldowan et al. 2015). Unfortunately, only a few papers provide any specific details on the actual isolation of the diamondoids from crude oils (Ling et al. 2011; Nguyen and Philp 2016).

These compounds are extremely resistant to biodegradation that makes them very useful for correlating degraded and non-degraded samples. Most applications are restricted to using the adamantanes and diamantanes since these are more abundant diamondoid components. These compounds are also extremely stable and tend to increase in concentrations with increasing maturity of the source rocks responsible for their generation. Condensates have particularly high concentrations of diamondoids, and these may be the only family of compounds available for correlation purposes due to the loss of the more traditional biomarkers at these higher levels of maturity.

**C₇ Compounds**
The term “C₇ compounds” can often be found in the petroleum geochemistry literature referring to those compounds with seven carbon atoms, including heptane,
toluene, branched hydrocarbons, and cyclic hydrocarbons. The reason these compounds are of interest from an exploration point of view is twofold. First, they are the highest carbon number where all the isomers can be resolved chromatographically; second, from an exploration prospective, they are invaluable maturity indicators as well as have a role in correlation studies (Halpern 1995).

### 3.2.4 Aromatic Hydrocarbons

Aromatic hydrocarbons in crude oils and condensates are present as very complex mixtures of a wide variety of structural types (Radke and Welte 1983; Strachan et al.)

---

**Fig. 10** GC-MSMS is an extremely useful technique for detecting compounds that may not be clearly evident in complex mixtures such as the steranes. An example of this application is shown here where the $C_{26}$ steranes have been extracted from the total sterane chromatogram where they were not clearly evident. The $C_{26}$ steranes are useful for age dating purposes (Peaks A and B are 24-nordiacholestanes and peaks C and D are 27-nordiacholestanes)
The complete distributions of the major classes of aromatic compounds such as the naphthalenes (XVII and XVIII), phenanthrenes (XIX), and dibenzothiophenes (XX) provide useful correlation parameters as well as additional source and maturity information (Fig. 12). Following that initial separation, the various alkylated members of these series can be separated using GC-MS and multiple ion detection using the characteristic ions for the various alkylated series. These chromatograms provide information on the distribution of the individual isomers at each carbon number and vary between oils derived from different source materials. In some cases these differences may be very subtle, but they are significant and reproducible. Many of these differences are indirectly related to differences in source material, and such differences, albeit small, may be sufficient to differentiate between oils that were initially thought to be related on the basis of the more commonly used biomarker parameters. For example, 1,2,7-trimethylnaphthalene (XVIII; Armstroff et al. 2006) has been proposed to be a degradation product of oleanane, a higher plant derivative. If it is present in certain samples but not in others, that will indicate that these oils are not related. Aromatic compounds are susceptible to biodegradation over geologic time, and lower carbon compounds such as benzene and toluene are more prone to weathering and will be removed relatively rapidly.

As noted above this is only a very brief summary of some commonly used biomarkers. Some additional biomarkers are discussed in various sections below.
Fig. 12 Most oils contain significant quantities of aromatic compounds, and distributions of the major classes of aromatic compounds, such as the naphthalenes, phenanthrenes, and dibenzothiophenes, are shown in this figure and compared between two different oils labeled as A and B, respectively (MN=methylnaphthalene; DMN=dimethylnaphthalene; TMN=trimethylnaphthalenes; TeMN=tetramethylnaphthalenes; P=phenanthrene; DMP=dimethylphenanthrene; TMP=trimethylphenanthrene; MDBT=methyldibenzothiophene; DMDBT=dimethyldibenzothiophene)
4  Where Does the Oil Come From? Photosynthesis and How Things Change Over Time

The origin of crude oil or any fossil fuel begins with photosynthesis where the carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is incorporated into biomass constituents of living plants, phytoplankton, algae, and certain photosynthetic bacteria. These are the primary producers which provide carbon or energy sources for the heterotrophic organisms. CO\textsubscript{2} in the atmosphere is comprised primarily of \(^{12}\text{CO}_{2}\) but also includes minor amounts of \(^{13}\text{CO}_{2}\). During the process of photosynthesis, there is fractionation between these two isotopes as they are incorporated into the biomass components at different rates due to a kinetic isotope effect. The nature of the photosynthetic cycle operating in the plant or organism will ultimately determine the bulk isotopic composition of the plant debris and the contribution it will make to the isotopic composition of the crude oil formed from the source material. Since source rocks are derived from mixtures of different source materials, they will have different isotopic compositions determined by the extent of mixing of source materials. Ultimately the oils derived from these different source rocks will have isotopic compositions reflecting that of the rock responsible for generating the oils. However the range of isotopic values is not infinite and will be controlled by the isotopic composition of the assimilated atmospheric CO\textsubscript{2} and the nature of the primary producers contributing to the source material. Other factors such as maturation will play a significant role, but photosynthesis is still the starting point for any variations. A diagram taken from a paper by Andrusevich et al. (1998) shows the general trend in isotopic compositions of crude oils over time and how they have varied primarily due to variation in the CO\textsubscript{2} content of the atmosphere. Over time with increasing diversity of the primary producers utilizing the CO\textsubscript{2} in the atmosphere, the residual CO\textsubscript{2} has become heavier leading to the observed changes in the isotopic compositions of the oils. Ultimately these living organisms will die, and the organic debris will be deposited in a wide variety of depositional environments (Fuex 1977). The organic matter will start to degrade, and a large proportion will be degraded and converted back into CO\textsubscript{2} which will be released into the atmosphere and recycled. The extent of degradation will depend on the nature of the depositional environment with the major controlling factors being oxygen availability and salinity. The organic matter that survives these early stages of biodegradation and is preserved will be buried and at sufficient depths will start to be thermally degraded and converted into products that will ultimately become crude oil and/or natural gas. Tissot and Welte (1984) suggested many years ago that only about 0.01% of the organic carbon actually gets incorporated into the geological cyclic with the rest being recycled. While small in relative terms, this still represents a significant amount of organic carbon in absolute terms and has led to a tremendous accumulation of organic matter in sedimentary basins over geological timescales.

Variations in crude oil composition are basically related to the combination of source materials responsible for the accumulation of organic matter in the sediments that, with time, burial and increasing temperature will become source rocks. Such variations result from differences in climate, marine vs. nonmarine or lacustrine,
evolutionary and extinction events, geological time period, and many other factors. However the relative contribution of the different types of source materials will be one of the primary controls on the composition of crude oils. For example, all other factors being equal, oils dominated by higher plant material will generally be waxy and contain higher proportions of longer-chain \(n\)-alkanes \((nC_{25} - nC_{35})\); oils derived from marine source materials will generally contain higher proportions of sulfur-containing compounds, asphaltenes and steranes. While oils derived from higher plant material may be waxy, the hydrocarbons responsible for the wax content of the oils are in the range \(C_{25} - C_{35}\). The main role of these plant waxes is to preserve the water content of plants, and the \(n\)-alkanes in this carbon number range are very effective for this process. The concept that all waxy oils are derived from higher plant materials originated with the work of Hedberg (1968) who examined many oils derived from higher plant material and which indeed were waxy. However, since that paper many oils from marine sources and lacustrine sources have been analyzed and found to contain hydrocarbons extending to \(C_{120}\) and probably even higher. These compounds are probably derived from higher molecular weight components present in the cell walls of bacteria and algae that degrade after deposition and maturation.

Maturity leads to thermal degradation of the organic material in the source rocks generating hydrocarbons and other compounds, collectively thought of as bitumen, which is expelled from the source rock as a crude oil that will migrate to a trap or reservoir. With increasing maturity, increasing cracking of the organic material in the source rock along with thermal cracking of the hydrocarbons in the bitumen will lead to a shift in the distribution of the hydrocarbons to lower carbon numbers, initially forming a condensate, and at very high levels of maturity, everything will be thermally degraded to methane.

A tertiary control on crude oil composition will be related to biodegradation in the reservoir. Biodegradation of crude oils occurs in a well-defined manner. The \(n\)-alkanes are removed initially starting at the lower carbon numbers and then moving toward the higher carbon-numbered \(n\)-alkanes. This is accompanied by subsequent removal of the more complex structures such as the isoprenoids, steranes, terpanes, and aromatic compounds. However the impact of biodegradation will change the properties of a crude oil in many different ways. The removal of certain compounds will lead to the oils becoming heavier and have lower API gravities. They will also become more viscous, and this will also lower their value since they will not be as desirable to refiners due to their increasing sulfur and heavy metal content as well as being more expensive to refine.

Finally it would be remiss not to mention unconventional crude oils which differ from conventional crude oils, not as much in their composition but due to the fact that they are sourced but not expelled from their source rocks due to the low permeability of the source rocks. The oil is ultimately released and produced through hydrofracking of the source rocks. In this situation if the maturity level continues to increase, the trapped oil will be thermally degraded, and this will lead to the formation of shale gas, an unconventional source of gas, which also requires hydrofracking for production (Jarvie et al. 2007).
5 Productivity Versus Preservation

In the preceding section, variations in source material were mentioned as one factor that can impact the composition of crude oils. Another issue that comes into play in the formation of source rocks is preservation vs. productivity. Productivity is related to the amount of organic matter produced but not necessarily the type of organic matter. The issue whether preservation or productivity was more important was a major source of discussion many years ago when there were two fields of thought on this issue. Demaison and Moore (1980) were major proponents of the idea that preservation of organic matter was the most significant factor driving the formation of organic-rich source rocks, with anoxic environments preferentially preserving more oil-prone organic matter and oxic environments preserving lesser amounts and more recalcitrant forms of organic matter, which would ultimately be more gas prone than oil prone. This in turn is another factor that will contribute to determining whether a source rock will primarily generate oil or gas or a mixture of oil and gas. Anoxic and oxic environments are of course the extremes, and there is a complete spectrum of intermediate environments which in turn exercise varying degrees of preservation and variations in the generated products.

On the contrary an opposing proposal was made several years ago by Pedersen and Calvert (1990) and based on data from a couple of inlets of the West Coast of the USA, similar environments, and source matter input, but one environment was oxic and one anoxic. Data obtained from sediments in cores from the two environments showed that the oxic sediments actually had higher TOC values than those from the anoxic environments, leading them to conclude that productivity was the more important factor over preservation in the formation of the organic-rich rocks. In reality both preservation and productivity are probably equally important. If there is no production, there is nothing to preserve!

In addition to productivity and preservation, the actual type of organic matter is very important in the formation of crude oil. Different types of organic matter have different structures. Organic matter derived from algal, phytoplankton, or bacterial sources has a relatively high content of aliphatic structures, which means they have relatively high H/C ratios and will be primarily oil prone. However organic matter derived from higher plants will be more aromatic in nature and will therefore be more gas prone. Many source rocks are mixtures of various types of organic matter and will produce varying amounts of oil and gas from the source material itself, and this will be discussed in more detail in the next section.

6 What Are the Major Factors Involved in Determining the Composition of Crude Oils?

As mentioned earlier there are a large number of crude oil types ranging from very heavy, asphaltene-rich biodegraded oils to very light condensates, generally asphaltene-free. A knowledge of crude oil type is important since this will determine the nature and relative proportions of the refined products that can be produced from
a specific crude and hence the value of price of that particular crude. The types of crude oils can be defined in many different ways. As mentioned above Tissot and Welte (1978) examined 541 oils based on the relative proportions of various fractions and divided them into five different types.

Crude oils are derived from a wide variety of source materials deposited in a variety of depositional environments. After deposition, the organic material can undergo a series of complex reactions and alterations, and a significant proportion will be totally degraded and recycled back into the atmosphere as CO₂ and H₂O. The organic matter that is preserved will ultimately become part of the fraction referred to as kerogen (Durand 1980). Kerogen is the residual fraction after all the mineral matrix has been removed and all the soluble organic matter has been removed. Over the years our understanding of kerogen and its structure has changed significantly. In the 1960s and 1970s, kerogen was thought to have a well-defined molecular structure. Despite much effort no specific molecular structure for kerogen was ever identified. In retrospect that should not be a surprise since it is now clearly understood and established that kerogen is primarily comprised of macerals or residual particles of organic source material that have survived the early stages of diagenesis and become incorporated into the sedimentary matrix. While some of these macerals may be loosely bound to each other through covalent bonds, there is no well-defined structure, and instead there can be significant variation in the kerogen composition from samples collected very close to each other, simply because deposition and accumulation of organic material are not going to be constant or uniform throughout the depositional environment.

The kerogen concept was developed primarily by Tissot and Welte in the 1970s but was basically an extension of the extensive work of van Krevelen (1961) based on coal characterization. In brief van Krevelen’s diagram for coals and then kerogens was based on the H/C vs. O/C ratios which enabled the kerogens to be divided into four different types (types I, II, III, IV). An example of the classic van Krevelen diagram, showing the four kerogen types introduced by Tissot and Welte is shown in Fig. 13a. The use of the elemental compositions was subsequently replaced by the hydrogen and oxygen indices as determined by the Rock-Eval analyses and is shown in Fig. 13b. However the general idea was that on the basis the characterization the four kerogen types could be divided into oil prone (types I and II), gas prone (type III), or inert and non-generative (type IV). However the problem of characterizing the kerogens in this manner was the tendency to compartmentalize kerogens into these types and hence predict the nature of products that could be generated. However this is somewhat misleading since, for example, a type II kerogen may not be a pure marine kerogen but a mixture of type I and type II kerogens, and this of course would have a direct impact on the nature of the products that will be generated. Another problem with this method of kerogen characterization is that it is impacted by maturation and therefore it only reflects the kerogen type when examining immature samples. Although this method is still used extensively for characterizing kerogens and predicting the nature of products that can be formed, an alternative approach has been developed over the years based on organofacies. In this approach the kerogens are characterized based on their petrographic properties.
which avoid the maturity impact. This approach, although not as widely used as the method described above, was initially introduced by Jones (1987) and is based on mappable units, or organofacies, derived from similar types of organic matter which will produce similar types of hydrocarbon products at appropriate maturity levels.

7 What Is the Impact of Depositional Environment?

The major role of the depositional environment will be preservation of the organic source material. Clearly there is a complete spectrum of depositional environments varying in oxicity and salinity. The characteristics of the depositional environment will control the rate at which the organic material is degraded and also the characteristics of the residual organic material. In more oxic environments, the more susceptible organic components, which are typically the more oil-prone components, will be degraded more rapidly than the more recalcitrant components, which are generally the more gas-prone components. Hence with increasing oxicity, not only do we typically see a decrease in the organic matter content, but this is accompanied
by a decrease in the oil-producing fraction of the source rock and a relative increase in the gas-producing components.

In certain situations specific biomarkers provide a far more detailed interpretation of the depositional environment and the ability or potential to preserve organic matter. The Pr/Ph ratio mentioned above is a good example of a biomarker ratio giving useful information on environmental conditions. At certain times in the geological past, there have been episodes of oceanic anoxic events (OAE), and some of these events have been accompanied by the development of photic-zone euxinia and production of certain carotenoids, which are highly specific for these depositional conditions (see below). Photic-zone euxinia denotes a situation in which the photic zone extends into the sulfidic anoxic part of the water column. This in turn permits anoxygenic photosynthetic organisms that thrive under anoxic conditions and utilize hydrogen sulfide to produce organic matter that will be preserved under anoxic conditions with the ultimate production of organic-rich source rocks with very characteristic signatures. There are several OAE in the geological record, particularly in the Late Devonian when many prolific black shales were deposited and again in the Cretaceous. A classic example would be the Woodford Shale, OK, USA, which is a prolific source rock in the Anadarko Basin. This shale has been extensively explored since the late 1800s and has risen to prominence again during the past decade when the focus shifted to determining its potential as an unconventional source of both oil and gas. Traditionally the Woodford Shale has been divided into three members, namely, the Upper, Middle, and Lower Woodford. However it has been recognized recently that these three members are far from homogeneous and should be divided into a number of organolithofacies which can be integrated into sequence stratigraphic models and permit variations in organic matter content to be related to changes in the depositional history and sea-level changes (Miceli and Philp 2012). However the more important observation in terms of this section is that the occurrence of these episodes of photic-zone euxinia related to OAE can be recognized by the presence of a range of specific biomarkers, namely, C_{40} carotenoids and their arylisoprenoid degradation products. These compounds provide a unique fingerprint for these specific depositional conditions and have also been observed in the Late Cretaceous black shales (French et al. 2015; Connock et al. 2018). There are four or five major C_{40} carotenoids that are derived from different photosynthetic bacteria that grow at different depths within the water column and in turn produce different C_{40} carotenoids; hence the presence of certain C_{40} carotenoids (i.e., isorenieratane (XXI) and paleorenieratane (XXII)) provides information about water column depth during the growth period of these organisms and the initial production of the organic matter as summarized in Fig. 14. These compounds are relatively stable and have been observed in many samples of Woodford oils and source rock extracts. At higher levels of maturity in the late oil condensate window, these compounds will ultimately degrade.

The arylisoprenoids which are proposed to be derived from the carotenoids occur as two major series of isomers, namely, the 2,3,6-trimethylarylisoprenoids (XXIII) and the 3,4,5-trimethylarylisoprenoids (XXIV). These compounds have been
studied quite extensively, and several parameters based on these two series and how they relate to the oxicity and photic-zone anoxia of the depositional environment have been developed (Schwark and Frimmel 2004; Miceli and Philp 2012; Connock et al. 2018). The AIR or arylisoprenoid ratio is one such parameter and is based on the proportions of the short-chain (C_{13}–C_{17}) and intermediate-chain (C_{18}–C_{22}) arylisoprenoids. High AIR (3.0) is associated with episodic PZA, which leads to alteration of the long- and intermediate-chain arylisoprenoids. On the contrary, low AIR (0.5) indicates persistent PZA, which contributes to preservation of the long-chain arylisoprenoids.

Another parameter that has been widely used to characterize depositional environments is the gammacerane index. The presence of gammacerane (X) has long been associated with salinity, and there were many papers published in the early 1970s on the significance of gammacerane in the Green River Shale. Initially it was taken as an indicator of salinity, particularly in lacustrine environments. Increasing salinity results in significantly higher relative concentrations of gammacerane as illustrated in Fig. 15. However following those initial observations, it was also determined that elevated gammacerane concentrations could be associated with stratified water columns and consequently enhanced conditions for preservation of organic matter.

**Fig. 14** Specific C_{40} carotenoids such as isorenieratane, shown here, as well as arylisoprenoids, derived from green sulfur bacteria, provide information on the occurrence of photic-zone euxinia during the deposition of organic-rich sediments.
What Is the Impact of Maturity?

Maturity plays an important role in determining the bulk and molecular characteristics of a crude oil. Initially, maturity plays a primary role in generation of the oil through breakdown of the kerogen, and maturation of organic matter in sedimentary rocks is typically monitored through measuring vitrinite reflectance, a long-established maturity parameter originally developed by coal chemists for monitoring changes in the reflectance of the vitrinite maceral. This scale was subsequently extrapolated to measuring the maturity of source rocks using the same scale. The ranges covering oil and gas generation are: $<0.55\%$ immature source rocks; $0.55–1.15\%$ oil window; $1.15–1.40\%$ condensate-wet gas window; $>1.40\%$ dry gas window. These are just guidelines, and there will be variations, for example, kerogens that have a high sulfur content will start to generate oil at lower levels of maturity than those with a lower sulfur content or no sulfur.

In addition to the importance of maturity in the generation process, once the oil has been generated, maturity can play an additional role in affecting the composition of crude oils. During the early stages of generation, crude oils can contain varying proportions of hydrocarbons clearly extending to $C_{40}$ and, in many cases, beyond but maximizing in the $C_{20}–C_{30}$ range, depending on the nature of the source material as discussed elsewhere. After generation if these oils experience higher levels of maturity, the longer-chain hydrocarbons will undergo thermal cracking to shorter-chain hydrocarbons. As the maturity level continues to increase, the original oil will become lighter and lighter until it will become a condensate and finally be converted to methane. This is what happens in many shale gas accumulations, where many of
the source rocks were originally type II marine kerogens. Oil was generated, but as a result of low permeability, much of the oil was not expelled but trapped in the source rock. In such a situation, the shale is acting as a source and reservoir, but as the maturity increases, the trapped oil is converted into gas.

Maturity is critical in terms of generation – if the rocks remain at low maturity, no, or low quantities of, products will be generated, and generation will cease unless the source rock undergoes further burial and experiences higher levels of maturity. Maturity is a key parameter in basin modeling, and it is essential that reliable and accurate information is available on the burial, uplift, and erosion history of the formation since this provides key information on the time/temperature history and the total amount of thermal energy experienced by a specific source rock. The nature of the kerogen in the source rock is important since that determines the nature of the products being generated and also kerogens with a high sulfur content will start to generate at a lower level of maturity, but ultimately it is the time temperature history that will determine the quantity of hydrocarbons generated.

9 How Does the Molecular Composition of an Oil Change During and After Generation?

As mentioned above, crude oils are formed from organic material originally derived from living plants and organisms deposited, and preserved, in various depositional environments. With burial, or subsidence, and increasing temperature, the organic matter will start to degrade and lead to the generation of hydrocarbons and associated polar compounds. The composition of the products will be determined primarily by the composition of the original source materials which initially gets converted into the very important intermediate, kerogen, prior to thermal degradation and formation of crude oils.

At the molecular level, there is a very wide range of changes that can be reported (Philp and Lewis 1987; Peters et al. 2005; Philp 2014). For example, if we consider the \( n \)-alkanes, which in most cases are the most abundant class of compounds in a crude oil, it is well documented that with increasing maturity the odd/even predominance of \( n \)-alkanes commonly seen in immature source rocks will typically reach a value of approximately 1 by the time the oil window is reached. So in most cases, no odd/even predominance is seen for the \( n \)-alkanes in most oils. A more important change that is seen in the distribution of the \( n \)-alkane distributions is the thermal degradation of the longer-chain compounds with increasing maturity. As a result the distribution of the alkanes will change with increasing maturity with the carbon number at which the \( n \)-alkanes maximize decreasing, ultimately converting oils dominated by higher carbon number compounds to condensates dominated by alkanes in a much lower carbon number range. If the process continues even further, the condensate could be converted into a wet gas and then ultimately to pure methane. Another significant change associated with increasing maturity would be changes in the pristane/\( n \)-C\(_{17}\) and phytane/\( n \)-C\(_{18}\) ratios (Shanmugam 1985). These ratios will decrease with increasing maturity due to the formation of additional
amounts of the $n$-alkanes through the thermal cracking process. The relative amounts of pristane and phytane do not change significantly at lower levels of maturity, but Kissin (1993) reported significant cracking of pristane and phytane can occur at higher levels of maturity. The changes mentioned above are relatively easy to observe using GC. It should be noted that it is possible that pristane and phytane will undergo thermal degradation but in all probability degrade at similar rates such that changes to the Pr/Ph ratio will be relatively small with increasing maturity. In addition, there are numerous changes to the various families of biomarkers that are typically determined using GC-MS or GC-MSMS, some of which will be described below.

A chapter of this nature is not the place to discuss all biomarker maturity parameters, and a detailed discussion of such parameters can be readily found in many published papers as well as both editions of The Biomarker Guide: Volume 2 (Peters and Moldowan 1992; Peters et al. 2005). Instead a few basic examples will be given to illustrate the value of these parameters in assessing the relative maturity of a crude oil. The majority of biomarker maturity parameters can be divided into two categories, either parameters related to changes in the distributions of isomers or parameters related to changes in relative proportions of the lower carbon members to higher carbon members of the same series of compounds.

There are many types of isomers in a crude oil, but the three that are most commonly encountered isomers are structural, stereo-, and optical isomers. For instance, the methylphenanthrene index (MPI), initially proposed by Radke and Welte (1983) for coals and subsequently type III kerogens, is based on changes in the relative proportions of the four methylphenanthrene structural isomers, shown in the figure below (Fig. 16). As a result of differences in the thermal stability of these

![Fig. 16](image)

- MPI-I= 1.5 x \( \frac{(2\text{-MP} + 3\text{-MP})}{(P + 1\text{-MP} + 9\text{-MP})} \)
- \%R_C=0.60 (MPI-1) + 0.40 \text{  (R_0 < 1.35\\%)}
- \%R_C=-0.60 (MPI-1) + 2.30 \text{  (R_0 > 1.35\\%)}

(Two different values possible but comparison with other parameters will indicate which is correct)

Fig. 16 The methylphenanthrene index (MPI) initially proposed by Radke and Welte (1983) for coals and subsequently type III kerogens is based on changes in the relative proportions of phenanthrene and the 4 methylphenanthrene structural isomers shown in the figure for two oils at different levels of maturity ($P$=phenanthrene; $3\text{MP}$=3-methylphenanthrene; $2\text{MP}$=2-methylphenanthrene; $9\text{MP}$=9-methylphenanthrene; $1\text{MP}$=1methylphenanthrene). The MPI is also shown on this figure along with the formula used to convert these values into vitrinite equivalent values ($R_C$)
isomers due to position of the methyl group, this ratio will change with increasing maturity, and initially the ratio was correlated with that of vitrinite reflectance for coal samples (Teichmüller 1958). This correlation has been extended to all kerogen types although there have been problems when applying it to type II and III kerogens. For oils it is a very useful tool to get a general idea of the maturity level at which the oil was generated and also for comparing relative maturities of oils known to be derived from the same source rock.

Two of the main biomarker families, steranes and terpanes, exist as a complex mixture of homologues, stereoisomers, and diastereomers. For example, Fig. 17 shows typical distribution of individual steranes in a crude oil by displaying traces for the C_{26}–C_{29} homologues which have been resolved through the use of MSMS and monitoring of the m/z 358, 372, 386, and 400 to 217 transitions, respectively (Fig. 17). Four components have been identified that show the presence of both the stereoisomers and the diastereomers. Two very commonly used maturity parameters based on these distributions have been used as far back as the late 1970s when molecular geochemistry started to evolve (Seifert and Moldowan 1978). These ratios are shown below:

![Fig. 17](image.png)  
As noted elsewhere, GC-MSMS can be used to separate individual compounds within a complex mixture. The data in this figure show the separation of the individual steranes from within the total sterane distribution.
(i) $\alpha\alpha C_{29}20S/(20S+20R)$
(ii) $\beta\beta C_{29}(20S+20R)/\alpha\alpha C_{29}20S/(20S+20R)+\beta\beta C_{29}(20S+20R)$

(In the above $\alpha\alpha$ and $\beta\beta$ refer to stereochemistry and C14 and C17 in the sterane molecule.)

Both increase with increasing maturity. It should be noted that in general both increase with increasing maturity but may not increase at the same rate in different basins since there are a number of factors that are also involved in these changes such as the presence or absence of clay minerals and heating or burial rates. It should also be noted that there has been much discussion as to whether these ratios increase as a result of conversion of one isomer into the other or alternatively is it a case of one isomer being transformed to another compound faster than the other compounds (Requejo 1992). This question can only be answered if an internal standard is used for quantification, but regardless of the mechanism responsible for the change, the end result is the same, the ratios increase. In the case of the hopanes, another commonly used maturity parameter is the $22S/22R + 22S$ ratio for the extended hopanes which increases with increasing maturity until it reaches an equilibrium ratio of approximately 0.64, a value commonly observed in most oils. But in immature source rocks, this ratio will be much lower since the $22R$ diastereomer is the dominant component.

The final example shows the changes that result when compounds such as the triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons are subject to increasing maturity. The triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons occur over a range of carbon numbers from $C_{20}$ to $C_{28}$ (Fig. 8). It is generally assumed that the lower carbon-numbered compounds in the $C_{20}–C_{21}$ range are formed from the cleavage of the side chain of the higher carbon-numbered compounds in the $C_{26}–C_{28}$ range with increasing maturity. Again, as with the changes in the stereoisomers, caution has to be exercised in the interpretation as it is possible either that the $C_{20}–C_{21}$ compounds are formed directly from the $C_{26}–C_{28}$ compounds by cleavage of the side chains or that all these compounds were initially present but with a faster degradation of the higher carbon-numbered compounds during maturation as initially proposed by Beach et al. (1989). This issue can only be resolved through the presence of an internal standard. Regardless of the mechanism, the end result is the same, i.e., the ratio of the $C_{20}–C_{21}$ triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons to the total triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons increases with increasing maturity.

These are just a few examples of maturity parameters that are used extensively for getting information about the relative maturity of both oils and source rock extracts. It was mentioned above that increasing maturity also leads to certain changes in the $n$-alkane distributions, but in addition there are other families of compounds that are also impacted by maturity. For example, diamondoids are a family of compounds that cannot be defined as biomarkers in the true sense of the word but are thought to form by cyclization of steranes and terpanes. Diamondoids are present in low concentrations in conventional crude oils, but their relative concentration increases significantly with increasing maturity, primarily due to the thermal degradation of other commonly occurring compounds that are thermally less stable (Dahl et al. 1999). One of the earliest papers published on the use of these
compounds as maturity parameters was that of Chen et al. (1996) who discussed the use of two parameters based on these compounds for use as high-maturity indices in a number of Chinese basins. One of the main attractions of these parameters as proposed by Chen et al. (1996) was the claim they operate over a wide range of maturities from immature (<0.6% R<sub>o</sub>) to overmature ranges (approx. 2.0% R<sub>o</sub>). A more recent paper by Li et al. (2000) suggested there was no linear correlation between these adamantane maturity parameters at the higher levels of maturity and therefore they may have a limited range just like many of the biomarker parameters. Condensates in particular contain very high relative concentrations of these compounds, and it has been shown that they are extremely useful for correlating condensates with other condensates or even potential source rocks. A number of examples have been published in the literature where the isotopic compositions of individual diamondoids have been used for correlation purposes and to determine the extent of oil cracking with increasing levels of maturity. This is not a routine tool due to difficulties in isolating the diamondoid concentrates and the very limited number of papers that actually provide the experimental method for isolating these compounds (Ling et al. 2011; Nguyen and Philp 2016).

10 Expulsion and Migration

Expulsion and migration both have the potential to change the composition of crude oils. It is a very simple concept to grasp since expulsion refers to the movement of the bitumen that is initially generated from the kerogen in the source rock that has to be expelled into the carrier beds that will transport the oil to the reservoir. However several barriers have to be overcome in order for this to occur. First bitumen has to displace any interstitial water that may be in pore spaces of the source rock and replace and saturate the pore spaces with bitumen before any expulsion may occur. Expulsion also requires sufficient pressure to push molecules through pore throats of the reservoir rock out into the carrier beds. Not surprisingly smaller molecules will be preferentially expelled. A series of classic experiments many years ago by Leythaeguer and co-workers (1984) clearly demonstrated this type of fractionation during expulsion in cores from Greenland where a comparison between the alkane distributions on extracts from a source rock and overlying sands clearly showed the preferential expulsion of the lower carbon-numbered n-alkanes. Prior to that observation, Hunt (1979) had noted that the composition of most source rock extracts and related crude oils differs in composition and more specifically the expelled oils typically contain lower proportions of the polar fraction which has a greater tendency to interact with the mineral matrix and be held back during expulsion.

Expulsion is often referred to as primary migration with secondary migration being the longer-distance phenomenon of movement of the oil into the reservoir, which may occur over very short distances or distances of hundreds of miles. In this process which is driven to a large degree by buoyance and pressure differences, many of the issues experienced during primary migration will be experienced on a larger scale. Pore throat pressures have to be overcome, water has to be displaced,
and additional interactions between the polar compounds and minerals may occur. With secondary migration additional changes to the distribution of individual compound classes have also been proposed to occur. For example, tricyclic compounds have been proposed to migrate more readily than hopanes, and thus care must be taken not to confuse such a change with maturity variations which could also have the same effect. It has also been proposed that certain sterane isomers may migrate faster than others and that formed the basis of a very early migration distance parameter proposed by Seifert and Moldovan (1978). Another migration distance parameter proposed was based on changes in relative proportions of two dibenzocarbazole isomers with increasing migration distance (Larter et al. 1996). This parameter held a great promise for many years but ultimately came under pressure when it was shown that there were other factors that could change the relative proportions of these two compounds in addition to migration.

11 Biodegradation and Preservation

Biodegradation of crude oils in a reservoir is a comprehensive topic that deserves an extensive chapter devoted to that topic alone, but only highlights are provided here. Biodegradation can be evaluated on a number of different levels ranging from the bulk properties of a crude oil to the changes in distribution of individual compounds. From the perspective of the bulk parameters, it is clear that with increasing biodegradation the API gravity will decrease; viscosity will increase; asphaltene content will increase; metal content will increase; sulfur content will increase; \( n \)-alkanes will be removed; and the most obvious signs of biodegradation are often the absence of \( n \)-alkanes and the appearance of an unresolved complex mixture as shown in the figure below (Fig. 18).

Heavily biodegraded oils are less valuable since the amount of gasoline that can be produced from a heavily biodegraded oil is much lower than from a non-degraded oil. It has been known for many years that biodegradation of crude oils occurs in reservoirs, and of course prior to that, much exploration was undertaken based on the presence of oil seeps formed when oils that have migrated to the surface are extensively biodegraded (Winters and Williams 1969). Early papers on biodegradation commonly assumed that degradation was occurring under aerobic conditions leading to a well-established order in which different compound classes were removed starting with the \( n \)-alkanes. In general, the \( n \)-alkanes are removed starting at the lower carbon numbers and then progressively moving to the higher carbon-numbered alkanes. Most chromatograms reported in the literature on showing hydrocarbons extending to around \( C_{40} \) and indicate complete removal of all \( n \)-alkanes below that carbon number in a heavily degraded oil. However, if high-temperature GC is used to analyze heavily biodegraded samples, a different picture emerges. As can be seen in Fig. 19, the low molecular weight hydrocarbons are removed as would be expected, but above \( C_{40} \) the hydrocarbons that are present are basically unaffected by increasing levels of biodegradation (Fig. 19).
This observation is typically overlooked since most laboratories do not use high-temperature GC to analyze their oil samples.

For many years it was generally assumed that crude oil degradation in reservoirs occurred under oxic conditions. More recently it has been shown that in many reservoirs worldwide the oil in these reservoirs is actually undergoing degradation under anoxic conditions (Head et al. 2003; Holba et al. 2004; Jones et al. 2008; Chap. 22, “Secondary Microbial Gas”). Larter et al. (2003 and 2006) clearly demonstrated that biodegradation occurs at the oil/water interface, and as components are degraded at that position, fresh levels of non-degraded components diffuse through the reservoir to replace those compounds being removed. Extensive studies of reservoirs in China clearly showed changes in the composition of oils in the reservoirs with increasing depth and preferential degradation of the more readily degradable compounds. It has been well established that hydrocarbons are removed during biodegradation in a systematic manner and there are several scales in the literature documenting the relative rates of removal of these compounds. Initially these scales were established assuming they were being removed under oxic conditions, but it appears that similar rates of removal occur under anoxic conditions (Head et al. 2003; Jones et al. 2008). The most widely used of these would be the one
Although it is well documented that lower carbon numbered $n$-alkanes are removed relatively rapidly by biodegradation, the fate of $n$-alkanes above C$_{40}$ is typically overlooked. The chromatograms shown here from a laboratory study show that these alkanes are relatively resistant to biodegradation. (Reproduced with permission from Heath et al. 1997)
of Peters and Moldowan (1992) which is very useful for comparing relative extents of degradation of different oils in different parts of a field. A version of this table is shown in Fig. 20, but it should be mentioned, there is criticism of this table that it is not specific enough in terms of distinguishing different levels of biodegradation. This becomes evident when looking at a large number of samples coming from similar depths within a reservoir that may have a range of API and viscosity values and be degraded to different levels, but ultimately all have the same of very similar values on the PM scale. There are a number of other biodegradation scales that have been published including one by Wenger and Isaksen (2002) which incorporates more aromatic components along with changes to gaseous components; however this scale does not seem as widely used as the PM scale. In recent years Larter and others (2012) have introduced a new scale called the Manco scale which correlates the level of biodegradation and viscosity. This again is a very important development since this scale can also be used to predict the level of biodegradation and hence viscosity with the Manco parameters that are based on changes to various aromatic components.

**Fig. 20** A number of scales have been published in the literature illustrating the relative rate of removal of different compound classes during biodegradation. The scale shown here is probably the most widely cited such scheme and is commonly referred to as the Peters and Moldowan scale. (Reproduced with permission from Peters and Moldowan 1992)
As mentioned above for many years, it was always assumed that biodegradation in reservoirs occurred under aerobic conditions. However there is now significant evidence to show that in many of the major oil accumulations worldwide biodegradation is occurring under anaerobic conditions. Evidence for anaerobic degradation includes the presence of succinates in crude oils, indicators of early stages of anoxic biodegradation; the presence of gases from shallow petroleum accumulations and natural seeps led to the recognition that some gases previously thought to have primary microbial origin actually formed from biodegraded petroleum during secondary methanogenesis (Etiope et al. 2009; Milkov 2010); and the presence of isotopically enriched associated CO₂ provides strong evidence for secondary microbial gas formed under anoxic conditions (Chap. 22, “Secondary Microbial Gas”).

Jones et al. (2008) used a combination of laboratory microcosm experiments and isotope data from well head samples to demonstrate the degradation of crude oils under anaerobic conditions as well as noting that in general relative rates of removal of compound classes were very similar under both oxic and anoxic conditions. Holba and others (2004) showed that in oils from the N. Slope of Alaska that were undergoing anaerobic degradation, the \( n \)-alkanes were not removed, but the most significant change was the initial removal of the alkyltoluenes. A similar observation has been made in other basins since that time (Liu et al. 2016a).

An interesting set of observations have been made related to the presence of the 25-norhopanes and biodegradation. It has been assumed for many years that the presence of 25-norhopanes indicates biodegradation of the crude oil. These compounds are also excellent indicators of mixing occurring between degraded and non-degraded oils such that the \( n \)-alkanes are restored through the contribution of non-degraded oils with the presence of the 25-norhopanes indicating biodegradation. More recently it has been proposed that the presence of the 25-norhopanes is probably related to anaerobic degradation within the reservoir. Anaerobic degradation has been used to explain degradation of crude oils in a reservoir where conditions were not possibly aerobic due to the depth of the reservoir and the inability to replenish the oxygen in the reservoir or the nutrients necessary for the aerobic bacteria. It has also been clearly established that biodegradation, aerobic or anaerobic, will cease at temperatures exceeding 80 °C due to the fact that the bacteria can no longer exist above these temperatures. This in turn led to the concept of paleopasteurization which basically suggests that if a reservoir is buried and temperatures exceed the 80 °C limit and then the reservoir is uplifted or overburden eroded such that temperature declines, then no more degradation will occur due to the sterilization of the reservoir (Wilhelms et al. 2001). This has been reported in a number of reservoirs but was first reported in N. Sea reservoirs.

12 Summary

Crude oils are very complex mixtures of a wide variety of hydrocarbons, heteroatomic compounds, and metals. The distribution of these compounds provides us with a tremendous amount of information related to the origin and history of the oils and also the types of products that can be obtained upon refining the oils.
The composition of the oils also determines the value of the oil, with heavy asphaltene-rich oils being of less value than lighter hydrocarbon-rich oils, primarily because of the amounts of gasoline that can be produced from the lighter oils. Studies of the complex biomarker content of the oils provide information on source, depositional environments, maturity, and age of the source rocks responsible for the generation of the oils, information that is extremely valuable for the exploration geologist. With the advent of unconventional resources, again the composition of the oils provides much information related to whether or not the oil was actually generated in situ which has significant ramifications for production. In brief the composition of a crude oil provides a wealth of information on its origin and use, and there is still much to be learned from this information.

There have been tremendous advances in our ability to characterize crude oils due to advances in available analytical techniques that have evolved since the 1960s/1970s. In reality much of this characterization has focused on the saturate and aromatic hydrocarbons. Hydrocarbons in these fractions have proved to be very powerful when applied to exploration and production problems. However, relatively little work has been done on characterizing either the more polar heteroatomic compounds or the high molecular weight compounds. The past few years have seen a number of novel analytical techniques, such as electrospray ionization Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry, that have been developed to characterize these fractions and identify individual compounds. In addition, $^{31}\text{P}$-NMR has been used to analyze the different hydroxyl groups present in crude oils and asphaltene precipitates, along with Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy. 2D gas chromatography will continue to be used in these characterization studies further increasing the number of individual compounds being identified. Liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry will also continue to be applied to characterizing polar compounds which will undoubtedly be incorporated into interpretation of the origin and history of crude oils.

References


Hedberg HD (1968) Significance of high-wax oils with respect to genesis of petroleum. Am Assoc Pet Geol Bull 52:736–750
Hunt JM (1979) Petroleum geochemistry and geology. Freeman, San Francisco


Petroleomics

Clifford C. Walters and Meytal B. Higgins

Contents

1 What Is Petroleomics? ................................................................. 312
2 Determining the Petroleome ...................................................... 314
   2.1 Gas Chromatography ...................................................... 314
   2.2 Liquid Chromatography .................................................. 316
   2.3 Ultrahigh-Resolution Mass Spectrometry ........................... 320
   2.4 Modeling the Petroleome .................................................. 324
3 Applications of Petroleomics .................................................... 326
4 Limitations and Future Research ............................................... 327
References .................................................................................. 328

Abstract

Petroleum, one of the most complex organic mixtures in nature, is derived from biochemicals deposited in sediments that are then buried and thermally altered. Petroleomics aims at a complete molecular description of petroleum, the petroleome, from which all physical properties—such as density, viscosity, phase behavior, and interfacial activity—and chemical reactivity—such as reservoir alteration and refinery upgrading processes—could be modeled. Although petroleomics has its roots in decades of petroleum chemical characterization, its modern conception is less than 20 years old. It is only through recent analytical advances, such as ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry, that an approximation of the petroleome is possible. The ability to use the petroleome to predict physical properties and chemical reactivity is just emerging.
What Is Petroleomics?

The inaugural symposium on Petroleomics held at the 2003 PittCon ushered in a new science, whose name follows a convention in vogue within the biological community, wherein the suffix “-omics” is used to refer to a totality or comprehensiveness of study. Even the organizer, Alan Marshall of the National High Magnetic Field Laboratory (NHMFL) acknowledged that “people sort of chuckle when they see the term” (Petkewich 2003). The biological “-omic” sciences originated with genomics, which is derived from the word “genome,” and have now expanded to include transcriptomics, proteomics, lipidomics, metabolomics, fluxomics, and others. Together they comprehensively describe the evolutionary relationships, genetic potential, cellular regulation, biochemical makeup, and chemical reactions of biological systems. Similarly, petroleomics aims at a complete molecular description of petroleum, the petroleome, from which all physical properties—such as density, viscosity, phase behavior, and interfacial activity—and chemical reactivity—such as reservoir alteration and refinery upgrading processes—could be modeled.

Petroleum, one of the most complex organic mixtures in nature, originates from biomass that has been deposited in sediments (Peters et al. 2005; Walters 2016). This biomass is altered by microbial and chemical processes to form kerogen or coal, solid organic matter that is highly cross-linked with no defined chemical structure, as well as a small amount of unbound species. If a sedimentary rock contains sufficient organic matter (total organic concentration typically >0.5%) that is not oxidized (H/C typically >1), it will generate upon further burial and heating liquid and gaseous hydrocarbons and other organic compounds containing heteroatoms (mostly nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur). The composition of the generated species varies and is determined by the nature of the biotic input, the conditions of deposition and sedimentary preservation, and the degree of thermal exposure. The generated compounds, in turn, are selectively and partially expelled from the source rock, migrate through permeable strata, and accumulate in subsurface structures of porous rocks. Various physical (phase separation), chemical (thermal cracking, asphaltene precipitation, thermochemical sulfate reduction), and microbial (biodegradation) processes can further alter the chemical composition of oil in reservoir rocks. Not all of the kerogen is converted and not all of the generated compounds are expelled from the source rocks, leaving behind “unconventional” resources. A consequence of this origin is that oils share a general set of major and minor components in varying proportions and a near infinite variety of trace species.

When petroleum was first recognized as organic in nature is lost to antiquity. The earliest known use of the word petroleum, which is derived from Latin petra + oleum or rock + oil, is in the works of Constantinus Africanus (c. 1020–1087) (McDonald 2011). The first molecular study of petroleum was conducted by De la Rue and Miller (1856), who identified several aromatic hydrocarbons by forming and crystallizing barium salts of sulfonic acids. Several other hydrocarbons were identified in the second half of the nineteenth century based on distillation and wet chemical methods (Rossini and Mair 1951). In 1927, the American Petroleum Institute launched Project 6 to investigate the composition of petroleum. This
collaborative program, which ran until 1959, was able to isolate and identify 169 individual hydrocarbons using laborious procedures involving distillation, selective solvent extraction, selective absorption, and finally crystallization (Rossini and Mair 1959; Rabkin and Lafitte-Houssat 1979). Alfred Treibs (1936) used spectroscopy to establish a link between chlorophyll in living organisms and porphyrins in petroleum and provided the first molecular evidence for petroleum being derived from biomass.

Further identification of the components of petroleum followed advances in analytical methods. Gas chromatography (GC) offered the first of the modern advances in molecular characterization. Pioneering efforts by Eglinton et al. (1959) and Bray and Evans (1961) allowed for the identification of the major hydrocarbons, such as n-alkanes and isoprenoids, and recognition that these compounds occur as homologous series with distributions controlled by biotic input and thermal maturity. Technological improvements in hydrocarbon separation through the use of capillary columns and more thermally stable stationary phases and identification by mass spectrometry ushered in an explosion of hydrocarbon characterization (Hsu and Drinkwater 2001). Today, all major and minor hydrocarbons and many trace compounds that are amenable to gas chromatography are relatively easily characterized (Peters et al. 2005).

Gas chromatography continues to be a primary technique in petroleum characterization, but components must be in the gas phase for the analysis to occur. Large hydrocarbons and many polar heteroatomic compounds will thermally degrade before they volatilize and the vast majority of the components in petroleum that are not saturated or aromatic hydrocarbons remained uncharacterized until recently. This included most of the “heavy” fraction, the high molecular weight residue that cannot be distilled at atmospheric pressure. Pioneering work by Boduszynski (1988) characterized the heavy components by first separating crude oil into chemically related fractions using high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and then by field ionization mass spectroscopy (FIMS). These analyses suggested that much of the heavy material contains continuations of homologous series of lower molecular weight compounds. From this, a remarkable framework emerged for predicting chemical and physical properties and the distribution of molecular weights for the heteroatomic species (Altgelt and Boduszynski 1993).

The emergence of ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry opened a new window to this chemical “underworld” of petroleum (Marshall and Rodgers 2008). Initial studies conducted on a custom built Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometer (FT-ICR-MS) at NHMFL at Florida State University revealed that the mass resolution was sufficient to identify the molecular formulas for several thousand individual species (Qian et al. 2001a, b; Hughey et al. 2002). For the next several years, a NHMFL team focused on FT-ICR-MS applications to petroleum, leading to a more complete description of the petroleome and developing the science of petroleomics (e.g., Hsu et al. 2011). With the availability of commercial ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometers in the mid-2000s, petroleomics started to be practiced worldwide. The science is in its infancy and only some of the needed chemical structural-function relationships have been established, either empirically or from fundamental principles. Nevertheless, there are clear practical applications with
economic impact to both upstream and downstream operations. Increasingly finer molecular characterization offers new methods for decreasing exploration risk, improving flow assurance, maximizing refinery efficiency and profitability, and improving assessment of environmental impact.

2 Determining the Petroleome

Petroleomics requires knowledge of the petroleome—a complete compositional analysis of petroleum in terms of the absolute abundance and molecular description of each individual component. Presently, only ~1000 compounds can be assigned with a complete identification, and most of these are hydrocarbons with less than 35 carbon atoms. This is far short of the ~100,000 components that have partial characterization. The actual number of compounds present in petroleum is not known and, in theory, could be many, many orders of magnitude greater. The ultimate goal of petroleomics may be impractical and never achieved. However, oil is not a random assemblage of all possible organic compounds but is derived from living matter that has been geologically altered. This results in a distribution of common hydrocarbon components that can constitute a large percentage of most crudes. About 70% of the total mass of a typical crude oil, unaltered by reservoir processes, can be characterized by GC-based methods, and ~25% of the remaining components can be partially described by more advanced techniques. The completeness of a petroleum’s characterization is roughly inversely proportional to its density. For light condensates with low density, GC-based methods can provide a complete molecular description of the components that make up >99% of the total weight. For a severely biodegraded, high density tar, few if any compounds can be identified by GC-based methods. More advanced techniques such as liquid chromatography and ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry can now provide molecular information for a majority of these components allowing for the petroleome to be defined sufficiently for petroleomic applications.

2.1 Gas Chromatography

Gas chromatography provides routine analysis of whole crude oil and oil fractions that are obtained by distillation or chemical separation (Grob and Barry 2004). Nearly all C₉ and smaller hydrocarbon isomers can be baseline resolved using a single, long capillary column. GC remains the analysis choice for low-molecular-weight hydrocarbons. The complexity of a hydrocarbon mixture increases with carbon number. Above C₁₀, the major (e.g., the n-alkanes and isoprenoids) and minor (e.g., monomethylalkanes, alkylaromatics) components co-elute with an increasingly complex, unresolved mixture. If the co-eluting hydrocarbons have different molecular weights, they can be resolved using a mass spectrometer. All major, most minor, and many trace hydrocarbons <C₃₅, many of which are biomarkers, can be characterized by GC-MS and GC-MS/MS (Peters et al. 2005).
Absolute quantification by MS, however, is difficult as the detector response is compound-dependent.

Two factors limit GC for petroleomic characterization: the compounds must be GC-amenable, and incomplete separation prevents easy detection and quantification. As GC separation occurs in the gas phase, the analyte must be volatilized. Typical equipment restricts the analysis to <C_{40} hydrocarbons because of limitations in the thermal stability of column materials and temperature limitations of the injector, oven, transfer lines, and detector. Specialized high-temperature GC equipment can extend the analytical range for hydrocarbons to over 100 carbons, though with decreasing chromatographic resolution (Sutton and Rowland 2012). While hydrocarbons and some heteroatomic species are sufficiently thermally stable for conventional (e.g., polyaromatic thiophenes) or high-temperature-GC (e.g., porphyrins), most of the polar NSO-compounds (e.g., sulfides, naphthenic acids) will degrade before they volatilize. Derivatization of the polar functional group, such as conversion of carboxylic acids to alkyl esters (e.g., Meredith et al. 2000), is an option for only some of the polar compounds.

Chromatographic resolution can be improved using multidimensional heart-cutting (Marriott et al. 2012; Seeley and Seeley 2013). In this technique, a segment of the effluent from the first column is routed to second column with a different stationary phase. Ideally, the combined resolving power exceeds that of the individual columns and co-eluting compounds are separated. Two multidimensional heart-cutting methods are in common use. In the first, high-resolution separation is conducted on the first column, and one or more co-eluting peaks or intended intervals are routed to a second column with a different stationary phase that provides additional resolution. The second method involves chemical traps or molecular sieves, which first separate an oil into chemical groups (e.g., n-alkanes, iso-alkanes, cycloalkanes, and aromatics) that are subsequently separated into individual components by high-resolution GC. Industry standard methods (e.g., ASTM D6839; EN 14517; EN ISO 22854) that combine on-line fractionation and multiple heart-cutting techniques can provide a near complete quantitative measurement of molecular composition of <C_{16} refined products (gasoline and kerosene), including oxygenates, olefins, and other compounds not found in geologic samples, and relatively complete composition of diesel fuels (<C_{25}).

In recent years, comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography, also known as GC × GC or 2D-GC, has proven very effective for petroleomic-type analysis of crude oils and refined products (Bertoncini et al. 2013; Eiserbeck et al. 2015; Wang 2017). In this technique, small increments of effluent from a first column are repeatedly collected and routed to a short second column. Hence, GC × GC can be viewed as a form of multidimensional heart-cutting GC. Either thermal trapping/release or mechanical valves are used to modulate the effluent on very short intervals, typically <10 s, in order to preserve the separation of the first column. Both FID and fast-acquisition MS are used commonly for petroleum GC × GC analyses; the former offers the advantage of easy quantification, whereas the latter is suited for identification and provides an additional data dimension of separation. Chemoluminescence detectors provide selective detection of compounds
containing sulfur (Wang et al. 2003; Ruiz-Guerrero et al. 2006; Dijkmans et al. 2014) or nitrogen (Dutriez et al. 2011; Dijkmans et al. 2015).

Specialized software is required for data processing and visualization of GC × GC results. While each modulation interval can be used as its own chromatogram, individual components are likely to cut across multiple time slices and quantification requires summation of peak areas. A common practice used to visualize the analysis is to stack the individual chromatograms by plotting the elution time from the first column on the x-axis and the elution time from the second column on the y-axis and representing signal intensity by color. Individual components are then visualized as extrapolated color-coded areas or volumes spanning multiple modulations.

Comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography can provide petroleomic data for the majority of C35 hydrocarbons and apolar NSO-compounds present in crude oils and refined fuels (Nizio et al. 2012; Bertoncini et al. 2013; Eiserbeck et al. 2015; Nelson et al. 2016). Typically, the stationary phase of the first column is apolar (e.g., 100% methylsilicone), which separates components primarily through interaction with dispersal forces, and with a temperature ramp, the hydrocarbon elution order is controlled mostly by boiling point. The phase of the second column is more polar (e.g., 50%-phenyl), which promotes separation through π-π bond interaction. In this system, a modulated time slice containing hydrocarbons unresolved by the first column will be separated by their polarity in the second. Isoprenoidal hydrocarbons elute first, followed by n-alkanes, cycloalkanes, and then aromatic hydrocarbons by increasing ring number. This results in discrete bands of homologous series that possess similar core structures with varying degrees of alkylation (Fig. 1).

Many biomarker compounds possess stereogenic carbon centers resulting in multiple diastereomers or have similar structures with identical formulae; hence, such compounds cannot be differentiated by their mass alone and are indistinguishable if they co-elute. Targeted GC × GC methods can provide resolution of some isomers that are difficult to separate by other chromatographic means. For example, Eiserbeck et al. (2011) were able to separate 18α(H)-, 18β(H)-oleanane, and lupine, and Araújo and Azevedo (2016) were able to separate and identify uncommon steranes that are produced by dinoflagellates. Mogollón et al. (2016) demonstrated that geochemical parameters determined by GC-MS, GC × GC-MS and GC × GC-MS/MS varied considerably in a suite of lacustrine oils. This was attributed to peak co-elutions that only were resolved by GC × GC-MS/MS. Such separations demonstrate the power of comprehensive two-dimensional gas chromatography but also show the underlying complexity of petroleum composition.

2.2 Liquid Chromatography

Liquid chromatography (LC) has long been used to separate oils and rock extracts into chemically related groups. The most basic preparation first precipitates asphaltenes by the addition of a large volume of nonpolar organic solvent (usually n-C5, n-C6, or n-C7) and then separates the remaining fraction (maltenes) into three fractions. This is known as a SARA group-type analysis (Saturate hydrocarbons,
Fig. 1 Petroleomic analysis of an extract from hydrothermally altered sediment (30–33 cm) from Guaymas Basin: (a) GC × GC-FID and (b) +APPI-FT-ICR-MS. GC × GC can provide separation of isomers with the same elemental composition, but is limited to volatile compounds. +APPI ionizes compounds with double bonds and is insensitive to saturated compounds, but when combined with FT-ICR-MS, can characterize the full range of highly condensed aromatic species present. Experimental procedures and instrumental conditions are listed in Walters et al. (2015).
Aromatic hydrocarbons, Resins, and Asphaltenes). Resin is a historic term for the polar fraction containing heteroatomic (NSO) species. This separation can be done using gravimetric adsorption chromatography (ASTM D412409), a manual technique using silica gel open columns and a series of organic solvents with increasing polarity. The relative SARA proportions are determined by weighing the recovered fractions that then can be analyzed separately. Instrumented preparative LC methods provide greater reliability and throughput with the cut times established by chemical standards and monitored by refractive index and UV detectors (e.g., Grizzle and Sablotny 1986). HPLC with column switching offers finer separation of the chemical groups, such as separating sulfides from the other polars and separating aromatic hydrocarbons by ring number (Robbins 1998). Asphaltenes must be removed before LC separation as these compounds absorb tightly to the stationary phase and are difficult to recover. Schabron et al. (2010) developed the “asphaltenic determinator,” an automatic method using HPLC that precipitates asphaltenes onto ground polytetrafluoroethylene from which they can be recovered with increasingly polar solvents into individual fractions. This system can be interfaced with a conventional HPLC separation to provide a fully automated SARA analysis (Boysen and Schabron 2013). Bissada et al. (2016) developed an alternative HPLC procedure for a completely automated SARA.

Analytical-scale LC determination of SARA can be done using universal detectors such as flame ionization (Pearson and Gharfeh 1986), dielectric constant (Hayes and Anderson 1988), or evaporative light scattering (Boysen and Schabron 2013; Bissada et al. 2016). Thin-layer chromatography (Iatroscan TLC-FID) offers an alternative to analytical LC. Separation of the four SARA fractions is made on rods composed of a stationary phase using a sequence of increasingly polar solvents and the developed fractions are detected by FID. The advantages of TLC-FID are that only a small quantity of sample is needed, multiple samples can be developed simultaneously, and the FID analysis is rapid. The disadvantages are that the detector response must be calibrated and variations in oil composition limit accuracy.

HPLC-MS is widely used to analyze polar lipids and other biochemical derivatives in low maturity sediments (e.g., Hopmans et al. 2000; Talbot et al. 2007; Pitcher et al. 2009; Zhu et al. 2013; Becker et al. 2013; Bataglion et al. 2015; Liu et al. 2017) (Fig. 2). However, the molecular complexity of petroleum greatly exceeds the resolution capacity of HPLC and even the improved resolution of UPLC (Ultrahigh performance LC) to separate individual petroleum components. Studies are restricted mostly to the polar compounds in relatively simple refined products such as jet fuels (Adams et al. 2013) and have targeted specific compounds, such as hydrocarbons (Gao et al. 2012), nitrogen-containing polycyclic aromatic (Lung and Liu 2015; da Cunha et al. 2016), or sulfur-aromatic compounds (da Silveira et al. 2016).

Porphyrins and naphthenic acids are two classes of polar petroleum compounds that have undergone petroleomic-type analysis using LC separations. Porphyrins were the first polar petroleum compounds to be characterized by HPLC-MS (Eglinton et al. 1985; Sundararaman 1985). These compounds yield diagnostic UV spectra that allow for easy detection and the development of enrichment procedures
Fig. 2 HPLC-MS petroleomic analysis of extracts from artificially matured Salt Pond, MA sediments with molecular features, plotted by mass versus retention time. Many of the detected compounds are lipids that are initially seen in their biological state that have undergone a variety of diagenetic alterations into geochemical forms. (From Liu et al. 2017)
(e.g., Johnson and Freeman 1990; Magi et al. 2001). Once isolated, porphyrin fractions can be further separated and characterized by LC-MS (e.g., Rosell-Melé et al. 1996; Mawson et al. 2004; Espinosa et al. 2014; Woltering et al. 2016) or for their stable isotopic composition (e.g., Kashiyama et al. 2007; Higgins et al. 2009; Junium et al. 2015). Naphthenic acids are largely formed during the biodegradation of crude oil, and their impact on corrosion and fouling of facilities (Brocart et al. 2007; Simon et al. 2008; Smith and Rowland 2008) and on the environment around oil sand processing (Han et al. 2009; Wang et al. 2013; Huang et al. 2015) has spurred development of more advanced characterization methods using LC-MS.

Supercritical fluid chromatography (SFC) is a variant of normal phase LC where supercritical CO₂, often doped with polar solvents, is used as the mobile phase. Early applications of SFC to fossil fuels ranged from group-type separation and simulation distillation (Levy 1994; Thiebaut and Robert 1999) to molecular characterization of porphyrins (Khorrassani and Taylor 1989); however, the instrumentation was difficult to maintain and operate. Recent technology advances have made SFC practical (Taylor 2010), and the technique now is routinely used in natural products and pharmaceutical research and has expanding applications in petroleum analysis (Poole 2017).

2.3 **Ultrahigh-Resolution Mass Spectrometry**

Advances in ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry ushered in the concept of petroleomics with its apparent ability to completely characterize the composition of petroleum in terms of elemental compositions. With ¹²C set exactly at 12 Daltons (Da), every other isotope of every element has a different mass defect (the difference between its exact mass and the nearest integer mass). No two mass defects are exactly alike or are integer multiples of each other. Consequently, a molecule’s elemental composition may be determined directly from its exact mass. However, several combinations of the most abundant stable isotopes of CHNSO can have similar mass defects (e.g., ¹²CH₄ vs. O, Δm = 36.4 mDa; ¹²CH₂ vs. N, Δm = 12.6 mDa; and ¹²C₃ vs. ³²SH₄, Δm = 3.4 Da). Consideration of rare isotope combinations (e.g., ¹H₃²S¹³C vs. ¹²C₄, Δm = 1.1 mDa) and the inclusion of other elements such as nickel (Qian et al. 2010) place additional demands on resolution. A practical minimum required mass resolution for petroleomics is ±5 mDa, which is acceptable for assigning reasonable formulae to molecules containing only CHNSO that are <500 Da (Kim et al. 2006b). A mass resolution better than ±100 μDa is needed for truly unambiguous formulae assignments (Hsu 2012), about one-fifth the mass of an electron.

Commercial instruments used in petroleomic studies include systems with Time of Flight (ToF), Orbitrap, and FTICR mass spectrometers (Pomerantz et al. 2011; Xian et al. 2012; Zubarev and Makarov 2013). In general, ToF-MS systems provide high resolution spectra at fast acquisition speeds and are ideally suited for interfacing with GC and LC systems where rapid detection of eluting compounds is needed. The mass resolution of most ToF-MS is typically not sufficient to fully resolve ¹²C₃ from
32SH₄ (Δm = 3.4 Da); however, the highest resolution ToF-MS instruments are capable of providing compositional information comparable to FT-ICR on routine samples (Klitzke et al. 2012). FT-ICR-MS systems provide the highest (ultrahigh) resolution possible but require longer acquisition time. Consequently, petroleomic samples are typically analyzed by direct infusion of whole oil or oil fractions rather than following chromatographic separation. The achievable mass resolution by FT-ICR depends on numerous factors related to instrument design. A magnetic field >7 T is required to achieve the needed resolution for petroleomics. Orbitrap MS sits in between with mass resolution that can approach FT-ICR-MS and acquisition speeds suitable for GC and LC detection. The highest performing Orbitraps are capable of providing the ultrahigh mass resolution needed for petroleomics (Zhurov et al. 2013). Further discussion of ultrahigh-resolution MS for petroleomics will be limited to FT-ICR-MS; however, continual improvements in other MS technologies offer new opportunities.

In order to be analyzed in a mass spectrometer, a molecule must be volatilized and ionized to possess a charge. No ionization technique is universally applicable to all compounds, and all have selective biases in their ionization efficiencies that can vary depending on sample matrix effects that can be modified by the selection of the solvent system. Electrospray ionization (ESI) (Qian et al. 2001a, b), atmospheric pressure chemical ionization (APCI), and atmospheric pressure photoionization (APPI) are the most commonly used ionization techniques in petroleomics (Pudenzi and Eberlin 2016). These techniques respond well to petroleum molecules containing aromatic moieties and/or heteroatoms that are <2000 Da, but are less efficient ionizing saturated hydrocarbons and large, low volatility asphaltene species. APPI is considered to be the least discriminating, while the ionization efficiency of ESI is highly dependent on chemical structure. For example, acids are particularly easy to ionize and a negative ESI mass spectrum of an oil may be dominated by their ions even though the absolute abundance of naphthenic acids is low. Various laser ionization methods also have been tested for petroleum analysis such as laser desorption (LDI) (Mennito and Qian 2013; Cho et al. 2014), atmospheric pressure laser (APLI) (Gaspar et al. 2012), matrix assisted laser desorption (MALDI) (Klein et al. 2006), and laser-induced acoustic desorption (LIAD) (Crawford et al. 2005; Pinkston et al. 2009). Many of the laser ionization studies are centered on overcoming the limitations on ionizing saturated hydrocarbons and asphaltenes. Classic techniques, such as field desorption/ionization (FD/FI) and electron ionization (EI) (Rodgers and Marshall 2007), and ambient ionization methods, such as direct analysis in real time (DART) (Romão et al. 2016) and desorption electrospray ionization (DESI) (Rummel et al. 2010; Wu et al. 2010), have also been applied in petroleum analysis.

Once the components in a whole crude oil or oil fraction are ionized, their masses may be measured. FT-ICR-MS has limited dynamic range and its performance depends on the number, relative abundance, and composition of the ions being detected (Marshall et al. 1998). Consequently, while ultrahigh-resolution petroleomic analysis may be conducted on a whole oil, the signal from minor components may be swamped. The best mass resolution and dynamic range can
be achieved using oil fractions that have been either separated by distillation and/or chromatographic preparation (e.g., Zhang et al. 2010; Oro and Lucy 2013; Podgorski et al. 2013; Sim et al. 2014), though care needs to be taken that the separation does not add contaminants (Oro et al. 2012). Another technique to improve dynamic range is spectral stitching, whereby small packets of ions spanning a limited mass range are sequentially introduced into the FT-ICR cell for individual analysis and then recombined into one mass spectrum (Gaspar and Schrader 2012).

Following detection, ion masses are assigned a chemical formula based on the mass defect. Even the best FT-ICR-MS instruments are not capable of providing unambiguous formulae above 500 Da just from accurate masses without additional information. Here, the molecular complexity of petroleum can actually help. Many compounds in petroleum are homologous series of a similar core structure and increasing degrees of alkylation. This allows for a form of “walking” internal calibration where the spectrum is divided into many adjoining segments and a separate calibration is applied to each based on ions from known homologous series (Savory et al. 2011).

Several data visualization methods are commonly used in ultrahigh-resolution MS petroleomics (Cho et al. 2015). With a list of accurate mass, molecular formula, and ion abundance for each detected ion, the composition is examined by comparing the distributions of related components. The most basic is a normalized distribution by chemical class. A chemical class is defined to include all species with an identical number of heteroatoms. Chemical classes may be comprised of species containing only varying number of one type of heteroatom (e.g., 1O, 2O, 3O, . . . , xO) or having two or more heteroatoms at fixed values (e.g., 1S1O, 1N1O, 2S1O, 2N1O, 1S2O, 1N2O, 1N1S, 4N1O1V). Pure hydrocarbons form their own chemical class with no heteroatoms.

The components within a single chemical class can be examined individually with normalized distributions of the sum of all components with identical Double Bond Equivalence (DBE). DBE is an expression of hydrogen deficiency and for molecules with the formula of $C_{x}H_{2x}N_{n}O_{o}S_{s}$ can be calculated as: $DBE = c - \frac{b}{2} + \frac{n}{2} + 1$. An alternative to DBE is the Z-number as expressed in the molecular formula $C_{x}H_{2c+ZN_{y}O_{o}S_{s}}$. Distributions within a chemical class tend to decrease with increasing DBE, representing decreased relative abundance with an increasing degree of cyclization/aromatization and core size. The distributions are not usually smooth but exhibit increased abundances at fully aromatized core states. For example, the 1S species will be enriched at $DBE = 3, 6, 9, \text{ and } 12$, diagnostic of thiophenes with one, two- and three-additional aromatic rings, respectively. Finally, the distribution of masses or carbon numbers within an individual chemical class for a specific DBE can be plotted. If a core structure is assumed, a distribution can be made representing the number of alkyl carbons.

The magnitude of the ultrahigh-resolution mass data makes it difficult to visualize the complete composition of a sample in a single figure. A common practice is to plot DBE versus mass and to project the abundance of individual species either by color coding or varying the symbol size. 3D graphics of these data, with abundance projected on the z-axis, are useful if the graph can be actively manipulated, but are
of limited value as a static image. Multiple plots of mass versus DBE (with relative or absolute abundance optionally coded to color or symbol size) can be arranged in a montage (Fig. 3).

Kendrick mass defect plots also allow complete data from one or more chemical classes to be examined in a single graph (Hughey et al. 2001). The Kendrick mass defect assigns \( \text{CH}_2 \) to an integer mass of 14. Hence, a plot of the Kendrick nominal mass (x-axis) versus Kendrick mass defect (y-axis) will yield a flat line for a homologous series with the same DBE and heteroatoms that differ only by the addition of \( \text{CH}_2 \). Increasing DBE within an individual chemical class results in greater Kendrick mass defect, producing a series of parallel lines. Again, the relative or normalized abundance can be projected using symbol color coding or size, or multiple chemical classes can be displayed on the same graph by color coding.

**Fig. 3** Visualization of petroleomic analysis by FT-ICR-MS. Comparison of broad-band mass spectra obtained by (a) +APPI and (b) −ESI. Highly accurate mass resolution allow for the assignment of unambiguous elemental compositions. When summed by chemical class, the distributions derived from +APPI and −ESI (e) are highly influenced by ionization efficiency. The compounds within a chemical class can be visualized as summed distribution by Z-number (or DBE) (d, e), or as individual masses where the abundance is color-coded (f, g). Van Krevelen-type diagrams, plotting masses by various elemental ratios (e.g., H/C, S/C, O/C) and indicating relative abundance by color or symbol-size, are frequently used graphic displays (h, i).
Van Krevelen-type plots are also used for visualizing processed FT-ICR-MS data. Originally developed to characterize coals using a plot of H/C versus O/C atomic ratios, van Krevelen-type plots provide broad insight into overall composition by plotting various permutations of H/C, O/C, N/C, S/C, and other atomic ratios (Kim et al. 2003).

Petroleomics is lagging other -omics when it comes to computational analysis of “big data,” and few tools beyond basic statistical methods, such as principle component analysis (Hur et al. 2010a), have been applied. Hur et al. (2010b) showed that Circos diagrams developed for genomics could be applied to petroleomics, but their utility is not obvious and few have adapted the method. Clearly, new methods are needed for computational analysis of postacquisition/processed ultrahigh-resolution data for use in property prediction and for the comparison of composition across multiple samples.

2.4 Modeling the Petroleome

A definitive petroleome is far beyond current analytical capabilities; however, the science has sufficiently advanced that it is now possible to construct a model of composition (MoC) using data from the techniques described above and complementary data from other analyses. The MoC is defined by a mixture of compounds of known or hypothesized molecular structures that approximates the petroleome that can then be correlated to physical properties or used as input for chemical reaction networks. Most petroleomics publications do not attempt to construct a MoC that approximates the petroleome; rather the data are discussed without molecular assignment or are assumed to be related to a molecular structure within a specific chemical class. For example, high molecular weight aromatics detected by –ESI-FT-ICR-MS have been assigned to naphthenic acids with biomarker structures based on the identified structures of low molecular weight species (e.g., Kim et al. 2005; Hughey et al. 2007) and species in the 4N1V1O, or 4N1Ni classes are assumed to be vanadyl and nickel porphyrins (e.g., Qian et al. 2008a, 2010; McKenna et al. 2009, 2014).

There are no defined procedures for constructing a MoC that approximates the petroleome. The volatile component of a crude oil is relatively easy to characterize by GC methods, and most hydrocarbons and many compounds with heteroatoms can be assigned to a specific molecular structure or to a structural family with variable positions of alkylation. Defining a MoC for the nonvolatile fraction is much more challenging. Qian et al. (2016) and Wang et al. (2018) describe one approach in defining a MoC for a vacuum resid. This procedure is very involved and requires a combination of advanced analytical practices. The procedure is:

(a) Characterizing the volatile fraction by GC-FID, GC × GC-FID, and/or GC × GC-MS. Multiple methods may be used to best characterize gases (C1-C5), light liquid (C3-C15), and heavier liquids (C10+). Identification and quantification of all major and minor volatile hydrocarbons are possible using a GC × GC equipped with dual FID and ToF-MS detectors (Wang et al. 2016).
(b) Separating the resid sample into asphaltenes and deasphalted oils (DAO) using solvent precipitation.

(c) Separating the (DAO) into chemical classes: saturates, aromatics, sulfides, and polars. The aromatic fraction is further separated into four aromatic ring class fractions that are dominated by 1-ring, 2-ring, 3-ring, and 4- and more ring aromatic hydrocarbons and neutral heteroatom species (e.g., thiophenic species).

(d) Directly measuring bulk physical and chemical properties of the asphaltenes and individual DAO fractions. These routinely include CHNSO elemental, trace metal, \(^{1}\text{H}-\text{and}^{13}\text{C-NMR, simulated distillation by high-temperature GC, and density.}\

Supplemental analyses can include trace metals, and CNSO speciation by XPS or XANES.

(e) Conducting ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry analysis of the individual asphaltenes and DAO fractions using a combination of ionization modes (ESI, APPI, APCI, and FD/FI) and scanning for positive and negative ions. This is necessary as different modes of ionization will yield different responses. For example, positive ion electrospray ionization preferentially ionizes basic nitrogen molecules, whereas negative ion electrospray ionization preferentially ionizes acidic molecules.

(f) Determining an elemental formula for all masses based on the ions’ mass defects.

(g) Assigning molecular structures to each mass. This procedure involves separating the masses into their chemical class, determining the z-number (or DBE) distribution within a chemical class, assigning one or more core structures as representative within a specific chemical class and z-number, and finally a carbon number distribution with this subgroup.

(h) Comparing the MoC derived from ultrahigh-resolution MS against measured bulk and molecular properties (step d). The MoC is then minimally adjusted to match the observed properties. This may involve artificially stretching the observed distribution to include higher molecular weight and/or higher z-number species that were not volatilized/ionized or issues involving dynamic range. The adjustment process is repeated until all data are reconciled.

(i) Combining all MoCs obtained for the volatile and DOA fractions preserving mass balance.

Assignment of the distribution of the core structures relies on both indirect and direct evidence. The concept that petroleum comprises a continuum of homologous compounds allows for some core structures to be based on lower molecular weight species where the structure of individual components are more easily determined. The structure of higher molecular weight species, particularly asphaltenes, is contentious with researchers favoring models described either as “island,” a single large PAH multi-ring core (e.g., Mullins et al. 2006; Mullins 2010), or “archipelago,” linkages of multiple smaller PAH cores (e.g., Karimi et al. 2011; Silva et al. 2016). Insight into the nature of the distribution of “island” and “archipelago” core structures can be obtained from thermal decomposition (Alshareef et al. 2012), collision-induced dissociation (Qian et al. 2012), and NMR and other spectrometric techniques (Dutta Majumdar et al. 2016). In truth, both types of structures exist and must be included in construction of the MoCs (Borton et al. 2010; Podgorski et al. 2013).
3 Applications of Petroleomics

The goal of petroleomics is to model all physical properties and chemical reactivity from the petroleome, the complete molecular description. This goal is still far from being achieved. Petroleomic predictions of physical properties, such as density and boiling point distributions, can be made from a MoC as these values are known or can be modeled for each of the assigned molecular structures and combined in an additive manner. Prediction of viscosity or phase behavior is much more difficult as these properties depend on the interaction of molecules and theories for these interactions have not been developed fully within a MoC framework. Some studies have shown empirical relationships between polar/asphaltene compositions (e.g., Pomerantz et al. 2010), but these are not predictive based on a MoC.

Petroleomic predictions of many bulk chemical properties (e.g., elemental composition, carbon speciation as measured from $^{13}$C-NMR, and sulfur speciation as measured by XPS or S-XANES) are inherent to a MoC. Some chemical properties, such as the total acid number (TAN), can be predicted (Qian et al. 2008b; Orrego-Ruiz et al. 2016). Typically, these and other bulk measurements are used to constrain and extrapolate data from ultrahigh-resolution MS and other molecular analyses to construct the MoC. In cases where the direct measurement of the bulk chemical composition and/or physical properties are not possible due to small sample size or the need for in situ spatial resolution, they can be predicted from a MoC derived from mass spectra obtained by LDI or DESI-MS (Wu et al. 2015).

Petroleomics has furthered our understanding of geologic processes. Hydrocarbons in crude oils and source rock extracts have been extensively studied and a well-developed biomarker toolkit has emerged for upstream applications (Peters et al. 2005). However, only a few polar species have been examined (e.g., petroporphyrins). Applications of petroleomic methods have provided new insights into thermal maturation (Hughey et al. 2004; Oldenburg et al. 2014), migration (Zhang et al. 2010; Liu et al. 2015), and reservoir alteration processes, such as biodegradation (Kim et al. 2005; Liao et al. 2012; Vaz et al. 2013) and thermochemical sulfate reduction (TSR) (Walters et al. 2011; Li et al. 2012). Most studies have correlated the petroleome of heteroatomic species with no defined or assumed molecular structure to conditions established by conventional hydrocarbon analyses. Several studies have combined GC × GC and FT-ICR-MS analyses to characterize the complete petroleome and relate this to reservoir connectivity (Pomerantz et al. 2010) and TSR (Walters et al. 2015) or use the complete petroleome to construct models to predict reservoir oil quality (Walters et al. 2009).

In oil production, flow assurance is a major concern as both inorganic and organic precipitates can clog wellbores, top-side facilities, and pipelines, imposing significant economic impact. Petroleomic characterization of asphaltenes (Juyal et al. 2010) and calcium and sodium naphthenates (Mapolelo et al. 2009) is providing a new level of understanding that will help ameliorate these problems.

Environmental science was an early user of petroleomics (Petkewich 2003). Ultrahigh-resolution MS is readily applied toward oil spill source identification (Corilo et al. 2013; Bayona et al. 2015), investigations of natural attenuation,
photochemistry and weathering (Hegazi et al. 2012; Islam et al. 2013; McKenna et al. 2013; Chen et al. 2016; Vaughan et al. 2016), and remediation practices (Seidel et al. 2016). Waters stored in tailing ponds resulting from the processing of Athabasca oil sands are of environmental concern due to the potential toxicity of soluble naphthenic acids (Headley et al. 2016). Petroleomic methods have shown the diversity of these species (Barrow et al. 2004; Lengger et al. 2013) and have aided in tracing their detoxification (Yue et al. 2016).

Natural waters contain a complex mixture of dissolved organic matter (DOM) that has been challenging to characterize. Some of earliest ultrahigh-resolution MS studies examined the humic and fulvic acids dissolved in water (Kujawinski et al. 2002; Llewelyn et al. 2002; Kim et al. 2003). Sources of DOM (Koch et al. 2005; Sleighter and Hatcher 2008; Kujawinski et al. 2009) and their photochemical and biological transformations (Kujawinski et al. 2004; Kim et al. 2006a; Gonsior et al. 2009) can be distinguished. Petroleomic methods are now routinely used to characterize DOM in sediments (e.g., Schmidt et al. 2014; Seidel et al. 2014; McKee and Hatcher 2015) and soils (e.g., Ikeya et al. 2015; Guigue et al. 2016).

Petroleomics offers a major advance in optimizing refining processes including better characterization of product streams (Schaub et al. 2005; Wang et al. 2016), the effects of hydrotreating (Kekäläinen et al. 2009), monitoring the effects of corrosion by organic acids (Dias et al. 2014), and the effective treatment of refinery waste waters (Li et al. 2015; Fang et al. 2016). Significant economic benefits emerge from being able model a refinery for optimal yields within specific quality limits. The efficiency of these process models is dependent on the accuracy of the petroleome of the feedstock crude and models of the thermal and catalyzed reactions involved in crude upgrading. Approximations using a limited number of compounds, groups of compounds, or pseudo-species can yield satisfactory results (e.g., Zhu et al. 2012), but petroleome-based models are now possible using an expansion of structure-oriented lumping (Jaffe et al. 2005; Alvarez-Majmutov et al. 2016).

4 Limitations and Future Research

Recent advances in analytical science have enabled the emergence of petroleomics, but the ultimate goals – the complete petroleome and the ability to predict all physical properties and chemical reactivity – are just in their embryonic state. For very light crude oils, we are confident that the petroleome can be described with sufficient detail that further detailed characterization would yield little additional value. However, for heavy crudes, a complete characterization of the petroleome falls well short of the necessary detail. Indeed, most of the nonvolatile petroleome remains uncharacterized at a molecular structural level. The level of specificity routinely conducted on pure hydrocarbons, such as biomarker analysis with full assignment of the configurations of stereogenic centers, is lacking for most non-GC amenable heteroatomic species. Improvements in LC-MS methods offer the promise of expanding such specificity to higher molecular weight species.
Asphaltenes, in particular, remain exceedingly difficult to characterize on a molecular level. These compounds may not be completely volatilized and ionized in the mass spectrometer’s source and, hence, a portion, and possibly a very significant portion, of the asphaltenes may go undetected. Of those ions that are observed, the mass defect becomes increasingly uncertain with higher mass and even the best ultrahigh-resolution MS instruments cannot provide an unambiguous chemical formula. Even improving mass accuracy and resolution, the actual molecular structure of asphaltenes still would not be resolved without additional insight into the distribution and nature of the core structures. Direct visualization by atomic force microscopy (Schuler et al. 2015) may provide an avenue to resolve these issues.

Absolute quantification by mass spectrometry requires determining the response of a compound to the analytical conditions under which it is observed. There is no MS ionization or detection method that is universal and insensitive to the chemical structure of the analyte. Quantitation is possible if one has pure standards and internal standards, but careful study still is needed to minimize variable response of the compound within a changing chemical matrix as well as instrumental conditions. It is doubtful that pure standards representing the vast diversity of the petroleome will ever become available. Quantification even with pure standards will be exceedingly difficult as ionization efficiency and selectivity as well as FT-ICR-MS detector response is dependent not only on concentration of individual compounds but also on the composition and abundance of other components within the mixture. At present, the best quantitative determinations of a petroleome require ultrahigh-resolution mass spectra to be harmonized with data from ancillary analysis to yield a consistent mass. New, nonspecific ionization methods may alleviate some of these problems.

Recent developments in analytical techniques have enabled the establishment of the nascent field of petroleomics. Although petroleomics has its roots in decades of petroleum chemical characterization, its modern conception is less than 20 years old. We have now established a beachhead and are breaking out in applications. Much as genomics and other such -omics have revolutionized the biological sciences, petroleomics promises to do the same for geochemistry and petroleum chemical engineering.

References

Altgelt KH, Boduszynski MM (1993) Composition and analysis of heavy petroleum fractions. CRC Press, Boca Raton. 512 pp


De la Rue W, Miller H (1856) Chemical examination of Burmese naphtha or Rangoon tar. Proc R Soc Lond 8:221–228

Dias HP, Pereira TMC, Vanini G, Dixini PV, Celante VG, Castro EVR, Vaz BG, Fleming FP, Gomes AO, Aquije GMFV, Romão W (2014) Monitoring the degradation and the corrosion of...
naphthenic acids by electrospray ionization Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry and atomic force microscopy. Fuel 126:85–95


Hughey CA, Galasso SA, Zumberge JE (2007) Detailed compositional comparison of acidic NSO compounds in biodegraded reservoir and surface crude oils by negative ion electrospray Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry. Fuel 86:758–768


Kim S, Rodgers RP, Marshall AG (2006b) Truly “exact” mass: elemental composition can be determined uniquely from molecular mass measurement at ~0.1 mDa accuracy for molecules up to ~500 Da. Int J Mass Spectrom 251:260–265


Oro NE, Lucy CA (2013) Analysis of the nitrogen content of distillate cut gas oils and treated heavy gas oils using normal phase HPLC, fraction collection and petroleomic FT-ICR MS data. Energy Fuels 27:35–45

Oro NE, Whittal RM, Lucy CA (2012) Sample handling and contamination encountered when coupling offline normal phase high performance liquid chromatography fraction collection of petroleum samples to Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry. Anal Chim Acta 741:70–77


Pudenz MA, Eberlin MN (2016) Assessing relative electrospray ionization, atmospheric pressure photoionization, atmospheric pressure chemical ionization, and atmospheric pressure photo-
and chemical ionization efficiencies in mass spectrometry petroleomic analysis via pools and pairs of selected polar compound standards. Energy Fuels 30:7125–7133

Qian K, Robbins WK, Hughey CA, Cooper HJ, Rodgers RP, Marshall AG (2001a) Resolution and identification of elemental compositions for more than 3000 crude acids in heavy petroleum by negative-ion microelectrospray high-field Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry. Energy Fuels 15:1505–1511


Sleighter RL, Hatcher PG (2008) Molecular characterization of dissolved organic matter (DOM) along a river to ocean transect of the lower Chesapeake Bay by ultra-high-resolution electrospray ionization Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry. Mar Chem 110:140–152


C. C. Walters and M. B. Higgins
oils by electrospray ionization ultrahigh-resolution and accuracy Fourier transform mass spectrometry and chemometric analysis. Energy Fuels 27:1277–1284


In this essay we provide a short introduction to some basics of stable isotope geochemistry and an overview of few common applications in petroleum geochemistry. We identify the processes that are responsible for the carbon and hydrogen isotopic compositions of biological and geological organic matter and indicate the utility of stable isotopes in oil-source rock correlations. Stable isotope analyses are also exploited in the investigation of different alteration processes within oils and petroleum reservoirs. State of the art work is presented, and future research needs are identified.
1 Introduction

Processes controlling the molecular and isotopic composition of petroleum – and thus its physicochemical properties and quality – are divided into two fundamental categories. Primary processes include everything influencing petroleum composition prior to the accumulation in a trap (reservoir); these are, for example, the biological origin of the source organic matter, the depositional environment of the source rock, and its thermal maturity, as well as migration of petroleum fluids from the source rock to the trap. Secondary controls lead to an alteration of reservoired petroleum after accumulation in the trap; this includes (bio)chemical processes such as biodegradation and thermochemical sulfate reduction and physical processes such as water washing and evaporative fractionation. The evaluation of these processes is challenging as petroleum reservoirs typically have complex filling histories with, for example, alternating charging and biodegradation events.

Within this essay, some general information about stable isotopes is given (Sect. 2). Then the complex processes related to petroleum generation and their influence on the isotopic composition of crude oil and natural gas are mentioned, in conjunction with some applications (Sect. 3.1). Section 3.2 discusses the role of alteration processes within reservoirs with a main focus on microbial activity in these environments. It is not within the scope of this essay to give a comprehensive overview on the detailed factors influencing the isotopic composition of petroleum. Excellent reviews on this topic can be found in the literature (Galimov 2006; Peters et al. 2005).

2 Definitions

For a more comprehensive introduction to stable isotope geochemistry and the analytical methods for determining relative isotope ratios, the interested reader is advised to consult one of the following textbooks: Clark and Fritz (1997), Hoefs (2018), and Sharp (2007). With respect to hydrocarbons, this essay will be focused on the stable isotopes of carbon and hydrogen.

The isotopes of a given element have the same number of protons and electrons but differ from each other by the number of neutrons in the nucleus. Most elements in the periodic table have two or more naturally occurring isotopes; carbon and hydrogen both have two stable isotopes (Table 1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Atomic number</th>
<th>Mass number</th>
<th>Abundance (%)</th>
<th>Atomic weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>99.985</td>
<td>1.007825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>2.0140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>98.89</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>13.00335</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The mass differences, resulting from the difference in the number of neutrons, lead to differences in the chemical and physical properties of molecules with light and/or heavy isotopes. This causes partial separation of the light isotopes from the heavy isotopes during chemical reactions (isotope fractionation). Equilibrium chemical reactions (e.g., dissolution of CO₂ in water) are accompanied by equilibrium isotope effects, whereas unidirectional reactions – such as biodegradation – quite often are accompanied by significant kinetic isotope effects. In biodegradation, usually reactions with the lighter isotopes are preferred, due to the lower energy that is required to break a bond within one molecule between two light isotopes, in comparison to the higher energy that is needed to break the bond between a light and a heavy isotope.

The delta (δ) notation has been introduced to express the relative differences in isotopic compositions (McKinney et al. 1950),

\[
\delta[\%] = \left( \frac{R_{\text{sample}}}{R_{\text{standard}}} - 1 \right) \times 1000
\]

where R is the ratio of the abundance of the heavy to the light isotope (within the sample and the international standard; see Table 2).

R is given by D/H and \(^{13}\)C/\(^{12}\)C, respectively. δ values are reported in per mil, or parts per thousands.

Biodegradation processes typically lead to enrichment of the molecules with the heavier isotope in the residual fraction of a substrate due to kinetic isotope effects of the first irreversible reaction in a degradation pathway. The relation between decrease in concentration and change in isotopic composition of the residual substrate can be described by the Rayleigh Equation (2) where F is the fraction of the hydrocarbon remaining (C/C₀), R is the isotopic composition of the hydrocarbon at a particular F, and Rᵢ is the initial isotopic composition.

\[
\frac{R}{R_i} = F^{(\alpha-1)}
\]

The isotope fractionation factor (α) relates changes in the isotopic composition to changes in the concentration of the residual fraction during the transformation. It is quite common to use the enrichment factor ε (3) instead of α. The Rayleigh Equation provides the opportunity to quantify the extent of biodegradation based on carbon or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2</th>
<th>Names and relative and absolute isotope ratios of international standards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDB</td>
<td>Belemnitella americana from Pee Dee Formation in USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMOV</td>
<td>Standard Mean Ocean Water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hydrogen isotope ratios and the appropriate isotope fractionation factor independent of concentration measurements.

\[ \varepsilon = (\alpha - 1) \cdot 100 \]  

3 Stable Isotope Applications in Petroleum Geochemistry

3.1 Petroleum Formation in Sedimentary Basins

A key task of petroleum geochemistry is the correct correlation of natural gas or crude oil accumulations to their respective source rock(s) in a given exploration area. Any approach used in oil- or gas-source correlation is based on the assumption that similarities exist between the molecular and/or isotopic composition of a petroleum fluid and its source. The discussion in this subsection will focus on biochemical and geochemical processes that have to be considered when using the stable carbon or hydrogen isotopic composition of organic matter as a correlation tool, although typically multiple independent data types, both molecular and isotopic, are used in such studies.

The most important control on the carbon isotopic composition of crude oils and natural gas is the carbon isotopic composition of the source organic matter that has been deposited in the sediment later forming a petroleum source rock. The isotopic composition of biogenic organic matter depends on four key elements, namely, (1) the carbon source utilized; (2) isotope effects associated with assimilation of carbon by the producing organism; (3) isotope effects associated with metabolism and biosynthesis, and (4) cellular carbon budgets (Hayes 1993). Autotrophic organisms assimilate inorganic carbon (marine carbonate or bicarbonate, atmospheric carbon dioxide) with \( \delta^{13}C \) values typically between +2 and \(-8\%\) (Mook 2000) while heterotrophic organisms assimilate carbon from biogenic organic matter with \( \delta^{13}C \) from \(-5\) to \(-35\%\) (Mook 2000). However, methane with \( \delta^{13}C \) values in the range of \(-35\) to \(-60\%\) (thermogenic) and \(-55\) to \(-85\%\) (biogenic) (Schoell 1980) has to be considered as a significant and sometimes unusually light carbon source for methanotrophic organisms (Fig. 1). Typically, biomass is depleted in \(^{13}C\) relative to the respective carbon source due to isotope fractionation processes whose magnitudes depend on the mechanism of carbon fixation. As a consequence of differences in the isotope fractionation associated with specific biosynthetic pathways, \(^{12}C\) and \(^{13}C\) are not equally distributed between the different carbon pools (e.g., carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids) within a single organism (Chikaraishi 2014). Furthermore, it has to be taken into account that sedimentary organic matter typically represents a complex mixture of biomass derived from different source organisms which all contribute their own specific carbon isotopic signatures. This is revealed by compound-specific isotope analysis of biomarkers which can be attributed to specific source organisms.

In general, \( \delta^{13}C \) values of sedimentary organic matter are relatively similar to those of the biomass exported from the water column, indicating that even significant
changes in organic matter composition during transport through the water column and early diagenesis after deposition in the sediment (including complete recycling of about 99% of the primary production) do not strongly influence the carbon isotopic composition (for review see Galimov 2006). Likewise, only small shifts towards higher δ\(^{13}\)C values (up to 1‰) are observed in kerogens due to thermal maturation during catagenesis as a result of the release of \(^{12}\)C-enriched oil and gas (Clayton 1991). Kinetic isotope effects related to oil-to-gas cracking may lead to \(^{13}\)C-enrichment of the remaining oil up to 4‰ (Clayton 1991). A maturation effect is also seen in the carbon isotopic composition of individual oil constituents; however, it normally will not exceed a 2–3‰ shift towards less negative values (Clayton and Bjorøy 1994).

The carbon isotopic composition of bulk crude oils typically ranges between \(-24\) and \(-34\)‰ (Fig. 1). Small differences in the average isotopic compositions of the \(C_{15+}\) fractions of saturated and aromatic hydrocarbon fractions of oils sourced from terrestrial or marine organic matter are mostly insignificant (Sofer 1984). However, it is well established that different petroleum source rocks generate oils with distinct carbon isotopic signatures. This can be illustrated by a case study from the North Viking Graben, an exploration area in the Norwegian North Sea (Gormly et al. 1994). In this area, two potential source rocks, both of Upper Jurassic age, the
Heather and the Draupne Formations, may contribute to the reservoired crude oils. Kerogen of the Draupne Fm. (−28 to −27‰) is slightly $^{13}$C-depleted than that of the Heather Fm. (−27 to −25‰) which corresponds well to the isotopic signatures of the generated oils (−31 to −28‰ versus −28 to −25‰). These variations in isotopic composition are furthermore correlated to those of a molecular biomarker parameter (pristane/phytane ratio) indicating an influence of the source rock depositional environment on the $\delta^{13}$C values of the kerogens. In many cases, reservoired crude oils are not derived from a single source but rather represent mixtures whose isotopic compositions depend on the isotopic composition and relative amounts of the contributing sources. In the North Viking Graben, mixed oils sourced from both the Draupne and the Heather Fm. have $\delta^{13}$C values in the range of −28.8 to −28.0‰ (Gormly et al. 1994). The isotopic composition of individual oil constituents, for example, gasoline-range hydrocarbons, may provide useful clues as to the mixed origin of oil (Rooney et al. 1998). Ideally, the carbon isotopic composition of mixed oil can be used to quantify the contributions of the individual sources (Peters et al. 1989).

The stable carbon isotopic compositions of crude oil fractions (saturated and aromatic hydrocarbon fractions) have been shown to become $^{13}$C-enriched with decreasing geologic age (Andrusevich et al. 1998). The authors compared evolutionary changes in the biosphere to episodic changes in stable carbon isotopic compositions throughout the Phanerozoic and concluded that these isotopic shifts may be related to the diversity of preserved phytoplankton. Furthermore, crude oils generated from source rocks of Upper Jurassic age become increasingly $^{13}$C-enriched from high to low paleolatitudes (=latitudes at which the source rocks were deposited), indicating that the $\delta^{13}$C values of oils reflect that of the primary marine biomass, which varied as a function of spatial paleoenvironmental parameters, in particular sea-surface paleotemperature (Andrusevich et al. 2000). The stable carbon isotope compositions of the aromatic and aliphatic fractions in crude oils have been used to differentiate between oils derived from marine or terrigenous source rocks (Sofer 1984).

Stable carbon isotope ratios of individual aromatic hydrocarbons, like alkylnapthalenes and alkylphenanthrenes, have been successfully applied as source and age indicators in oils from western Australian basins (Maslen et al. 2011).

Stable carbon isotope ratios are extremely useful for the assessment of the origin of natural gas (for review see Whiticar 1994). This is because fractionations due to kinetic isotope effects lead to a much higher variability in the $\delta^{13}$C values of small molecules with only one to five carbon atoms, as is the case in the natural gas hydrocarbons methane (CH$_4$), ethane (C$_2$H$_6$), propane (C$_3$H$_8$), i-butane (C$_4$H$_{10}$), n-butane (C$_4$H$_{10}$), i-pentane (C$_5$H$_{12}$), and n-pentane (C$_5$H$_{12}$). Methane is by far the most predominant constituent of natural gas. The C$_2$–C$_5$ hydrocarbons occur in highly variable amounts which in general are low in biogenic gas and higher in thermogenic gas. The relative amount of the C$_2$–C$_5$ hydrocarbons in natural gas is typically referred to as the “gas wetness” (4).
Likewise, biogenic methane is significantly more $^{13}$C-depleted than thermogenic methane. Typically, $\delta^{13}$C values of methane lower than $-60\%$ and higher than $-55\%$ are attributed to a purely biogenic or a purely thermogenic origin, respectively, while a mixed source has to be considered for intermediate $\delta^{13}$C values. Methane isotopic composition provides clear evidence for the occurrence of biogenic methane in very deep reservoirs (at least down to 3000 m) and thus is a very important hint to the existence of a subterraneous so-called deep biosphere (Schoell 1980). The isotopic compositions of ethane and propane in cold, deeply buried sediments from the southeastern Pacific were interpreted to reflect the microbial production of these hydrocarbons in situ (Hinrichs et al. 2006).

Until now, the hydrogen isotopic compositions of organic components are used to a much lesser extent in petroleum geochemistry (for review see Sessions 2016; Pedentchouk and Turich 2018). It might be expected that they show similar fractionation behavior during processes involved in the formation and destruction of petroleum as discussed here for the distribution of the carbon isotopes. However, recent progress on this topic appears to indicate significant differences, likely due to different modes in which hydrogen is involved in biogeochemical processes. A crucial aspect seems to be that hydrogen atoms in hydrocarbons (and organic matter in general) are exchangeable with external hydrogen, both organically and inorganically bound, which likely is negligible for carbon atoms (Sessions et al. 2004). In particular, water has to be considered as a relevant source of hydrogen in petroleum systems, and hydrocarbons may interact with water on the migration pathway from the source to the trap or with the formation water in a reservoir. It is true that the C–H acidity of hydrocarbons is extremely low; however, on geological timescales, i.e., many million years or even more, and at the elevated temperatures occurring in many petroleum systems, hydrogen exchange reactions may become significant, although they would not be observable on a human timescale. Numerous recent studies have investigated such exchange processes and have clearly indicated that the hydrogen isotopic signatures of geological organic matter (kerogen, bulk oils, oil fractions, individual oil, and gas constituents) become systematically $^2$H-enriched with increasing levels of thermal maturity (Dawson et al. 2005; Lis et al. 2006; Mastalerz and Schimmelmann 2002; Pedentchouk et al. 2006; Radke et al. 2005; Schimmelmann et al. 2001; Sessions et al. 2004; Tang et al. 2005). The extent and rate of $^2$H-enrichment has been shown to depend on the organic compound class (Schimmelmann et al. 2006).

To evaluate the equilibrium fractionation that occurs between C-bound H and H$_2$O, laboratory incubation experiments and ab initio molecular modeling have been performed by Wang et al. (2009a, b, 2013), establishing a computational framework, which allows the prediction of equilibrium fractionation factors in linear, branched, and cyclic aliphatic hydrocarbons (Sessions 2016).

This seems to indicate that hydrogen isotope ratios could be efficient tools in thermal history assessment where carbon isotope ratios are not very useful
above). Beyond this, the systematics of hydrogen isotopes in organic components of petroleum systems awaits further investigations to fully establish their potential as a tool in exploration and production of petroleum.

3.2 Alteration Processes in Petroleum Reservoirs

Biodegradation in petroleum reservoirs will preferentially take place near the oil-water interface and has been described to be of relevance in reservoirs that were not exposed to temperatures $>80 \, ^\circ\text{C}$ (Connan 1984; Wilhelms et al. 2001). The oil-water contact provides conditions that are the most conducive to microbial activity. Diffusive transport of hydrocarbons through the oil column to the oil-water contact will provide electron donors, whereas inorganic nutrients required for microbial growth can be transported by water flow or diffusion in the water column to the oil-water contact (Head et al. 2003). Biodegradation processes in crude oils were described to lead to the quasi-sequential removal of compound groups as follows: $n$-alkanes $>$ branched alkanes $>$ alkylbenzenes $>$ alkynaphthalenes $>$ alkylcyclohexanes, alkylphenanthrenes, and alkyl-dibenzothiophenes $>$ isoprenoids ($C_{15+}$) $>$ regular steranes $>$ hopanes $>$ aromatic steranes (Peters and Moldowan 1993; Wenger et al. 2002). However, recent work on molecular changes in biodegraded oils indicates that the degradation patterns of light hydrocarbons and $n$-alkanes differ in different petroleum systems. This suggests that microbial communities are different and therefore generate different molecular degradation patterns which have to be evaluated individually for each system (Elias et al. 2007).

The molecular and isotopic composition of natural gas hydrocarbons ($C_1$–$C_5$) is used traditionally for gas-gas correlations, as has been successfully demonstrated by Boreham and co-authors for Australian gases (Boreham et al. 2001). However, influences of source, maturity, and biodegradation processes on the molecular and isotopic composition of these compounds have to be evaluated carefully. The relative abundance of the wet gases ($C_2$–$C_5$) will decrease and their $\delta^{13}C$ will shift to less negative values with biodegradation. The isotopic composition of the original methane will be influenced by additional biogenic methane with light isotopic composition ($<-60\%$). The $\delta^{13}C$ values of natural gas constituents from different Australian basins, which are influenced by biodegradation, show large isotopic separations between successive $n$-alkane homologues, and $^{13}C$-enriched CO$_2$ (up to $+19.5\%$) (Pallasser 2000). Also in deep hot reservoirs ($\sim2900$ m below sea level, $\sim80–115$ $\degree\text{C}$), the $\delta^{13}C$ values of natural gas constituents indicated that they have been overprinted by biological processes (Milkov and Dzou 2007). In addition to field studies, laboratory experiments demonstrated that the anaerobic degradation of propane and $n$-butane resulted in significant carbon isotope fractionation ($\Delta\delta^{13}C$ up to $15\%$) (Kniemeyer et al. 2007; Jaekel et al. 2014).

Shifts in $\delta^{13}C$ of $C_5$–$C_9$ hydrocarbons of crude oils have been used as qualitative indicators of biodegradation processes. In the Barrow Island oilfield, Australia, that shows minor to moderate biodegradation, quite distinct patterns of changes in $\delta^{13}C$ have been observed (George et al. 2002). Here, cyclohexane, methylcyclohexane,
and the branched alkanes show isotopic shifts up to 10% to higher δ¹³C values within a set of six oil samples. Whereas nC₆ and nC₇ show quite similar δ¹³C values between −28 and −26‰ (George et al. 2002). This is in contrast to results from West Sak oils from the North Slope, Alaska where isotope fractionation of n-alkanes has been reported to be larger than for cyclic and branched alkanes (Masterson et al. 2001).

Biodegradation processes of hydrocarbons in oil reservoirs can be described and quantified by, for example, changes in the molecular composition (Elias et al. 2007) but also by changes in the carbon isotopic composition of the residual substrate fraction (Vieth and Wilkes 2006). The increase in the concentration ratio iC₅/nC₅ provides valuable information about biodegradation in oil reservoirs because it is known that the branched hydrocarbon is less susceptible to biodegradation than the n-alkane (Welte et al. 1982). The changes in the iC₅/nC₅ ratio in oil samples from three different petroleum systems are therefore indicative of light to moderate biodegradation (Fig. 2). The increase in the iC₅/nC₅ ratio is correlated to increasing δ¹³C values of iC₅ and nC₅. It is obvious for all oil fields that the δ¹³C values of iC₅ are slightly more negative than the δ¹³C values of nC₅ and show a smaller ¹³C-enrichment with increase in the iC₅/nC₅ ratios (Fig. 2).

Evaluation of the carbon isotope and concentration data for iC₅ and nC₅ using the Rayleigh equation (2) indicates that the Rayleigh model can be applied here. It turns out that the isotope fractionation factors for iC₅ are identical in Norway (Gullfaks)
and Angola, and that the fractionation factors for \( nC_5 \) are very similar (Fig. 3) (Wilkes et al. 2008). This may indicate that the extent of isotopic fractionation of individual hydrocarbons due to biodegradation is very similar in different petroleum systems, even if the molecular patterns of alteration are different. The carbon isotope and concentration data of the Troll oil samples have not been included in the Rayleigh evaluation because all oil samples have a relatively similar extent of biodegradation (Barman Skaare et al. 2007). For an unambiguous assessment of biodegradation, a reliable nonbiodegraded (end-member) oil sample is necessary to provide the initial isotopic composition and concentration of \( iC_5 \) and \( nC_5 \).

The application of compound-specific isotope analysis to assess in-reservoir biodegradation has certain restrictions. Carbon isotope fractionation of the residual substrate occurs in the first irreversible reaction, which mechanistically takes place at (a) certain specific carbon atom(s) of the substrate in most known cases. Therefore, the observable isotope effect will become less observable with increasing number of carbon atoms in the molecule that are not involved in the crucial transformation (Boreham et al. 1995). Dilution of the fractionation effect limits the application of the Rayleigh approach to light hydrocarbons (Morasch et al. 2004; Wilkes et al. 2008). Therefore, the compound-specific carbon isotope ratios of C\textsubscript{15+} hydrocarbons will not be significantly affected by biodegradation processes and can still be used as specific indicators of the origin of the oil as well as for oil-oil and oil-source correlations (Vieth and Wilkes 2006).

![Fig. 3](image-url) Concentration and $\delta^{13}$C of \( iC_5 \) (squares) and \( nC_5 \) (circles) for oil samples from the Gullfaks field (dark grey symbols; data taken from Vieth and Wilkes 2006) and an oil field offshore Angola (light grey symbols; data taken from Wilkes et al. 2008), plotted according to the Rayleigh equation as $\ln R/R_0$ over $\ln F$. (Originally published in Vieth and Wilkes 2010, published with kind permission of © Springer Science+Business Media New York, 2003. All rights reserved)
Based on the assumption that only light hydrocarbons show an observable carbon isotope fractionation related to biodegradation processes, it becomes clear that the carbon isotopic composition of whole oils and individual oil fractions (e.g., saturated and aromatic hydrocarbons) will not show significant changes due to biodegradation (Sofer 1984; Stahl 1980; Sun et al. 2005). Within bulk oils, the isotopic signatures of components which show a significant fractionation will be overprinted by the isotopic signatures of non-degraded oil constituents that become relatively $^{13}$C-enriched. Hydrocarbons from $C_{15+}$ saturates and $C_{11+}$ aromatics oil fractions are generally made up of larger compounds which are not expected to show significant fractionation due to biodegradation (Wilkes et al. 2008).

For hydrogen isotope fractionation due to biodegradation, the same principal behavior would be expected. In general, hydrogen isotope fractionation tends to be one order of magnitude larger than carbon isotope fractionation due to the higher relative mass difference between the two isotopes. Therefore, the dilution effect will become relevant at a higher number of hydrogen atoms being present within the substrate molecule. This is in agreement with results of aerobic degradation experiments where the hydrogen isotopic composition of long-chain alkanes ($nC_{19}$ to $nC_{27}$) did not change significantly (Pond et al. 2002). Sun et al. (2005) studied seven oils from the lacustrine Shahejie Formation of the Liaohe Basin in NE China, showing biodegradation levels from none to heavy. The δD values of the $n$-alkanes increased from roughly $-175\%$ to $-140\%$ with the increase in biodegradation level. Asif et al. (2009) studied a series of oils with low extents of biodegradation from the Upper Indus Basin in Pakistan. Here, $n$-alkanes between $nC_{14}$ and $nC_{22}$ had quite uniform δD values in each sample, but deviated from $-166$ to $-127\%$ (average δD value for $nC_{14}$ to $nC_{22}$) with assumed increase in biodegradation. The isoprenoid hydrocarbons pristane and phytane did not change their δD values in relation to biodegradation, the variability in average δD for pristane and phytane was between $-162$ and $-141\%$. Based on these results, the authors developed an approach that uses the difference in δD values between pristane, phytane, and the $n$-alkanes as indicator of biodegradation.

Additional insight into the biodegradation mechanisms related to aerobic or anaerobic biodegradation of individual saturated and aromatic hydrocarbons will be provided by combined evaluation of carbon and hydrogen isotope compositions. In the last decade, several biodegradation experiments were performed where carbon and hydrogen isotope fractionation related to aerobic as well as anaerobic degradation of selected hydrocarbons was characterized (e.g., Fischer et al. 2008; Vogt et al. 2008; Jaekel et al. 2014; review provided by Vogt et al. 2016). Here, most well-known microbial transformation reactions of hydrocarbons were investigated and it became obvious that especially the anaerobic degradation processes can be identified by combined evaluation of carbon and hydrogen isotope data (Vogt et al. 2016). In contrast to laboratory experiments, the hydrogen isotope ratios of light hydrocarbons in crude oils may not show a clear dependence on biodegradation processes. It has been suggested that in petroleum reservoirs, in addition to differences in maturity and source, the effects of hydrogen exchange between oil and formation water over geologic times have also to be considered (Sessions et al. 2004; Sessions 2016).
Thermochemical sulphate reduction (TSR) is the abiological reduction of sulphate by hydrocarbons in reservoirs close to anhydrite (source of sulphate) at high temperatures (range of minimum temperature between 100 °C and 140 °C) (Machel 2001). Some types of hydrocarbons are more susceptible to TSR than others, for example, C$_2$–C$_5$ gases are more reactive than methane and saturated hydrocarbons are more reactive than aromatic hydrocarbons (Peters et al. 2005). This is confirmed by the observation that larger isotopic shifts (e.g., up to 22‰) occur during TSR for the branched and $n$-alkanes, whereas relatively smaller shifts (e.g., 3–6‰) have been found for the cyclic and monoaromatic hydrocarbons (Rooney 1995). Whiticar and Snowdon reported changes during TSR in $\delta^{13}$C of individual hydrocarbons of the C$_5$–C$_8$ range by up to 10‰ (Whiticar and Snowdon 1999). In experimental studies using sealed gold tubes for pyrolysis of oil in the presence or absence of mineral phases and water, Xiao and co-authors observed that low-molecular weight cycloalkanes, $n$-alkanes, and isoalkanes are more susceptible to TSR and tend to become more $^{13}$C-enriched. Low-molecular weight monoaromatic hydrocarbons are the most resistant to TSR and show only small isotopic variation. Therefore, isotopic signature of saturated alkanes in TSR-altered oils cannot be used for oil-oil and oil-source correlations (Xiao et al. 2011).

4 Research Needs

In order to strengthen the application of stable carbon and hydrogen isotopes as valuable process indicators for an improved understanding of petroleum generation, reservoir filling, and secondary alteration, it is necessary to deepen the insight into the hydrogen exchange processes occurring in petroleum reservoirs over geological time scales. The role of mineralogy in catalyzing hydrogen isotopic exchange, the effect of salinity of the formation water as well as temperature on the D/H exchange have not been fully understood and quantified until now (Sessions 2016). Such research would help to evaluate compound-specific hydrogen isotope ratios of petroleum hydrocarbons. In the last decade, multi-element isotope analysis was often applied to decipher details in microbial degradation pathways in laboratory experiments but also in field studies, with focus on contaminated aquifers. However, the application of multi-element isotope analysis in petroleum reservoir studies is still missing, probably due to the problems in differentiating the main controls on the hydrogen isotope composition on petroleum hydrocarbons.

References

Peters KE, Moldowan JM, Driscoll AR, Demaison GJ (1989) Origin of Beatrice oil by co-sourcing from Devonian and Middle Jurassic source rocks, inner Moray Firth, United Kingdom. AAPG Bull 73:454–471
The Origin of Organic Sulphur Compounds and Their Impact on the Paleoenvironmental Record

Ilya Kutuzov, Yoav O. Rosenberg, Andrew Bishop, and Alon Amrani

Contents

1 Introduction ............................................................................. 356

2 Nomenclature, Methods, and Instrumentation for the Characterization of Sedimentary Organic Sulphur Compounds ............................................................... 357

2.1 Nomenclature and Chemical and Thermal Treatment for the Analysis of Organic S ............................................................... 357

2.2 Instrumentation for the Analysis of Organic S ....................................... 359

2.3 Sulphur and Carbon Isotope Analysis ........................................... 359

3 The Marine Sulphur Cycle and Its Impact on Organic Matter ....................... 362

3.1 The Link Between the Sulphur and Organic Carbon Cycles ..................... 362

3.2 Mechanism of Abiotic Sulphurization .......................................... 366

3.3 Timing of Abiotic Sulphurization ..................................................... 367

3.4 Sulphurization as OM Preservation Mechanism .................................. 370

3.5 Other Possible Sources for Sedimentary Organic Sulphur ....................... 372

3.6 The Formation and Structural Modifications of Sedimentary OSC During Catagenesis .............................................................. 375

4 Application of Organic Sulphur Compounds in Paleoenvironmental Research .......... 376

4.1 n-Alkanes ........................................................................... 376

4.2 Long-Chain C_{37−C_{39}} Alkenes and Alkenones .................................. 380

4.3 Phytol-Derived and Phytol-Related Isoprenoids .................................... 381

4.4 Highly Branched Isoprenoids (HBIs) and Their Sulphur-Containing Derivatives .. 386

I. Kutuzov · A. Amrani (*)
The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Jerusalem, Israel
e-mail: ilya.kutuzov@mail.huji.ac.il; alon.amrani@mail.huji.ac.il

Y. O. Rosenberg
The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, Jerusalem, Israel

Geological Survey of Israel, Jerusalem, Israel
e-mail: yoavr@gsi.gov.il

A. Bishop
Power, Environmental and Energy Research Institute, Covina, CA, USA
e-mail: andy.bishop@peeri.org

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020

H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_1
Abstract

Over the past three decades, significant scientific progress has been achieved in the field of sedimentary organic sulphur compounds (OSC). Advances include structural identification, formation pathways, sulphur and carbon isotopic signatures of OSC, and their significance with respect to the paleoenvironmental record. The scope of the present review covers these efforts and highlights future directions in the field.

Initially, we review the marine sulphur cycle and its coupling to the carbon cycle from modern sediments to thermally immature sedimentary rocks. Microbial sulphate reduction (MSR) is a central process in providing reduced sulphur (e.g., HS⁻) which reacts abiotically with organic matter, on a very rapid (geological) timescale (<10,000 years), leading to its preservation. The S isotopic fractionation during MSR is significant, which subsequently leads to sedimentary OSC with very distinctive δ³⁴S signature from that of biochemical OSC. Evaluating S isotope values on bulk fractions (e.g., kerogen), as well as individual OSC, can shed light on their formation pathways, the relative contributions of biochemically derived and abiotic sulphur, and competition with inorganic S pathways (e.g., organic S incorporation versus pyrite formation). New reservoirs of OSC (volatile, dissolved, and particulate), some of which comprise biochemically sourced sulphur, have been recently identified. Their role in the S cycle with respect to sedimentary OM is an ongoing research question.

We further discuss the progress made on specific groups of OSC as paleoenvironmental indicators. For each group, we first briefly highlight their significance as biomarkers. Then, we discuss aspects related to their sulphurization sites, rates and extent of sulphurization, preservation, and biases of the geological record resulting from the sulphurization process. New frontiers, both on the analytical level and in terms of our conceptual view of the sulphur cycle, are also highlighted.

1 Introduction

Sedimentary organic sulphur compounds (OSC) are a ubiquitous class of compounds, which directly reflect the prevailing mechanisms of organic matter (OM) preservation, thereby recording the paleoenvironmental signature (Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw 1990; Werne et al. 2004). Thousands of sedimentary OSC, some with assumed biomarker carbon skeletons, were identified during the 1980s
(Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw 1990) and in the following decades (Adam et al. 1991; Kohnen et al. 1993; Schaeffer et al. 1993, 1995, 2006; Sinninghe Damsté and Rijpstra 1993; Vairavamurthy et al. 1994; Poinot et al. 1997; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1999; Squier et al. 2003; van Dongen et al. 2006; Junium et al. 2011). Some sulphurized compounds are linked to a precursor biomarker, but many are still of unknown affinity (e.g., Poinot et al. 1998; Pancost et al. 2001). Most of these OSCs result from secondary incorporation of sulphur into the OM during early diagenesis (“sulphurization”). This process imparts a substantial overprint on the resulting molecular signature, with consequences for paleoenvironmental interpretation (Kohnen et al. 1991a, 1992; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1995; Koopmans et al. 1997; Köster et al. 1997; Kok et al. 2000a). Since the landmark review by Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw (1990), several other papers have discussed specific aspects of sedimentary OSC (Aizenshtat et al. 1995; Anderson and Pratt 1995; Aizenshtat and Amrani 2004a, b; Werne et al. 2004; Amrani 2014; Greenwood et al. 2015).

This review considers the biogeochemistry of sedimentary OSC, their formation pathways, and their effect on the biomarker distributions in young sediments and immature sedimentary rocks, focusing on advances documented since Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw (1990).

The term sediments is used synonymously when its age is not important for the discussion. When it is, we use the term young sediments for recent or modern systems (i.e., mainly not older than Holocene, 10,000 years), in which the sediments were not necessarily lithified and sulphurization processes are still active (see Sect. 3.3), and the term immature sedimentary rocks when dealing with older sediments that were lithified, but were not matured thermally (at least not extensively). The linkages of the marine sulphur and organic carbon cycles are discussed, which is essential to understanding the information that OSCs convey. This synthesis includes the more “traditional” view of sulphur incorporation, leading to the formation of sulphurized biomarkers, but highlights recent work suggesting possible new sources of sedimentary OSC. We then survey the progress made in identifying sulphurized biomarkers and how they affect paleoenvironmental records. Though the use of OSC as proxies for maturation and other thermochemical processes is extensive and important, it is beyond the scope of the current review and will only be discussed briefly.

2 Nomenclature, Methods, and Instrumentation for the Characterization of Sedimentary Organic Sulphur Compounds

2.1 Nomenclature and Chemical and Thermal Treatment for the Analysis of Organic S

Sedimentary OSCs comprise thousands of structures that can be found either in insoluble (e.g., protokerogen, kerogen) or soluble (polar and nonpolar) fractions of the OM. Table 1 summarizes the nomenclature and structures of the main sulphur moieties. Organic matter is often operationally divided into different fractions:
kerogen (insoluble in organic solvents) and the soluble fractions, e.g., asphaltenes (polar and macromolecular fraction), saturates (apolar), aromatics (slightly polar), and nitrogen, sulphur, and oxygen compounds (polar), with the saturate and aromatic fractions containing OSC amenable to gas chromatography (GC). These fractions might be considered to form a continuum, with decreasing size, heteroatom content, and polarity (Tissot 1984; Orr 1986). The preservation and distribution of these fractions highly depends on sulphurization at the molecular level, as well as on oxygen and nitrogen cross-linking (Koopmans et al. 1996a; Putschew et al. 1998; Farrimond et al. 2003; Amrani et al. 2007; McKee and Hatcher 2010). For example, pyrolysates of the asphaltene and kerogen fractions from an Upper Jurassic carbonate source rock exhibit striking similarities, except that the asphaltene has a lower OSC content. This suggests that the asphaltene differs from the kerogen primarily in terms of the number and nature of intermolecular linkages (van Kaam-Peters and Sinninghe Damsté 1997).

Several different analytical approaches can be used to effectively characterize sedimentary OSC constituents, including various preparative methods to make the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound class</th>
<th>Structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thiol (mercaptan)</td>
<td>RSH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphide (thioether)</td>
<td>RS-S-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiane</td>
<td>S-S-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiolane (tetrahydrothiophene)</td>
<td>R-S-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disulphide or polysulphide</td>
<td>S-S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic S (thiophene)</td>
<td>S-R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fused aromatic S (benzothiophene)</td>
<td>S-R (fused)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphone</td>
<td>SO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphoxide</td>
<td>SO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1  Common sulphur moieties in sedimentary organic matter. R represents H or alkyl group.
OSC amenable for measurement. For example, chemical or thermal degradation methods need to be applied to macromolecular and polar fractions, cleaving either C-S or S-S bonds, in order to release compounds bound by sulphur linkages. The common approaches for the study of OSC are presented in Table 2. This is not an exhaustive list, but provides a comprehensive overview of the most commonly applied approaches. Care needs to be taken as to which methods are applied, as some methods may mask original sulphur signatures.

2.2 Instrumentation for the Analysis of Organic S

Once OSCs are liberated from the macrostructure (e.g., asphaltene, kerogen), using chemical or thermal methods, their concentration, structural, and isotopic analysis requires liquid chromatography and other analytical techniques, some of which are specific for S compounds (Table 2). In young sediments and immature sedimentary rocks, many of the OSC are not thermally stable, especially those moieties with S-S bonds (Table 1). Because of their high reactivity, it is important to note that they can thermally react upon GC analysis, either in the injection port or on the column, and generate artificial OSC (Krein 1993; Schouten et al. 1994). Therefore, the characterization of OSC in young sediments should be performed with caution, preferably with the application of appropriate chemical degradation methods (e.g., MeLi/MeI, Table 2).

The most common separation and detection technique for sedimentary OSC is GC with a sulphur-specific detector, such as flame photometric detector (FPD) or sulphur chemiluminescence detector (SCD). Identification of the various OSCs, and quantification of lower abundance species, is typically performed by gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS), with interrogation of the characteristic mass fragment ions for each of the major compound groups (e.g., Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw 1990). Other techniques and instruments (e.g., X-ray absorption near edge structure, Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry (FT-ICR-MS)) are used for elemental analysis, determination of sulphur functionality distribution, and mass spectrometry of non-GC-amenable components, such as the kerogen, asphaltene, and polar fractions (Table 2).

2.3 Sulphur and Carbon Isotope Analysis

Since isotope chemistry is essential in understanding the geochemical processes discussed here, some basic definitions are given.

The isotopic value of a certain element is defined as:

\[
\delta^X = \left[ \frac{({}^H X/{}^L X)_{\text{sample}}}{({}^H X/{}^L X)_{\text{standard}}} - 1 \right]
\]

where \(X\) is the element (e.g., S) and the superscript H and L denote the fraction of the heavy and light isotopes, respectively (e.g., \(^{34}\text{S}\) and \(^{32}\text{S}\) or \(^{13}\text{C}\) and \(^{12}\text{C}\)). The ratio
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Approach</th>
<th>Chemical consideration</th>
<th>Method(s) or instruments</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Refs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemical cleavage</td>
<td>Selective for S-S and S-H bonds</td>
<td>MeLi/MeI LiAlH₄</td>
<td>Cleaves S-S bonds and methylates the S attached to carbon (MeLi/MeI) or reduces it to the thiol (LiAlH₄)</td>
<td>[1, 2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any S-S and C-S bonds for solvent-soluble OM (polar, asphaltene)</td>
<td>Raney nickel Nickel boride</td>
<td>Open cyclic structures. Hydrogenation step may be required following Raney Ni. Ni boride is better for less soluble fractions and allows deuteration</td>
<td>[3, 4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any S-S and C-S bonds for non-soluble OM (kerogen)</td>
<td>Li/EtNH₂ Ni(0)cene/ LiAlH₄</td>
<td>Labelling with deuterium is possible</td>
<td>[5–7]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal cleavage</td>
<td>Nonselective</td>
<td>Flash pyrolysis</td>
<td>High temperature (~610 °C) and short time pyrolysis (~10 s), online coupling to GC. Products do not preserve their original carbon skeleton</td>
<td>[8, 9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nonselective</td>
<td>Closed system hydrous/ anhydrous pyrolysis</td>
<td>Medium temperatures (~160–360 °C), keeping some of the biomarkers intact for a later offline GC analysis A more time-consuming approach and the maximum yield of the biomarkers vary significantly with pyrolysis temperature. Useful for laboratory simulations of maturation</td>
<td>[10–14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach</td>
<td>Chemical consideration</td>
<td>Method(s) or instruments</td>
<td>Comments</td>
<td>Refs$^b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonselective Hydro (H$_2$)-pyrolysis</td>
<td>Hydro (H$_2$)-pyrolysis</td>
<td>Thermal cleavage under H$_2$ pressure maximizes the fraction of GC-amenable products for offline analysis, while structural rearrangement of biomarker species is minimal. The effect of the catalyst used ((NH$_4$)$_2$MoO$_2$S$_2$) on the compound-specific $\delta^{34}$S values is not yet known.</td>
<td>[15–18]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isotopic analysis</td>
<td>Bulk OM</td>
<td>Isotope-ratio mass spectrometry (IRMS)</td>
<td>Most common is elemental analyzer coupled with IRMS. Kerogen must be isolated offline from other sulphur and mineral phases. For a precise quartet sulphur isotope analysis, fluorination to SF$_6$ is needed.</td>
<td>[19, 20]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GC-IRMS</td>
<td>Measured on apolar volatile compounds. S isotope analysis is achieved by a GC coupled with multicollector inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (GC/MC-ICPMS). Often liquid chromatography is needed before isotope analysis.</td>
<td>[21, 22]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GC/MC-ICPMS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elemental analysis</td>
<td>High-resolution mass determination, providing molecular elemental composition</td>
<td>Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry (FT-ICR MS)</td>
<td>Solid-phase extraction technique for water-soluble compounds (DOM) should precede the FT-ICR MS analysis.</td>
<td>[23–25]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
between these two isotopes in a sample is normalized to an internationally accepted standard (e.g., Vienna Canyon Diablo Troilite (V-CDT) in the case of sulphur). The $\delta^{\text{HX}}$ notation is a relative scale, expressed as a per-mil (‰) deviation of the sample from that of the standard. Negative values of $\delta^{\text{HX}}$ imply that the element in the sample is “lighter” compared to the internationally defined standard, while positive values are considered to be “heavier.”

For a given reaction, the isotopic fractionation generated by it is defined as:

$$\varepsilon_{\text{A} \rightarrow \text{B}} = \left( \frac{\delta^{\text{H}}X_{\text{B}} - 1,000}{\delta^{\text{H}}X_{\text{A}} - 1,000} \right) - 1$$

(2)

where the subscripts A and B denote the reagent (e.g., SO$_4^{2-}$) and product (e.g., H$_2$S), respectively, for a given reaction (e.g., sulphate reduction). The most common methods for sulphur ($^{34}\text{S}/^{32}\text{S}$) and carbon ($^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}$) isotope analysis are described in Table 2.

### 3 The Marine Sulphur Cycle and Its Impact on Organic Matter

#### 3.1 The Link Between the Sulphur and Organic Carbon Cycles

Sulphur, with its multiple oxidation states (from −2 to +6), participates in many biochemical processes in conjugation with the carbon cycle, such as biosynthesis of proteins, and as electron donor/acceptor for respiration (Sievert et al. 2007). Hence,
these two elements mutually affect the fate of each other through their biogeochemical cycles. Figure 1 conceptually illustrates the coupling between sulphur and organic carbon in the marine system. Sulphate (SO$_4^{2-}$, oxidation state S$^{6+}$) is the most stable form of sulphur in the ocean today. It participates in two major biochemical processes, which eventually reduce it into H$_2$S, namely, **assimilatory sulphate reduction** (point # 1a, Fig. 1) and **dissimilatory sulphate reduction** (point # 2, Fig. 1).

Assimilatory sulphate reduction (ASR) is the metabolic pathway employed by organisms to incorporate SO$_4^{2-}$ into constituents of the living cell. In this process, sulphate is enzymatically reduced first to sulphite and then to H$_2$S, whereupon the sulphide can be incorporated into, e.g., the amino acids cysteine and methionine (Schiff 1980). Each reaction step requires ATP, and thus it is an energy-consuming process (Takahashi et al. 2011). This is a fundamental biochemical process, given sulphur’s essential requirement for life. Quantitatively, sulphur constitutes on average about 1% of the dry mass of living organisms (Shen and Buick 2004; Sievert et al. 2007), with a Redfield ratio similar to phosphorus (C$_{124}$N$_{16}$P$_1$S$_{1.3}$K$_{1.7}$) in many marine phytoplanktons (Ho et al. 2003). Because in this pathway sulphur is biologically incorporated into functional molecules needed by living organisms (e.g., as the amino acid cysteine, point #1b in Fig. 1), it is termed a **biotic sulphurization** pathway.

Dissimilatory sulphate reduction is a fundamentally different type of process. In many environments on Earth, such as below the water-sediment interface of aquatic systems, oxygen becomes depleted. Important groups of bacteria and archaea, known as **microbial sulphate reducers** (MSR), are capable of using SO$_4^{2-}$ as the electron acceptor for respiration. This ubiquitous process of anaerobic environments is termed **dissimilatory sulphate reduction** since the reduced sulphur species (typically H$_2$S) is released back into the environment (point # 2 in Fig. 1; Rabus et al. 2006). The dissimilatory sulphate reduction process utilizes organic matter as the electron donor and is an energy-yielding metabolic process. It has a critical effect on both the carbon and sulphur cycles. Studies on young sediments suggest that this process can remineralize up to ~80 to 90% of initially buried organic carbon (Kasten and Jørgensen 2000 and references therein). However, the H$_2$S produced will rapidly react with available iron to form pyrite (point #7, Fig. 1) or be available to react with the remaining dead OM via **abiotic sulphurization** (points # 8–10, Fig. 1), thus fostering OM preservation.

Pyrite is usually the major sink for reduced sulphur species in the geological record, with sedimentary OSC being the second largest sink (Berner and Raiswell 1983; Berner 1984; Werne et al. 2004). In some cases (e.g., carbonate depositional environments) such as in the Gharab Formation, limited iron availability leads to sedimentary OSC becoming the major sink (Minster et al. 1992; Alsenz et al. 2015). It has also been suggested that sulphurization of OM can even compete with pyrite formation, despite the presence of Fe (Urban et al. 1999; Filley et al. 2002; Shawar et al. 2018). Thus, understanding the interplay between organic carbon, reduced sulphur, and iron in a sedimentary sequence is essential to paleoenvironmental interpretation. Like OSC, the formation of pyrite also depends on the supply of
Fig. 1 (continued)
labile OM (Schoonen 2004), and clear correlations between pyritic S and total organic carbon (TOC) have been demonstrated (Berner and Raiswell 1983; Berner 1984). Accordingly, cross plots and ternary diagrams using bulk elemental concentrations (i.e., total S, Fe, and organic C) can be applied to elucidate the oxidation state of young and ancient environments (Dean and Arthur 1989; Morse and Emeis 1992; Leventhal 1995).

### 3.1.1 Isotopic Evidence for the Abiotic Sulphurization Pathway of Sedimentary Organic Matter

The assimilatory and dissimilatory sulphate reduction pathways have distinctive isotopic fractionations for sulphur ($\varepsilon_{\text{Assimilatory}} = -1$ to $-3\%$ (Kaplan and Rittenberg 1964), $\varepsilon_{\text{Dissimilatory}} = -20$ to $-75\%$ (see summary table in Brunner and Bernasconi 2005; Sim et al. 2011)). The very light $\delta^{34}S$ generated by the dissimilatory pathways recorded in pyrite was suggested as evidence that microbial sulphate reducers are one of the most ancient forms of life on Earth, dated back to 3.47 Ga (Shen and Buick 2004). Similarly, the large isotopic difference between the assimilatory and dissimilatory pathways is a powerful evidence for the significance of the abiotic sulphurization in sedimentary OM (Amrani 2014).

Abiotic sulphurization, based on isotopic mass balance consideration, is estimated to account for at least 75–90% of total sedimentary organic sulphur (Anderson and Pratt 1995; Werne et al. 2004). Biosynthetic OSCs are generally biologically and chemically labile, typically being remineralized quickly (points # 3–4, Fig. 1). In contrast, secondary OSCs from abiotic sulphurization are more stable and less accessible to microbial degradation (Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw 1990; Grice et al. 1998). Therefore, it is expected that in the course of diagenesis, the fraction of secondary sulphur will increase over that of primary biosynthetic, through both the degradation of biosynthetic compounds and also via the incorporation of inorganic S species (Aizenshtat et al. 1983; Mossmann et al. 1991).

The pathways and the role of abiotic sulphurization on the OM are discussed in more detail below. However, new studies on sulphur of biotic origin raise new questions on the role of biotic sulphurization in the sedimentary record and are addressed in more detail in Sect. 3.5.

---

**Fig. 1** A conceptual drawing of the marine sulphur cycle and its coupling to the organic carbon cycle. Annotated numbers showing important pathways as discussed in the text: Assimilatory sulphate reduction pathway, introducing OSC of biogenic origin (1), while dissimilatory sulphate reduction generates reduced sulphur species (2). The biotic OSC are labile and undergo biological and chemical alteration (3), some of which can be further remineralized back to $\text{SO}_4^{2-}$ (4), degassed to the atmosphere as volatile OSC (5), or sink to the sediment. The assimilatory reduced sulphur (e.g., $\text{HS}^-$) can be oxidized (6) and can react with iron to precipitate pyrite (7) or with OM leading to different pathways of secondary sulphurization (7–11) and OM preservation. Exchange of S between these different fractions of OSC (free and bound) is possible during diagenesis (12).
3.2 Mechanism of Abiotic Sulphurization

Abiotic sulphurization pathway requires three main biogeochemical conditions (Werne et al. 2004; Amrani 2014): (1) presence of reduced S species, (2) low concentration of metal ions, and (3) supply of reactive organic compounds. While H$_2$S is supplied by the MSR, subsequent biological and chemical oxidation processes produce elemental S and S$_x^{2-}$ (point # 6, Fig. 1). Polysulphide anions are stronger nucleophiles and thus react faster with organic compounds than H$_2$S/HS$^-$ (LaLonde et al. 1987; Loch et al. 2002; Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004c; Wu et al. 2006). The presence of reduced sulphur species (HS$^-$, S$_x^{2-}$) thereby facilitates sulphur incorporation into OM, while metal ions forming insoluble sulphides, especially Fe (II), compete with OM for the available sulphur. When metal ions are in low concentrations (e.g., carbonate environments) sulphur incorporation into OM is often favored. In some settings, sulphurization of OM may compete with pyrite formation despite the presence of Fe (Urban et al. 1999; Filley et al. 2002). More specifically, it was suggested that in OM-rich and Fe-poor environments, iron species can be scavenged by organic compounds to form Fe-organic complexes, thus limiting the formation of pyrite and enhancing the formation of OSC (Shawar et al. 2018). Finally, not all OM may react with the available reduced sulphur species. Rather, a supply of organic compounds with appropriate functional groups (e.g., conjugated double bonds, carbonyl groups), which can react with reduced sulphur species, is required.

The potential and rate of a given biomarker to undergo abiotic sulphurization strongly depends on the reactivity of the organic precursor, with the carbonyl functionality and conjugated double bond systems being the most reactive (Schouten et al. 1994; Adam et al. 2000; Kok et al. 2000a; Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004a). Prior to sulphurization, early diagenetic changes (point # 3, Fig. 1) can increase the sulphurization potential of some compounds by altering less reactive functionalities (e.g., isolated double bonds, alcohols) to more labile moieties, such as carbonyl groups and conjugated double bonds (Grossi et al. 1998; Rontani et al. 1999; Schaeffer et al. 2006; Blumenberg et al. 2010). Inorganic reduced S species (e.g., HS$^-$, S$_x^{2-}$) attack the functional sites of organic precursors via nucleophilic, electrophilic, or radical mechanisms, generating an initial C-S bond (Amrani 2014). Some of these initially formed C-S bonds and S-S bonds subsequently undergo continuous exchange with the surrounding inorganic reduced sulphur pool (Amrani et al. 2006). The specific chemical mechanisms for sulphurization are still a matter of debate and are beyond the scope of this review. The interested reader is referred to other reviews that summarized previous works, under variable chemical and physical conditions, that attempted to simulate sulphurization in the laboratory (Krein 1993; Werne et al. 2004; Amrani 2014).

Abiotic sulphurization can proceed via two general pathways, intramolecular and intermolecular sulphurization which lead to free OSC and bound OSC products, respectively (Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw 1990). An intramolecular S cyclic structure is formed if the S-bound can create another S-C bond on the same molecule (point # 8, Fig. 1). Common S moieties that form by the intramolecular pathway are
thianes, thiolanes, thiophenes, benzothiophenes, and dibenzothiophenes (Table 1, Fig. 4; Krein 1993). In this context, aromatic compounds are usually indicative of OM which is more thermally mature (Krein and Aizenshtat 1995; Rosenberg et al. 2017). Intermolecular C-S and S-S cross-linkages may occur when a second bond on the same molecule cannot be formed (e.g., the next reactive site is too far or does not exist), enabling the S functionality to react with a second molecule (point # 9, Fig. 1). These compounds can form monosulphidic (C-S-C), disulphidic (C-S-S-C), or polysulphidic (C-Sx-C) bonds (Werne et al. 2004). Successive intermolecular sulphurization cross-links more and more compounds into a macromolecules, which eventually contributes to the formation of kerogen. It is important to note that cross-linking of organic compounds is not limited to sulphur bridges. Oxygen, and possibly nitrogen, also may play a role in the cross-linking of organic compounds and thus the preservation of OM in sediments (Koopmans et al. 1996a; Putschew et al. 1998; Farrimond et al. 2003; Amrani et al. 2007; McKee and Hatcher 2010).

The intramolecular sulphurization pathway creates OSC that, if not further bound into the macromolecule, may be found in the free, apolar fraction of petroleum and bitumen. The number of suitable functional groups of a given precursor will affect its sulphurization pathway (i.e., intermolecular, intramolecular, or both) and the mode of occurrence in an immature sedimentary rock (i.e., in the macromolecules or as a free OSC) (Kohnen et al. 1992). At early stages of diagenesis, different chemical alterations can take place leading to multiple routes of S addition (Schaeffer et al. 2006; Amrani 2014). Thus the occurrence of OSC with a given carbon skeleton in different fractions of the OM (free OSC and bound OSC) does not necessarily imply that these were two distinguished biological precursors. Moreover, it is important to note that through the diagenetic process, there may be interaction between free OSC and bound OSC fractions (point # 12, Fig. 1; Amrani et al. 2006).

Following the discussion above, OM is operationally divided into three pools: (1) free (GC-amenable) hydrocarbons that were not sulphurized; (2) free (GC-amenable) OSC that derive from intramolecular sulphurization and were not further cross-linked into the macromolecular structure, hereafter termed “free OSC”; and (3) S-bound (i.e. cross-linked) – compounds that were sulphurized intermolecularly into the macrostructure of the organic matter hereafter termed “bound OSC.”

### 3.3 Timing of Abiotic Sulphurization

Timescales of 60–10,000 years have been reported for the sulphurization of different compounds within the sediment column (Wakeham et al. 1995; Urban et al. 1999; Kok et al. 2000a, b; Werne et al. 2000; Farrimond et al. 2003; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2007). This reflects the fact that below the water-sediment interface, the environment becomes rapidly anoxic when burrowing macrofauna are absent (Werne et al. 2004). In extreme cases, extensive parts of the water column can be anoxic or even euxinic (e.g., Black Sea, Cariaco Basin; Wakeham et al. 2007; Raven et al. 2016), where the chemocline of O₂ is very shallow and H₂S is detected below
it. In such settings, abiotic sulphurization may occur within the water column as the organic particles sink through it, on a timescale of days (Raven et al. 2016). Such rapid sulphurization rates are supported by laboratory experiments, with reaction times ranging from minutes to weeks for different functionalities (Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004a).

When sulphurization rate is considered at the molecular level, additional complexity arises, thus affording further insight into the process and its paleoenvironmental significance. Since sulphurization depends (among other factors) on the reactivity of the precursor, different precursors will undergo sulphurization at different rates. For example, in young sediments of Ace Lake (Antarctica), Kok et al. (2000a) found that only steroid biomarkers were extensively sulphurized. Further into the diagenetic process (i.e., deeper sediments), other classes of biomarkers (e.g., isoprenoids, hopanoids) can be found primarily in a sulphurized form or even exclusively in the S-bound OSC fraction (e.g., the dinosteranes; Kohnen et al. 1992). The sulphurization process may continue deeper in the sediments, sulphurizing other, less reactive classes of organic compounds, fueled by other biogeochemical processes. For example, deeper in the sediments, where SO$_4^{2−}$ becomes depleted, a consortium of anaerobic methane-oxidizing bacteria and sulphate-reducing bacteria (AOM-SR) can produce significant amounts of H$_2$S (Kasten and Jørgensen 2000). The AOM-SR microbial consortium is constrained to a narrow depth interval at the sulphate-methane transition zone, but the overall effect is that the H$_2$S maxima is located between the zones of MSR and AOM-SR. Recently, Quijada et al. (2016) showed in the Cariaco Basin that the maximum of OM sulphurization is associated with this maxima of H$_2$S concentration between the MSR and AOM-SR zones.

3.3.1 Sulphur Isotope Considerations

In most young sediments, the δ$^{34}$S of all bulk phases (H$_2$S, SO$_4^{2−}$, pyrite, kerogen) increases with depth (Fig. 2) as a result of the MSR process acting in a closed system for sulphate (e.g., Werne et al. 2003). Both OSC and pyrite respond to this effect, but there is a S isotope difference between them, with an average discrepancy of 10‰ globally (Anderson and Pratt 1995). Several scenarios have been suggested to explain this phenomenon (see detailed discussion in Anderson and Pratt 1995; Amrani 2014). One such scenario is the potentially different timing of sulphurization for Fe and organic compounds. Indeed, reactive iron species are likely to outcompete organic compounds for reduced S species (Gransch and Poshtuma 1974; Hartgers et al. 1997), thereby taking the most $^{34}$S-depleted fraction from the MSR according to the Rayleigh distillation model. However, several studies have shown that during early diagenesis, OSC may form simultaneously with Fe sulphurization or even outcompete it (Bates et al. 1995; Brüchert and Pratt 1996; Urban et al. 1999; Filley et al. 2002; Werne et al. 2003; Riedinger et al. 2017). The variability in S isotopes as a result of the different timing of sulphurization and/or reactive S species may be recorded by specific OSC, whereas bulk S phases such as pyrite and kerogen average it out (Amrani 2014). Compound-specific sulphur isotope analysis (CSSIA) data may unravel this process (Amrani et al. 2009).
Raven et al. (2015) used CSSIA in young sediments from the Cariaco Basin. Large S isotopic variability between the different OSC was observed (up to 23‰). Moreover, they have shown an intriguing phenomenon where some specific OSCs were $^{34}$S-depleted relative to pyrite, while the bulk organic S was $^{34}$S-enriched compared to pyrite (Fig. 2). Raven et al. (2015) explained their observations by different sulphurization mechanisms, either kinetic or equilibrium effects that are associated with $^{34}$S depletion or enrichment of the OSC, respectively (Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004a; Amrani et al. 2008). They further suggested that the kerogen is $^{34}$S-enriched relative to the measured individual OSC because there is a significant contribution of $^{34}$S-enriched organic sulphur from the overlying water body (Raven et al. 2016).

In another recent CSSIA study on the immature Ghareb Formation, a wide range of $\delta^{34}$S values (up to 14‰) of individual OSC has also been observed.
Shawar et al. 2015). However, all of the measured OSC were $^{34}$S-enriched relative to the coexisting pyrite throughout the studied section (~350 m). The bigger variability in $\delta^{34}$S of OSC of the young Cariaco sediments (23‰) compared to the immature Ghareb Formation (14‰, Late Cretaceous) might reflect S isotope exchange and homogenization with inorganic S species and other diagenetic processes during later stages (Amrani et al. 2006; Rosenberg et al. 2017). It is also possible that some of the most reactive organic compounds in the Cariaco Basin may react with reduced S species shallower within the sediments than the reaction of S with Fe species to form Fe sulphides (Shawar et al. 2018). The timing of sulphurization in the Rayleigh distillation sequence probably dictates the $\delta^{34}$So of both pyrite and OSC. Formation of pyrite later than OSC may be the result of faster reaction kinetics of some organic compounds with reduced S, very high abundances of organic matter, or some hindrance to Fe sulphide formation as was suggested by Shawar et al. (2018). More detailed CSSIA studies from young sediments to mature rocks are needed to answer such questions.

3.4 Sulphurization as OM Preservation Mechanism

An important geochemical consequence of the sulphurization process is better preservation of the OM record. Because most components of living OM are chemically and biologically labile (e.g., proteins and carbohydrates), the preserved fraction in the sedimentary record is not necessarily representative of the original input. Upon diagenesis, more refractory compounds are preferentially preserved, and the initial distribution between terrestrial and marine input (see review by Arndt et al. 2013), or between plankton and heterotroph populations (Wakeham et al. 1997), can be distorted. Since sulphurization quenches reactive OM sites and binds biomolecules into macromolecules, it makes the organic matter less susceptible to microbial consumption (Kohnen et al. 1992; Werne et al. 2004). Sulphurization of biologically labile carbohydrates is another example of the important preservation role of sulphurization in euxinic environments (Kok et al. 2000b; van Dongen et al. 2006).

Indeed, many sedimentary rocks exhibit a strong correlation between bulk organic carbon and organic S, indicating that the fate of these elements is connected. Examples for such TOC-S$_{\text{organic}}$ correlation have been reported in the Monterey Formation (Zaback and Pratt 1992), the Kimmeridge Clay Formation (Lallier-Vergès et al. 1997), and the Ghareb Formation (Meilijson et al. 2015). Marine kerogens with atomic S-C ratios greater than ~0.04 are recognized as a unique type (type II-S, Orr 1986), reflecting the importance that S plays in preserving organic matter in such sedimentary rocks.

Another possible characteristic of preservation via sulphurization, notable at the molecular level, is suggested by compound-specific $^{13}$C isotope studies. Through a compilation of literature data, Rosenberg et al. (2018) have found a consistent difference between the $\delta^{13}$C of S-bound and free HC, where the former are heavier by 2 ± 1‰ on average (Fig. 3). The difference in $\delta^{13}$C between these two fractions is rather constant, regardless of the type of the biomarkers (i.e., $n$-alkanes,
isoprenoids, HBIs, hopanes), the source of the compounds (e.g., marine vs. terrestrial, autotrophic vs. heterotrophic), the age of the rock (~235 to 5 Ma), the range of $\delta^{13}C$ (from ~$-30$ to $-10\%$), and the prevailing paleoenvironment of each data point depicted in Fig. 3. The different mechanisms suggested to account for this difference include (A) kinetic isotope effects of the reactions involved in the sulphurization process (Schouten et al. 1995b) and (B) different sources of the original precursors of the biomarkers in the free HC and S-bound fraction having different $\delta^{13}C$ values (Kohnen et al. 1992; Grice et al. 1996).

Rosenberg et al. (2018) have suggested that a broader diagenetic process, such as the degradation of OM, may be responsible for the constant difference. As the free compound is more prone to degradation compared to its S-bound counterpart, it is possible that the $\delta^{13}C$ of the S-bound biomarker better represents the original $\delta^{13}C$ signature. Such preservation of the $\delta^{13}C$ record has significant geochemical

Fig. 3 $\delta^{13}C$ of S-bound biomarkers vs. $\delta^{13}C$ of free biomarkers for isoprenoid-based skeletons and fatty acids (a) and $n$-alkanes (b). Data was compiled from 17 different studies (e.g., Forster et al. 2008; Grice et al. 1996, 1998; Heftler et al. 1995; Kohnen et al. 1992; Putschew et al. 1995; Schouten et al. 1997, 2001, 1995b; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2007, 2008). The complete list of references and more details can be found in Rosenberg et al. (2018). Bold black line is the 1:1 agreement line. The fine line and the two dashed lines are the best fit and the 1 stdev envelope after adjusting the slope to unity in plot A (i.e., reflecting a 2 ± 1‰ constant difference between the two axes)
implications, as carbon isotopes are often used for precursor identification and paleo-$p$CO$_2$ estimations (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2008; Pagani 2014).

3.5 Other Possible Sources for Sedimentary Organic Sulphur

3.5.1 Volatile Organic Sulphur Compounds (VOSC) as a Possible Source to Sedimentary Organic Sulphur

In the photic zone of the ocean, some of the biogenic OSC are chemically or biologically altered and become volatile (hence, VOSC, point # 5, Fig. 1) such as methanethiol (MT), dimethyl sulphide (DMS), carbonyl sulphide (COS), and carbon disulphide (CS$_2$) (Liss et al. 1997). These VOSC are typically present in the surface ocean at low concentrations, in the range of $10^{-12}$ to $10^{-8}$ M (Mopper and Kieber 2002). Despite their low concentration, VOSC play a major role in the global sulphur cycle as they transfer sulphur from the ocean to the continents (Bates et al. 1992; Lomans et al. 2002; Lana et al. 2011). The most abundant oceanic VOSC is DMS that has been suggested to affect the Earth’s radiative balance and cloud formation (Charlson et al. 1987; Levasseur 2013). DMS is produced by the enzymatic cleavage of dimethylsulphoniopropionate (DMSP) which is biosynthesized by phytoplankton in vast amounts as an osmoregulator as well as for several other suggested functions (Stefels et al. 2007).

At the present time, ocean-derived DMS is the primary source of sulphur to the atmosphere (Bates et al. 1992; Gondwe et al. 2003), yet only a small fraction of VOSC produced in the ocean is released to the atmosphere. A complex set of reactions in the ocean can oxidize VOSC back to sulphate (point # 5, Fig. 1), or they can be consumed as sources of sulphur and carbon by microbial populations (Kiene and Linn 2000; Simó et al. 2009). Alternatively, VOSC can react with DOM or metals to form complexes and be deposited with the sediment (Stefels et al. 2007), where they may provide another source of S that participates in the formation of sedimentary OSC. The magnitude of this flux is as yet unknown.

Under anoxic conditions (e.g., stratified water body or sediment), VOSC can also be formed in situ (as opposed to transfer from the surface water) via different formation pathways (Lomans et al. 2002; Higgins et al. 2006). For example, DMS can be formed by microbial reduction of dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) and sequential methylation of H$_2$S (evolved from MSR) by enzymatic activity carried out by a variety of microorganisms, possibly including methanogens (Stets et al. 2004; Zhuang et al. 2017 and references therein).

Several studies provide isotopic evidence for the dissimilatory sulphur source of VOSC in anoxic environments. For example, Oduro et al. (2013) have shown that VOSC in stratified freshwater of Fayetteville Green Lake (NY, USA) are $^{34}$S-depleted, down to about $-30\%$, close to the coexisting H$_2$S $\delta^{34}$S value. These authors suggested a combination of biological and abiotic processes in the formation of VOSC that involved reactive sulphur species evolved from MSR and methyl groups of lignin components. In a compound-specific sulphur isotope study, DMS in the hypolimnion (during summer) of the freshwater Lake Kinneret (Israel) was $^{34}$S-depleted, similar to the coexisting H$_2$S (Sela-Adler et al. 2016). When the lake
was mixed (winter), DMS was $^{34}$S-enriched, similar to DMSP and coexisting sulphate as also observed in oxic oceanic basins (Oduro et al. 2012; Amrani et al. 2013). In the sediment of Lake Kinneret, DMS has mixed sources between dissimilatory S ($^{34}$S-depleted, e.g., methylation of H$_2$S) and assimilatory S ($^{34}$S-enriched) from the degradation of detrital OSC (Sela-Adler et al. 2016). Kiene (1988) was the first to identify this pool of “DMS” and suggested that the precursors could be sulphonium compounds or DMS that were absorbed to sediment particles and could only be released by a strong base treatment. This “base-hydrolyzable” DMS fraction is two to three orders of magnitude more concentrated (10–200 μmol/kg sediment) than the dissolved DMSP and DMS. Therefore, this fraction represents a significant quantity of S that might also contribute to CH$_4$ formation (by demethylation) in anoxic sediments (Kiene 1996). This is a widespread phenomenon, occurring in sediments from all over the world, including diverse settings such as freshwater lakes, salt marshes, subtidal, intertidal, carbonate, and across a range of water depths (Kiene 1988, 1996; Kiene and Service 1991; Sela-Adler et al. 2016; Zhuang et al. 2017). Vairavamurthy et al. (1997) have noted a similar phenomenon in marsh sediments from Shelter Island (NY, USA), since their “base-hydrolyzable” 3-mercaptopropionate (3-MPA) is another DMSP degradation product. Since such “base-hydrolyzable” fractions of OSC are associated with the sediment, they are protected from biodegradation and can escape mineralization at the very early stages of diagenesis (Kiene 1996). Vairavamurthy et al. (1997) estimated the age of the “base-hydrolyzable” 3-MPA to be 90 years, well into the timing of abiotic sulphurization of OM. Therefore, this “base-hydrolyzable” OSC, once released from its association with sediment particles, might react with other organic compounds to form secondary sulphur compounds (i.e., part of protokerogen or humic substances) that could be preserved through diagenesis. It has been shown that compounds such as thiols act as good nucleophiles for sulphurization and formation of other OSCs (Amrani et al. 2008). Hypothetically, it is therefore conceivable that some sulphurized biomarkers might carry sulphur from this source; that is, they will have an assimilatory heavy $\delta^{34}$S value. Combined compound-specific sulphur and carbon isotope determination for these “sediment-bound” OSC and sulphurized biomarkers in young sediment may reveal the significance of this process.

3.5.2 Refractory Biotic Organic Sulphur Compounds in the Ocean Possible Abiotic Sulphurization of Dissolved and Particulate Organic Matter

When organic compounds (e.g., DOM) enter sulphidic water, abiotic sulphurization can occur, potentially adding to the particulate sulphur that reaches the sediment. Sulphurization experiments of DOM (e.g., humic acids) with H$_2$S have shown incorporation into DOM, accompanied by oxidation of H$_2$S (Heitmann and Blodau 2006). However, these experiments were conducted at pH = 6 and thus may not be applicable to marine environments. In a recent study, Pohlbein et al. (2017) have carried out laboratory experiments to study the sulphurization of DOM with HS$^-$ and S under anaerobic conditions. They found that sulphurization was nonselective for the chemical properties of the DOM precursors, such as saturation, aromaticity,
Fig. 4 (continued)
and degree of oxidation or heteroatom content (e.g., nitrogen). The authors concluded that sulphurization of DOM under anaerobic conditions is likely to be a major source of DOS in the open ocean. Using isotopic mass balance models, Raven et al. (2016) argued that abiotic sulphurization, in the water column of the Cariaco Basin, was responsible for 50% of the total organic sulphur found in the young sediment. However, rapid exchange of S isotopes between organic and reactive sulphur can commence even at moderate temperature, and thus the contribution of abiotic S from the water column may not be readily determined (point # 12, Fig. 1; Amrani et al. 2006). It is possible that refractory OSC may not participate in such organic-inorganic S isotope exchange, but further studies are needed to address this.

3.6 The Formation and Structural Modifications of Sedimentary OSC During Catagenesis

The discussion so far has dealt with the different pathways whereby OM and S are transferred from young sediments and into the geological record. With burial and increase of thermal stress on the sediments, the chemistry of OSC evolves further. Though the effects of thermal maturation (catagenesis) are beyond the scope of this review, some aspects are described here briefly to provide a more complete view of the S cycle. There is no definitive and clear line which separates diagenesis from catagenesis. Rather, they should be considered as a continuum, ranging between the realms of biochemical processes and temperature-driven reactions. The S-S and C-S bonds that were generated as a result of the sulphurization of the OM are weak relative to C-C bonds. This can lead to their further rearrangement to more stable bonds (i.e., aromatic) in the macromolecular structure, cleavage at relatively low thermal stress, and to the formation of radicals that further destabilize the OM (Tannenbaum and Aizenshtat 1985; Orr 1986; Baskin and Peters 1992; Martin 1993; Krein and Aizenshtat 1994; Koopmans et al. 1998; Lewan 1998; Aizenshtat and Amrani 2004a). Thus, apparently “thermally immature” sedimentary rocks may already have been altered to some degree by catagenetic processes (Siedenberg et al. 2018). In such cases, some of the “free” OSC may be different from those of the initial, low-temperature sulphurization products, with the formation of compounds such as alkylthiophenes rather than organic sulphides and polysulphides. With increasing maturation, the kerogen continues to rearrange into thermally more stable configurations, expressed as an increase in cyclization and aromatization of the kerogen, as well as the eventual generation of petroleum fluids (Fig. 4; Sinninghe

![Fig. 4](image_url) A conceptual figure of kerogen maturation. The different colors of the S atoms represent different $\delta^{34}$S values (i.e., high variability in $\delta^{34}$S). There is no sharp transition from the diagenetic to the catagenetic processes: they should rather be thought of as continuum, where the later becomes dominant as the transfer of organic carbon from the macromolecular structure to the free HC liquids increases. With thermal maturation, the kerogen continues to undergo rearrangement and structural changes. This is reflected by an increase in the aromatization and decrease in the variability of $\delta^{34}$S values (represented by only black S atoms) of the OSC generated as oil and bitumen constituents
This gradual process is reflected by decreasing variability of $\delta^{34}S$ among the different OSC generated from the kerogen with progressive maturation (Rosenberg et al. 2017).

4 Application of Organic Sulphur Compounds in Paleoenvironmental Research

In the following sections, nine groups of biomarkers and their sulphurized derivatives are discussed. Studies in which these groups have been characterized in terms of their sulphurized fraction (free or bound OSC) are summarized in Table 3. For each group, we first briefly highlight their significance as biomarkers. Then, we discuss aspects related to their sulphurization sites, rates and extent of sulphurization, preservation, and biases of the geological record resulting from the sulphurization process. Where possible we discuss the potential benefit gained by quantifying sulphurized biomarkers in paleoenvironmental studies.

4.1 $n$-Alkanes

The distribution of $n$-alkanes is considered to be a marker of the relative input of marine vs. terrestrial organic matter into the depositional basin (Wakeham et al. 1995; Grice et al. 1996; Gelin et al. 1997; Hartgers et al. 1997; Peters et al. 2005). Their distribution and source is often represented by indices such as the carbon preference index (CPI) and odd-to-even predominance (OEP), which is occasionally used also for thermal maturity assessment (Peters et al. 2005). Under conditions where sulphurization takes place, $n$-alkanes occur as both free and S-bound compounds. However, the occurrence of $n$-alkane carbon skeletons as S-bound compounds might bear extra insight, not revealed by the free HC. The content of S-bound $n$-alkanes may greatly exceed (up to 90%) the content of their free-form counterparts (Fig. 5). Moreover, distributions of free and S-bound $n$-alkanes may be considerably different from one another (Fig. 5), leading to significant differences in the CPI and OEP indices (by a factor of 1.5–8) for a given sample (Koopmans et al. 1996a; Schouten et al. 1997, 2001; van Kaam-Peters and Sinninghe Damsté 1997; van Kaam-Peters et al. 1998). Strong even-over-odd carbon number predominance of the $n$-alkanes released by desulphurization was observed, in contrast to the OEP of the free $n$-alkanes fraction (Schaeffer et al. 1995; Koopmans et al. 1996a; van Kaam-Peters et al. 1998). Schaeffer et al. (1995) noted that the even-over-odd distribution of bound $n$-alkanes is widespread in evaporitic sediments, but did not identify the responsible mechanism. Schouten et al. (2001) suggested that different distributions of $n$-alkanes in the free and S-bound fractions of the Monterey Formation represent a predominant origin from terrestrial and marine sources in each of these fractions,
respectively. No mechanism to explain the selective preservation of marine and terrestrial \textit{n}-alkanes in the two fractions was suggested by the authors. It might be that terrestrial OM, which travels longer to the sulphurization regime, is then less reactive (Arndt et al. 2013) and therefore less prone to sulphurization.

Linear fatty acids are thought to be one of the sources of \textit{n}-alkanes in sedimentary OM (e.g., Hartgers et al. 2000). Sulphur-bound C_{16}–C_{26} linear fatty acids predominated by C_{18} were identified in the Messinian age Tripoli Unit rocks of the Lorca Basin, SE Spain (Russell et al. 2000). The most abundant isomers were those with sulphur substitution at carbon atom 9. This points to an early sulphurization of
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Biomarker group</th>
<th>Main applications as biomarkers and aspects of their sulphurization</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>n-Alkanes</strong></td>
<td><em>n</em>-Alkane distribution is a signature of OM origin. Distribution of free and S-bound may vary significantly (Fig. 5). For the application of proxies, such as CPI and OEP, both fractions should be considered</td>
<td>[1–4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-chain C_{37}–C_{39} alkenes and alkenones</strong></td>
<td>C_{37}–C_{39} alkenones and their derivatives indicate input of calcareous nannoplankton material. In addition, C_{37} unsaturated alkenones are used for reconstruction of ancient sea surface temperatures (SST) and paleo-pCO_2. The effect of sulphurization on the SST proxy is minimal, but if all alkenones are sulphurized, SST determination is not applicable</td>
<td>[5–8]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phytol-derived and phytol-related isoprenoids</strong></td>
<td>Sulphurization of phytane and pristane can be significant. Under S-rich conditions, sulphurization of phytane seems to be favored over pristane. This selective sulphurization creates a bias which might limit the use of the Pr/Ph ratio under S-rich conditions (Fig. 6). Free OSC compounds such as the C_{20} isoprenoid thiophenes can be highly abundant at moderate thermal maturation. Their distribution is used as a marker for paleosalinity</td>
<td>[2, 4, 5, 9–20]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Highly branched isoprenoids (HBIs)</strong></td>
<td>HBI occurrence indicates diatom OM input, with an age constrain (U. Turonian–present day). Also, they may act as a marker for nutrient abundance during deposition (i.e., upwelling conditions). HBIs are known to undergo rapid sulphurization in young sediments, both inter- and intramolecularly</td>
<td>[5, 12, 15, 21–30]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Steroids</strong></td>
<td>The distribution of the sterane groups is used to determine the origin of OM. Steroids are known to undergo rapid sulphurization in the early stages of diagenesis. The sulphurized form occurs mainly as free OSC. Preferential sulphurization of C_{27} steroid derivatives is common and may introduce bias if only the free hydrocarbon fraction is analyzed. 4-Methylersteroids (dinosterane) can be found in large abundance in the S-bound fraction</td>
<td>[7, 31–36]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hopanoids</strong></td>
<td>Indicator of OM input from bacterial origin, redox conditions of the water column, and assessment of the extent of diagenesis in immature samples. Also, they may be applied for paleo-reconstruction of dissolved CO_2 concentration. Sulphurization is relatively rapid and preferential for C_{35} hopanoids. This can introduce a bias if only the free hydrocarbon fraction is analyzed for both redox and maturity proxies</td>
<td>[1, 37–39]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carotenoids</strong></td>
<td>Isorenieratene and chlorobactane are exclusively synthesized by green sulphur bacteria and are therefore specific indicators of photic zone euxinia. They are easily degraded and</td>
<td>[1, 3–5, 34, 39–47]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
therefore rarely observed as free compounds. They usually are present in the sulphurized forms with the majority being in the S-bound OSC fraction. Main limitation of use is because β-isorenieratane can be formed by diagenetic aromatization of β-carotene regardless of anoxic conditions. Degradation of isorenieratene as a result of thermal maturation may result in the formation of aromatic OSCs.

\[ \beta\text{-isorenieratane} \]

β-carotene

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Source of OM input</th>
<th>Preservation</th>
<th>Formation Conditions</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Porphyrins</td>
<td>Used as a marker for the source of OM input. Their preservation is enhanced by sulphurization, with the majority being in the S-bound OSC fraction. In addition, sulphur derivatives of bacteriochlorophyll ( c ) and ( d ) are indicators of photic zone anoxia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[1, 7, 48–51]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyprenoid sulphides</td>
<td>C30 tetracyclic polyprenoid sulphides are an indicator of lacustrine depositional environments. They require sulphur-rich conditions to form, under which they will mostly occur in the free OSC fraction. They have a unique source or specific path of sulphurization that is not yet known.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[38, 52–55]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

References:
octadeca-9,12-dienoic acid and/or octadec-9-enoic acid, which are major lipid constituents of algae. Therefore sulphurization can preferentially preserve the unsaturated fatty acids and may cause a major bias of the original compositions of fatty acids (Russell et al. 2000).

The different abundance of specific \( n \)-alkanes in the free and S-bound fractions may lead to inaccurate assessments of the source of organic matter and thermal maturity, if only free HC are measured. Such bias can be overcome by measuring both free and S-bound \( n \)-alkane distributions in sediments deposited in a S-rich environment.

### 4.2 Long-Chain \( C_{37}–C_{39} \) Alkenes and Alkenones

Long-chain \( C_{37}–C_{39} \) alkenones are biosynthetic products of the alga *Emiliania huxleyi* and other members of the Prymnesiophyceae (Brassell 1993). The \( C_{37} \) alkenones, mainly the di- and triunsaturated compounds, are used as valuable proxies for sea surface temperatures (SST) and paleobarometer for atmospheric \( \rho CO_2 \) (Brassell et al. 1986a; Brassell 1993; Wakeham 2002). The presence of \( C_{37}–C_{39} \) alkenones in sediments is also used as a marker for input of calcareous nanophytoplankton material (coccolithophore), as was shown, for example, for sediment of the oceanic anoxic event 3 (87.3–84.6 Ma, Wagner et al. 2004). Long-chain \( C_{37}–C_{39} \) alkenes and alkenones (di- and triunsaturated methyl and ethyl ketones) were observed in young sediments (<7,000 years) as those of the Black Sea (Wakeham et al. 1991, 1995) and many ancient sediments ranging in age from Pliocene to lower Aptian (~120.5 Ma) (see Table 3 for references; Brassell and Dumitrescu 2004 and references therein). Under oxic marine conditions, where sulphurization plays a minor role, the application of this SST proxy is age-limited to ~270 ky BP or younger sediments, as *Emiliania huxleyi* only evolved during that period (Thierstein et al. 1977; Volkman et al. 1995; Sawada et al. 1996). However, there is a continuous effort to extend the applicable time range of alkenones based SST proxy to ancient sediments (see a review of Brassell and Dumitrescu 2004 for the occurrence of different alkenones in the geological record).

Under anoxic-sulphidic (euxinic) conditions, both alkenes and alkenones are known to react with reduced S species and evolve into \( C_{37}–C_{38} \) alkylthiolanes or to macromolecular S-bound forms (Schaeffer et al. 1995; Koopmans et al. 1996a, 1997). However, compared with older sedimentary rocks, in which all the \( C_{37}–C_{38} \) alkenes and alkenones were S-bound, in the young sediments of the Black Sea, these compounds were found exclusively in the free HC fraction (Wakeham et al. 1995). These authors suggested that time spans greater than ~7,000 years may be needed for the formation of such OSC.

Koopmans et al. (1996a, 1997) found that alkenones may occur as macromolecular S-bound and O-bound components in varying proportions. Despite variations in their abundance in the macromolecular structure, the relative amounts of di- and triunsaturated ketones, which are used for the SST proxy, were unaffected. This indicates that there is no selectivity for the reactions of different alkenones with
reduced S species. Hence, if free di- and triunsaturated ketones occur in sediments from S-rich environments, they can be used for the SST proxy. When all of the long-chain C_{37}–C_{39} alkenes and alkenones are sulphurized, the determination of SST is impossible, even after desulphurization treatment, because the original unsaturations disappear (Brassell 1993).

### 4.3 Phytol-Derived and Phytol-Related Isoprenoids

Sulphurized isoprenoids are one of the most abundant sedimentary OSC groups (Sinninghe Damsté and De Leeuw 1990). The most abundant carbon numbers of linear sulphurized isoprenoids are C_{20} (phytane-derived) and C_{19} (pristane-derived), but other examples of C_{15} to C_{40} carbon skeletons are known as well (Krein 1993; Pancost et al. 2001). Pristane (Pr) and phytane (Ph) are ubiquitous isoprenoids in sediments as they are diagenetic products of phytol which is part of chlorophyll a (Eglinton et al. 1964). Pristane and phytane carbon skeletons can also derive from pristenes (zooplankton) and archaeol (archaea species), respectively (Kuypers et al. 2001). The pristane to phytane ratio (Pr/Ph) is often used as an indicator of the redox state of the depositional environment with Pr/Ph<1 indicating anoxia (Didyk et al. 1978). In addition, Pr/Ph ratio was suggested to be lithology related when used in conjunction with the ratio of dibenzothiophene to phenanthrene (Hughes et al. 1995).

Under S-rich conditions, the carbon skeletons of these isoprenoids can be found both as free and S-bound compounds with varying distributions among these fractions. Chemical cleavage treatment of the macromolecular fractions in young sediments and immature sedimentary rocks has shown the preferential sulphurization of phytane at carbon atoms 1–4 and 17 with 1 and 3 being the most dominant by far (Fig. 6 please note legend to the figure for details on the numbering of carbon atoms; Kohnen et al. 1993; Adam et al. 2000). Sulphurized phytane was suggested to derive mainly from phytenal or (to lesser extent) phytadiene, early diagenetic products of phytol (Krein and Aizenshtat 1994; Adam et al. 2000; Schouten et al. 2001; Amrani and Aizenshstt 2004).

Different diagenetic processes occurring within the sediment lead to preferential preservation of phytane over pristane in the S-bound fraction (Fig. 7a; Kohnen et al. 1991a; Wakeham et al. 1995). Pristane is the diagenetic product of phytol formed under oxic conditions by loss of a carbon atom as a result of decarboxylation. Under reducing conditions, phytol is hydrogenated via a series of steps to form phytane (Didyk et al. 1978). Thus the Pr/Ph ratio is used for paleo-reconstruction of the redox conditions during deposition with Pr/Ph<1 indicating anoxia (Didyk et al. 1978). It is logical to assume that under euxinic conditions, phytol will tend to undergo sulphurization rather than oxygenation and will thus be preserved as S-bound phytane. The selective preservation of phytane over pristane leads to a remarkable difference in the Pr/Ph ratio between the free and S-bound fractions in several basins (Fig. 8b). This difference in the Pr/Ph ratios between the free and S-bound fractions can thus give rise to contradicting interpretations as shown in Fig. 8b for the Black Sea and for
Fig. 6 Examples of carbon skeleton structure of biomarkers representing the main groups discussed in Sect. 4 with the main sulphurization sites are marked in red: (a) Phytane, sulphurization sites are after Kohmen et al. (1993) (site numbering is in respect to IUPAC numbering of phytane. For numbering in respect to phytol, the sulphurization sites are 1–4 and 17 respectfully, as presented in parentheses). (b) C_{25:2}HBI. Structure and sulphurization sites are after Hartgers et al. (1997) and Sinninghe Damsté et al. (2007). (c) C_{27} sterane. Structure and sulphurization sites are after Adam et al. (1991), Schouten et al. (1998), and Adam et al. (2000). (d) C_{35} hopane. Structure and sulphurization sites are after Schoell et al. (1994) and Ourisson et al. (1984). (e) Chlorophyll a derivative: methyl pyrophaeophorbide a. Structure and sulphurization sites are after Pickering and Keely (2008). (f) C_{30} tetracyclic terpane. Structure and sulphurization sites are after Holba et al. (2003). It is important to note the sulphurization sites are the most common ones that reported in the literature. Other sulphurization positions were identified as well, and they are usually directly related to previous locations of functional groups such as double bonds, carbonyls, and hydroxyls in specific biomarkers. See more details about the sulphurization mechanisms in Sect. 3.2 and references therein. A more specific example for sulphurization pathways is given in Fig. 7 for phytol...
Messinian sediments from Sicily. Therefore, under anoxic-sulphidic conditions, the analysis of free pristane and phytane only may be misleading, unless both free and S-bound fractions are considered. However, some very S-rich sediments still show close correspondence of Pr/Ph ratios between free and S-bound fractions, such as in Calcaires en plaquettes and the Ghareb Formations (Fig. 8). Under S-poor conditions, such as those in the Green River Formation, the extent of pristane and phytane sulphurization is still significant (Fig. 8), yet there is no apparent preferential preservation of phytane over pristane in the S-bound fraction, and Pr/Ph ratios in the free and S-bound fractions are very similar (Koopmans et al. 1999).

The most abundant group of isoprenoid thiophenes in paleoenvironmental studies has a phytane carbon skeleton (i.e., C20 isoprenoid thiophenes). Compounds of this group were first isolated and identified in immature sedimentary rocks recovered during the Deep Sea Drilling Project (DSDP) in the apolar fraction of organic-rich sediments (Brassell et al. 1986b). This group has seven main isomers (Fig. 9) which were observed in young sediments and immature sedimentary rocks of various depositional settings (see Table 3 for references). The most abundant ones are thiophenes I and II (Fig. 9). These thiophenes are not formed during low-temperature laboratory sulphurization experiments with phytenal or phytadienes (Krein and Aizenshtat 1994; Schouten et al. 1994; Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004c). During low-temperature thermal alteration of S cross-linked macromolecules, thiophenes I and II are formed rapidly and efficiently (Krein and Aizenshtat 1994; Schouten et al. 1994; Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004b). Therefore, it has been suggested that they

---

**Fig. 7** General scheme for the diagenesis of the phytol side chain in sediments. Formation of OSCs with a phytol carbon skeleton is shown in the left pathway. Formation of pristane and phytane is shown in the right pathway. (Modified after Schouten et al. (2001) and Krein and Aizenshtat (1994))
Fig. 8 (a) Relative abundance of free phytane and pristane, (b) Pr/Ph ratio calculated for the free fraction only, the S-bound fraction only, and the sum of the two fractions for different sediments. All sediments, except the Green River shale, are considered to be sulphur-rich. The dashed horizontal line in panel (b) marks the top value for anoxic conditions considered by the Pr/Ph ratio (Peters et al. 2005). Note how this ratio differs between the free and S-bound fractions (panel b) if these biomarkers have different abundance between these fractions (panel a). In some sulphur-rich environments, the relative abundance between the free and S-bound fractions is very similar, leading to very similar Pr/Ph ratios. Numbers in brackets refer to [1] Wakeham et al. (1995) (unit I 0–2.5 cm), [2] Kohnen et al. (1991a) (VgS-4a), [3] Kohnen et al. (1991b) (Peru upwelling), [4] Koopmans et al. (1996a) (VdG), [5] Grice et al. (1998) (DS-2), [6] Koopmans et al. (1999) (Ghareb and Green river Fm.), [7] van Kaam-Peters and Sinninghe Damsté (1997) (Cep fin).
arise primarily during early thermal maturation and not as a result of early diagenetic intramolecular sulphurization (Krein and Aizenshtat 1994; Amrani and Aizenshtat 2004b). The origin of specific thiophenic isomers is related to the C-S bonding position in the phytane carbon skeleton, which in turn depends on the functionality of the precursor molecule (Krein and Aizenshtat 1994).

The distribution of isoprenoid thiophene isomers appears to depend on the salinity of the depositional environment (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1989; Barakat and Rullkötter 1995). Under normal, non-hypersaline conditions, the most abundant photosynthetic microbes have chlorophyll with phytol as a side chain. The sulphurization of phytol diagenetic products (e.g., phytenal), followed by thermal alteration, leads to the formation of compounds I and II (Fig. 9). Under hypersaline conditions, archaeal populations thrive, which produce polyunsaturated phytenols. Sulphurization of these compounds yields isoprenoid mid-chain thiophenes (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1989; Barakat and Rullkötter 1995; Schwark et al. 1998; Rontani and Volkman 2003). Hence, the distribution of the C20 isoprenoid thiophenes was proposed as a proxy for paleo-salinity (referred as the “Isoprenoid Thiophene Ratio,” ITR; Fig. 9), with ITR <0.5 considered to be indicative of a hypersaline paleoenvironment (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1989; De Leeuw and Sinninghe Damsté 1990; Barakat and Rullkötter 1995).

Several studies have noted that the ITR proxy is not always applicable. Schwark et al. (1998) studied the Solnhofen carbonates (Upper Jurassic, Germany), deposited under stratified water column conditions. They observed low ITR values (<0.08) which were inconsistent with other markers of salinity such as the Pr/Ph ratio or the methylchromane signature (MTTC ratio). The authors suggested that the ITR might preferentially represent the salinity in deep sections of the stratified water column or it might be impacted by sedimentary diagenetic alteration.

Fig. 9 The isoprenoid thiophene ratio (ITR) after Sinninghe Damsté et al. (1989) and De Leeuw and Sinninghe Damsté (1990). Structures of the various thiophenes implemented in this parameter are shown.
Hartgers et al. (1997) worked on solar salt ponds of La Trinitat and observed ITR >10 despite the high salinity of the ponds (70–100 g L\(^{-1}\)). These authors explained the high ITR value to be a result of low abundance of compound III (Fig. 9) in their study. This isomer is abundant in immature sedimentary rocks deposited in hypersaline paleoenvironments, but probably forms only at later stages of digenesis and therefore is not detected in young, active evaporate settings. A similar issue is observed in young hypersaline environments from Pétrola Saladar in Spain with ITR >0.5, in which only compounds I, II, and III (Fig. 9) were observed (Schreiber et al. 2001). The ITR value reached a hypersaline value (<0.5) only after pyrolysis of the samples (350 °C), consistent with the observation that this ratio is not always applicable to immature organic-rich sedimentary rocks.

In immature sedimentary rocks, the C\(_{20}\) isoprenoidal thiolanes probably represent earlier diagenetic products relative to their thiophene analogues. Thus, consideration of both thiolane and thiophene C\(_{20}\) isoprenoids may give a better representation of their precursors. An improved index that contains the thiolane-C\(_{20}\) isomers (ITTR) was suggested by Barakat and Rullkötter (1995). The modified ratio provides the same classification of hypersalinity as ITR, but in one case, ITTR values suggested higher salinity in agreement with the chromane distribution (Rontani and Volkman 2003).

### 4.4 Highly Branched Isoprenoids (HBIs) and Their Sulphur-Containing Derivatives

Highly branched isoprenoids (HBIs) are a common group of biomarkers derived from four genera of the marine primary producers diatoms (Volkman et al. 1994; Belt et al. 2000, 2017; Grossi et al. 2004; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2007). Therefore, HBIs are useful biomarkers indicative of high nutrient levels (upwelling systems) due to the high Si consumption of diatoms (Wagner et al. 2004). Their occurrence in marine sediments is limited to the geological period from the Upper Turonian (~90 Ma) to the present (Wakeham et al. 1995; Köster et al. 1998; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2004).

HBI alkenes are prone to abiotic sulphurization (Fig. 6b) and the formation of free sulphurized HBI such as HBI thiophenes as well as thiolanes and macromolecular S-bound HBI (Kenig et al. 1995; Xavier et al. 1997; Belt et al. 2000; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2007). Sulphurization of HBI depends on the number and positions of double bonds within the alkene structure, with a minimum of two double bonds in the precursor required to promote this process (Belt et al. 2000). Higher numbers of double bonds significantly increase the reactivity and therefore the chances for sulphurization. Hartgers et al. (1997) noted that under hypersaline conditions, C\(_{20}\) HBI-derived thiophenes were formed by preferential sulphurization of C\(_{20}\) HBI dienes and polyenes, leaving behind non-sulphurized C\(_{20}\) HBI with only one double bond. This is in agreement with laboratory and theoretical work, which shows that the reactivity of alkenes to sulphurization increases with the number of conjugated double bonds (LaLonde et al. 1987).

Wakeham et al. (1995) observed high concentrations of free C\(_{25}\) HBI alkenes just below the water-sediment interface in the Black Sea, which rapidly decreased in the
upper 5 cm of the sediment column. C_{25} HBI derivatives were only found below 25 cm in the desulphurized polar fractions. To bridge the gap between their removal from the free HC fraction at shallow depth and their appearance as S-bound HBI significantly deeper in the sediment, the authors suggested the HBI alkenes might be sequestered in fractions not analyzed such as the asphaltenes and protokerogen or alternatively that they were biodegraded. The important implication of this study is that intermolecular sulphurization of HBI alkenes occurs during very early diagenesis (<7,000 years) in the upper sediment column and leads to preservation of the HBI carbon skeletons in the S-bound OSC fraction. Similar results were reported by Werne et al. (2000) for the Cariaco Basin and Sinninghe Damsté et al. (2007) for the Ellis Fjord in Antarctica. Sinninghe Damsté et al. (2007) estimated that complete sulphurization of C_{25} HBI diene would be achieved within 500 years, following a first-order reaction with a rate constant of 1.3 \cdot 10^{-2} \text{ years}^{-1}.

4.5 Steroids

Steroids occur widely in algae and vascular plants and thus are ubiquitous in most depositional environments (Huang and Meinschein 1979). They are commonly used as tools for oil-source rock and oil-oil correlation, as well as proxies for the origin of OM inputs. The sterane carbon number distribution, i.e., the relative amounts of C_{27}, C_{28}, and C_{29} steranes, is the most commonly applied sterane proxy, as it reflects the origin of OM from primary production to the sediment (Huang and Meinschein 1979). During diagenesis, steroids undergo various structural modifications including removal of the hydroxyl group (Mackenzie et al. 1982), the formation of steradienes, and oxidation of sterols to stenones and stanones. Both of these diagenetic products are prone to sulphurization.

The sulphurization of steroids is a relatively rapid process which has been shown to occur within the very early stages of diagenesis (Kok et al. 2000). The C-S bond position in macromolecularly bound steroids is mainly at C_2 and C_3 in the A-ring (Fig. 10; Adam et al. 1991; Kohnen et al. 1991b, 1993; Kok et al. 2000a). In some low molecular weight S-containing steroids, the C-S bond is located at the 3-alkyl side chain of the 3-alkylsteroids (Schouten et al. 1998b) or at the D-ring and at the side chain of regular steroids (Schmid 1986; Behrens et al. 1997; Peng et al. 1998).

Kok et al. (2000a) have estimated steroid sulphurization to be completed in 1,000–3,000 years in the upper sediments of Ace Lake in Antarctica, based on assumed rates of sedimentation and age of the sediment core studied. The authors noted that C_{27} stanols are preferentially sulphurized compared with C_{29} stanols which remain abundant in their free form (Fig. 10). The possibility of a sulphurization bias toward C_{27} relative to C_{29} sterols has also been mentioned by Wang et al. (2004), in a study based on young sediment cores from a salt lake. However, the authors noted that the evidence for such a bias is not conclusive. Desulphurized fractions of samples from the Messinian (Sicily) exhibit a dominance of the C_{27} sterane homologues, while in the free fraction, no steranes were detected (Schaeffer et al. 1995). This observation indicates preferential sulphurization and preservation of C_{27} steranes, as had been suggested by the other studies. The
mechanism behind this preferential sulphurization (and thus preservation) of C27 steranes is still unknown, but it may provide a bias in using the sterane carbon number distributions to assess OM source input. This can be overcome by examining both free and S-bound sterol derivatives.

A more taxon-specific biomarker steroid group are the 4-methylsteroids (dinosteranes), which are derived from certain primary producers such as dinoflagellates (Summons et al. 1987) and prymnesiophyte algae (Volkman et al. 1990). Schaeffer et al. (1995) noted that these compounds were found exclusively in the S-bound fraction of Messinian sediments from Sicily.

4.6 Hopanoids

Hopanoids are ubiquitous compounds in organic-rich sediments, where they are among the most diagnostic biomarkers for bacterial input (Ouirsson et al. 1984). Homohopanes in sedimentary environments are thought to result from the
degradation, under relatively oxic conditions, of the labile side chain of C35-hopanepolyols leading to smaller homologues (Peters and Moldowan 1991). Thus C35 homohopane is expected to be best preserved under anoxic conditions giving rise to elevated values of the ratio C35/Σ(C31–C35) (the “C35 homohopane index”) used as an indicator of anoxic depositional settings (Peters and Moldowan 1991).

Hopanoids can undergo sulphurization at carbon atom 4 in the side chain (Fig. 6d) forming S-containing products which are abundant in sedimentary rocks. In fact, a C35 hopane containing a thiophene ring was the first reported OSC with a carbon skeleton clearly linked to that of a biological precursor (Valisolalao et al. 1984). Since then, many other S-containing hopanoids (thiolanes, thiophenes, and S-bound) have been reported and grouped into different series (Table 3; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1995, 2014; Schaeffer et al. 2006).

Richnow et al. (1992) investigated the macromolecular structure of a S-rich oil (resins and asphaltenes) and its presumed source kerogen (Monterey Formation, California) by sequential chemical degradation. They showed that the macromolecularly bound hopanoids were cross-linked by both S and O bonds, with a significantly different distribution of hopanoid species relative to free hydrocarbons in the extractable fraction. Farimmond et al. (2003) studied the incorporation of hopanoids into the macromolecular (bound OSC) fraction in young sediments of a freshwater lake (Priest Pot) and an anoxic-sulphidic fjord (Framvaren). They concluded that this process is very rapid (<350 years) and extensive (22–86% of the total hopanoids were incorporated). They further showed that cross-linking bonds of hopanoids by S were 15%, while S and O bonding (at the same molecule) was ~40%, and the rest were bound exclusively with O (ether bonds, ~47%). Despite this, a positive correlation was found between the bound hopanoid fraction and the total S in the sediment (Farimmond et al. 2003). Sinninghe Damsté et al. (1995) studied the C35 hopanepolyol derivatives in the Upper Cretaceous organic-rich limestone of Jurfd Darawish in Jordan. The S-bound form made up 50–80% of the total hopanoids preserved in the sediment with preferential sulphurization of the C35 17α,21β(H)-homohopanes. Similar observation of C35 homohopane preferential sulphurization (Fig. 11) of both free and bound OSC forms was later described in marls and limestones of different depositional environments and ages (Köster et al. 1997; Grice et al. 1998; Schaeffer et al. 2006). Schaeffer et al. (2006) found that some thermally stable hopane derivatives (e.g., 17α,21β-hopanes) can also be directly biosynthesized. This finding implies that the ratios of αβ-/ββ-hopanes used to evaluate the maturity of sedimentary organic matter can be biased in some settings.

The C35 homohopanes possess the most intact carbon skeleton derived from bacteriohopanepolyols. The predominance of sulphurized C35 hopanoids can therefore be explained by the reaction of reduced S species with the homohapapane side chain during the earliest stages of diagenesis (Köster et al. 1997). Other sulphurized hopanoids are far less common at that diagenetic stage and therefore less represented in the S-bound fraction.

Köster et al. (1997) noted that the distribution of various sulphurized hopane derivatives may indicate the extent of diagenesis. In a study of samples from the Hauptdolomit, Calcaires en Plaquettes, and Ghareb Formations, which are traditionally defined as immature sedimentary rocks, they were able to distinguish subclasses
of maturity based on the distribution of sulphurized hopane derivatives. The thermally most mature sample had the highest content of C35 hopanoid thiophenes, while the least mature samples comprised mostly hopanoid sulphides (Köster et al. 1997). This finding is in accordance with the release of macromolecular S-bound C35 hopanoids and its cyclization to thiophenes upon the early stages of thermal maturation (Fig. 4).

The carbon isotopic ratio of S-bound C35 hopanes has been demonstrated to be useful in paleoclimate reconstructions (Schoell et al. 1994). Changes in δ13C (−29.5
to $-32.5\%$ throughout the Middle to Late Miocene section of the Monterey Formation have been observed. It has been proposed that the distinct $\delta^{13}C$ signature of the S-bound C$_{35}$ hopanes (compared with C$_{27}$ sterane and bulk kerogen values) reflects changes at the base of the photic zone. This conclusion assumes that this hopane represents the photosynthetic cyanobacteria which live deeper in the photic zone compared with eukaryotic photosynthetic organisms that synthesize steroids. More specifically it has been pointed out that changing water temperature led to a change of dissolved CO$_2$ concentration that in turn led to a change in the $\delta^{13}C$ of the hopanes. This hypothesis was supported by the available $\delta^{18}O$ record for the Pacific Ocean in the relevant timeframe. Sulphurization and thus preservation of the C$_{35}$ hopanes and their presumed original $\delta^{13}C$ values played a key role in the paleoenvironmental interpretation.

4.7 Carotenoids

Carotenoids are tetraterpenoid pigments (C$_{40}$) which are widespread in living organisms such as algae, bacteria, and higher plants. The most common members of this group are $\beta$-carotene, which is biosynthesized by marine and terrestrial plants, and fucoxanthin which often occurs in planktonic organisms such as diatoms and dinoflagellates (Hebting et al. 2006). The multiple sites of unsaturation in the carotenoids are prone to oxidation, hydrogenation, and other diagenetic reactions. Therefore a low concentration of oxygen and available inorganic S species in the water column and/or sediment are crucial for carotenoid preservation in the geological record (Sinninghe Damsté and Koopmans 1997).

Carotenoids can readily react with reduced S species (e.g., H$_2$S and polysulphides) at various sites of double bonds in their carbon skeletons (Hebting et al. 2006; French et al. 2015). They usually form bound OSC structures, which increases their stability and resistance to degradation in the sediment. Hebting et al. (2006) studied samples from Lake Cadagno (Switzerland) and suggested that reduced S species can reduce (hydrogenate) the double bonds of the carotenoids, leading to increased preservation in an anoxic water column (Fig. 12). However, their quantitative data indicates that this pathway is minor and sulphurization outcompetes the hydrogenation pathway. Under such conditions, most, if not all preserved carotenoids, are S-bound in the macromolecular fraction (Kohnen et al. 1992). Via cleavage of S-bonds, and release of monomeric compounds, double bonds can be reduced as has been shown in several pyrolysis experiments (Krein and Aizenshtat 1995). This thermal alteration pathway could be another route for the reduction of double bonds during the later stages of diagenesis. Note that both preservation pathways (i.e., sulphurization or double bond reduction) are mediated by reduced S species (Hebting et al. 2006).

Because of their large carbon skeleton structure and multiple C-S binding sites, carotenoids are often not GC-amenable, even after selective S-S cleavage (e.g., MeLi/MeI). This has probably limited studies on their abundance and sulphurization pathways in many young sediments. One of the rare examples of carotenoid GC
analysis is documented by Grice et al. (1998), who identify linear thiophenes and thianes with large carbon skeletons (C_{40}) in the sediments of the Sdom Formation (Miocene, Dead Sea, Israel). The carbon skeletons and $\delta^{13}C$ values of these OSCs are similar to those of the co-occurring lycopane, which led the authors to conclude that the C_{40} OSC originated from this carotenoid.

Two important carotenoid biomarkers are isorenieratene and chlorobactene. These two carotenoids are exclusively biosynthesized by the brown and green strains of green sulphur bacteria (GSB, Chlorobiaceae), respectively (Ohkouchi et al. 2015). These photoautotrophic bacteria use reduced S as an electron donor in photosynthesis and require relatively low light intensities. Thus, the presence of these compounds indicates photic zone euxinia (PZE, Schaeffer et al. 1995; Grice et al. 1996; Koopmans et al. 1996b; Kolonic et al. 2002; French et al. 2015).

The use of sulphurized isorenieratane and chlorobactane derivatives to assess PZE has been exemplified by Wagner et al. (2004), who studied the S-bound profile through the oceanic anoxic event 3 (OAE-3, Coniacian-Santonian, ODP site 959). They observed short-term fluctuations in the S-bound isorenieratane and chlorobactane concentrations during OAE-3, which they attributed to penetration of the chemocline into the photic zone (Fig. 13). The increase of chlorobactane concentration was suggested as an indicator for chemocline rise to very shallow (~15 m) depths during OAE-3. The presence of S-bound chlorobactane and isorenieratane was limited to a specific nannofossil zone, indicating that PZE was confined to a restricted time interval of the OAE-3.

However, a potential concern regarding the use of isorenieratane as a PZE proxy was raised by Koopmans et al. (1996b) who demonstrated that aryl isoprenoids and $\beta$-isorenieratane can be formed by diagenetic aromatization of $\beta$-carotene. In addition, during diagenesis, sequential cyclization and sulphurization of isorenieratane may lead to formation of aromatic OSC such as benzothiophenes (Koopmans et al. 1996b). The distinct $\delta^{13}C$ values of $\beta$-isorenieratane can help verify the origin of

![Diagram](image-url)

**Fig. 12** Reduction ("hydrogenation") and sulphurization products obtained by reaction of H_{2}S with $\beta$-carotene in aqueous medium (Modified after Hebting et al. (2006)). Other double bond positions can also be sulphurized or hydrogenated as well as multiple sulphurization/hydrogenation positions.
these compounds and allow their use as PZE indicators in cases where no genuine \( \beta \)-isorenieratane survived.

### 4.8 Porphyrrins

Porphyrrins are compounds of the chlorin group. Among the most common types of porphyrrins are the ubiquitous chlorophylls, which occur in all green plants and photosynthetic bacteria. Their presence is a marker of the photoautotrophic primary producer community. During diagenesis, chlorophyll \( a \) is converted to other stable forms of porphyrrins, for example, bicycloalkanoporphyrins (BiCAPs) which are often found in calcareous, OM-rich sediments that are deposited under reducing conditions (Junium et al. 2011).

Sulphur-containing porphyrrins have been identified in young sediments of a coastal lake in Antarctica (Squier et al. 2003, 2004), in immature sedimentary rocks of the Messinian of Sicily (Schaeffer et al. 1995), and in laboratory experiments involving the reaction of porphyrrins with reduced inorganic S species (Pickering and Keely 2008, 2011, 2013).

Porphyrrins may undergo sulphurization by several mechanisms which may lead to their preservation in sediments (Squier et al. 2003; Pickering and Keely 2013). An example for such process is the enhanced preservation of BiCAP. This occurs under euxinic conditions by reduction at carbon atom 3 through reaction with S species as was demonstrated under laboratory and natural conditions (Fig. 6e; Mawson and Keely 2008; Junium et al. 2011).

In sediment extracts from the Messinian of Sicily, the amount of S-bound porphyrrins was seven times larger than the amount of their free analogues (Schaeffer et al. 1995). The authors determined that the S-bound porphyrrins were dominated by

---

**Fig. 13** Time series of accumulation rate of biomarkers indicative of PZE, isorenieratane, and chlorobactane, during the OAE-3 of Late Cretaceous (87.3–84.6 Ma) in the Deep Ivorian Basin (eastern equatorial Atlantic, ODP site 959). Both biomarkers are derived from photosynthetic green sulphur bacteria. Fluctuation in their abundance suggests variation of the chemocline position relative to the photic zone and repetitive penetration of sulphidic conditions into the lower photic zone (Modified from Wagner et al. (2004)). Location of the sulphurization sites is from Koopmans et al. (1996b), but sulphurization in other positions, as well as multiple sulphurization positions, can occur too.
BiCAPs from a diatom source. The free porphyrins were of a different type and therefore may indicate different environmental conditions in the basin during deposition and diagenesis or perhaps different sources of porphyrins.

The presence of S derivatives of bacteriochlorophyll \(c\) and \(d\) is of paleoenvironmental significance since they are a clear marker for anaerobic GSB (Chlorobiaceae) activity in the depositional environment and therefore indicate PZE. The detection of these S derivatives suggests that the process of sulphurization can be significant for the preservation of porphyrins (Squier et al. 2004).

4.9 Polyprenoid Sulphides

Polyprenoid sulphides are a group of OSC that possess di-, tri-, tetra-, or pentacyclic carbon skeletons (Fig. 6f shows a tetracyclic structure). Members of this group occur in sediments from a wide range of depositional environments with anoxic conditions including upwelling environments, shallow continental platforms, hypersaline environments, and lagoon sub-basins (Schaeffer et al. 2006; Adam et al. 2009). Polyprenoid sulphides are present in some sediments where no other sulphurized biomarkers (e.g., with linear, sterane, or hopane carbon skeletons) were detected (Poinsot et al. 1998). This observation suggests a unique precursor with high reactivity or a specific path of S incorporation. Moreover, the detection of polyprenoid sulphides in young sediments (<1,000 years) suggests their formation takes place during the earliest stages of diagenesis or even within the water column (Poinsot et al. 1997, 1998).

Polyprenoid sulphides may share a common and specific biological origin with that of the predominant pentacyclic \(C_{30}\) sulphides (Poinsot et al. 1998) and are probably related to the \(C_{30}\) tetracyclic polyprenoids (TPP, Holba et al. 2000). However, the biological lipid precursor of the TPPs is unknown, and based on carbon isotopic studies, it has been suggested that they originate from oxygende photosynthetic organisms (algae, cyanobacteria) or heterotrophic organisms thriving on algal/cyanobacterial biomass in the oxic part of the water column (Poinsot et al. 1998). This hypothesis of nonmarine algal precursor for TPP was later supported by Holba et al. (2003) who studied a large set of oils which covers lacustrine, terrigenous, and marine source origins. The authors found the presence of high TPP occurrence in oils from fresh to brackish water, algal-rich, lacustrine depositional environments while oils from marine origin were TPP poor. Furthermore, by examining the sterane and hopane distributions in conjunction with TPP, the authors concluded the source of TPP is likely from nonmarine algae, possibly Chlorophyta.

4.10 Carbohydrates

Although carbohydrates are not considered as biomarkers, their preservation in a given environment may give rise to important paleoenvironmental information. Carbohydrates such as polysaccharides and gels comprise a large part of living
biomass. Because these compounds are very labile, they are normally biologically consumed and less preserved in the sedimentary OM record (Arndt et al. 2013). Sulphurization, however, can preserve carbohydrates as part of the macromolecular S-bound fraction as was shown by Kok et al. (2000b). One of the unique signatures of carbohydrates in sedimentary organic matter is their enrichment in $^{13}$C (up to 16‰) relative to lipids of a given organism (van Dongen et al. 2006). Van Kaam-Peters et al. (1998) hypothesized that short-chain alkylthiophenes (C$_1$–C$_3$, Kimmeridge Clay Formation (KCF)) were the diagenetic products of S incorporation into monosaccharides based on their higher $\delta^{13}$C values relative to n-alkanes from the same algal source. Similar conclusions were drawn for the origin of small amounts of C$_1$–C$_3$ alkylthiophenes isolated from pyrolysates of laboratory sulphurization experiments on the algae Nannochloropsis salina (Gelin et al. 1998). The reaction of reduced S species with polysaccharides of mucilage origin in the Northern Adriatic Sea was reported by Ciglenečki et al. (2000). The authors also conducted laboratory sulphurization experiments on polysaccharides of bacterial and algal origin, all of which led to the formation of sulphurized polysaccharides. Other sulphurization experiments of algal material and glucose carried out by Kok et al. (2000b) gave rise to S-rich macromolecular material that yielded short-chain alkylthiophenes and other OSCs upon pyrolysis.

The contribution of carbohydrates preserved through sulphurization to the total organic carbon (TOC) of organic-rich sedimentary rocks may, under certain conditions, be significant. van Dongen et al. (2006) worked on the Blackstone Band of the Kimmeridge Clay Formation, where total organic carbon is enriched in $^{13}$C relatively to other strata within the Formation. The authors suggested that this might be the result of preservation of sulphurized carbohydrates, which they estimate to account for up to ~90% of the OM in the section of the Blackstone Band richest in total organic carbon. Thus, S incorporation into carbohydrates may preserve a substantial amount of them under euxinic conditions as S-rich macromolecular matter with a $^{13}$C-enriched isotopic signature.

5 Summary

This contribution highlights the significant advances achieved by numerous studies on several fundamental aspects of OSC and their role as paleoenvironmental indicators. Among these aspects are the following:

1. Sulphurization is a rapid process (<10,000 years), occurring during the earliest stages of diagenesis. In some cases, sulphurization in the water column can occur within days, even before deposition takes place in the sediment. It is a continuous process, with reactions ongoing deeper in the sediment following diagenetic modifications of the original precursor compounds. Accordingly, sulphurization of less reactive compounds can take place during these later stages after most reactive compounds have already been sulphurized. Sulphurization occurs at specific positions within the carbon skeleton, typically at locations of original
functional groups (i.e., hopanoids are sulphurized via the original hopane polyol side chain), resulting in distinct structural and S isotopic compositions which are different from any original biosynthetic OSC species. The major pathway for sulphurization is via intermolecular linkage, leading to the formation of S cross-linked macromolecules.

2. Recent studies suggest that in some settings, sulphurization of organic matter may compete with iron sulphide (e.g., pyrite) formation. This contrasts with the original presumed sulphur diagenesis scheme, whereby OM sulphurization does not commence until available iron is effectively exhausted. Moreover, compound-specific sulphur isotopic studies suggest that some OSC may form rapidly, resulting in their S isotope signature being lighter than that of the coexisting pyrite. This large S isotope variance between individual OSC, and between bulk fractions (e.g., kerogen), may suggest different sulphurization rates and mechanisms. The sulphur isotopic record of OSC between modern sediments and immature rocks may be changed over the course of diagenesis due to isotopic exchange processes with the reduced inorganic S pool.

3. The contribution of biosynthetic S to the sedimentary organic S pool might be larger than previously thought. Possible reservoirs may include refractory dissolved and particulate organic S, as well as volatile organic S compounds that were adsorbed to inorganic particles. Their interactions with other organic compounds and/or with other sources of reduced sulphur species (i.e., dissimilatory S) can further contribute to their preservation in the sedimentary record.

4. Sulphurization leads to notable preservation of compounds otherwise susceptible to biodegradation and mineralization. Examples include the preservation of carbohydrates, carotenoids, and porphyrins in S-rich sediments as part of the S-bound fraction. The distribution of biomarkers (e.g., Pr/Ph) between the free and S-bound fractions may bias palaeoenvironmental interpretations if only the free HC fraction is analyzed. Biomarker analysis for the purpose of palaeoenvironmental research should independently examine both the free and S-bound biomarker fractions, as the similarities and contrasts between these pools provide another dimension to the preserved environmental signal. Carbon isotope data may also be biased in a similar manner. A consistent difference is found between the $\delta^{13}$C signatures of S-bound and free HC, where the former is heavier by $2 \pm 1\%$ on average. This may suggest different sources for the original precursors of the biomarkers in the free HC and S-bound fraction and/or a preservation effect of the original $\delta^{13}$C values of the biomarkers in the S-bound fraction.

5.1 Future Directions

The analytical developments of the 1980s, primarily GC-MS, fueled the tremendous progress of sedimentary OSC research at that time. Likewise, recent analytical developments in the last decade provide new opportunities to further develop our understanding of the sulphur cycle and its significance with regard to geochemical process in recent and ancient sulphur-rich marine environments. For example, Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry (FT-ICR MS) is
increasingly being used for the analysis of OSC fractions (e.g., O and N functionalized compounds, aqueous dissolved species and molecules with weights in excess of 1000 Daltons), which were not previously amenable to characterization. It is likely that these new data types will reveal mechanisms previously unrecognized, further developing our models of the sedimentary sulphur cycle. Already, sulphur isotope analysis of organic matter in terms of individual compounds (e.g., nonpolar, volatile), specific fractions (e.g., polar, kerogen), and with consideration of all four stable isotopes is changing the way we understand the timing of OM sulphurization and the mechanisms and relationship with other sulphurized species (e.g., pyrite). Not only will these new data enable improved S proxies and potentially provide new proxies for paleoenvironmental research, but inevitably will lead to our better understanding of the sulphur and carbon cycles.

Acknowledgments This paper is dedicated to the memory of Ronald Kiene, an inspiring scientist and mentor and a dear friend. A.A. thanks the Israel Science Foundation (ISF) grant No. 1738/16 for partial support to this study. Y. O. R. and A.A. acknowledge grant No. 15/16 from the Ministry of National Infrastructures, Energy and Water Resources of Israel.

References


Shawar L, Said-Ahmad W, Amrani A (2015) Compound specific sulfur isotope approach to study the redox cycling during the deposition of senonian oil shales in the late cretaceous tethyan margin, Israel. In: 27th international meeting on organic geochemistry, Prague, Czech Republic


Thierstein HR, Geitzenauer KRM, Molfino B (1977) Global synchrony of late Quaternary coccolith datum levels validation by oxygen isotopes. Geology 5:400–404


Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................................ 410
2 Evidence for the Earliest Life on Earth .................................................... 412
3 Methanogenic Archaea in the Archean .................................................... 413
4 Purple Sulfur Bacteria and the Oldest Syngentic Biomarkers ....................... 413
5 Cyanobacteria and the Great Oxidation Event ........................................ 414
6 Early Eukarya and Steranes ................................................................ 417
7 The Diversification of Eukarya ............................................................. 418
8 Rise of the Animals ........................................................................ 420
9 *Gloeocapsomorpha prisca* Dominates the Ordovician ............................... 421
10 Higher Land Plants ......................................................................... 421
11 Biomarkers of the Great Dying ........................................................... 423
12 Diatoms, 23,24-Dimethylcholestanes, and HBIs ....................................... 425
13 Glycerol Dialkyl Glycerol Tetraether (GDGTs) ........................................ 426
14 Phytoplankton Alkenones .................................................................. 427
15 C30–C37 Botryococcene Derivatives ..................................................... 427
16 Research Needs ............................................................................ 428
Appendix ........................................................................................ 428
References ....................................................................................... 432
Abstract

Certain lipids and biopolymers retain their original carbon backbone structure through sedimentary diagenesis and catagenesis and can be assigned to a specific biological origin. These “taxon-specific biomarkers” (TSBs) can serve as chemical fossils that trace the evolution of life. TSBs in Precambrian rocks reveal the early evolution of archaea, cyanobacteria, and eukarya and the development of atmospheric free oxygen. However, improved criteria for assessing syngeneticity have questioned their proposed earliest occurrence in Archean rocks. Steroidal TSBs document the changing assemblages of marine phytoplankton from Neoproterozoic organic-walled acritarchs to present-day predominance of diatoms. Terpanoid TSBs reveal the evolution of higher land plants. TSBs used in conjunction with isotopic analysis can identify the taxa of enigmatic fossils, provide important clues to the causes of mass extinctions, and describe the global changes in biotic diversity and Earth’s conditions as the biosphere recovers from them. Biomarkers record the evolutionary history of life on Earth and, perhaps, other planets.

1 Introduction

Our understanding of the evolution of life is based on three lines of evidence: extant life, fossilized life, and molecular fossils. Living organisms reflect the cumulative evolution of biochemical pathways encoded within DNA. Fossilized life preserves the morphology and habitat of extinct lifeforms. Molecular fossils are organic compounds inherited from once-living organisms that occur in sediments and rocks.

All living organisms share biochemical features that indicate life evolved from a common ancestor. This lifeform, the last universal common ancestor (LUCA), already possessed an extensive set of proteins for DNA, RNA, protein synthesis, DNA repair, recombination, and control systems for regulation of genes and cell division (Penny and Poole 1999) and may have had organelles (Seufferheld et al. 2003). A recent genomic study of extant microorganisms suggests that LUCA was anaerobic, CO₂-fixing, H₂-dependent, N₂-fixing, and thermophilic with a metal dependency suggesting an association with hydrothermal vents (Weiss et al. 2016). From LUCA, the bacteria and archaea evolved along separate paths ~4000 Ma (Hedges 2002; Sheridan et al. 2003) not in a simple progression of increasing complexity but in a complex manner involving the sharing of traits via horizontal gene transfer. Eukarya evolved from the archaea after an endosymbiosis with a member of the alphaproteobacteria that became the mitochondria (Williams et al. 2013) and later with a cyanobacterium that became the chloroplast (Falcón et al. 2010).

Phylogenetic relationships based on genomic sequencing can be depicted by the tree of life from which the evolution of biochemical pathways can be inferred. The tree of life is an evolving work. Modern phylogenetic trees are based on the sequence
of the small subunit of ribosomal RNA (Woese et al. 1990), or more recently on the entire genomic sequence (Hug et al. 2016). Phylogenetic trees express the relative order of evolutionary events, but not absolute time. Because rates of genetic evolution are not constant, the fossil record needs to be examined to determine the timing of these events. Locked in the geologic record are physical and chemical fossils that, if properly deciphered, can constrain when evolutionary changes occurred. Physical fossils provide temporal benchmarks for the evolution of multicellular organisms and can signal the earliest occurrence of both extinct and extant forms. Some single cell organisms may be preserved as microfossils; however, they rarely have sufficient morphological features to determine phylogenetic affinity. Many organisms, such as all archaea, are completely missing from the fossil record.

Molecular fossils offer the promise of bridging gaps between extant biochemistry and physical fossils. Few biogenic organic compounds remain intact during burial and lithification of sediments. When buried and exposed to higher temperatures, most biochemicals undergo microbial and chemical alterations involving the loss of functional groups, hydrogenation of double bonds, cleavage of weaker heteroatomic bonds such as sulfidic, ether and ester linkages, formation of new cross-linking, condensation, and aromatization reactions (Peters et al. 2005). Nevertheless, some of these molecules still retain enough of their original structure that they can be related to biochemical precursors. These molecular fossils are commonly termed biomarkers.

The ideal biomarker for tracing life’s evolution would be DNA, but DNA degrades very rapidly and typically can be recovered only in fossils that were preserved in cool, dry environments, younger than ~50,000 years old. Early studies claiming DNA older than 1 Ma were flawed by contamination (Brown and Barnes 2015); however, advanced techniques have reconstructed Neanderthal DNA from bones dated at 430 ka (Meyer et al. 2016). Some sedimentary environments promote the preservation of DNA. Frozen sediments, such as <400 ka Siberian permafrost (Willerslev et al. 2003) and ~450–850 ka Greenland ice cores (Willerslev et al. 2007), are ideal for preserving DNA that reflect the flora and fauna of warmer times. Anoxic conditions during deposition, such as ~125 ka sapropels from cored Mediterranean sediments (Boere et al. 2011), and certain microfossils, such as diatoms as great as 1.4 Ma (Kirkpatrick et al. 2016), also promote the preservation of DNA.

Proteins are more stable than DNA, but typically lose their diagnostic sequences within ~10^2–10^5 years (Cappellini et al. 2014). Collagen proteins are stabilized in bone (Collins et al. 2000), and fragments have been successfully sequenced from fossils older than a million years. The presence of proteins in an exceptionally well preserved, 68 million-year old T. Rex femur (Asara et al. 2007) remains controversial, but the detection of possible proteins in older Cretaceous dinosaur fossils suggests that some protein fragments can survive for >65 Ma (Manning et al. 2009; Schweitzer et al. 2009, 2013; Lindgren et al. 2011; Bertazzo et al. 2015; Cleland et al. 2015).

All living organisms produce membrane lipids, molecules that contain both hydrophilic and hydrophobic moieties. These compounds range from simple fatty acids to steroids or hopanoids formed by the cyclization of isoprenoids to complex
structures consisting of fatty acids linked to a carbon platform to which a phosphate or sugar is attached. Bacteria and Eukarya have lipid membranes composed of unbranched fatty acid chains attached to glycerol by ester linkages while the Archaea have membranes composed of isoprenoid chains attached to glycerol by ether linkages. Many membrane lipids are quite unstable, rapidly losing their polar head group upon cell death. Their core structures, however, are quite stable and can survive in sediments for a much longer time (Volkman 2006). As hydrocarbons they can endure exposure to higher temperatures and survive for billions of years. The inherent thermal stability of hydrocarbons allows them to be used as biomarkers to trace the evolution of life for much of Earth’s history.

Many lipids are common to all of life and are generic. Others are genetically relate organisms (deemed taxon-specific biomarkers or TSBs, Moldowan and Jacobson 2000) and provide insight into the evolution of life. The level of specificity may encompass domains, whole kingdoms or phyla or be confined to orders/families or even can be restricted to a genus/species. Their occurrences often tend to predate fossil evidence for a class of organisms and can sometimes be used to validate certain evolutionary relationships that are suggested, but incomplete, based on fossil morphologies and occurrences (Moldowan 2000). These and other molecular fossils also are referred to as biomarkers. A comprehensive review of biomarkers is beyond the scope of this paper, and the reader is directed to several recent books that more broadly cover these topics (Peters et al. 2005; Bianchi and Canuel 2011; Schwarzbauer and Jovančićević 2016). Instead, we will examine several examples that illustrate the use and limitations of biomarkers as molecular fossils in charting the evolution of life.

2 Evidence for the Earliest Life on Earth

The Hadean Eon marks the time between Earth’s accretion (~4.6 Ga) to the stabilization of its crust (~4.0 Ga) and includes the time when Earth was heavily bombarded by meteorites and comets that are thought to have contributed water and organic compounds that may have given rise to life (Sarafian et al. 2014). Evidence for the earliest life may be preserved within single crystals of zircon from Jack Hills, Australia, that contain microscopic inclusions of isotopically light graphite (Bell et al. 2015). Similar $^{12}\text{C}$-rich carbon residue is found in some of the oldest Archean metasedimentary rocks (~3.7 Ga) from Isua, Greenland (Mojzsis et al. 1996; Nishizawa et al. 2005; McKeegan et al. 2007). This formation contains laminated metacarbonate structures identified as microbial stromatolites (Nutman et al. 2016) that morphologically similar to ~3.4 Ga stromatolites in Pilbara, Australia (Allwood et al. 2006, 2007), supporting the theory that life arose >4 Ga (Hedges 2002). These rocks were all metamorphosed and no hydrocarbons or other biogenic organic compounds could have survived. And, while isotopically light carbon is a signature of life (Schidlowski 2001), abiotic processes may complicate interpretation (Westall and Folk 2003). In some cases, questions have arisen whether
the carbon is syngenetic or transported into the rock at a younger time (Papineau et al. 2010).

3 Methanogenic Archaea in the Archean

Tail-to-tail linked $C_{20}$ (2,6,11,15-tetramethylhexadecane = crocetane) and $C_{25}$ (2,6,10,15,19-pentamethylicosane = PMI) isoprenoid hydrocarbons are diagnostic markers for methanogenic archaebacteria or anaerobic methanotrophic consortia and one or both of these compounds are reported to occur in shale extracts from the ~750 Ma Chuar Group (Summons et al. 1988a) and the ~1690 Ma Barney Creek Formation (Summons et al. 1988b; Greenwood and Summons 2003). It is difficult to prove that hydrocarbons extracted from ancient rocks are syngenetic (i.e., dating from the time of sedimentation) as there is always the possibility that the hydrocarbons migrated into the rocks at a later time. Extracts from ~2.7 Ga metasedimentary rocks from Timmins, Ontario, Canada contain cyclic and acyclic biphytanes and $C_{36}$–$C_{39}$ derivatives (Ventura et al. 2007). These compounds are likely to be syngenetic because similar compounds were released by catalytic hydrogenation of extracted rock. Isotopically light carbon in kerogen ($<-57\%$) from rocks of similar age is interpreted to originate from methanotrophs consuming biogenic methane (Eigenbrode and Freeman 2006). Isotopically light methane ($-55\%$) in ~3.5 Ga fluid inclusions may be further evidence for the very early evolution of methanogens (Ueno et al. 2006). However, it is unclear if this methane is biogenic (Sherwood Lollar et al. 2006). Geochemical indicators for the early evolution of methanogenic archaebacteria are consistent with biochemical and genomic assessments for the evolution of life (Sheridan et al. 2003; Martin and Sousa 2016).

4 Purple Sulfur Bacteria and the Oldest Syngenetic Biomarkers

Isotopic studies suggest that the earliest microbial ecosystems were based on sulfur metabolism (Shen et al. 2001; Wacey et al. 2010, 2015). Although microfossils identified as sulfur bacteria are observed in ~3.5 Ga rocks (Wacey et al. 2011), the earliest chemical fossil evidence is in much younger rocks of the Barney Creek Formation dated at 1.64 Ga. These may be the oldest hydrocarbon biomarkers that are undoubtedly syngenetic (Summons et al. 1988b). Here, abundant okenane occurs with lesser amounts of chlorobactane and isorenieratane (Brocks et al. 2005; Brocks and Schaeffer 2008). The only known precursor for okenane is okenone, a $C_{40}$ monoaromatic carotenoid synthesized by the Chromatiaceae family of purple sulfur bacteria. Chlorobactane and isorenieratane are other carotenoids that are characteristic of the Chlorobiaceae family of green sulfur bacteria. Curiously, okenane appears to be restricted to Proterozoic rocks, leading to a suggestion that Chromatiaceae may have acquired the genes to synthesize okenone recently or that an extinct family of bacteria synthesized okenone in the Proterozoic (Brocks and
Butterfield 2009). Since then, okenane has been reported in middle Triassic (Saito et al. 2014) and Toarcian (French et al. 2014) strata associated with shallow photic zone euxinia, reinforcing the concept that okenane is a taxon-specific biomarker for purple sulfur bacteria.

5 Cyanobacteria and the Great Oxidation Event

For its first two billion years, Earth’s atmosphere contained little or no oxygen (Canfield 2005; Holland 2006). Mineralogical evidence for low oxygen is seen throughout the Archean by the lack of oxidized iron in paleosols (Rye and Holland 1998) and preservation of detrital pyrite and uraninite (Rasmussen and Buick 1999). Around 2.4–2.3 Ga, the amount of oxygen in the Archean atmosphere jumped to >0.01 PAL (present atmospheric level) and possibly >0.1 PAL. This was proven from sulfur isotopic measurements on marine pyrites that show strong mass-independent fractionation prior to ~2.4 Ga (Pavlov and Kasting 2002; Holland 2006; Farquhar et al. 2007). The rapid rise is attributed to free oxygen produced by photosynthetic cyanobacteria outpacing its sequestration as mineral oxides (Kump and Barley 2007) or to ozone forming a UV protective shield at >10^-5 PAL that extended the lifetime of atmospheric oxygen (Goldblatt et al. 2006). The transition is termed the Great Oxidation Event (GOE) (Holland 2002).

The GOE implies that cyanobacteria evolved before 2.4 Ga; however, how much earlier remains uncertain. Some have argued that the GOE was triggered by the late emergence of cyanobacteria (Kopp et al. 2005; Kirschvink and Kopp 2008), which was consistent with early RNA phylogenetic analyses that suggest that major diversification of eubacteria, including the cyanobacteria, took place ~2.6 ± 0.3 Ga (Hedges 2002; Sheridan et al. 2003). Some models suggest that oxygen could have overwhelmed redox buffers less than a million years following the emergence of cyanobacteria (Ward et al. 2016) and other studies pin age for the evolution of cyanobacteria after the GOE (Tomitani et al. 2006). This requires extinct protocyanobacteria to evolve a progenitor bacteriochlorophyll system that produced oxygen, which was replaced by chlorophyll once molecular oxygen became available (Xiong et al. 2000; Raymond and Blankenship 2004).

Microfossils and stromatolites, however, suggest that cyanobacteria existed long before the Great Oxidation Event (Schopf 2006). Assemblages of cyanobacterium-like microorganisms were described by Schopf and Packer (1987) and Schopf (1993) in the Apex Chert of Western Australia. Frequently cited as the oldest microfossils (~3.465 Ga), their biogenicity was questioned by Brasier et al. (2002, 2006) who considered these microstructure to be artifacts associated with mineral growth and the associated organic matter to be amorphous graphite within multiple generations of hydrothermal chert. This triggered a debate that even with the application of the most advanced analytical techniques
(carbon isotopic analysis, Raman spectroscopy, laser induced fluorescence imaging, TEM, XANES, and nanoSIMS) failed to be reconciled (Pinti and Altermann 2011; Schopf and Kudryavtsev 2012; Brasier et al. 2015). The Apex Chert has been subjected to regional metamorphism and exposed to temperatures as high as 350 °C. Consequently, no hydrocarbon signature is expected to be preserved. The carbonaceous matter is composed of large polynuclear aromatic moieties that are disordered or organized into nanometer-size graphitic domains. Although microbial induced sedimentary structures are associated with the Apex Chert (Hickman-Lewis et al. 2016), there is no direct or conclusive microfossil or chemical evidence for life.

The earliest undisputed microfossils are from the nearby Strelley Pool Formation (~3.43 Ga). Here, kilometer-long remnants of an ancient stromatolitic carbonate platform provide compelling evidence of microbial activity (Allwood et al. 2006, 2007). Large (>40 μm) lenticular to spindle-like structures, spheroidal structures, mat-forming thread-like structures, and tubular sheath-like envelopes were trapped between sand grains and entombed within a silica cement. The presence of stromatolites and microfossil morphology strongly suggests photosynthetic bacteria, but not necessarily oxygen producing cyanobacteria. More convincing microfossil evidence for cyanobacteria exists in rocks ~3.0–2.9 Ga (Altermann and Kazmierczak 2003; Nisbet et al. 2007; Schopf et al. 2007). The oldest microfossils with definitive cyanobacterial features date no earlier than ~2100 Ma (Hofmann 1976; Tomitani et al. 2006).

2- and 3-Methylhopanes and steranes tell a similar story of possible, but not proven, evidence for cyanobacteria evolving long before the GOE. The initial discovery of these compounds in extracts from 2.7 Ga (Brocks et al. 1999) and follow up studies of 2.78 Ga Pilbara shales (Brocks et al. 2003a, b) and 2.67–2.46 Ga sediments from the Transvaal Supergroup (Waldbauer et al. 2009a, b) appeared to prove that cyanobacteria evolved significantly prior to the GOE. Precursors of the 2α-methylhopanes were believed to be biosynthesized only by cyanobacteria (Summons et al. 1999). The co-detection of steranes and 3β-methylhopanes (Brocks et al. 2003a, b) provided additional biomarker evidence for the presence of free oxygen as all extant eukaryotes require molecular oxygen to synthesize sterols and 3-methylhopanes were considered to be a TSB for aerobic methanotrophic bacteria. The relative abundance of the 3-methylhopanes correlated with the δ13C of the kerogen suggesting syngenecity (Eigenbrode and Freeman 2006), and the 2α-methylhopanes were found to be more abundant in shallow-water sediments than those deposited in deeper waters consistent with photic zone cyanobacteria (Knoll et al. 2007a; Eigenbrode et al. 2008).

We must be cautious with these conclusions as all aspects have come under suspicion. Although these studies were conducted using strict procedures to minimize contamination and differentiate syngenetic from migrated hydrocarbons, it is unlikely that the free biomarkers date from the time of rock deposition.
Using nanoSIMS, Rasmussen et al. (2008) examined the $^{13}$C of samples from Pilbara and other Archean rock at a μm-scale and found that the kerogen and pyrobitumen were significantly lighter (−36 to −51‰) than associated free hydrocarbons (−26 to −29‰) and concluded that the hydrocarbons must have been added after peak metamorphism (~2.2 Ga). Examination of 2.7 Ga core sliced at a millimeter scale found that biomarker hydrocarbons were concentrated on the rock surfaces, indicating they were contaminants (Brocks 2011). French et al. (2015) studied new Pilbara cores collected and processed to minimize drilling contamination and found that while the rock extracts and hydropyrolysates contained PAHs and diamondoids at concentrations above background, steranes and hopanes were not detected in concentrations exceeding procedural blanks. They concluded that the earlier studies resulted from contamination.

Even if the biomarkers are syngenetic, their use as proof for cyanobacteria and free oxygen is questionable as well (Newman et al. 2016). 2-Methylhopanes, 3-methylhopanes, and steranes are certainly associated with extant cyanobacteria, aerobic methanotrophic bacteria and eukaryotes, respectively. However, the taxonomic specificity of these compounds is now known to be not unique and extant organisms may not capture the full biochemical diversity of biosynthetic pathways expressed by extinct genera. The first warning that 2-methylhopanes may not be a proven biomarker for cyanobacteria came with the discovery that strains of Rhodopseudomonas palustris, a purple non-sulfur phototrophic α-proteobacterium, can synthesize 2-methylbacteriohopanepolyols (Rashby et al. 2007). This was thought to result from horizontal gene transfer or because R. palustris is related to the ancestor that gave rise to the cyanobacteria. Subsequently, genomic analyses found that only about one fifth of the cyanobacteria species actually possess the gene needed to synthesize 2-methylhopanoids while many species of alphaproteobacteria and acidobacteria possess this gene (Welander et al. 2010). This gene, _hpnP_, was found to correlate with environments that support plant–microbe interactions and in closely packed microbial communities such as stromatolites, hot springs, and hypersaline microbial mats (Ricci et al. 2014). 2-Methylhopanes are not reliable TSBs for cyanobacteria, but rather serve as indicators of low oxygen niches that are enriched in sessile microbial communities. Similarly, _hpnR_, the gene needed for the synthesis of 3-methylhopanoids, was found not be unique to aerobic methanotrophs or methylotrophs. It is expressed by acetic acid bacteria, occurs in the genomes of other bacteria, and appears to be required for cell survival in the late stationary phase (Welander and Summons 2012).

Even though the molecular evidence that was once considered proof for the early evolution of cyanobacteria is now viewed skeptically, new trace-metal evidence has emerged supporting the hypothesis that free oxygen was being produced much earlier than 2.5 Ga. Transient strong enrichments and isotopic fractionations in some trace metals are interpreted as signatures of oxic water (Anbar et al. 2007;
Duan et al. 2010; Czaja et al. 2012; Planavsky et al. 2014a). These “whiffs of oxygen” suggest that oxygen producing cyanobacteria predate the GOE by 500 Ma; however, they may have been restricted, highly localized benthic niches while atmospheric oxygen remained \(<10^{-5}\) PAL (Lalonde and Konhauser 2015). Early evolution of cyanobacteria is consistent with the current genomic analysis (Schirrmieister et al. 2015).

6 Early Eukarya and Steranes

Eukarya are believed to have evolved from an ancient archaeon that engulfed one or more bacteria as symbionts. Mitochondria and chloroplast organelles are certainly derived by the endosymbiosis of \(\alpha\)-proteobacteria and cyanobacteria, respectively. The engulfing archaeon and the last common Eukarya ancestor are long extinct, but metagenomic sequencing of the recently discovered \textit{Lokiarchaeota} shows that it contains a rich gene repertoire for forming complex cytoskeleton and membrane remodeling systems that would be required for the archaeon host (Spang et al. 2015). The Eukarya are now viewed as a sister group splitting off, if not part of, the Archaea (Hug et al. 2016). Genetic analyses tend to agree that major diversification of eukaryotes occurred at \(~800\) Ma, but the calculated age for the last common eukaryotic ancestor varies from \(~2100\) to \(900\) Ma, depending on the assumptions, statistical methods, and accuracy of microfossil constraints used to calibrate the molecular clocks (Parfrey et al. 2011; Eme et al. 2014).

Can biomarkers help define the emergence of Eukarya? All Eukarya incorporate sterols to regulate membrane fluidity and perform other critical cellular functions. As such, steroidal hydrocarbons (e.g., steranes, diasteranes, and their aromatized forms) are considered to be biomarkers for the domain and the genes responsible for sterol biosynthesis were most likely present in the last common ancestor of all Eukarya. Free oxygen is required for sterol synthesis, suggesting that the Eukarya evolved around the time of the GOE (Summons et al. 2006a). However, the amount of dissolved oxygen necessary for their synthesis in some species is only in the nanomolar range (Waldbauer et al. 2009a, b), allowing for an even older emergence when only “whiffs” were present in microenvironments.

Curiously, steranes are absent or at very low abundance in many Upper Proterozoic sediment extracts where syngeneicity is not in question and Eukarya should have been present (Brocks et al. 2005; Pawlowska et al. 2013). The lack of a sterane signature, typical of later Phanerozoic rocks, is attributed to the “mat effect” where benthic microbial mats favored the preservation of heterotrophs and anaerobic bacteria living within and below the mats and the lipids of plankton and upper mat dwellers were degraded (Pawlowska et al. 2013). Older strata should show similar preservation biases, so the lack of steranes does not mean that eukaryotes had not yet evolved.
Since the steranes reported in the ~2.7 Ga Pilbara craton shales discussed above are now considered to be contaminants, the oldest known steranes are in fluid inclusions within Matinenda Formation quartz (Dutkiewicz et al. 2006; George et al. 2008). The inclusions, themselves, may be somewhat younger (>2.2 Ga) than the host rock (~2.45 Ga). Preservation of organic matter appears to be enhanced in fluid inclusions as they are closed systems with no minerals that promote oil cracking. Organic matter associated with microfossils embedded in chert is also remarkably well preserved even after exposure to temperatures exceeding ~150 °C (Alleon et al. 2016). The Matinenda inclusions contain a full range of saturated and aromatic hydrocarbons that resembles produced oil from upper Precambrian source rocks. In addition to abundant biomarkers that are consistent with cyanobacteria (e.g., 2-methylhopanes, monomethyl alkanes), there is a diverse suite of steranes including C₂₈ and C₂₉ steranes and C₂₈ diasteranes and at lower concentration C₂₇, C₃₀ 24-n-propyl-, C₃₀ 4α-methyl-, and C₂₆ 24-nor- and 27-nor-cholestanes and diacholestanes. Dinosteranes and 24-isopropylcholestanes were not detected. The regular C₂₇, C₂₈, and C₂₉ diasteranes and steranes are not taxon-specific beyond being characteristic of Eukarya. C₃₀ 24-n-propylcholestanes are known to be produced by some chrysophytes (Moldowan et al. 1990).

The presence of steroidal hydrocarbons in oil inclusions strongly suggests, but does not prove, that Eukarya evolved prior to ~2.45 Ga as some bacteria synthesize sterols (Volkman 2005). This is generally not an issue when interpreting the molecular fossil record of Phanerozoic strata when eukaryotic organisms was significant contributors of sedimentary organic carbon and sterol synthesis were thought to be restricted to a few bacterial strains that acquired the genes by horizontal transfer (Summons et al. 2006a). Caution now is needed for pushing the age boundary for eukaryotes to older time, as recent studies have shown that the gene needed for the initial cyclization of oxidosqualene into the sterol structure is present in numerous bacteria spanning five different phyla (Wei et al. 2016). These findings suggest that bacterial sterol synthesis has a complex evolutionary history and likely occurs in diverse organisms.

7 The Diversification of Eukarya

Following the GOE, Earth’s atmosphere contained free oxygen but substantially below present levels. Estimates range from as high as 40% to as little as 0.1% of the present level (Planavsky et al. 2014b). Regardless of the actual oxygen level, there were sufficient amounts to trigger the evolutionary diversification of Eukarya. Differentiating eukaryotic from prokaryotic microfossils by morphology alone is challenging. Criteria for eukaryotes, such as size (>50 μm), complex ultrastructure, or ornamented walls, may be mimicked by bacteria (Javaux et al. 2003; Knoll et al. 2006). The uncertainty as to whether a microfossil is a eukaryote increases with age. Javaux et al. (2010) reported on relatively large (up to ~300 μm) acritarchs (organic-walled microfossil) in the 3.2 Ga Moodies Group that could be eukaryotic. These are
considerably older than microfossils deemed likely to be eukaryotes from ~2.1 Ga (Grypania, Knoll et al. 2006) and ~1.7 Ga (Pang et al. 2013) or ~1.5 Ga microfossils that are almost certainly eukaryotic (Javaux et al. 2004) and multicellular (Zhu et al. 2016). The oldest accepted “crown group” (last common ancestor to all extant members of a clade) fossil is a red alga dating from 1.2 Ga (Butterfield 2000). A claim for “crown group” fossilized green alga at 1.8 Ga (Moczydłowska et al. 2011) is disputed (Knoll 2015). Based on models of the genome of extant organisms and microfossil evidence, we confidently state only that eukaryotic organisms evolved earlier than ~1.2 Ga and likely as old as ~2.1 Ga.

There are numerous studies reporting steranes and other chemical fossils in Proterozoic bitumens (Summons and Walter 1990; McKirdy and Imbus 1992). As with Archean strata, Proterozoic biomarkers have been subjected to increased scrutiny concerning their syngenecity. Analysis of oils in fluid inclusions from the ~1.4 Ga Roper Group (Dutkiewicz et al. 2004; Volk et al. 2005; Siljeström et al. 2013) consistently show a predominance of bacterial biomarkers with minor amounts of steranes.

Fossil and chemical records become more synchronous and reliable in the Neoproterozoic. Biomarkers can reveal evolutionary events that have left no physical fossils. Collectively, the C_{30} 4α-methylsteranes and C_{26} norcholestanes tell an interesting story. C_{30} 4α-methylsteranes can arise from multiple sources but are most commonly associated with dinoflagellates. One specific type, the dinosteranes, are produced almost exclusively by dinoflagellates. The fossil record for dinoflagellates begins in the Triassic, but because few living dinoflagellates produce cysts, this record has long been suspect. Organic-walled acritarchs believed to be related to dinoflagellates (Moldowan et al. 1996) date to the Neoproterozoic (Butterfield and Rainbird 1998). Here, the mineralized fossil record matches well with the chemical fossil observations as dinosteranes and related aromatic biomarkers have a continuous record back to the Early Cambrian (Moldowan and Talyzina 1998) and possibly the Neoproterozoic (Summons et al. 1992; Zhang et al. 2002) and even the Mesoproterozoic (Meng et al. 2005) but are most abundant in Phanerozoic sediments.

The chemical record for C_{26} 24-norcholestanes and 24-nordiacholestanes also extends back to the Neoproterozoic (Zhang et al. 2002), although concentrations of these compounds in source rocks remain low until the Jurassic and become particularly abundant in the Tertiary (Holba et al. 1998a, b). This temporal pattern and the association of high concentrations of 24-norcholestanes with siliceous sediments containing diatom-specific biomarkers (e.g., highly branched isoprenoids) strongly suggests that these compounds are from diatoms. However, diatoms did not evolve until <100 Ma (Sorhannus 2007) and dinoflagellates were the only source of 24-norsterols known until the discovery of 24-norcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol in the diatom Thalassiosira aff. Antarctica (Rampen et al. 2007a). Hence, 24-norcholestanes in post-Triassic sediments, particularly those of Tertiary age deposited at high latitude, can be attributed to diatoms, while older occurrences originate from dinoflagellates.
A diverse assemblage of Ediacaran animal fossils arose after the Gaskiers glaciation (~580 Ma). The Ediacaran biota includes a mixture of stem-group animals and fossils that appear to be failed experiments in multicellular evolution (Droser and Gehling 2015). Sponges were certainly one of the earliest extant animals to emerge. Cryogenian fossils identified as sponges have been reported from 760 Ma (Brain et al. 2012) and 659 Ma (Wallace et al. 2014) strata. The biomarker record fully supports this age of emergence. McCaffrey et al. (1994) were the first to note the occurrence of 24-isopropylcholestanes throughout the geologic record (~1.8 Ga to 15 Ma) and particular enrichment in Ediacaran-Lower Cambrian strata. 24-Isopropylcholestanes were proposed to be highly taxon specific because demosponges were the only known extant organisms that synthesize 24-isopropylcholesterol, the biological precursor to C$_{30}$ 24-isopropylcholestane. Love et al. (2009) conducted a rigorous study of Huqf Supergroup core that spanned Cryogenian strata below the Marinoan cap carbonate (>635 Ma) through the Ediacaran and into the Early Cambrian. In addition to a rich diversity of C$_{26}$–C$_{29}$ steranes attributed to eukaryotic algae, the samples contained abundant 24-isopropylcholestane in both extractable bitumen and the hydropyrolysate of the kerogen. This study seemed to firmly position the evolution of the demosponges in the Cryogenian; however, some questioned whether the demosponges are the only source or whether 24-isopropylcholestane might originate from other extinct sponges or sister groups, such as the single-celled choanoflagellates (Brocks and Butterfield 2009). The discovery that several different pelagophyte algae are also capable of synthesizing 24-isopropylcholesterol suggested that the biomarker was not as specific as once thought (Antcliffe 2013). Genomic analyses, however, suggest that the pelagophytes and sponges independently evolved the required biosynthetic pathways at different times; the sponges in the Neoproterozoic and the pelagophytes later in the Phanerozoic (Gold et al. 2016). Hence the occurrence of 24-isopropylcholestane in the Neoproterozoic is a valid TSB for demosponges. An unusual C$_{28}$ sterane, 26-methylcholestane or cryostane, was recently reported in several pre-Sturtian (~800–740 Ma) successions (Brocks et al. 2016). As demosponges are the only known extant organisms that can methylate sterols in the 26-position, this biomarker pushes the emergence of metazoa prior to Snowball Earth.

The rise of complex multicellular animals may have been tied to marine planktonic algae replacing cyanobacteria as the dominant primary producers. A marked increase in steroid diversity and abundance is seen within a narrow time interval, 659–645 Ma, between the Sturtian and Marinoan “snowball Earth” glaciations (Brocks et al. 2017). This rapid change in biomarker distributions suggests that a surge in nutrients supplied by the deglaciation triggered the development of a new ecosystem that created more efficient food webs, further increasing O$_2$ levels, and promoting the evolution of new multicellular phyla, such as the sponges, protists (predatory rhizarians), and the subsequent radiation metazoans in the Ediacaran period.
9    **Gloeocapsomorpha prisca** Dominates the Ordovician

Normal alkanes are ubiquitous and are not typically taxon-specific. An exception is the unique hydrocarbon distribution (high $C_{11}$–$C_{19}$ odd carbon preference, low abundance of $C_{20+}$ alkanes and isoprenoids) that is characteristic of *Gloeocapsomorpha prisca*, a microorganism of uncertain affinity. This microorganism emerged in the Early Cambrian and rose to prominence in the Ordovician, where it dominated in some environments and contributed nearly all of the organic matter in oil shales that can be over 70% TOC with the kerogen being 90% of the total rock volume (Fowler 1992). Although *G. prisca* dominance is mostly restricted to the Ordovician, it is rarely reported in the Silurian and became extinct in the Late Devonian (Fowler et al. 2004).

The affinity of *G. prisca* has been debated for decades and remains uncertain. To complicate the matter, *G. prisca* had different life cycle stages where it could exist as either plankton or benthic mats (Pak et al. 2010). Low concentrations of pristane and phytane led Reed et al. (1986) to conclude that *G. prisca* was a non-photosynthetic or non-chlorophyll containing bacterium. A eukaryotic green alga, similar to extant *Botryococcus braunii*, was suggested based on similar biochemical adaptations to salinity and the composition of selectively preserved algaenan cell walls (Derenne et al. 1992; Metzger and Largeau 1994). However, the resorcinolic lipids in *G. prisca* that are suggestive of *Botryococcus* may be polymerized cyanobacterial sheath material excreted as an anti-oxidant and/or UV filter (Blokker et al. 2001). *G. prisca* as extinct cyanobacterium has been suggested in several studies (Hoffman et al. 1987; Pancost et al. 1998; Stasiuk and Osadetz 1990). The occurrence of aromatized hopanes and abundant methylhopanes in Estonia kukersite, a shale predominantly composed of *G. prisca*, strongly support a cyanobacterial affinity (Liao et al. 2015). Aromatized hopanes are believed to be derived from $C_{30}$ diplopterol and/or diploptenes, consistent with cyanobacteria.

10    Higher Land Plants

Prior to the Devonian Period, most biomass contributed to sediments consisted of algae and bacteria with little or no higher-plant input, such as lignin, leaf cuticle, spores, or pollen. Land plants have undergone several phases of rapid diversification (Gensel and Edwards 2001). Since their apparent origin in the Ordovician (Wellman et al. 2003), an explosion of new higher plant taxa occurred in the Late Silurian-Early Devonian (Bateman et al. 1998). Major land-plant groups arose during the Devonian and Carboniferous and the flowering plants, the angiosperms, underwent rapid diversification ~90 Ma to become the dominant land plants. The transition of plants from a marine to a terrigenous environment required many molecular adaptations (Waters 2003) and each major radiation spawned novel biochemical markers that are now biomarkers. Extracts from organic-rich pre-Devonian sedimentary rocks contain only limited amounts of extended $n$-alkanes having more than ~25 carbon atoms. Waxy coatings on the leaves of higher plants contain abundant
precursors of the extended \textit{n}-alkanes. For this reason, many Devonian or younger rocks and related crude oils may contain abundant extended alkanes as well as other higher-plant biomarkers.

Plants continually evolved isoprenoid-based polycyclics for many purposes, such as attracting pollinators with floral scents to defend against herbivores, resulting in many highly taxon-specific biomarkers. In general, tricyclic diterpenoids are characteristic of gymnosperms, specifically conifers, while pentacyclic triterpenoids are almost exclusively synthesized by angiosperms. For example, Moldowan et al. (2015) used a large shift in the distributions of the tricyclic diterpanes, rimuane, pimarane, rosane, and isopimarane to distinguish terrestrial contributions in Cretaceous and Tertiary oils on northern South America. The presence and abundance of oleanane in most of the oils was insufficient to make the distinction, while shifts in the tricyclic diterpane distributions were definitive. Tricyclic diterpanes are related to all plant types (Zinniker 2005) and the shift in their distributions could have originated from plant extinctions during the end-Cretaceous mass extinction event.

Phyllocladane and related diterpanes are structures along the gibberellin biosynthetic pathway inherent to all plants and absent from all other life kingdoms (Zinniker 2005). They are most commonly associated with gymnosperms and their occurrence in Upper Carboniferous coals is attributed to the first appearance of conifers (Schulze and Michaelis 1990). However, older occurrences into the Devonian are noteworthy (Zinniker 2005). Several aromatized arborane/fernane derivatives appear to be biomarkers for Cordaites, an important genus of extinct gymnosperms (Auras et al. 2006).

The progenitors and evolution of the angiosperms remain a topic of intense debate (Frohlich and Chase 2007). DNA phylogenetic analyses of extant plants place the divergence of the angiosperms in the Paleozoic (Peterson et al. 2007), well before the earliest known angiosperm fossils in the Late Jurassic. The association of oleanane with the radiation of the angiosperms is well documented (Moldowan et al. 1994) and its occurrence in pre-Cretaceous fossils can help unravel this paleontological conflict between genomic analysis and the macrofossil record. Cladistic analysis of living and fossil seed plants places the angiosperms with the extant Gnetales and three extinct groups, Bennettitales, Pentoxylon, and Caytoniales. Molecular phylogenetic analyses indicate that Gnetales are more closely related to conifers, not angiosperms. In a large, but incomplete survey, oleanane and its functionalized triterpenoid precursors proved to be widespread within living and fossil angiosperms (Taylor et al. 2006). Oleanane was absent in the pyrolyzates of living Gnetales species, Carboniferous medullosan pteridosperms, and in the conifer relatives Cordaitales (including \textit{Mesoxylon}). Oleanane was detected in pre-Cretaceous rocks containing two classes of non-angiosperm fossils, Aptian Bennettitales and Upper Permian Gigantopterids. The relative abundance of oleanane to hopane, the Oleanane Index, correlated with the relative abundance of Gigantopterid fossil remains relative to other plant species, indicating that Gigantopterids are the source of the oleanane. The occurrence of oleanane in a
Pennsylvanian coal ball (Moldowan et al. 1994) and 1,2,7-trimethylnaphthalene, an assumed diagenetic product of oleanane type biomarkers, in Carboniferous coal and sediment samples and even one Devonian cannel coal sample (Armsstroff et al. 2006) supports the hypothesis that the angiosperm lineage existed well before the Permian and that their progenitors belonged to an extinct group of seed plants from which only the angiosperms survived.

Higher-plant biomarkers can be very taxon-specific. For example, Early Eocene resin from the Paris Basin was found to contain quesnoin, a pentacyclic ent-diterpene (Jossang et al. 2008). This biomarker is believed to be a diagenetic product of guamaic acid, suggesting an association to Hymenaea oblongifolia, which is classified within the Caesalpinioideae, one of the oldest families of angiosperms. H. oblongifolia is a modern tropical tree found in the Amazon Basin. Quesnoin, therefore, supports the hypothesis that the climate of the Paris Basin was tropical 55 Ma.

11 Biomarkers of the Great Dying

The diversity of life is in constant flux. Over 99% of all species that lived are now extinct. The rates of extinction are not uniform and there are periods in Earth’s history when many species rapidly died out. Five large mass extinctions occurred in the Phanerozoic: end-Ordovician (~440 Ma), Late Devonian (~365 Ma), end-Permian (~252 Ma), end-Trassic (~201 Ma), and end-Cretaceous (~66 Ma). The end-Triassic extinction was the weakest with 76% of all species dying out, and the end-Permian event, termed the Great Dying, was the most severe resulting in loss of up to 96% of all marine species and ~70% of terrigenous vertebrates (Erwin 2006; Benton 2008; Bergstrom and Dugatkin 2012). The causes of these major upheavals have been long debated and biomarkers have provided clues as to key changes in the environment, such as eutrophy, euxinia, ocean acidification, changes in hydrological balance, and atmospheric CO2 that occurred with these extinctions (Knoll et al. 2007b; Whiteside and Grice 2016).

The reasons for the P-Tr mass extinction remain unclear, but they must account for six observations (Payne and Clapham 2012): (1) the event affected both marine and terrigenous species; (2) the main extinction event occurred over a short timescale of ~200,000 years; (3) marine animals having limited ability to protect themselves from changes in the partial pressure of carbon dioxide (pCO2), temperature, pH, and oxygen in the water were particularly prone to extinction (e.g., highly calcified organisms); (4) sedimentary fabrics, pyrite framboi abundance, and biomarkers suggest widespread ocean anoxia that affected shallow marine settings beginning ~254 Ma and maximizing near the main extinction event; (5) stable carbon isotope compositions of carbonate and organic matter become lighter before the main extinction event and then abruptly decrease further during the mass extinction (the δ13C excursion); and (6) environmental and biological disruption continued through
the Early Triassic. These observations are best explained by massive eruption of the Siberian Traps, which released huge amounts of carbon dioxide and other gases from contact aureoles in carbonate and evaporite sediments within this province (Retallack and Jahren 2008; Svensen et al. 2009). These volatiles may have caused global warming, ocean acidification, and increased terrigenous weathering and nutrient runoff, which enhanced oceanic anoxia.

Biomarker analyses indicate suppressed dissolved oxygen in shallow marine settings near the P-Tr boundary. Aryl isoprenoids and isorenieratane occur in boundary rocks at Meishan in China and in the Hovea-3 core from Australia (Grice et al. 2005a; b). These biomarkers originate from isorenieratene, a photosynthetic pigment in green sulfur bacteria, which conduct photosynthesis in the marine photic zone under euxinic conditions where hydrogen sulfide is available. Iso-renieratane occurs at several stratigraphic levels in Changhsingian strata at the Meishan location, suggesting that photic zone anoxia was intermittent prior to the main extinction event (Cao et al. 2009). Uranium isotope measurements support increased marine anoxia during the mass extinction (Brennecka et al. 2011). Abundant isorenieratane co-occurs with various benthic invertebrate fossils, supporting intermittent anoxia that did not significantly impact the megafauna. Seafloor microbialites in the boundary interval at Meishan (Cao and Zheng 2009) and in the Hovea-3 core (Thomas et al. 2004) suggest that these biomarkers originated from benthic photosynthetic organisms in microbial mats rather than from planktonic organisms in a euxinic water column.

The biomarker data also indicate increased input of microbial biomass to sediments through the P-Tr boundary interval. Increased 2-methylhopanes/hopanes and hopane/sterane ratios at Meishan were interpreted to indicate increased cyanobacterial contributions, primary production, and changes in the overall composition of the microbial community (Xie et al. 2005; Summons et al. 2006b; Cao et al. 2009). Based on the 2-methylhopane index, cyanobacterial blooms occurred in the western and eastern Tethys Sea after the P-Tr mass extinction (Jia et al. 2012), though caution is needed in the interpretation as other microbial groups can produce 2-methylhopanoids (Welander et al. 2010). The shallow water Bulla section in northern Italy shows evidence of synchronous blooms of cyanobacteria and prasinophytes with the C_{28}/C_{29} sterane ratio suggesting blooms of prasinophyte algae immediately after the extinction event (Jia et al. 2012). However, at Meishan in southern China, the cyanobacteria bloom declined earlier than at Bulla. Increased 2-methylhopane index corresponds to a decrease in the nitrogen isotope ratio at Meishan, which suggests that enhanced nitrogen fixation by the cyanobacteria provided ammonium for a bloom of prasinophytes in the otherwise nutrient-limited shallow marine waters.

Geochemical data also suggest the collapse of terrigenous ecosystems. For example, dibenzofurans and other polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are commonly abundant in Upper Permian strata from China, Italy, and Greenland (Fenton et al. 2007; Sephton et al. 2005; Wang and Visscher 2007), possibly due to increased input
of soil organic carbon and the collapse of terrigenous plant communities (e.g., Sephton et al. 2005). However, a negative excursion in the $\delta^{13}C$ of these compounds across the P-Tr boundary in the Hovea-3 core was interpreted to indicate dominantly terrigenous input in the Permian followed by mainly marine algal input in the Triassic (Grice et al. 2007). Cao et al. (2009) argued that lithology and diagenesis exert major control on the abundance of these compounds, casting doubt on whether the geochemical record indicates collapse of the terrigenous ecosystem at the P-Tr boundary.

Triaromatic 23,24-dimethylcholesteroids (TA-DMC) originate from 23,24-dimethylcholestanes in dinoflagellates, haptophytes, and diatoms and are useful to distinguish Paleozoic from Mesozoic and younger oil and rock extracts (Barbanti et al. 2011). The relative abundance of TA-DMC in source rock extracts and crude oils from different global localities and ages help to identify the P-Tr boundary.

### 12 Diatoms, 23,24-Dimethylcholestanes, and HBIs

As discussed above, dinosteranes ($4\alpha, 23,24$-trimethylcholestanes) occur in sedimentary rocks from the Late Archean to the present. In contrast, with very few exceptions in a few Ordovician rocks and oils, triaromatic 23,24-dimethylcholestanes occur only in Triassic and younger marine sediments and oils (Barbanti et al. 1999; Moldowan and Jacobson 2000) indicating that these compound classes have independent origins, though likely still derived from dinoflagellates. Increasing abundance of triaromatic 23,24-dimethylcholestanes through the Cretaceous suggested the biosynthetic pathways for a precursor evolved in a different organism. Diatoms proved to be this late-evolved source. A survey of >100 diatom species found abundant 23,24-dimethylsterols in 21 species belonging to six different orders (Rampen et al. 2007b).

Several genera of diatoms are the only organisms known to synthesize $C_{20}$, $C_{25}$, or $C_{30}$ highly-branched isoprenoids (HBIs). HBIs may have one or multiple saturated bonds, although the HBIs with one to three are most common. The function of these “T-branched” alkenes is unknown, but two groups of diatoms evolved independent pathways for their synthesis, implying that they provide a significant advantage (Massé et al. 2004). In a study that integrated 18S rRNA phylogenetic analysis with the mineral and chemical fossil record, Sinninghe Damsté et al. (2004) showed that HBIs were first biosynthesized by the rhizosolenid diatoms. The mineral fossil record for the rhizosolenids dates to $\sim 70$ Ma, while saturated HBIs are found in oils and marine sediments $< 90$ Ma. Thus, the chemical fossil record unambiguously extends the emergence of the rhizosolenid diatoms by an additional 20 Ma. Moldowan et al. (2015) used the $C_{25}$ HBI to help distinguish Early Cretaceous oils (HBI absent) from Late Cretaceous oils (HBI present) in the Llanos Basin.

Belt et al. (2007) proposed a specific $C_{25}$ monounsaturated HBI (IP$_{25}$) is produced by diatoms living within sea ice and its presence in sediments is a
proxy for the extent of ice. IP$_{25}$ appears to be relatively stable and has been used in paleoclimate studies from Recent to the early Pleistocene. The presence of IP$_{25}$ in Arctic marine sediments appears to measure the extent of past seasonal sea ice rather than permanent or multi-year ice conditions (Belt and Müller 2013). Brown et al. (2014) confirmed that IP$_{25}$ originates in diatom species endemic to sea ice.

13 Glycerol Dialkyl Glycerol Tetraether (GDGTs)

Both archaea and bacteria synthesize lipids that have two polar head groups and are long enough to span across membranes: the glycerol dialkyl glycerol tetraether lipids (GDGTs). Several groups of archaea (Pearson and Ingalls 2013) synthesize isoprenoid GDGTs (isoGDGTs) that are two biphytane moieties containing 0–3 cyclopentane rings each (crenarchaeol also has one cyclohexane ring) link at both ends by ether bonds to glycerols. Branched GDGTs (brGDGTs) are composed of two $n$-alkyl chains having 2–3 methyl and 0–1 cyclopentane rings. The biological source of the brGDGTs has not yet been found but the Acidobacteria are believed to be likely candidates (Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2014). The intact polar lipids (IPLs) are fragile and many of the polar headgroups are quickly lost upon cell death. IPLs survive in the geologic environment for $<$7000 years (Lengger et al. 2014). Their core structures, however, can persist into the middle Jurassic provided the stratum has not been heated (Jenkyns et al. 2012).

In laboratory cultures of thermophilic archaea, the number of cyclopentane rings is highly dependent on growth temperature (Uda et al. 2001). Schouten et al. (2002) suggested that marine planktonic archaea, principally the ammonia-oxidizing Thaumarchaeota, functioned similarly and formulated TEX$_{86}$, a GDGT ratio that correlates linearly with the annual mean sea surface temperatures (SST). Considerable attention has been given to TEX$_{86}$ as it can function as temperature proxy in paleoclimate studies and is applicable to both marine and terrestrial sediments. The calibrations have been refined with modifications to the original TEX$_{86}$ to compensate for very hot (TEX$_{86}^H$) and very cold (TEX$_{86}^L$) environments (Kim et al. 2010). However, in a study of modern Mediterranean waters, Kim et al. (2015) found that TEX$_{86}^H$ measured on suspended particulates correlated only partially to temperature was mostly dependent on water depth while the sediments collected at water depths $>$1000 m did correlate to SST. Somehow the ammonia-oxidizing Thaumarchaeota are able to respond to SST when they have maximum activity below the surface water mixing zone and do yield TEX$_{86}$ values that co-vary with their own growth temperature. Hurley et al. (2016) provide a possible solution to this conundrum by finding that a cultured thaumarchaeon yielded TEX$_{86}$ values inversely proportional to growth rate, which is controlled by the rate of ammonia oxidation. TEX$_{86}$, therefore, reflects the metabolic activity of Thaumarchaeota in the water column.
and its correlation with SST is a secondary effect of nutrient dynamics and the archaeal community.

14 Phytoplankton Alkenones

Isochrysidales, phytoplankton within the class Prymnesiophyceae, biosynthesize alkenones, linear C_{34}–C_{41} methyl- and ethylketones with one to four double bonds. Since the proportion of double bonds increases with decreasing growth temperature, it was reasonable to assume that these compounds were membrane lipids (Brassell et al. 1986). This proved not to be the case (Eltgroth et al. 2005) and alkenones are likely produced as food storage lipids. The degree of unsaturation proved to be extremely sensitive to temperature and is now widely used as a proxy for paleoclimate. The most common is the \( U_{37}^\text{K} \), the ratio of C_{37:2}/(C_{37:2} + C_{37:3}) alkenones, which can provide paleo sea surface temperatures with an estimated accuracy of 0.5 °C.

Alkenones have been found in sediments as old as 120 Ma (Brassell et al. 2004) and may mark the divergence of the Isochrysidales from other haptophyte algae as indicated from genomic molecular clock analysis (Medlin et al. 2008). However, the alkenones in strata older than ~62 Ma are very different from those in younger strata as they consist only of even-numbered alkadien-3-ones and odd-numbered alkadien-2-ones. In contrast, C_{37}–C_{39} alkadienones and alkatrienones constitute the principal alkenones found in younger Paleogene sediments. The occurrence of these alkenones immediately following the Early Eocene Climate Optimum couples with the occurrence of calcareous nannoplankton genera within the Noelaerhabdaceae suggesting that these compounds were responses to climate change that allow marine haptophytes to store energy during periods of high nutrient availability (Brassell 2014).

15 C_{30}–C_{37} Botryococcene Derivatives

Fossils as old as 55 Ma have been identified as members of the green algae Botryococcus; however, the evolution of a specific biochemical pathway that produces C_{30}–C_{37} unusually branched isoprenoid hydrocarbons referred to as botryococccenes appears to have arisen in Botryococcus braunii Race B in the early Eocene around 55 Ma (Volkman 2014). The biosynthesis of these compounds resulted from the duplication and subsequent alteration of the squalene synthase gene resulting in the production of both C_{30} botryococcene and squalene. These products are then be methylated to higher carbon number botryococccenes and methylated squalenes. The recent evolution of these novel isoprenoidal pathways explains the lack of botryoocccenes in pre-Eocene sediments.
Research Needs

Our view of the life’s history is no longer limited to interpreting mineralized fossils but has expanded to integrating these observations within a comprehensive theory of evolution that incorporates new findings in biochemistry, molecular phylogeny, and the chemical fossil record. Hydrocarbons have existed throughout Earth’s history and understanding their origin, alteration, and preservation is a key to helping reconstruct the evolutionary history of life on Earth. There are still many orphan biomarkers, hydrocarbons found in source rocks and oils that are certainly of biological origin but have no known biochemical precursors. For example, tricyclic terpanes are common throughout the geologic record and are particularly abundant in strata associated with coastal marine upwellings, but their biologic precursors remain elusive.

Many of life’s fundamental biochemical pathways evolved in the Archean, but deciphering this past remains problematic as the syngenecity of extracted biomarkers is suspect. Generation of biomarkers from kerogens via hydropyrolysis and in situ chemical analyses of carefully selected fluid inclusions and microfossils offer the prospect of identifying hydrocarbon biomarkers from this age. Many of the lessons learned in discriminating life’s signatures in ancient rocks are now being applied to planetary exploration (Simoneit 2004; Sephton et al. 2013; Georgiou and Deamer 2014).

Functionalized structures are less stable than saturated and aromatic hydrocarbons and are still considered to be largely restricted to recent or very low maturity sediments. However, later studies have shown some functionalized biomarkers to be more stable than previously thought. For example, the first appearance of alkenones was thought to be in the early Eocene but they are now known in rocks three times as old (Brassell 2014). Petroleomics provides through advances in liquid chromatography and ultra-high resolution mass spectrometry a near complete picture of the organic diversity of polar compounds in crude oils and rock extracts (Marshall and Rodgers 2008). Currently, our knowledge of these polar compounds is largely restricted to elemental compositions. Structural characterization may provide new taxon-specific biomarkers.

Genomics and metagenomics delve into the phylogeny of life by showing how genes have evolved and were transferred between organisms. New techniques in transcriptomics are able to determine what genes are active. Metabolomics and lipidomics provide comprehensive analyses of pathways and networks of cellular metabolites and lipids in biological systems. By combining these biochemical sciences with geochemistry, we may be able to address long-standing questions in the hydrocarbon fossil record (Fig. 1).

Appendix

Biomarker structures mentioned in text.
Fig. 1 Temporal distribution of several biomarkers discussed in this paper. ? = Uncertain occurrence
Isoprenoids

- $C_{19}$ pristane
- $C_{20}$ phytane
- $C_{20}$ crocetane
- $C_{25}$ PMI
- $C_{30}$ squalene
- oxidosqualene
- $C_{40}$ acyclic biphytane
- a $C_{40}$ cyclic biphytane
- $C_{30}$ botryococcane

GDGTs

- GDGT-0
- GDGT-1
- GDGT-2
- crenarchaeol
- Br-GDGT-1
- Br-GDGT-2

Carotenoids

- $C_{40}$ okenane
- $C_{40}$ chlorobactane
- $C_{40}$ isorenieratane
- $C_{40}$ carotane
Steroidal hydrocarbons

- C_{26} 21-norcholestan
- C_{26} 24-norcholestan
- C_{26} 27-norcholestan
- C_{27} diacholestan
- C_{28} diacholestan
- C_{25} diacholestan
- C_{27} cholestan 20R
- C_{27} cholestan 20S
- C_{28} cryostane
- C_{28} 4-methyl cholestan
- C_{28} 24-methylcholestan (ergostane)
- C_{29} 24-ethylcholestan (stigmastane)
- C_{30} 4,4,24-trimethylcholestan
- C_{30} 24-isopropylcholestan
- C_{30} 24-n-propylcholestan
- C_{30} 4,23,24-trimethylcholestan (dinosterane)

Triterpanoid hydrocarbons

- C_{30} tricyclic terpane
- C_{30} diplopterol
- C_{30} diploptene
- C_{36} 2-methylbacteriobio-hopanetetrol
- C_{30} hopane
- C_{31} 2-methylhopane
- C_{31} 3-methylhopane
- C_{35} pentakishomohopane
Higher Land Plant Terpanoids

C\textsubscript{20} Diterpanoids

- pimarane
- isopimarane
- rosane
- rimuane
- beyerane
- phyllocladane
- quesnoin

C\textsubscript{30} Triterpanoids

- arborane
- fernane
- aromatized arboranes/fernanes
- oleanane

Porphyrrins

- chlorophyll \textit{a}
- bacteriochlorophyll \textit{a}
- DPEP = deoxophylloerythro-etioporphyrin
- \(M=\text{Ni, VO, metals}^{+2}\)
- etioporphyrin
- DPEP
- benzo-etioporphyrin
- rhodo-DPEP
- di-DPEP

Diamondoids

- adamantane
- diamantane

Alkenones

- \(C_{37}:2\)
- \(C_{37}:3\)

References


Antcliffe JB (2013) Questioning the evidence of organic compounds called sponge biomarkers. Palaeontology 56:917–925


Brocks JJ, Schaeffer P (2008) Okenane, a biomarker for purple sulfur bacteria (Chromatiaceae), and other new carotenoid derivatives from the 1640 Ma Barney Creek Formation. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 72:1396–1414


Holba AG, Tegelaar EW, Huizinga BJ, Moldowan JM, Singletary MS, McCaffrey MA, Dzou LIP (1998b) 24-norcholestanes as age-sensitive molecular fossils. Geology 26:783–786


Buckley M, Wogelius RA (2009) Mineralized soft-tissue structure and chemistry in a mummi-
ified hadrosaur from the Hell Creek Formation, North Dakota (USA). Proc R Soc B
276:3429–3437

105:18090–18095

Perspect Biol 8:a018127

*Rhizosolenia setigera* (Brightwell) and *Haslea ostrearia* (Simonsen). Proc Natl Acad Sci
101:4413–4418

McCaffrey MA, Moldowan JM, Lipton PA, Summons RE, Peters KE, Jeganathan A, Watt DS
(1994) Paleoenvironmental implications of novel C30 steranes in Precambrian to Cenozoic age

McKeegan KD, Kudryavtsev AB, Schopf JW (2007) Raman and ion microscopic imagery of
graphitic inclusions in apatite from older than 3830 Ma Akilia supraerustal rocks, West
Greenland. Geology 35:591–594

In: Schidlowski M, Golubic S, Kimberley MM, McKirdy DM, Trudinger PA (eds) Early
organic evolution: implications for mineral and energy resources. Springer, Berlin, pp
176–192

for selectivity of phytoplanктon extinctions across the K/T boundary. Mar Micropaleontol
50:1230–1234

Metzger P, Largeau C (1994) A new type of ether lipid comprising phenolic moieties in
*Botryococcus braunii*. Chemical structure and abundance, and geochemical implications.
Org Geochem 22:801–814

from the Middle Pleistocene Sima de los Hawos hominins. Nature 531:504–507

Moczydłowska M, Landing E, Zang W, Palacios T (2011) Proterozoic phytoplankton and timing of
chlorophyte algae origins. Palaeontology 54:721–733


Moldowan JM, Jacobson SR (2000) Chemical signals for early evolution of major taxa:

Moldowan JM, Talyzina NM (1998) Biogeochemical evidence for dinoflagellate ancestors in the

Moldowan JM, Fago FJ, Lee CY, Jacobson SR, Watt DS, Slougui N-E, Jeganathan A, Young DC
Science 247:309–312

The molecular fossil record of oleaneane and its relation to angiosperms. Science 265:768–771

Chemostratigraphic reconstruction of biofacies; molecular evidence linking cyst-forming dino-
flagellates with pre-Triassic ancestors. Geology 24:159–162

Moldowan JM, Moldowan S, Blanco-Velandia V, Blanco-Velandia Y, Orejuela-Parra C, Bott G,
Dahl J (2015) Llanos Basin: unraveling its complex petroleum systems with advanced geo-
documents/2012/40979dahl/ndx_dahl.pdf


Schopf JW, Packer BM (1987) Early Archean (3.3-billion to 3.5-billion-year-old) microfossils from Warrawoona Group, Australia. Science 237: 70–73


Waldbauer JR, Sherman LS, Sumner DY, Summons RE (2009a) Late Archean molecular fossils from the Transvaal Supergroup record the antiquity of microbial diversity and aerobiosis. Precambrian Res 169:28–47


Phospholipids as Life Markers in Geological Habitats

Kai Mangelsdorf, Cornelia Karger, and Klaus-G. Zink

Abstract

Microbial life plays a significant role not only in the biological surface but also in the geological subsurface carbon cycle as indicated by the widespread findings of microbial communities (deep biosphere) in the deep underground. Thereby, microorganisms occupy a wide range of different habitats determined by moderate to extreme environmental conditions. Suitable analytical tools are required to assess the presence, spatial distribution, abundance, and composition of microbial
life in the many different natural environments on Earth, to understand the response and survival strategies of microorganisms to various environmental living conditions, and to unravel the role of microbial communities on the global biogeochemical cycles in natural habitats. From a biogeochemical perspective, such a tool is provided by microbial biomolecules such as phospholipids (PL) representing a significant part of microbial cell membranes. With their polar head groups and long hydrophobic side chains, they form the basic module of the membrane structure. PLs and especially phospholipid esters not only indicate the occurrence of microbial biomass but also the presence of living microorganisms, since they are only stable in viable microorganisms over longer periods of time. Therefore, PLs are also named microbial life markers. PLs can be used to quantify microbial life, to illustrate its spatial distribution, to provide taxonomic information at least on a broad level, and to assess microbial adaptation and carbon transformation processes. In this chapter we will present basic information on the utilization of phospholipids as life markers, will report on analytical methods to measure these biomolecules and elucidate their structures, and will provide examples for the application of these biomarkers in a geoscientific context.

1 Introduction

Microbial life seems to exist everywhere on Earth, not only on the land surface, in soils, and in the aquatic systems but also in the deep subsurface and even in the air (Al-Dagal et al. 2009; Parkes et al. 2014; Pedersen 2000). In recent decades microbial communities have been found in many habitats thought for long to represent hostile environments such as polar and desert regions, localities with extreme pH or salinity, as well as high temperature, pressure, or radiation conditions (Rothschild and Mancinelli 2001). The findings of microbial life in those, from an anthropogenic perspective, extreme environments made Kerr (1997) to state that “it seems that wherever a source of energy exists, life is present. And although there are obvious limits to what life can endure, they are turning out to be far less restrictive than once assumed.”

Due to its ubiquity, microbial communities are an integrated part of the life cycle on Earth, and their numbers are assessed to 11.7–34.2 $\times$ 10$^{29}$ cells (Kallmeyer et al. 2012; Parkes et al. 2014; Whitman et al. 1998) with a total biomass of 54.3–247.3 $\times$ 10$^{15}$ g (Kallmeyer et al. 2012; Whitman et al. 1998) which approximately equals up to half of the remaining biosphere biomass with 560 $\times$ 10$^{15}$ g. This demonstrates that microbial communities play an important role in the carbon cycling on Earth. With the widespread discovery of microbial life in the deep marine and terrestrial subsurface during the last three decades (Parkes et al. 1994, 2000; Pedersen 1997, 2000), the research on microbial communities was brought into a geological context and became a hot topic in modern geosciences (D’Hondt et al. 2007). Up to now deep microbial life has been found down to 2800 m in deep terrestrial gold mines (Lin et al. 2006), in approximately 2500 m deep lignite coal layers nowadays overlain by marine sediments (Inagaki et al. 2015) and in 1922 m deep marine sediments (Ciobanu et al. 2014). Current estimates of cell numbers for
the deep biosphere suggest $2.9 \times 10^{29}$ cells in the marine (Kallmeyer et al. 2012; Parkes et al. 2014) and $2.5 \times 10^{29}$ cells in the terrestrial sedimentary subsurface (Whitman et al. 1998). Thus, although microbial life significantly decreases with sedimentary depth (Parkes et al. 2014), the deep biosphere makes up the largest pool of microorganisms on our planet. To investigate microbial life in the many different environments on Earth, it became mandatory to obtain a tool to distinguish between living and fossil/ancient microbial signals. From a biogeochemical perspective, such a tool is provided by intact polar lipids (IPLs) forming an integrated part of living microbial cell membranes (Frostegard and Bååth 1996; Harvey et al. 1986; Rütters 2001; Sturt et al. 2004; White et al. 1979; Zink et al. 2003).

2 The Life Marker Concept

A microbial life marker is a biomolecule which indicates by its intact molecular structure that it derives from a living microorganism. An essential prerequisite is that appropriate biomolecules should only be stable in living microorganisms and should rapidly degrade after cell death (Harvey et al. 1986; Logemann et al. 2011; White et al. 1979). Thus, their detection is a clear evidence for the presence of living microorganisms in a given habitat. Furthermore, the respective life marker should make up an abundant part of the cell to ensure its detectability with state-of-the-art analytical methods. Such biomarkers are given by intact polar lipids from microbial cell membranes.

Especially, phospholipids (PLs) with ca 5% of cell dry weight (Madigan et al. 1999) are considered to represent living biomass (White et al. 1979). PLs consist of a glycerol backbone linked to a polar (hydrophilic) phosphatidyl head group and two long hydrophobic aliphatic side chains (Fig. 1). In Bacteria these side chains generally are ester-linked long chain fatty acids (diacylglycerols, DAG) (Fig. 2), although some bacteria, e.g., some sulfate reducers, can also contain two non-isoprenoid ether side chains (dietherglycerol, DEG) or combinations between ester and ether (acyletherglycerols, AEG) (Rütters et al. 2001) or enol ether side chains (plasmalogens) (Nagan and Zoeller 2001). The chain length of the fatty acid side chains is variable and mainly ranges between 12 and 20 but can be up to 26 carbon atoms with a maximum normally at C$_{16}$ or C$_{18}$. Additionally, the fatty acid side chain can contain terminal branches (iso- and anteiso-branches); mid chain branches; hydroxy and methoxy groups; cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and cycloheptyl rings; ladderane ring structures; and different numbers of double bonds at various positions (Kaneda 1991; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2002). In contrast, in Archaea side chains are ether-linked isoprenoid alcohols. The isoprenoid side chains are usually less variable consisting of 20 carbon atoms (phytanyl side chains; Figs. 1 and 2). Thus, the archaenal core lipid (without head group) is formed by archaenal. However, archaenal side chains can also contain hydroxy groups, unsaturations, and cyclopentyl rings or can be terminally linked to form a macrocyclic archaenal moiety (Koga and Morii 2005). In certain cases, such as halophilic archaeae, the isoprenoid side chains can also consist of 25 carbon atoms (sesterterpanyl side chain) (Dawson et al. 2012).
The most common phospholipid head groups are phosphatidyl glycerol (PG), phosphatidyl ethanolamine (PE), phosphatidyl choline (PC), phosphatidic acid (PA), phosphatidyl serine (PS), phosphatidyl inositol (PI), diphosphatidyl glycerol (DPG), and phospho-glycolipids (Sturt et al. 2004) (Fig. 2). Phospholipid diesters or diethers form bilayers within the cell membrane, in which the hydrophobic side chains are directed to each other forming the core of the membrane and the polar head groups are directed to the interior and exterior of the cell (Fig. 1).

Archaea and some specific bacteria (Schouten et al. 2013) can also contain membrane-spanning tetraether lipids with a phosphatidyl or glycosyl head group forming a monolayer membrane (Gambacorta et al. 1995; Koga and Morii 2005). Other membrane lipids can be glycolipids with a glycosidic group directly linked to the glycerol backbone or, for instance, sphingolipids with sphingosine instead of the glycerol backbone (Olsen and Jantzen 2001). A compilation of further prokaryotic and eukaryotic membrane lipids is provided in Fig. 3. However, all these components will not be discussed here.

PLs have widely been used as life markers in geosciences in recent years (Lipp et al. 2008; Rüters 2001; Sturt et al. 2004; Zink et al. 2003). This application is mainly based on the experimental outcome that PLs rapidly degrade after cell death (Harvey et al. 1986; White et al. 1979). Harvey et al. (1986) already showed that an ester-linked phospholipid was much more rapidly degraded than a glycosidic diphytanyl glycerol diether lipid. This already suggests a higher stability of membrane lipids with ether-bound side chains. Logemann et al. (2011) confirmed this with a wider range of phospholipid esters with different head groups in comparison to different diphytanyl glycerol diethers. They also showed that diphytanyl glycerol diether lipids with phosphatidyl head groups show approximately the same degradation rates than those with a glycosidic head group directly linked to the glycerol backbone. This suggests that different head group compositions seem to have only minor effect on the lipid stability and that the side chain bonding is the crucial stability factor.
Thus, in contrast to the bacterial ester-linked PLs, archaeal ether-linked PLs have due to their higher stability only a restricted potential to act as life markers for archaea, and their application in sedimentary succession has to be made at least with

---

**Fig. 2** Compilation of different bacterial and archaeal phospholipid head group, backbone, and side chain structures
Fig. 3 Compilation of some additional membrane lipid structures
caution (Logemann et al. 2011). In addition to these structural considerations, Harvey et al. (1986) presented indications that the oxygen and organic matter content in sediments also affects the degradation of membrane lipids.

3 Methods

3.1 Lipid Extraction

In literature a series of in principal similar analytical methods are available to investigate prokaryotic cell membrane phospholipid compositions in sediments, water samples, and microbial cultures (Gruner et al. 2017; Heinzelmann et al. 2014; Ringelberg et al. 1997; Rüters et al. 2002; Sturt et al. 2004; Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004). Basically, PLs are extracted with organic solvents from the sample material. Usually, an extraction method modified after Bligh and Dyer (1959) is used. Here the sample material (sediments, cultures, or filters from water filtration) is extracted by a solvent mixture of methanol, dichloromethane, and buffer (e.g., ammonium acetate buffer, 10 mM, pH 7.4–7.6) in a ratio of 2:1:0.8 (v/v). In this ratio the three solvents form one phase, and extraction is conducted with sonication (Rüters et al. 2002; Sturt et al. 2004) or flow blending (Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004). In case of sediment extraction, the residual sample material is removed by centrifugation or filtration. For subsequent quantification of lipids, internal standards, e.g., deuterated PLs, might be added. This is also useful to consider compound losses during sample treatment. Afterwards, further dichloromethane and buffer are added to the solvent mixture to achieve a final ratio of 1:1:0.9 (v/v). In this ratio the water phase becomes separated from the organic phase. The water phase is re-extracted two times with dichloromethane, and the organic phases are combined and evaporated to dryness.

3.2 Extract Column Fractionation

To reduce the extract complexity, total extracts are usually separated into fractions of different polarity. In sediments and water samples, it is especially important to separate the free fatty acids representing dead biomass from phospholipid fatty acids (PLFAs) obtained later after saponification representing living biomass. Different column material and applied solvents can lead into different fraction cuts (Gruner et al. 2017; Heinzelmann et al. 2014; Ringelberg et al. 1997; Rüters et al. 2002; Sturt et al. 2004; Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004). However, most common methods provide (i) a neutral polar fraction including the free fatty acids, (ii) a glycolipid fraction, and (iii) a phospholipid fraction. Heinzelmann et al. (2014) claimed that glycolipids might partly also end up in the phospholipid fraction leading to the presence of glycolipid fatty acids in the PLFA inventory after saponification. Thus, if glycolipids are present in the sample, they advise to combine both fractions to obtain a polar fraction containing all intact polar lipids.
3.3 Detection of Phospholipids Using HPLC-MS

PLs cannot be transferred into the gas phase without decay. Thus, the measuring system of choice for PLs is high-performance liquid chromatography-electrospray ionization-mass spectrometry (HPLC-ESI-MS) (Fang and Barcelona 1998; Rütters et al. 2002), although also other interfaces are partly applied such as matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI) (Pulfer and Murphy 2003). There are many HPLC-MS methods available (Heinzelmann et al. 2014; Rütters et al. 2002; Stapel et al. 2016; Sturt et al. 2004).

Normal phase chromatography with pure and diol-modified silica gel is usually applied to detect intact phospholipids, since this allows the separation of the phospholipids by their different head groups (Rütters et al. 2002; Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004). As an example the chromatogram of a standard mixture is shown in Fig. 4. In addition to normal phase chromatography, methods using reversed phase chromatography allowing separation by different side chain structures (Lanekeoff and Karlsson 2010) and hydrophilic interaction chromatography (HILIC) also separating phospholipids by their head groups are available (Wörmer et al. 2013).

The ESI interface represents a soft ionization technique. In the negative ion mode, a proton is removed from the target molecule generating a negatively charged molecular ion (M–H)−. In contrast in the positive ion mode, a proton is transferred to the molecule creating a positively charged molecular ion (M+H)+ (Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004). Depending on their chemical structure, most of the phospholipids are better ionized in the negative ion mode, since a proton can easily be cleaved off from the phosphate group (Fig. 4a). In contrast phosphatidylcholines forming a permanent zwitterion with a positively charged quaternary nitrogen atom and a negatively charged phosphate group (Fig. 2) are better ionized in the positive ion mode (Fig. 4b), because the phosphate group can easily be protonated (Pulfer and Murphy 2003; Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004). Due to the soft ionization technique, the HPLC-ESI-MS mass spectra usually only consist of the phospholipid molecular ions (±H).

The purpose of the HPLC system prior to the ESI-MS detection is to separate the PLs by their different head groups. However, also functional groups (e.g., hydroxy groups) attached to the side chains can lead to additional chromatographic separation (Fig. 5a). In natural samples one peak in the HPLC-MS chromatogram is composed of a series of PLs with an equal head group but different fatty acid side chain compositions (Fig. 5b). The fatty acyl groups usually can differ in chain length, number of unsaturation, rings, or branches (Rütters et al. 2002; Sturt et al. 2004; Zink and Mangelsdorf 2004).

For structural elucidation of individual PL esters concerning their linked fatty acyl side chains, collision-induced decomposition (CID) (or collision-activated dissociation, CAD) MS/MS experiments can be applied (Pulfer and Murphy 2003) using specific mass spectrometers such as a triple quadrupole and ion trap or orbitrap mass spectrometer. In the CID mode, molecular ion masses of individual phospholipids are selected and decomposed in a collision experiment with a collision gas
yielding the molecular ions of the linked fatty acids and to a smaller extent also head group and lyso-phospholipid (loss of one fatty acid side chain) fragments (Mangelsdorf et al. 2005b) (Fig. 5c). The CID experiments allow to link specific fatty acid combinations to individual phospholipid groups defined by their head groups (Mangelsdorf et al. 2005b) (Fig. 5b). For more structural information on the fatty acids beyond the molecular mass, a detailed analysis after phospholipid saponification is necessary (see below). With an ion trap mass spectrometer, also MS^n experiments can be conducted. Here a fragment from a prior CID experiment can be selected for further dissociation experiments to get deeper information on individual fragment structures (Jahn et al. 2004). The ether side chains from phospholipid ethers cannot be cleaved by MS/MS experiments; however information about the head group moieties can be obtained (Jahn et al. 2004).

Quantification of intact PLs is possible via the addition of an internal standard, e.g., deuterated PL. Deuterated PLs can also be used as internal standard for quantification of PLFAs. Intact PLs with different head groups show different response behavior during the ESI-MS detection. To overcome this problem, response factors have to be determined for the PLs with different head groups relative to the internal standard for the specific HPLC-ESI-MS system using a phospholipid standard mixture with equal and known concentrations (Mangelsdorf et al. 2005b; Zink et al. 2008). Furthermore, at low microbial abundance in sample material with relatively high organic background, the detection of intact PLs is impeded due to

Fig. 4 Chromatograms of a standard mixture of phospholipid diesters measured (a) in negative and (b) in positive ion mode. For lipid abbreviations see head group structures in Fig. 2. Lx = lyso phospholipids (loss of side chain fatty acid in the sn2-position). LPC_D31 = deuterated 1-hexadecanoyl-lyso-phosphatidylcholine
Fig. 5  (a) Chromatogram from an HPLC-ESI-MS run (negative ion mode) of a seafloor sample from the Barents Sea containing intact bacterial (PGs and PEs) and archaeal (ArPG, ArOHPG, ArOHPs, ArPI, and ArOHPI) membrane lipids. (b) Mass range of PG molecular ions (M–H)– differing by different fatty acid chain length and number of double bonds. (c) Collision-induced decomposition (CID) MS-MS experiment of the PG molecular ion m/z 705 showing that this signal is composed of different PGs with different fatty acid side chain combinations. PG phosphatidyl glycerol, PE phosphatidyl ethanolamine, ArPG archaeol phosphatidyl glycerol, ArOHPG hydroxyarchaeol phosphatidyl glycerol, ArOHPs archaeol phosphatidyl serine, ArPI archaeol phosphatidyl inositol, ArOHPI hydroxyarchaeol phosphatidyl inositol, FA fatty acid
matrix-induced ion suppression in the ESI interface (Mallet et al. 2004). This can have severe impact on the quantification of bacterial biomass in natural samples. Thus, quantification of bacteria via the phospholipid-derived fatty acids (PLFAs) might often be a preferable procedure to assess bacterial abundance (see below).

### 3.4 Detection of Phospholipid Fatty Acids (PLFAs) and Phospholipid Ethers (PLELs) Using GC-MS

A common procedure to detect and quantify PLs is the measurement of their fatty acid side chains (PLFA) using gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS). For this purpose the PLs should have been separated from the free fatty acid fraction using column fractionation before they are chemically cleaved by a saponification reaction. Mueller et al. (1990) provided an easy-to-conduct procedure for the transesterification of PLs to directly obtain the methylated formerly phospholipid-linked fatty acids. However, there are also other methods available to perform PL saponification (Mills et al. 2006; White et al. 1979). PLFAs are also used to quantify bacterial abundances relative to an internal standard (Frostegard and Bååth 1996; Mancuso et al. 1990; Zink et al. 2008). Since PLs represent an important part of the microbial cell membranes, they can provide a measure for viable cell numbers. In literature conversion factors are available, which roughly allow to transfer the amount of PLFAs per gram sediment into cell biomass. For instance, Balkwill et al. (1988) determined that 350 pmol PLFA/g sediment correspond to ca. $7 \times 10^6$ cells/g sediment, which results into 20,000 cells/pmol PLFA. A comparison of bacterial cell biomass determined from intact PLs and PLFAs is provided in Zink et al. (2008).

Analogous to the phospholipid esters, also the phospholipid ethers can be cleaved by an ether cleavage procedure to obtain the former ether side chains (PLEL). The common way is to cleave the ethers with hydriodic acid to generate the respective isoprenoid iodides. Subsequently, the halogenated isoprenoids are reduced with zinc to obtain the corresponding isoprenoid hydrocarbons, e.g., phytane (Gattinger et al. 2003).

### 3.5 Determination of Phospholipid Fatty Acid Structures

PLFAs can contain taxonomic information of their source organisms (Table 1). Therefore, a detailed structural elucidation of the PLFAs is crucial. Fatty acids are a well-investigated compound class with manifold information on mass spectra available (Christie 1999). Most fatty acids can be identified by their mass spectrum. Saturated straight chain or iso- and anteiso-branched fatty acids are usually easy to identify by their GC elution behavior. In contrast, the determination of double bond positions in unsaturated fatty acids is not always straightforward. Chemical experiments can be conducted to unravel double bond positions in the acyl chains (Fig. 6). Derivatization techniques such as reactions with dimethyl disulfide (DMDS)
Table 1  Phospholipid fatty acids and their potential taxonomic origin. X:Y = carbon number/number of double bonds; iso = methyl branch at carbon atom 2 counted from the tail end; anteiso = methyl branch at carbon atom 3 counted from the tail end; SFA = saturated fatty acids; MUFA = monounsaturated fatty acids; β-OH-FA = 3-hydroxy fatty acids; cy = cyclopropyl ring; ωX = double bond in position X counted from the tail end; XMe = methyl branch in position X counted from the functional group; GNB = Gram-negative bacteria; GPB = Gram-positive bacteria; SRB = sulfate-reducing bacteria; AOM = anaerobic oxidation of methane; Anammox = anaerobic ammonium oxidation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phospholipid fatty acids</th>
<th>Potential origin</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SFA (n-C&lt;sub&gt;14&lt;/sub&gt;-C&lt;sub&gt;20&lt;/sub&gt;)</td>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>Harwood and Russell (1984), Vestal and White (1989), Yeagle (2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-chain SFA (n-C&lt;sub&gt;20&lt;/sub&gt;-C&lt;sub&gt;26&lt;/sub&gt;)</td>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>Lipp and Hinrichs (2009), Yeagle (2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUFA</td>
<td>GNB</td>
<td>Zelles (1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-OH-FA</td>
<td>GNB, occur also in other bacterial genera</td>
<td>Zelles (1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cy15:0</td>
<td>GNB (Escherichia coli), Clostridia</td>
<td>Vestal and White (1989), Yeagle (2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:1ω9cis</td>
<td>Aerobic bacteria, SRB</td>
<td>Rajendran et al. (1997), Vestal and White (1989)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:1ω8</td>
<td>Methanotrophic bacteria</td>
<td>Fang et al. (2000), Frostegård et al. (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17:1ω8, iso17:1ω7, br17:1</td>
<td>SRB, anaerobic bacteria</td>
<td>Parkes and Taylor (1983), Rajendran et al. (1997), Vestal and White (1989)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cy17:0ω5,6, 16:1ω5cis</td>
<td>SRB (Desulfosarcina/Desulfococcus species) related to AOM</td>
<td>Elvert et al. (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iso- and anteiso-17:2ω3,7</td>
<td>Chryseobacterium</td>
<td>Bajerski et al. (2017), Mangelsdorf et al. (2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10Me18:0 and 10Me16:0</td>
<td>Actinomycetes</td>
<td>Butler et al. (2003), Vestal and White (1989), Zhang et al. (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12Me16:0</td>
<td>Rubrobacter</td>
<td>Suzuki et al. (1988)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
(Dunkelblum et al. 1985) and osmium tetroxide (Rontani 1998) directly mark the double bonds (Fig. 6b and c). Subsequent GC-MS measurement leads to fragmentation directly at the former double bond location with the resulting fragments being indicative for the double bond position in the side chain. Other techniques such as 4,4-dimethyl oxazoline (DMOX) (Laurent and Richli 1991) and 3-pyridylcarbinol (Destaillats and Angers 2002) derivatization lead to reaction with the PLFA functional carboxyl group (Fig. 6b and e). GC-MS of these derivatives reveals individual fragments for each carbon-carbon bond. While saturated side chain sections lead to fragment ions separated by 14 mass units, double bonds are indicated by a step of 12 mass units. Additionally, the 3-pyridylcarbinol derivatization indicates branching positions by the lack of the respective fragment ion (Mangelsdorf et al. 2017).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1 (continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phospholipid fatty acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ladderane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ω-Cyclohexyl FA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 **Applications of Phospholipid Biomarkers in Geoscience Research**

PLs can be used to detect and quantify microbial life in natural environments, and their carbon isotopic composition can give indication on microbial metabolic processes. They can provide taxonomic information on the associated microbial communities, can be applied to investigate membrane adaptation mechanisms of microorganisms toward changing environmental conditions, and can be used to monitor changes in the presence, abundance, and distribution of microbial communities in time series and over space (Fig. 7).

4.1 **Presence and Abundance of Microbial Life in Natural Habitats**

PLs are used to verify the presence and to determine the abundance of microbial life not only in, from an anthropogenic perspective, moderate but also in extreme natural
habitats. Pioneering work has been conducted, for instance, by White et al. (1979) in estuarine environments, by Frostegård et al. (1993a) in soils, by Rütters et al. (2002) in Wadden Sea sediments, by Sturt et al. (2004) in surface marine sediments, and by Zink and Mangelsdorf (2004) in freshwater surface sediments, showing the

Fig. 6 Mass spectra of products formed by different derivatization techniques to determine the double bond positions of hexadec-9-enoic acid: (a) methyl ester, (b) dimethyl disulfide, (c) osmium tetroxide, (d) 4,4-dimethyloxazoline (DMOX), and (e) 3-pyridylcarbinol derivatives
applicability of phospholipid analysis to investigate microbial community structures in near surface environments. Furthermore, Zink et al. (2003) were able to indicate the presence of microbial life in deep marine sediments (deep biosphere) from the Nankai Trough offshore Japan for the first time by applying PL analysis, and Sturt et al. (2004) showed the presence of intact polar tetraether lipids in deeply buried sediments from the Peru margin. In a deep terrestrial borehole located in the Waikato Basin, New Zealand, deep microbial life associated to organic-rich lithologies was indicated by intact PLs (Fry et al. 2009; Vieth et al. 2008). Meanwhile, microbial life has been detected using intact PLs in many deep marine and terrestrial habitats (Biddle et al. 2006; Horsfield et al. 2006; Lipp and Hinrichs 2009; Lipp et al. 2008; Mangelsdorf et al. 2005a, 2011). Intact PLs were also used for quantification and characterization of bacterial and archaeal life as well as for microbial biomass assessment (Lipp and Hinrichs 2009; Lipp et al. 2008; Schubotz et al. 2009; Zink et al. 2008). However, as mentioned above due to their higher stability phospholipid, di- or tetraether lipids representing archaeal biomass have to be used with caution as life markers especially when quantitatively comparing them with the less stable bacterial phospholipid ester signal (Harvey et al. 1986; Logemann et al. 2011; Pearson 2008; Schouten et al. 2010). Life markers were also used to detect the depth distribution of microbial communities in extreme environments other than the deep biosphere. For instance, in arctic and desert environments, PL signals were used to detect the presence and depth distribution of microbial life in near-surface permafrost and salt pan deposits (Bischoff et al. 2013; Genderjahn et al. 2017; Stapel et al. 2016). PLs allow deep insight into the community structure and distribution of microbial life in those extreme and near-surface environments, and comparison with fossil microbial biomarkers provides information on past microbial communities and on associated climatic and environmental conditions (Genderjahn et al. 2018; Stapel et al. 2018). For the elucidation of the microbial community structure, it is of specific strength to combine lipid biomarker analysis with molecular microbiological methods (e.g., DNA-based approaches). Such joint research strategies allow a comprehensive evaluation of microbial communities from different scientific disciplines with their
specific analytical methods (Beulig et al. 2015; Fry et al. 2009; Orwin et al. 2018; Schulze-Makuch et al. 2018; Toffin et al. 2005).

The carbon isotope signature of PLFAs and PLELs can provide crucial information on microbial processes in a given habitat. For instance, lipid biomarkers of archaea (anaerobic methanotrophs, ANME) and bacteria (specific sulfate-reducing bacteria, SRB) associated to the anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM) are, due to the low $^{13}$C content of the methane substrate, highly depleted in $^{13}$C down to $\delta^{13}$C values less than $-100\%$ (Blumenberg et al. 2004; Boetius et al. 2000; Elvert et al. 2003; Hinrichs et al. 1999). In addition to the characterization of natural samples, lipid biomarker analysis can also be used for feeding experiments with artificially $^{13}$C-labelled substrates to elucidate metabolic pathways (Boschker and Middelburg 2002).

Investigation of microbial communities in deeper sedimentary successions requires drilling of appropriate sample material. During the drilling process, the core material comes into contact with drilling fluids. Since cell numbers usually drastically decrease with increasing sediment depth (Parkes et al. 2014), core material can easily be contaminated by microbial cells from the surface brought down by the drill fluids. Although up to date contamination cannot be avoided during drilling, it can be controlled by using drill mud tracers indicating how deep the drill mud has penetrated the core material (Kallmeyer et al. 2006). Several tracers have been applied in the past such as fluorescent dyes, chemical tracers, and fluorescent microspheres (Kallmeyer 2017). The tracer allows identification of uncontaminated core material. Usually an inner coring technique is applied to remove the outer contaminated core material from the inner pristine material. However, if the tracer is also detectable in the inner core part, the whole sample has to be discarded from further analysis.

4.2 Taxonomic Information from PLFAs

Microorganisms can have specific PLFA inventories. Thus, the molecular structure of the PLFAs can provide indication on the composition of the microbial community in a given habitat (Table 1). However, since many fatty acids are shared between different microorganisms – preventing in most cases a direct link to specific microbial species – the assignment of PLFAs to microorganisms is usually on a broad taxonomic level.

For instance, saturated fatty acids are common lipids in living organisms, and they are therefore not very specific. Saturated terminally branched FAs such as iso- and anteiso-FAs with 15 and 17 carbon atoms are often discussed as markers for Gram-positive bacteria and monounsaturated FAs for Gram-negative bacteria. Specific unsaturated FAs such as 16:1ω7cis and 16:1ω9cis are reported to be markers for aerobic bacteria and 16:1ω8 for methanotrophic bacteria. However, with all these FAs overlaps exist. Other FAs appear to be more specific such as 10Me FAs with 16 and 18 carbon atoms showing on the order-level indication for the presence of actinomycetes. Some other FAs such as iso- and ai-17:2ω3,7 for Chryseobacterium
and 12Me16:0 for Rubrobacter might be quite specific even down to the genus level. Thus, PLFA analysis can be used to gain taxonomic information from the phylum sometimes down to the family and in some specific cases to the genus level (Table 1). Overall, PLFAs can provide first insights into the microbial community structure (Table 1); however, caution has to be taken while interpreting the PLFA signal, since most PLFAs provide only indication on the microbial community structure rather than a proof of the presence of specific microorganisms.

Of specific strength is to combine the taxonomic information from PLFA analysis with those from nucleic acid-based molecular microbiological approaches such as gene profiling on ribosomal ribonucleic acid (rRNA). The molecular microbiological methods provide deep and better verified information on the microbial community structure, and a complementary approach will allow to better link the PLFA signal to microbial groups or even species. With this more reliable assignment, the PLFA signals then can be used to better trace variations of microbial communities over time and space by following the occurrence, abundance, and distribution of marker PLFAs.

4.3 Membrane Adaptation to Environmental Conditions

The microbial cell membrane forms the interface of the cell to the ambient environment. Since microorganisms conduct essential metabolic processes across their membranes, it is mandatory for the cells that their membranes are always in an optimal liquid or flexible stage in response to external environmental stress factors such as temperature, pressure, pH, starvation, and salinity conditions or toxic substances (Russell 1989). A solid membrane would not allow metabolic exchange processes, and a membrane being too flexible would bear the danger of uncontrolled passing of substances or cell lysis. Microorganisms can regulate their membrane fluidity by changing the structural lipid composition. Thus, investigation of the PL inventory can be used to elucidate microbial adaptation mechanisms and can help to understand how microbial life is able to cope with variable to extreme environmental conditions.

Sinensky (1974) introduced the concept of homeoviscous adaptation, meaning that microorganisms change the cell membrane lipid inventory in order to keep the membrane fluidity and functionality despite changing ambient temperatures (see also de Mendoza 2014). Decreasing ambient temperature forces the microorganism to decrease the membrane solid to liquid phase transition temperature (melting temperature) to prevent rigidification of the membrane. To maintain the membrane melting temperature always below the ambient temperature, microorganisms are able to incorporate a higher relative proportion of cis-unsaturated fatty acids with usually up to two double bonds and/or fatty acids with shorter chain lengths; the melting temperature decrease is stronger upon the integration of more cis-unsaturated double bonds in comparison to chain shortening (Russell 1989; Suutari and Laakso 1994). In response to higher temperature, a higher proportion of saturated fatty acids and/or longer fatty acid chains are incorporated, respectively (Russell and Fukunaga 1990). For instance, Mangelsdorf et al. (2009) showed in a study in
permafrost-affected soils that microbial communities from a surface-near and a deeper permafrost-near horizon of the active layer (thawed surface interval during summer season) generally differ in the proportion of unsaturated fatty acids, with the higher proportion in the horizon close to the perennial frozen ground. However, temperature-dependent cultivation experiments with the microbial communities from these different active layer horizons showed that temperature response within the horizon was mainly regulated by the length of the fatty acid side chains. In this context, it has to be noted that when investigating complex microbial communities, it is difficult to differentiate between a direct membrane adaptation within individual microorganisms and a community shift toward better adapted species. Additional microbiological information on the microbial community structure (e.g., gene sequencing) provides improved insight into this uncertainty. In addition to the degree of unsaturation and chain length, methyl branches in the alkyl chain can also influence the melting temperature, e.g., anteiso-FAs show a stronger effect toward lower melting temperatures than iso-FAs (e.g., Kaneda 1991). Bajerski et al. (2017) showed in temperature cultivation experiments with Chryseobacterium frigidisoli, isolated from an Antarctic glacier forefield, a complex restructuring of the membrane lipid inventory. They observed a shift from saturated iso-FAs to unsaturated iso-FAs from 20 °C to 10 °C cultivation temperature and a shift from iso-FAs to more anteiso-FAs between 10 °C and 0 °C. Over the whole temperature range, a newly identified double unsaturated anteiso-FA (ai-17:2ω3,7) showed an increasing trend, becoming the most abundant FA in the 0 °C culture (Bajerski et al. 2017; Mangelsdorf et al. 2017). Furthermore, changes of the relative head group composition can have an impact (Boggs 1986), with larger and repulsive head groups (e.g., PG and PC) showing lower melting temperatures than smaller intermolecularly interacting ones (e.g., PE).

Increasing external pressure has a similar effect on the cell membrane than decreasing temperature. Higher pressure leads to a compaction and therefore rigidification of the cell membrane. As response microorganisms incorporate increasing amounts of cis-unsaturated fatty acids into the membrane structure, and even polyunsaturated FAs such as C20:5 and C22:6 have been observed in some piezophilic microorganisms (DeLong and Yayanos 1985; Yano et al. 1998). The reason for this is that the bended structure of the cis-unsaturated FAs counteracts a stronger compaction of the cell membrane. Mangelsdorf et al. (2005b) investigated the PL compositional changes during membrane adaptation of a piezosensitive bacterium from the deep biosphere (297 m below seafloor and 4791 m water depth) using cultivation experiments under different pressure conditions. Cells cultivated under high-pressure conditions showed a marked shift to more unsaturated fatty acids (Fig. 8). Furthermore, a shift from smaller PE head groups to larger and repulsive PG head groups was observed. The change toward more bulky membrane lipids represents a clear adaptation in response to increasing ambient pressure conditions.

Compared to microbial membrane adaptation in response to varying temperature and pressure conditions, adaptation mechanisms with respect to changing pH are not similarly straightforward, and literature seems to document somehow complex membrane responses (Bååth and Anderson 2003; Frostegård et al. 1993a; Männistö
et al. 2007). Bajerski et al. (2017) presented, for instance, in pH cultivation experiments with *Chryseobacterium frigidisoli*, relatively constant membrane FA compositions around neutral pH and significant changes toward the pH extremes for this microorganisms of 5.5 and 8.5. At pH 8.5 they observed a decrease of unsaturated FAs and suggested a compaction or stabilization of the cell membrane, which was partly attenuated by an additional shift to more short chain *iso*- and *anteiso*-FAs. At low pH the opposite trend was observed. Thus, they argued that pH adaptation in *Chryseobacterium frigidisoli* is a balanced interplay between membrane stabilization and enhanced flexibility to prevent or allow protons or other substances to pass the cell membrane at pH extremes.

In response to starvation phases, a shrinking of the cell volume went along with an overall loss of *cis*-monoenoic FAs and a relative increase of *trans*-monoenoic FAs as well as the occurrence of cyclopropyl-FAs. Guckert et al. (1986) proposed that the *trans/cis* ratio might be useful as a stress or starvation indicator. Similarly, Mukamolova et al. (1995), who studied biochemical changes due to starvation in cells of *Micrococcus luteus*, observed a change in membrane PL composition with an early increase of cardiolipin (DPG) to the expense of PG and a later accumulation of PA at the expense of DPG and PI. In addition, lyso-PLs occurred to 5–10% of the total PLs during the first 10 days of starvation. However, Mukamolova et al. (1995) stated that it remains open if the changed PL composition is a useful response of the bacterial cell to survive starvation or just a consequence of starvation.

Adaptation of microbial cell membranes is also relevant when conditions in the ambient environment become toxic for the respective microorganisms. Toxicity can occur due to anthropogenically induced pollutants or naturally occurring processes. This includes, for instance, enhanced petroleum hydrocarbon or heavy metal concentrations especially in soils, aquifers, or water bodies. In particular cyclic hydrocarbons such as toluene or alkylbenzenes being widespread in contaminated environments are well known for being toxic to many microorganisms as they accumulate in the cell membrane due to their lipophilic character and disturb the membrane function (Sikkema et al. 1994; Weber and de Bont 1996). On the other hand, some microbial strains are able to degrade hydrocarbons (e.g., Rabus and Widdel 1995; Widdel and Rabus 2001; Wilkes et al. 2000 and references therein), which make them particularly useful for bioremediation (Harayama et al. 1999; Pelz et al. 2001). For instance, certain microorganisms such as the denitrifying bacteria *Aromatoleum aromaticum* are able to use small aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., toluene) as substrate or carbon source (Trautwein et al. 2008). With increasing solvent stress, *A. aromaticum* adapts its membrane phospholipid inventory by increasing the degree of PLFA saturation as well as the relative proportion of larger PL head groups as shown by cultivation experiments (Zink and Rabus 2010). Together those changes counteract the swelling and expansion of the membrane caused by the hydrocarbons and restabilize the membrane structure. Hence, cells of *A. aromaticum* manage to survive solvent stress even at semi-inhibitory conditions (ca 50% growth inhibition). The toxic impact of heavy metals on microorganisms has, to some extent, similar effects as those of hydrocarbons, but results are more complex and can sometimes be ambiguous. Vestal and White (1989) and Frostegård
Fig. 8  Difference diagram of the PLFA inventory of a piezosensitive deep sub-seafloor bacterium cultivated at high pressure (HP) of 25 MPa subtracted by the PLFA inventory obtained at atmospheric pressure (AP) conditions indicating a shift to more unsaturated PLFAs in the high-pressure culture (modified after Mangelsdorf et al. 2005b). The bend in the side chain structure associated to the cis double bond prevents a closer compaction of the cell membrane.
et al. (1993b) showed that heavy metals influence microbial population growth and composition depending on the type of metal and on concentrations. Overall highest toxicity was observed for Cd, but effects are increasingly complex and challenging to interpret when different soil types and with that different microbial communities, the influence on pH or oxygen or water levels is considered.

Several studies, in particular on agricultural and bioremediation aspects, have shown that high salinity, for instance, in soils or lakes, has various effects on microbial growth and community composition (e.g., Qin et al. 2012; Yuan et al. 2007). In this context, Rath et al. (2016) found in certain soils that, with respect to growth, bacteria were less resistant to high salt concentrations than fungi, which is hence also reflected in the lipid composition detected in the soils. Similar results with regard to bacterial growth inhibition and bacterial-fungal community structure have been demonstrated for soils in arid regions such as NW Iran (Barin et al. 2015). In addition, they observed changes in microbial PLFA composition as an indicator for salinity stress. Saline environments contain specific intact polar lipid inventories from halophilic archaea (Bale et al. 2019). Often occurring head groups (Fig. 2) are among others (see Bale et al. 2019) phosphatidyl glycerophosphate (PGP), phosphatidyl glycerophosphate methyl ester (PGP-Me), phosphatidyl glycerol (PG), and phosphatidic acid (PA) (Genderjahn et al. 2017). Additionally, the archaeal lipids are often composed of one or two sesterterpanyl (extended side chain of 25 carbon atoms) side chains instead of the usual phytanyl ones and can also contain double bonds and hydroxy groups (Bale et al. 2019; Genderjahn et al. 2017). Halophilic archaea from the class of Halobacteria are often the dominant archaeal species in saline environment. Their polar lipids exhibit archaeol and extended archaeol but usually no GDGTs. Thus, the archaeol vs GDGT ratio is used as a paleo-proxy to indicate salinity changes over geological times (Genderjahn et al. 2017; Turich and Freeman 2011).

4.4 Monitoring of Microbial Life Over Time and Space

Subsurface microbial communities can have strong impact on hydrocarbon resources, mineral deposits, geological reservoir systems, and technical production facilities (Baveye et al. 1998; Head et al. 2003). Therefore, the technical utilization of the underground requires the consideration of microbial communities as an important factor for the quality of energy, water, and material resources and for their reliable exploitation. Other technical utilization of the geological subsurface is, for example, the extraction of geothermal energy or the use of aquifers as cold and surplus heat energy storages (Vetter et al. 2012b). Subsurface microbial communities can directly interfere with the resources in the underground or with the technical below- and aboveground facilities. Thus, microbial activity is known to cause, for instance, biodegradation of petroleum, biofilm clogging of pore space in geological reservoirs and aquifers, as well as plugging and corrosion of pipes, pumps, or other technical equipment (Head et al. 2003; Vetter et al. 2012b). Thus, monitoring of
microbial life in economically used underground systems is an important issue for the reliable operation of technical production facilities.

Vetter et al. (2012b) monitored variations of the bacterial community in a cold storage aquifer system over a period of 3 years along the flow path from the discharge wells to the charge wells using PLFA analysis. They were repeatedly able to show that the PLFA inventory significantly differs between periods of normal operation and periods of reduced injectivity and claimed increased abundance of biofilm-forming Fe- and S-oxidizers during time of operation disturbance. Furthermore, Vetter et al. (2012a) showed strong temperature adaptation in a heat storage system between a warm and cold well. The PLFA inventory of the warm side was dominated by saturated FAs while that of the cold side by iso- and anteiso-FAs. During downtime of the plant and temperature equilibration of the warm and cold side, the bacterial PLFA patterns on both sides became more similar, but differences rapidly re-established after operation continued.

In another study, Gruner et al. (2017) investigated the microbial composition in a petroleum plant from the production well through the aboveground storage facilities to the injection well. The monitoring over time enabled to identify hot spots of microbial activity mainly in the aboveground facilities of the oil production plants, and also a change of the bacterial community along the flow path was indicated by the variation of the PLFA signal. Furthermore, the effect of biocide application on the microbial abundance could be monitored providing essential information on the adjustment of biocide dosing to mitigate the negative consequences of microbial activity in a petroleum production plant.

Hence, PLFA analysis provides an excellent tool to monitor variations of bacterial communities over time and space not only in natural systems but also in technical facilities.

5 Research Needs

In recent years complementary research strategies are increasingly applied to obtain a more holistic view on microbial communities in not only natural but also economically used systems. The PLFA method is used in combination with a broad set of other biogeochemical and microbiological methods (e.g., Schulze-Makuch et al. 2018). Such comprehensive approaches combine the strengths but also balance the weaknesses of the different methods. In this context it is important to improve our understanding about what the different methods actually indicate. This will help to better utilize and interpret the data sets obtained from the different analytical methods and to combine them to a consistent picture of the microbial communities in a given habitat.

For instance, Genderjahn et al. (2018) showed based on PLFA data a rapid decrease of bacterial abundance from the surface layer down to 10 cm depth in Kalahari pan sediments. In contrast microbiological data obtained by quantitative polymerase chain reaction (qPCR) indicated a decrease of bacteria not below 20 cm. Thus, both methods reveal an abundant surface-near bacterial community, but the depth intervals only partly overlap. Obviously, the two methods detect to some
extent different things. Genderjahn et al. (2018) argued that the qPCR approach might not only detect DNA from living but also from dead bacteria leading to a deeper detection of abundant bacterial biomass. A quite new approach separating between internal DNA (iDNA) indicating living microorganisms and external DNA (eDNA) representing dead microbial biomass might be useful to shed light on the observed discrepancy of the different methods (Alawi et al. 2014).

Thus, future research is needed to improve our understanding on the signals from different analytical methods and how these signals can be best integrated to a realistic image of the investigated microbial community.

References


Genderjahn S, Alawi M, Wagner D, Schüller I, Wanke A, Mangelsdorf K (2018) Microbial community responses to modern environmental and past climatic conditions in Omongwa...


community in a cold storage groundwater system during clogging events. Appl Geochem 27:1278–1290
Abstract

Organic matter-rich sediments are deposited in a variety of continental and marine settings. Their formation strongly depends on bioproductivity and preservation of organic material, which in turn is affected by sediment composition as well as aerobic and anaerobic microbial activity. Burial, pressure, and temperature increase leads to loss of porosity and mineral reactions, ultimately to the formation of sedimentary rocks, and to transformation of primary biomass into insoluble and soluble sedimentary organic matter, i.e., kerogen and bitumen.
1 Introduction

For the generation of oil and natural gas, the formation of organic matter-rich sediments in different environments is of prime importance. The depositional settings determine, among others, the amount and quality of organic material, i.e., total organic carbon (TOC; C\text{org}) content and kerogen types. The deposition of sediments rich in organic matter is taking place in terrestrial, lacustrine, and marine environments in which organic matter is produced faster than it can be destroyed (Tourtelot 1979). These sediments are usually fine-grained and either dominated by silicate (clays and quartz) or carbonate minerals; they usually develop under a permanent water cover with bottom waters being commonly oxygen-depleted. An important exception is peats, which usually develop in humid climates and in areas with limited run-off of surface water leading to a high water level at or above the peat surface.

Organic matter quantity and quality greatly varies even if environments favoring organic matter accumulation are compared. For example, deltaic and fluvial sediments as well as coals generally do not contain much organic matter derived from aquatic organisms. However, they often contain tissues of higher land plants in great quantity. This type of organic material (kerogen type III; Fig. 1) is usually less hydrogen-rich and less oil-prone than the aquatic type. In contrast, marine and lacustrine sediments with high organic matter contents are commonly characterized

---

**Fig. 1** Kerogen types (left) and microscopy pictures (right) showing respective organic particles (macerals). (a) van Krevelen diagram with the atomic H/C vs. O/C ratios of some organic-rich rocks and kerogens. (Modified after van Krevelen 1961), (b) Botryococcus algae (type I kerogen) under UV-light. (From Rippen et al. 2013), (c) Tasmanales algae (type I kerogen) under UV-light. (From Stock et al. 2017), (d) Carboniferous coal with V vitrinite, C cutinite, S sporinite, and I inertinite
by a predominance of aquatic organic matter, either of planktonic or benthic origin. This aquatic organic matter is usually rich in hydrogen, contains little oxygen and is classified as kerogen type I or II.

In the following, the depositional environments are presented, in which organic matter-rich sediments are deposited as well as the consequences for organic matter composition and kerogen quality and quantity. Finally, important methods for kerogen characterization are introduced.

2 Depositional Settings

2.1 The Sea

The deposition of organic matter in modern marine sediments is very complex and strongly influenced by factors such as bioproductivity, ocean currents, ocean floor morphology, and sediment composition. In general, sediments deposited near continents and sediments from marginal seas are more enriched in organic carbon as compared to the deep sea. This proximal-distal pattern reflects bioproductivity in the oceans, which is much stronger in continent-near areas and in marginal seas (Fig. 2) due to the higher availability of nutrients there. High bioproductivity exists, for example, along the northwest and southwest margin of Africa, the west coast of northern South America, and the northwestern coasts of the Indian Ocean (Arabia), where thus bioproductivity is enhanced by upwelling of deep, nutrient-rich cold ocean waters. Sediments there are often rich in organic carbon with values exceeding 1%.

Fig. 2 Global annual net primary production (gC m$^{-2}$a$^{-1}$) from the biosphere. (Modified after Field et al. 1998; see also Huston and Wolverton 2009 for global chlorophyll data)
However, although bioproductivity control on organic matter deposition is obvious on a global scale, it can be disturbed significantly on a regional scale due to other factors such as sea floor topography, mineralogy, and permeability of the sediments. For the Peru sedimentary margin, for example, the areas of highest primary productivity are not exactly those of highest organic carbon content (Fig. 3). In clay-rich sediments or in rapidly deposited sediments, neither oxygen nor other oxidizing agents such as sulfate are transported in great quantity into the sediments thus decelerating organic matter decay and favoring organic matter preservation. Such conditions often occur in topographic lows (mini-basins) on the ocean floor.

Decoupling of primary bioproductivity and organic carbon content is even more pronounced in silled marginal seas with limited water exchange with the open ocean. A modern example is the Black Sea, where highest bioproductivity occurs in the northwest (Danube Inlet). However, due to water stratification and thus the presence of anoxic bottom water, the central parts of the Black Sea are much more enriched in organic carbon, in particular where clay-rich sediments occur and sedimentation rates are high (Stein 1991).

Oxygen concentration in water and at the sediment/water interface greatly influences organic matter preservation and thus the geochemical properties of organic matter in sediments. Fig. 4 shows oceanic oxygen levels at 300 m depth, i.e., within the upper part of the oxygen minimum zone (OMZ) of the oceans. This zone extends below the photic zone in the oceans from about 200 to more than 1000 m depth (Fuenzalida et al. 2009; Paulmier and Ruiz-Pino 2009). Its dimension and intensity depends on vertical exchange between deep and shallow water masses, bioproductivity, and water temperature. In warm water, less oxygen can be dissolved than in cool water. High rates of bioproductivity lead to greater oxygen consumption by decaying biomass below the photic zone. Thus, both high bioproductivity and high water temperatures are favorable for organic matter accumulation.

![Fig. 3](image-url)

**Fig. 3** (a) Total primary bioproductivity and (b) sedimentary organic carbon in surface sediments in the upwelling area off Peru. (Redrawn from Littke 1993, after Reimers and Suess 1983)
Therefore, it is not surprising that many “oceanic anoxic events” such as the Cenomanian-Turonian Boundary Event coincide with high global temperatures (Sachse et al. 2014).

Organic matter in marine sediments contains not exclusively aquatic (planktonic and benthic) organic matter but also terrestrial organic matter to a variable extent. Terrestrial organic particles (e.g., wood, spores and pollen, charcoal) have to survive a long transport from their site of bioproduction to the site of deposition. Although ocean currents can be rather fast, e.g., up to 2 m/s for the Gulf Stream, this can take several months or years, because the density contrast between organic matter and water is rather small and terrestrial particles at some distance from the coast are usually small. According to Stoke’s law, density difference between particle and water, particle size and viscosity determine the settling of particles. In addition, convective processes partly driven by wind systems can promote rapid settling of organic particles in the sea (Haake et al. 1993).

Long residence times in the sea will generally lead to a stronger physical and chemical degradation of organic matter; therefore, organic particles in central parts of the oceans are usually very rare, strongly degraded, i.e., hydrogen-poor, and small, whereas larger particles occur close to continents and islands (Littke 1993). Along continental slopes, fine dispersed marine organic matter and other sediment undergo resuspension and redeposition within benthic nepheloid layers above the sea ground, causing a proportion of the organic particles to chemically alter and to age before their final sedimentation (Inthorn et al. 2006; Bao et al. 2016).

Differentiating quantitatively terrestrial-derived and autochthonous marine organic matter is neither easy for recent nor for ancient sediments/sedimentary rocks. One possibility is point counting, because terrigenous particles (vitrinite,
inertinite, sporinite) are usually well-visible in incident light microscopy, especially if sections are studied perpendicular to bedding. Other possibilities include lipid geochemistry (Hopmans et al. 2004) and the usage of carbon/nitrogen ratios which roughly range from 15 to 35 in higher land plants and 4 to 8 in marine lower plants, zooplankton, and bacteria (Stein 1991).

In summary, different factors govern the formation of organic matter-rich sediments in marine settings including bioproductivity, organic matter type, ocean currents, sedimentation rate, mineralogy/permeability, and presence of anoxic bottom water. High bioproductivity rates, presence of anoxic bottom water, high clay contents/low permeabilities, and high sedimentation rates are favorable for organic matter deposition.

2.2 Lakes

Lakes are important settings in which organic matter-rich sediments are deposited, often with high percentages of hydrogen-rich lower plants. Deposition in lacustrine settings follows the same principles as in marine settings but has some particularities. Organic-richness of lake deposits depends on nutrient supply and bioproductivity as well as water circulation in the lake and stability of water stratification (see Meyers and Ishiwatari 1993). In comparison to marine settings, lakes are usually much smaller and thus always near to land. Therefore, deposition is strongly influenced by river inflow, lithology of surrounding rocks, and regional climate. Also, large terrestrial organic particles can be present in large quantities in lake sediments.

With respect to the geochemical characteristics, organic matter-rich lake sediments are highly diverse but tend to show an excellent preservation of primary organic matter as compared to marine organic matter-rich sediments. This is partly due to the complete absence of oxygen in the bottom waters, whereas many marine settings are characterized by oxygen-depleted but not completely anoxic conditions, e.g., due to the presence of ocean currents. Furthermore, sulfate is on average present in higher quantity (by a factor of about 5) in sea water, leading to much more intense organic matter degradation by sulfate-reducing microbes. Therefore, on average, organic matter is better preserved in lake than in marine settings, with often high organic carbon concentrations and high hydrogen over carbon ratios for lake sediments in which organic matter is dominated by phytoplankton (type I kerogen in Fig. 1). Another special feature is the high thermal stability of such hydrogen-rich kerogen derived from lakes, which is important with respect to petroleum generation (see below).

A recent example for a large stratified lake is Lake Tanganyika, which is characterized by high organic carbon contents below a stratified water column (Huc 1988). In such stratified lakes, deposition of organic carbon follows the same pattern observed in the Black Sea: organic matter-rich sediments are deposited in the deep parts of the lake, where sedimentation rates are high. Due to the fact that many lakes have a stable water stratification and anoxic bottom water, they often contain very well preserved, hydrogen-rich organic matter. Furthermore, sulfate contents are
usually much lower than in marine settings leading to an even better preservation of organic material (see Chap. 10, “Lipidomic Analysis of Lower Organisms”). Therefore, kerogen derived from lake sediments is often classified as type I, i.e., very rich in hydrogen. Whereas this is favorable for these rocks with respect to organic matter quantity and hydrocarbon generation capacity, lateral extension is often limited. In lakes, similar to the sea, there is also, aside from aquatic (algal) organic matter, an input of land plant material. Its quantity is strongly controlled by the vegetation surrounding the lakes and thus by climate.

A famous fossil example is the Eocene Messel Lake, Germany, studied in much detail due to well preserved fossils (early horses, primates, crocodiles, etc.). Organic matter there consists of a mixture of phytoplankton including green algae, dinoflagellates and terrestrial material, the latter partly as large fragments (Rullkötter et al. 1988). Sediments are to a large extent extremely fine laminated, indicating that no burrowing organisms could exist in the bottom waters due to bottom water anoxia. Thus, aerobic microbial activity was absent and much organic matter was deposited and preserved (Fig. 5). Like most freshwater ecosystems, Lake Messel was sulfate-poor as compared to seawater limiting microbial sulfate reduction (Berner 1984; see Chap. 10, “Lipidomic Analysis of Lower Organisms”). Accordingly, organic carbon over total sulfur ratios is very high, almost reaching the values of peat and coal (Fig. 5). Under these conditions, excellent preservation of organic matter
occurs, leading also to high hydrogen/carbon ratios of the organic matter (Fig. 1). In the case of Lake Messel, oxygen/carbon ratios are also high due to the admixture of about 20% terrestrial higher land plant (woody) material (Rullkötter et al. 1990).

Another type of lake is represented by the Miocene Nördlinger Ries Lake. More than 200 m deep and covering 400 km², it was created by a major meteorite impact 15 million years ago. The resultant lake was filled within about two million years, first by lake sediments, later also by terrestrial deposits. Because the lake was situated between Jurassic limestones, it represents a carbonate lake with a water chemistry vastly different from most other freshwater lakes. Iron contents, for example, were very low and sulfate contents high leading to much higher total sulfur over organic carbon ratios as compared to the, in this respect, typical Lake Messel (Fig. 5). Due to the low iron contents, pyrite (FeS₂) formation was only possible to a limited extent. Pyrite is common in almost all organic matter-rich sediments (as long as some iron is present). Globally, by far most reduced sulfur in subaqueous sediments is present in pyrite (or in its orthorhombic twin marcasite). Exceptions to this rule are iron-poor carbonate sediments such as those of the Nördlinger Ries Lake. There, extremely high organic sulfur concentrations can occur (Barakat and Rullkötter 1993). There are several other lake sediments with this character, whereas marine examples for sulfur-rich kerogen include the Miocene, carbonate-siliceous Monterey Formation, California (Baskin and Peters 1992), or the Cenomanian-Turonian carbonates of the Tarfaya Basin, Morocco (Sachse et al. 2011).

2.3 Rivers and Peats

A major part of the terrestrial organic matter in sediments is preserved either in the form of dispersed particles in fluvial siliciclastic rocks or in peats or coal, with the latter showing the highest concentrations in TOC (≥50%) of all organic matter-rich sediments. The formation of these sediments is restricted to regions proximate to or within areas of intense bioproductivity in humid climates with permanent freshwater and nutrient supply, where a large proportion of the produced biogenic material can be preserved under wet, oxygen-depleted conditions.

Such prerequisites are given in peatlands, which are either fed solely by rainwater (ombrotrophic mires) or by a combination of precipitation, flowing water and/or groundwater (rheotrophic mires). Ombrotrophic mires form raised, or more rarely blanked bogs, which are characterized by acidic pH values and low siliciclastic inputs, and thus have a relatively lower nutrient supply compared to mires that form under rheotrophic conditions (Moore 1995). Ombrotrophic peats and the resultant coals are characterized by low ash/mineral contents. Depending on the height of their water table, rheotrophic mires are classified into fens, swamps, and marshes. Resultant peats are usually characterized by higher ash/mineral contents including higher sulfur contents as compared to ombrotrophic peats. Processes such as peat growth, subsidence, or eustatic sea level rise can affect the hydrological conditions in a peat-mire towards ombrotrophic or rheotrophic, respectively (Moore 1995).
Most modern peatlands are situated within the temperate climate zone and are concentrated in the northern hemisphere, where the largest areas of peat formation are in Russia, Canada, Fennoscandia, and NW Europe. Bioproductivity is generally higher in tropical regions (Fig. 2) leading to thicker peat layers within tropical mires. Although tropical peats only contribute little to the total area of modern wetlands (~10%), they account for 18–25% of the global peat volume (Page et al. 2011). Different from the peatlands of the northern hemisphere, in which the vegetation is dominated by *Sphagnum* and herbaceous plants, recent mires in tropical regions are characterized by a woody, rainforest vegetation, comparable to that of many paleo-mires from the Carboniferous, Jurassic and Miocene that led to the formation of coal seams (Staub and Esterle 1994). Upon burial, peats grade into lignite, subbituminous and bituminous coal, anthracite, and finally graphite.

The type of vegetal material plays an important role in the deposition and preservation of organic matter in sediments. While the polysaccharides cellulose and hemicellulose have a low resistance to microbial degradation, the wood forming substance lignin is relatively stable under anaerobic conditions and is an important precursor of vitrinite (Fig. 1a, d), a typical type III kerogen and abundant constituent of coal and the organic matter in most fluvio-deltaic sediments (Hatcher et al. 1982; van Krevelen 1961). Cellulose is, however, still present in lignites (Fabbri et al. 2009; Stock et al. 2016). Lignin, on the other hand, can also be degraded substantially according to recent investigation (Waggoner et al. 2017). Other important macerals of similar resistance are sporinite, derived from spores and pollen of vascular plants, cutinite derived from waxy protective layers (cuticula) of higher land plants, and inertinite, oxidized, carbon-rich particles resulting from peat fires or fungal reduction (Fig. 1d).

Sites for deposition of dispersed organic matter on continents are, apart from lakes, lowlands flooded temporarily by rivers, but also backwaters, where conditions similar to those in lakes may exist. In humid climate zones, typical sites for the deposition of organic particles are overbank deposits and crevasse splays. Interestingly, organic matter in such fluvial systems is usually more degraded than that in peat, i.e., the petroleum generation capacity is much lower in fluvial sedimentary rocks than in the adjacent coals (Jasper et al. 2009).

Coal deposits and related plant fossils reflect very well the terrestrial plant evolution. The terrestrial plant species contributing to the organic matter preserved in sediments evolved and diversified upon geologic times. First land plants appeared during the Middle Devonian and developed to vascular plants during the early Silurian (Edwards et al. 1983), delimitating the occurrence of sediments rich in terrestrial organic matter to later dates. During the late Devonian, spore producing pteridophyte and early gymnosperm trees populated the continents, leading to an adaptive radiation of land plants and to the formation of extended tropical peat mires. During the Pennsylvanian, these mires covered large areas of present-day North America and Europe. Coal-bearing sequences derived from such tropical, humid environments can reach thicknesses of several kilometers with numerous coal seams as well as dispersed terrigenous organic matter (Scheidt and Littke 1989). The majority of Permian coals deposited on the former Gondwana continent at high
southern latitudes in humid cool-temperate climates. The higher inertinite (see Fig. 1) contents in these coals compared to coals that formed during the late Carboniferous are interpreted as indicators for seasonal changes (Taylor et al. 1989). Gymnosperms dominated the peat forming vegetation during the Triassic and Jurassic and angiosperms dominate the terrestrial vegetation since Cretaceous times (Fig. 6). The relatively young C₄ plants developed during the Oligocene (Vicentini et al. 2008; Christin et al. 2008) and expanded during Late Miocene to Pliocene times (Cerling et al. 1997). C₄ species like grasses and sedges make up the ground cover of modern fens and marshes (Rydin and Jeglum 2013) and have a 25% share in today’s terrestrial net bioproductivity (Still et al. 2003). Because angiospermous lignin is more easily degraded than gymnospermous or pteridophytal lignin, (Hedges et al. 1985; Hatcher et al. 1989), vitrinite particles of coals or fluvi-deltaic deposits that formed from these species tend to be more degraded/detrital compared to vitrinite from Carboniferous coals.

3 Geochemical Transformations in Young Sediments

Organic matter-rich sediments undergo significant transformation upon burial starting in the very early phases of burial. In young and porous sediments, much of this transformation is driven by microbial activity (Jørgensen 1982). Organic
matter is oxidized in a sequence of reactions including the reduction of O$_2$, NO$_3^-$, MnO$_2$, Fe$_2$O$_3$, SO$_4^{2-}$ (Froelich et al. 1979), the sequence being determined by the Gibbs Free Energy Yield under the respective redox conditions. In organic matter-rich sediments, aerobic activity usually ends several centimeters to meters below the sediment/water interface, whereas the aerobic zone can reach much deeper in organic-lean sediments (Glud 2008; Fischer et al. 2009). Marine organic matter is more easily degraded as compared to terrestrial organic matter (Hedges et al. 1988) leading to a diagenetic change of the terrestrial/marine ratio.

In marine water and freshly deposited marine sediments, sulfate is usually present in high quantities (sea water has an average sulfur content of about 0.1 wt.%) and the main driver of anaerobic degradation. Almost all reduced sulfur is fixed in the sediments during this process of organic matter degradation, mainly as pyrite or organic sulfur. This leads to a strong decrease of the TOC/TS ratio below the sedimentary surface. An example is shown in Fig. 7a (Lückge et al. 1999),

![Fig. 7](image)

**Fig. 7** (a) Depth distribution of TOC/TS ratios in sediments deposited within the OMZ off Pakistan. Ratios of TOC/TOC$_{or}$ versus (b) HI, (c) total nitrogen (TN), and (d) total phosphorus (TP). (Redrawn after Lückge et al. 1999)
illustrating the change in composition of organic matter-rich sediments. Not only is reduced sulfur fixed in the sediments but also organic matter is also degraded. The degree of degradation can be quantified as $\text{TOC/TOC}_{or}$ (original TOC) with a ratio of 1 indicating no degradation due to sulfate reduction (Lückge et al. 1999). In the course of this process, nitrogen and phosphorous are lost from the sediments due to selective degradation of nitrogen and phosphorous rich organic matter, and the hydrocarbon generation potential (HI, see below) as a proxy for organic matter H/C ratio is also strongly affected (Fig. 7b–d).

Kerogen, the insoluble organic matter in sedimentary rocks is transformed from biomacromolecules via selective preservation of nonhydrolyzable macromolecular structures and also via restructuring of biomacromolecules into thermally more stable moieties (Tegelaar et al. 1989). Chemical changes occurring during diagenesis before the onset of thermal hydrocarbon generation, i.e., at temperatures below $80–100 \degree C$ include incorporation of sulfur into organic matter via natural vulcanization (de Leeuw and Largeau 1993), loss of oxygen from the kerogen structure, and loss of much of the organic nitrogen with transformation of a small part of it from peptide bonds into carbazolic, pyrrolic, or pyridinic structures (Boudou et al. 2008). Changes in molecular structures of specific soluble organic compounds (biomarkers) during the stage of diagenesis have been described in much detail and can be used to decipher temperature history or maximum temperatures reached during burial (Peters et al. 2005).

Sediments rich in organic matter also undergo other changes than structural and geochemical changes within the kerogen and bitumen. The rocks also experience significant compaction and are transformed from loose sediments into sedimentary rocks. Peats, for example, have water contents greater than 75%. When transformed into lignites and finally hard coals, almost all the water gets lost. Mudstones also loose most of their porosity during burial in the first 2 km of the sedimentary column, when they are transformed into solid shales. These changes have great effects on transport properties, which in turn are extremely important for petroleum migration during the stage of catagenesis, i.e., the thermal oil generation stage at temperatures of about $100–180 \degree C$.

### 4 Assessment of Organic Matter in Sedimentary Rocks

There is a variety of techniques available to study sedimentary organic matter. **Elemental analysis** (C, H, N, S, O) is very time consuming due to the necessity to dissolve minerals with hydrochloric and hydrofluoric acid, before analyzing the residual mixture of organic matter and sulfides. Therefore, alternative techniques have been developed and applied in the past.

**Optical microscopy** is one of the most common techniques to characterize organic matter in sedimentary rocks. In organic petrography, polished sections, preferentially cut and polished perpendicular to the bedding plane, are studied at high magnification. Organic particles are grouped into numerous macerals, but only three maceral groups: inertinite, vitrinite, and liptinite (see Fig. 1). Inertinite is bright
under the microscope, rich in carbon, poor in hydrogen, and derived from, e.g., charcoal and fungi. Vitrinite is gray under the microscope, rich in oxygen, moderately rich in hydrogen, and derived from higher land plants, e.g., wood, bark, roots, parts of leaves. Liptinite, dark grey in reflected light, is derived from a variety of waxy, hydrogen-rich plants, or plant constituents such as algae, spores, pollen, cuticular layers, or resins. In most sedimentary rocks, the bulk of the organic matter is visible as particles under the microscope, but there are also sediments dominated by submicroscopic organic matter. Reflectance of organic particles changes systematically with burial temperature; this is in particular true for vitrinite reflectance. Therefore, this parameter has been widely applied to reconstruct burial and temperature histories of sedimentary rocks and to calibrate numerical models on organic matter maturation and petroleum generation. There is in addition a large number of other optical maturity parameters such as solid bitumen reflectance, graptolite reflectance, spore color, and conodont color (Hartkopf-Fröder et al. 2015). In palynological studies, rocks are pulverized and treated by hydrochloric and hydrofluoric acids; the residues are studied in transmitted light. Due to the preparation process, much of the fine liptinitic material is here grouped as AOM (amorphous organic matter), whereas terrigenous (“woody”) material can be well identified.

**Pyrolysis techniques** have long been used to characterize sedimentary organic matter including coal, giving access to both the soluble (bitumen) and insoluble (kerogen) parts. As an industry standard, Rock-Eval pyrolysis has been established. In an open system, powdered rocks are heated in inert atmosphere rapidly to about 300 °C to vaporize volatile “free” hydrocarbons and then at 25 °C/min to a final temperature of about 550 °C in order to pyrolyze kerogen. Also the generated CO₂ is quantified. Important parameters include the Hydrogen Index (HI, mg hydrocarbons/g TOC), the Oxygen Index (OI, mg CO₂/g TOC), and the temperature of maximum pyrolysis yield (Tₘₐₓ) which reflects maximum burial temperatures, similar to vitrinite reflectance. Kerogen is commonly classified in a “pseudo van Krevelen” plot (compare Fig. 1) of HI versus OI (Fig. 8a). Rock-Eval parameters do, however, also depend on mineral matter. Presence of low quantities of pyrolyzable organic matter can lead to retention inside the oven and thus too low HI and too high Tₘₐₓ values (Peters 1986). Rocks having sufficiently high quantities of pyrolyzable organic matter show clear trends of increasing Tₘₐₓ and decreasing HI values with maturation (Fig. 8b, c). It should be noted that there is a great number of various pyrolysis techniques available, e.g., open system, closed system with and without water, Curie-Point pyrolysis, laser-induced micropyrolysis, pyrolysis under controlled pressures. In particular, pyrolysis coupled to gas chromatography can provide much structural and chemical information on organic matter. Further information can be derived from *spectroscopic techniques* such as IR, UV, and NMR.

Bitumen, the part of sedimentary organic matter which is soluble in organic solvents, can best be studied using chromatographic techniques, in particular gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (**GC-MS**). This allows very detailed characterization on a molecular level, revealing much information on biological precursors of sedimentary organic matter (biomarkers). The concept of this approach and applications are described in detail in Peters et al. (2005).
Both kerogen and bitumen are complex mixtures of organic compounds derived from organisms. Numerous studies have investigated the transformations of organic matter in very young sediments, in which biological precursors can still be identified, such as amino acids, cellulose, etc. However, a complete and quantitative understanding of transformations occurring at greater depth is still missing, e.g., with respect to the carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, hydrogen, and oxygen cycles. In particular, microbial gas generation and its impact on kerogen quality and quantity is poorly understood, although much effort has been put into studies on selected aspects. Laboratory experiments can give important insight, but their applicability to geological systems is debatable.

**5 Research Needs**

Fig. 8 (a) Pseudo van Krevelen diagram showing HI and OI values of Posidonia Shale samples (Stock et al. 2017) and sediment from within the Ruhr Basin (Jasper et al. 2009) and their concentrated kerogens, (b) development of HI values with increasing maturity (VRₜ) for Posidonia Shale and Ruhr Basin samples, (c) HI/VRₜ plot of coal, organic-rich sediment and clastic rocks from the Ruhr Basin
The same holds true for quantification of oil and gas generation from kerogen as a function of temperature. Diverse pyrolysis experiments in open or closed system, with or without water, with or without controlled pressure have been performed, each one of which giving important hints. From these experiments, kinetic parameters on petroleum generation have been developed and are widely applied in the petroleum industry. However, if kinetic parameters on petroleum generation are calculated from pyrolysis experiments, vastly different results are obtained – proving that our quantitative understanding is still poor and that extrapolation of laboratory results to geological long-time, low-temperature reactors is not possible. Therefore, comparison of pyrolysis experiments with natural maturation series, which are the products of the geological reactions, are necessary. Whereas this seems to be simple, it is complex in reality, because rocks of different thermal maturity rarely have the exact original facies, i.e., the same original organic matter quantity and quality as well as mineralogy.

References


Thermogenic Formation of Hydrocarbons in Sedimentary Basins

Nicolaj Mahlstedt

Contents
1 Introduction ............................................................................. 494
2 Basic Mechanisms and Driving Forces for Thermogenic Petroleum Formation in Time and Space .......................................................... 495
3 Classical and Novel Analytical Methods to Investigate Thermogenic Petroleum Formation ........................................................................ 499
  3.1 Optical Microscopy .............................................................. 500
  3.2 Elemental Analysis ............................................................. 501
  3.3 Pyrolysis ........................................................................... 502
4 Research Needs ........................................................................ 513
References ................................................................................... 515

Abstract
A short introduction into the occurrence and bulk composition of thermogenic hydrocarbons as a fraction of natural petroleum in sedimentary basins is given. The main driving forces for the generation of thermogenic petroleum besides temperature, namely, time, pressure, and catalysts, are discussed as well as basic reaction mechanisms. The main part describes classical and novel analytical methods used to assess timing, amount, and composition of generated petroleum as a function of organic matter type and maturity. Recent work is presented and research needs are identified.

N. Mahlstedt (*)
GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany
e-mail: nick@gfz-potsdam.de

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_15
1 Introduction

Understanding thermogenic formation of hydrocarbons is key to securing mankind’s need for energy resource as it is now firmly established that most recoverable oil and gas in sedimentary basins is generated by the thermal breakdown of organic matter in subsiding coals and source rocks. Thus, this topic is already comprehensively covered in a variety of textbooks related to petroleum geochemistry (e.g., Tissot and Welte 1984; Hunt 1995; Welte et al. 1997), restricting the following essay to an overview about the basic mechanisms and controls leading to thermogenic formation of hydrocarbons from organic matter and about the most important analytical approaches used to gain insights into these processes. Abiogenic hydrocarbons formed by inorganic reactions in the deeper crust or upper mantle do exist (Abrajano et al. 1988; Schoell 1988; Welhan 1988; Walters 2006) but are of no commercial relevance and therefore not discussed here.

Focus is put on thermogenic hydrocarbons as part of petroleum consisting of liquids and gaseous compounds. Hydrocarbons such as methane, ethane, propane, butane, and light hydrocarbons in so-called condensates are the major fraction in natural gas accumulations besides minor amounts of CO₂, H₂S, N₂, H₂, Ar, and He. Liquid petroleum can be divided into the so-called SARA fractions, with hydrocarbons making up the saturates and aromatics fractions and non-hydrocarbons (whose molecules contain N, S, and O besides H and C atoms) making up the resins and asphaltene fractions. Detailed petroleum composition thereby strongly depends on the biological origin of the source organic matter as well as its depositional environment, the temperature of formation, i.e., maturity zone, and fractionation and alteration processes between source and sink.

The classical maturity zones for organic matter evolution called diagenesis (Rₒ < 0.5%, Rₒ = reflectance in oil, see Sect. 3.1), catagenesis (0.5% < Rₒ < 2.0%), and metagenesis (2.0% < Rₒ < 4.0%) (Tissot and Welte 1978) are used to separate the main zones of hydrocarbon formation in the Van Krevelen diagram (Fig. 1). The only thermogenic products generated during diagenesis are CO₂ and H₂O (Vandenbroucke and Largeau 2007), and biogenic methane is the only hydrocarbon formed in abundance by microbial activity through fermentation and CO₂ reduction at temperatures below 80 °C (Schoell 1988; Faber et al. 1992; Whiticar 1994). At the end of diagenesis, humic substances are no longer present, and the organic matter consists mainly of kerogen. Thermal degradation of this macromolecular kerogen, at temperatures exceeding 70 °C (Dieckmann et al. 1998; Dieckmann 2005; Horsfield et al. 2006), leads to the formation of primary petroleum, i.e., oil and wet gas during catagenesis and mainly dry gas (methane content > 97%) during metagenesis (Tissot et al. 1974; Tissot and Welte 1984; Mahlstedt and Horsfield 2012). Secondary thermal cracking of petroleum in the late catagenesis and early metagenesis zones yields smaller and smaller molecules and dry gas and pyrobitumen as final products. Secondary cracking of unexpelled oil, formerly associated with lean source rocks exhibiting low oil expulsion efficiencies (Cooles et al. 1986; Pepper and Dodd 1995), recently proved to be a crucial element in the “exploration equation” for...
defining the in-place potential of unconventional shale oil and shale gas plays ([Chap. 19, “Oil and Gas Shales”]). Default temperatures for primary and secondary petroleum generation cannot be given, but factors controlling the timing of petroleum formation (organic matter lability) as well as masses and composition are discussed in the following.

2 Basic Mechanisms and Driving Forces for Thermogenic Petroleum Formation in Time and Space

After early diagenesis, where biological processes are largely involved, temperature increase associated with sediment burial is widely accepted to mainly control kerogen to petroleum transformation. Nevertheless, the prime driving force for this process is its negative Gibbs free energy ($\Delta G$), i.e., the difference in free energy between the reactants at the initial state (immature kerogen) and products at the final state (more mature kerogen and petroleum). The Gibbs function is expressed as:

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S,$$

where $\Delta H$ and $\Delta S$ are the differences in enthalpy and entropy, respectively, of the system between these states (e.g., Atkins and de Paula 2002). As breakdown of macromolecular organic matter into smaller petroleum components increases the disorder of the system and is an overall endothermic process (Carr et al. 2009), both
ΔS and ΔH are positive. Thus, and as ΔS and ΔH usually change only subtly with
temperature T, increasing temperature mainly controls whether ΔG is negative for
the reaction to proceed spontaneously.

Nevertheless, petroleum system components are not in thermodynamic equilib-
rium but are governed by chemical reaction kinetics, i.e., both temperature and time
are critical and an activation energy or potential barrier between educt (macromo-
lecular organic matter) and product (petroleum) compounds must be overcome for
oil and gas to be generated. Basic kinetic principles for modeling petroleum forma-
tion are given in Schenk et al. (1997b) or Burnham (2017b). In general, petroleum-
generating reactions in nature and in the laboratory (pyrolysis) are assumed to
proceed via an unknown but very large number of quasi-irreversible, parallel
reactions following a first-order rate law (van Krevelen et al. 1951; Pitt 1961;
Jüntgen 1964; Tissot 1969; Tissot et al. 1971). Thus, the reaction rate (dm/dt) of
the “bulk” petroleum-forming reaction is proportional to the remaining amount of
educt (M – m), where m is the mass of product generated from the initial mass M of
educt at a given time t:

\[ \frac{dm}{dt} = k (M - m). \]

(2)

The strong (exponential) temperature dependence of the rate constant k usually
follows the semiempirical Arrhenius law:

\[ k (T) = A^* e^{-E/RT}, \]

(3)

where T is the absolute temperature in Kelvin, A is termed frequency factor (s⁻¹),
E is the activation energy of the reaction (J/mol; kcal/mol is used in petroleum
literature), and R is the gas constant.

As the factor RT is a measure of the thermal energy of the system at a given
temperature T, a rate constant k will be small, i.e., the reaction will proceed slowly, if
the temperature is low and the activation energy high. Nevertheless, time as a primary
(linear) control on petroleum formation can compensate for “low” temperatures to
reach a certain organic matter conversion level. As a classical example, Tissot and
Espitalié (1975) showed for basins exhibiting broadly similar geothermal gradients
that the top of the principal zone of oil formation varies with the age of the source rock:
50 °C in the Devonian (350 Ma) of the eastern Sahara, 60 °C in the Toarcian (180 Ma)
of the Paris Basin, 70 °C in the Eocene (35 Ma) of West Africa, and 115 °C in the Mio-
Pliocene (10 Ma) of the Los Angeles Basin (Tissot and Welte 1984).

Non-isothermal kinetic concepts take temperature changes as a function of time
under geological conditions into account and are used to assign kinetic parameters to
the breakdown of various organic matter types. To determine the kinetic parameters,
pyrolysis experiments are performed either isothermally at different temperatures or
non-isothermally at constant heating rates. Usually an activation energy distribution
with a single frequency factor is used having the advantage that, analogous to
kerogen conversion which proceeds according to bond strength with, e.g., weak
C–S and C–O bonds breaking before strong C–C bonds, all reactions proceed in the
order of increasing activation energy with increasing temperature (Tissot and Espitalié 1975; Ungerer 1990). Kinetic parameters differ appreciably depending on the detailed organic matter composition and maturity level with main activation energies and frequency factors for petroleum generation found in the range 45–60 kcal/mol and $10^{12}$–$10^{16}$ s$^{-1}$ (Ungerer 1990).

The most widely accepted concept to explain the cleavage of organic matter to smaller fragments is based on the Rice free radical theory (Rice 1933; Kossiakoff and Rice 1943; Greensfelder et al. 1949) which describes thermal cracking as a chain reaction involving free radicals. Occurrence of free radicals in kerogens and coals supports the significance of chain reactions via free radicals in natural systems, specifically the observation that free radical concentrations increase during catagenesis in the course of petroleum formation and decrease during metagenesis due to a gradual conversion of kerogen to a graphite-like structure (condensation) (Ishiwatari et al. 1976, 1977; Marchand and Conard 1980; Bakr et al. 1988, 1990, 1991). In general, the reaction chain consists of initiation, chain propagation, and termination, for which the overall activation energy can be calculated from the activation energies of the various reaction steps. For example, activation energies of initiation reactions during $n$-alkane cracking are roughly equal to the strength of a C–C bond (~82 kcal/mol). The initially formed fragments, e.g., an alpha olefin and a primary radical, are unstable and may immediately re-crack to give ethylene and another primary radical. By successive re-cracking (chain propagation reactions), the radicals ultimately are reduced to methyl or ethyl fragments, which then react with feedstock molecules to produce new free radicals and are themselves converted to methane and ethane. Termination of chain reactions works most often by radical recombination forming a stable hydrocarbon. Since termination has usually zero activation energy and most propagation reactions have lower activation energies than the strength of the C–C bond, the overall activation energy for hydrocarbon cracking is in the range of 50–60 kcal/mol (Ungerer 1990; Burnham 2017b).

Natural catalysts in the form of reactive mineral surfaces (Espitalié et al. 1980; Horsfield and Douglas 1980), clays (Kissin 1987), and trace metals (e.g., Mango 1992; Mango et al. 1994; Mango and Hightower 1997) have been proposed to drive organic matter cracking via ionic mechanisms involving positively charged carbonium ions as reaction intermediates rather than free radicals (Greensfelder et al. 1949 and references therein). Nowadays geocatalysis is ruled out to have a significant effect on natural, primary petroleum generation, “as primary cracking occurs mainly within the organic network of kerogen where minerals are absent” (Vandenbroucke and Largeau 2007; Burnham 2017b), and can only be responsible for a subsequent rearrangement of components. The main reason for taking the ionic mechanism into consideration is that it may explain some irregularities in petroleum compositional patterns. For example, main products formed during acid-catalyzed cracking of olefins are branched hydrocarbons, which can also be found in crude oils (Kissin 1987). Nevertheless, their occurrence in natural oils can more likely be tracked back to simple cracking of isoprenoid-like precursor structures in kerogen via free radical mechanisms (Ungerer 1990). Mango and co-workers discussed in various papers (e.g., Mango 1992; Mango et al. 1994; Mango and Hightower 1997; Mango and Elrod...
that catalytic properties of transition metal complexes can explain discrepancies observed for gas compositions of natural petroleum versus pyrolysates. Despite this claim, catalytically induced distributions in fact do not fit gas compositions associated with either natural crudes or pyrolysates (Fig. 2). The light hydrocarbons of natural crudes and pyrolysates differ only in ethane yields making pyrolysis gas wetter than petroleum gas. Catalysis changes the pyrolysate composition of a given kerogen depending on the type of minerals present; i.e., montmorillonitic sediments generate pyrolysates enriched in gaseous and aromatic hydrocarbons compared to, e.g., carbonates (Espitalié et al. 1980; Horsfield and Douglas 1980). Nevertheless, these organic-inorganic interaction effects seem to be strongly heating rate-dependent and are likely to minor under geological heating rates and much lower temperatures (Yang and Horsfield 2016), possibly also due to the effect that the presence of water under natural conditions minimizes the activity of mineral surfaces.

The exact effect of pressure on petroleum generation is very hard to define as the real pressure kerogen has experienced under natural conditions is not known for certain (Vandenbroucke and Largeau 2007) and temperature and pressure are not independent factors. Both generally increase with burial depth, with temperature being of overriding importance for kerogen-to-petroleum conversion (Philippi 1965; Tissot and Welte 1984). Thermodynamically, the effect of pressure on the Gibbs function (1) which refers to isothermal change at constant pressure (or volume) can generally be neglected, as far as the reaction is confined to condensed (solid kerogen and/or liquid petroleum) phases (Radke et al. 1997). Nevertheless, gas generation as
a strongly volume-expanding reaction pressure might shift the “oil window bottom”
to greater depth/higher temperatures (Carr et al. 2009) but only in the hypothetical
case that the natural system under consideration (conventional or unconventional
reservoir) behaves as a true closed system. Some reaction pathways are known to be
modified by pressure, which nevertheless rather leads to compositional differences
than to significant differences in the timing of petroleum generation (Ungerer 1990).

3 Classical and Novel Analytical Methods to Investigate
Thermogenic Petroleum Formation

As the thermal degradation of macromolecular organic matter leads to hydrogen-rich
products of lower molecular weight and to hydrogen-poor residues of increasing
degree of condensation (Tissot et al. 1971), two general approaches are used in
concert to study petroleum formation. The first is to study naturally occurring
residues and products from the sedimentary column to characterize their
physiochemical properties and changes in those with increasing maturity, allowing
recognition of genetic relationships and assessment of timing, masses, and compos-
ition of generated petroleum. The second approach is to simulate petroleum gener-
ation in the lab, mainly by using various pyrolysis methods, and to extrapolate
masses, timing, and composition of formed products to geologic conditions. For
both approaches different methods are suitable for the characterization of either
precursor/residue or products. Optical microscopy and spectroscopic methods such
as infrared, Raman, UV fluorescence, various X-ray methods (also coupled to
electron microscopy), nuclear magnetic resonance, and electron spin resonance are
nondestructive methods used for the description of optical and chemical properties
of naturally and artificially matured, macromolecular organic matter. Selective
chemical degradation and pyrolysis followed by chromatography and mass spec-
trometry are destructive methods used to also characterize macromolecules, whereas
product formation specifically during pyrolysis yields important insights into natural
petroleum formation (Horsfield 1984; Larter 1984; Rullkötter and Michaelis 1990).
A variety of chromatography and mass spectrometry methods used to analyze
extracts or produced fluids is described in Wilkes (2018). As specific biomarker
compounds or stable isotope ratios of compounds found within the maltene fraction
are diagnostic of input organisms and depositional conditions, they are crucial for
oil-oil-source correlations and identification of certain alteration processes (Peters
et al. 2005; ▶ Chap. 13, “Stable Isotopes in Understanding Origin and Degradation
Processes of Hydrocarbons and Petroleum”). Nevertheless, in the following, the
major methods which provided most insights into thermogenic petroleum generation
in terms of masses, timing, composition, and reaction mechanism shall be revisited,
as those form the basis for our ability to reconstruct and predict petroleum occur-
rence and behavior at the micrometer to kilometer scale. So much is already
understood that, based on first principles, the amounts and composition of products
resulting from the thermal decomposition of a given solid complex carbonaceous
material can be calculated for a wide range of temperatures and rates using
mechanistic numerical models (e.g., chemical structure-chemical yield modeling published in Freund et al. 2007; Walters et al. 2007). Nevertheless, and although these models already capture a significant portion of the thermal reaction mechanisms and pathways that occur under laboratory as well as natural conditions, these models are only statistical approximations and have to be calibrated against laboratory pyrolysis data.

3.1 Optical Microscopy

One of the most used classical methods to characterize sedimentary organic matter is optical microscopy. Studying the morphology of coals, various coal-constituting maceral and maceral types were initially defined that correspond to the cells which contributed the original organic matter during deposition and which are considered to possess either gas- or oil-generating potential. In general, humic coals are primarily constituted of macerals from the vitrinites group that were derived from woody plant tissues. They are considered mainly gas prone as their major aliphatic petroleum precursor structures consist of alicyclic moieties and short alkyl chains (Given 1960). Sapropelic coals are primarily constituted of macerals from the liptinites group and are said to be oil prone at immature stages. They can be further subdivided into boghead coals, which consist of alginite macerals derived from algal remains such as aliphatic cell membranes (Cane and Albion 1973; Tegelaar et al. 1989), and cannel coals, which consist mainly of exinite macerals such as sporinite (spores and pollen), cutinite (land plant cuticles), and resinite (tree resins; amber). Inertinites make up the third big group of macerals comprising hydrogen-poor material with very low to no petroleum potential, e.g., fusain which is derived from the combustion of the originally deposited organic matter (Scott 1989).

While all of those maceral types are also found disseminated throughout oil shales and petroleum source rocks, amorphous, i.e., structureless, organic matter might predominate in some cases. This most often oil-prone, liptinitic material is not typically observed in coals and likely either derived from marine plankton or intense microbial reworking of the originally deposited organic matter.

Reflectance, color, and fluorescence are, besides morphology, further important optical properties that can be used to discriminate organic matter types and, most importantly, maturity. In fact, vitrinite reflectance (or vitrinite reflectance equivalent where true vitrinite is not present) is the most commonly used maturity indicator. In general, reflectance increases with aromaticity of the macromolecular organic matter and therefore with maturity and for maceral types from liptinite to vitrinite to inertinite. Liptinitic organic matter fluoresces more than humic organic matter and thus is an indicator for type and oil potential. Fluorescence ceases when the petroleum potential is realized in the course of petroleum generation. The color in transmitted light is essentially a measure of carbon content of the residual organic matter and changes, for sapropelic organic matter, with maturity from yellow to yellow-brown upon onset of oil generation to progressively browner during oil
generation and to black at the end of oil generation. The thermal alteration index (TAI) uses these color changes as a measure of maturity level.

### 3.2 Elemental Analysis

Sedimentary organic matter can be conveniently characterized based on its C, H, O, N, and S budget using elemental analysis. The van Krevelen diagram utilizes the atomic H/C versus O/C ratio and is the best known diagram to assess organic matter type and maturity (Fig. 1). Immature to low mature kerogen in petroleum source rocks is usually classified as Type I, II, or III (Tissot et al. 1974) because the bulk kerogen composition falls roughly on the evolution pathways of the coal macerals alginite, exinite, and vitrinite as studied by van Krevelen et al. (1951) and Van Krevelen (1961) who had distinguished these macerals in the order of decreasing H/C ratios. Type III organic matter corresponds to vitrinite-rich terrestrial humic coals (Durand et al. 1977), kerogen Type I corresponds to alginite-rich boghead coals, and Type II corresponds to exinite-rich cannel coals. Mixing of various kerogen types/coal macerals during organic matter deposition can of course lead to “intermediate” H/C – O/C ratios causing kerogen classifications such as Type I/II or Type II/III. If organic matter exhibits high organic sulfur contents, it is usually thermally less stable, i.e., more reactive, than its “normal” counterpart, and an S is added for classification (Type I-S Type II-S). Immature Type IV source rocks are inertinite-rich and show very low H/C values.

The discrimination of organic matter according to hydrogen availability helps the explorationist to determine the source rock quality, i.e., the petroleum genetic potential, in a most basic way. Concepts were established already early on (Forsman and Hunt 1958; Philippi 1965; Tissot et al. 1974) stating that the lipid-rich and therefore hydrogen-rich, sapropelic coals and kerogen Types I and II form liquid-rich, gas-poor petroleum during maturation, whereas the lignocellulosic/land plant-derived and therefore hydrogen-poor kerogens and humic coals tend to generate gas. Nevertheless, this is a rule of thumb, and many exceptions exist. For instance, and as evidenced for certain humic coals, e.g., from New Zealand, Australian, Indonesia, etc. (Smith and Cook 1984; Thompson et al. 1985; Horsfield et al. 1988; Isaksen et al. 1998; Wilkins and George 2002), Type III organic matter is not only gas prone but can expel oil. As shown by Horsfield et al. (1992a) for the Alum shale and by Muscio and Horsfield (1996) for the Bakken shale, not every Type II source rock is predominantly oil prone but may generate gas or condensate due to the presence of unusual precursor biota and/or the effects of alpha-ray bombardment (Dahl et al. 1988; Lewan and Buchardt 1989; Horsfield et al. 1992a; Yang et al. 2017). With an increasing natural maturation, first a loss of O relative to C during diagenesis and then a loss of H relative to C during catagenesis cause all organic matter types to move along distinct evolution pathways toward the point where O/C and H/C ratios are very low and kerogen types become indistinguishable (Fig. 1). This is also roughly true for the generated petroleum that becomes more and more enriched in gaseous products (Tissot and Welte 1984; England and Mackenzie 1989) because the
gas-forming precursor structures in kerogen are thermally more stable, or refractory, than oil-forming precursor structures (Mackenzie and Quigley 1988; Horsfield 1989; Krooss et al. 1995) and because secondary gas might be generated from unexpelled oil (Tissot and Welte 1984; Monin et al. 1990; Dieckmann et al. 1998, 2000; Jarvie et al. 2007).

3.3 Pyrolysis

Pyrolysis has been defined as “a chemical degradation reaction that is induced by thermal energy alone” (Ericsson and Lattimer 1989) and thereby lends itself perfectly to investigate petroleum generation during maturation, which is a technical term used to address thermally induced changes in the nature of organic matter during catagenesis (Radke et al. 1997). Geochemists use this nonselective, destructive method to break down large organic macromolecules in coals and source rocks into smaller and therefore easier to detect volatile products. In general, open-system analytical pyrolysis is conducted at high temperatures and over short heating times in a flowing stream of inert gas to gain basic information on the type, structure, and maturity of organic matter (Horsfield et al. 1983; Larter 1984; Horsfield 1989; Eglinton et al. 1990), while closed-system pyrolysis is conducted at lower temperatures and over longer heating times to simulate natural maturation and petroleum formation as good as possible. There are numerous open- and closed-system pyrolysis setups, all have their strength and weaknesses, and none is perfect. For instance, irrespective of kerogen type and pyrolysis method, natural petroleums are rich in hydrocarbons, and laboratory pyrolysates are rich in polar compounds. The reason: kerogen actually first cracks to highly polar bitumen that then cracks to yield hydrocarbon-rich oil, whereas the kerogen to bitumen reaction is rate-limiting at geologic heating rates (Braun and Rothman 1975), and the bitumen to oil reaction is rate-limiting under laboratory heating rates (Larter and Horsfield 1993; Horsfield 1997). Nevertheless, the kinetic parameters describing these two thermal degradation reactions were shown to be closely similar in most cases (Quigley et al. 1987; Ungerer and Pelet 1987; Braun and Burnham 1992; Larter and Horsfield 1993; Pepper and Corvi 1995a; Schenk and Horsfield 1998), and the application of different pyrolysis methods provides, due to loss of volatile compounds during expulsion or sampling, the only convenient way to stepwise follow the generation pathway of petroleum from organic matter in natural systems (Horsfield 1984; Espitalié et al. 1985; Lewan 1985).

3.3.1 Open-System Pyrolysis

Products generated during open-system pyrolysis can be either determined as a bulk pyrolysate, i.e., as mass or volume per mass of pyrolyzed material, or they can be resolved into boiling ranges or single compounds using gas chromatography (GC), spectroscopic methods, or both.

Bulk pyrolysis assays (e.g., Fischer, Gray-King, and USBM) were developed already in the early twentieth century mainly to determine oil shale quality (yield)
or the coking behavior of coals (Burnham 2017a). Rock-Eval pyrolysis (Espitalié et al. 1977) is nowadays the standard open-system bulk pyrolysis method to characterize petroleum source rocks in terms of type (quality) and maturity, as it uses only milligram amounts of material and can easily be run alongside drill operations (Fig. 3a). The pyrolysis yield, mainly consisting of hydrocarbon gases and oil detected by flame ionization (FID) as the S2 peak, is called the hydrogen index (HI) when normalized to the total organic carbon (TOC) content and correlates well with the H/C ratio from elemental analysis. Generated CO₂, normalized to TOC called the oxygen index (OI), is detected as the S3 peak and acts, in analogy to the O/C ratio, as a measure for the organic oxygen content. Thus, in a “pseudo-Van Krevelen” diagram, HI replaces H/C and OI replaces O/C (Fig. 3b), and organic matter falls

![Diagram of Rock-Eval pyrolysis](image)

**Fig. 3** (a) Schematic analytical configuration and data trace of Rock-Eval pyrolysis, with volatile and kerogen-bound hydrocarbons measured by flame ionization detector (FID) as the S1 and S2 peaks, respectively, and CO₂ measured by a thermal conductivity detector (TCD) as the S3 peak. (Modified after Horsfield et al. 1983). (b) In the Rock-Eval “pseudo-van Krevelen” diagram, the hydrogen index HI replaces the H/C ratio and the oxygen index OI replaces the O/C ratio. Here, a suite of different organic-rich, immature (R_o ~ 0.5%) shales from “purely” marine (different symbol shapes) and lacustrine (circles) depositional environments is shown demonstrating natural variety. (Taken from Mahlsstedt et al. 2014). (c) Schematic Rock-Eval HI versus T_max value evolution pathways for the main kerogen types; T_max values increase and HI values decrease with increasing maturity indicating a release of hydrocarbons by the successive cracking of kerogen. (Data taken from GFZ data base)
on the earlier described predefined kerogen-type evolution pathways that are indicative for petroleum potential (quality) and maturity. In general, a loss of O-containing functional groups during diagenesis leads first to a decrease of the OI values, and a loss of H-rich components (petroleum generation) during catagenesis leads to a decrease in HI values, causing all organic matter types to move toward the point (metagenesis) where kerogen types become indistinguishable and possess a low potential for dry gas generation only. A concomitant constant increase in $T_{\text{max}}$ values, the temperature of maximum generation rate, indicates that natural maturation proceeds through the release of hydrocarbons by the cracking of firstly weak and then stronger bonded labile kerogen (Fig. 3c).

Using this bulk pyrolysis Rock-Eval approach for natural maturity sequences of source rocks (uniform facies), a significant conceptual advance emerged in the mid-1980s of the twentieth century when “simple” algebraic schemes were developed for calculating not only absolute masses of petroleum generated between two maturity stages but also degrees of thermal transformation and expulsion efficiency (Larter 1984; Pelet 1985; Cooles et al. 1986). Based on the assumption that kerogen consists of a reactive and an inert part, with the inert part remaining unchanged throughout maturation and the reactive part, corresponding to the HI value, decreasing during formation of oil and gas, all that was needed for calculation was the S1, S2, and TOC (normalized per gram rock) values for any given mature source rock and the S1 and S2 (normalized per gram TOC) for its immature equivalent. It was demonstrated that the expulsion efficiency of source rocks is generally very high and that it depends on original organic richness (TOC >2% is needed for high oil expulsion efficiency) and the degree of thermal transformation, as retained oil can be potentially converted to lighter components at higher geologic temperatures and expelled in the vapor state. These concepts have been applied on a regional scale for conventional petroleum systems, as exemplified by Espitalié et al. (1987) on the Paris Basin and by Lewan et al. (1995) on the Illinois Basin, and became of great use for the assessment of unconventional petroleum plays, for example, the Barnett Shale (Jarvie et al. 2007; Han et al. 2015), for which the amount of unexpelled oil directly controls how much secondary gas or light liquids can be formed during further maturation.

Non-isothermal bulk pyrolysis (Rock-Eval, SRA, HAWK, etc.) performed at different constant heating rates to “correctly” determine the kinetic parameters of kerogen decomposition forms the basis of the main approach to assess timing and degree of petroleum generation in sedimentary basins using kinetic models. Systematic variations with organic matter type have been proposed to exist, but kinetic parameters differ appreciably also within each of the classical kerogen Types I, II, and III (di Primio and Horsfield 2006) and should therefore be determined individually for integration in petroleum basin models. The general view is that activation energy ($E_a$) distributions are narrow for lacustrine Type I, wider for marine Type II, and widest for fluvio-deltaic Type III kerogens, with increasing mean $E_a$ values in the order Type II, Type I, and Type III (Ungerer and Pelet 1987). Mean $E_a$ values tend to increase with increasing maturity as the weakest bonds are stripped away first. Sulfur-rich, oil-prone source rocks, e.g., Type IIS Monterey shales, are usually characterized by broad $E_a$ distributions with appreciably lower mean values than
their sulfur-poor counterparts, because organic sulfur decreases the average bond strengths of the kerogen (Orr 1986) potentially leading to early generation of low API, sulfur- and asphaltene-rich heavy crudes (Baskin and Peters 1992). This, and generally all kinetic differences between individual source rocks, can be better illustrated using transformation rate versus temperature curves extrapolated to simplified geological heating histories (Fig. 4). Clearly, primary kerogen cracking can proceed between 70 °C and 160 °C for marine Type II source rocks, whereas sulfur-rich ones exhibit much lower petroleum generation onset temperatures than sulfur-poor ones. Nevertheless, there is no rule of thumb, and individual kinetics should be assessed, because even within a specific sulfur content group, onset temperatures can vary up to 20 °C potentially translating to a few hundred meters of burial depth.

The assumption that all of these reactions can be described by first-order kinetics is a simplification and extrapolation of petroleum formation to geologic heating conditions using laboratory-derived kinetic parameters of immature samples is not valid for all types of kerogens (Schenk and Horsfield 1998). One weakness of the parallel defunctionalization reaction model, and the same also applies to the “Cooles model” with its assumed static behavior of the inert and reactive kerogen fractions, is that besides petroleum-forming decomposition reactions, retrogressive coupling reactions as well as aromatization and polycondensation reactions are well known to occur during natural maturation of heterogeneous, humic coals or Type III kerogens (Stach et al. 1982; Solomon et al. 1988; Hatcher et al. 1992; Horsfield 1997; Schenk and Horsfield 1998; Payne and Ortoleva 2001; Wilkins and George 2002; McMillen and Malhotra 2006). This actually leads to a conversion of reactive labile kerogen into more stable reactive or inert kerogen by formation of new potentials with higher activation energies (Dieckmann et al. 2006; Erdmann and Horsfield 2006). For instance, Schenk and Horsfield (1998) demonstrated that, in contrast to generation rate curves of naturally matured marine Type II Toarcian shales, which always remained within the original envelope defined by the least mature sample, generation rate curves of a naturally matured Carboniferous coal series extended beyond the envelope defined by the least mature sample (Fig. 5). Furthermore, this extreme shift to higher temperatures could not be simulated for low-rank samples under open nor closed artificial maturation conditions clearly showing that most of these aromatization-condensation-recombination reactions are much less prominent during high-temperature short-time pyrolysis than under geological heating conditions. Nevertheless, while cases of dominating retrogressive, second-order coupling reactions during natural maturation are also described for marine Type II source rocks, e.g., the Alum shale (Horsfield et al. 1992a) or the Bakken shale (Muscio and Horsfield 1996), breakdown of organic matter within the great majority of marine source rocks can be satisfactorily described by first-order kinetics, i.e., as a unimolecular decay.

Open-system pyrolysis GC-FID is the most straightforward method to strongly refine the simple Rock-Eval bulk hydrocarbon generation potential evaluation approach (Horsfield et al. 1983). The most commonly occurring major identifiable pyrolysis products are aliphatic hydrocarbons such as normal alk-1-enes and alkanes, aromatic hydrocarbons such as alkylbenzenes and alkynaphthalenes, and
Predictions for hydrocarbon generation are based on individual kinetic parameters determined using non-isothermal bulk pyrolysis and are shown in a (kerogen to petroleum) transformation ratio rate curves versus temperature cross-plot for marine kerogens with high, medium, and low organic sulfur (S) contents. Extrapolations to geological heating rates, here 1 K/Ma, make clear that low and medium S kerogens are usually more stable than high S kerogens but that significant variations also exist within specific S content groups (colored areas); individual kinetics are needed. (Modified after Tegelaar and Noble 1994)
other aromatic compounds such as alkylphenols as well as alkylthiophenes. Their abundance and distribution give not only information about the bulk compositions of natural petroleum, such as paraffinicity and aromaticity that govern the physical state of the petroleum, but primarily about the parent kerogen structure that determines the amount of hydrocarbons likely to be generated and retained, recombined, or expelled under natural conditions in the first place (Horsfield 1997). Although only a small proportion of low-polarity pyrolysis products is chromatographically resolvable and readily identifiable, this proportion is representative of the petroleum precursor structural moieties in the parent kerogen as a whole (Horsfield 1989; Eglinton et al. 1990; Larter and Horsfield 1993). For instance, Horsfield (1989) has shown that aromaticity determined using relative proportions of major aromatic and aliphatic compounds in open-system pyrolysates correlates very nicely with aromaticity determined using $^{13}$C NMR spectroscopy, Larter and Horsfield (1993) have shown that alkylphenol abundance in pyrolysates of Carboniferous coal is directly proportional to the hydroxyl oxygen content determined by wet chemical methods.
and Eglinton et al. (1990) have shown that the relative abundance of alkylthiophenes versus aromatic plus aliphatic hydrocarbons was proportional to the atomic S/C ratio.

These readily identifiable aliphatic, aromatic, oxygen- and sulfur-bearing pyrolysis products provide detailed insights into the major chemical building blocks of the kerogen and can, as the chemical structure of those moieties are a function of biological precursors, depositional environment, and thermal history, be used for petroleum-type organofacies classification approaches (e.g., Jones 1987). One of the most often used classifications, established by Horsfield (1989) and recalibrated by Horsfield (1997), is shown in Fig. 6a and employs the aliphatic fraction, more

Fig. 6 Open-system pyrolysis GC-FID typing of molecular kerogen structure and petroleum-type organofacies using ternary diagrams of (a) Horsfield (1989), (b) Larter (1984), and (c) Eglinton et al. (1990) is shown for a worldwide selection of immature to early mature shales and coals deposited throughout Phanerozoic age in lacustrine, marine, terrestrial, or mixed environments. The specific pyrolysate position within the ternary diagrams (which deploy representatives of readily identifiable aliphatic, aromatic, oxygen- and sulfur-bearing pyrolysis products such as n-alkyl-chains, alkylxylenes, phenols, and alkylthiophenes, respectively) is a function of the kerogens’ major chemical building blocks defined by the biological precursor structure, depositional environment, and thermal maturity. (Taken from Mahlstedt 2012)
specifically the $n$-alkyl chain length distribution. Based on the observation that lacustrine Type I source rocks of high-wax oils have a high proportion of long-chain $n$-alkanes and $n$-alkenes in their pyrolysates, whereas pyrolysates of Type II marine shales are characterized by intermediate chain lengths, and pyrolysates of humic coals are characterized by very short average $n$-alkyl chain lengths, organofacies fields were termed, in close relation to the nomenclature used by Tissot and Welte (1984) for classifying naturally occurring crude oils, gas and condensate, paraffinic-naphthenic-aromatic (PNA) high-wax, PNA low-wax, P high-wax, and P low-wax generating petroleum type. This also confirms that reactions leading to the formation of $n$-alkanes and $n$-alkenes under laboratory conditions are comparable to those leading to the formation of $n$-alkanes under geological conditions (Horsfield 1997; Schenk and Horsfield 1998). For further characterization of the organofacies, the abundance of phenol in comparison with $n$-octene and $m,p$-xylene in pyrolysates can be used to assess the amount of kerogen representing land plant-derived moieties (Larter 1984) (Fig. 6b), or the abundance of 2,3-dimethylthiophene in comparison with $o$-xylene and $n$-nonene can be used to discriminate high- or low-sulfur source rocks, i.e., of source rocks deposited in marine or hypersaline sedimentary environments and those deposited in freshwater lacustrine or terrestrial environments (Eglinton et al. 1990) (Fig. 6c).

3.3.2 Closed-System Pyrolysis

Closed-system pyrolysis is said to simulate maturation and petroleum formation under geological conditions better than open-system pyrolysis because, similar to natural conditions, thermally generated products are not immediately flushed away from the parent kerogen and can react with minerals or residual organic matter (Behar et al. 1995). For instance, closed-system pyrolysis products resemble natural crude oils more closely than open-system pyrolysis products in that $n$-alkenes are not major constituents, because hydrogen transfer between certain kerogen moieties and free radicals within the first-formed products leads to dominantly saturated $n$-alkyl homologues in natural fluids and closed-system pyrolysates. As cumulatively generated products stay within the reaction vessel, closed-system pyrolysis can be used to investigate step-by-step compositional changes with increasing maturity including secondary cracking processes, i.e., closed-system data can be used to not only build more realistic compositional kinetic models of primary petroleum generation from kerogen but also of secondary cracking of oil (and gas) in conventional reservoirs as well as in unconventional reservoirs (in-source unexpelled oil).

Various closed-system pyrolysis methods exist with which different potential chemical or physical influences on petroleum generation, besides thermal stress, can be investigated. Those are the presence or absence of water and the influence of elevated pressure. Nevertheless, it should be clear to everybody that neither the real pressure kerogen has experienced in its geologic source rocks environment is known for certain (Vandenbroucke and Largeau 2007) nor the water saturation, especially within the organic matter if water is present at all. In any case, significant differences in pyrolysate yields and composition may exist whether pyrolysis is conducted under hydrous or anhydrous conditions (Lewan 1993). The precise impact of water on a
specific reaction mechanism is nevertheless not easily quantifiable, as water, depending on the analytical setup, can play either a dominantly chemical, reactive role or a dominantly physical, pressurizing role or both. The term hydrous pyrolysis usually refers to setups in which a reactor contains tens or hundreds of grams of rock fragments, a water phase, and an inert gas phase, whereas heating of the system leads to the presence of both liquid and vapor phases of water and to the preferential expulsion of generated saturated over polar compounds from its source (Lewan 1985). Here, the chemical role of water on reaction mechanisms (or expulsion fractionation mechanism) dominates. Maximizing this effect, the recently developed “expulsinator” (Stockhausen et al. 2013), a semi-open hydrous system in which products are flushed away from the heated reaction zone in intervals, performs pyrolysis at pressure conditions usually prevailing during catagenesis in sedimentary basins. This more or less leads to an immediate squeeze-out of all first-formed products, which inhibits further secondary cracking reactions to take place to a significant extent and yields pyrolysate amounts even exceeding those observed under open-system conditions. In contrast, high-pressure closed-system hydrous pyrolysis setups exist in which the vessel is completely filled with source rock and water; thus, no space is left for vapor, and the water itself acts as a pressurizing medium (Carr et al. 2009; Ugana et al. 2012), strongly retarding generation, or rather expulsion, of products. Closed-system pyrolysis conducted without extra amounts of added water can be viewed as an anhydrous end-member scenario dominated by the effect of thermal stress. This kind of pyrolysis is often called confined rather than anhydrous pyrolysis as water is readily formed by organic matter conversion and therefore present within the reaction zone (Michels et al. 1995). Microscale sealed vessels (MSSV) (Horsfield et al. 1989) and sealed gold bags (Monthioux et al. 1985; Behar et al. 2010) are the best known representatives, while sealed gold bags can be pressurized by an external fluid, MSSV tubes are rigid, and the pressure inside the vessel can’t be directly controlled. The pressure is generally below 10 MPa at operating temperatures (Erdmann and Horsfield 2006; Horsfield et al. 2015) and increases rather subtly in the course of volume-expanding conversion of solid organic matter into fluids whose partial pressure further increases as a direct function of increasing temperature.

Even though many authors claim that their analytical pyrolysis setup resembles natural conditions in sedimentary basins most closely, one should always keep in mind that a completely accurate simulation of molecular processes occurring under geologic conditions will never be possible using any of these pyrolysis method as reactions taking place at temperatures from ~250 °C to 650 °C in the laboratory are extrapolated to ~100 °C to 170 °C, spanning rates that differ by ~14 orders of magnitude. Dominating reactions in both temperature regimes are known which are not identical (Walters et al. 2007), and pyrolysates are richer in polar and aromatic components than undergraded petroleum (Larter and Horsfield 1993).

Nevertheless, closed-system pyrolysis was demonstrated to be a reasonably good approximation of natural maturation processes to be used for the prediction of the phase behavior of in situ petroleum, which is directly governed by the pressure-temperature (P-T) conditions of the reservoir and bulk petroleum composition.
(England et al. 1987; Düppenbecker and Horsfield 1990; di Primio et al. 1998b; di Primio 2002; di Primio and Skeie 2004a). Using MSSV pyrolysis, an excellent reconstruction of natural fluid composition was demonstrated in several case studies for various organofacies, e.g., Sonda de Campeche, Mexico (Santamaria-Orozco and Horsfield 2004); Snorre field, North Sea Viking Graben (Erdmann 1999; di Primio and Skeie 2004b); Reconcavo Basin, Brazil (di Primio and Horsfield 2006), Jeanne d’Arc Basin offshore Newfoundland (Baur et al. 2011); and the Williston Basin, USA (Kuhn et al. 2010, 2012), in that the gas-to-oil ratios of the respective source rock pyrolysates correlated very well with the natural fluid gas-to-oil ratios in the related petroleum systems at similar transformation ratios TR (see also Düppenbecker and Horsfield 1990; Horsfield 1997) (Fig. 7). However, to correctly predict fluid-phase behavior, which is strongly governed by the gas composition (di Primio and Skeie 2004b), measured gas compositions have to be calibrated to a natural fluid database (di Primio and Skeie 2004b) or adjusted empirically (di Primio et al. 1998a; di Primio and Horsfield 2006), as pyrolysates generally exhibit too high ethane and propane contents and simultaneously rather low methane contents compared to natural fluids (Behar et al. 1991; Berner et al. 1995; Javaid 2000; Michels et al. 2002; Horsfield et al. 2015). The PhaseKinetics approach (di Primio and Horsfield 2006) combines open- and closed-system MSSV pyrolysis techniques (including gas wetness correction schemes) and has been widely used to develop compositional kinetics for the prediction of natural petroleum phase behavior for different organofacies types.

Closed-system pyrolysis is regularly used to assess secondary oil to gas cracking kinetics, which is of paramount importance in conventional petroleum systems, to

![Fig. 7](image_url)

**Fig. 7** A one-to-one correlation of predicted GORs using MSSV pyrolysates and measured field GORs of reservoir fluids within the Jeanne d’Arc Basin offshore Newfoundland sourced by the Jurassic (Kimmeridgian) Egret member demonstrates that closed-system pyrolysis yields a reasonably good approximation of natural maturation processes to reconstruct natural fluid compositions and physical properties. Fluids affected by biodegradation (which is not a thermogenic process) do not plot on the 1:1 line. (Modified after Baur et al. 2011)
define the oil floor or at least to predict the prevailing oil type, and in unconventional resource systems, in which secondary cracking of unexpelled oil is viewed as one of the major factors controlling gas in place or rendering heavy liquids into volatile and producible fluids.

Using MSSV pyrolysis it was demonstrated that oil in conventional siliciclastic and carbonate reservoirs is much more stable than oil in source rocks, the close contact of retained, rather polar petroleum with residual organic matter and source rock mineralogy being the most likely reasons. Horsfield et al. (1992b) and Schenk et al. (1997a) predicted for four classical crude oil types that onset of gas generation occurs around 190 °C (R_m ~ 2%) under natural maturation conditions and that kinetic variability among them is minor, with high-wax oils being slightly more stable than low-wax oils (10 °C differences in onset temperature) and sulfur richness not having the destabilizing effects as observed for primary kerogen conversion. In contrast, in-source secondary cracking of unexpelled oil to gas has been determined to begin earlier at ~150 °C (R_o ~ 1.2%) for organic-rich marine Type II source rocks (Schenk et al. 1997b; Dieckmann et al. 1998; Jarvie et al. 2004), a paleotemperature range in line with gold-bag-based pyrolysis experimental results and observations of Hill et al. (2007) for the Barnett Shale unconventional resource play.

Nevertheless, depending on depositional environments or precursor biota, type II organic matter can be highly diverse, which strongly influences not only the composition of the generated fluids but also the kinetics of primary and secondary petroleum formation. As the exact timing of the onset of the breakdown of unexpelled high-molecular-weight oils has such a big impact on the economic viability of a shale resource play, default Type II source rock kinetic models implemented in almost all petroleum system modeling software (Pepper and Corvi 1995b; Pepper and Dodd 1995) should be used with caution only. One of the most time-effective, straightforward methods to determine primary and secondary cracking kinetics for individual source rocks is the GORFit model (Mahlstedt et al. 2013, 2015; Yang et al. 2016), which utilizes both open-system and closed-system MSSV pyrolysis data to directly distinguish partly overlapping primary and secondary oil and gas evolution profiles on the basis of simple stoichiometric relationships. As in earlier approaches (Schenk et al. 1997a; Dieckmann et al. 1998, 2000) and to facilitate accurate frequency factor approximations (by the shift in T_max as a function of heating rate), closed-system MSSV pyrolysis is performed at 3 different heating rates but only to 13 instead of 25 end temperatures per heating rate (Fig. 8).

Metagenetic late dry gas generation (Tissot et al. 1974) by a final demethylation of aromatic moieties within spent organic matter via α-cleavage mechanisms involving condensation reactions of aromatic clusters could be shown to occur between 2.0% and 3.5% R_o using MSSV and gold-bag experiments for kinetic modeling (Lorant and Behar 2002; Erdmann and Horsfield 2006; Mahlstedt 2012; Mahlstedt and Horsfield 2012). The potential to form this additional late gas appears to evolve for every source rock type by the concentration of methyl groups via beta-cleavage mechanisms during catagenesis (Mahlstedt 2012) and is not necessarily restricted to refractory kerogen in humic source rocks (Quigley et al. 1987; Quigley and Mackenzie 1988) or heterogeneous source rocks for which the late gas potential was
postulated to be related to a high-molecular-weight bitumen precursor structure formed during early catagenesis by back-reactions of first-formed products and residual kerogen (Dieckmann et al. 2006; Erdmann and Horsfield 2006) (Fig. 9).

4 Research Needs

The role played by source rock kerogen type and maturity in controlling the physical properties of thermogenic fluids expelled into conventional reservoirs is largely established and based on genetic relationships between kerogen moieties,
deciphered by analytical and simulation pyrolysis, and hydrocarbons in petroleum. Much less can be said about the physical properties of petroleum retained in unconventional reservoirs, as in-source fluids are much more enriched in the less well-studied non-hydrocarbon fractions resins and asphaltenes than conventional oils. The chemical compositions of these fractions, which strongly govern in situ fluid behavior under various PVT conditions, e.g., the extent of fractionation during fracking leading to a preferential production of hydrocarbons over NSO compounds, are under closer investigation only since advanced analytical tools such as FT-ICR MS became available in geosciences (Mullins 2007). Thus, using various pyrolysis approaches and FT-ICR MS as the detection method is a promising research avenue to strongly improve our predictive capabilities concerning controls of kerogen type and maturity on physical properties of fluids in unconventional reservoirs. First steps are made (Mahlstedt et al. 2016), but calibration of predicted and encountered compositions in solvent extracts and produced oils is lacking for a greater variety of source rocks (Fig. 10).
Fig. 10 Three major DBE classes of the N₁ compounds are shown in ternary diagrams for Posidonia Shale extracts and pyrolysates with increasing maturation and Posidonia Shale sourced crude oils measured using FT-ICR MS and ESI in the negative mode. As pyrolysate compounds have compositions intermediate between those of retained and expelled oil compounds, a preferential expulsion of smaller compounds in the crudes and an enhanced aromatization within retained fluids can be postulated, both mechanisms having a direct effect on the physical properties of fluids stored in unconventional versus conventional reservoirs. (Modified after Mahlstedt et al. 2016)

References

Erdmann M (1999) Gas generation from overmature Upper Jurassic source rocks, Northern Viking Graben. RWTH Aachen, Aachen, p 128
Javaid AA (2000) PVT modelling of reservoir fluids from the Norwegian North Sea. Oslo University, Oslo


van Krevelen DW, van Heerden C, Huntjens FJ (1951) Physicochemical aspects of the pyrolysis of coal and related organic compounds. Fuel 30:253–259


## Contents

1 Introduction ............................................................................. 524  
1.1 What Is Shale Gas? .................................................................. 525  
1.2 What Is Shale Oil? ................................................................. 526  
1.3 The Organic Carbon Cycle ...................................................... 527  
1.4 Investigative Tools at Our Disposal ............................................ 528  
1.5 Factors Governing Shale Prospectivity ..................................... 528  
2 Original Organic Matter in Shales ............................................... 530  
2.1 Depositional Environment ..................................................... 530  
2.2 Under the Microscope ............................................................ 531  
2.3 Building Blocks in Organic Macromolecules .............................. 532  
2.4 Generating Potentials ............................................................ 534  
3 Conversion ............................................................................... 534  
3.1 Primary Cracking of Kerogen and Bitumen ................................. 534  
3.2 Secondary Cracking of Oil ...................................................... 535  
3.3 Role of Catalysis .................................................................. 536  
3.4 Radiolysis Effects ................................................................ 536  
3.5 Maturity Parameters ............................................................. 536  
3.6 Mass Balance Modelling ....................................................... 537  
4 Retention .................................................................................. 538  
4.1 Shale Porosity and Kerogen Swelling ....................................... 539  
4.2 Quantification of Precursors and Retained Products ................... 539  
5 Production Characteristics ........................................................ 542  
5.1 Recognition of Sweet Spots Within Heterogeneous Sequences ....... 542

B. Horsfield (✉) · H.-M. Schulz · N. Mahlstedt · Y. Han · S. Kuske  
GFZ German Research Centre for Geosciences, Organic Geochemistry, Potsdam, Germany  
e-mail: horsf@gfz-potsdam.de; schulzhm@gfz-potsdam.de; nick@gfz-potsdam.de; yuanjia@gfz-potsdam.de; skuske@gfz-potsdam.de  
S. Bernard  
Muséum National d’Histoire Naturelle, Sorbonne Université, CNRS UMR 7590, IRD, Institut de Minéralogie, de Physique des Matériaux et de Cosmochimie, IMPMC, Paris, France  
e-mail: sbernard@mnhn.fr  

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020  
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,  
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,  
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_18
Organic matter dispersed in shales and mudstones is 10,000 times more abundant than that occurring in concentrated forms such as oil, gas, coal, and gas hydrates. So-called shale plays, distributed across all continents, are fairways where shale gas and shale oil might be extracted economically from targeted volumes of what is an extremely large potential resource. Almost all shale gas and oil reservoirs currently being exploited were formerly buried to great depth during which time gas generation took place, and then geologically uplifted to depths where extraction is feasible commercially. Productive shale reservoirs are brittle rather than elastic and therefore suitable for hydraulic fracturing to be employed effectively for releasing the dispersed gas. In this chapter we provide an overview of the chemical, physical, and biological processes involved in the formation of shale gas and shale oil and outline how organic geochemistry can be applied to the exploration and production of these resources.

1 Introduction

In the short space of 10 years following the turn of the millennium, shale gas completely transformed the global energy market. This new natural gas resource, extracted in more than 30 sedimentary basins across the continental USA and others worldwide, accounted for about 1% of gas production in the USA in 2000, 10% in 2011, and may account for nearly two-thirds of total US production by 2025 (Energy Information Administration 2017). It all began in the Fort Worth Basin (Texas) where the integration of directional drilling and hydraulic fracturing (fracking) enabled natural gas to be extracted economically from the Barnett Shale (Jarvie 2012a). The technology was rapidly deployed to target other shale-bearing formations elsewhere, including the Fayetteville Shale (Arkansas), the Woodford Shale (Oklahoma), the Haynesville Shale (Louisiana and Texas), and the Marcellus Shale (Pennsylvania). A similar story rapidly unfolded for shale oil as the technology used for shale gas exploitation was modified to produce liquid petroleum from inter alia the Bakken Shale of North Dakota, the Eagle Ford and Wolfcamp Formations of Texas, and the Niobrara Formation of Colorado (Jarvie 2012b). The opening up of these new shale resource plays transformed the global oil market because the monopoly of the Organization of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) was challenged, and the USA saw itself as becoming the world’s biggest oil producer by 2020 and being energy self-sufficient by 2025 (Energy Information Administration 2017). However, the ability to rapidly (over)supply produced fluids to the world market actually played a major role in the ultimate collapse of both gas and oil prices worldwide, making the future of shale gas and shale oil uncertain.
To put shale gas and shale oil resources in perspective, there are $10^{16}$ tonnes of organic matter dispersed in sedimentary rocks; this is 10,000 times greater than the organic matter occurring in concentrated forms such as oil and gas (collectively termed petroleum), coal, and gas hydrates (Killops and Killops 2005). The vast bulk of this dispersed sedimentary organic matter is contained within very fine-grained rocks such as shales and mudstones whose mineral matrices vary in their relative proportions of silica and feldspars, clays, and carbonates (Aplin and Macquaker 2011; Gamero Diaz et al. 2013; Macquaker and Adams 2003; Macquaker et al. 2014; Passey et al. 2010). Thus, the in-situ shale gas resource potential seen globally is extremely large and distributed across all continents. A first estimation of global shale gas resources was published by Rogner (1997; 16,112*10^{12} standard cubic feet) with North America and China as the regions with the largest potential (both around 3,000–4,000*10^{12} standard cubic feet). According to the World Energy Outlook 2013 published by the US Energy Information Administration, China has the largest “wet” shale gas resources of unproved technically recoverable 1,115 trillion cubic feet (Tcf), followed by Argentina (802 Tcf) and Algeria (707 Tcf). By far the largest unproven technically recoverable shale oil (tight oil) resource occurs in the USA with 78 billion barrels (BBL) and in Russia (75 BBL). Lower but still highly significant resource potentials have been calculated for China (32 BBL) and the United Arab Emirates (23 BBL). In this context, Europe has only minor shale gas and shale oil resources. While Western Canada, Argentina, and China continue to explore for and successfully produce shale gas and shale oil, the rest of the world is still at a relatively early phase of development. This is largely because of low oil and gas prices. In the case of Europe, the continuing controversy surrounding the real versus perceived impact of shale gas extraction on the environment sensu lato continues to block a logical and balanced evaluation of many promising stratigraphic target formations (International Energy Agency 2012; Hübner et al. 2013; Vetter and Horsfield 2014).

1.1 What Is Shale Gas?

Natural gas features prominently in all national energy portfolios. Because of its relatively low-carbon footprint and flexible utilization, natural gas is widely regarded as the most important bridge to a low-carbon energy future. In stark contrast to conventional accumulations, where the gas now occurring in coarse-grained reservoir rocks within structural or stratigraphic traps is generated in and expelled from distant source “kitchens,” unconventional shale gas is disseminated within myriads of tiny (nm sized) pores within the source rock or adsorbed on its mineral and organic particle surfaces (Fig. 1). Individual resource plays extend across tens and hundreds of kilometers laterally and tens to hundreds of meters vertically at depths ranging from 2 to 4 km. They are characterized by widespread gas saturation, subtle trapping mechanisms, and relatively short intraformational hydrocarbon migration distances (e.g., Curtis 2002; Jarvie et al. 2007; Boyer et al. 2011; Bernard and Horsfield 2014). The gas can only be released effectively using controlled hydraulic
fracturing (“fracking”). The name shale gas refers to natural gas of biogenic, thermogenic, or mixed origins contained in what is loosely termed shale but which in reality are mudstones, marls, and limestones (Fishman et al. 2011). Almost all currently producing shale gas reservoirs have been buried to great depth and hence high temperature (>150 °C) and then geologically uplifted to depths where commercial extraction is possible, typically 2–4 km. They are brittle rather than elastic and therefore suitable for effective hydraulic fracturing to be employed to microcrack the rock and release the in situ gas (e.g., Curtis 2002; Jenkins and Boyer 2008; Boyer et al. 2011). The relative content of dry gas (methane), wet gas (ethane, propane, and butanes), and non-hydrocarbon gases (CO2, N2, H2S), and hence calorific value, varies within and between basins (Bullin and Krouskop 2008), as is also the case for conventional natural gas.

1.2 What Is Shale Oil?

The term shale oil has been used for centuries to describe the oil that is generated by retorting (pyrolyzing) oil shales (Cane 1967). Oil shales are fine-grained rocks containing indigenous and mainly macromolecular organic matter (often >20% total organic carbon (TOC)) that have not been exposed to high geological
temperatures and therefore still retain a great potential for generating oil when pyrolyzed. The name shale oil is used nowadays in a very different sense, namely, for the oil already generated naturally in the shale over geological time at elevated temperatures (>ca. 100 °C), still retained within the rock matrix and releasable by hydraulic fracturing.

Shale oil resource systems have been classified by their dominant organic and lithologic characteristics into (1) organic-rich mudstones with predominantly healed fractures, (2) organic-rich mudstones with open fractures, and (3) hybrid systems with a combination of juxtaposed organic-rich and organic-lean intervals (Jarvie 2012b). The in-situ oil is broadly similar in composition to that found in conventional reservoirs in that it contains all of the so-called SARA fractions (saturates, aromatics, resins, asphaltenes), but the produced fluid is strongly fractionated, being extremely enriched in light hydrocarbons, whereas the part remaining in the rock matrix is rich in heavy hydrocarbons and non-hydrocarbons (resins and asphaltenes).

1.3 The Organic Carbon Cycle

Shale gas and shale oil are formed over geological time as part of the subsurface organic carbon cycle. The starting point is the accumulation of organic residues from extant biota in fine-grained sediments. Upon burial, the organic matter undergoes progressive compositional change that is dictated initially by microbial agencies and thermodynamic instability (Arning et al. 2011, 2016) and later by mainly thermal stress. The continuum of processes is termed maturation and is divided into three consecutive stages called diagenesis sensu stricto ($R_o < 0.5\%$), catagenesis ($0.5\% < R_o < 2.0\%$), and metagenesis ($2.0\% < R_o < 4.0\%$) by organic geochemists (Tissot and Welte 1978). The term $R_o$ is defined in the next section of the chapter.

Kerogen, the major precursor of shale gas, shale oil, and conventional petroleum, is insoluble in common organic solvents and consists of selectively preserved resistant cellular organic materials from algae, pollen, spores, leaf cuticle, and the like, as well as the degraded residues of microbially less resistant biopolymers (e.g., cellulose, polysaccharides) and lipids in variable proportions (Rullkötter and Michaelis 1990; de Leeuw and Largeau 1993). Kerogen formation is complete by the end of organic diagenesis. The type of kerogen and its mode of formation exert a strong influence on oil- and gas-generating characteristics, e.g., gas-oil ratio (GOR) during catagenesis. The kerogen that is found in carbonate/evaporite source rocks is enriched in organic hydrogen and organic sulfur (Type II-S; Orr 1986) and generally accompanied by high contents of heavy bitumen (sedimentary organic matter that is soluble in common organic solvents), both of which can generate oil at low levels of thermal stress. Low sulfur Type II kerogen requires more thermal energy to generate oil, and Types I and III kerogens still more (Tissot et al. 1987). A proportion of the generated fluids remains as residual shale gas or shale oil, whereas the rest is expelled into adjacent strata; retention efficiency is variable. In the late stage of catagenesis, both residual oil and kerogen generate enhanced proportions of ethane, propane, and the butanes (Dieckmann et al. 1998). Throughout metagenesis,
typically at depths of about 7 kilometers, the generated gas consists of methane (Lorant and Behar 2002; Mahlstedt and Horsfield 2012) and sometimes hydrogen sulfide (Le Tran et al. 1974) or nitrogen (Krooss et al. 1993). Periods of tectonic stress or postglacial rebound result in uplift, often on the order of several kilometers (e.g., Cavanagh et al. 2006), thus decreasing temperature and pressure and in some cases bringing about exposure to biological infiltration (Krüger et al. 2014; Schulz et al. 2015). Continued uplift leads to exposure at the Earth’s surface, erosion and oxidation, thus completing the cycle.

### 1.4 Investigative Tools at Our Disposal

A wide range of geological and chemical tools, covering a scale from entire sedimentary basins (e.g., $10^5$ m in length) all the way down to individual molecules (e.g., $10^{-9}$ m), is employed to study the carbon cycle in general and shale plays in particular. At the largest scale, petroleum formation histories are reconstructed using basin modelling (Poelchau et al. 1997; Hantschel and Kauerauf 2009). Going down in scale, well logs and the principles of sequence stratigraphy allow organic-rich and organic-poor lithofacies to be mapped laterally and vertically (Passey et al. 1990). With a resolution covering tens of microns down to tens of nanometers, organic petrology and scanning electron microscopy allow the habit and optical properties of organic particles, termed phytoclasts or macerals (e.g., alginite, derived from algae; sporinite, derived from spores; vitrinite, derived from wood), to be related to depositional environment and thermal maturity, as well as characterize pore dimensions and occurrence (Stasiuk 1997; Diessel 2007; Loucks et al. 2009). Thus, the reflectance under oil immersion of vitrinite ($R_o$) is the most widely used maturity parameter. Organic macromolecules, such as kerogen and asphaltenes (the latter being the bitumen component that is insoluble in light hydrocarbons), are characterized using pyrolysis and other degradative techniques in combination with gas chromatography and mass spectrometry (Horsfield 1984; Larter 1984; Rullkötter and Michaelis 1990). Maltenes (the bitumen component soluble in light hydrocarbons) are analyzed using a wide variety of chromatography and mass spectrometry approaches (Wilkes, Methods of Hydrocarbon Analysis). The techniques are deployed in three types of laboratory: the experimental laboratory is used to analyze individual or a combination of variables under simulated geological conditions; the natural laboratory is one where the effects of individual or groups of variables can be established by means of measurements on the natural system; and the virtual laboratory is a numerical simulation platform for integrating results in both geological time and space coordinates.

### 1.5 Factors Governing Shale Prospectivity

Fracking technology is highly advanced thanks to lessons learned from the drilling of 2.5 million wells in conventional petroleum systems (Montgomery and Smith 2010)
and especially in the last 15 years from the more than 40,000 wells drilled specifically into shale targets using “slickwater” and “hybrid” drilling fluids and deploying proppants. According to Jarvie et al. (2007), Slatt and O’Brien (2011), Jarvie (2012a), and Bernard and Horsfield (2014), high prospectivity and gas production rates is usually obtained from shale resource plays that:

1. Are fine-grained sedimentary rocks deposited under a variety of marine settings
2. Were originally rich in hydrogen-rich organic matter (>2% TOC)
3. Reached the liquid window (<1.2% R_o) for shale oil plays and the gas window (>1.2% R_o) for shale gas plays
4. Have low oil saturation (<5% S_o) for shale gas plays
5. Have a significant silica content (>30%) with some carbonate and non-swelling clays
6. Display less than 1,000 ηd permeability
7. Exhibit typically about 4–7% porosity, with pore sizes down to the nanoscale
8. Have a thickness exceeding 45 m and are now at a depth generally <4,000 m
9. Are slightly to highly overpressured
10. Exhibit very high first-year decline rates (>60%)
11. Allow fracking to be performed with due consideration of known principal stress fields
12. Can be drilled away from structures and faulting

In practice, all shale systems are unique in their chemical composition, physical properties, and rheology (e.g., Table 3 in Jenkins and Boyer 2008), with the result that production optimization has been based on learning-by-doing and involved the drilling of hundreds of wells, factory style (Binnion 2012). To streamline and rationalize the learning process, a simple exploration equation can be employed to address the important geochemical variables (Fig. 2). The in-place gas and/or oil potential of shale resource plays, embodied in that equation, is governed by the level

Fig. 2 Technical framework defining in-place potential (exploration equation) and technically recoverable resource potential (productibility)
of conversion of the original organic matter into hydrocarbons, the proportion of those hydrocarbons that is retained within the shale, and the fraction of the retained fraction that is gas or liquid. The boxes show the rock attributes that must be analyzed in order to address the different elements. The technically recoverable proportion of the in-place potential, hereafter termed producibility, is ultimately determined by the mechanical and petrophysical properties of the rock and the degree to which that potential can be realized using tailor-made engineering protocols. Each of the these elements is considered separately in the ensuing discussion.

2 Original Organic Matter in Shales

Only shales that are rich in indigenous organic matter are targeted for gas or oil exploitation, because that organic matter is the source material from which the resource is generated. The deposition of sediments rich in organic matter is usually restricted to subaquatic sedimentary environments in which organic matter is produced faster than it can be destroyed (Tourtelot 1979). Deep-marine silled basins with haloclines, upwelling areas displaying oxygen minimum zones, marine transgressions onto continental shelves, evaporitic environments, lakes with stable thermoclines, and fluvio-deltaic coal-bearing sequences are all sites of enhanced organic matter deposition (Jones 1987; Littke et al. 1997) and therefore of enhanced potential feedstock for shale gas and shale oil.

2.1 Depositional Environment

Prominent examples of shale plays occur in foreland basin settings (Mississippian Barnett and Bakken Shale, Middle Devonian Marcellus Shale), in intracratonic basins (Upper Devonian Antrim Shale), or rift basins (Upper Jurassic Haynesville Shale). The vast majority of shale resource plays were deposited in marine environments (Curtis 2002; Jarvie 2012a, b). The Lower Carboniferous Barnett Shale of the Fort Worth Basin was deposited under upwelling conditions, and has a TOC averaging 4% (Hill et al. 2007). The rhythmic stratification of chalk-marl beds is a characteristic of the Upper Cretaceous Niobrara Formation (Locklair and Sageman 2008) and brought about by the variation of siliciclastic input controlled by eustatic and climatic cycles (Pollastro 2010). TOC is in the range 1–8% (Landon et al. 2001). For the Upper Jurassic Eagle Ford Shale basin geometry played a key role in creating local depocenters of anoxic sediment deposition; TOC contents of up to 10% have been documented (Robison 1997). The marine Devonian Bakken Shale was deposited in a marine environment in the photic zone under anoxic conditions (Requejo et al. 1992) during sea level rise (Smith and Bustin 1998), and is organic-rich (TOC 3–25 wt.%; Price et al. 1984). The Upper Jurassic Haynesville Formation, whose TOC content reaches 8 wt.%, consists of shoreface clastics, carbonate shelves, and organic- and carbonate-rich mudrocks deposited in a deep, partly euxinic and anoxic basin (Hammes et al. 2011). High-salinity
conditions and water density stratification prevailed during deposition of the Upper Devonian Woodford Shale, along with manifestations of photic zone euxinia (Romero and Philp 2012); the TOC content is up to 25 wt.% (Cardott and Lambert 1985). Looking further afield, the Jurassic-Cretaceous Vaca Muerta Formation of Argentina, currently under extensive exploration, and with TOC in the range 2–12 wt.%, was deposited in a distal marine environment from outer ramp to middle ramp settings in mostly dysaerobic conditions (Kietzmann et al. 2011), and the Lower Jurassic Posidonia Shale, a potential shale gas candidate in Western Europe, was deposited in a low-energy environment under largely anoxic to euxinic marine conditions in a sea that was rich in nutrients (Schmid-Röhl et al. 2002) with short phases of more oxygenated bottom water conditions (Wignall and Hallam 1991). Its TOC, where immature, is 9–12 wt.% (Rullkötter et al. 1988). Moreover, deglaciation has led to the formation of black shales by salinity stratification, as seen for the Lower Silurian in North Africa (TOC up to 17 wt.%; Lüning et al. 2000) or after the Carboniferous glaciation of Gondwana (Lower Ecca black shales TOC up to 8 wt.%; Geel et al. 2015).

### 2.2 Under the Microscope

At a magnification of 600, and under blue light excitation, the organic constituents of immature marine shales mainly comprise brightly fluorescing alginate, usually derived from dinoflagellate/acritarch and prasinophyte cysts, along with lesser amounts of liptodetrinite, vitrinite, and inertinite (Littke and Rullkötter 1987; Littke et al. 1988). Mature shale oil candidates display a weaker fluorescence, and this is then entirely absent by the onset of gas generation. Finely disseminated micrinite, most likely a residue of liptinite degradation, also occurs in mature shales (Hackley and Cardott 2016). Important changes in fabric and the heterogeneity of organic chemical composition cannot be determined by this low-resolution microscopy approach. While confocal laser scanning microscopy and conventional scanning electron microscopy (SEM) cannot characterize submicrometer grains and pores if broken or mechanically polished shale samples are analyzed, argon-ion beam milling can be used to overcome this difficulty because sufficiently flat samples are produced (Loucks et al. 2009; Desbois et al. 2010; Mathia et al. 2016). Indeed, recent advances of SEM coupled with a focused ion beam (FIB-SEM) systems have offered a new alternative for investigating the three-dimensional submicrometric fabric of shales (Curtis et al. 2010, 2011a, b, 2012; Desbois et al. 2010; Sondergeld et al. 2010; Bera et al. 2011; Heath et al. 2011; Walls and Sinclair 2011; Bernard et al. 2013), so that, inter alia, chemical and mineralogical heterogeneities related to depositional environment have been documented (e.g., Arthur and Sageman 1994; Katsube and Williamson 1994; Ross and Bustin 2009; Loucks et al. 2009). Highly porous fossiliferous facies at low maturity have been documented alongside interparticle organic matter using FIB-SEM (Bernard et al. 2013). The FIB-SEM technique can also be used to extract ultra-thin (<100-nm-thick) sections across areas of interest, thus providing suitable samples for transmission electron microscopy, which offers a unique combination of chemical and
structural information with unsurpassed spatial resolution (Chalmers et al. 2012; Bernard et al. 2012a, b), and for synchrotron-based techniques, such as scanning transmission electron microscopy (STXM) allowing X-ray absorption near-edge structure (XANES) spectroscopy to be performed at high spatial resolution (20 nm scale; e.g., Bernard and Horsfield 2014). For instance, recent STXM and TEM observations have elucidated the strong heterogeneous nature of gas shales down to the nanometer scale, with kerogen, bitumen, and pyrobitumen delineated within the same sample (Bernard et al. 2012a, b) (Fig. 3).

2.3 Building Blocks in Organic Macromolecules

The potential yields of gas and oil generated per unit organic matter in shales depend upon its organic hydrogen content and thence aliphaticity versus aromaticity, after
diagenesis has concluded, at the onset of catagenesis (Larter 1985; Vu et al. 2013; Sykes and Snowdon 2002). Hydrogen-rich kerogen (atomic H/C > 1.4) is usually found where anoxic lacustrine and marine shales are deposited, whereas hydrogen-poor kerogens (atomic H/C < 1.0) are found in more oxidizing, often terrestrial, settings (Tissot et al. 1974). Hydrogen-rich kerogens largely consist of algal-derived aliphatic cell membranes and lipid components (Cane and Albion 1973; Philp and Calvin 1976; Largeau et al. 1984; Tegelaar et al. 1989), whereas hydrogen-poor kerogens at low maturity often contain high proportions of altered lignocellulosic (phenolic) materials whose aliphatic constituents consist of alicyclic moieties and short alkyl chains (Myccke and Michaelis 1986). Being deposited largely under reducing conditions in marine environments, the major gas shales contain Type II kerogen and at the start of catagenesis have Hydrogen Indices in the range 300–600 mgHC/g TOC (Jarvie 2012a, b). Like the prolific source rocks in conventional petroleum systems, shale oil targets may be either marine or lacustrine and contain either Type I or II organic matter. This is illustrated in Fig. 4a for selected shales and source rocks of low maturity. The product of the TOC (%) and

Fig. 4  (a) Kerogen typing using the Rock-Eval “pseudo-Van Krevelen” diagram for a wide variety of immature and early mature shales: the method is excellent for predicting yield, but not for predicting petroleum compositions, e.g., gas-oil ratio (GOR). (b) Petroleum-type organofacies based on analytical pyrolysis reflect the chain length distributions within labile carbon moieties that are the precursors for petroleum.
Hydrogen Index (mgHC/g TOC) determines the generative potential (S2) expressed as kg/tonne rock, or equivalent oilfield units (e.g., barrels per acre-foot).

2.4 Generating Potentials

Gas versus oil generating potential is initially governed by the relative abundance of short versus long chains in macromolecular precursors. Utilizing \( n \)-alkyl chain length distributions from pyrolysis gas chromatography, Mesozoic shales containing Type II kerogen, such as the Eagle Ford, Niobrara, and Posidonia (Kuske et al. 2017; Han et al. 2018; Muscio et al. 1991), mainly fall in the Paraffinic-Naphthenic-Aromatic Low-Wax petroleum-type organofacies of Horsfield (1989), whereas Type II Paleozoic shales, such as the Alum, Bakken, and Barnett (Muscio et al. 1994; Horsfield et al. 1992a; Kuhn et al. 2010, 2012; Han et al. 2015), fall in the Gas-Condensate organofacies or at the border of the two facies. Such differences in chain length distributions within the Type II elemental class reflect the variability in inherent gas- versus oil-generating potential of organic-rich shales in nature, and thus molecular typing is a key element of the exploration equation (fraction). The same is true for lacustrine shales, which are often inherently richer in long-chain alkanes and belong to the paraffinic high-wax petroleum-type organofacies. The chain length distributions for a collection of low-maturity shales and source rocks are shown in Fig. 4b.

3 Conversion

As the organic matter in shale is gradually exposed to progressively higher temperatures during burial over millions to tens of millions of years, its composition changes, driven by aromatization. Major aliphatic substituents of the kerogen structure are progressively cracked, more or less in the order of bond strength, and there is concomitant structural rearrangement of the residues (Ungerer 1990; Mao et al. 2010; Bernard et al. 2012a, b; Romero-Sarmiento et al. 2014). Assessing the thermal maturity of shales and the degree to which its in situ macromolecular organic matter has been converted into mobile products is a key element of the exploration equation. Thus, for example, in the case of the shales of the Eagle Ford Shale, gas-oil ratio (GOR) is regionally controlled by thermal maturity, with iso-maturity lines orientated NE-SW and thermal maturity levels increasing to the SE (Fan et al. 2011). Similarly, concentric iso-maturity contours occur in the Bakken Shale, linked to changing Hydrogen Index and petroleum properties (Kuhn et al. 2010).

3.1 Primary Cracking of Kerogen and Bitumen

The primary cracking of kerogen and heavy bitumen forms gaseous and liquid products at 10–90% conversion levels – this is the maturity range for shale oil,
especially the higher end of the range. The actual relationship between level of catagenesis, reflecting the thermal history of the shale, and degree of conversion into oil and gas at that maturity level is governed by their chemical kinetic parameters (activation energy distribution and frequency factor, as reviewed by Schenk et al. 1997b), and these differ appreciably from case to case, even within each of the classical kerogen Types I, II, and III (di Primio and Horsfield 2006). Very importantly as far as shale oil exploitation is concerned, bulk petroleum compositions in shales appear to reflect the most recently generated products, i.e., “instantaneously generated,” and not an accumulation of products formed since generation began, and this is because expulsion is an ongoing process during progressive maturation (Kuske et al. 2018). The GOR of instantaneous products is appreciably higher than those of cumulative products (England et al. 1987).

While the overall reaction order for petroleum generation is generally assumed to be first order (as reviewed by Schenk et al. 1997), second-order reactions between kerogen and polar bitumen components have been documented as strongly influencing bulk compositional characteristics, including gas-oil ratio (Vu et al. 2008; Mahlstedt et al. 2008). Thus, when assessing the maturation characteristics of a given shale, it is important to use samples which retain the solvent-extractable macromolecular components. Heavy bitumen makes an important yet variable contribution to the total organic matter of shales and is especially abundant in calcareous shales and marls (e.g., Powell 1984; di Primio and Horsfield 1997), even at low levels of maturation; to remove it by solvent extraction would be to take away a highly significant fraction of petroleum precursors.

### 3.2 Secondary Cracking of Oil

Disproportionation results in the formation of hydrogen-rich (dry and wet gases) and hydrogen-poor species (pyrobitumen) at elevated levels of maturation. In-source secondary oil-to-gas cracking begins at approximately 1.2% R_o, at a paleotemperature of about 150 °C (e.g., Dieckmann et al. 1998), this being considered a prerequisite for economically viable shale gas in the Barnett Shale of the Fort Worth Basin (Jarvie et al. 2007). By contrast, in-reservoir cracking in conventional siliciclastic reservoirs begins around 2% R_o, at a paleotemperature (3 K/Ma heating rate) of approximately 200 °C (Horsfield et al. 1992b; Schenk et al. 1997a). Primary and secondary gas-forming reactions in shales overlap to variable degrees. The “GOR-Fit” model predicts the generation of primary and secondary gas from source rocks, in which overlapping liquid generation and destruction reactions occur, on the basis of simple stoichiometric relationships (Mahlstedt et al. 2015). The generation of so-called late gas from residual methyl groups in both kerogen and pyrobitumen begins at 2% R_o and appears to be complete by 3.5% R_o (Erdmann and Horsfield 2006; Mahlstedt and Horsfield 2012), this being an important prospectivity assessment parameter in plays where maturity levels are exceedingly high, e.g., the Sichuan Basin, China (Tan et al. 2013).
3.3 Role of Catalysis

Catalysis increases the gas-oil ratio when a given kerogen type is pyrolyzed in the presence of minerals, especially illite and smectite (Espitalié et al. 1980; Horsfield and Douglas 1980), and the question remains whether these organic-inorganic interactions might also occur in nature where temperatures are much lower and heating rates nine orders of magnitude slower than employed in laboratory experiments (300–650 °C). It has recently been found that gasification effects are strongly heating rate dependent and are likely to be minor under geological heating rates of, e. g., 3 K/Ma (Yang and Horsfield 2016). This means that raw data from the pyrolysis of especially relatively organic-lean (S2 < 10 mgHC/g rock) and argillaceous shales should be treated with caution as predicted gas contents and bulk aromaticity might be overestimated.

3.4 Radiolysis Effects

The ionizing radiation emitted from uranium acts over the entire lifetime of a shale, beginning with deposition, to fundamentally change the chemical characteristics of organic matter in shales. This influence is significant in the case of uranium-rich shales that are Lower Paleozoic or older. While the radiation dosage resulting from the decay of uranium is linearly correlated with uranium content and exposure time, the kerogen structure changes exponentially since labile structures react early and become stabilized in later stages. The outcome is that shales which generated mainly oil during their early subsidence history, such as the Alum Shale of Scandinavia, have been altered so they appear more gas-prone than was really the case (Yang et al. 2018).

3.5 Maturity Parameters

Exact maturity assessment has been shown to be a key element in the regional exploration for sweet spots. Stable isotopes of hydrocarbon gases have been used to estimate maturity, for example, the rollover of ethane and propane δ13C values (δ13C2 and δ13C3) and isotopic reversals among methane, ethane, and propane being correlated with the occurrence of sweet spots in the Barnett of the Fort Worth Basin (e.g., Zumbeerge et al. 2012; Hao and Zou 2013). Rock-Eval T_max or its purported “equivalent” in terms of vitrinite reflectance (Jarvie et al. 2001) is frequently deployed with the same goal. The fact that kinetic parameters of generation vary significantly within a given kerogen type (Tissot et al. 1987; di Primio and Horsfield 2006) means that there is actually no unique correlation between T_max and R_o for shale plays. As an example, the relationship between the two parameters for the Duvernay Shale (Devonian) of the Western Canada Sedimentary Basin differs from that of the Barnett (Wüst et al. 2013) though both have similar initial genetic potential (Type II).

Fourier transform-ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry (FT-ICR MS) is a powerful tool for rapidly characterizing NSO compounds in complex mixtures. Run
in the ESI-negative ion mode, it has been used to rapidly assign maturity levels to produced oils and in-situ shale bitumen extracts based on the relative distribution of pyrrolic nitrogen-containing compounds (Oldenburg et al. 2014; Poetz et al. 2014; Mahlstedt et al. 2016). Specifically, as far as the alkylcarbazoles, alkylbenzocarbazoles, and alkyl dibenzocarbazoles are concerned, there is an increase in the degree of benzannulation with increasing maturity (Fig. 5), and that is mainly due to fractionation processes, i.e., preferential expulsion (or production) of smaller compounds and enhanced cyclization and aromatization at the expense of aliphatic structures within retained fluids; the crude oils and extracts plot on different trend lines (Fig. 5).

3.6 Mass Balance Modelling

In conventional petroleum exploration, it is important to determine the timing of petroleum generation relative to trap formation as well as its level of maturation (Hantschel and Kauerauf 2009), but with the unconventionals, it is simply the
final degree of alteration that is most important, because the fluids to be exploited are still *in-situ*. The inverse modelling of organic matter abundance and composition between relatively closely spaced wells is better suited to effective shale gas exploitation because it allows the determination of generative yields and generated product compositions: mass balance calculations using quantitative pyrolysis gas chromatography data (Santamaria-Orozco and Horsfield 2003) allow the generation of compound classes and individual oil and gas components to be quantified over any selected narrow or broad maturity range. For example, the generation of *n*-alkanes and alkylbenzenes in closely spaced samples within the Barnett Shale showed variability that has been linked to organofacies (Han et al. 2015). Similarly, generation profiles for these components within marls of the Niobrara Formation have been contrasted with residual hydrocarbons in reservoir facies chalks (Han 2016) as a first step in calculating retention and depletion within shales, as further explained in the section below on retention.

4 Retention

The retention of hydrocarbons in shales is governed mainly by the sorption capacity of its organic components (Baker 1962; Tissot et al. 1971; Stainforth and Reinders 1990; Pepper 1991; Han et al. 2015). Interestingly, it is the pyrolytically labile fraction (S2 of Rock-Eval) and not simply the total organic matter that has the highest selective adsorptive capacity (Mahlstedt and Horsfield 2013; Han et al. 2015; Ziegs et al. 2017). The more aromatic the labile fraction is, the higher is the adsorptive capacity. Thus, for a given level of maturity, those Type II kerogens whose S2 is inherently more aromatic, for example, the Alum, Barnett, and Bakken Shales, have a better capacity than those that are less aromatic, for example, the Posidonia and Wealden Shales (Mahlstedt and Horsfield 2013). It is important to note that the gas sorption capacity of the Alum Shale was probably less well developed during its generative period (Paleozoic times); aromaticity and thus sorption capacity have increased due to relatively recent radiolysis effects (Yang et al. 2018); thus gas generation and the development of sorptive capacity are out of step in this example.

The retentive labile fraction is contained within both bitumen and kerogen fractions (Muscio et al. 1991; Horsfield et al. 1991), and these are distributed heterogeneously within shales, this being reflected in the breadth of reflectance histograms and the variety of phytoclast types present (e.g., Bernard et al. 2010, 2012a). Figure 3 displays the evolution of this compositional variability with increasing thermal maturation of Posidonia Shale and Barnett Shale (Bernard and Horsfield 2014). While minerals play a subsidiary role in adsorption, clay minerals, especially illite (Schettler and Parmely 1991), possess microporous structures that are capable of sorbing gas (Gasparik et al. 2014).
4.1 Shale Porosity and Kerogen Swelling

Low-pressure adsorption isotherms (e.g., Bustin et al. 2008), high-pressure mercury intrusion porosimetry (e.g., Nelson 2009), solid-state nuclear magnetic resonance (e.g., Sondergeld et al. 2010), and small-angle and ultrasmall-angle neutron scattering (e.g., Ruppert et al. 2013) have shown that pore sizes within gas shales are on the order of a few nanometers to tens of nanometers. Besides sorption on particle surfaces, petroleum storage in the pores of either organic (Loucks et al. 2009) or inorganic (Bernard et al. 2013; Han et al. 2015) matrices has been documented, as have natural fractures (Lopatin et al. 2003; Pollastro 2010; Bernard et al. 2013). The occurrence of organic particles exhibiting irregular ellipsoid-shaped nanopores of approximately 1–500 nm first observed by Loucks et al. (2009) has now been reported in most gas shale systems worldwide, as reviewed by Bernard and Horsfield (2014). In high-maturity gas shales, these organic pores govern gas occurrence. Porosity in shales evolves from mostly submicrometric interparticle pores in immature samples to mostly intramineral and intraorganic pores in gas mature samples (Curtis et al. 2010, 2012; Loucks et al. 2010, 2012; Bernard et al. 2013; Mathia et al. 2016), but primary organic pores have been observed within immature and oil mature samples as reported in a recent comprehensive literature review (Han et al. 2017). For the vast bulk of the shale volume, hydrocarbon retention and porosity evolution appear to be strongly related to changes in kerogen density brought about by swelling and shrinkage as a function of thermal maturation (Kelemen et al. 2006; Han et al. 2017). Secondary organic pores form only after the maximum kerogen retention (swelling) ability is exceeded, namely, where $T_{\text{max}} = 445{\,^{\circ}\!\mathrm{C}}$, or 0.8% $R_o$. The shrinkage of kerogen has therefore been proposed as a mechanism for forming organic nanopores, and is ostensibly a major cause of associated porosity increase, in the gas window.

4.2 Quantification of Precursors and Retained Products

The volume of gas generated within gas shales by secondary cracking directly depends on oil retention in the system, i.e., on adsorption capabilities as well as on porosity and fracture networks. The algebraic mass balance models of Larter (1985) and Cooles et al. (1986) use dead carbon for normalization, Rock-Eval S1 to define free petroleum, and S2 to define labile kerogen. They predict that organic-rich shales are excellent expellers of petroleum (approximately 90%), and thus, petroleum that is retained, and which can act as a source of secondary gas in shales, is relatively minor. According to these models, shales with lower organic richness are poorer expellers, meaning that while they are unable to source conventional petroleum, they are nevertheless potentially good gas shales. Jarvie et al. (2007) assessed expulsion to be much lower (65%) than these models predict, correctly taking into account that a high proportion of polar compounds in the retained oil actually elute in the S2 peak and not S1 (Horsfield et al. 1991). This finding is extremely important for shale oil
plays, where it is important to distinguish mobile from immobile petroleum fractions. Simple geochemical parameters from the Rock-Eval analysis of whole rock (WR) and solvent-extracted (EX) aliquots have here been formulated to describe petroleum yield and composition more rigorously:

- **Assessing in-place oil characteristics**
  - **Volatile oil** represents all FID-detectable-free hydrocarbons in the sample.
  
  \[
  \text{Volatile oil} = S_{1WR} \text{ mg/g rock}
  \]

  - **Total oil** refers to the sum of volatile oil (S$1_{WR}$) and the macromolecular components (part of S2) that are soluble in the extraction solvent.
  
  \[
  \text{Total oil} = S_{1WR} + \left(\frac{S_{2WR}}{C_0 S_{2EX}}\right) \text{ mg/g rock}
  \]

  - **Oil quality** refers to the ratio of volatile oil (S1) to total oil.
  
  \[
  \text{Oil quality} = \frac{S_{1WR}}{S_{1WR} + \left(\frac{S_{2WR}}{C_0 S_{2EX}}\right)}
  \]

- **Assessing kerogen and bitumen contributions**
  - The relative contributions of kerogen to the S2 signal
  
  \[
  S_{2K} = \frac{S_{2EX}}{S_{2WR}}
  \]

  is also reflected in the T$_{\text{max}}$ shift
  
  \[
  \Delta T_{\text{max}} = (T_{\text{maxEX}} - T_{\text{maxWR}}) \text{ °C}
  \]

  - Hydrogen Indices of the macromolecular kerogen and bitumen components:
    
    \[
    \text{Hydrogen Index kerogen} = \frac{S_{2EX}}{\text{TOC}_{EX}} \text{ mg/g}
    \]
    \[
    \text{Hydrogen Index bitumen} = \frac{(S_{2WR}/C_0 S_{2EX})}{(\text{TOC}_{WR} - \text{TOC}_{EX})} \text{ mg/g}
    \]

- **Assessing retention**
  - The so-called Oil Saturation Index provides a measure of the oil in place that is more readily producible (Jarvie 2012b).
  
  \[
  \text{Oil saturation index} = \frac{S_{1WR}}{\text{TOC}_{WR}} \text{ mg/g}
  \]

  - The total oil saturation index provides a measure of the total oil in place.
  
  \[
  \text{Total oil saturation index} = \frac{S_{1WR} + \left(\frac{S_{2WR}}{C_0 S_{2EX}}\right)}{\text{TOC}_{WR}} \text{ mg/g}
  \]

Changes in two of these parameters as a function of T$_{\text{max}}$ are illustrated for the Vaca Muerta Formation (Argentina), the Yanchang Shale (China), the Posidonia Shale (Germany), and the Eagle Ford Shale (USA) in Fig. 6. In the simplest case, oil quality increases progressively as the proportion of polar compounds decreases, this being most clearly discernable for the Eagle Ford maturity series. The Yanchang and Posidonia show enhanced quality at lower maturity ostensibly due to infiltration by mature fluids. The Vaca Muerta Shales shown here are actually from a limited maturity range (ca. 1% R$_o$); low T$_{\text{max}}$ values are most likely related to the retention of high molecular weight, in part polar, heavy oil components. The oil saturation index is said to exceed 100 mgHC/g TOC where producible oil occurs (Sandvik et al. 1992; Jarvie 2012b) and is often relatable to the presence of porous microfossils (Han et al. 2015, 2017). In the case of the Posidonia Shale, values increase and then decrease in accordance with the concepts of the oil window and kerogen swelling, and only in a few cases do values exceed 100 mgHC/g TOC. Decreasing values are seen for the Eagle Ford at high maturity levels. The Vaca Muerta displays exceedingly enriched and depleted intervals for a given maturity, consistent with intraformational migration.
Fig. 6 The rapid assessment of bulk petroleum composition in the Vaca Muerta Formation (Argentina), Yanchang Shales (PR China), Posidonia Shale (Germany), and Eagle Ford Formation (USA) using Rock-Eval parameters. (a) Oil quality, calculated as $S_{1\text{WR}}/(S_{1\text{WR}} + S_{2\text{WE}} - S_{2\text{EX}})$. (b) Oil Saturation Index, calculated as $S_{1\text{WR}}/\text{TOC}_{\text{WR}}$. 
5 Production Characteristics

Prospectivity largely depends on the degree to which lithologies and compositional heterogeneities (fluids and matrix) can be recognized so that artificially stimulated fractures can be induced within selected packages (Binnion 2012). It is also noteworthy that compositional fractionations due to selective retention, and sometimes induced by phase separation, can change the ratio of gas to oil and the chemistry of the oil. Three examples are presented here to illustrate these important points.

5.1 Recognition of Sweet Spots Within Heterogeneous Sequences

This illustrative example is taken from Han et al. (2015).

The Barnett Shale sequence of the Marathon 1 Mesquite well, Hamilton County, Texas, contains Type II kerogen throughout and is at oil window maturity (1.0% Ro). It displays significant compositional heterogeneity (Fig. 7).

- Beginning at the top, the first interval is carbonate-rich and organic-lean.
- The deeper second interval consists mainly of organic-rich noncalcareous mudstones, including porous biogenic silica from sponge spicules. It behaves like a reservoir unit within the succession, exhibiting the highest Oil Saturation Index and suppressed Tmax values.
- The third interval is argillaceous and consists mainly of organic-rich siliceous noncalcareous mudstones and phosphatic shales. It represents the best source interval.
- The fourth and fifth intervals are calcite-rich and consist mainly of siliceous calcareous mudstones.

Oil quality increases with increasing depth in the well—reflecting increasing contributions of light hydrocarbons. A preferential migration of $C_{15+}$ aliphatic hydrocarbons from the third into the second interval, accompanied by selective retention of aromatic hydrocarbons and polar compounds in the third interval, has occurred. The migration pathway from the third to the second is via natural fractures. Carbonate-cemented fractures perpendicular to the bedding have been documented, as well as the coexistence of oil inclusion clusters within these fractures.

Whereas the retention of hydrocarbons within most intervals is primarily controlled by organic matter richness, additional storage occurs within siliceous microfossils of the second interval. Based on this enrichment and its siliceous nature, the interval represents a much more attractive target for hydrocarbon production than the clay-rich third interval.

Furthermore, at higher maturities, the horizon is expected to yield higher additional amounts of secondary gas by oil cracking. This might explain why the primary producing facies of the Barnett Shale is largely quartz dominated.
Fig. 7  Geochemical depth profile of the Marathon 1 Mesquite well. Interval subdivisions are based on (1) gamma ray (GR) log, (2) core description, (3) Rock-Eval parameters. TOC = total organic carbon (%); $S_1$ = thermally extractable petroleum (mgHC/g rock); oil quality = $S_1/(S_1WR + S_2WR - S_2EX)$; saturates refers to $C_{15+}$ fraction from medium pressure liquid chromatography separation; $T_{max}$ = temperature at which $S_2$ generation rate is at a maximum.
a Carbon-Number distribution: 9 DBE N$_1$-compounds

Maturity Trend Extracts (Posidonia Shales)
Maturity Trend Oils (not clear yet)

Posidonia Extracts
Posidonia Oils
North sea standard Oil
Angola Oils

0.6
0.4
0.2
0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0

C$_{6-14}$
C$_{15-35}$
C$_{1-5}$

Log.((Elias) VM oils correlation)

b (Elias) VM oils correlation

Posidonia Oils FTICRMS
UVM_Extract
LVM_Extract
VM_Oil-time1

C$_{15+}$/C$_{1-14}$

Fig. 8 (continued)
5.2 Rapid Insight into In-Situ Physical Properties of Fluids

Elias and Gelin (2015) used the relative proportions of heavy versus medium cuts (h/m) from GPC/UV analysis of produced oils and rock extracts to document differences in the in-situ API gravity of fluids within the Vaca Muerta Formation (Fig. 8b). Adopting and adapting this approach, Mahlstedt et al. (2017) used the chain lengths of alkyl substituents in N1 carbazoles (DBE 9) from FT-ICR MS (ESI-negative mode) for the same purpose. The low and intermediate aliphatic carbon numbers (C1−14) were used as the medium cut and high aliphatic carbon numbers (C15+) as the heavy cut (Fig. 8a). Plotting API gravity versus aliphatic carbon number-based h/m ratios and comparing with the GPC/UV-API\textsuperscript{°} trend line resulted in a good correlation, showing that meaningful API values could already be assessed for potential resource plays, e.g., the Posidonia Shale and the Vaca Muerta Formation. The API gravity prediction for produced oil from one well in the Neuquén Basin is 40°/C14, which is clearly within the reported range of 39−41°/C14 for this well. API gravity predictions for source rock extracts from the producing well are 41° for the Upper Vaca Muerta and 44° for the Lower Vaca Muerta indicating that the initial oil was produced from the UVM.

5.3 Fractionation During Production: Insights from PVT Modelling

The phase behavior of in situ petroleum is governed by the pressure-temperature (P-T) conditions of the reservoir and the bulk composition of the petroleum fluid (England et al. 1987; Düppenbecker and Horsfield 1990; di Primio 2002). The petroleum phase or physical state of fluids at any given P-T condition can be described by phase envelopes whose shapes are ultimately controlled by the organofacies and thermal maturity of the source organic matter (di Primio et al. 1998). A one-phase system exists in P-T conditions that are outside of the phase envelope (undersaturated), whereas a two-phase system exists at or within the envelope (saturated), and the two meet at the saturation pressure (P\textsubscript{sat}).

To date, only a few investigators have addressed prediction of petroleum quality and phase behavior within unconventional resources. Using petroleum engineering models, Whitson and Sunjerga (2012) were the first to publish that petroleum fluid...
Target Area Phase Envelopes (Yellow) and models

- Red: Kerogen cracking within low permeability matrix + Gas from bitumen cracking in zones of enhanced porosity
- Green: Kerogen cracking within low permeability matrix + Retention of 60% oil upon production
- Purple: Admixture of Kerogen and bitumen in low permeability matrix) + Gas from bitumen cracking in zones of enhanced porosity + Retention of oil upon production

Phase Envelopes from cumulative MSSV experiments of one immature sample

- Brown: 10% TR
- Orange: 31% TR
- Orange: 51% TR
- Orange: 66% TR
- Pink: 90% TR
- Light Orange: >90% TR

Fig. 9 (continued)
produced from surface wellhead facilities did not represent downhole fluid properties. They noted that the ultralow permeability usually found in unconventional shale plays leads to substantial amounts of oil drawdown (retention) and that the degree of oil recovery depends on whether the reservoir is initially saturated by oil or gas and whether conditions are near-saturated (greatest oil recovery loss) and to what degree.

Using microscale sealed vessel (MSSV) pyrolysis, Horsfield et al. (2015) and Kuske et al. (2017) performed artificial maturation experiments on mature Eagle Ford samples and used the results to model how the PVT properties of generated fluids would be at a slightly higher level of conversion (Fig. 9a). Phase behavior predictions from the so-called PhaseSnapShot model were compared with a regional PVT database for DeWitt County compiled from the public domain. The model that best matched the targeted PVT data was comprised of two reactive components: (1) a mixture of kerogen and bitumen that generated petroleum within the low permeability matrix and (2) bitumen that was the precursor of gas in zones of enhanced porosity within the matrix. Importantly, the enhanced generation of gas from the admixture of kerogen and bitumen and the significant retention of C7+ fluids in the matrix were required to enable a match between the phase behavior and geochemical compositions of fluids from the majority of wells in the study area. Cumulative compositions based on experiments using an immature sample produced gas-poor products and hence phase envelopes with consistently low P_{sat} (Fig. 9b). The overall implications were that instantaneous (most recently generated) rather than cumulatively generated fluids occur in shale reservoirs and that in situ petroleum compositions differ significantly from those at the surface, there being a major increase in gas-oil ratio because of selective retention of petroleum liquids.

6 Research Needs for Unconventional Resource Assessments

The boom in shale gas and shale oil exploration and development appears to be essentially over. However, these unconventional resources will continue to be exploited in years to come, but at a more sustainable and conservative pace than seen in the past. Looking back, we can readily see that the huge number of shale core and cutting samples principally made available for applied scientific and commercial investigation actually led to a fundamental re-think as to the workings of the deep organic carbon cycle. Shales make up the greatest global repository for sedimentary organic matter. Classically they have been viewed as containing molecular archives of paleoclimate and paleoecosystems, and as far as resources are concerned, they have been recognized as sources and/or seals for petroleum (e.g., Killops and Killops 2005). What is now clear is that transport within and throughout low permeability

---

Fig. 9  (a) Phase envelopes of petroleums produced from the Eagle Ford Formation of DeWitt County compared with those of instantaneous petroleums generated using MSSV SnapShot experiments, (b) phase envelopes resulting from PhaseKinetics cumulative compositional predictions based on an immature outcrop sample
shale packages is extensive. It is also clear that macromolecular organic matter in a form other than kerogen, namely, heavy bitumen, is not only abundant but plays a fundamental role in the generation and storage of hydrocarbons. Either of these fractions can develop porosity during progressive maturation, and both contain thermally labile moieties that actively adsorb hydrocarbons. Working to reveal the true chemical nature of heavy bitumen is an important research avenue that is open for development, and that means in the broadest sense unraveling the cycling of nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen in the geosphere. Very little is actually known about the fate of these elements in the stages that fall between early diagenesis (amino acids, fatty acids, humic acids, sulfurized lipids) and metagenesis ($\text{H}_2\text{S}, \text{CO}_2, \text{N}_2$). Both analytical and simulation pyrolysis methods, selective chemical degradation, and advanced analytical characterization (e.g., FT-ICR MS, STXM) provide the means to undertake the work. The role played by microbes especially in uplifted shales must also be considered. The conceptual and technological advances regarding process understanding (chemical, physical, and biological) can readily be transferred from the area of resources to that of repositories, thereby allowing the potential consequences of nuclear waste storage in shales to be better assessed.

References

Bera B, Sushanta MK, Douglas V (2011) Understanding the micro structure of Berea Sandstone by the simultaneous use of micro-computed tomography (micro-CT) and focused ion beam-scanning electron microscopy (FIB-SEM). Micron 42:412–418


outer carbonate ramp of the Vaca Muerta formation, northern Neuquén Basin, Argentina. AAPG Bull 95:1459–1474


Mahlstedt N, Noah M, Horsfield B (2017) Combining FT-ICR MS and pyrolysis to predict petroleum-type organofacies and evolving fluid physical properties. In: 28th international meeting on organic geochemistry (IMOG), Florence


Hydrothermal Petroleum

Bernd R. T. Simoneit

Contents

1 Introduction ............................................................................. 558
2 Analytical Methods .......................................................................... 558
3 Geological Locales with Hydrothermal Petroleum ......................................... 559
   3.1 Sediment-Covered Marine Systems .................................................. 559
   3.2 Bare Rock Hydrothermal Systems .................................................... 569
   3.3 Continental Systems ................................................................... 570
4 Nature and Alteration of Organic Matter in Hydrothermal Systems ....................... 571
   4.1 Organic Matter Alteration by Hydrothermal Processes.............................. 572
   4.2 Composition of Hydrothermal Petroleum ............................................ 575
5 Fluid Interactions ............................................................................ 577
6 Hydrothermal Petroleum Expulsion/Extraction/Migration ..................................... 579
7 Implications .................................................................................. 580
   7.1 Petroleum Resources ................................................................. 580
   7.2 Mineral Deposits .................................................................. 582
   7.3 Hydrothermal Organic Synthesis ..................................................... 582
8 Summary ................................................................................. 583
References ....................................................................................... 584

Abstract

Hydrothermal petroleum formation is rapid and efficient in systems associated with tectonic spreading centers and high fluid transport. In these systems the conditions driving chemical reactions are high temperatures (~60 to >400 °C) and confining pressures (>150 bar) in an aqueous open flow medium. Organic matter alteration by reductive reactions to petroleum hydrocarbons proceeds

B. R. T. Simoneit (✉)
BRT Simoneit, Department of Chemistry, College of Science, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR, USA
e-mail: simonebe@oregonstate.edu

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_16
generally from immature organic matter (also from entrained viable biota) instantaneously or over a brief geological time span (decades to millennia). These conditions are conducive to organic chemistry which yields concurrent products primarily from reduction (due to mineral buffering), to a lesser extent from oxidation (high thermal stress), and traces from synthesis reactions.

1 Introduction

The discovery of submarine hydrothermal vent systems (Corliss et al. 1979) with their associated chemistry and chemosynthetic biota has had great impact in the geosciences, biosciences, and chemistry and even in cosmochemistry (e.g., Holm 1992; Simoneit et al. 1998). Organic matter in sedimentary basins, usually marine, is derived from the syngentic residues of posthumous biogenic debris (Simoneit 1982a; Tissot and Welte 1984; Hunt 1996). This material is composed of both autochthonous detritus from marine bioproductivity and allochthonous residues derived from continental sources (Simoneit 1982a). Aquatic sediments receive allochthonous organic detritus primarily by river wash-in and eolian fallout particles, with ice-rafting and sediment recycling as minor contributing processes (Simoneit 1978). The aspects of hydrothermal alteration of sedimentary organic matter, mainly contemporary, to hydrothermal petroleum are the topic discussed here. Organic matter in hydrothermal rift systems is usually marine, as in sedimentary basins, but generally of an immature recent origin (Simoneit 1982a, 1983a). Hydrothermal petroleum is defined here as the gas/bitumen product generated by rapid thermal alteration in high water flow systems (high water rock ratio) from generally immature organic matter in sediments.

2 Analytical Methods

Analyses for gasoline-range (C₄–C₉) hydrocarbons were carried out on sealed (vials) or bagged sediment samples by the methods described (Simoneit et al. 1979, 1988; Whelan and Hunt 1982). Interstitial gases in vacutainers were analyzed for composition and stable isotope contents (Simoneit 1982b; Galimov and Simoneit 1982a, b; Simoneit and Galimov 1984). The extractable bitumen fractionations and protokerogen analyses were carried out by the well-defined organic geochemical practices (Jenden et al. 1982; Simoneit and Philp 1982; Kawka and Simoneit 1987), and hydrothermal petroleum was analyzed by the same methods after extraction from the minerals and appropriate fractionation (Kawka and Simoneit 1987; Simoneit 1994).

The various organic fractions were analyzed by capillary gas chromatography (GC) and computerized gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS) (Kawka and Simoneit 1987; Simoneit 1994; Ventura et al. 2012). The pseudokerogens from sediments were analyzed by Curie point pyrolysis and electron spin resonance
spectrometry (ESR) and for stable isotope and elemental compositions (e.g., Jenden et al. 1982; Simoneit et al. 1984).

3 Geological Locales with Hydrothermal Petroleum

An overview of the studies of hydrothermal systems with significant petroleum is given in Table 1. The organic matter alterations in marine sediment-covered systems were studied initially, and new reports are limited. The topic presented here has been reviewed numerous times (e.g., Simoneit 1988, 1990, 1992, 1993, 1995, 2000a, b, 2003; Rokosova et al. 2001) in order to enlighten various disciplines.

3.1 Sediment-Covered Marine Systems

The locations with known hydrothermal activity and associated mineralization at seafloor spreading centers (divergent plate boundaries) number about 300 and are

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1 Types of hydrothermal systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examples Studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Marine</strong> (recharge fluid-sea water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment-covered spreading ridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-ocean ridge (no sediment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-axis flanks and basins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-arc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot spots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Continental</strong> (recharge fluid-meteoric water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot spots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rift valleys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volcanism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

– organic matter not yet studied
catalogued in the reviews by Rona (1984, 1988, 2003) and Rona and Scott (1993). Those discussed here, where associated organic matter alteration has been studied, are indicated on the tectonic sketch map in Fig. 1. A summary of the organic carbon content of the source sediments, total hydrocarbon yields, and carbon preference index (CPI) of \( n \)-alkanes is given in Table 2. Examples of two continental systems are also shown in Fig. 1. The current interests in exploration have shifted to geologically ancient hydrothermal activity and associated mineralization with regard to petroleum exploration and mining (e.g., Scott 1985; Little et al. 1997; Jin et al. 1999; Rasmussen and Buick 2000; Rona 2003, 2008; Peckmann et al. 2005; Agirrezabala 2009; Kashirtev et al. 2010).

3.1.1 Guaymas Basin, Gulf of California

The Guaymas Basin (Fig. 1) is an actively spreading oceanic basin (2000 m water depth in the rifts), and the geology, geophysics, and physiography have been detailed elsewhere (e.g., Curray et al. 1982; Einsele et al. 1980; Einsele 1985; Lonsdale 1985). Sedimentation is rapid (1–2 m/1000 a) and covers the rift floors to a depth of at least 400 m (Curray et al. 1982). The organic matter of these recent sediments is derived primarily from diatomaceous and microbial detritus and averages about 2% organic carbon (Lanza-Espino and Soto 1999). Influx of terrigenous organic matter is low because deserts border the gulf. Thermal stress causes rapid maturation of immature organic matter with concomitant petroleum generation; the “oil window” seems to migrate upward in the sedimentary column as the magmatic heat front, and thus hot fluids invade new, shallower sediment (Simoneit 1982b, 1984; Simoneit et al. 1984).

Numerous hydrothermal mounds rise to 20–30 m above the south rift floor, and most are actively discharging vent fluids with water temperatures up to 315 °C at ~200 bars (Lonsdale 1985; Merewether et al. 1985). The mounds are composed of complex deposits of sulfide, sulfate, silicate, and carbonate minerals and colonies of tube worms, bacterial mats, and other chemosynthetic organisms (Koski et al. 1985; Jones 1985). Typical samples from these mounds are stained or saturated with petroleum and have a strong odor reminiscent of diesel fuel (Simoneit and Lonsdale 1982). Color photographs of active oil and gas discharges from vent areas in Guaymas Basin have been published (Simoneit 1993). The samples have very diverse petroleum contents and hydrocarbon distributions (one example is shown in Fig. 2a; others are found in Simoneit (1984, 1985a), Kawka and Simoneit (1987), and Simoneit and Kawka (1987)) and are analogous to those described for bitumens at depth in the Deep Sea Drilling Project (DSDP) holes (Simoneit 1983b; Simoneit et al. 1984). The \( n \)-alkanes range from methane to \( n \)-C\(_{40+} \), with usual maxima in the mid-C\(_{20} \) region and no carbon number predominance (CPI = 1.0). The CPI for hydrocarbons is expressed as a summation of the odd carbon number homologs over a range divided by a summation of the even carbon number homologs over the same range (Bray and Evans 1961; Simoneit 1978); for fatty acids and alcohols, it is the same ratio only inverted to have even-to-odd homologs (Kvenvolden 1966; Simoneit 1978).
Fig. 1 General location map of the hydrothermal vent fields discussed here with the sketched global tectonics.
The biomarkers, mainly the steranes and triterpanes, of the hydrothermal petroleums are generally mature. The steranes are present as complex mixtures ranging from C27 to C29 (e.g., Fig. 3a), and the dominant sterane in all samples is 5β(H),14α(H),17α(H)-cholestane (20R). Diasteranes are also present with the 13β(H),17α(H)-diacholestanes (20S and 20R) as most abundant. The triterpanes consist primarily of the 17α(H),21β(H)-hopanes with minor amounts of 17β(H),21α(H)-hopanes (moretanes) and 17β(H),21β(H)-hopanes (biological configuration) and range from C27 to C34 (C28 absent) (e.g., Fig. 3b). The various biomarker ratios confirm their high degree of maturity (Kawka and Simoneit 1987) and, along with the 14C age data (Peter et al. 1991), indicate that the petroleums were generated by rapid and intense heating.

An example of a GC trace of an aromatic/naphthenic fraction (F2) of an oil sample is shown in Fig. 2c. The major resolved peaks are unsubstituted polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH), a group of compounds discussed later. The chemical compositions of the aromatic fractions suggest derivation from a combination of high-temperature pyrolysis and admixture of less mature bitumen (Kawka and Simoneit 1990; Pikovskii et al. 1996).

### 3.1.2 Northeastern Pacific (Escanaba Trough and Middle Valley)

The Escanaba Trough in the northeastern Pacific (Fig. 1) is the southern extension of the Gorda Ridge, an active oceanic spreading center about 300 km long and bounded on the north and south by the Blanco and Mendocino fracture zones, respectively. It is filled with up to 500 m of Quaternary turbidite sediments (Kvenvolden et al. 1986, 1990). The petroleum (tar) lenses which are interspersed in the sediments and mineral ores blanketing the ridge axis are derived from hydrothermal alteration of sedimentary organic matter (Kvenvolden et al. 1986, 1990). The organic source material for these hydrocarbons appears to be terrigenous based on the CPI, carbon number range (especially >n–C25), biomarker composition, and sedimentological considerations (Kvenvolden and Simoneit 1990). The n-alkanes of the petroleum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>TOC (%)</th>
<th>Total hydrocarbons (μg/g)</th>
<th>CPI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Guaymas Basin, Gulf of CA</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1000–550,000</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escanaba Trough, Gorda Ridge†</td>
<td>0.4–5.6</td>
<td>500–55,000</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kebrat Deep, Red Sea‡</td>
<td>0.3–2.3</td>
<td>250–3800</td>
<td>1.5–4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaban Deep, Red Sea‡</td>
<td>0.6–1.5</td>
<td>240–2700</td>
<td>1.6–3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Valley, Juan de Fuca Ridge</td>
<td>0.1–0.8</td>
<td>0.2–500</td>
<td>0.5–4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bransfield Straight, Antarctica</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.5–1.2</td>
<td>1.6–2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantis II Deep, Red Sea</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Pacific Rise, 13°N</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Pacific Rise, 21°N</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.0002–0.006</td>
<td>1.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid-Atlantic Ridge, TAG, 26°N</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>1.01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Kvenvolden et al. (1986)*

*Michaelis et al. (1990)*

n.d. = not determined
range from C\textsubscript{14} to C\textsubscript{40}, with a carbon number maximum (C\textsubscript{max}) > n–C\textsubscript{23} (Fig. 2b) and still a significant odd carbon number predominance > n–C\textsubscript{25} (CPI = 1.25), typical of a terrestrial organic matter origin. The CPI may also indicate admixture of bitumens with various maturities. Homologs of a marine origin (<n–C\textsubscript{25}) are less concentrated. In general the biomarkers of these petroleums, i.e., steranes and

Fig. 2  Gas chromatograms of saturated (a, b), aromatic (c, d), and total (e, f) hydrocarbons in (a, c) Guaymas Basin (GB), (b, d) Escanaba Trough (ET), and (e, f) Middle Valley oils (Kvenvolden and Simoneit 1990; Davis et al. 1992; Simoneit 1994) (Numbers refer to carbon chain length of n-alkanes, Pr = pristane, Ph = phytane, asterisk = other isoprenoids; UCM = unresolved complex mixture; PAH are labeled)
Fig. 3 Mass fragmentograms from GC-MS of biomarkers in (a, b) Guaymas Basin (GB) and (c, d) Escanaba Trough (ET) oils; (a, c) m/z 217, key ion for steranes (numbers refer to carbon skeleton; suffixes designate configuration; $\alpha = 5\alpha(H), 14\alpha(H), 17\alpha(H)$; $D = \text{diasterane} [13\beta(H), 17\alpha(H)-\text{diacholestane}]$; R and S
triterpanes, are less mature than in the case of the Guaymas petroleums. The steranes range from C_{27} to C_{29}, with 5\alpha(H),14\alpha(H),17\alpha(H)-cholestan (20R) slightly less concentrated than the C_{29} homolog (Fig. 3c) (Kvenvolden and Simoneit 1990). Diasteranes are minor components. The triterpanes consist of the 17\alpha(H),21\beta(H)-hopanes, with major amounts of the 17\beta(H),21\alpha(H)-hopanes (Fig. 3d), and range from C_{27} to C_{35} (C_{28} absent). The PAH of these oils are also dominated by the unsubstituted analogs (Fig. 2d; Kvenvolden and Simoneit 1990). The generation of this petroleum was by intense heating of short duration, as indicated by the biomarker distributions and the high concentrations of unsubstituted PAH. This was further supported by the analyses of drill cores from the region by the Ocean Drilling Program (ODP) Leg 169 (Fouquet et al. 1998; Gieskes et al. 2002b; Rushdi and Simoneit 2002b).

Middle Valley is another sediment-covered hydrothermal system in the north-eastern Pacific (Fig. 1), with associated hydrothermal organic matter alteration (Simoneit 1994; Simoneit et al. 1992a). These oils are also highly aromatic/polar in composition. This system was drilled by the ODP Legs 139 and 169 (Davis et al. 1992; Simoneit 1994; Fouquet et al. 1998), and hydrothermal petroleum was recovered in some of the upper core sections. The bitumen in the thermally unaltered sediments reflects the admixture of marine autochthonous compounds (e.g., n-alkanes <C_{20}) with the n-alkanes >C_{23} (CPI = 2.8) from terrestrial vascular plant wax (Fig. 2f). The compositional signatures of the total hydrocarbon fractions of the hydrothermal petroleums in the various core sections were very diverse, comprised of oils consisting of either UCM, aromatics, or condensate/volatiles (C_{max} = 17), to aliphatic higher-molecular-weight mixtures (Simoneit 1994). A sample of a solid bitumen at ambient temperature from 13 m below seafloor has a CPI = 0.46, with an n-alkane range of ~C_{14} to C_{35} (Fig. 2e). The strong even carbon number predominance is intriguing and occurs in numerous hydrothermal petroleums from ODP 139 in Middle Valley (Simoneit 1994; Rushdi and Simoneit 2002a). The origins of even n-alkane distributions have been amply discussed in the literature as (1) microbial alteration of algal detritus, (2) reductive processes acting on acids or other lipid compounds, and (3) direct microbial lipid input. Process number (2) was proposed to occur for the Leg 139 samples (Simoneit 1994; Rushdi and Simoneit 2002a). Because maturation in these sediments commences with immature organic matter (i.e., biogenic detritus) that has not completed early diagenetic alteration, the n-alkanols from marine microbial sources and from terrestrial plant waxes (Simoneit 1977, 1978) appear to be the source of the even-chain alkanes.

The Escanaba Trough and Middle Valley hydrothermal systems are larger in area than the Guaymas Basin rift. Also the ^{14}C ages of their hydrothermal petroleums are
much older (Escanaba Trough ~17,090 yBP, Middle Valley ~29,000 yBP, Simoneit and Kvenvolden 1994) than those from Guaymas Basin (mean ~4700 ± 550 yBP; Peter et al. 1991). The diverse compositions of the petroleum in drill cores from both locales reflect extensive migration reworking, deposition, remobilization, thermal searing by hot fluids, and ultimate concentrations of bitumen (heavy oils) near the seafloor (Gieskes et al. 2002a, b; Rushdi and Simoneit 2002a, b). This is illustrated by the depth profile of hydrothermal petroleum in cores from Site 858 in Middle Valley (Fig. 4, Rushdi and Simoneit 2002a). The altered bitumen is found associated with indurated minerals at shallow depths. The other low-concentration bitumens in these cores (open circles in Fig. 4) reflect the typical lower-temperature products from the primarily terrigenous organic detritus (Rushdi and Simoneit 2002a).

3.1.3 Other Sediment-Covered Systems

The Bransfield Strait, Antarctica (Fig. 1), is a typical back-arc rift, which is tectonically active with extensional features such as dip-slip faults and intrusives (Whiticar et al. 1985). Gravity cores from the eastern part of the basin have a weak petroliferous odor in the hydrothermally altered zones analogous to that described for Guaymas Basin. The lipid/bitumen compositions of two piston cores have been analyzed (Brault and Simoneit 1988, 1990). The unaltered surface samples exhibit compound distributions that can be correlated with their marine biogenic origin where the bulk of the n-alkanes and additional biomarkers (e.g., hop-22(29)-ene, C_{28}-steradienes, and C_{25}-polyalkenes) are derived from autochthonous marine microbial sources. This has also been reported by Venkatesan and Kaplan (1987) for other core samples from this area. The hydrocarbon patterns in the hydrothermally altered zones are dramatically different (Brault and Simoneit 1988, 1990), with a superposition of complex resolved and unresolved (UCM) thermal products on the n-alkane pattern. However, the hydrocarbon patterns for these hydrothermally altered samples from Bransfield Strait indicate only in situ heating and limited migration.

The Atlantis II Deep in the Red Sea (Fig. 1) contains stratified brine layers, the deepest of which is at a temperature of 62 °C (Hartmann 1980). Bulk organic matter and hydrocarbons have been analyzed in two sediment cores from the Deep (Simoneit et al. 1987). The dense brine overlying the coring areas was reported to be sterile, and sedimentary organic material derived from autochthonous marine planktonic and microbial inputs and minor terrestrial sources is present. The organic input derived from the water column above the brine is further metabolized by microorganisms, and the reworked compounds with organic detritus are apparently then incorporated into the sediments under the brine by sinking adsorbed or bound to particles of metallic oxide precipitates.

Low-temperature maturation in the sediments results in petroleum generation (Fig. 5a), even from low amounts of organic matter (average 0.14% TOC). Both steroid and triterpenoid biomarkers show that extensive acid-catalyzed reactions occur in the sediments. In comparison with other hydrothermal systems (e.g., Guaymas Basin) or intrusive systems in lithified sediments (e.g., Cape Verde
Fig. 4  Yields of bitumen extracts for sediments of Middle Valley, ODP Site 858 (solid dots are hydrothermal petroleum) (Rushdi and Simoneit 2002a)
Rise; Simoneit et al. 1978, 1981), sediments in the Atlantic II Deep exhibit a lower degree of thermal maturation, as based on the bitumen character, the elemental composition of the kerogens and the absence of pyrolytic PAH in the bitumen (Simoneit et al. 1987). The lack of a carbon number preference for the \( n \)-alkanes (CPI = 1.0) suggests, especially in the case of the long-chain homologs (Fig. 5a), that the organic matter has been affected by catagenesis. However, the yields of hydrocarbons with respect to sediment weight are much lower than those observed in other hydrothermal areas (Table 2), probably due to the low temperature and low

Fig. 5 Gas chromatograms of total hydrocarbons (a–e) and aromatic hydrocarbons (f) from various other hydrothermal areas: (a) Atlantis II Deep core sample 84, 443–453 cm (Simoneit et al. 1987); (b) EPR at 13°N, hydrothermal metalliferous sediment talus (Brault et al. 1985, 1988); (c) EPR at 13°N, surrounding water above active vents (Brault et al. 1989); (e, f) MAR-TAG at 26°N, sphalerite, saturates, and aromatics, respectively (Brault and Simoneit 1989)
TOC of the sediments in the Deep. Related data on hydrothermal petroleum from the Kebrit and Shaban Deeps of the Red Sea have also been reported; however, these systems appear to be at higher temperatures (Michaelis et al. 1990).

3.2 Bare Rock Hydrothermal Systems

The active spreading ridges in the deep ocean without sediment cover (e.g., Mid-Atlantic Ridge) are the current areas of exploration, addressing topics such as ecology of the biota, mineral deposition, rift dynamics, and abiogenic hydrocarbon (mainly methane) formation.

3.2.1 East Pacific Rise (13°N and 21°N)

Hydrothermal activity and associated massive sulfide deposits, with abundant faunal communities, are found on the unsedimented axis of the East Pacific Rise (EPR) in the region of 13°N and 21°N (Fig. 1; Spiess et al. 1980; Ballard et al. 1981; Hékinian et al. 1983). Aliphatic hydrocarbons have been analyzed in hydrothermal plumes and in metalliferous sediments near the active vents and at the base of an inactive chimney at 13°N (Brault et al. 1985, 1988). Hydrocarbons from metalliferous sediments have distributions characteristic of immature organic matter, which was recently biosynthesized and microbiologically degraded, as indicated by the abundance of low-molecular-weight (<C_{26}) n-alkanes and phytane. A contribution of continental higher plant material is shown by the presence of high-molecular-weight n-alkanes with a slight odd carbon number predominance (Fig. 5b). The immature character of the organic matter is also suggested by the presence of steroid and terpenoid biomarkers, which are the result of low-temperature reductive alteration, as might be expected in the surrounding talus apron of a vent system. Thermally matured compounds (Fig. 5c) are also present at trace levels in waters collected within ~1 km above the hydrothermal vents. The hydrocarbon patterns of these waters are indicative in many cases of pyrolysis of bacterial matter in entrained ocean water during cooling of discharging fluids (Brault et al. 1988).

The hydrocarbon contents of massive sulfide minerals from vent chimneys at 21°N are extremely low but definitely thermogenic. The n-alkanes in these massive sulfides range from C_{14} to C_{40+}, with no carbon number predominance, and have hydrothermally altered steroid and terpenoid biomarkers from the vent biota, i.e., mainly tube worms and bacteria (Fig. 5d) (Brault et al. 1989; Simoneit et al. 1990a), whereas a sample of a pyritized tube worm from a chimney has n-alkanes with a slight odd carbon number predominance (CPI = 1.02). All samples contain PAH, providing further evidence for hydrothermal generation, and this coupled with the C_{max} at n–C_{27} or higher indicates that the hydrocarbons were entrapped/condensed in a high-temperature regime such as an active chimney.

3.2.2 Mid-Atlantic Ridge (TAG Area 26°N)

The Trans-Atlantic Geotraverse (TAG) hydrothermal field on the Mid-Atlantic Ridge crest at 26°N (Fig. 1) is one of now numerous active vent systems known
on slow-spreading oceanic ridges (Rona et al. 1984; Thompson et al. 1988; Von Damm 1995). Hydrothermal deposits lying directly on oceanic crust were dredged from the area (TAG 1985-1). Three bulk mineral samples, consisting mainly of anhydrite, sphalerite, and chalcopyrite, respectively, contained minor amounts of the more volatile \((C_{10} - C_{22})\) hydrothermal petroleums (Brault and Simoneit 1989). The \(n\)-alkanes in the sphalerite range from \(C_{11}\) to \(C_{22}\), with a \(C_{\text{max}}\) at \(n-C_{16}\) and CPI = 1.0, and a significant UCM (Fig. 5e). This pattern is analogous to that observed for samples from the EPR at 13\(^\circ\)N. The aromatic fraction, which contains naphthalene, phenanthrene, their alkyl homologs, pyrene, and S-aromatic compounds (Fig. 5f), supports the hydrothermal origin for these trace organic components (Brault and Simoneit 1989; Simoneit et al. 1990a).

### 3.3 Continental Systems

Continental hydrothermal systems occur in volcanic, geothermal, or failed and dormant rift terranes, as, for example, Yellowstone National Park, Lake Tanganyika, and Waiotapu (Fig. 1). In most cases, the hydrothermal processes cause remobilization of organic matter in the form of bitumen as reported for oils from Yellowstone National Park (Clifton et al. 1990) and other areas (Venkatesan et al. 2003; Zárate del Valle and Simoneit 2005; Geptner et al. 2006; Gürgey et al. 2007; Svensen et al. 2007; Peng et al. 2011). Small amounts of hydrothermal petroleum are also formed in such areas derived from the alteration of the in situ microbiological detritus (Yamanaka et al. 2000; Simoneit et al. 2009). For example, in the Waiotapu geothermal region of New Zealand, small amounts of oil are presently being generated from volcanic sedimentary rocks of Lower Pleistocene age (Czochanska et al. 1986). The source material is terrigenous organic matter present in vitric tuff which has been rapidly buried by volcanic overburden. The associated breccias serve as regional aquifers and surround the tuff with high-temperature water. The generated oil, however, lacks the high-temperature reaction products, e.g., PAH, present in typical hydrothermal petroleums.

Massive sulfides and petroleum occur in the north Tanganyika trough of the East African Rift (Tiercelin et al. 1989, 1993). Hydrothermal fluids pass through about 2 km of organic-rich lacustrine sediments (algal detritus), mobilizing asphaltic petroleum and venting at the lake bed in a water depth of ~20 m with temperatures of 65–80 °C. The site described is in close proximity to shore; vents at higher temperatures are suspected to occur in deeper water of the lake. The vent waters also contain thermogenic hydrocarbons (Tiercelin et al. 1989). This hydrothermal petroleum contains mainly an UCM and minor amounts of \(n\)-alkanes \((C_{15} - C_{40})\), immature biomarkers, and PAHs (only chrysene and benzo[e]pyrene with monomethyl analogs) (Simoneit et al. 2000).

Hydrothermal activity can generate and migrate petroleum from continental source material in both lithified rocks and unconsolidated sediments (e.g., Jin et al. 1999; Simoneit 2000a; Kashirtev et al. 2010). The invasion of hydrothermal fluids into mature source rocks will result in organic matter alteration and migration as
observed in the marine systems, except nearer the surface the effective temperature may be lower due to the lower confining pressure of the overburden.

4 Nature and Alteration of Organic Matter in Hydrothermal Systems

The effects of hydrothermal activity on sedimentary organic matter are elaborated here with the examples of submarine and continental systems. The major similarities and differences between hydrothermal petroleum and conventional reservoir petroleum are summarized in Table 3. The processes of maturation, i.e., catagenesis and metagenesis (Hunt 1996), and how these affect sedimentary organic matter after diagenesis are discussed elsewhere in this book series. The in situ lipids in shallow sediments of marine hydrothermal systems are overprinted by the input of hydrocarbons from the migrating fluids. However, these lipids in the unaltered sediments can be utilized to elucidate the various sources of the total organic matter (e.g., Simoneit 1978, 1982a). Thus, the lipid hydrocarbons of thermally unaltered, surface sediment in the Guaymas Basin, Gulf of California (Fig. 6a), consist of \( n \)-alkanes mostly \(<C_{21}\) and minor homologs \( >C_{23}\) with a strong odd carbon number predominance. This composition is typical of a predominantly marine planktonic and microbial origin with a minor influx of a terrigenous component \( >C_{25}\) of vascular plant wax (Simoneit et al. 1979). In contrast, the lipid hydrocarbons of a surface sediment in the Escanaba Trough (Fig. 6b) are \( n \)-alkanes mostly \( >C_{23}\) with a strong odd carbon number predominance. This signature is derived mainly from

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Similarities to conventional reservoir petroleum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Natural gas and gasoline-range hydrocarbons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Full range of ( n )-alkanes, no carbon number predominance (CPI = 1.0–1.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Naphthenic components (major unresolved complex mixture of branched and cyclic hydrocarbons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Isoprenoid hydrocarbons (including significant but variable pristane and phytane)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Biomarkers (e.g., mature 17( \alpha )(H)-hopanes and steranes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ( \text{CH}_4 - \text{C}_8 ), ( \text{CO}_2 ), ( \text{H}_2\text{S} ), benzene, toluene, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Alkyl aromatic hydrocarbons and asphaltenes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Differences from conventional reservoir petroleum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. High concentrations of parent polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Residual immature biomarkers and intermediates (e.g., 17( \beta )(H)-hopanes, hopenes, sterenes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Degraded biomarkers (e.g., Diels’ hydrocarbon, porphyrins with ( C_{27} ) max)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Significant heteroaromatic compounds (N and S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. High sulfur content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Alkene content in bitumen near “source sediment”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Alkanone and alkylphenol content</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
terrigenous vascular plant wax, with a minor microbial component (C<sub>21</sub>; Kvenvolden et al. 1986).

4.1 Organic Matter Alteration by Hydrothermal Processes

An overview of the hydrothermal processes affecting organic matter alteration is presented in Table 4. Hydrothermal petroleums generated in high-temperature, high-pressure, and high-fluid-flow regimes have been defined here as such because the agent of thermal alteration and mass transfer, hot circulating water, is responsible for
petroleum generation and extraction from the unconsolidated sediments or source rocks (Didyk and Simoneit 1989, 1990). In contrast, conventional oils are products of basin evolution and are generated contemporaneously with sediment compaction and geothermal heating due to burial. Formation of hydrothermal oils and gases is a rapid process (e.g., days-years; Peter et al. 1991; Simoneit and Kvenvolden 1994), whereas geothermal oils are generated at a rate that is tied to basin subsidence over millions of years (Tissot and Welte 1984; Hunt 1996). Conventional petroleum formation is believed to occur in the temperature window of ~60–150 °C, and above that temperature, the organic compounds are inferred to ultimately go to CH₄ and graphite over geological time scales (Tissot and Welte 1984; Hunt 1996). Organic matter alteration in hydrothermal systems is inferred to occur over a temperature range from ~60 to >400 °C (Simoneit 1994; Kawka and Simoneit 1994). Formation of hydrothermal petroleum commences in low-temperature regions, generating products from weaker bonds in the immature organic matter, and as the temperature regime rises, products are derived from progressively more refractory organic matter and are even “reformed” (e.g., PAH). The process

| Table 4 | Overview of hydrothermal processes affecting organic matter alteration |
|---------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| **Hydrothermal petroleum generation (rapid at high temperatures, 250–400 °C)** | **Alteration reactions (relative importance)** | **Compound type yield** |
| (a) Reduction (primary) | Aliphatic hydrocarbons | |
| (b) Oxidation (minor) | PAH, alkanones, alkylphenols | |
| (c) Synthesis (trace) | Thioheterocyclic compounds, aliphatic lipids | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source organic matter</th>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Relative concentration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Marine (e.g., Guaymas Basin)</td>
<td>Gas (CH₄–C₁₀)</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil (C₈–C₄₀⁺)</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asphalt (&gt;C₄₀)</td>
<td>Minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Terrigenous (e.g., Middle Valley)</td>
<td>Gas (CH₄–C₁₀)</td>
<td>Trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oil (C₈–C₄₀⁺)</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asphalt (&gt;C₄₀)</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fluid</th>
<th>Relative importance/ state</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Water</td>
<td>Dominant/near critical</td>
<td>Enhanced oil solubility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Methane</td>
<td>Minor/dissolved</td>
<td>Complete oil solubility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Carbon dioxide</td>
<td>Minor/dissolved</td>
<td>Complete oil solubility</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hydrothermal petroleum migration

(a) Effective in systems with high water-to-rock ratios (unlike conventional sedimentary basins)

(b) Migration

- Bulk phase (trapped in filled veins and voids)
- Emulsion (trapped in fluid inclusions)
- Solution (precipitated as wax crystals in chimneys and fluid conduits)

(c) Spent kerogen (amorphous C) remains in altered sediment – Possible later interaction, reducing agent
progresses from reductive to more oxidative reactions as the temperature increases (Kawka and Simoneit 1994). The aqueous solubility of petroleum and individual hydrocarbons has been determined in the laboratory and increases as the temperature approaches the critical point to essentially complete miscibility (e.g., Josephson 1982; Price et al. 1983; Sanders 1986; Berkowitz and Calderon 1990; Price 1993). This enhanced solvent capacity of organic compounds and reduced solvation properties of ionic species in supercritical water are due to the loss of aqueous hydrogen bonding (Fig. 7; Connolly 1966; Tödheide 1982). Phase separation of CO2 from water at reduced temperatures has been proposed for liquid CO2 vents in a back-arc hydrothermal system (Sakai et al. 1990). Carbon dioxide liquid is also an excellent solvent for organic compounds. Thus, the near-critical domain of water with co-solutes like CO2 in hydrothermal systems is expected to aid reaction rates and enhance the solvation capacity for organic matter (i.e., petroleum) in the source sediment.

![Diagram of properties of water as a function of temperature at 200–300 bar pressure (Adapted from Josephson 1982)](image)

**Fig. 7** Properties of water as a function of temperature at 200–300 bar pressure (Adapted from Josephson 1982)
The thermal alteration products of organic matter in hydrothermal systems have been proposed to be in a metastable equilibrium state (e.g., Shock 1990) during their brief formation and residence times at high temperatures. In this state, not all of the stable equilibrium species are present due to kinetic constraints, but theoretical evaluations of the distributions of species at metastable equilibrium are analogous to those for stable equilibrium. Thus, high-temperature vent fluids in Guaymas Basin for example, concurrently contain reduced species (e.g., hydrogen, hydrogen sulfide, and CH$_4$–C$_{40}$ hydrocarbons) and oxidized species (e.g., CO$_2$ acetate, alkanones, and PAH).

The reaction rates of organic matter alteration to petroleum in hydrothermal systems are rapid, and fluid extraction is highly efficient. The alteration proceeds from immature organic matter (incomplete diagenesis) to the fully mature products (Simoneit 1993, 1994). For example, carbon-14 dates have been obtained from hydrothermally derived petroleum from the southern trough of Guaymas Basin (Peter et al. 1991; Simoneit and Kvenvolden 1994). The ages range from ~3200 to 6600 yBP, mean 4690 yBP (years before present, referenced to the year A.D. 1950 and using the $^{14}$C half-life of 5570 y). These are not true ages, but rather they reflect the age of carbon within these materials. Additional $^{14}$C data on the aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbon fractions of an oil sample from this area calculate for the same age (~4500 yBP), indicating that the PAH are generated from the same carbon pool as the saturated hydrocarbons at a subseafloor depth of 12–30 m. These results demonstrate that late-phase, high-temperature products such as PAH are derived from shallow depth just as the aliphatic material from lower-temperature alteration. Hydrothermal petroleum from the northern trough of Guaymas Basin is 7400 yBP, from Escanaba Trough 17,000 yBP, from Middle Valley 29,000 yBP, and from Lake Tanganyika 25,000 yBP (Simoneit and Kvenvolden 1994), confirming this rapid geological process.

### 4.2 Composition of Hydrothermal Petroleum

Most hydrothermal petroleums from Guaymas Basin and Northeastern Pacific fall outside the field of typical reservoir petroleums on the ternary composition diagram (Fig. 8; Tissot and Welte 1984; Kawka and Simoneit 1987; Kvenvolden and Simoneit 1990). This indicates that they have diverse compositions and are generally more polar than conventional petroleums. Typical hydrothermal petroleums from Guaymas Basin (Didyk and Simoneit 1990) have an intermediate content of $n$-alkanes (18%) and a relatively normal content of iso-, anteiso-, and isoprenoid and naphthenic hydrocarbons (82%), comparable to normal crude oils (e.g., Fig. 2a). The CPI of ~1 indicates complete maturation. The typical diagnostic biomarkers consist of the triterpenoid, steroid (e.g., Fig. 3), and tricyclic terpane hydrocarbons as are generally found in crude oils, and their presence is additional evidence for the strongly reductive process operating during initial organic matter alteration. The major resolved peaks in the aromatic/naphthenic fractions are unsubstituted PAH (Fig. 2), a group of compounds uncommon in petroleums but ubiquitous in high-
temperature (>250 °C) pyrolysates (Geissman et al. 1967; Blumer 1975, 1976; Hunt 1996). The dominant analogs are the pericondensed aromatic series (e.g., phenanthrene, pyrene, chrysene, etc.) (Kawka and Simoneit 1990), and their pyrolytic origin is further supported by the presence of PAH with five-membered alicyclic rings (e.g., fluorene, methylenephenanthrene, etc.), which are found in all pyrolysates from organic matter but once formed do not easily revert to the pericondensed PAH (Blumer 1975, 1976; Scott 1982). PAH become the dominant species at very high temperatures due to their high thermal stability as well as enhanced solubility in near- and supercritical water (e.g., Sanders 1986). The aromatic/naphthenic fractions of the Guaymas oils also contain significant amounts of N, S, and O hetero-PAH (e.g., Gieskes et al. 1988) and Diels’ hydrocarbon [1,2-(3’-methylcyclopenteno) phenanthrene, C_{18}H_{16} M.W. 232, a dehydrogenation product from steroids as reported by Diels et al. 1927; Diels and Rickert 1935] (Simoneit et al. 1992b).

The n-alkanes of a hydrothermal petroleum from Escanaba Trough range from C_{14} to C_{40}, with a carbon number maximum at n–C_{27} and a significant odd carbon number predominance >n–C_{25} (CPI = 1.25), typical of a terrestrial, higher plant origin (Fig. 2b; Kvenvolden et al. 1990; Kvenvolden and Simoneit 1990). The PAH are more concentrated relative to the UCM when compared to the example from Guaymas Basin (Fig. 2c vs. 2d), although the relative yield is similar.

**Fig. 8** Ternary diagram representing gross (C_{15+}) compositions of hydrothermal petroleums as percentages of each of three major compound classes determined gravimetrically. Guaymas Basin samples indicated by dots; Escanaba Trough samples indicated by squares; Middle Valley sample indicated by asterisk. Typical conventional petroleums fall within the hachured area (Tissot and Welte 1984)
Volatiles compounds (mainly CH$_4$–C$_{10}$ hydrocarbons) are not retained effectively with the heavy petroleum as it solidifies in the vent mounds on the seafloor of Guaymas Basin. Upon exiting at the seabed, the fluids are often saturated with a broad range of volatile hydrocarbons (CH$_4$ to $n$–C$_{10}$) as well as lower concentrations of heavy ends (>C$_{15}$) (e.g., Fig. 9; Simoneit et al. 1988). Interstitial gas in sediments of DSDP cores consists of biogenic methane (CH$_4$) overprinted by thermogenic CH$_4$ to C$_5$ hydrocarbons near the sills and, to a lesser extent, at increasing subbottom depths. These are of a similar composition as the venting volatile hydrocarbons (Simoneit et al. 1988; Whelan et al. 1988). Guaymas Basin vent water samples contain high amounts of light hydrocarbons, with CH$_4$ at corrected concentrations of about 150 cm$^3$ (STP)/kg (Welhan and Lupton 1987). For comparison, the CH$_4$ concentration in vent fluids from the East Pacific Rise at 21°N, a sediment-starved rift system, has been reported to be 1–2 cm$^3$ (STP)/kg (Welhan and Lupton 1987). Sedimented hydrothermal systems generate higher amounts of natural gas. The headspace gases of a Guaymas Basin mound sample (1629-A3, Fig. 9a) can be compared with the hydrocarbon content of a 308 °C vent water, which is highly enriched in the lower alkanes (<C$_7$, Fig. 9b; Simoneit et al. 1988). The hot water has an enhanced content of aromatic (benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylenes – i.e., more soluble) versus aliphatic hydrocarbons (Fig. 9b). Hydrogen gas is also a major component of the vent fluids in Guaymas Basin (Welhan and Lupton 1987).

5 Fluid Interactions

The interactions of hydrothermal fluids in terms of chemistry and solvent properties are not well understood. The dominant fluid component is water, and in the example locales of Guaymas Basin and Northeastern Pacific, it is at temperatures approaching 350° and 400 °C, respectively, and under pressures exceeding 200 and 300 bar, respectively. The reduced density of hydrothermal fluids due to heating results in convective circulation, which in effect makes hydrothermal systems semi-open (a flow-through system) rather than closed as in most laboratory simulation experiments. These temperature and pressure conditions are in the near-critical domain of water (Fig. 7; Chen 1981; Josephson 1982; Pitzer 1986; Bischoff and Rosenbauer 1988; Bischoff and Pitzer 1989). Supercritical water has enhanced solvent capacity for organic compounds and reduced solvation properties for ionic species due to its loss of aqueous hydrogen bonding (Fig. 7; Connolly 1966; Tödheide 1982; Shaw et al. 1991; Siskin and Katritzky 1991). Supercritical water is also a reactive medium for either reductive or oxidative reactions (Leif et al. 1992; Simoneit 1995; McCollom et al. 1999a, b). Thus, the near-critical domain of water in hydrothermal systems is expected to aid reaction rates and enhance the solvation capacity for organic matter.

Fluids in hydrothermal systems also contain large concentrations of CH$_4$ and CO$_2$ (Simoneit and Galimov 1984; Welhan and Lupton 1987; Simoneit et al. 1988; Sakai et al. 1990). These dissolved gases, as well as many other possible trace components, are expected to lower the critical point of hydrothermal water. Thus, their admixture
The DMC5 triplet contains the:
- $c = \text{cis-1,3}$
- $d = \text{trans-1,3}$
- $e = \text{trans-1,2-dimethyl isomers}$

Other acyclic compounds are:
- $q = 2,6$-dimethylheptane
- $r = 2,3$-dimethylheptane
- $s = 2,6$-dimethyloctane

Other individual alkylcyclopentanes are:
- $f = 1,1,3$-trimethyl-
- $g = 1,2,4$-trimethyl-
- $h = 1,2,3$-trimethyl-

Cyclic compounds are:
- $C = \text{cyclo-}$
- $MC = \text{methylcyclo-}$
- $DMC = \text{dimethylcyclo-alkanes}$

The aromatics are:
- $B = \text{benzene}$
- $EB = \text{ethylbenzene}$
- $T = \text{toluene}$
- $X = \text{xylene}$

* = coeluting unknown

$1/2x = \text{signal attenuation by a factor of 2}$

**Fig. 9** Gas chromatograms of headspace analyses for comparison of the volatile hydrocarbons from: (a) hydrothermal mineral/oil crust, 1629-A3; (b) hot venting water, 1620-2C ($T = 308 \, ^{\circ}C$) (Simoneit et al. 1988)
in hydrothermal fluids may result in even more efficient solvent capacity for scavenging hydrothermally generated organic compounds (e.g., petroleum) from the source sediments and migrating them away from the high-temperature zone.

### 6 Hydrothermal Petroleum Expulsion/Extraction/Migration

Generally, the volatile hydrocarbon mixtures in marine hydrothermal fluids exhibit large variations in character in terms of carbon number range (CH$_4$–C$_{10+}$), structural diversity (relative contents of the normal, branched, and cyclic components), and polarity (aliphatic vs. aromatic components) (Simoneit et al. 1988). This character is controlled by a number of factors, primarily temperature, aqueous solubility, biodegradation, and water-washing. Migration of these volatile hydrocarbons occurs through dispersion in vent fluids and as a bulk phase in the sediments and vein systems. The more soluble and volatile hydrocarbons are released into the water column by rapidly venting fluids, rising in some cases as large plumes (Merewether et al. 1985; Simoneit et al. 1990b), and by aqueous remobilization from some exposed hydrothermal mounds.

Although direct measurement of the oil flow rate at the vent sites of the Guaymas Basin has not yet been feasible, oil globules have been collected under in situ conditions (200 bar, 2–3 °C). These samples had a gas-to-oil ratio ranging from approximately 5–155 at standard temperature and pressure (Simoneit et al. 1988). The low water temperatures at the seafloor contribute to condensation/precipitation and retention of some of the oil on inorganic substrates (Carranza-Edwards et al. 1990) and trapping volatile oil in fluid inclusions (Peter et al. 1990) of the hydrothermal vent system. In general, the low pour point (<18 °C, a consequence of the high liquefied hydrocarbon gas content; Didyk and Simoneit 1990) of the hydrothermal oil allows it to remain fluid at these bottom temperatures. The oils in Escanaba Trough and Middle Valley are emplaced as higher-temperature fluids (>80 °C, bulk phase migration) and solidify in the mineral matrix as the temperatures approach ambient.

Formation of hydrothermal petroleums is a continuous process which commences under low-temperature conditions, generating products from weaker bonds of the generally immature organic matter, and additional products are derived from more refractory organic matter and are even “reformed” (e.g., PAH) as the temperature regime rises. The products are continuously expelled/extracted and removed by fluid flow. The process progresses from reductive to more oxidative reactions of the residual organic matter as the temperature increases.

Deposition, precipitation, and/or trapping of hydrothermal petroleum occur as the migrating fluid experiences reduced temperatures. Phase separation of the oil from water is a consequence of a temperature reduction of the fluid to about 200–300 °C. The Guaymas Basin oils remain liquid at lower temperatures (Didyk and Simoneit 1990) than are those from Escanaba Trough or Middle Valley due to their high volatile hydrocarbon content (CH$_4$–C$_{10+}$). Thus, in the temperature window from ambient to ~300 °C, the hydrothermal oils are partitioned between bulk phase,
microdroplet emulsion, and true solution, where the predominance shifts to the former as the temperature decreases. Because these systems are semi-open, not all products are trapped. Deposition or precipitation of the heavy components of the oils (> C₁₀ – asphalt) occurs at the seafloor as the migrating fluid comes into contact with cold seawater (~3 °C). This process happens in the mineral mounds and chimneys where the heavy petroleum deposits as a filler in voids of the mineral matrix.

7 Implications

The incorporation of hydrothermal petroleum, especially surface manifestations on the seabed, into the carbon pool of the local ecosystem has been discussed (e.g., Simoneit 1985b, 1990; Bazylinski et al. 1988). The other implications which are still of relevance and actively researched follow next.

7.1 Petroleum Resources

Hydrothermal petroleum formation is a rapid, continuous, and overlapping process consisting of rapid diagenesis of the source organic matter, petroleum generation, expulsion, and migration. In terms of tectonics, hydrothermal systems are particularly active during the early rifting of nascent ocean basins along continental margins (Lonsdale 1985). Thus, geological locales where this process should be considered in resource exploration are, for example, split rift basins, failed or dormant rifts with hemipelagic or lacustrine sediments, pull-apart basins, and rifts overridden by continental drift (Didyk and Simoneit 1989). Remobilization of petroleum by hydrothermal fluids from magmatic activity affecting conventional sedimentary basins is another aspect for consideration.

A schematic representation of the prevailing conditions existing in the Guaymas Basin vent systems is shown in Fig. 10a. Hydrothermal fluids driven by a deep heat source permeate through an open, fine-grained body of recent sediments causing organic matter alteration to petroleum and discharge directly into the water column. The oil discharged with the hydrothermal fluids partially adsorbs or condenses/precipitates on inorganic substrates cooled by seawater (~3 °C) surrounding the vents. The major part of the volatile oil plume above the vent area dissipates into the water column mainly by dispersion, dissolution, and eventual biodegradation. Another scenario could be postulated, as, for example, in Fig. 10b, where a similar hydrothermally generated oil is discharged into a porous sediment body, with a finite retention time for the fluids (Didyk and Simoneit 1989, 1990). There, the hydrothermal oil-water mixtures can undergo phase separation as the temperature decreases, and petroleum can eventually accumulate if adequate sedimentary and tectonic features are available to constitute a reservoir. Such a scenario could possibly lead to a hydrothermal oil accumulation which would have a potential for exploration.
Fig. 10 Schematic models for hydrothermal petroleum generation and migration scenarios (Adapted from Didyk and Simoneit 1989, 1990): (a) Guaymas Basin open system; (b) hypothetical closed system.
7.2 Mineral Deposits

The mechanisms of migration and subsequent deposition of hydrothermal petroleum are important for understanding their role in hydrothermal metallogenesis (Simoneit 2000b). Within a specific depth interval of a sedimented hydrothermal system, the aliphatic components produced at lower temperatures are transported away by the hydrothermal flow (Kawka and Simoneit 1994). With continued heating, the pyrolysate becomes more aromatic in character until a point is reached at which only the unalkylated PAH remain (Kawka and Simoneit 1994; Simoneit and Fetzer 1996). Although such an alteration sequence can occur in a geothermal system, the hydrothermal process accentuates the removal of the intermediate products away from the heat source at depth by providing a constant flow of transport medium (i.e., water). Metal transport in hydrothermal fluids is most efficient at high temperatures, which is incompatible with the aliphatic hydrothermal petroleums. Thus, the aliphatic hydrothermal petroleums are part of the reducing medium in the system and are lost or further altered during the early activity of the system. It is the high-temperature fraction (bitumen enriched in PAH), which is generated/migrated later or is deposited in the higher-temperature fluid flow channels (e.g., chimneys), which has relevance to metallogenesis. This PAH-enriched bitumen is deposited/trapped within the minerals as they precipitate or crystallize in zones of lower temperature. Hydrothermal bitumen carries complexed metals (e.g., in porphyrins – Ni, V, Cu, and possibly others, e.g., Sander and Koschinsky 2011). Later remobilization or deeper burial can generate heavy bitumen from the hydrothermal petroleum or move deposited bitumen which can then in turn act as reductant interfaces/surfaces for metal deposition (e.g., Au on bitumen; Parnell 1988, 1993).

7.3 Hydrothermal Organic Synthesis

It has been proposed that hydrothermal systems on Earth provided an appropriate setting for the abiotic formation and accumulation of organic matter (Corliss et al. 1981; Holm 1992), thus providing organic compound precursors for the evolution of life (Shock 1990; Holm 1992; Simoneit 1995). Formation of organic compounds may proceed by aqueous thermocatalytic reactions. The Fischer-Tropsch process is a well-known and analogous process in industry, which produces gas-phase hydrocarbons and oxy compounds from carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide (Fischer 1935; Anderson 1984). The Fischer-Tropsch-type (FTT) reaction has drawn the attention of geologists as a potential source of abiotic hydrocarbons and other organic compounds in various geological settings (e.g., volcanoes, marine hydrothermal systems, etc.) (Markhinin and Podkletnov 1977; Welhan and Lupton 1987; Simoneit et al. 1988; Szatmari 1989; Shock 1990; Charlou and Donval 1993; Sherwood Lollar et al. 2002; Pikovskii et al. 2004).

Studies have shown that thermocatalytic (analogous to FTT) reactions proceed under aqueous conditions (McCollom et al. 1999a, b; Rushdi and Simoneit 2001). The synthesis products from experiments conducted at 150–400 °C were dominated
by mainly non-hydrocarbons, i.e., homologous series of straight-chain \( n \)-alkanols, \( n \)-alkanoic acids, alkyl formates, \( n \)-alkanals, \( n \)-alkan-2-ones, methyl alkanoates, and minor alkanes (Rushdi and Simoneit 2001). At temperatures above 300 °C, synthesis competed with cracking and reforming reactions.

The alkyl formates and methyl alkanoates in the aqueous thermocatalytic synthesis products indicated dehydration reactions. Thus, both condensation and reductive dehydration reactions with lipids were examined further under hydrothermal conditions. Mono- and difunctionalized alkanoic acids, alkanoates, alkamines, and alkamides were heated at 300 °C in water (Rushdi and Simoneit 2004). In all cases, the dominant products consisted of reductive dehydration and condensation derivatives, confirming that these reactions occur under hydrothermal conditions to form amides, nitriles, and esters, carbon-heteroatom bonds of obvious relevance to prebiotic lipid, and biopolymer synthesis.

8 Summary

In hydrothermal systems, organic matter maturation, petroleum generation, expulsion, and migration are compressed into an “instantaneous” geological time frame. At seafloor spreading centers, hydrothermal systems active under a sedimentary cover (e.g., Guaymas Basin, Middle Valley, Escanaba Trough) generate petroleum from the generally immature organic matter in the sediments. Products rapidly migrate away from the high-temperature zone and leave behind a spent carbonaceous residue. Compositionally, for example, the Guaymas Basin petroleums (marine organic matter source) consist of the following: (1) gasoline-range hydrocarbons (C\(_1\)–C\(_{12}\)), (2) a broad distribution of \( n \)-alkanes (C\(_{12}\)–C\(_{40+}\)) with essentially no carbon number predominance, (3) a naphthenic UCM of branched and cyclic hydrocarbons, (4) significant isoprenoids, (5) mature biomarkers (e.g., \( \alpha \)-hopanes), (6) oxygenated species, and (7) major concentrations of PAH and thio-PAH. Hydrothermal petroleums exposed or present in unconsolidated surface sediments are rapidly biodegraded and leached, whereas interior samples are essentially unaltered, although some extensively reworked oils do occur. Similar compositions are observed for Middle Valley and Escanaba Trough petroleums, except volatile hydrocarbons are low in the latter and the \( n \)-alkanes have slight odd and in some cases even carbon number predominances (>C\(_{25}\)) (mainly terrestrial organic matter source). The bitumens enriched in high-molecular-weight PAH are deposited with the hydrothermal minerals.

Hydrothermal systems active in unsedimented rift areas (e.g., East Pacific Rise at 13°N and 21°N, Mid-Atlantic Ridge at 26°N and 36°N) generate trace amounts of petroleum-like material. Low amounts of bitumen are generated by hydrothermal pyrolysis of suspended and dissolved biogenic organic detritus (including bacteria and algae) entrained during the turbulent cooling of the vent fluids. Low-level maturation is also observed in the surrounding areas at vent sites, probably due to warming of ambient detritus in the hydrothermal talus. These hydrothermal bitumens are deposited and interspersed in the minerals. Hydrothermal processes also
generate, alter, and migrate, as well as remobilize, petroleum/heavy bitumen in continental systems (e.g., Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming).

In general, hydrothermal oil generation processes differ significantly from the conventionally accepted scenario for petroleum formation in sedimentary basins. In hydrothermal petroleum formation, several of the steps of oil generation, i.e., organic matter input, subsidence, geothermal maturation, oil generation, and oil migration, occur simultaneously and have been shown to complete the oil generation-migration process over brief periods of geological time. The volatile and aliphatic components provide reducing agent capacity in the system, and the heavy bitumen fractions (PAH enriched) deposit with minerals.

References


Blumer M (1976) Polycyclic aromatic compounds in nature. Sci Am 234:34–45


McCollom TM, Ritter G, Simoneit BRT (1999b) Lipid synthesis under hydrothermal conditions by Fischer-Tropsch-type reactions. Orig Life Evol Biosph 29:157–166


Rokosova NN, Rokosov YV, Uskov SI, Bodoev NV (2001) Composition and formation of hydrothermal petroleum (a review). Neftechimia 41:3–16


Rushdi AI, Simoneit BRT (2001) Lipid formation by aqueous Fischer-Tropsch-type synthesis over a temperature range of 100–400°C. Orig Life Evol Biosph 31:103–118


Environmental and Economic Implications of the Biogeochemistry of Oil Sands Bitumen

H. Huang, R. C. Silva, J. R. Radović, and S. R. Larter

Abstract

Oil sands are one of the largest global resources of petroleum, which, in the future, will potentially be produced and transported on an increasing scale. The unique biogeochemistry of oil sands bitumens is the result of extensive in-reservoir biodegradation which produced very viscous and dense fluids, rich in aromatic hydrocarbons and non-hydrocarbons, containing sulfur and nitrogen and oxygen. The physicochemical properties of such species have significant implications for the economic and environmental aspects of oil sands exploitation, for example, energy and water use, residue generation (i.e., tailings ponds), fate and effects of incidental spills, etc. In this chapter we give an integrated overview of the oil sands bitumen composition, its effects on bitumen behavior, and discuss the future.

H. Huang · R. C. Silva · J. R. Radović (✉) · S. R. Larter
PRG, Department of Geoscience, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada
E-mail: huah@ucalgary.ca; rcsilva@ucalgary.ca; JagosRadovic@ucalgary.ca; slarter@ucalgary.ca

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate, Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_19
research needs, in particular the integration of more advanced analytical chemical protocols and models, needed for the reliable assessment of non-hydrocarbon species, in spilled oil scenarios, which are the major component of some oil sands bitumens.

1 Introduction

The geological and biogeochemical context of oil sands have been described and reviewed in Adams et al. (2013) and Larter and Head (2014) and numerous papers referenced therein, and the following introduction is a summary of that work. Oil sands are a mixture of “bitumen,” a very viscous, heavily biodegraded crude oil, unconsolidated sand, and water, bound together by the bitumen and confining stresses. They represent an end member of a global resource consisting of oil reservoirs containing trillions of barrels of heavily biodegraded oil which are increasingly being produced as energy needs grow worldwide. Economic incentives to produce reserves from three trillion barrels of heavy oil and bitumen in the Western Canada oil sands have driven a geochemical mapping to assess fluid quality controls and improved understanding of the fundamental principles of the biodegradation of oils (Adams et al. 2012). While much of this has been for practical application, this has also presented an opportunity for fundamental advances in our understanding of subsurface biogeochemical processes and the boundaries of life in Earth. Additionally, the huge size and shallow location of oil sands, coupled with the many thousands of wells drilled, means that on a per cell basis, oil sands represent the most accessible portion of the deep biosphere in Earth. This provides a fabulous natural laboratory and also may provide new pathways for biotechnology innovation and solutions to our growing environmental and human health problems.

Output from Alberta’s oil sands bitumen reserves was expected to climb 26% from 2012 to 2.3 million barrels a day by 2015, rising to 5.2 million barrels by 2030 but economic, environmental, and political factors have reduced that estimate. Hein et al. (2013) estimate that global bitumen and heavy oil resources are around 5.6 trillion bbl, with most of that occurring in the Western Hemisphere. Much of the enabling technical developments have occurred in the largest bitumen and heavy oil fields of the Canadian oil sands, the Orinoco Heavy Oil belt of Venezuela, the heavy oil on the North Slope of Alaska and the heavy oil fields of California. Large heavy oil and bitumen occurrences are also found in Eurasia and Africa and while the detailed properties of the individual bitumens depend both on biodegradation degree and the source facies dependent initial oil composition, the general principles and observations remain common. These areas have served as development grounds for the commercial development of in situ recovery technologies (mostly thermal) that will be used to extract most of the remaining nonconventional bitumen and heavy oil resources.

Industry terminology is very inconsistent and confusing. Thus, based on the oil density-based industry standard yardstick of oil quality – API (American Petroleum Institute) gravity ([in degrees] = [141.5/specific gravity at 60 °F] – 131.5) – many of
the “extra heavy oils” of Venezuela would be considered “oil sands” in Canada or “tar sands” in the United States. Heavy oil is defined as oil with 10–20°API (oil with <10° API is denser than water) and a viscosity of more than 100 centipoise (cP; 1 cP = 1 mPa·S). Bitumen includes extra heavy oil as well as oil in oil sands, with less than 10°API and viscosity of more than 10,000 cP. The main distinction is that the high viscosity of “bitumen” prevents it from flowing to a wellbore under in situ reservoir conditions, whereas heavy oils will flow under the same conditions. Heavy oil and bitumen are part of a continuum of heavily to severely biodegraded oil (Hein et al. 2013).

Large oil sand deposits are commonly found in large foreland basins adjacent to orogenic belts, with large source rock kitchens charging large, shallow, cool, reservoirs at the basin flank, suitable for inflicting severe biodegradation on the oils (Adams et al. 2013; Larter and Head 2014), but are also found associated with lacustrine basins, in China, for example. The world’s largest oil sand deposit, located in Western Canada, is reservoired in L. Cretaceous sandstone deposits in a basin adjacent to the Canadian Rocky Mountains (foreland basin). Petroleum was derived principally from marine shale source rocks, with the petroleum migrating eastward up to several 100 km to accumulate and become biodegraded, on the northeastern margins of the basin. Oil was similarly accumulated in foreland basin settings in the Oficina Formation in Venezuela, another major heavy oil resource.

Bitumens are crude oils depleted in saturated hydrocarbons and enriched in aromatic hydrocarbons (such as alkynaphthalenes or alkylphenanthrenes) and non-hydrocarbons containing sulfur and nitrogen and oxygen (and hydrogen and carbon). The content of non-hydrocarbon compounds in oil sands ranges from around 25%, by weight, in the western Peace River oil sands to nearly 60% in parts of the Athabasca oil sands accumulation. Not all oil floats, and Canadian bitumen, one of the most abundant petroleum resources on the planet, is predominately non-hydrocarbon in nature and in its native state sinks in water! Geochemical studies suggest the bitumen deposits of Alberta share common source rocks and similar maturities with the oil being sourced, predominantly from the Mississippian/Devonian Exshaw Formation, and the Jurassic Gordondale member source rocks locally affecting the western Peace River oil sands (Creaney et al. 1994; Adams et al. 2013).

The primary control on oil composition and viscosity is in-reservoir biodegradation (Larter et al. 2008). Oil API gravity in the Alberta Lower Cretaceous reservoirs ranges from 38°API (light oil) in the barely biodegraded oil pools west of the Peace River oil sands to 6°API (bitumen) in the severely biodegraded eastern Athabasca oil sands and to even lower values in the most extremely degraded bitumens, found in karsted Grosmont carbonate reservoirs that underlie the oil sands. Oil sulfur contents range from 1 to >10 wt%, with the western Peace River oil sands having the highest sulfur contents. This variability in fluid properties correlates roughly to levels of oil biodegradation which broadly increase from west to east and from south to north (Fig. 1c). Field observations typically record a coincidence of the lowest oil quality (highest viscosity and lowest API gravity) and strongest biological and molecular evidence for hydrocarbon biodegradation at or near oil-water transition zones.
Fig. 1 Processes and bioreactors. (a) Geophysical and geochemical logs through an oil leg and oil-water transition zone (OWTZ) near 600 m depth, in a Peace River oil sand reservoir, show gradients of hydrocarbon destruction (n-C₃₀, alkane; Pr, pristane; 2-MP, 2-methylphenanthrene; 26,27-DMN, dimethylnaphthalenes) and increasing oil viscosity with depth. The OWTZ has lower oil contents indicated by the resistivity log and the bitumen content.
(OWTZ) in the deepest oil-filled parts of individual sandstone reservoirs, suggesting most petroleum biodegradation occurs near this interface (Bennett et al. 2013), where the biosphere meets the geosphere (Fig. 1).

2 Biodegradation Systematics

In general, biodegradation proceeds in a narrow range near the oil-water contact (OWC) of an oil field, under anaerobic conditions in any reservoir that has a water leg and has not been heated to >80 °C (Head et al. 2003) and proceeds on a similar timescale to oil charging (Larter et al. 2003). Figure 2 summarizes the factors controlling oil biodegradation and the formation of compositional gradients in a typical biodegraded oil column. The reactive compounds (hydrocarbons and non-hydrocarbons) diffuse toward the OWC, where they are degraded by microorganisms living using nutrients derived from the water-saturated zone below the oil column. Biodegradation-resistant compounds such as hopanes and non-hydrocarbons increase in concentration (relatively concentrated due to the loss of the reactive compounds) and accumulate near the OWC. Degradation produces new compounds, such as carboxylic acids, methane, and 25-norhopanes (as examples), which get distributed between oil and water phases. Compositional gradients reflect this complex charge and degradation scenario with fresh oil being charged to the top of the reservoir (Head et al. 2003; Huang et al. 2004b; Larter et al. 2006, 2008; Jones et al. 2008; Bennett et al. 2013).

Reservoir temperature is the primary control on the degree and, hence, the rates of subsurface biodegradation. Typically, net degradation fluxes for fresh petroleum in clastic reservoirs are close to zero for reservoir temperatures near 80 °C or above and increase, with decreasing reservoir temperature, to a maximum flux of $10^{-3}$ kg petroleum degraded/m² OWC area/year at temperatures near 40 °C (Larter et al. 2003, 2006). However, not all low temperature reservoirs contain degraded petroleum. The occurrence of non-biodegraded oils in shallow reservoirs is thought to reflect recent charging (Larter et al. 2006) or uplift of the reservoir from deeper, hotter subsurface regions where the reservoir was paleopasteurized (Wilhelms et al. 2001).

![Fig. 1 (continued) log. (b)](https://example.com) During filling, oil charge and biodegradation rates had similar magnitudes, and the oil-water contact (OWC) could have migrated back and forth competitively until the reservoirs filled, gas leaking through the shale caprock above. The meter-thick OWTZ contains the main biological resource of the reservoir where the MADCOR process (methanogenic alkane degradation dominated by CO₂ reduction) takes place, reacting water and hydrocarbons to make methane and carbon dioxide, reducing bitumen content in the process. (c) Major processes involved in methanogenic alkane degradation. Points where molecular hydrogen is a key intermediate are highlighted in red. In oil reservoirs, acetoclastic methanogenesis is subordinate, and most degradation occurs via syntrophic acetate oxidation coupled to methanogenic CO₂ reduction (Jones et al. 2008; Bennett et al. 2013; Larter and Head 2014). (After Larter and Head 2014, with permission)
Saturated hydrocarbon contents and gas chromatograms of petroleum extracted from reservoir cores show a progressive increase in biodegradation downward in three wells from a Chinese heavy oil field. On the chromatograms (left panel), Pr marks the pristane peak, Ph marks the phytane peak, and C₃₀H marks the C₃₀ hopane peak (Head et al. 2003; Huang et al. 2003, 2004a; Larter et al. 2006, 2008). (After Larter et al. 2008, with permission)
Reservoir topology or structure, in general, will be important as regards the rate and site of biodegradation. The overall extent of biodegradation will depend upon the areal extent of the biodegradation zone (at the OWC), the relative volume of the oil and water legs (determining nutrient availability) and the degree or ease of contact between them (determining nutrient accessibility). Key biological nutrients, such as phosphorus and potassium, are probably buffered by mineral dissolution reactions (Head et al. 2003; Huang et al. 2004a). Thicker water legs where the mineralogy is phosphorus enriched, for example, would be expected to promote degradation as nutrient supply by diffusion will be enhanced. The reservoir water salinity also acts as second-order controls on the process (Head et al. 2014). Very high aquifer salinities appear to slow degradation and even lower the temperature limit at which biological activity in reservoirs ceases, but the effect is currently not well quantified.

The OWC provides conditions that are the most conducive to microbial activity because, at the OWC, organisms can live in free water necessary for life and find food (oil) and reactants (water, oxidants) to generate energy and biomass. The bacterial abundances seen at the OWC of the reservoir are about two orders of magnitude higher than these within the oil leg (Bennett et al. 2013). The coincidence of high bacterial abundance and intense alteration of oil chemical and physical properties confirms that biodegradation is indeed responsible for producing gradients in oil physical and chemical properties, with most organisms residing near the base of the connected oil column (Head et al. 2003; Larter et al. 2003, 2006, 2008; Huang et al. 2004b; Bennett et al. 2013).

Geochemists have made substantial advances in their ability to describe empirically the geochemical sequences of subsurface oil degradation. The effects of biodegradation are most commonly recorded by the variations in the concentration of specific petroleum compounds throughout a reservoir, especially \( n \)-alkanes and isoprenoid alkanes (Connan 1984; Peters and Moldowan 1993; Wenger et al. 2002; Head et al. 2003), alkyl aromatic hydrocarbons (Volkman et al. 1984; Huang et al. 2004a), nitrogen compounds (Huang et al. 2003), and non-hydrocarbons (Liao et al. 2009; Oldenburg et al. 2017). Among the saturated hydrocarbons, the linear alkanes are depleted before polycyclic hydrocarbons. Compounds derived from natural products by substantial molecular rearrangement are usually biodegraded less rapidly than the non-rearranged hydrocarbons (Connan 1984; Peters and Moldowan 1993). Similarly, for aromatic hydrocarbons, alkylbenzenes are removed before diaromatic and triaromatic hydrocarbons, with aromatic steroid hydrocarbons being resistant until very severe levels of biodegradation are achieved. A “quasi-stepwise” process for hydrocarbon biodegradation, using artificial ranks, has been established based on laboratory experiments and field observations (Connan 1984; Volkman et al. 1984; Peters and Moldowan 1993; Wenger et al. 2002; Head et al. 2003). The widely used 10 point scale was proposed by Peters and Moldowan (1993) (PM scale) with PM1 (least altered) to PM10 (most altered). However, other studies suggested that many compound species were removed synchronously by bacterial at very different net rates rather than one after another (Larter et al. 2012; Bennett et al. 2013).
Recently, Larter et al. (2012) developed the Manco (Modular Analysis and Numerical Classification of Oils) scale, based on integrating the extent of biodegradation of various aromatic compounds and steranes. They noted a wide variation of alkyl aromatic compounds (e.g., alkyltoluenes, alkylnapthalenes, alkylphenanthrenes, and alkyl dibenzothiophenes) in samples degraded to uniform levels on standard PM scales, which may show variation in local degradation systematics related to biodegradation mechanisms and extent of fresh oil recharge and mixing. The Manco scale is applicable to any crude oil system but is best defined for heavy oil and bituminous sand deposits generally relating to PM level 4–8.

Huang and Li (2017) noted that existing biodegradation scales, widely used to describe the extent of biodegradation of petroleum, have insufficient resolution at extreme biodegradation levels (PM level 8+), as the behavior of some biodegradation resistant compounds such as pregnanes, tri- and tetracyclic terpanes, and non-hopane pentacyclic terpanes had not been included. These very extreme levels of biodegradation can be further differentiated on the basis of the presence and absence of these “refractory” components, together with 25-norhopanes (NHs), 17-nortricyclic terpanes (NTTs), and C23 demethylated tetracyclic terpane (C23NTeT). These NHs, NTTs, and C23NTeT are produced from corresponding hopanes and tri- and tetracyclic terpanes during biodegradation, but they are biodegradable as well. The norhopane system shows that both generation and destruction of such species occurs at advanced levels of biodegradation in oil sands systems (Bennett et al. 2006, 2009).

The molecular-level variations in composition are proxies for overall bitumen composition and thus fluid properties such as viscosity. However, mixing of fresh and degraded oils dominates the composition and physical properties of biodegraded oils, rendering geochemical schemes that rank the absolute level of biodegradation of oil unachievable and somewhat meaningless. All these processes complicate existing simple rankings of crude oils in terms of relative level of degradation. A more complicated filling/charge situation occurs when the first oil charge is subjected to biodegradation and is subsequently mixed with later charges to the reservoir, resulting in non-biodegraded and biodegraded oils within the same reservoir interval (Zhang et al. 2014). The nature of the primary oil charge and addition of a secondary fresh oil charge may dominate properties in settings such as in China and Western Canada (Koopmans et al. 2002; Larter et al. 2006, 2008).

### 3 Extended Oil Sands Bitumen Compositional Analysis

Oil sands bitumen exemplifies one of the most challenging chemical matrices, in analytical terms, given the large amounts of polar and high-molecular weight fraction material in its composition (Fig. 3). The most detailed compilation of oil sands bitumen physicochemical properties can be found in the book by Strausz et al. (2003). While a significant part of the saturated and aromatic compounds in oils has been extensively analyzed at a molecular level and studied for years (Strausz et al. 2010, 2011), the molecular description of the whole bitumen petroleome has always
posed a challenge. Despite its geochemical and engineering significance, the assessment of the high-molecular weight polar fraction has been typically based on bulk chemical properties or spectroscopic responses. However, along the years, particularly during the early twenty-first century, new analytical technologies have allowed investigation of composition from different viewpoints. The field of study named “Petroleomics” (Marshall and Rodgers 2004), initially enabled by the development of Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometers (FTICR-MS), has targeted the characterization of petroleum at the molecular level and its correlations to both up- and downstream activities within the oil industry. Not surprisingly, given oil sands bitumen strategic relevance as one of the largest fossil fuel reserves in the world, its fractions have been extensively studied by FTICR-MS and, for the first time, molecular-level insights are available.

A single petroleum FTICR-MS mass spectrum can reveal tens of thousands of peaks. As a consequence of the ultrahigh resolution and accuracy mass measurements, unique molecular formulae can be assigned to detected peaks (Marshall and Rodgers 2008). The main outcome from FTICR-MS analysis is a long list of assigned molecular formulae and intensities related to peaks found in the mass spectrum. Traditionally, compositional investigations create sequential data layers based on heteroatom content, double-bond equivalent (DBE), carbon number (C#) and elemental ratios to sort the detected molecular formulae and create plots. The chemical nature of detected ions is highly influenced by the ionization method of choice, as each technique will favor specific compound classes. In this sense, FTICR-MS analysis of bitumen sheds new light into the discussions on non-hydrocarbon petroleum components and asphaltene compositional features, with significant impact on the understanding of bitumen production and upgrading.

Fig. 3 Overview of Canadian oil sands bitumen (COSB) composition by chemical classes and boiling point fraction yield. Light and dark gray slices in both pie charts represent the most challenging high-molecular weight, polar compounds which have been analyzed at a molecular level after the advent of FTICR-MS technologies.
3.1 Compositional Continuum

McKenna et al. (2010) offered the first molecular-based evidence of the notion of a compositional continuum in a Canadian bitumen, heavy vacuum gas oil (HVGO) distillation series via FTICR-MS. An incredibly complex chemical matrix with 150,000+ elemental compositions was detected in eight different HVGO fractions. Data was useful to check the validity and accuracy of the Boduszynski model (Boduszynski 1987), which describes how compositional features of oil components progress with increasing compound boiling point. The model suggests that, in a given oil distillation fraction, the non-hydrocarbon polar compounds would have the lowest carbon numbers (compared to saturated and aromatic hydrocarbons). The abundance-weighted average carbon number measured for compound classes detected in different distillation HVGO distillation cuts, showed that species in hetero compound class S and class O₂ are generally smaller (two and three fewer carbon atoms, respectively) than the class HC. Moreover, a smooth DBE distribution of species in hetero compound class S species, showed that saturated cyclic structures are equally relevant/abundant in the polar fraction of bitumens as non-hydrocarbon species with aromatic cores.

3.2 Asphaltenes

Asphaltenes are operationally defined as the petroleum components insoluble in paraffinic solvents, such as pentane or heptane. Understanding their chemistry and solubility behavior is fundamental to avoid asphaltene precipitation during oil production, storage, transportation and refining. Oil sands bitumen asphaltene chemistry has also been extensively investigated over the years (Strausz et al. 2003). Due to limitations in analytical technologies, besides bulk (e.g., CHNSO elemental analysis) and spectroscopic analysis, one common strategy to probe asphaltene structures was via chemical modification (oxidation/reduction, thermal stress, and hydrolysis) that produced compounds amenable to the available analytical technologies of the time. Asphaltenes represent a solubility class; thus compositional differences of asphaltenes fractionated from different oils are expected. Recently, ESI-N (electrospray ionization in negative mode) FTICR-MS was used to assess bitumen asphaltene chemistry, when asphaltenes were obtained from different experimental setups (Wang et al. 2013). Not surprisingly, the separation conditions (solvent time, purity, and washing times) showed significant impact on the composition and behavior of asphaltene compound classes. FTICR-MS results have also been useful to suggest that the chemical nature of asphaltenes is different from maltenes in terms of aromaticity and heteroatom content but less so in terms of molecular weight (McKenna et al. 2013). A Canadian oil sands bitumen asphaltene feedstock was analyzed by APPI-P (atmospheric pressure photoionization in positive ion mode) FTICR-MS (Silva et al. 2016), and molecules with carbon number ranging from C₂₀ to C₆₈, DBE values of 6–33, were detected.
Silva et al. (2016) suggested the occurrence of archipelago-type asphaltene species in Canadian bitumens, after the analysis of asphaltene oxycracking products, which showed a shift to lower DBE values, compared to the parent material. Another study applied ruthenium ion-catalyzed oxidation to investigate the molecular characterization of bitumen asphaltenes by ESI-N FTICR-MS (Zhou et al. 2016). The rationale involves selectively oxidizing aromatic carbon to CO₂ and analyzing the remaining products to derive general asphaltene structural information. Alkyl groups with carbon numbers up to 60 (plus 1–5 saturated rings) could be detected in the reaction products, suggesting that even within the Canadian oil sands bitumen asphaltenes, large hydrophobic molecular portions can still be found. By fractionating five heavily biodegraded bitumens, into maltenes and asphaltenes, Pan et al. (2013) investigated the oil sands bitumen biodegradation pathways by ESI-N FTICR-MS. NO and NO₂ species compound classes were suggested to be formed from class N species via a ring-opening reaction and oxidation, while evidence of thiophenic ring opening due to oxidation was also obtained. Oldenburg et al. (2017) used FTICR-MS analysis to investigate the compositional effects of microbial alteration along an oil sand bitumen reservoir column, indicating that biodegradation primary targets, at any biodegradation level, are the most abundant species, including the heteroatomic compounds. The partial oxidation of S- and N-containing species, as detected by FTICR-MS, may have significant impacts to biodegradation mass balance as a significant fraction of the oil is transformed rather than mineralized to CO₂ and H₂O. Overall, Oldenburg et al. (2017) suggest much more complex sulfur and nitrogen species alteration routes, depending on the level of biodegradation and the oil provenance itself.

Unfractionated bitumen asphaltene analysis, by APPI-P FTICR-MS, allowed the detection of several vanadyl petroporphyrin structures all at once (McKenna et al. 2009). With a similar approach but using a petroporphyrin-rich fraction from Canadian bitumens distillation residues, Liu et al. (2015) reported both nickel and vanadyl porphyrins (40⁺ and 250⁺ different molecular formulae, respectively), including sulfur-containing porphyrins, by ESI-N FTICR-MS analysis.

### 3.3 Other Non-hydrocarbon Compounds in Bitumens

A sample of oil sands bitumen, heavy vacuum gas oil at 475–500 °C was used to test the ability of lithium cationization as a tool to extend the range of species able to be analyzed by ESI-P FTICR-MS (Lobodin et al. 2014). The authors showed that an enhanced detection of SₓOᵧ species was obtained and thus a detailed molecular characterization of such species is permitted, with implications for emulsion interface chemistry as these compounds are known to be natural surfactants. Also focused on highlighting the sulfur compounds in ESI-P (electrospray ionization in positive mode) FTICR-MS analysis, Liu et al. (2010) submitted the aliphatic fraction of oil sands bitumen to selective oxidation of sulfur compounds, followed by S-methylation reactions. While the unreacted aliphatic fraction failed to yield ions in electrospray (as expected), the compound class OS dominated the mass spectra of reaction products,
suggesting an original sulfur species class (likely sulfides) with a DBE range of 0–12 and carbon atom range from 10 to 45. When submitted to S-methylation reaction and analyzed by ESI-P FTICR-MS, the bitumens showed a compound class S, with an upper limit of DBE = 20 (Shi et al. 2010). On the other hand, working with Canadian bitumen vacuum residue, Purcell et al. (2007) showed that methylation, followed by ESI-P FTICR-MS, yields distinct (but somewhat complementary) class S patterns, compared to APPI-P analysis of the unreacted material. Noticeably, Purcell et al. (2007) also showed how class S species from “aromatic” and “aliphatic” fractions occupy a different compositional space in APPI-P FTICR-MS regarding DBE content, but not species carbon number distribution.

Given the omnipresence of water-oil interactions in the most used bitumen production schemes (i.e., mining and steam assisted gravity drainage, SAGD), there is a need to understand the impact of oil composition in such processes. For example, FTICR-MS has offered chemical insights of how oil sands bitumens’ asphaltenes or other naturally occurring surfactants influence production process derived from emulsion stabilization. Jarvis et al. (2015) used different methods to obtain the interfacial material from Canadian bitumen emulsion species via a wet silica partitioning chromatography approach. After FTICR-MS analyses, the isolated interfacial material was compared to the parent oil, showing higher abundances of heteroatom-containing species (O, S, and N) and lower carbon numbers for the components, indicating the importance of non-hydrocarbons to interfacial phenomena in petroleum systems.

4 Environmental Implications of Oil Sands Bitumen Biogeochemistry

The unique biogeochemistry and compositions of oil sands bitumens are a major factor which has to be considered in the environmental assessments of current and future bitumen exploitation. For example, from the production perspective, the extreme viscosity of oil sands bitumens, up to millions of centipoises at reservoir conditions (Larter et al. 2008), is one of the reasons why significant input of energy and water resources is needed in the production process (Gates and Larter 2014) (Fig. 4). Energy and water are used for extraction in both surface mining and during in situ recovery (e.g., steam assisted gravity drainage, SAGD, and cyclic steam stimulation, CSS), as well for separation of oil from the mineral phase (clays and sands) and its subsequent upgrading (Larter and Head 2014). It is estimated that 28.5 L of water are used to produce 1 L of bitumen, using surface mining (Rosa et al. 2017). In situ methods are much more water efficient, using, under ideal conditions, some 2.8 L of water per liter of bitumen produced (Rosa et al. 2017). Notwithstanding, the annual freshwater use for Canadian bitumen processing will potentially increase by approx. 40% to 2040, compared to current use (Fig. 4; Rosa et al. 2017).

Large quantities of water used in the production of bitumen generate equally large volumes of oil sands process-affected water (OSPW). OSPW is a complex, residual mixture of bitumen components, mineral fraction, and chemicals used for
Production and spill-related environmental implications of oil sands bitumen biogeochemistry. Water usage is related to current and potential freshwater use for the oil sands extraction and processing in Canada (Charpentier et al. 2009; Larter and Head 2014; Radović et al. 2018; Rosa et al. 2017).

![Diagram](image)

**Production related environmental implications**

**High water usage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>km³/yr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential (by 2040)</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**High energy input and GHG emissions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Well-to-refinery)</th>
<th>kgCO₂-eq/bbl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>surface mining</td>
<td>62-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-situ</td>
<td>99-176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conventional</td>
<td>27-58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Deforestation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>km²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>1476</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential (by 2040)</td>
<td>7482</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spill related environmental implications**

- Fouling
- Fast spreading
- Sinking tendency
- Accumulation (in organic or lipid rich matrices), persistence and long-term toxicity of aromatic compounds
- Accumulation of non-hydrocarbon compounds in OSPW
- Poorly characterized environmental behavior and effects of polar, NSO fractions

**Canadian Oil Sands Bitumens**

- Viscous (>10,000 cP to tens of millions of cP)
- Dense (<10° API)
- High content of NSO (nitrogen, sulphur, oxygen) polar compounds (25 – 60 wt%)

**Fig. 4** Production and spill-related environmental implications of oil sands bitumen biogeochemistry. Water usage is related to current and potential freshwater use for the oil sands extraction and processing in Canada (Charpentier et al. 2009; Larter and Head 2014; Radović et al. 2018; Rosa et al. 2017)
the treatment of oil sands, which has to be stored in tailings ponds, for settling, containment, and future treatment. Currently, tailings ponds cover an area of 180 km² (Alberta Energy 2017), contributing in this way to land disruption. Deforestation is another consequence of surface oil sands mining – net forested area in Alberta has been reduced by 10% in the period from 2000 to 2014, and will potentially worsen in the future (Rosa et al. 2017; Fig. 4).

Finally, energy-intensive production process results in higher carbon emissions from the exploitation of bitumens, relative to the production emissions from conventional oil reservoirs. For example, “well-to-refinery” greenhouse gas emissions of oil sands production (both surface mining and in situ) are about three times higher than the emissions from conventional oil production (Fig. 4; Charpentier et al. 2009).

Distinct chemical compositions of oil sands bitumen are the main factor to be considered when evaluating the behavior, fate, and toxic effects of spills and leakages occurring during the oil production and transport processes or from the tailings of process water residues. In Alberta, during the 37-year long period (1975–2012), there have been, on average, close to 650 oil spills per year, releasing approx. 46,000 bbl annually (Radović et al. 2018). Of those, some of the largest releases were due to the pipeline failures, such as the Pembina pipeline spill in 1980, or from train derailments, such as the spill to Wabamun Lake in 2005.

The main compositional features that makes bitumens so different to other oils are the high content of high-molecular weight compounds, concentrated, in particular, within the non-hydrocarbon rich, polar fractions of oil (operationally defined resin and asphaltene fractions). The remaining dense and viscous fluid is dominated by highly alkylated and cyclized aromatic compounds and in particular by nitrogen, sulfur, and oxygen (NSO) containing non-hydrocarbons (Fig. 4). Such enrichment in polar species is partly the consequence of extensive in-reservoir biodegradation, which occurred over geological timescale and led to almost complete depletion of \( n \)-alkanes, followed by isoprenoid alkanes and cyclic and aromatic hydrocarbons (Larter and Head 2014). Additionally, in foreland basin settings, the heavily biodegraded oils on the basin margins are commonly charged from relatively low maturity, and in the case of Canada, high-organic sulfur-rich source rock systems (Adams et al. 2013).

In the case of a heavy oil or bitumen spill (often diluted with solvents to so-called dilbit), due to adverse adhesion properties and commonly high viscosity, such oils can have negative physical effects on the environment, such as the fouling of surfaces, plants, and animals. On the positive side, spills of viscous oils have limited spreading tendency, so their containment and removal in both aquatic and terrestrial media is facilitated, using response measures such as booming, in situ burning, and excavation. High densities of bitumen, on the other hand, can promote sinking when released to water. Sunken oil has negative effects to benthic biota; and, in addition, once it is in the sediments, the natural removal processes such as biodegradation and photooxidation will be significantly inhibited, extending oil’s persistence in the environment. For example, a portion of heavy oil spilled on Wabamun Lake was transported to the lake floor and has been resurfacing for years after the spill (Hollebone et al. 2011). Light hydrocarbon fraction of solvents used in dilbits
would have higher environmental mobility, being preferentially lost through evaporation.

From the perspective of their environmental partitioning and toxicity in the case of a spill, the particular chemistry of the bitumen has to be considered. For example, alkylated, high ring number homologs of aromatic hydrocarbons, which are found in abundance in Canadian bitumens, are hydrophobic and have the tendency to accumulate in organic or lipid-rich matrices (e.g., sediment, fat tissues). In addition, they are more resistant to biodegradation (Overton et al. 2016) and potentially have chronic adverse effects, as demonstrated in several field and laboratory studies (deBruyn et al. 2007; Vrabie et al. 2012; Radović et al. 2014b).

Most significantly, the environmental behavior of the polar, non-hydrocarbon fractions of oil sands bitumens is still not very well understood and is often overlooked and ignored, due to the limitations of traditional analytical methods, typically based on gas chromatography, which are not capable of characterizing this nonvolatile portion of the oil. In addition to being present in native oil, heteroatom-containing compounds can also be produced from the parent hydrocarbons (typically aromatic species) during the post-spill weathering processes, such as photooxidation and/or biodegradation (Radović et al. 2014a; Ruddy et al. 2014).

Conveniently, analytical improvements in the past years, in particular the advent of novel instrumental tools, such as the Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometry (FTICR-MS), have revolutionized our understanding of high-molecular weight, polar oil constituents. In a recent FTICR-MS study, it has been demonstrated that despite their high nominal mass (300–600 Da), many of the polar oil species were able to partition into water phase, if a sufficient number of heteroatoms (NSO) were present in the molecule (Liu and Kujawinski 2015). Once in water, polar oil constituents become more mobile and potentially bioavailable. Other FTICR-MS studies have confirmed that the same mechanism also occurs during bitumen production, when complex, heteroatom compound classes will preferentially partition to OSPW (Quesnel et al. 2015). For example, naphthenic acids are a group of compounds which is extensively studied in OSPW, due to their demonstrated acute and chronic toxicity (Thomas et al. 2009; Scarlett et al. 2013). Naphthenic acids are typically alkyl-substituted, alicyclic carboxylic acids, including polycarboxylic acids (i.e., with more than one acidic group), but also sulfur-containing acidic species (Quesnel et al. 2015), though aromatic components, may be also present in this fraction. Given the fact that toxic naphthenic acids can be quite persistent (Whitby 2010), there is an urgent need to find effective and feasible methods for the remediation of large volumes of OSPW currently stored in tailings ponds – almost 1,000 million m³ as of 2013 (Alberta Energy 2017).

In conclusion, from the environmental perspective, oil sands bitumen biogeochemistry needs to be better understood, in order to be able to reliably assess the effects and ultimate fate of potential future spills. In the coming years, bitumens, often diluted by solvent to facilitate transportation, will be increasingly transported via existing and planned pipelines or possibly even by tankers, thus increasing the risk of terrestrial and marine spills. Leaching, or accidental spills of contaminated waters from tailings ponds, is another troublesome risk which has to be managed.
Finally, improved knowledge of bitumen biogeochemistry and its impact on the
distribution of fluid properties will help to optimize the energy and water efficiency
of production processes. In all these cases, composition and behavior of polar, non-
hydrocarbon fraction of oil sands bitumens is the main unknown and the main
research area for investigation. Fortunately, as ever, we are in an era where new
analytical tools and methods are arriving.

5 Research Needs

The principal area needing development is the holistic description and quantitation
of the non-hydrocarbon species in severely biodegraded petroleum and the definition
of their biogeochemical origins and fates. Relating this diverse mixtures of species to
the processing behavior in a refinery, or the environmental and toxicological behavior
of a complex bitumen or heavy oil, in a spill setting, is crucial and will require the
integration of more advanced analytical chemical protocols, the ability to predict
environmental behavior of individual chemical species from structural information,
and improved laboratory techniques and computational models for the assessment of
non-hydrocarbon species partition from oil into water columns under a variety of
natural environments (Jaggi et al. 2017). Our understanding of the non-hydrocarbon
species in petroleum today is at about the same stage of development of understanding
of the hydrocarbon species and petroleum in the 1970s and 1980s. There is much
to be done and many discoveries to be made!

Acknowledgments We acknowledge the support of Canada Research Chairs, Canada Foundation
for Innovation, NSERC, the University of Calgary and PRG group members, past and present, for
discussions.

References

Adams J, Larter S, Bennett B, Huang H (2012) Oil charge migration in the peace river oil sands and
mixing, charge timing, and biodegradation in forming the Alberta oil sands: insights from
geologic modeling and biogeochemistry. In: Heavy-oil and oil-sand petroleum systems in
Alberta and beyond. AAPG studies in geology, vol 64. AAPG, Canadian Heavy Oil Association
and AAPG Energy Minerals Division, pp 23–102
biodegradation of petroleum in the subsurface. Org Geochem 37:787–797
in biodegraded bitumen from Palaeozoic carbonates in northern Alberta. Org Geochem
40:667–670
The controls on the composition of biodegraded oils in the deep subsurface-part 3. The impact of
microorganism distribution on petroleum geochemical gradients in biodegraded petroleum
reservoirs. Org Geochem 56:94–105
Hein FJ, Leckie D, Larter S, Suter JR (2013) Heavy oil and bitumen petroleum systems in Alberta and beyond: the future is nonconventional and the future is now. AAPG Stud Geol 64:1–21
Part II: geological controls on subsurface biodegradation fluxes and constraints on reservoir-fluid property prediction. AAPG Bull 90:921–938


Secondary microbial gas is produced by microbes during biodegradation of petroleum. Methane is the terminal product of petroleum biodegradation and is the dominant hydrocarbon component of secondary microbial gas. Secondary microbial gas is often mixed with thermogenic gas and primary microbial gas in shallow biodegraded petroleum accumulations and in petroleum seeps, and an integrated geochemical–geological approach is needed to recognize its presence. Significant $^{13}$C-enrichment of associated CO$_2$ ($\delta^{13}$C $>+2\%$) is perhaps the best geochemical indicator of secondary microbial gas. Recent assessments suggest that secondary microbial gas may be more abundant in petroleum accumulations than primary microbial gas.

A. V. Milkov (*)
Department of Geology and Geological Engineering, Colorado School of Mines, Golden, CO, USA
e-mail: amilkov@mines.edu
1 Introduction

Primary microbial gas formed by microbes from dispersed organic matter in relatively shallow and cool sediments is commonly recognized in seeps, sediments, and petroleum accumulations (Strapoć 2017) and is thought to account for more than 20% of world’s natural gas resources (Rice and Claypool 1981). However, the growth of geochemical database on gases and oils from shallow petroleum accumulations and from natural seeps led to the recognition that some gases previously thought to have primary microbial origin actually formed from biodegraded petroleum during secondary methanogenesis (Etiope et al. 2009; Milkov 2010). As a large portion of petroleum accumulations in the world experienced anaerobic biodegradation (Roadifer 1987; Head et al. 2003) resulting in the formation of secondary microbial gas (predominantly methane), this gas is likely a very significant component of many petroleum systems. In this chapter, I first review the main biogeochemical pathways of secondary microbial gas formation and propose how to recognize that gas in natural environments. I then describe the global occurrences of secondary microbial gas and volumetric significance of the gas in conventional petroleum accumulations.

2 Formation of Secondary Microbial Gas

Laboratory experiments demonstrate that anaerobic biodegradation of oil results in the formation of secondary microbial gas in which methane is the predominant hydrocarbon (Bokova 1953; Ekzercev 1960; Zengler et al. 1999; Jones et al. 2008). The net reaction of methanogenic hydrocarbon degradation (with hexadecane as an example) is $4C_{16}H_{34} + 64H_2O \rightarrow 49CH_4 + 15CO_2$. This reaction may proceed via several pathways. It appears that complete oxidation of alkanes to H$_2$ and CO$_2$ followed by methanogenesis from CO$_2$ reduction ($CO_2 + 4H_2 \rightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O$) is the main pathway, while acetoclastic methanogenesis ($CH_3COOH \rightarrow CH_4 + CO_2$) and methylotrophic methanogenesis ($4CH_3OH \rightarrow 3CH_4 + CO_2 + 2H_2O$) are less quantitatively important (Dolfing et al. 2008; Feisthauer et al. 2010; Meslé et al. 2013). Methanogens can use other substrates such as formate, methylamines, dimethyl sulfide, ethanol, and isopropanol, but the possible relevance of these substrates for methane formation is not well documented (Colosimo et al. 2016). Although methane is the main hydrocarbon gas generated during petroleum biodegradation, limited laboratory experiments suggest that small amounts of C$_2$ gases (C$_1$C$_2$,~2600) also form during petroleum biodegradation, along with N$_2$, CO$_2$, H$_2$, and H$_2$S (Bokova 1953).

Figure 1 describes the formation of primary and secondary microbial methane in the subsurface environments. While primary microbial methane forms from complex and commonly dispersed organic matter, secondary microbial methane forms from petroleum (commonly oil) accumulations with highly concentrated and relatively simple organic matter. As a result, secondary methanogenesis appears to be a more
Fig. 1 Formation of primary microbial methane (left panel) and secondary microbial methane (right panel) in the subsurface. Thickness of the black arrows indicates the assumed relative significance of methanogenic pathways.
efficient process and generates a larger amount of accumulated subsurface gas than primary methanogenesis as discussed below.

3 Recognition of Secondary Microbial Gas in Natural Environments

Biodegraded oils may comprise more than half of the volume of petroleum in the world’s largest accumulations (Roadifer 1987). Biodegradation is also a common process in petroleum seeps (Etiopé et al. 2009). As secondary microbial methane is the terminal product of oil biodegradation (Zeikus 1977; Head et al. 2003; Larter et al. 2005), it is reasonable to expect the occurrence of secondary microbial gas in most biodegraded petroleum accumulations and in most petroleum seeps. However, natural petroleum gases are commonly mixtures. All oil accumulations have associated thermogenic gases, and many of them have an admixture of primary microbial gases (Katz et al. 2002; Milkov et al. 2007). During the biodegradation, the gas becomes more methane-dominated as some C2+ gases such as propane are preferentially degraded (James and Burns 1984). As the secondary microbial methane is added to the gas mixture within biodegraded petroleum accumulations, the total gas becomes even dryer, and the C1/(C2 + C3) ratio can increase significantly and reach values around 10,000 (Boreham et al. 2001). Based on molecular composition alone, this very dry secondary microbial gas may be confused with methane-dominated gases of primary microbial origin or thermogenic gases of high maturity.

Carbon isotopes provide means to recognize secondary microbial gas in natural environments. Milkov (2011) reviewed the geochemistry of gases within biodegraded accumulations around the world and found that methane within the global biodegradation zone is often enriched in $^{12}\text{C}$ relatively to methane below the biodegradation zone. Still, as biodegradation zone occurs in shallow cool sedimentary section, primary microbial methane enriched in $^{12}\text{C}$ may mix with biodegraded petroleum and mask the presence of secondary microbial methane. Many gases in biodegraded petroleum accumulations have CO2 significantly enriched in $^{13}\text{C}$ with $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ values often exceeding +2‰ and reaching as high as +32.7‰ (Lillis et al. 2007). Petroleum seeps also often have CO2 significantly enriched in $^{13}\text{C}$ (Etiopé et al. 2009) with $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ values as high as +35.6‰ (Tassi et al. 2012). Such significant enrichment of CO2 in $^{13}\text{C}$ usually does not result from other petroleum systems processes and may be unique to secondary methanogenesis. As CO2 derived from biodegraded oil is converted into secondary microbial methane, the residual CO2 becomes more enriched in $^{13}\text{C}$. Therefore, enrichment of CO2 in $^{13}\text{C}$ may correlate with the degree of conversion of oil to secondary microbial gas and may be used to quantify the amount of secondary microbial gas in petroleum accumulations.

Secondary microbial gas may have wide ranges of molecular composition as well as $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ of methane and CO2 depending on the initial oil composition, environmental conditions, microbial consortia, level of biodegradation, and extent of CO2 conversion to methane (Milkov 2011). Still, secondary microbial gas can be recognized
based on the geochemical evidence. The most important evidence is \( \delta^{13}C \) of \( \text{CO}_2 \) > +2‰. Gases with ratio of \( C_1/(C_2 + C_3) \) exceeding 100 and having \( \delta^{13}C \) of methane around −55‰ to −45‰ are also likely to have significant contribution of secondary microbial methane. Combining these geochemical evidence allows distinguishing secondary microbial gases from primary microbial gases and from thermogenic gases (Fig. 2). For more certain interpretation, these geochemical evidence should be consistent with other evidence such as the presence of biodegraded oil within the accumulation (or in deeper accumulations and/or down-dip) and the existence of geological conditions for biodegradation (relatively low temperature below 90 °C, availability of nutrients, relatively low pore water salinity, relatively high porosity, proximity to oil–water contact or gas–water contact, and sufficient geological time after the reservoir filling).

**Fig. 2** The plot of \( C_1/(C_2 + C_3) \), \( \delta^{13}C \) of \( C_1 \) and \( \delta^{13}C \) of \( \text{CO}_2 \) helps to distinguish secondary microbial gas from primary microbial gas and thermogenic gas.
4 Global Occurrences of Secondary Microbial Gas in Petroleum Accumulations

Secondary microbial gases occur in petroleum seeps and mud volcanoes (Etiope et al. 2009), gas hydrates (Sassen et al. 2001) as well as in conventional (Pallasser 2000; Lillis et al. 2007; Milkov 2010; Mathur 2017), shale (McIntosh et al. 2002; Martini et al. 2003) and coalbed (Scott et al. 1994; Guo et al. 2012; Baublys et al. 2015) petroleum reservoirs.

Milkov (2011) compiled a map of secondary microbial gas occurrences in conventional petroleum accumulations, and the updated version of that map is presented in Fig. 3. To date, there are 27 basins with apparent and significant presence of secondary microbial gas, as evidenced by the presence of biodegraded petroleum and CO2 with $\delta^{13}C$ exceeding $+2\%$. There are 14 basins where the presence of secondary microbial gas is probable because relatively dry gas with $\delta^{13}C$ of $C_1$ between $-55\%$ and $-35\%$ associates with biodegraded oil. Finally, there are six basins with possible presence of secondary microbial gas as evidenced by the high dryness of the gas associated with biodegraded oil (even though the isotope data are not available).

It is apparent that secondary methanogenesis is a global phenomenon that occurs in conventional reservoirs in numerous sedimentary basins around the world. Secondary microbial gases commonly occur in relatively shallow (<3.5 km below surface/mudline) and relatively cool (<90 °C) clastic reservoirs of mostly Cretaceous and Tertiary age.

5 Volumetric Significance of Secondary Microbial Gas

It is difficult to calculate the amount of secondary microbial gas in petroleum accumulations because this gas is always mixed with the thermogenic gas that was associated with original nondegraded petroleum and is often mixed with primary microbial gas. Geochemical mixing models need to be developed to quantify the portion of secondary microbial gas in reservoir gas mixtures. Milkov (2011) used a series of assumptions and approximations and estimated that 1461–2760 trillion cubic feet (tcf) in place (845–1644 tcf recoverable) of secondary microbial gas may be accumulated as free and oil-dissolved gas in petroleum reservoirs. This suggests that secondary microbial gas is more abundant in petroleum accumulations than primary microbial gas (Fig. 4). Although the suggestion of Rice and Claypool (1981) that more than 20% of the world’s gas has primary microbial origin remains widely cited, the recent work indicates that primary microbial gas may be much less significant (3–4%), while secondary microbial gas (5–11%) and especially thermogenic gas (85–92%) dominate conventional petroleum accumulations.

A very large amount of secondary microbial gas (~65,500 tcf according to the estimation by Milkov 2011) was generated by currently existing biodegraded petroleum accumulations. Although some of that gas is present in petroleum
Fig. 3  Worldwide distribution of conventional petroleum reservoirs where the presence of secondary microbial gas is apparent, probable, and possible (updated from Milkov 2011)
accumulations, most of it likely escaped into the overburden, the ocean, and the atmosphere (Fig. 5). As secondary microbial gas is composed mostly of methane, which is a potent greenhouse gas, it likely played a significant but yet unquantified and not understood role in the past climate changes.
6  Research Needs

Although secondary microbial gas is present worldwide in conventional and unconventional petroleum accumulations as well as in petroleum seeps and mud volcanoes, relatively little research has been done to understand its volumetric significance and its role in global methane reservoir and cycle. I envision three main research needs on secondary microbial gas:

1. Creation of geochemical mixing models to quantify the portion of secondary microbial gas in reservoir gas mixtures which commonly include thermogenic gas and primary microbial gas
2. Advanced comprehensive laboratory studies of methanogenic biodegradation of petroleum to better understand molecular and isotopic properties of gas products and the relative significance of various pathways of methanogenesis
3. Assessments of secondary microbial gas flux from shallow biodegraded reservoirs into the atmosphere at present and in the past and understanding the role of this gas in carbon cycle and global climate change

References


Geological, Geochemical, and Microbial Factors Affecting Coalbed Methane

Curtis Evans, Karen Budwill, and Michael J. Whiticar

Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................. 624
2 Geology of Coal and CBM .............................................. 626
   2.1 Characterization and Classification of Coal ..................... 627
   2.2 Coal as a CBM Reservoir ......................................... 628
   2.3 Geochemical Factors of CBM: Stable Isotope Analysis ........ 630
3 Microbial Ecology of Coalbeds ...................................... 632
   3.1 Overview of Anaerobic Degradation of Organic Matter .......... 632
   3.2 Microbial Ecology of Deep Coalbeds ........................... 633
   3.3 Microbial Coal Bioconversion Pathways ........................ 637
4 Field Trial Applications of Enhanced Biogenic CBM ............... 639
5 Future Research ...................................................... 641
6 Cross-References ...................................................... 642
References ....................................................................... 642

C. Evans (✉)
School of Earth and Ocean Sciences, University of Victoria, Victoria, BC, Canada
e-mail: c2evans@uvic.ca

K. Budwill
Processing Technologies, InnoTech Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada
e-mail: Karen.Budwill@innotechalberta.ca

M. J. Whiticar
Biogeochemistry Facility (BF-SEOS), School of Earth and Ocean Sciences, University of Victoria,
Victoria, BC, Canada

Hanse-Wissenschaftskolleg, HWK (Institute for Advanced Study), Delmenthorst, Germany
e-mail: whiticar@uvic.ca

© Crown 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3_21
Abstract

Coalbed methane (CBM) is an unconventional resource for natural gas production. Years of research have clearly demonstrated that, in addition to thermogenically produced CBM, microorganisms indigenous to the coal seams are capable of converting some of the hydrocarbon portion of the coal to methane. CBM production is, therefore, not only dependent on the types of microbes present and their metabolic activities but also on the physicochemical properties of the coal itself, such as depositional environments and history and chemical makeup. Understanding the geological, geochemical, and microbial factors affecting CBM formation can lead to the development of effective processes to enhance methane production rates and yields.

1 Introduction

Coalbed methane (CBM, also natural gas from coal/NGC, or coal seam gas/CSG) is natural gas inherently from and dependent on coal (after Flores 1998; Golding et al. 2010). Coal is more fully characterized than CBM itself, as coal is the source substrate for both thermogenic and microbial or biological gas generation of CBM. Coal is defined as a sedimentary rock, usually black, with more than fifty percent (50%) by weight organic matter (Hatch and Affolter 2002; AER 2014a), but often with mineral matter between 5 and 15 percent (5%–15% MM). In common parlance, the simpler phrase “Coal is a usually black rock that burns and is used for fuel” is often an adequate definition of coal, but the microscopic details of coal as a hydrocarbon substrate for biological activity can be extremely complex (Van Krevelen 1961; Levine et al. 1982; Thomas 2013). The generation and release of CBM is dependent on that complexity to some degree, but it also can be simplified as the common natural processes of microbial alteration/degradation, burial/compaction, heating/coalification (the chemical and physical devolatilization of organic material by pressure, temperature, and biological processes, Tissot and Welte 1984), and flexure/cleating, affecting organic matter to generate and release predominantly methane irrespective of the complexity of most coals. Definitions are key to understanding, and this paper, contrary to common industry use of the term biogenic (meaning sourced from “organic activity”), uses biogenic meaning “sourced from organic matter.” As all coal, except the ash component, is organic matter, all CBM is biogenic even when it is generated by heating (e.g., thermogenic subcategory that is separate from microbial).

All coals inherently have methane present to some degree, by adsorption and/or absorption – two words with very similar in spelling but very different process. The general concept is that adsorption has methane molecules strongly bound inside the lattice of complex hydrocarbons that forms the base structure of coal and absorption is where methane molecules are weakly bound to the surface of the hydrocarbon molecules – absorbed methane is usually not produced in commercial gas
production – the process of extracting CBM as adsorbed gas is described in numerous articles (Ertekin et al. 1991; SPE 1992; Crossdale et al. 1998; Seidle 2011). Storage of natural gas in similar fashion to CBM can also be found in shaley coals and coaly shales (Lancaster 1996), but the changes to methane composition and isotopes in shales can be very different (Golding et al. 2013).

Coal is also a source for other commodities and by-products of coal extraction as discussed in a previous volume of this series (Kirby et al. 2010; Hüsers and Werner 2010; Meckenstock et al. 2010), and coal is sourced from depositional environments related to soils, wetlands, and peat deposits (Kotsyurbenko 2010), with the chemistry of the coal dependent on the peat chemistry (Spackman et al. 1988; Swaine 1990), which can be very complicated (Speight 1983). This review will include concepts that the original vegetation-derived organic matter is affected by shifting from aerobic processes to anaerobic processes with different time scales and possible reoccurrences of the different processes.

In situ coal gasification (ISCG, or underground coal gasification, UCG, Friedmann et al. 2009) and in situ coal-to-liquids (ICTL) may appear to be similar to CBM, but ISCG is a human-triggered thermal conversion process that would necessarily destroy the habitat and life patterns for microbes in coal as a partial oxidation process. ISCG is the induced pyrolysis of coal at depth in the original stratigraphic and geological structure without disturbing the strata other than by drilling injection and production wells (Bhutto et al. 2013; Klimenko 2009; Blinderman et al. 2008). Some studies have determined a new form of ISCG may be by induced microbial methanogenesis (Senthamaraikkannan et al. 2016) as low temperature conversion of coal to liquids or gases – this has not been extensively field tested and is described below. Many jurisdictions clearly differentiate between the more passive CBM production as gas removal and the pyrolyzed coals and cavities due to ISCG (ERCB 2007; AER 2014b; Swanhills Synfuels 2017), but there has been no need to define enhanced microbial CBM or ISCG. At this time, not very much is known about the pyrolysis effects of ISCG on the microbial communities within or adjacent to the coals.

CBM has many years of production testing and analysis (Rightmire et al. 1984; Nelson et al. 2000; NEB 2007; Clarkson 2009, etc.) which is derived from analysis to determine the cause of coalmine explosion and fire events from firedamp (methane) and coal dust (Kissell et al. 1973; McCulloch et al. 1975).

The chemical analysis of coal has long history back before the 1900s, but it was usually by distillation or solvent extraction. Oxidation studies after 1925 focused on altering the benzenoid aromatic structures (Van Krevelen 1961; Speight 1983; Stranges 1997) to manufacture various synthetic drugs, dyes, plastics, solvents, etc. (Schulz 1999). Biological changes to in situ coal molecular structure have relatively little research other than recent studies described for CBM here (e.g., Stephen et al. 2014). This chapter will focus on the geological, geochemical, and microbial characteristics of coal seams that affect thermogenic versus biogenic or secondary coalbed methane production. Also, there is some description of how these characteristics can be manipulated to enhance microbial production of CBM.
2 Geology of Coal and CBM

Coal is a sedimentary rock preserved in sedimentary basins and one of the largest occurrences of hydrocarbons on this planet (Fig. 1b – WCI 2009; IEA 2012, 2016; BP 2017) with widely scattered deposits (Fig. 1a – Landis and Weaver 1993). The mechanics of excavating coal from the ground (as mining) and the chemistry of burning it for heat energy have been moderately well studied for hundreds of years (Eavenson 1939; Van Krevelen 1961; Chironis 1978; Nielsen and Richardson 1982; Peters 1991; Singh 1997; WCI 2009; IEA 2013). Even the comparatively novel and less used process of coal-to-liquids (CTL) is over 70 years old (Fischer and Tropsch 1926, 1930; Schulz 1999; Stranges 2007; SASOL 2017).

The production of CBM as natural gas from coal seams is relatively new in comparison (Rightmire et al. 1984; Dawson 1995; Law and Rice 1993) and started from degassing wells in advance of underground mining in the 1970s (Kissell et al. 1973; McCulloch et al. 1975; Rightmire et al. 1984; Ryan and Dawson 1994; Flores 1998). The development of gas production technology and resource determination separate from any plans for mining in very deep seams started as an incentive resulting from the OPEC energy crisis of the 1970s (Rightmire et al. 1984; Zuber 1998) with many programs focusing on the development of the resource, especially in the USA (Rightmire et al. 1984) and less so in other countries. Commercial production of CBM is now common in many sedimentary basins (Schraufnagel and McBane 1994).

Most sedimentary basins have coal deposits of some degree, and those are well documented as resources (WCI 2009; IEA 2012; Landis and Weaver 1993). As CBM is hosted by a sedimentary rock (coal), it is often in geological contact with other sedimentary rocks, and the coal is considered to be a possible source for methane in those strata if they have reservoir properties. Sedimentary basins have been well studied in the exploration for petroleum resources (Tissot and Welte 1984) including burial and thermal maturity (Rashid 1985; Curiale and Curtis 2016) in addition to how the basins are eroded or unroofed (Hacquebard and Donaldson 1970; Hood et al. 1975). The burial of a basin takes organic material through diagenesis for biogenic methane, catagenesis for oil, and metagenesis for

![Fig. 1 (a) and (b) World coal distribution on land (Bhutto et al. 2013 figure 1) and world coal/oil/gas reserves (million tonnes oil equivalent) as framework for CBM resources (WCI https://www.worldcoal.org/coal/where-coal-found Last accessed August 2017)](image-url)
thermogenic methane (Rashid 1985, Curiale and Curtis 2016). This history for each stratum in each basin affects the process of CBM (Mariño et al. 2015) as some basins have not been taken to a level of thermal maturity where CBM is generated by thermogenic process, thus biogenic gas is the primary form of CBM (Peck 1999; Ayers 2000; Clarkson 2009). The methane in the Powder River Basin is sourced almost completely from biological activity (Peck 1999; Formolo et al. 2008).

Other basins (IEA 2008, 2009, Johnson and Flores 1998) have had a large amount of thermogenic gas generation, but biogenic gas results may be overprinting due to a combination of flushing of the biogenic older gases and more recent biogenic influx. Depending on the basin configuration, some coals are saturated with water and form aquifers (e.g., Nelson et al. 2000; Ayers 2002; Li et al. 2015), while other coals are “dry” and do not have very much water content on a regional basis (e.g., “dry CBM” as NEB 2007, Clarkson 2009) and there is a direct effect on the coal microbiology. Some examples have later meteoric water input to the basin that change the biological activity (Riese et al. 2005), and there can be large cross-formational water exchange (Salmachi and Karacan 2017). Differences between basins have been shown as large, widespread, gently subsiding basins on the margins of stable cratons, with simple geothermal histories (e.g., Western Canada Sedimentary Basin, Gulf Coast, USA, Bowen in Australia, etc.), to isolated, structural basins that have created a dropped block of geological basement, usually in a rifting situation, that quickly fills with sediment and retains groundwater (Long 1981; Fralick and Schenk 1981; Johnson and Flores 1998). Rift environments can be subject to complex thermal histories, structural interactions, differential uplift and erosion, and volcanic or plutonic intrusions (e.g., Stellarton (Nova Scotia), Hat Creek (British Columbia), Tintina (British Columbia), Chehalis (Washington), Mount Diablo (California), Cook Inlet (Alaska), Majuba (de Oliveira and Cawthorn 1999 – South Africa), etc.). Further aspects of coal forming in sedimentary basins, other than the oceanic basins, can depend on the issues of transgression and regression of depositional environments where sequence stratigraphy analysis has coal deposition generally at maximum flooding surfaces (Catuneanu 2003, 2006). Other results indicate that coal can be preserved during extensive subaerial exposure in elevated ponding locations as sea level is dropping (Cohen et al. 1984). Sequence stratigraphy also shows that isolated parcels of terrigenous coal bearing sediments can be encapsulated in either dominantly marine environments (regression/transgression cycles – Bhattacharya 1988, Rahman and Smith 1988) or alluvial deposits (falling stage systems tracts) either by clastic hiatus or reworking (Long 1981; Catuneanu 2003; Coe 2005).

2.1 Characterization and Classification of Coal

Coal is a “...variety of plant tissues in different states of preservation...” (Tissot and Welte 1984). To use a simpler statement: “Coal is formed by plant material that is more difficult to rot.” Just as there are different components of plants (wood, leaves, bark, resins, etc.), those components get preserved in coal as different macerals (e.g., vitrinite, exinite, tellinite, resinite, Stach et al. 1982, Thomas 2013, ICCP 1993), where macerals are to coals as minerals are to rocks (Swaine 1990). From this
concept, a complication is the varying degrees of biological or oxidizing alteration of the original plant materials before they are preserved as macerals in the coal (Speight 1983): low levels of alteration leads to preservation of the original structure of the plant material. This is opposed to high levels of alteration, where there is only a gel-like organic material remaining (biological degradation) or charcoal (oxidizing degradation) preserved (Stach et al. 1982). Also, the structure of plants has changed over geological time with more recent flowering plants in the Tertiary era having more complex structure than the early plants of the Devonian age (Fortney 1997).

The spectrum of plant materials and spectrum of alteration processes result in a classification of hundreds of macerals (ICCP 1993) that can serve to identify the source plant material (in some cases) and the processes active during coal deposition (Van Krevelen 1961; Speight 1983; Swaine 1990; ICCP 1993).

Most coals are deposited in terrestrial low-productivity/stressed environments in coastal areas (Tissot and Welte 1984), lilypad marshes (Cohen et al. 1984), raised mires (Page et al. 2006), and very rarely in marine locations (Tissot and Welte 1984). By their very nature, depositional environments are highly stressed for the plants growing there, and the biodiversity is reduced in many cases (Wust and Bustin 2003). Often, the less ash in the coal and the more isolated from sediment input, the more stressed the biological environment and thus the microbial activity is low. Heavy plant growth in complex upland ecosystems is not usually associated with coal depositional environments as decomposition often occurs as quickly as growth (Tissot and Welte 1984). Coal is not preserved where an open aerobic system as a non-stressed environment is efficiently recycling the organic material by microbial activity.

As coal deposition is often in anaerobic aqueous environments, there are usually high amounts of organic acids present. There is often a strong profile of changing microbes with water depth as reflecting a shift from oxidizing to reducing conditions (Tissot and Welte 1984). This may change with groundwater recharge over time. The initial conditions usually favor one side of the redox conditions of microbial activity (Humez et al. 2016). Understanding the types of macerals present and the depositional history can provide clues as to how susceptible the coal in a given formation is to microbial biodegradation activities. Some of this will be touched in the following sections; however, much more research is required to fully understand the linkages between coal physicochemical properties, geological history and propensity for microbial CBM production, migration, or even conversion to other compounds.

2.2 Coal as a CBM Reservoir

The description of coal in the other chapters of the previous volume (Kirby et al. 2010) is further elaborated here to show the dependency of CBM on the complexity of coal. A consistent layer of coal at a scale where it can be correlated and possibly mined is called a “seam.” A coal seam can be composed of many plies of different macerals, often between a centimeter and a millimeter thick. CBM is quantified by six main factors: (1) rank, (2) composition, (3) quality, (4) thickness, (5) thermal history, and (6) depth (Dawson et al. 2000). Some of the early estimates of CBM potential completely discounted biological gas generation (Rightmire et al. 1984) or
drastically underestimated the volume produced (Dawson et al. 2000). The six factors are expanded as:

1. Rank is the degree of varying pressure and/or heat that a coal has been subjected to, ranging from low-rank peat at low temperature and shallow depths to lignite to bituminous to high-rank anthracite with major changes in composition along a consistent progression. The majority of coals have a normal correlation between pressure and temperature. The units of coal rank are often the reflectance of vitrinite particles in the coal (Ro), but other tests such as proximate analysis can indicate the rank as the degree of heating, and pressure has large effects on the volatile matter, moisture, and fixed carbon – as rank increases, the first two are reduced and the third one is increased. Those percentages are often used as a surrogate for vitrinite reflectance but can have some variation from usual assumptions. Thermal processes do not create methane until the coal is heated to bituminous rank. Microbial processes actively form methane from coal from low rank at deposition well into the bituminous rank (Strapoć et al. 2011).

2. The composition of a coal is what the primary organic compounds are after humification and is usually determined by petrology as many forms of macerals have been defined (ICCP 1993). The original plant fragments can be difficult to determine in higher-rank coals as the diagnostic fabric of the maceral can be erased. Plant material with large degrees of pre-coal alteration is often preserved only as featureless gel macerals (Tissot and Welte 1984). Macerals in the vitratin/clarain groups are generally sourced from woody/leafy plant materials and form the brighter bands or plies in coal seams with the highest amounts of volatile compounds. Macerals in the fusain/durain groups are dull and are related to oxidized/fungal/degraded material and form dull bands or plies. Macerals that have been subjected to various types of oxidation, including combustion, before, during, or after deposition of the coal often have a charcoal texture, and there is often very little volatile matter remaining.

3. Coal quality is usually measured by the specific tests used in the mining industry over hundreds of years. One indication of coal quality is the percentage and type of sulfur present in the coal. This is often a good indicator of some depositional environments and geological age of the coals. The other measure of coal quality is the ash content (usually a rough parallel to mineral matter), and it generally has very little effect on rank but can affect the type of gas storage such as clay mineral adsorption instead of hydrocarbon adsorption.

4. Thickness is a basic reservoir description to constrain the lithological limits of the coal and determine a volume of similar characteristics.

5. Thermal history is the time series of how the rank was achieved as there may have been different episodes, rates, and durations of heating due to changes in burial, intrusion, unroofing, movements of fluids, etc. Some geological settings exist where a high heat gradient and low pressure create coals of unique character and also where a low heat gradient but great depth of burial means high pressure can create very different coals.

6. Depth is related to relative permeability, in addition to rank and thermal history, as many coals have natural bidirectional fracturing called cleat, but only below certain lithostatic pressure limits. At depths greater than the equivalent to that
pressure limit, the coal tends to behave in a plastic manner with noticeable closure of the permeability and often deformation into wellbores.

All of these factors except for thickness have direct relationships to and from the microbial activity present in the strata. Examples include early aerobic microbial humification of one portion of a depositional environment having very different structure and CBM content compared to a contiguous part of the same environment where only anaerobic processes occurred. Another example is the change in fractures (known as cleats) as a coal is moved from depths greater than 1200 m to shallow depths by erosion of overlying strata and the increased permeability of the coal allows groundwater in that either brings nutrients for dormant microbes or minerals to deposit in the cleat. Methane can also be released by fugitive emissions from coal seams during CBM dewatering (Etiop and Klusman 2010).

2.3 Geochemical Factors of CBM: Stable Isotope Analysis

This section is included to elaborate on previous descriptions (Pearson 2010; Whiticar 2017). Stable isotopes of carbon (\(^{13}\)C/\(^{12}\)C) and hydrogen (\(^{2}\)H/\(^{1}\)H, \(^{2}\)H is also known as deuterium, D) are used to estimate age, thermal history, maturity, stratigraphic correlation, depositional environment, source kerogens, biogenic limits, biodegradation, migration pathways, and mixing of natural gases (Whiticar 1996; Vlad 2010; Tilley and Muehlenbachs 2013; Golding et al. 2013). Microbial methanogenesis can complicate stable isotope results (Zumberge et al. 2009, 2012; Tilley et al. 2011), but they can also be used to determine the type of methanogenic pathways (Vinson et al. 2017 – see next section for description of the types of methanogenic pathways). Indeed, according to Niemann and Whiticar (2017), “The stable carbon isotope ratios of coalbed methane (CBM) demonstrate diagnostic changes that systematically vary with production and desorption times.” Nitrogen and oxygen isotopes are not often reported in evaluating CBM as they are minor components in the natural gas component and subject to atmospheric contamination (Golding et al. 2013).

Dissolved inorganic carbon in the ocean (DIC) is the main factor creating separation between carbonate \(^{13}\)C isotopic ratios (\(\delta^{13}\)C) and organic \(^{13}\)C and that separation is known for different eras of geological time. The atmospheric CO\(_2\) is also a factor as it is generally \(\delta^{13}\)C = −8‰ compared to DIC \(\delta^{13}\)C. Terrestrial plants derive carbon from the air, and further isotope fractionation occurs as the CO\(_2\) is transferred into the plant in addition, according to Whiticar (1996), to “...the enzymatic fixation of carbon during photosynthesis.” As most coals are sourced from terrestrial Calvin cycle plants and not marine organic carbon, the common isotopic \(\delta^{13}\)C is between −25‰ and −27‰ with very limited ranges. The procedures and detection limits are very well documented (Jochmann and Schmidt 2012).

Plant materials in the atmosphere usually decompose by aerobic biological oxidation to either 1-CO\(_2\) in the atmosphere or 2-DIC in water. Sulfate reduction is strong in marine systems and limited in freshwater systems, so any anaerobic freshwater environments quickly accumulate organic matter. If there is biological action on the anoxic accumulation of organic matter, it is fermentation by
methanogens to methane with large isotope effects resulting in $\delta^{13}C$ of $-50\%$ to $-112\%$ (Whiticar 1999). Maceral types can have different isotope signatures (Whiticar 1996), but CBM is predominantly sourced from brighter macerals (Chalmers and Bustin 2007) such as vitrinite and liptinite.

Production of CBM affects the isotope signatures of the produced gases (Fig. 2a – Niemann and Whiticar 2017) which plot distinctly on a CD cross-plot (Fig. 3 Niemann and Whiticar 2017, after Whiticar 1990). Tests done on samples of coal as they desorb in a controlled environment showed a reversed effect (Fig. 2b – Niemann and Whiticar 2017).

Generally, radiogenic isotopes are either not present in CBM by its very nature or the half-life of the applicable isotope, $^{14}C$, is far shorter than the residence of the gas in the reservoir. The only time when $^{14}C$ is functional in gas studies is when injected gases are spiked with a geochemical tracer to study gas pathways (e.g., Matter et al. 2011).

Fig. 2 (a) and (b) Time series plot of production gas composition and $\delta^{13}C$. (From Niemann and Whiticar 2017)

Fig. 3 CD (carbon/deuterium) cross-plot of methane $\delta^{2}H$ and $\delta^{13}C$ ratios. (After Whiticar 1993)
3   Microbial Ecology of Coalbeds

Biogenic CBM is classified as either of primary or secondary origin. Microbes involved in the initial degradation and coalification of peat and other plant precursors of coal are believed to have been sterilized during geological burial due to increased pressures and temperatures (above 80–100 °C). It is only after uplift of the coal seams and the influx of meteoric waters from shallower environments that coal seams became re-inoculated with bacterial and archaeal species (Strapoć et al. 2011; Barnhart et al. 2016). Over time and with sufficient reduction in the redox potential, as well as continued, but slow, recharge of coal seams with water, secondary biological gas generation occurred. The vast majority of the biogenic methane detected in coalbeds is of secondary production. Primary biogenic methane is being produced in only a few coal seams where insufficient burial occurred and thus the microbial community was not sterilized.

There are still unknowns about secondary biogenic CBM production, such as microbial residence time, their age (i.e., when were the coalbeds initially re-inoculated), and microbial growth rates. However, over the last decade, great strides in our understanding of the microbial ecology of deep coal seams were made and are summarized in this section.

3.1   Overview of Anaerobic Degradation of Organic Matter

It is well established that biogenic methane is the result of complex biochemical reactions by groups of microorganisms during the decomposition of organic matter in anoxic environments (for an overview, see Formolo 2010). An often diverse and complex microbial assemblage exists consisting of different groups of microorganisms closely related trophically and co-dependent on each other (Kotsyurbenko 2005). Briefly, organic matter in the subsurface is degraded in a stepwise fashion, so that the metabolic products of some microorganisms serve as substrates for the other microorganisms (Fig. 4).

Polymers are degraded by hydrolytic microorganisms with the production of monomeric compounds, particularly carbohydrates. The latter serve as substrates for primary fermentative anaerobic bacteria, which produce hydrogen and various volatile fatty acids. The fatty acids are further utilized by syntrophic, acetogenic bacteria with the formation of acetate and hydrogen. The hydrogen is concurrently consumed by another group of microorganisms, the methanogens, to very low residual concentrations that provide for the thermodynamically favorable conditions for syntrophic reactions. Methanogens, a group of strictly anaerobic microorganisms belonging to the archaea and requiring reducing environments (redox levels \( \text{Eh} < -200 \text{ mV} \)) for growth, produce methane as the final product during microbial methanogenesis (Zinder 1993, 1998). Methanogenic substrates are limited to \( \text{CO}_2 \), formate, \( \text{CO} \), methanol, acetate, and butyrate. The most common substrates are \( \text{CO}_2 \) and acetate. Hydrogenotrophic methanogens use a \( \text{CO}_2 \) reduction pathway to produce methane:
Acetotrophic or acetoclastic methanogens cleave acetate to CO₂ plus CH₄:

\[
\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{HCO}_3^-.
\]

Because of their specific substrate requirements, methanogens would not grow without being trophically related to the bacteria of the previous stages. Thus, the anaerobic community represents a biological system that is balanced by the coordinated interactions of the constituent microbial groups (Kotsyurbenko 2005).

### 3.2 Microbial Ecology of Deep Coalbeds

With the rapid development of molecular microbiological methods over the past couple of decades, limitations to our understanding of the microbial ecology in diverse environments have been greatly reduced and a great wealth of information about the phylogenetic and functional diversity contained within microbial communities has been obtained (Hazen et al. 2013). Molecular microbiological methods typically include taxonomic sequencing (i.e., SSU rRNA sequencing), metagenomics, and metatranscriptomics. The combined application of these methods can link organism abundance and activity with physicochemical properties of their environment (Chourey et al. 2013) and, in the case for deep coal seams, can provide valuable information for the understanding of biogenic methane production mechanisms as well as for their manipulation and control in situ.
Metagenomics is the study of genetic material directly recovered from an environment (Youngblood et al. 2014). DNA is linked with genes that are associated to microbial taxonomy and function and allows the characterization of the microbial community as it exists in nature (Youngblood et al. 2014). Metagenomes are thus highly predictive of the metabolic potential within an ecosystem (Smith et al. 2013). While it provides information on the possible activities of a microbial community, metagenomics cannot reveal activities at a specific time and place or how those activities change in response to environmental forces or biotic interactions (Moran 2009).

In contrast to metagenomics, metatranscriptomics studies and correlates the transcriptome of a group of interacting organisms. Transcriptomes are the complete set of messenger RNA (mRNA) molecules (transcripts) produced in a cell or a population of cells and represent the enzymes and metabolic activities expressed by genes. Thus, metatranscriptomics analyses can allow a greater picture of microbial activities and functions that are occurring at a particular time. There are still technical challenges with extracting mRNA that can lead to low yields of expressed gene sequences which have impeded its wide-scale application to environmental samples (Moran 2009).

Despite some inherent limitations and biases with molecular microbiological methods (for review, see Hazen et al. 2013), these methods, in particular taxonomic sequencing, have been used by a number of research groups to characterize the microbial assemblage of produced water and coal samples from coal basins around the world (for review, see Colosimo et al. 2016 and for examples Shimizu et al. 2007, Green et al. 2008, Midgley et al. 2010, Singh et al. 2012, Tang et al. 2012, Guo et al. 2012, Wei et al. 2013, and Barnhart et al. 2016).

The majority of the samples that have been analyzed have been single-point samples and thus may not fully represent the entire coal seam or capture any fluctuations in microbial community structure due to perturbations to the coal seam (e.g., CBM production, groundwater recharge). However, several trends can be teased out of the taxonomic data presented in the literature.

Firstly, it is apparent that the in situ bacterial community is usually much more diverse than the archaeal community. In fact, some researchers report being unable to amplify archaeal DNA, indicating the archaea and thus methanogens were below detection limits (Barnhart et al. 2016), possibly from low population numbers.

Within the bacterial communities characterized, the most frequently occurring phyla are Proteobacteria, Firmicutes, Bacteroidetes, and Actinobacteria (Ritter et al. 2015; Colosimo et al. 2016). The Proteobacteria consist of a diverse group of bacteria. In general, the classes Alphaproteobacteria, Betaproteobacteria, Gammaproteobacteria, and Deltaproteobacteria have all been detected in different relative abundance in coal seams around the world. Some Alphaproteobacteria are capable of polyaromatic hydrocarbon (PAH) degradation, and PAHs are the main organic compound class detected in CBM-produced water samples. Several groups of Betaproteobacteria are aerobic or facultative bacteria that are highly versatile in their biodegradation capabilities. The Deltaproteobacteria contain the strictly anaerobic sulfate-reducing bacteria as well as Geobacter sp. which is known to syntrophically
degrade aromatics and long-chain fatty acids coupled to reduction of Fe(III) as a terminal electron acceptor. The *Gammaproteobacteria* are a large heterogeneous class, containing among others denitrifying toluene-degrading strains.

Taxonomic sequencing of coal and produced water samples has often revealed the presence of sulfate-reducing bacteria (SRB) and methanogens (Ritter et al. 2015). While SSU rRNA sequencing cannot distinguish whether the identified microbes are active or viable or non-active/nonviable, it is counterintuitive to find both SRB and methanogens present in the same sample based on previous studies on the competition between these groups of microbes for substrates (Muyzer and Stams 2008). Indeed, it was concluded from an isotopic study on the dissolved inorganic carbon in the Illinois Basin that methanogenesis occurred after sulfate reduction. Rather than geochemical zones in sediments dictating which process will occur, geological time was the main factor influencing sulfate reduction before microbial methanogenesis (Glossner et al. 2016). However, a recent study by Glossner et al. (2016) concluded that SRB and methanogens can coexist together. Their relationship and whether one dominates over the other in activity are dependent not on the sulfate concentration but on the acetate concentration supplied through the metabolic activities of fermentative bacteria. The authors concluded that sulfate reduction and microbial methanogenesis in coalbeds depend on the presence of low acetate and sulfate concentration (less than 1000 μM) together with metabolically active SRB and methanogens.

The phylum *Firmicutes* consists mainly of fermenting and acetogenic bacteria. Interestingly they are usually only minor components of the in situ microbial community but flourish in laboratory microcosm enrichment cultures, especially when nutrients are added to stimulate methane production. *Clostridia* are *Firmicutes* commonly found in coalbeds and coal enrichment cultures. These spore-forming, anaerobic bacteria are pH-neutral solvent producers, mixed acid and alcohol producers, and homoacetogenic fermenters. They can also depolymerize starch, chitin, xylan, and cellulose.

Bacteria belonging to the *Bacteroidetes* are found in sediments and are chemoorganoheterotrophs, known to degrade proteins, chitin, pectin, agar, starch, or cellulose. The *Actinobacteria* are a common phylum found in soil and sediments, involved in the decomposition of organic matter. Many members possess the ability to degrade cellulose and hydrocarbons in aerobic environments.

Of the archaeal communities detected, the dominant group has been the methanogens. In some coal basins, *Methanosarcina* (capable of acetogenic and hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis) dominated, whereas in other coal basins, those methanogens capable of strictly hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis, such as *Methanosaeta*, dominated. In one study, *Methanosaeta* was found in the coal sample, while *Methanosarcina* was found in the water sample taken from the same well site (Wei et al. 2013).

A large comparative analysis of SSU rRNA sequences from coal cuttings, coal cores, and produced water from the three main CBM plays in the Alberta Basin in Western Canada clearly showed the assembly of coal microbial communities were shaped by habitat-specific environmental conditions (Lawson et al. 2015). These
conditions included coal rank, depth-dependent physicochemical conditions (such as salinity, temperature, pH), and hydrogeological conditions. Despite different community compositions found in the three different coal plays, they all contained the right groups required for the transformation of coal into methane. For example, specific microbes previously implicated in aromatic compound degradation, fermentation, and methanogenesis affiliated with *Thauera*, *Streptococcus*, and *Methanosarcina* were found in subbituminous coals. Microbes with similar functional potentials affiliated with uncultured *Rhodobacteraceae*, *Pelobacter*, and *Methanosarcina* were detected in volatile bituminous coals (Fig. 5).

Comparative analysis of the data from the Lawson et al. (2015) study suggests successional patterns occur in coalbeds, just as it does in landfills, but on longer time scales. Vick et al. (2016) also suggest successional changes in abundance of several microbial community members during colonization of coal disks (i.e., biofilm formation) under anaerobic conditions.

An interesting, but contradictory, observation has arisen from the taxonomic studies; a prevalence of aerobic genera were detected in what has traditionally been assumed to be an anaerobic environment (An et al. 2013; Lawson et al. 2015; Barnhart et al. 2016). A metagenomic analysis of a volatile bituminous coal sample revealed the dominance of *Rhodobacteraceae*, represented by a *Celeribacter* species (Lawson et al. 2015). This species is known to exhibit both autotrophic and heterotrophic growth, as well as chemolithotrophy via oxidation reactions using CO₂ as a catalyst. The genomic analysis of this organism also revealed encoded pathways for acidogenic fermentation (products of which are primary substrates for microbial

---

**Fig. 5** Microbial community structure and indicator taxa for coalbed samples collected from three different coal zones in Alberta, Canada. For details, see Lawson et al. (2015)
methanogenesis), which would allow this organism to survive under both aerobic and anaerobic conditions. A versatile energy metabolism would be advantageous for life close to fluctuating aerobic-anaerobic interfaces that experience variable nutrient availabilities. Hydrogeological investigation of Alberta coal seams has shown the possibility of mixing of fluids from lower more saline aquifers that may carry dissolved oxygen. *Celeribacter* sp. also has the genomic potential to degrade and utilize a diverse range of aromatic compounds, such as benzoate, salicylate, and vanillate (all by-products of coal and lignin degradation).

It was proposed by Lawson et al. (2015) that exposure of *Celeribacter* sp. to aerobic-anaerobic cycling may actually promote the biodegradation of coal to methane. During aerobic conditions, *Celeribacter* sp. would degrade aromatic compounds for biomass synthesis and glycogen storage. During anaerobic conditions, the accumulated glycogen would be fermented via acidogenic fermentation pathways resulting in the formation of by-products for methanogenesis. The genomics analysis showed genes for nitrogen and carbohydrate catabolism indicating the ability to rapidly assimilate and degrade carbohydrates or organic acids that periodically become available in coalbed environments. Scavenged carbohydrate or organic acid compounds could also provide fermentation substrates for *Celeribacter* sp. under anaerobic conditions and thus stimulate methane production. Therefore, nitrogen availability and the ability to utilize diverse organic substrates may be potential drivers of selection in deep coalbeds.

In a study by Barnhart et al. (2016), coal from different depths as well as adjacent sand and silt stones were collected from a well site in the Powder River Basin, USA. *Aeribacillus*, commonly thought to be an aerobic microorganism, was found throughout the vertical sampling profile, but especially near the upper interface near the sandstone overburden. Biosurfactant-producing *Actinobacteria* were also detected in the coal at the interface near the overlying sandstone where *Aeribacillus* also dominated and methane production was the greatest. Results suggest bacteria capable of producing biosurfactants exist in coalbeds and the production of biosurfactants may play an important role in the bioavailability of coal. As well, living close to a coal:sandstone interface may allow greater exposure to aerobic conditions with the slow influx of O2-bearing meteoric water, thus allowing growth of these bacteria (An et al. 2013).

### 3.3 Microbial Coal Bioconversion Pathways

Mechanisms of coal activation under anaerobic conditions are still not well understood. There have been studies that measured the chemical makeup of produced water samples from coal seams. As well, controlled microcosm studies in the laboratory have revealed some potential coal breakdown pathways that may be occurring in situ. From these studies, inferred activation sites and pathways have been proposed.

In general, the organic fraction of coalbed-produced water is a complex mixture of aromatic and aliphatic hydrocarbons, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs),
as well as nitrogen-, sulfur-, and oxygen-containing – often heterocyclic – compounds (NSO compounds) (Colosimo et al. 2016). Simple alkyl-substituted aromatic hydrocarbons are more readily degraded under anaerobic conditions than unsubstituted aromatics. Biodegradation studies with unsubstituted aromatic hydrocarbons have been carried out mostly with benzene and naphthalene under sulfate-reducing conditions (Meckenstock et al. 2004). The activation of these compounds/mechanisms included the addition of a CO₂-derived carboxyl group (benzene carboxylase, naphthalene carboxylase). Aliphatics are unreactive compounds containing only apolar σ-bonds. The most common activation of aliphatics is the addition of the hydrocarbon to fumarate yielding alkylsuccinates (Rabus et al. 2016). The biodegradation of aliphatic and cyclic hydrocarbons can be a source of metabolites (fatty acids) that can be further oxidized to methanogenic substrates. The accumulation of fatty acids, however, could cause inhibition of methanogenesis due to the lowering of pH. PAHs are commonly found in coal formation waters. While PAH degradation under aerobic conditions has been well documented (Ghosal et al. 2016), many prokaryotes are capable of mineralizing PAHs under anaerobic conditions, particularly in methanogenic consortia syntrophy making biodegradation of PAHs thermodynamically favorable (Berdugo-Clavijo et al. 2012). As well, many bacteria will produce biosurfactants to solubilize PHAs (Bezza and Chirwa 2016). NSO compounds can undergo selective degradation similar to the mechanisms of activation of hydrocarbons. NSO compounds of similar molecular weight are often more soluble in water than PAHs and therefore also more bioavailable (Colosimo et al. 2016).

In summary, microbial interactions with organic matter include biological depyritization, solubilization (by biological alkaline materials), and biological chelation, and the main pathways for coal activation are speculated to be addition to fumarate, hydroxylation, C₁ addition/carboxylation, and methylation.

An omics approach to understanding bioconversion of coal was performed by Tan et al. (2014). The metatranscriptome of coal enrichment cultures amended with the nutrient tryptone was compared to the metatranscriptome of the same cultures grown with only tryptone and no coal. Results showed similar transcripts encoding for cellulases, carboxylesterases, and thioesteras in both sets of cultures. These enzymes are involved in the modification of complex lignocelluloses and hydroxyl-, amine-, and thio-functional groups and were highly expressed in both sets. This suggests tryptone may have indirectly enhanced coal degradation by stimulating production of hydrolytic enzymes for utilization of nutrients. However, in the coal transcripts, there was strong evidence for hydroxylation (aromatic acid hydroxylases, extradiol oxygenase) and carboxylation activity (putative benzene carboxylases). These transcripts were less prominent in the nutrient-only transcriptome. Transcripts encoding methanogenesis via methanol and methylamine were enriched only in the coal transcriptome suggesting that the metabolism of coal produced substrates for methyloprophic methanogens. Taxonomic analysis showed the coal cultures were highly enriched with Peptococcaceae (Firmicutes), Bacteroidetes, and Sphingobacteriales.

The study by Tan et al. (2014) shows the power of metatranscriptomics to provide greater information about enzymes and metabolic pathways involved in the
bioconversion of coal to methane. It was used successfully on coal enrichment cultures where a large biomass could be generated to provide sufficient quantities of RNA required for the sequencing. The generally low in situ biomass of coals could be problematic in the use of metatranscriptomics directly from coal samples, unless enhancements in the extraction and amplification techniques occur.

4 Field Trial Applications of Enhanced Biogenic CBM

During the period of high natural gas prices in North America in the 2000s, interest in extending the life of CBM operations by enhancing biogenic coalbed methane was great. Indeed, several companies such as Luca Technologies, Ciris Energy, and Next Fuel (all based close to the Powder River Basin in Wyoming/Montana, USA) were formed to develop stimulated CBM methanogenesis technologies for commercial applications. These companies reportedly conducted field trials, although limited data on the trials are available in the public domain. In general, the technologies developed by different companies and researchers in the laboratory and field trialed to enhance biogenic methane production can be divided into four categories: (1) stimulating indigenous microbes (Fig. 6), (2) augmenting coal seam with non-indigenous microbes, (3) enhancing microbial access to coal through physical
means and ensuring deep distribution of amendments, and (4) increasing the bio-availability of coal organics (Ritter et al. 2015).

It should be pointed out that one must take caution in translating laboratory data to the field as laboratory cultures are in an optimum or ideal state. The experimental growth studies are often operated in batch mode. Unlike the field, there are no fluxes of water, nutrients, waste products, and microbes in and out of the growth vessel as would occur in the subsurface. In the field, reactions are much more complicated. Essentially, the enhanced biogenic CBM technology deals with the reactive transport of a reactant gas (dissolved or not), microbes, and nutrients in a subsurface environment that has multiphases and a product whose fate and transport are significantly different than its parent. In addition, that subsurface environment will be modified by the microbial activity.

Subsurface environments are often low in nutrients required by microbes for accelerated growth and division. Microbes require essential macro-elements, such as nitrogen and phosphorus; micro-elements, such as Zn, B, and Co and vitamins; and growth factors, such as amino acids, purines, and pyrimidines (Madigan et al. 2017). Buffers (e.g., carbonates) are required to maintain a pH balance within the microorganism’s tolerance range. In some geological formations, microorganisms are nutrient depleted and in a dormant state (Amy 1997). Microorganisms may endure multiple nutrient deprivations and may attempt to store scavenged nutrients until such a time that they have sufficient resources to grow and divide. To ensure high activity and economical methane yields, it may be necessary, depending on the environmental conditions of the coal seam, to add nutrients such as nitrogen- and phosphorous-containing compounds, micronutrients, and vitamins. Often, undefined nutrients such as yeast extract have been used to target the organisms actually degrading the coal. If these organisms are stimulated, then by-products from their metabolic activities can be used for methanogenesis. Stimulation of indigenous microbes with nutrient amendments (Fig. 6) is by far the preferred process by commercial biogenic CBM companies (Ritter et al. 2015).

The transport of the nutrients into the coal seam as far as possible is of crucial importance to the overall success of the field trial. The target coal seam’s environment, such as water content, and degree of fractures and permeability should also be taken into consideration on how best to administer the nutrients. The nutrient solution can be injected continuously for an extended period of time or pulsed. One option to introduce the nutrients is to mix the nutrient solution with a fracturing solution and fracturing the seam so that the nutrients are placed throughout the fracture length.

In some cases, however, coal seams may not harbor any microorganisms or only inactive microorganisms in unsustainable low numbers, and thus microbial augmentation is needed. Microbial augmentation is the process of adding new, nonnative microorganisms (as single strains or a consortium of different microorganisms) to the coal seam (Colosimo et al. 2016). This process has many inherent risks, the main ones being poor survivability of the introduced microorganism(s) in the new environment and poor distribution into the seam away from the injection well, causing possible fouling problems around the well. This might require further modifications.
to the coal seam such as adjusting the salinity driving up costs. A major hurdle in injection of nonnative microorganisms into a coal seam is obtaining the regulatory permissions to do so.

Making sure the microbes in the coal seam get maximum access to coal surface area is another process that could increase bioconversion rates and methane yields. Often coal pore spaces are too small for microbes (Pant et al. 2015). There are different ways to increase pore space such as hydrofracturing the coal and dissolving the coal with solutions. This method is often more effective when done in conjunction with nutrient supplementation or augmentation.

The last process is to increase the bioavailability of coal organics. Coal is a complex structure containing many recalcitrant compounds. Often the rate-limiting step in the bioconversion of coal to methane is the breaking down of coal into intermediate compounds. Some researchers have used solvents, alcohols, esters of phosphoric acid, surfactants, and biosurfactants (Liu et al. 2013). Chemicals tested included potassium permanganate or hydrogen peroxide (Huang et al. 2013). The limitations to this process are the following:

- Added costs to the overall technology.
- Poor control over reactions.
- The chemicals and solvents added may be harmful to the microbes or chemicals could migrate into the groundwater system and contaminate it.

5 Future Research

Recent reviews on microbial CBM agree that more research is required to fully understand the microbial ecology of coal seams (Ritter et al. 2015; Park and Liang 2016). As was shown in An et al. (2013) and Lawson et al. (2015), microbial community compositions are highly modified by local geochemical factors and physical properties of the coal seam. Therefore, different microorganisms undertaking the initial and critical first step of coal activation exist in different coal seams. Despite these variances in microbial diversity, similar enzymatic mechanisms and intermediate formation and utilization pathways would likely be present in the coal seams. Understanding the commonalities of microbial community structure and function during coal biodegradation, and the subsequent shifts and changes in key microbial players and metabolic pathways, would allow the development of targeted processes to enhance biogenic methane production that could also be deployed to multiple coal formations.

There is a need for greater understanding on coal availability for bioconversion as there is limited knowledge of what fraction of coal is actually bioavailable and which constituents are recalcitrant or through physical, chemical, or biological manipulation can be made more bioavailable (Furmann et al. 2013). Enhancing bioavailability and reactivity of coal would ultimately lead to greater biogenic CBM production (Huang et al. 2013). Testing any alteration or manipulation processes for environmental impacts (e.g., contamination of groundwater) is paramount.
Nutrient amendment is by far the most popular process to stimulate biological methane production (Ritter et al. 2015; Colosimo et al. 2016). A large body of research on effects of nutrient amendment on microbial growth and methane production exists; however, descriptions of methods or processes for delivering the nutrient or nutrients to the coal seam are lacking. In addition to delivery methods, injection rates, durations, and application cycles to ensure continuous microbial stimulation have only been tested for a few field trials for which the methodology and results are not always available to the public. Monitoring tools, such as stable isotope analysis, need to be optimized and validated (Vinson et al. 2017). Certainly, being able to distinguish between relic and contemporary methane is critical to measure the success of an enhanced microbial CBM field application. Conventional CBM production may have environmental impacts, and the identification of the gas sources is very relevant (Vinson et al. 2017).

There are research and development opportunities to apply the technology developed for enhanced microbial CBM to other unconventional gas resources such as shale gas (Cokar et al. 2013) or for residual oil in depleted conventional oil reservoirs (Gieg et al. 2008). A possible new application is to stimulate biological methane production in shallow legacy coal mines (PTAC 2017). Such mines would provide the large surface area conducive to microbial growth on coal and could also serve as large underground methane bioreactors with the addition of waste organic material as microbial nutrients. Finally, microbial cultures enriched from coal and produced water samples and used for laboratory studies on biogenic CBM production could be mined for novel enzymes and pathways for biotechnological applications (Strachan et al. 2014).

6 Cross-References

▶ Oil and Gas Shales
▶ The Biogeochemical Methane Cycle

References


Eavenson HN (1939) Coal through the ages, 2nd edn. AIMME. http://www.worldcat.org/title/coal-through-the-ages/oclc/2886601


Abstract

Methane hydrates are formed in high-pressure and low-temperature environments such as the ocean floor and high-latitude permafrost deposits. At the molecular level, these icelike solids consist of water cages that contain methane molecules which are usually produced by the microbial decay of organic matter. The abundance of methane hydrates in sediments is controlled by temperature and pressure conditions, the rate of in situ microbial methane production, and the upward migration of dissolved and gaseous methane. The global inventory of methane-carbon in gas hydrates may be about 1000 Gt and exceeds the amount of methane in conventional gas reservoirs by about one order of magnitude. Successful field trials using different production techniques such as thermal
stimulation, depressurization, and chemical stimulation have shown that production of natural gas from methane hydrates is technically feasible. The results so far show that high gas production rates can be achieved when methane hydrates are dissociated in the subsurface by reduction of the reservoir pressure.

1 Introduction

Gas hydrates are crystalline, icelike solids composed of water and gas molecules. They form at elevated pressures, at low temperatures, and in the presence of sufficient amounts of gas and water. These conditions are fulfilled at the seafloor and in permafrost regions and deep lakes. Therefore, gas hydrate occurs worldwide—in oceanic sediments on the continental slopes along active and passive margins and regions with similar conditions, such as the Black Sea or the Caspian Sea, and also in polar sediments and permafrost areas, such as the Canadian Arctic, Siberia, and Qilian Mountain permafrost region at the Tibet plateau (Cherskiy et al. 1985; Dallimore et al. 1999; Kvenvolden and Lorenson 2001; Liu et al. 2015). Depending on the pressure and temperature conditions as well as on the hydrate composition, gas hydrates can be found in marine sediments up to 1000 m below the seabed, while gas hydrates in permafrost regions may be found at depths between 132 m and 2000 m (Kvenvolden and Lorenson 2001; Lu et al. 2011). Gas hydrates occur finely disseminated or nodular, in veins, or as massive layers in the sediments. Figure 1 presents a sample of hydrate-bearing sediments which was recovered during the IODP Expedition 311, showing nodules of gas hydrate embedded in the sediment. Disseminated hydrates represent the large majority of marine gas hydrates likely formed from dissolved methane in the pore water and may dissociate rapidly if the pressure and temperature conditions change (Sloan and Koh 2008; Spangenberg et al. 2015). Depending on the formation conditions, hydrates exhibit an either massive or porous habitus, e.g., as demonstrated in natural gas hydrate samples from the Cascadia Margin: in the presence of free gas, a porous hydrate may grow downward toward rising gas (methane) bubbles (Suess et al. 2001).

During the last decades, more than 230 gas hydrate deposits were found worldwide (Makogon 2010). Natural gas hydrates contain predominantly methane, but also larger hydrocarbons as well as CO₂ and H₂S. The amount of additional gases varies from less than 1 mol.% (e.g., Black Sea) to more than 40 mol.% (e.g., Gulf of Mexico, Qilian Mountain) (Kvenvolden and Lorenson 2001; Lu et al. 2011). The incorporation of additional gases besides methane into the hydrate structure increases the stability fields of hydrates (see Fig. 2). This is enabling the formation of gas hydrates even below shallow permafrost (e.g., Lu et al. 2011).

Enormous amounts of gas can be stored in gas hydrate deposits: 1 m³ gas hydrate releases approximately 164 m³ gas at standard pressure and temperature conditions. The global estimates of hydrate-bound gas in marine and terrestrial sediments are highly speculative and ranged in the past from less than 1 × 10¹⁵ m³ to more than 1.5 × 10¹⁶ m³ (Milkov 2003; Makogon 2010). These variations in the calculated results are caused by the different assumptions regarding the composition of natural
gas hydrates and thus the stability conditions of the resulting hydrate phase as well as the hydrate saturation and morphology in the host sediment (disseminated vs. massive layers), only to name a few. A realistic estimation of the amount of hydrates and their distribution in the host sediment is crucial for the assessment of each natural hydrate deposit as a potential energy resource, in particular with regard to its production capability. It is assumed that 1–3% of the gas hydrate deposits occur on land, whereas 97–99% of natural gas hydrate have been located offshore (Sloan and Koh 2008; Moridis et al. 2009; Makogon 2010). Therefore, we will address the
formation of marine gas hydrates in Sect. 2, while in the third part of this chapter, we will present and discuss production methods for gas from hydrate-bearing sediments.

2 Methane Hydrate Formation in Marine Sediments

In the following, we will address the controls on (i) gas hydrate stability, (ii) microbial methane production, and (iii) gas hydrate saturation in marine sediments.

2.1 Thermodynamic Controls on Gas Hydrate Stability

As mentioned before, methane hydrates are only stable at low temperatures (T) and elevated pressures (P). The stability of methane hydrates is well defined (Sloan 1998), and Pitzer equations can be used to constrain the effects of seawater salinity and porewater composition on methane hydrate stability (Tishchenko et al. 2005). However, the sharp phase boundary that results from these calculations (Fig. 2) is not strictly valid for sediments and other porous media. Capillary forces acting on gas hydrates and free gas residing in sediment pores of different sizes create a broad transition area where free gas and gas hydrate coexist (Liu and Flemings 2011). Moreover, the composition of the hydrate-forming natural gas has a strong effect on the positioning of the phase boundary. Biogenic gas contains only small amounts of higher hydrocarbons (C\textsubscript{2+}) and forms structure type I methane hydrate composed of more than 99.9% methane with only trace amounts of C\textsubscript{2+} (Milkov 2005). However, thermogenic gas ascending from larger sediment depths contains significant amounts of C\textsubscript{2+} favoring the formation of structure type II and/or the inclusion of C\textsubscript{2+} components in structure type I methane hydrate. These hydrates are stable over a significantly broader P-T range (Sloan 1998).

Bottom waters filling the ocean basins are formed at high latitudes where low temperatures prevail. Therefore, water temperatures in the deep ocean typically range from about 0 °C to only 5 °C. However, temperature increases with sediment depth due to the heat ascending from the Earth’s interior. At continental margins, the temperature rises to about 25–50 °C at 1 km depth below the seabed. Therefore, methane hydrate is stable only in the upper section of the sediment column (Fig. 3).

The sediment section where methane hydrate is stable is termed the gas hydrate stability zone (GHSZ). It extends from the surface down to that sediment depth where the temperature profile intersects the phase boundary (Fig. 3). Methane gas is the preferred phase below the GHSZ where it is easily detected by seismic methods. The seismic bottom simulating reflector indicates the top of the free gas occurrence zone that is located immediately below the GHSZ.

The thickness of the GHSZ in marine sediments has been calculated for the entire ocean considering global data sets for bottom water temperature, salinity, sediment thickness, and geothermal heat flow (Burwicz et al. 2011; Piñero et al. 2013; Wallmann et al. 2012). In the open ocean where sediments accumulate at a low
rate, the entire sediment column is located within the GHSZ such that the vertical extent of the GHSZ is limited by the thickness of the sediment column (Fig. 4).

Hydrates can only form within the GHSZ if sufficient methane is available to saturate the pore fluids. The solubility of methane hydrate (i.e., the concentration of dissolved methane at equilibrium with methane hydrate) has been measured experimentally and calculated using various thermodynamic approaches (Waite et al. 2009). It increases with temperature and decreases with pressure and salinity, whereas the solubility of methane gas in water is enhanced under high pressure and reduced by an increase in temperature and salinity. The down-core rise in sediment temperature thus promotes an increase in dissolved methane concentrations within the GHSZ and a decrease in dissolved methane in the underlying free gas zone (Fig. 5). Capillary forces affect the stability and solubility of gas hydrate and gas in fine-grained marine sediments. A transition zone is formed, where the solubility ranges of gas bubbles and hydrate crystals residing in sediment pores of different sizes overlap (Liu and Flemings 2011). The discontinuity at the base of the GHSZ (Fig. 5) is thus replaced by a smooth and continuous transition in methane solubility (Liu and Flemings 2011; Waite et al. 2009).

2.2 Microbial Methane Formation

Stable carbon isotope data show that hydrates are usually formed from biogenic methane produced by the anaerobic degradation of particulate organic matter (POC) in the deep marine biosphere (Wallmann et al. 2012). Scientific drilling confirmed the presence of living microorganisms in marine sediments down to the underlying
Fig. 4  Thickness of the gas hydrate stability zone (GHSZ) in marine sediments (Piñero et al. 2013). The color coding indicates the base of the GHSZ in meters below the seabed.

Fig. 5  Solubility of methane in marine sediments deposited at 2000 m water depth. Solubility is calculated for methane hydrate (blue circles) and methane gas (red crosses) in sulfate-free seawater with $S = 35$ assuming hydrostatic conditions, a bottom water temperature of $2^\circ C$, and a linear geothermal gradient of $30^\circ C$ km$^{-1}$ (Duan et al. 1992; Tishchenko et al. 2005). The black line indicates the dissolved methane concentration attained in methane-saturated pore fluids. The base of the GHSZ is located at the intersection of the gas hydrate and free gas solubility curves.
oceanic crust. The number of prokaryotic cells (bacteria and archaea) and the rates of organic matter degradation decrease exponentially with sediment depth (Jørgensen and D’Hondt 2006; Parkes et al. 2000).

Methane production kicks in only after all available oxidation agents have been consumed. Organic matter deposited at the seabed is first degraded by microorganisms using oxygen as terminal electron acceptor. The remaining organic matter is degraded employing dissolved nitrate and manganese (+IV) and iron (+III) minerals as oxidizing agents (Berner 1980). These additional electron acceptors are usually consumed within the bioturbated surface layer (0–10 cm sediment depth) of continental margin sediments. Field data show that only a small fraction of the POC raining to the seafloor is buried below 10 cm depth (Flögel et al. 2011). The data reveal a marked contrast between fine-grained continental margin and deep-sea sediments (Burdige 2007). While at continental margins about 10% of the POC raining to the seabed is conserved and buried below 10 cm sediment depth, this fraction is reduced to about 1% at the deep-sea floor (Flögel et al. 2011). Due to the very low preservation of POC in open ocean environments, gas hydrates are usually not found in pelagic sediments but only at continental margins where a significant POC fraction is buried and therefore available for microbial methane formation in the deep subsurface. POC that is buried below the bioturbated surface layer is first degraded by microbes using dissolved sulfate as electron acceptor. Microbial methane production and accumulation starts below the depth of sulfate penetration. Several steps are needed before methane is produced as stable end product of anaerobic microbial POC degradation. In a first step, biogenic polymers are hydrolyzed and converted into monomers. These monomers (sugars, amino acids, lipids, etc.) are then fermented into CO2, H2, and a number of organic acids. Methane is finally formed by methanogenic microorganisms converting CO2 and H2 into methane (Whiticar et al. 1986).

Methane formed at depth is transported upward into the sulfate-methane transition zone via molecular diffusion and advection. Within this zone, methane is oxidized by consortia of bacteria and archaea using sulfate as terminal electron acceptor (Boetius et al. 2000). The overall stoichiometry of anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM) is given by:

\[
\text{CH}_4 + \text{SO}_4^{2-} \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + \text{HS}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O}
\]

Rates and kinetics of microbial methane oxidation and production have been studied in the lab and derived from field data (Marquardt et al. 2010; Nauhaus et al. 2002; Wallmann et al. 2006).

### 2.3 Methane Hydrate Formation in Marine Sediments

Various models have been set up to simulate the formation of gas hydrates in marine sediments (Buffett and Archer 2004; Garg et al. 2008; Liu and Flemings 2007; Wallmann et al. 2006). These models consider microbial reactions, thermodynamic

constraints, and the relevant transport processes. In the following, we present a model simulating the reactive transport of three species dissolved in the pore water of sediments (dissolved inorganic carbon, sulfate, methane) and two solid sediment species (POC and methane hydrate). Molecular diffusion, burial, and compaction are considered as transport processes (Fig. 6). The simulated reactions include POC degradation via sulfate reduction, AOM, methanogenesis, gas hydrate formation, and gas hydrate dissolution (Wallmann et al. 2012). Fixed concentration values are applied at the upper boundary, while zero gradients are used as lower boundary conditions for all dissolved species. The model domain excludes the upper bioturbated zone of the sediment column and includes the transition zone at the base of GHSZ where the saturation concentration of dissolved methane is assumed to be constant over a depth interval of 23 m due to capillary forces (Liu and Flemings 2011). Model results are valid for steady-state conditions which were reached after a simulation time of about three million years. The model does not consider gas and fluid ascent into the GHSZ from below.

The dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC) concentrations calculated in the model show a continuous increase with sediment depth reflecting the microbial degradation of POC (Fig. 6). Dissolved methane production starts at about 8 m sediment depth.

![Graph](image-url)

**Fig. 6** Concentrations of dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC), dissolved methane (CH₄), particulate organic carbon (POC), and methane hydrate saturation (percent of pore space filled by methane hydrate). The dotted line in the upper right panel indicates the concentration of methane in equilibrium with methane hydrate (Fig. 5)
after sulfate is almost completely consumed by organic matter degradation and AOM (Fig. 7).

Dissolved methane increases down-core and reaches the saturation value with respect to methane hydrate at a sediment depth of 86 m. At this point, gas hydrate starts to form in the sediment column (Fig. 6). Methane hydrate formation continues since the microbial production of methane within the GHSZ overcompensates the down-core increase in methane hydrate solubility (Tishchenko et al. 2005). Close to the base of the GHSZ, methane hydrate dissolves since the saturation level is no longer maintained by the sluggish methane production from aging POC. The saturation level is restored by methane hydrate dissolution in the deeper portion of the GHSZ (545–567 m) and by a combination of dissolution and dissociation in the underlying transition zone (567–590 m). Methane hydrate buried below the model domain to sediment depths >590 m dissociates to form dissolved and gaseous methane. Most of the methane produced via POC degradation within the GHSZ is consumed by AOM and buried below the GHSZ. Only a small portion (9%) is permanently fixed in gas hydrates. The resulting gas hydrate saturations are very low. The maximum hydrate saturation is reached at 470 m sediment depth where 99.65% of the pore space is filled by water while only 0.35% is occupied by methane hydrate (see Wallmann et al. 2012 for further details).

Similar simulations have been performed on a global grid covering the entire ocean (Archer et al. 2008; Burwicz et al. 2011; Piñero et al. 2013; Wallmann et al. 2012). These global-scale models indicate that 400–1000 Gt methane-carbon is bound in marine gas hydrates. They predict low hydrate saturations for most continental margins (<1 vol.%) and relatively large values (1–3 vol.%) in regions where methane hydrate formation is promoted by high POC concentrations and favorable temperature and pressure conditions (Fig. 8).

However, none of these global models considers the rapid ascent of methane-charged fluids and gases through faults acting as high permeability conduits. This process may lead to very high hydrate saturations (10–100 vol.%) in the faults and
their immediate surroundings (Chatterjee et al. 2014; Piñero et al. 2016). Another key process not considered in global models is the recycling of methane hydrate at the base of the GHSZ (Kvenvolden and Lorenson 2001). Due to continuous sedimentation, methane hydrate is ultimately buried to larger sediment depths below the GHSZ where elevated temperatures induce the dissociation of hydrate into free gas and water. The free gas produced by hydrate dissociation can migrate upward if the gas saturation is high enough to overcome the pore entry pressure. The ascending gas is trapped at the base of the GHSZ where it forms new gas hydrate. This recycling process inhibits methane burial and keeps the biogenic gas within the GHSZ. It may yield very high saturations at the base of the GHSZ if it continues over a large period of time (Burwicz et al. 2017; Wallmann et al. 2012). Sufficiently high gas contents are needed to initiate upward gas migration. In many cases, infiltration of gas from deeper layers may prime the sediment and kick-start the recycling process.

The first modeling study that considers the full complexity of the natural gas hydrate system was recently conducted to simulate the formation of gas hydrates in the Gulf of Mexico where faulting and upward gas migration are induced by salt tectonics (Burwicz et al. 2017). The model shows very high gas hydrate saturations at the base of the GHSZ induced by the recycling process discussed above. The model results are in good agreement with field observations and confirm that the study area is a very promising site for the commercial production of natural gas from methane hydrates (Fig. 9).
Based on the data available for a certain natural gas hydrate deposit, an assessment of this deposit as a potential energy resource may start with a classification into four main categories (Moridis et al. 2009; Moridis and Reagan 2011):

- Class 1 hydrate deposits composed of a hydrate-bearing layer and an underlying two-phase fluid zone containing mobile gas and liquid water. The bottom of the hydrate-bearing layer defines the bottom of hydrate stability zone.
- Class 2 hydrate deposits composed of a hydrate-bearing layer overlying a zone of mobile water.
- Class 3 hydrate-bearing layer with an underlying layer containing no mobile fluids.
- Class 4 hydrate deposits which are characterized by dispersed hydrate with low saturations (<10%) and a lack of confining geologic strata.

**Fig. 9** Gas hydrate distribution within Pleistocene sediments of the Green Canyon province in the Gulf of Mexico (Burwicz et al. 2017). The surface of the 3-D view shows the gas hydrate saturation at the base of the GHSZ. Permeable faults indicated as irregular vertical structures connect the Pleistocene sediments to the underlying strata. Model results are consistent with observations at drill sites GC955-Q, GC955-H, and GC955-I.
In any case, the natural gas hydrate deposit should have the following desirable specifications to be considered for hydrate production (Moridis et al. 2009, 2011):

- Coarse porous sediments such as sands and gravels which are characterized by high porosity, accompanied by (confirmed) high hydrate saturations and intrinsic permeability of the hydrate-bearing sediment
- An ideal combination of intrinsic permeability on the one hand and hydrate saturation on the other hand, resulting in an effective permeability that is sufficiently large to ensure an adequate fluid flow
- The presence of very low permeability boundaries
- High deposit temperatures which correspond to larger sensible heat reservoirs in the vicinity of the hydrate-bearing layer to balance the endothermic dissociation reaction and potential larger pressure drops
- Pressure and temperature conditions in the reservoir close to the equilibrium conditions reducing the efforts for gas hydrate dissociation (quantified as a minimum decrease in pressure or increase in temperature)
- Access to an existing infrastructure for the transport of the produced gas.

Natural gas hydrate occurrences in sand-dominated reservoirs with high hydrate saturations could be detected, e.g., in the northern Gulf of Mexico and the eastern Nankai Trough (Boswell et al. 2012; Collett et al. 2015, and literature within Konno et al. 2017). If all the requirements listed above are met, the production of methane from natural gas hydrate deposits may become economically feasible. In general, there are three different methods which can be used to dissociate the hydrates and release the methane gas from the hydrate cavities: thermal stimulation, depressurization, and chemical stimulation. All three methods have already been tested in the field. Thermal stimulation was tested successfully in a field test in the framework of the Mallik Scientific Drilling Project in the Northwest Territories in the Canadian Arctic during the winter of 2001/2002. During the world’s first gas production test, a hot fluid was circulated for 123 h into depths of 900–1100 m where the hydrate-bearing sediment occurred and the bottom-hole temperature was increased from 7.7 °C to more than 50 °C. A total of 470 m³ of methane from dissociated hydrates were produced during the thermal test (Hancock et al. 2005). This test was certainly successful in terms of a proof of principle, but the efficiency of the procedure remains questionable. The loss of heat during the hot fluid transport through hundreds of meters of permafrost and the comparatively minor radial propagation of heat in the hydrate layer indicate that this procedure is probably not efficient enough for commercial gas production. An alternative could be the generation of heat within the hydrate-bearing layer, e.g., using in situ combustion (Schicks et al. 2011, 2013). However, the efficiency of the in situ combustion technique has not been proved in the field so far. Thus, after analyzing all data from the Mallik field trial in 2002 and performing numerical simulations, it turns out that depressurization techniques may be more efficient for the production of gas from hydrate-bearing sediments (Moridis et al. 2009). In April 2007, another production test was performed at the Mallik site, this time using depressurization techniques. During 12.5 h of successful pumping operation, at least 830 m³ of methane were produced.
from a hydrate-bearing formation (Yasuda and Dallimore 2007). In winter 2008, a modified pumping system with sand control devices was used for the second depressurization test. During 6 days of continuous operation, about 13,000 m$^3$ of methane were produced (Yamamoto and Dallimore 2011). Based on these promising results, depressurization was also applied as method of choice for the first offshore production test at the eastern Nankai Trough, Japan, in 2013. The geological analyses of this area indicate that the hydrate saturation in the sandy sediments reaches up to 80%. The wellbore pressure has been decreased from 13.4 MPa to 5 MPa for 4 days and for 2 more days to 4.3 MPa. During these 6 days, a cumulative volume of about 120,000 m$^3$ of gas and 1250 m$^3$ of water was produced until an abrupt sand production occurred on the sixth day (Konno et al. 2017). Nevertheless, the technical feasibility of the depressurization methods for the production of methane from marine hydrate reservoirs could be partially verified with this field test.

A completely different approach, namely, the chemical stimulation via injection of a CO$_2$–N$_2$ gas mixture, was tested within the Prudhoe Bay Unit on the Alaska North Slope during 2011 and 2012 (Boswell et al. 2017). The project aimed to determine the feasibility of gas injection into hydrate-bearing sediments and the observation of the reservoir response upon subsequent flowback in order to assess the potential for the exchange of methane with CO$_2$ in the naturally occurring gas hydrate. The chosen area for the Ignik Sikumi field program exhibits relatively massive and homogeneous sand units with a hydrate saturation of about 60–72%.

The field test was conducted in four steps (Boswell et al. 2017):

1. Injection (14 days): During this period, a total volume of about 6114 m$^3$ gas containing 22.5% CO$_2$ and 77.5% N$_2$ was injected into the reservoir. The injection pressure was held constant at 9.8 MPa, and the temperature of the injected medium remained within 0.1 K of the formation temperature.

2. Shut-in soak (2.5 days): Operational issues associated with the changeover from injection to production resulted in a period of shut-in time before the flowback could be started. During this time, the bottom-hole pressure dropped from 9.8 MPa to 8.27 MPa.

3. Unassisted flowback (1.5 days): During the unassisted flowback, only gas was produced to the surface.

4. Jet-pumped-assisted flowback (30 days): During the first 8 days of the jet-pumped assisted flowback, the pressure was kept above the destabilization pressure of the native methane hydrate at a given temperature resulting in a relatively low and variable gas, water, and solid production. During the next 2–3 days of jet-pumped-assisted flowback, the pressure was reduced to pressures very close to the methane hydrate stability pressure at reservoir condition. An increased production of gas was observed. The bottom-hole pressure during the third phase of the jet-pumped-assisted flowback was chosen below the predicted methane hydrate stability conditions and resulted in a modest but stable and increasing gas production. A total of 24,210 m$^3$ of methane was produced during the production period. 70% of the injected N$_2$ and 40% of the injected CO$_2$ were recovered.
The results of the field test are quite complex and not easy to interpret. However, investigation of the recovered gases indicates a preferential retention of CO$_2$ in the reservoir, but it is not clear how it remains. It also shows that methane was released from the reservoir, but it is not clear whether the produced methane was derived from direct exchange with CO$_2$ in the hydrate structures or if it was released as a result of other processes such as the dissociation of the native hydrate phase due to the chemical disequilibrium as a result of the CO$_2$–N$_2$ injection (Boswell et al. 2017). The assessment of the exchange technology as a potential economic production technology needs further investigation. It may become the preferred production method if incentives for CO$_2$ capture and storage are implemented to mitigate global climate change, while the depressurization technique seems to be the most promising production technology to meet the growing demand for natural gas.

4 Research Needs

Rates and mechanisms of microbial methane production in the deep biosphere and the physical conditions controlling the upward migration of gas through unconsolidated sediments and faults are still not fully understood. More field work, lab studies, and modeling is needed to characterize these key processes that control the spatial distribution of high-grade gas hydrate deposit. The various gas production methods need to be further tested to address issues such as sand production and reservoir cooling that may limit gas flow rates and the rates of hydrate dissociation. In addition to the field tests, laboratory and modeling studies are needed to improve the basic understanding of the complex multispecies chemical systems. Most notably, the geo-mechanical response of the reservoir to changes induced by different production techniques needs to be studied to minimize sand production and to investigate the possibility that the stability of the wellbore and the surrounding sediment may be affected by gas hydrate dissociation.

References


Duan Z, Moller N, Greenberg J, Weare JH (1992) The prediction of methane solubility in natural waters to high ionic strength from 0 to 250°C and from 0 to 1600 bar. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 56:1451–1460


Part IV

Hydrocarbons and Lipids in the Environment
The Biogeochemical Methane Cycle

Michael J. Whiticar

Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................. 670
2 Biogeochemical Process of Microbial Methane Formation ........................................... 673
3 Microbial Methane in Marine Environments ................................................................. 687
4 Microbial Methane in Freshwater and Terrestrial Environments ..................................... 693
5 Microbial Methane in Special Environments ................................................................. 697
6 Methane Oxidation ........................................................................................................... 699
   6.1 Biological Methane Oxidation ................................................................................. 700
   6.2 Aerobic Methane Oxidation ................................................................................. 700
   6.3 Anaerobic Oxidation of Methane (AOM) .............................................................. 702
7 Atmospheric Methane .................................................................................................... 711
8 Summary ................................................................................................................................ 715
References .................................................................................................................................... 717

Abstract

Methane, the simplest alkane, is one of the most important and abundant carbon molecules on Earth. It is a major supply of energy, a chemical feedstock, and a potent greenhouse gas. Aside from thermogenic, pyrogenic, and abiotic sources, methane is primarily formed in the Earth’s surface by a variety of microbial processes, i.e., methanogenesis. These processes utilize a range of pathways that involve small carbon-bearing molecules, e.g., CO₂, acetate, etc. Methanogens are active in widely diverse anaerobic environments, e.g., rocks, soils, sediments, lakes, oceans, and animals, and cover a wide ecological habitats extending from...
The biogeochemical methane cycle also includes the microbial oxidation of methane, both by aerobic and anaerobic organisms and consortia, of which some pathways remain uncertain. Together with chemical oxidation, these microbial “biofilters” of methane are critical in controlling methane distributions. A variety of tools, including biomarker molecules, stable isotopes, and molecular gene sequencing, can characterize these formation and consumption pathways. This has lead to a more robust understanding of methane occurrences, abundances, reservoirs, fluxes, and budgets over the past century.

1 Introduction

Methane, named by the German chemist August Wilhelm von Hofmann (1866), is chemically the most reduced form of carbon, i.e., the antithesis of carbon dioxide (CO₂), and the most oxidized form. As a result, methane readily combusts in today’s oxygenated Earth atmosphere. Benjamin Franklin apparently reported this in 1774 (Priestley 1775; Heilbron 1976), but Alessandro Volta (1777) is generally credited with the chemical identification of CH₄ after recovering gas by stirring the sediments at Lake Maggiore, Italy (Fig. 1). Early investigators of methane formation also include MacBride (1764), who addressed fermentation reactions, and Jameson (1800), who looked at processes of anaerobic peat and torf environments. Hoppe-Seyler (1876) is one of the first to investigate methanogenesis in cultures amended with acetate, while Omelianski (1904), Söhngen (1906), Coolhass (1928), Barker (1936a, b), etc. provided the first descriptions of various methanogens.

Fig. 1 Discovery of methane gases in Italian swamps by Volta (1777)
Our interests in methane are largely driven by its energy potential and by our concern for changes to the atmospheric radiative balance and changing climate. The oxidation of CH$_4$ to CO$_2$ through biological and photochemical processes, and our combustion of methane for energy, are important contributors to the increase in the tropospheric CO$_2$ budget (~0.016 Wm$^{-2}$, IPCC). However, the emission of CH$_4$ into the troposphere of ~550 to 600 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$ (Prather et al. 2012; Kirschke et al. 2013; Saunois et al. 2016) has resulted in ~0.57 Wm$^{-2}$ total radiative forcing by CH$_4$ since preindustrial times (Myhre et al. 2013). The global warming potential (GWP relative to CO$_2$ of ~28 and 84 over 100- and 20-year lifetimes, respectively) emphasizes the relative impact of CH$_4$ compared to CO$_2$.

Methane (CH$_4$) is the most simple and stable of the $n$-alkanes with the strongest C–H bond strength, i.e., dissociation energy of +439 kJ mol$^{-1}$ (Thauer and Shima 2008). Methane is also the most abundant organic molecule on Earth, even though we actually do not know the total amount of methane present. In the lithosphere, the majority of this methane is contained in methane hydrates, in particular marine gas clathrates. Recent estimates of methane in hydrates vary, with probable values from ~5–36 × 10$^5$ Tg CH$_4$ (~1 to 5 × 10$^{15}$ m$^3$ CH$_4$, e.g., Milkov 2005; Boswell and Collett 2011; Wallmann et al. 2012), dropping from the earlier “consensus value” of 150 × 10$^5$ Tg CH$_4$ (21 × 10$^{15}$ m$^3$, Kvenvolden 1999) to the current number of ~36 × 10$^5$ Tg CH$_4$ (~5 × 10$^{15}$ m$^3$). Despite the uncertainty in the amount of methane stored in hydrates, it eclipses the global proven (recoverable) natural gas reserves of 1.4 × 10$^5$ Tg CH$_4$ (~0.2 × 10$^{15}$ m$^3$, e.g., CIA 2017; BP 2017). In fact, the amount of carbon in methane hydrates is likely even greater than the summation of all soils, sediments, and dissolved organic carbon and is about the same as the combination of the known oil, natural gas, and coal reserves (Fig. 2). For comparison, the 2019 tropospheric methane mixing ratio of ~1864 ppm (Dlugokencky 2019) translates to a methane burden calculation of 0.0485 × 10$^5$ Tg CH$_4$ (IPCC 2013) or ~740 times less than contained in methane hydrates. Methane dissolved in the ocean is estimated to
be ~43 Tg CH$_4$ (Reeburgh 2007) or 84,000 times less than the CH$_4$ in hydrates. Massive releases of methane from hydrates to the atmosphere have been implicated in Paleocene-Eocene Thermal Maximum, 55 mya (Dickens et al. 1995), and, questionably, the late Quaternary abrupt millennial-scale warming and climate change (Kennett et al. 2003). Destabilization of Neoproterozoic hydrates may, arguably, also have influenced both the pre- and post-snowball Earth carbon systems (Halverson et al. 2002; Kennedy et al. 2001). These catastrophic releases assume that it is predominantly microbial gas that is dissociating from massive methane hydrate deposits. This methane has a diagnostic carbon and hydrogen isotope signature (see Eq. 6), i.e., $^{13}$C-depleted methane of $\delta^{13}$CH$_4 \sim -67$ ‰ versus VPDB and $\delta^{2}$H-CH$_4 \sim -190$ ‰ versus VSMOW (Figs. 3 and 4).

The majority of methane on Earth is generated from accumulated organic matter through various processes, including microbial, thermogenic, and pyrogenic mechanisms. This methane formation from organic matter is augmented by lesser amounts of abiotic methane formation (e.g., Etiope 2015). It has been estimated that approximately 0.1% of the solar radiation reaching surface of the Earth ($3.4 \times 10^6$ EJ year$^{-1}$) is transferred into biomass (~150 Gt year$^{-1}$, Thomson 1852; Monteith 1972; Lieth 1973) and that ~1% of the primary productivity or about 1.5 Gt is ultimately converted to CH$_4$ (Thauer 1998; Reeburgh 2003). This transfer ratio does depend on the environment. For example, the conversion to CH$_4$ in wetlands ranges from 2% to

![Fig. 3](image)

**Fig. 3** Mean methane carbon stable isotope ratio of primary sources of methane flux (Tg/year) to the atmosphere. The integrated $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ input signal from the sources and the combined isotope shift due to methane oxidation and present-day $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ value are also shown. (From Whiticar and Schaefer 2007)
10% of the local primary productivity (Aselmann and Crutzen 1989; Sebacher et al. 1986; Moore and Knowles 1990; Pulliam 1993). Of this total methane generation, about 40% or 582 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$ (Denman et al. 2007) reaches the troposphere, while most of the remainder is oxidized. This microbial methane source compares with the smaller flux of geologically sourced gas ("geogas"), i.e., methane without $^{14}$C, reaching the atmosphere (~10% or ~42–64 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$, Etiope et al. 2008; Schaefer and Whiticar 2008).

Although assessing the magnitudes of the various methane reservoirs is important, it is also important to know how and how much methane moves between these reservoirs and the processes of formation and destruction of methane. A critical aspect of this is accurate characterization of the biogeochemistry of methane, the focus of this chapter.

2 Biogeochemical Process of Microbial Methane Formation

The remineralization sequence of organic matter follows distinct stages, as is shown schematically in Fig. 5. These generally occupy separate horizons or diagenetic zones as illustrated in Fig. 6. Hydrolytic microflora, which operate aerobically, anaerobically, or facultatively, break down complex organic molecules by hydrolysis
to monomers, e.g., sugars, volatile, short-chained fatty acids, and amino acids. Acidogenesis by anaerobic or facultative fermentative microflora further degrades these monomeric and intermediate compounds to fatty acids and alcohols, etc. Subsequently, these compounds can be fermented by syntrophic or homoacetogenic bacteria to precursor substrates, such as acetate or $\text{H}_2 + \text{CO}_2$, for acetoclastic and hydrogenotrophic methanogens. Methanogenesis involves a specialized microflora that requires strict anaerobic conditions with low oxydo-reduction potentials ($\text{Eh} < -200 \text{ mV}$, e.g., Thauer et al. 1977; Zinder 1993).

Fig. 5 Schematic of the basic remineralization sequence for organic matter as it is ultimately transformed from complex to progressively simpler organic molecules, then into methane by methanogenic processes and even consumed by aerobic or anaerobic methanotrophy. Note non-competitive substrates have not been depicted for the sake of clarity.
This anaerobic digestion of organic matter essentially involves heterotrophic bacteria converting larger organic biopolymer into small molecules, such as acetate, CO$_2$, or substances containing a methyl group, that methanogens can utilize (e.g., Liu and Whitman 2008). This remineralization of organic matter to methane operates sympathetically with the remineralization free energy levels shown in Fig. 6.

Over the past century, since the isolation of a methanogen from mud by Stephenson and Strickland (1933) and the identification in the 1960s of archaea-specific lipids (e.g., Kates 1966), considerable progress has been made in understanding the biogeochemistry of methane. Certainly, critical was the definition of the domain Archaea as a distinct phylogenetic group using molecular biology with small rRNAs (e.g., Woese and Fox 1977). This phylogenetic system reclassified methanogens as Euryarchaeota from the original bacteria designation and also as distinct from eukaryotes (Woese et al. 1990). Currently, there are 26 methanogenic genera and over 110 known species of methanogens (NCBI 2017), and they are cosmopolitan with respect to environmental conditions, including many extremophiles (e.g., Bürgmann 2011; Plasencia et al. 2011). Initially, all methanogens were classified into the archael phylum Euryarchaeota. Recently, they were subdivided into the seven orders: Methanobacteria, Methanococcales,
Methanomicrobiales, Methanosarcinales, Methanocellales, Methanopyrales, and Methanomassiliicoccales (e.g., Hedderich and Whitman 2013). Methanogens are also divided as to whether or not they have cytochromes (Thauer et al. 2008) or into the five groups based on the substrate they utilize, i.e., hydrogenotrophs, acetotrophs, methylotrophs, formatotrophs, or alcoholotrophs (Garcia et al. 2000; Le Mer and Roger 2001).

Methanogens are the microbial fermentative stage in largely, but not exclusively, anaerobic environments that convert single-carbon compounds into the catabolic end-product methane. The two most commonly described pathways are (1) hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (Eq. 1), which involves the utilization of inorganic carbon dioxide, and (2) acetoclastic methanogenesis (Eq. 2), which uses acetate as the terminal electron acceptor (“TEA”) by dismutation (Fig. 5) (e.g., Barker and Buswell 1956; Zeikus 1977; Mah et al. 1977; Weimer and Zeikus 1978; Weiss and Thauer 1993; Demirel and Scherer 2008):

\[ \text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (1) \]
\[ \text{CH}_3\text{COOH} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2 \quad (2) \]

The former (also referred to in the early literature as “carbonate reduction methanogenesis”) is thought to be the ancestral methanogenic form (Bapteste et al. 2005). The relative contributions of these two pathways generally depend on the abundance of either H₂-oxidizing CO₂-reducing acetogenic species (Kotelnikova and Pedersen 1998) or acetate-oxidizing H₂-producing anaerobes (Zinder and Koch 1984), respectively.

A third, general methanogenic pathway is methylotrophic methanogenesis (e.g., Thauer et al. 2008; Lang et al. 2015). In this case, simple C₁-bearing compounds, such as methanol, methylamines, and methylsulfides, can serve as substrates for methanogens, often termed as “noncompetitive substrates” (e.g., King et al. 1983; Oremland 1988; Kuivila et al. 1989; Table 1). Methylotrophic methanogenesis can follow either the hydrogen-dependent or hydrogen-independent pathways, using coenzyme M or B, respectively (Keltjens and Vogels 1993; Sikora et al. 2017; Lackner et al. 2018). Some methanogens can utilize carbon monoxide, but growth is very slow (e.g., Fischer et al. 1931; Daniels et al. 1977; Rother and Metcalf 2004; Diender et al. 2015). Acetoclastic methanogenesis (sometimes in the literature referred as “methyl-type fermentation”) comprises roughly 2/3 of the microbial methane (estimated range is 50–90%) (e.g., Huser et al. 1982; Ferry 1992; Conrad and Klose 1999; Le Mer and Roger 2001; Kotsyurbenko et al. 2004; Valentine et al. 2004; Goever and Conrad 2009).

In addition, methanogens can operate in a range of syntrophic relationships with other organisms thereby accessing a wider range of precursor compounds, such as sugars, fatty acids, ketones, and alcohols, that can result in methane formation (e.g., Barker 1936a, b; Schnellen 1947; Bryant et al. 1967; Tatton et al. 1989; Schink 1997; Hattori 2008; Wrede et al. 2012). For example, Schink (1997) described how the Methanobacillus omelianskii culture with strains S and M.o.H. use interspecies
hydrogen transfer to syntrophically convert ethanol to methane and acetate by the following reactions (Eqs. 3, 4, and 5):

Strain S: \[2\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 2\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + 2\text{H}^+ + 4\text{H}_2 \] \(\Delta G^\circ = +19 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ ethanol}\), \(\text{(3)}\)

\[\text{Strain M.o.H.: } \text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \] \(\Delta G^\circ = -131 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ methane}\), \(\text{(4)}\)

and the overall reaction

\[2\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + 2\text{H}^+ + \text{CH}_4 \] \(\Delta G^\circ = -112 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ methane}\). \(\text{(5)}\)

Methanogenic archaea produce organic biomarker compounds that can be used as specific molecular indicators of these organisms. When preserved in certain settings, such as sediments and soils, these archaean biomarkers may potentially offer time records of environmental conditions. For example, archaean use irregular, acyclic isoprenoids as structural compounds for their membranes. These diagnostic compounds, including 2, 6, 10, 15, 19-pentamethylcicosenes (PMIs), have been related to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substrates</th>
<th>Representative reactions</th>
<th>(\Delta G^\circ) (kJ mol(^{-1}) of CH(_4))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide + hydrogen gas(^1)</td>
<td>(\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetate(^2) (acetic acid)(^1)+ proton</td>
<td>(\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2)</td>
<td>-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formate(^3)</td>
<td>(4\text{HCOO}^- \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 3\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanol(^3) + hydrogen gas</td>
<td>(\text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanol(^3) (hydrogen independent)</td>
<td>(4\text{CH}_3\text{OH} \rightarrow 3\text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O})</td>
<td>-105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethanol(^3,4) (1-propanol(^3,4) and 1-butanol(^2,4)) + carbon dioxide</td>
<td>(2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + 2\text{H}^+)</td>
<td>-112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide + water</td>
<td>(4\text{CO} + 5\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 3\text{HCO}_3^- + 3\text{H}^+)</td>
<td>-196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylamine(^3) + water</td>
<td>(4\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_3^+ + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 3\text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2 + 4\text{NH}_4^+)</td>
<td>-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimethylamine(^3) + water</td>
<td>(2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NH}_2^+ + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 3\text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2 + 2\text{NH}_4^+)</td>
<td>-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimethylamine(^3) + water</td>
<td>(4(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{NH}^+ + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 9\text{CH}_4 + 3\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{NH}_4^+)</td>
<td>-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimethylsulfide(^3) + water</td>
<td>(2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{S} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 3\text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{S})</td>
<td>-74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
methanogens (e.g., Tornabene et al. 1979; Brassell et al. 1981; Sinninghe Damsté et al. 1997) and anaerobic methanotrophs (e.g., Elvert et al. 1999; Thiel et al. 1999).

Archaea also synthesize polar membrane lipids that may in some cases be distinctive from bacteria, such as certain glycerol dialkyl diether (DGDs), such as archaeol and hydroxyarchaeol, glycerol dialkyl glycerol tetraether (GDGT), and glycerol-dialkyl-nonitol tetraether (GDNT) lipids, e.g., where isoprenoids are ether-bound to glycerol to make the lipid’s hydrophobic end (Kates et al. 1963; De Rosa and Gambacorta 1988). Initially, some of these isoprenyl glycerol ethers were postulated to be related only to extremophiles, but they are now known to be commonly synthesized by other archaeal groups and occur in a broad range of environments, such as marine and lacustrine sediments (e.g., Michaelis and Albrecht 1979; Chappe et al. 1982). Subsequently, investigators identified various forms of GDGTs, including non-isoprenoid GDGTs, those with 0 to 8 cyclopentane moieties, crenarchaeol, and those with branched carbon skeletons (e.g., Sinninghe Damsté et al. 2000, 2002). GDGTs with methylated isoprenoid chains have been found in Methanothermobacter thermautotrophicus (Knappy 2010), but the assignment is not necessarily exclusive to this methanogen. The occurrence of GDGTs in both archaea and possibly their emerging presence in bacteria and a multitude of environments, including methanotrophy, makes the use of these compounds as biomarkers for methanogens increasingly more complicated and less specific than initially hoped (e.g., Schouten et al. 2012; Naehler et al. 2014).

The stable carbon and hydrogen isotopes of methane ($^{13}$C/$^{12}$C and $^2$H/$^1$H also denoted D/H) are helpful parameters to differentiate methanogenic pathways, such as hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis from those involving preformed substrates, e.g., acetate, formate, methylamines, etc. (Whiticar 1999; Hornibrook et al. 1997; Valentine et al. 2004; Londry et al. 2008). Stable isotopes are also useful to distinguish microbial methane from other sources, such as thermogenic, geothermal, and abiogenic (Lyon and Hulston 1984; Schoell 1988; Whiticar 1994; Etiope and Sherwood Lollar 2013). Stable isotope ratios in natural sciences are typically expressed for convenience in the standard delta notation ($\delta$) as the deviation in ‰ from a standard, e.g., $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ (sometimes shortened to $\delta^{13}$CH$_4$) and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ (also written as $\delta$D-CH$_4$), i.e., Eq. 6:

$$
\delta_x(‰) = \left( \frac{R_x - R_{std}}{R_{std}} \right) \times 1000,
$$

where $R$ is the isotope ratio, for example, the $^{13}$C/$^{12}$C or $^2$H/$^1$H of the sample “x” and isotope reference standard “std” (generally VPDB for carbon and VSMOW for hydrogen, e.g., Verkouteren and Klinedinst 2004).

The magnitude of the isotope effect that partitions the isotopes between phases (A and B) is quantified as the fractionation factor ($\alpha_{A-B}$):

$$
\alpha_{A-B} = \alpha^A_B = \left( \frac{R_A}{R_B} \right),
$$
which can be rewritten in $\delta$ notation as

$$\alpha_{A-B} = \frac{\delta_A + 1000}{\delta_B + 1000}. \quad (8)$$

For simplification, some authors prefer enrichment factors ($\varepsilon$) that recast $\alpha_{A-B}$ as

$$\varepsilon_{A-B} \approx 10^3 \ln \alpha_{A-B} \approx 10^3 (\alpha_{A-B} - 1). \quad (9)$$

The enrichment factor ($\varepsilon$) is approximately the same as the isotope separation provided the differences are small, i.e., typically $<25 \%$, so

$$\varepsilon_{\text{CO}_2-\text{CH}_4} \approx \delta^{13}\text{CO}_2 - \delta^{13}\text{CH}_4. \quad (10)$$

It should be noted that methanogenesis, especially hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis, can have $\delta^{13}\text{CO}_2 - \delta^{13}\text{CH}_4$ $>25 \%$, so $\alpha_{\text{CO}_2-\text{CH}_4}$ is preferred for rigorous calculations of isotope separation.

The stable C- and H-isotope signatures of the different methane sources can be shown by cross-plotting $\delta^{13}\text{C-CH}_4$ versus $\delta^{2}\text{H-CH}_4$ (CD plot, Fig. 7, after Whiticar 1999). In general, the combination of the C- and H isotopes give signatures for hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (HM) that can be distinguished from acetoclastic

![Fig. 7 Carbon and hydrogen stable isotope (CD) plot to isotopically characterize various sources of biotic and abiotic methane. (After Whiticar 1999)
methanogenesis (AM). In addition to the microbial methane, Fig. 7 also shows the typical isotope regions for thermogenic, hydrothermal, and abiogenic gases and how they also can be distinguished from microbial methane. Although other papers have reversed the axes of the CD plot (e.g., Schoell 1980; Etiope and Sherwood Lollar 2013), my historical rationale for plotting δ¹³C-CH₄ on the ordinate axis and increasing upward with ¹²C-enriched values (e.g., Whiticar et al. 1986) is to help illustrate the typical, vertically downward depth trend of diagenesis to catagenesis observed in nature, e.g., normally encountered during drilling of a well. It should also be noted that Fig. 7 is an empirical diagram, whereby the fields are delineated by “primary gases,” i.e., those thought to be representative of the gas types and not “secondary gases,” which may have been influenced by mixing or alteration processes. Milkov and Etiope (2018) sorted the C- and H-isotope data on over 20,000 natural gases as microbial, thermogenic, and abiotic. Their classified data on the CD plot, shown in Fig. 8, shows general agreement with the established fields in Fig. 7, although the assignments to specific gas types or whether or not the gas is “primary” remains subjective.

Several processes can shift the typical isotope signature for microbial gases in addition to the type of methanogenic pathway. These include variations in the carbon and hydrogen ratios of the precursor materials (shown by the heavy dashed box in Fig. 9). There are also secondary effects, such as mixing of methane from different

Fig. 8 Extension of carbon and hydrogen stable isotope plot of Whiticar (1999) (shown in outline) using the >20,000 data points from Milkov and Etiope (2018) to delineate biotic and abiotic methane types
microbial pathways and with nonmicrobial methane, or methane oxidation, that create diagnostic shifts in $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ versus $\delta^{2}$H-CH$_4$ values from unaltered methane signatures. The utilization of the carbon substrates, e.g., CO$_2$ or acetate, etc., by methanogens is associated with isotope effects that usually deplete the lighter isotopologue (e.g., $^{12}$CO$_2$) in the substrate pool at a higher rate than the heavier isotopologue (e.g., $^{13}$CO$_2$). As the substrate pool is consumed, the remaining carbon becomes increasingly $^{13}$C-enriched, generally following a Rayleigh relationship (Rayleigh 1896; Claypool and Kaplan 1974; Mahieu et al. 2006). This relationship depends on system conditions, such as open versus closed and reversible versus irreversible reactions as shown in Fig. 10 (e.g., Mariotti et al. 1981; Rooney et al. 1995; Hayes 2001). Because the pool of precursor hydrogen (water) is typically very much larger compared with the amount of hydrogen in methane, generally no hydrogen depletion effect is observed. The carbon shift due to substrate depletion is illustrated in CD plot in Fig. 9.

The magnitudes of kinetic isotope effects (KIE) are generally dependent on temperature, i.e., KIE decreases as temperature increases. This relationship of KIE on temperature was observed for field and culture data of methanogenesis over the temperature range of $-1.3$ °C to 110 °C with $\varepsilon_{CO_2 - CH_4}$ decreasing from 9 to $-3.5$
Fig. 11, Whiticar et al. 1986; Botz et al. 1996; Whiticar 1999; Fey et al. 2004. In contrast, culture experiments with various substrates by Penger et al. (2014) did not observe any change in $\varepsilon_C$ over the range of 25–68 °C, so this question of temperature sensitivity is not yet fully resolved and that in some cases the influence of temperature on KIE may be masked by other factors.

The $\delta^2$H-H$_2$O of the formation water from which the methanogens directly or indirectly derive their hydrogen determines the $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ value along with distinguishing the methanogenic pathway (Schoell 1980; Whiticar et al. 1986; Balabane et al. 1987). Figure 12 shows the expected relationship between the formation water $\delta^2$H-H$_2$O and the $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ for both hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (HM) and acetoclastic methanogenesis (AM). The relationships are defined as

$$\delta^2$$H$_{CH4} = m \cdot \delta^2$$H_{H2O} - \beta,$$ \quad (11)$$

where $m$, the slope, is 1.0 for HM and 0.25 for AM depending on the direct versus indirect (intact hydrogen transfer) (Daniels et al. 1980). The offset, $\beta$, is determined empirically from natural and culture samples to be around $-160$ to $-180 \%$ for HM and $\sim -325 \%$ for AM (Whiticar 1999). Mixtures between the HM and AM processes are commonly found, e.g., Waldron et al. (1999) reported values of
0.675 for m and $-284\%$ for $\beta$ (Eq. 11) from freshwater wetlands with $\delta^2H-H_2O$ values ranging from $-130\%$ to $+10\%$. The consequence of the dependency of $\delta^2H-CH_4$ on $\delta^2H-H_2O$ is illustrated for HM in Fig. 9. The shift in $\delta^2H-CH_4$, as
shown, can be dramatic especially for environments with isotopically light formation water, e.g., high-latitude regions. The original HM region in Fig. 7 was largely defined for marine environments ($\delta^{2}H-H_{2}O \sim 0$ %) and must be corrected for the actual $\delta^{2}H-H_{2}O$ utilized by the methanogens. The different dependence of $\delta^{2}H-CH_{4}$ on $\delta^{2}H-H_{2}O$ for hydrogenotrophic and acetoclastic methanogenic pathways can also be expressed in terms of $\varepsilon_D (H_{2}O-CH_{4})$ (Eq. 9). The former (HM) typically has $\varepsilon_D (H_{2}O-CH_{4})$ around 160–200, while AM is larger from ~300 to 450 (Fig. 13).

There can also be a carbon isotope relationship between CO$_2$ and CH$_4$, which can be exploited to further distinguish between various methane pathways and types. The delineation of HM and AM methanogenic pathways is based on their distinctive separations between $\delta^{13}C-CO_{2}$ and $\delta^{13}C-CH_{4}$ ($\varepsilon_C (CO_{2}-CH_{4})$). This approach is valid only if there is a direct microbial relationship between CO$_2$ and CH$_4$ (coexisting pairs) in the gas measured, i.e., the microbial processes essentially modulate the $\delta^{13}C-CO_{2}$ and $\delta^{13}C-CH_{4}$. In cases where CO$_2$ or CH$_4$ are not coupled, e.g., admixture of allochthonous CO$_2$ or CH$_4$, such as additions of unrelated thermogenic CH$_4$ or inorganic CO$_2$, then the use of this CO$_2$–CH$_4$ coexisting pair relationship can be compromised. An alternative approach is to compare the $\delta^{13}C$ of the precursor organic substrate with $\delta^{13}C-CH_{4}$ (e.g., Summons et al. 1998). Figure 14 illustrates the empirically defined regions of $\varepsilon_C (CO_{2}-CH_{4})$ for HM and AM pathways together with those for thermogenic gas and atmospheric methane. The general trend for CH$_4$ oxidation and CO$_2$ evolution is also depicted, although the magnitude and slope depend on degree of consumption and the TEA involved, e.g., O$_2$ or SO$_4^{2-}$ (Coleman et al. 1981; Whiticar 1999). Although a $\varepsilon_C (CO_{2}-CH_{4})$ of ~55 has been used in the past to demarcate AM from HM (Fig. 14), this is not a robust measure, and there are examples where this is clearly violated. A more robust approach to demarcate AM
from HM is the combination of $\varepsilon_{D}(H_2O-CH_4)$ and $\varepsilon_{C}(CO_2-CH_4)$ as shown in Fig. 13. An important feature of this plot is that the absolute isotope ratios for the gas and water are not important, rather just the magnitudes of the separation between $\delta^{2}H-H_2O-\delta^{2}H-CH_4$ and $\delta^{13}CO_2-\delta^{13}CH_4$.

Molecular ratios, such as $CH_4/C_2H_6$ or $CH_4/(C_2H_6 + C_3H_8)$ (aka Bernard parameter or $C_1/(C_2+C_3)$, Bernard et al. 1976), are frequently used to distinguish microbial gas from thermogenic sources. The concept is based on the low amounts of micro-biologically formed ethane and propane compared to methane, i.e., $C_1/(C_2+C_3) > 100$ or even much higher ($\sim 10^5$). Thermogenic “wet” gases often have $C_1/(C_2+C_3) < 50$, but high maturity or humic thermogenic gases, e.g., shale gases, coal gases, etc., can be “dry” gases with $C_1/(C_2+C_3) \sim 10^2-10^3$. Typically to distinguish microbial from thermogenic gas, $C_1/(C_2+C_3)$ is combined with $\delta^{13}CH_4$ to generate the Bernard diagram (Bernard et al. 1976).

Figure 15 is a rendition of this Bernard diagram that illustrates the regions occupied by the different gas types (Whiticar 1994). In addition, the trajectories of the secondary effects of mixing, migration, maturation (vitrinite reflectance or VR), and methane oxidation are shown. The magnitudes of microbial formation of ethane and propane have been long-standing issues, particularly as they can confound the signature of thermogenic gases used in petroleum exploration (Claypool 1999). In recent sediments and soils, usually there are at least trace levels of higher light
hydrocarbons (ethane-propane) present. Determination of the origin of these low amounts of light hydrocarbons is often challenging and potentially from a variety of microbial, thermogenic, abiotic, etc. sources and histories (Whelan et al. 1980; Vogel et al. 1982). Oremland et al. (1988) demonstrated microbial ethane formation from reduced, ethylated sulfur compounds, namely, ethanethiol (ESH) and diethylsulfide (DES), in gas samples and cultures from anoxic sediments from multiple locations. They also reported minor propanogenesis from propanethiol. The incubations required higher H2 levels and 2-bromoethanesulfonic acid (BES), a (imperfect) methanogenesis inhibitor. Subsequently, others have reported microbial ethane in cultures (Koene-Cottaar and Schraa 1998) and surface casing vent flow from well bores (Taylor et al. 2000). Ethanogenesis and propanogenesis have also been shown by Hinrichs et al. (2006) and Xie et al. (2013) from incubation of tidal muds with ethanethiol, propanethiol, and BES, albeit with low H2 levels. This suggests that the product ethylene was more important than H2 for the ethanogenesis. Their archaeal 16S rRNA analyses also suggest that the order Methanomicrobiales (Methanocalculus spp.) were potentially responsible for the C2 and C3 formation.

Although methanogens are referred to as obligate anaerobes (Wolfe 1971), there are studies showing that they function or exist for periods of time in oxic settings as methanogenic endosymbionts in anaerobic ciliates (Schwarz and Frenzel 2005) or oxygen-limited settings (Kiener and Leisinger 1983; Kirby et al. 1981; Huser et al. 1982; Peters and Conrad 1996; Zitomer 1998) and in microniche (Field et al. 1995).
It has long been recognized due to the presence of methane oversaturation in the ocean upper water column that microbial methane formation can occur in these oxygenated surface waters (Lamontagne et al. 1973; Scranton and Brewer 1977; Burke Jr et al. 1983). This “oceanic methane paradox” (Kiene 1991) has been explained by several sources, including enteric methane production, i.e., in zooplankton and fecal pellets (e.g., Traganza et al. 1979; Sieburth 1987; Bianchi et al. 1992; Marty 1993; Karl and Tilbrook 1994), microbial methane formation in anaerobic microzones (Rusanov et al. 2004), leaching of nearshore groundwaters (Brooks 1979), or advection from shelf sources (Ward 1992).

More recently, alternative non-methanogenic explanations have been proposed, such as methane formation as a by-product of the bacterial degradation of dimethylsulfoniopropionate precursors from phytoplankton metabolism (e.g., Karl et al. 2008; Damm et al. 2010), aerobic microorganisms utilizing phosphonate esters (Kamat et al. 2013; Repeta et al. 2016), or marine algae (Lenhart et al. 2016). These non-archaeal sources are analogous to the aerobic, abiotic methane formation in plants and soils reported by, e.g., Keppler et al. (2006) and Jugold et al. (2012).

The diversity of methanogens and methanogenic pathways is controlled at a larger scale by growth environments. However, as is well illustrated by the above “oceanic methane paradox,” such traditional classifications, e.g., marine or terrestrial, provide some guidance but are generally too simplistic. Factors, including diagenetic position, availability of “competitive” versus “noncompetitive” substrates for methanogens, microbial oxidation, etc., can dramatically influence the occurrence and distribution of methane.

3 Microbial Methane in Marine Environments

The estimate for the amount of microbial methane generated in marine sediments is largely uncertain, but it comprises roughly 1/3 of the naturally generated, microbial methane (estimated range is 10–40%). This estimate is confounded by a suite of factors, including the production and consumption rates and the transport mode (e.g., diffusion, advection, seepages) in the sediments. In addition, thermogenic and abiotic sources can both contribute to the marine sediment methane budget, particularly by submarine seepages (Etiope and Klusman 2002). For marine sediment microbial methane generation, Reeburgh et al. (1993) reported ~80 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹, Hovland et al. 1993 suggested 8–65 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹, whereas Hinrichs and Boetius (2002) cited ~300 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹. Modelling by Wallmann et al. (2006) reduced these estimates to a range of 5–33 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹, with a preferred value of ~13 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹, similar to 26 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ given by Boetius and Wenzhöfer (2013). Methane emissions from the marine environment (sediments and water column sources) to the atmosphere are also not well constrained and have been estimated to be 10–30 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ (Watson et al. 1990; Kvenvolden and Rogers 2005; Boetius and Wenzhöfer 2013).
Since the 1970s (e.g., Froelich et al. 1979; Berner 1980), a diagenetic sequence for the remineralization of organic matter has been recognized for marine sediments based on redox and free energy associated with the reactions (Table 2).

Stumm and Morgan (1981) and Stigliani (1988) clearly illustrated the cascading series of oxidation-reductions or “redox ladder” associated with organic matter remineralization. As a consequence, there is a diagenetic succession with marine sediment depth for the remineralization of organic matter, as represented schematically in Fig. 6. As remarked by Jørgensen (1977), different physiological groups show a zonation similar to the chemical ones. For example, in marine sediments, the activity of SRBs typically removes acetate before it can become available for methanogens. In such cases, methanogenesis by the hydrogenotrophic pathway (Eq. 1) dominates over the acetoclastic pathway (Eq. 2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagenetic stage</th>
<th>Representative formula</th>
<th>$\Delta G^\circ$ (kJ mol$^{-1}$, 25 °C)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Propionate metabolism/acetogenesis</td>
<td>$\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{COO}^- + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+ + 3\text{H}_2$</td>
<td>+76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butyrate metabolism/acetogenesis</td>
<td>$\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{COO}^- + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 2\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{H}^+ + 2\text{H}_2$</td>
<td>+49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxic respiration</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_4 + 2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerobic methane oxidation</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} + 2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−818</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrate reduction</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} + 8/5\text{NO}_3^- + 8/5\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 4\text{N}_2 + 2\text{CO}_2 + 14/5\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−848</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron reduction</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} + 8\text{Fe}^{3+} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 8\text{Fe}^{2+} + 2\text{CO}_2 + 8\text{H}^+$</td>
<td>−495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfate reduction</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} + 2\text{H}^- + \text{SO}_4^{2-} \rightarrow 2\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{S} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaerobic oxidation of methane denitrification</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{NO}_2^- + 8\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 3\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{N}_2 + 10\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−928</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaerobic oxidation of methane-sulfate reduction</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_4 + \text{SO}_4^{2-} + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + \text{HS}^- + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetoclastic methanogenesis</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + \text{CH}_4$</td>
<td>−36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanol methanogenesis</td>
<td>$\text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethanol syntrophic co-culture acetogenesis-methanogenesis</td>
<td>$2\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + 2\text{H}^+ + \text{CH}_4$</td>
<td>−112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis</td>
<td>$\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formate methanogenesis</td>
<td>$4\text{CHOO}^- + 4\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 3\text{CO}_2 + \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$</td>
<td>−130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The surface-most sediments are typically the most oxidized with increasing degrees of reducing conditions at greater depth (age). Bioturbation mixes and oxygenates the surface sediments, which can deepen O₂ penetration and thus depress the diagenetic zonation. Bioturbation by macrofauna can in instances of near-surface methane also promote the flux of methane to the water column (e.g., Bonaglia et al. 2014) or conversely can enhance methane consumption (e.g., Childress et al. 1986). In sediments with lower levels of labile organic matter ($C_{org} < 0.2$ wt.%), such as the mid-North Pacific, dissolved O₂ around 250 $\mu$M can be found in the surficial interstitial fluids (Fig. 16, panel 1). These sediments with mostly recalcitrant organic matter can remain aerobic for 10s of meters depth (e.g., D’Hondt et al. 2015). In such oxic settings, there may be insufficient organic matter to exhaust the dissolved O₂ or other oxidants that are co-buried or diffusing in the sediments (Table 2).
Sulfate reduction (SR) and methanogenesis are not encountered in such environments unless there are substantial amounts of organic compounds advecting up from greater depth, e.g., from petroleum or gas hydrate-related seeps. Oxygen concentrations of ~10 ppm are known to inhibit methanogenesis due to the O_{2} sensitivity of enzymes and cofactors in methanogens (e.g., Schonheit et al. 1981; Ragsdale and Kumar 1996), thus restricting the methanogenic zone.

Marine sediments with higher amounts of labile organic matter (e.g., C_{org} ~0.3 wt.%, Fig. 16, panel 2), such as many shelf deposits, have rates of oxidant utilization during organic decomposition that exceed the influx of O_{2} from the overlying water column (e.g., Rittenberg et al. 1955). The presence of O_{2} is often restricted to the uppermost millimeter or centimeter of sediment due to the low solubility of O_{2} and it being the favorite electron acceptor (e.g., Wallmann et al. 1997; Hensen and Zabel 2000).

Once O_{2} is exhausted, then the microbial community switches to less energetic, suboxic oxidants, such as nitrate, nitrite and manganese (Mn(IV)), and iron (Fe(III)) oxides. The lack of free oxygen restricts the types of infauna and hence inhibits the degree and decreases the depth of bioturbation. Typically, if there is sufficient labile organic matter present to consume the interstitial O_{2}, e.g., C_{org} ~0.3–0.5 wt.%, then these suboxic species will also be quantitatively consumed. At that point, dissolved sulfate becomes the next oxidant utilized (Fig. 16, panel 3). Dissimilatory sulfate reduction by sulfate-reducing bacteria (SRBs) acts as the next, albeit poorer, TEA for the anaerobic respiration of organic matter (e.g., Starkey 1948, Table 2). Hydrogen sulfide is one of the reaction products that is toxic and can inhibit bioturbation at the sediment surface (e.g., Atkinson and Richards 1967). In some cases, the sulfate reduction zone (SRZ) even extends into the water column, e.g., the Black Sea (Luther III et al. 1991) or Saanich Inlet (Capelle et al. 2018). In most sediments, the H_{2}S is rapidly complexed and removed from the interstitial water as metallic monosulfides and eventually as pyrite. The biology of SRBs have been researched for over a century (e.g., Beijerinck 1895; Van Delden 1903), but in recent sediments, detailed distributions of SRBs were reported later by Jørgensen (1977) and others. It is interesting to note that at the base of the SRZ, sulfate concentrations are not always fully depleted, and sulfate can persist at ~100 s μM levels into the methane accumulation zone (MAZ) (e.g., Neretin et al. 2004). The explanation for this is unclear, but it may be that low sulfate concentrations fall below the threshold for use by SRBs (Leloup et al. 2007) or potentially that there is a sulfur cycle below the sulfate-methane transition zone (SMTZ, e.g., Mitterer 2010) that involves sulfide reoxidation (Knab et al. 2008; 2009).

The final diagenetic link in the remineralization chain of organic matter is thought to be methanogenesis, whereby methanogens use carbon rather than oxygen as the final TEA (Table 2). Generally, organic-rich sediments (e.g., C_{org} ~0.3–0.5 wt.%, Fig. 16, panel 3) consume the oxygenated oxidants (O_{2} – SO_{4}^{2−}), enabling the formation and accumulation of higher quantities of methane. In some marine environments with high organic loading, the anaerobic diagenetic zone can extend up into the water column resulting in the presence of high methane contents...
There are interesting suggestions that methanogenesis may not always be the “final diagenetic link” mentioned above. Instead, under certain conditions during late-stage diagenesis, methanogenesis could transition to iron reduction, utilizing iron oxides (Crowe et al. 2011; Sivan et al. 2011). This has been shown to be biologically feasible (e.g., Lovley and Phillips 1986; Lovley 2006; Weber et al. 2006). It also appears to be more easily recognized in freshwater settings (e.g., Roden and Wetzel 1996). As discussed later, iron-coupled reactions may also play an important role in the anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM) (e.g., Ettwig et al. 2016). However, the importance of such iron-related processes is currently uncertain, but potentially relevant, particularly in earlier Earth history.

Not shown in Fig. 5 are the noncompetitive substrates that can also be utilized by methanogens. In sulfate-bearing environments, such as marine sediments or hypersaline settings, e.g., Mono Lake (Oremland et al. 1993), methanogens are generally outcompeted by SRBs for fermentation products such as hydrogen and acetate (competitive substrates) (e.g., Lovley et al. 1982), or based on energetics (Oremland and Taylor 1978; Schönheit et al. 1982; Lovley and Klug 1983). In the SRZ, methanogens can function using the non-competitive substrates, such as methanol, dimethylsulfide, and methylated amines, that are not utilized by SRBs (e.g., Winfrey and Ward 1983; Oremland et al. 1982; Oremland and Polcin 1982; Kiene et al. 1986; Maltby et al. 2018) (Table 1). In settings with higher H\textsubscript{2} production, it seems that methanogens can also successfully compete with SRBs (Hoehler et al. 2001; Buckley et al. 2008). There have been some more recent suggestions that SRBs and methanogens, using substrates competitively, can coexist in the SRZ (Sela-Adler et al. 2017; Dale et al. 2008; Ozuolmez et al. 2015; Zhuang et al. 2016, 2018). Although further validation is sought, the existing studies strongly suggest that methanogenesis and sulfate reduction (SR) may coexist under particular conditions. As will be discussed, methane that is formed from non-competitive substrates or other processes in the SRZ generally does not accumulate there because of extensive AOM in the SRZ that consumes any methane produced or migrating there (e.g., Xiao et al. 2017, 2018).

Normally, in marine sediments there is a clear demarcation between the SRZ and the methane accumulation zone (MAZ), with only a short overlap between them, i.e., the SMTZ, as illustrated in Fig. 6. In settings where the methanogenesis is more intense, the accumulation of dissolved methane can reach and exceed the saturation concentration. This leads to bubble formation at depth (Fig. 17). Such free gas accumulations have long been remotely recognized in recent sediment packages as “acoustically turbid zones” or “Becken Effekt” (e.g., Schüler 1952; Busby and Richardson 1957; Edgerton et al. 1966; Werner 1968; Hinz et al. 1969; Anderson et al. 1971; Schubel 1974; Van Weering 1975; Judd and Hovland 1992). Initially, H\textsubscript{2}S and N\textsubscript{2} were among the gases suggested to cause acoustic turbidity. However, the works of Claypool and Kaplan (1974), Martens and Berner (1974), and Whiticar (1978) demonstrated that the presence of methane bubbles is responsible (Fig. 17).
In some cases, the upward migration of, for example, thermogenic methane from greater depth can also create such acoustic turbidity (e.g., Judd and Hovland 2009). As depicted in Figs. 6 and 16, substantial concentrations of methane are first measured once sulfate has been drawn down to less than ~0.5 mM. The interesting spatial interplay observed between the sulfate and methane distributions and the SMTZ in marine sediments was the subject of intense work in the 1970s (e.g., Claypool and Kaplan 1974; Martens and Berner 1974; Barnes and Goldberg 1976; Whiticar 1978). In simple terms, the concave downward shape of the depth profile of dissolved sulfate concentration in Figs. 6 and 16 is the result of the balance between the downward diffusion of sulfate, microbial uptake by SRBs, and the upward pore fluid advection. Some sulfate is consumed by the oxidation of organic matter (Table 2), but AOM is also an important, if not the dominant, sink for dissolved sulfate (e.g., Boetius et al. 2000). Although today AOM is an accepted process, this was not always the case. In fact, before the 1980s the process was highly controversial. Early geochemical studies concluded that AOM was necessary to maintain the concave upward profiles of methane observed in interstitial fluids below the SRZ (Figs. 6 and 16) (e.g., Claypool and Kaplan 1974; Martens and Berner 1974; Barnes and Goldberg 1976; Whiticar 1978). These authors surmised that diffusion and advection of methane alone could not establish the methane gradients observed.
The net equation for the generalized process of AOM was initially suggested (e.g., Reeburgh 1976) to be

\[ CH_4 + SO_4^{2-} \rightarrow HS^- + HCO_3^- + H_2O \quad (\Delta G^o = -16.6 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}). \quad (12) \]

Some of the more common complaints by microbial ecologists against AOM by SRBs at that time were that (a) this process could not be replicated in pure cultures (e.g., Zehnder and Brock 1979) and (b) the ~16–18 kJ mol\(^{-1}\) free energy yield of this exergonic reaction (Eq. 12) was below the biological energy quantum (e.g., Schink 1997; Sørensen et al. 2001). Although “obligate methane oxidizers” were discussed in freshwaters (e.g., Naguib and Overbeck 1970; Whittenbury et al. 1970) and that “…an association between the methane oxidizers and the sulfate reducers can be deduced” (Cappenberg 1972), the exact process remained uncertain. This was further complicated by the stark difference in sulfate concentrations between marine and freshwater systems and the possible lack of a SMTZ in the latter.

4 Microbial Methane in Freshwater and Terrestrial Environments

Low salinity and low dissolved sulfate environments, such as most terrestrial/lacustrine water columns and sediments, wetlands, soils, etc., have diagenetic remineralization stages analogous to those of marine and hypersaline settings (e.g., Capone and Kiene 1988; Roden and Wetzel 1996) (Fig. 6). Despite the obvious differences in concentrations of oxidizing agents and organic matter types between salt and freshwaters, those replete in organic carbon follow the sequential reduction of O\(_2\), NO\(_3^\text{−}\), Mn(IV), Fe(III), SO\(_4^{2−}\), and finally methanogenesis (e.g., Ponnampерuma 1972; Patrick and Reddy 1978; Zehnder and Stumm 1988; Achtnich et al. 1995). The dissolved O\(_2\) concentration thresholds are approximately 6–10 \(\mu\text{M}\) O\(_2\) for denitrification, ~1.5 \(\mu\text{M}\) O\(_2\) for Mn(IV) reduction, and 1.5 \(\mu\text{M}\) O\(_2\) for Fe(III) reduction (Tiedje 1988; Seitzinger et al. 2006; McMahon and Chapelle 2008). It was recognized in a series of papers that the presence of these oxidants leads to bacteria outcompeting the methanogens (Lovley and Phillips 1987; Lovley and Goodwin 1988; Lovley 1991).

Sulfate concentrations in freshwater environments are low compared to marine (~50–500 \(\mu\text{M}\) vs. ~25–30 mM) and can be rapidly consumed, i.e., SRZ in freshwater environments is much less significant. As a consequence, the remineralization of organic matter by methanogenesis in freshwater settings is suggested to be 2–5 times greater than by SR. This remains controversial because of the potential for rapid recycling of sulfate in freshwaters (Ingvorsen and Jørgensen 1984), thereby increasing its reuse and hence proportion utilized. For comparison, methanogens in marine sediments may only remineralize 5–10% as much carbon compared to SRBs (Canfield 1993).

Due to the likely diminished role of SRBs competing for substrates and consuming methane, methanogenesis can occur much closer to the sediment surface than in
saline environments, i.e., in some cases at levels <30 μM sulfate and within cms of the interface (e.g., Kuivila et al. 1989; Koizumi et al. 2003). At levels >60 μM sulfate, the SRBs still outcompete the methanogens in freshwaters (Winfrey and Zeikus 1977; Ingvorsen and Brock 1982; Lovley and Klug 1986). This difference in sulfate between marine and freshwater can lead for the latter to a spatial compression of the oxic, suboxic, and methane formation zones shown in Fig. 6. The low levels of sulfate and SRBs competing for acetate in anaerobic freshwater conditions mean that acetoclastic methanogenesis (Eq. 2, Fig. 5) can be a major methanogenic pathway. Non-competitive substrates can also be utilized, but the amounts are low compared with acetoclastic and hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (Winfrey and Zeikus 1977).

In several anoxic lakes and wetland sites, a transition with sediment depth is observed from predominantly acetoclastic methanogenesis (Eq. 2) higher in the diagenetic profile to a regime at greater depth/age increasingly dominated by hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (Eq. 1). This methanogenic pathway transition feature has been supported by a range of methods, including stable isotope measurements, incubation and inhibitor culture experiments, 16S rRNA, and mcrA genes (e.g., Martens et al. 1992; Avery et al. 1999; Chan et al. 2005; Lu et al. 2005; Alstad and Whiticar 2011; Hershey et al. 2014; Lofton et al. 2015; Cadieux et al. 2016; Yang et al. 2017). This transition appears to largely reflect the exhaustion of organic substrates available for acetoclastic methanogenesis, leaving hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis to continue at depth with continued remineralization.

Common for anaerobic freshwater systems (sediments and sometimes stratified water columns) is that the concentration of dissolved methane can quickly rise above the methane saturation point, leading to bubble formation and thus ebullition of gas from the sediments and soils due to buoyancy. The importance of the spatial compression of the hypoxic and methane accumulation zones in freshwaters is that methane can more easily evade the microbial oxidation biofilter that consumes methane in situ. This means that a greater proportion of methane can escape by ebullition and diffusion into the troposphere from freshwater environments than from marine sources (Strayer and Tiedje 1978; Reeburgh et al. 1993; Bastviken et al. 2008). Global methane emissions from freshwaters are estimated to be ~100 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ (Bastviken et al. 2011), which is substantially higher than oceanic source estimates (10–30 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹) and high-latitude emissions from tundra (~35 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹, e.g., Fung et al. 1991).

The pool of nitrate (100–200 μM) in freshwaters can exceed sulfate (e.g., Mulholland et al. 2008) and thus compared with marine environments NO₃⁻ may be more important as a methane oxidizer (Fig. 5). Due to the short and rapid gas migration paths in soils and in freshwater columns, in situ methane consumption is reduced. The result is that ebullition, diffusion, and advection are major processes for the release of microbial methane from permafrost thawing, natural wetlands, and freshwaters into the atmosphere (e.g., Klapstein et al. 2014). These releases account for ~20% of the total tropospheric methane emissions budget compared with ~5% from the oceans.
Soils offer diverse environments for methanogens. These can be roughly divided into the vadose and water-saturated zones. The latter can have rapid invasion of O₂, which maintains aerobic conditions and limits methanogenesis. In some cases, anoxic microsites can serve as a refugia for methanogenic archaea (e.g., Watanabe et al. 2007). Some studies even report CH₄ production in dry, oxic environments (e.g., Andersen et al. 1998; von Fischer 2002; Teh et al. 2005; von Fischer and Hedin 2007).

In the water-saturated zone, the 0.3 mM O₂ in fully oxygenated waters is rapidly consumed leading to anaerobic conditions and methanogenesis. This has been studied extensively for flooded soils, rice paddies, wetlands, lakes, and tundras (e.g., Holzapfel-Pschorn et al. 1985; Achtnich et al. 1995; Chanton 2005; Dalal et al. 2008; Oertel et al. 2016). In addition to soil moisture, temperature, pH, and vegetation types and gas transport mechanisms, including diffusion and plant ventilation, all play critical roles in governing the production, consumption, and emissions of methane from these settings (Zeikus and Winfrey 1976; de Bont et al. 1978; Dacey 1981; Conrad et al. 1987; Whiting and Chanton 1992; Westermann 1993; Dunfield et al. 1993). Figure 18 outlines the major processes involved with the production, consumption, and transport of methane in inundated freshwater environments.

**Fig. 18** Schematic of processes related to methanogenic and methanotrophic mechanisms in plants, soils, and inundated freshwater environments (wetlands, lakes, rice paddies, etc.). (Modified from Xu et al. 2016)
environments. This includes acetoclastic and hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis and methanotrophy.

The transport mechanisms include ebullition and molecular diffusion out of the soils and sediments but also plant-based aerenchyma transport in macrophytes (Colmer 2003; Chanton 2005) or in vascular plants (Shannon et al. 1996; Ström et al. 2012). Molecular diffusion in air is about $10^4$ times faster than in the dissolved phase (methane diffusion coefficients at 25°C in air $\sim 2.0 \times 10^{-1}$ cm$^2$ s$^{-1}$, Winn 1950, and in water $\sim 2 \times 10^{-5}$ cm$^2$ s$^{-1}$, Witherspoon and Saraf 1965). Therefore, enhanced emission from the gas phase in plants versus waterlogged soils or waters is expected. For example, Tyler et al. (1997) estimated that plants account for 98% of the CH$_4$ emissions from a Texas paddy field. Watanabe et al. (1999) reported that up to 60% of the methane emitted from rice fields originated from root exudates in the rice rhizosphere. Root exudates are also known to modulate methane production in peatlands and Arctic wetlands (Shannon et al. 1996; Ström et al. 2012). Similarly, Knoblauch et al. (2015) reported that plant-mediated transport accounted for 70–90% of total CH$_4$ fluxes from their polygonal tundra study site in Siberia. In the absence of the vascular plants, the majority of the methane was oxidized and not emitted due to the increased methane residence time.

Plants themselves are also a potential source of methane formation. Zeikus and Ward (1974) and Schink et al. (1981) reported methanogenesis related to the anaerobic degradation of wetwood and pectin in living trees. Trees have also been shown to transport methane (Rusch and Rennenberg 1998; Terazawa et al. 2007). The methanogenic potential of anaerobic mosses is not well constrained (Knoblauch et al. 2015), and mosses, especially the aerobic layers, are more likely a source of CH$_4$ consumption and reduced atmospheric CH$_4$ flux (Basiliko et al. 2004; Liebner et al. 2011; Parmentier et al. 2011). Methane consumption in emergent fen mosses in an Arctic lake during the Holocene Thermal Maximum was reported by Elvert et al. (2016) based on the presence of $^{13}$C-depleted bacterial hopanoids, e.g., hop-17(21)-ene, with $\delta^{13}$C as low as $-55.9$‰.

In addition to production and active CH$_4$ transport, plants can be the site of substantial CH$_4$ consumption (Fig. 18). For example, Schütz et al. (1989), Frenzel (2000), Groot et al. (2003), and Zhang et al. (2014) described methane uptake by aerobic methanotrophs in rice plant rhizospheres.

Finally, there is the controversial aerobic (abiotic) formation of methane in plants, first suggested by Keppler et al. (2006) and Crutzen et al. (2006). This mechanism was disputed by Dueck et al. (2007), Beerling et al. (2008), and Kirschbaum and Walcroft (2008) but subsequently defended by processes involving ultraviolet radiation, temperature, water, cutting injuries, and reactive oxygen species by Keppler et al. (2008), Wang et al. (2008), Vigano et al. (2008, 2009), Brüggemann et al. (2009), Qaderi and Reid (2009), Bloom et al. (2010), and Bruhn et al. (2012). Interestingly, this aerobic methane production process is also suspected in ocean settings (Karl et al. 2008; del Valle and Karl 2014).
Microbial Methane in Special Environments

Methanogens, known as “a community of survivors” (Friedmann 1994), can exist in a wider range of environments than just the common natural and anthropogenic sources of methane, e.g., wetlands, sediments, ruminants, landfills, etc. (Fig. 3). Chaban et al. (2006) provide a comprehensive table of the various environments and genera. The diversity of environments includes high pressures, extreme temperatures, salinities, and pH range settings. These prokaryotic organisms, termed extremophiles or polyextremophiles, are typically, but not exclusively, from the domain Archaea and include some methanogens, extreme halophiles, thermophiles, hyperthermophiles, and thermoacidophiles. A detailed microbiological description of the diversity of environments can be found in several excellent review papers that cover this material (e.g., Ferry 1993; Dworkin et al. 2006; Rosenberg et al. 2014).

However, it is important here to at least briefly review the range in habitats. For example, the hyperthermophilic methanogen Methanopyrus kandleri strain 116 has been grown in cultures at temperatures of ~122 °C (Takai et al. 2008). This pushed the boundaries of Kashefi and Lovley (2003) who isolated the Archaea Strain 121 from the Mothra hydrothermal vent field, which grew at 85–121 °C. These are considerably higher temperatures than reported for Pyrolobus fumarii up to 113 °C (Blöchl et al. 1997) or the methanogens Methanopyrus at 110 °C (Huber et al. 1989), Methanocaldococcus jannaschii up to 90 °C (Miller et al. 1988), Methanocaldococcus indicus up to 86 °C (L’Haridon et al. 2003), and Methanotorris formicicus up to 95 °C (Takai et al. 2004). Methanogenesis has also been observed in natural settings, for example, at the hydrothermal fields at the Endeavour Segment of the Juan de Fuca Ridge (Lilley et al. 1993). Although even higher growth temperatures, up to 150 °C, had been postulated (e.g., Stetter et al. 1990; Daniel 1992; Segerer et al. 1993), the deep subsurface biosphere has a general upper limit of 80–90 °C (Parkes et al. 1994; Wilhelms et al. 2001), which corresponds to subsurface depths of 1.5–3 km, depending on the geothermal gradient.

Piezophilic or barophilic hyperthermophiles have been grown under conditions up to 40 MPa (~4,100 m water depth) for the methanogen Methanopyrus kandleri (Takai et al. 2008) or up to 120 MPa for Pyrococcus CH1 (Zeng et al. 2009).

Psychrophilic or cryophilic methanogens have also been studied extensively in cold and deep lakes and in high-latitude locations (permafrost, sediments, and lakes). Nozhevnikova et al. (2003) incubated methanogens down to 1 °C, including Methanosarcina lacustris, from Lakes Baldeg and Soppen. Similarly, psychrophilic methanogens have been studied in the Antarctic, namely, Methanogenium frigidum and Methanococcoides burtonii by Franzmann et al. (1997) and Saunders et al. (2003). Empirical evidence, i.e., direct measurement of microbial methane, also indicates the presence of psychrophilic methanogens, e.g., in Antarctic marine sediments at −1.3 °C (Whiticar et al. 1986) and Swedish lake sediments at 4 °C (Due et al. 2010). Rivkina et al. (2002, 2004), using NaH14CO3, demonstrated that methanogens could be successfully incubated down to −16.6 °C, albeit with
extremely low growth rates, in loamy peat permafrost soils drilled at the Kolyma Lowland (ca. 1 m, 2920 ± 40 ybp). Experiments with methanogens have also been demonstrated methanogenesis to be viable in frozen ice cores, such as the GISP2 at 3,044 m and −9 °C (Price and Sowers 2004) and the Bolivian Sajama glacier ice at 15,400 ybp, −10 °C (Campen et al. 2003). The latter observed CH4 levels in the ice up to eight times the expected atmospheric levels, which could be best explained by \textit{in situ} methanogenic activity of archaea living on nutrients concentrated in liquid veins at the triple junctions of ice grains (Tung et al. 2006). In contrast to permafrost with more abundant radioactive K, Th, and U in their soils, ice may provide unique, critical longer-term refugia (>10^6 year) for methanogen survival against DNA radiation damage from ionizing radiation (e.g., cosmic rays and α particles) (Price 2009). The disadvantage to permafrost is that nutrient abundance is lower in ice veins, which can limit methanogens.

Salinity and pH also create environmental constraints for methanogens. Haloalkaliphilic methanogens have been active and isolated from the hypersaline soda lakes, e.g., in USA (Mono and Big Soda Lakes, S = 40–95 g/l, pH =10, Oremland and Miller 1993), Egypt (Wadi al Natrun, pH = 8.1–9.1, Boone et al. 1986), Kenya (Lake Magadi, S up to 300 g/l, pH = 7-8, Kevbrin et al. 1997) India (Lonar Lake, S = 5.6–7.6 g/l, pH = 9.0-10.5, Antony et al. 2013) and Asia (Siberian soda lakes and Kulunda Lake, S up to 100 g/l, pH = 9.5–11, Nolla-Ardèvol et al. 2012; Sorokin et al. 2014; Sorokin et al. 2015). In concert, dessication tolerance studies have also been conducted on a suite of methanogens, including \textit{Methanocaldococcus jannaschii}, \textit{Methanothermobacter thermautotrophicus}, \textit{Methanosarcina Barkeri}, and \textit{Methanopyrus kandleri} (Martins et al. 1997; Beblo et al. 2009).

Methanogens also occupy subsurface locations, such as aquifers (Gieg et al. 2014) in oil and gas fields (Gray et al. 2009), deep geothermal aquifers, e.g., \textit{Methanosaeta} and \textit{Methanothermobacter} in the Pannonian aquifer, Romania (Chiriac et al. 2018), \textit{Methanospirillum} in the Great Artesian Basin of Australia (Kimura et al. 2005), and deep sedimentary rocks of Piceance Basin, USA (Colwell et al. 1997). The degradation of oil and gas to methane by syntrophic, acetoclastic, and hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis is a common occurrence (Dolfing et al. 2008; Rowan et al. 2008; Jones et al. 2008). Deposits of coal also offer substrates for methanogenesis, albeit via complex pathways (Penner et al. 2010; Guo et al. 2014; Baublys et al. 2015; Iram et al. 2017).

Methanogenesis also operates in subsurface rocks. Pedersen (1997) and Kotelnikova and Pederson (1998) reported acetoclastic and hydrogenotrophic methanogens from boreholes into granite-granodiorites at Åspö HRL, Sweden. Methanogenesis has been reported at similar settings, e.g., Lidy Hot Springs, USA (Chapelle et al. 2002), Columbia River Basalt Group, USA (Stevens and McKinley 1995), Witwatersrand Basin mines, South Africa (Ward et al. 2004; Slater et al. 2006; Simkus et al. 2016), Snake River Plain Aquifer, USA (Newby et al. 2004), Kidd Creek and Copper Cliff South, Canada (Doig 1994), Con and Giant mines, Canada, and Enonkoski mine, Finland (Sherwood Lollar et al. 1993, 2006). Thus, it is possible for methanogens to be viable at considerable depth (pressure and both high and low temperatures) in the subsurface in rocks, soils, sediments, and ice,
provided certain living conditions are met, including liquid water, nutrients, and pore space (> few μm).

Although outside this review, it should be noted that there are also abiotic methane occurrences, including pyrogenic sources (Bousquet et al. 2006) and deep oceanic and subsurface environments, that can in some cases confound the source interpretations of methane (Etioppe and Sherwood Lollar 2013). Certainly, these processes are important to characterize the occurrences of methane on Earth but also other planets and moons. The interplay between biotic and abiotic processes of methane formation and oxidation in deep earth settings, such as in the Fennoscandian Shield (Kietäväinen and Purkamo 2015), are schematically shown in Fig. 22. Abiotic methane is typically formed by gas-water-rock reactions and magmatic processes. These include carbonate methanation (Giardini et al. 1968; Yoshida et al. 1999), abiotic CO₂ reduction (Kelley and Früh-Green 1999; Seewald et al. 2006), and Fischer-Tropsch type reactions, i.e., serpentinization of ultramafic rocks/Sabatier reactions (e.g., Szatmari 1989; McCollom and Seewald 2001; Potter and Konnerup-Madsen 2003; Etioppe and Ionescu 2015). Equations 13 and 14 give examples of abiotic methanation by the incongruent Fischer-Tropsch serpentinization of olivine, followed by the reduction of CO₂ with H₂ to CH₄:

\[
6\left(\text{Mg}_{1.5}\text{Mg}_{0.5}\right)\text{SiO}_4 + 7\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 3\left[\text{Mg}_3\text{Si}_2\text{O}_5(\text{OH}_4)\right] + \text{Fe}_3\text{O}_4 + \text{H}_2, \quad (13)
\]

\[
\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}. \quad (14)
\]

### 6 Methane Oxidation

The biotic and abiotic oxidations of methane are critical mechanisms that effectively remove methane from sediments, soils, waters, and the atmosphere. In the atmosphere abiotic methane oxidation occurs via a complex chain of photochemical reactions initiated by the hydroxyl radical abstraction reaction with methyl and methylperoxy radicals, methanol, formaldehyde, and carbon monoxide as intermediate products (Levy 1972; Levine et al. 1985; Cicerone and Oremland 1988; Hein et al. 1997):

\[
\text{CH}_4 + \text{OH} \cdot \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{+\text{O}_2} \text{CH}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot + \text{H}_2\text{O}. \quad (15)
\]

This OH radical abstraction reaction is the most important sink of tropospheric methane at ~420 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ (Khalil and Rasmussen 1983; Crutzen 1991; Whiticar and Schaefer 2007). The other atmospheric methane sinks are (1) microbial soil uptake, ca. 25–40 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ (Seller and Conrad 1987; Conrad 1996; Topp and Pattey 1997), (2) stratospheric removal, ~40 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ (Boucher et al. 2009), and (3) chlorine sink, particularly in the Marine Boundary Layer, ~30 Tg CH₄ year⁻¹ (Wang et al. 2002; Allan et al. 2005, 2007).

The abiotic oxidation of hydrocarbons, including methane, has also been reported in geologic formations up to 100–180 °C by the reduction of anhydride via
thermochemical sulfate reduction (TSR) (e.g., Orr 1974; Krouse et al. 1988; Kiyosu and Krouse 1989; Machel 2001; Pan et al. 2006), according to general Equation 16:

\[
\text{CaSO}_4 + \text{hydrocarbons} \rightarrow \text{CaCO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{S} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \pm \text{S} \pm \text{CO}_2. \quad (16)
\]

### 6.1 Biological Methane Oxidation

Biological oxidation or consumption of methane occurs by both aerobic and anaerobic processes. The microbiology has been treated by numerous reviews, including Hanson and Hanson (1996), Conrad (1996), Lidstrom (2007), Bowman (2011), and Zhu et al. (2016). Methanotrophy constitutes the biofilter that removes methane that could ultimately emit from sediments, soils, and waters to the troposphere (e.g., King 1992; Reeburgh 1996). Approximately 40% or 582 Tg CH\textsubscript{4} year\textsuperscript{−1} of the methane generated annually in the biosphere reaches the atmosphere. This aerobic and anaerobic removal of methane has important global climate consequences on geologic and anthropogenic time scales, including before and after the Great Oxidation Event (2.32–2.45 Ga, e.g., Kerr and Vogel 1999; Goldblatt et al. 2006; Catling et al. 2007; Daines and Lenton 2016) and for today’s changing atmospheric radiative forcing.

### 6.2 Aerobic Methane Oxidation

Aerobic methane oxidation with O\textsubscript{2} (MOx, aka AMO or AeOM) is a well-studied bacterial process (Fig. 5) (e.g., King 1992; Hanson and Hanson 1996; Lidstrom 2006; Serrano-Silva et al. 2014), including phylogenetics and ecophysiology (e.g., Knief 2015). Methanotrophic bacteria utilize CH\textsubscript{4} and some other C\textsubscript{1} compounds as their carbon source(s), ultimately converting them by transduction with dehydrogenases to CO\textsubscript{2} via intermediates, such as methanol, formaldehyde, and formate (Roslev and King 1995; Dedysh and Dunfield 2011; McDonald et al. 2008).

Originally, the organisms were understood to be obligate methylotrophs, i.e., unable to grow on C–C compounds. However, there is evidence that some are indeed facultative methanotrophs (e.g., Im et al. 2011). The basic equation (Eq. 17) for aerobic methane consumption (e.g., Dalal and Allen 2008, Table 2) is

\[
\text{CH}_4 + 2\text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -818 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}). \quad (17)
\]

Aerobic methanotrophs have been known since at least the early work of Söhngen (1906), who isolated aerobic methane-oxidizing bacteria (MOB). They are a particular subgroup of methylotrophic bacteria capable of producing methane monooxygenases (MMO) enzymes (e.g., Bowman 2006; Blumenberg et al. 2007; Bürgmann 2011; Ménard et al. 2012). The two forms of these enzymes are a membrane-bound, particulate form with a copper active center (pMMO) and the
soluble form with non-heme iron (sMMO) (Knief 2015; Ghashghavi et al. 2017; Kallistova et al. 2017). Generally, the methanotrophic genera have the genus prefix “Methylo,” excepting *Crenothrix polyspora*. They are divided using multiple characteristics into three assemblages, namely, type I methanotrophs (RuMP pathway, e.g., *Methylobacter* and *Methylomonas*), type II methanotrophs (serine pathway, e.g., *Methylosinus*, *Methylocella*, and *Methylocystis*), and type X methanotrophs (both RuMP and serine pathways, e.g., *Methylococcus capsulatus*) (e.g., Hanson and Hanson 1996; Conrad 1996). The MMO requires O2 and is present in (1) a soluble form (types II and X methanotrophs) and (2) membrane-bound enzyme form (type I) related to the ammonium monooxygenase (AMO) of nitrifying bacteria (Holmes et al. 1995).

Although AeOM was thought to be indirectly coupled with denitrification (Rhee and Fuhs 1978; Modin et al. 2007), aerobic methane oxidation can also be directly coupled to denitrification (AME-D) depending on the O2 concentration (Costa et al. 2000; Kits et al. 2015). Due to the similarity of MMO with ammonia monooxygenase, many MOB may be able to perform ammonia oxidation as well. In addition, some MOB can fix N2 at low O2 concentrations. Zhu et al. (2016) proposed the overall stoichiometric equation for the aerobic methane oxidation with denitrification and oxygen (Eq. 18) as

$$CH_4 + 1.1O_2 + 0.72NO_3^- + 0.72H^+ \rightarrow 0.36N_2 + CO_2 + 2.36H_2O.$$  \hspace{1cm} (18)

In some cases, methanotrophs are extremophiles and thus inhabit a wide range of environments (Troitsenko and Khmelenina 2002; Islam et al. 2008; Pol et al. 2007), e.g., thermophiles (up to 62 °C, Bodrossy et al. 1995), psychrophiles (4 °C, Omelchenko et al. 1996; Wartiainen et al. 2006), acidophiles (pH 5.0, Dedysh et al. 2000), alkaliphiles (pH 10.0, Sorokin et al. 2000), and halophiles (5.6% NaCl, Fuse et al. 1998; Kalyuzhnaya et al. 2008). Some methanotrophs appear to be light sensitive, with inhibition by light in lakes (Oswald et al. 2015).

Depending on methane concentrations, soil methanotrophy can be differentiated into high and low affinity (e.g., Nayak et al. 2007; Conrad 2009). Low-affinity methanotrophs are typically associated with high methane concentration environments and Michaelis-Menten kinetics with high $K_m$, $V_{max}$, and $T_h$ parameters (Bender and Conrad 1992). High-affinity methanotrophs have low $K_m$, $V_{max}$, and $T_h$ Michaelis-Menten kinetic parameters and are associated with low methane concentrations, such as atmospheric methane (1.8 ppm) diffusing into typically dry soils (<60% water-filled pore space) (Bender and Conrad 1992; Dunfield et al. 1999; Dunfield and Conrad 2000). Type II methanotrophs, e.g., *Methylocystis*, appear to dominate in such low CH4 concentration environments. These methanotrophs are important in soils and lakes for the uptake of tropospheric methane, representing about 5–8% of the 480 Tg CH4 year$^{-1}$ total tropospheric sink. This includes the methane sinks in forest and upland soils (Benstead and King 1997; Henckel et al. 2000). The uptake is strongly dependent on several factors, including CH4 and O2 contents, temperature, soil moisture content, and pH (e.g., Dunfield et al. 1993; Oertel et al. 2016). In freshwater lakes, AeOM is important for regulating CH4
emissions, as aerobic methanotrophs consume 30–99% of the CH$_4$ produced (Bastviken et al. 2008). Global methane emissions from freshwaters are estimated to be ~100 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$ (Bastviken et al. 2011), which is substantially higher than oceanic source estimates (10–30 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$) and high-latitude emissions from tundra (~35 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$, e.g., Fung et al. 1991).

Studies have shown that temperate forest soils may consume more methane than tropical soils and that deciduous forest soils have higher rates than coniferous forest soils (e.g., Meyer et al. 1997). The degree of soil disruption can also influence the rates of consumption, with evidence of more methane consumption in pristine soils than disturbed or regrowth forest soils. Soil moisture, texture, compaction, and fertilization can also affect the rate of methane diffusion in soils and thus influence the uptake rate (Boeckx et al. 1997; Del Grosso et al. 2000; Templeton et al. 2006).

Aerobic methane oxidation also occurs in both marine and freshwater columns (e.g., Scanton and Brewer 1977; Whiticar and Faber 1986; De Angelis et al. 1993; Valentine et al. 2001). This process, albeit with generally slow rates, i.e., 10–200 pM year$^{-1}$ (Scarton and Brewer 1977; Rehder et al. 1999; Grant and Whiticar 2002), is also effective at reducing methane emissions from the water column to the atmosphere.

Methanotrophs can occupy and function in a variety of symbiotic situations, such as planktonic aerobic methanotrophs (Tavormina et al. 2010), marine invertebrates, such as tubeworms, provannid snails, cladorhizid sponges, and deep-sea bathymodiolin mussels (e.g., Childress et al. 1986; DeChaine and Cavanaugh 2006; Petersen and Dubilier 2009). The presence of aerobic methanotrophs in sediments and soils can sometimes be detected with specific biomarker molecules, such as specific sterols (4,4-dimethyl and 4α-methyl sterols) and hopanoids (diploptene, diplopterol, 3β-methyl diplopterol) (e.g., Bird et al. 1971; Bouvier et al. 1976; Zundel and Rohmer 1985; Hinrichs et al. 2000; Elvert and Niemann 2008; Berndmeyer et al. 2013; Rush et al. 2016; Spencer-Jones et al. 2015). More recently, gene sequencing, for example, using 16S rRNA, is a valuable tool to identify methanotrophs (e.g., DeChaine and Cavanaugh 2006; Duperron et al. 2006; Wendeberg et al. 2012).

### 6.3 Anaerobic Oxidation of Methane (AOM)

Anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM) is operative mostly in anoxic marine sediments, equivalent to the sulfate-methane transition zone (SMTZ). However, the actual process still remains a puzzle, with various options for pathways. AOM is important as it has been estimated to consume >70 to 300 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$ methane (Reeburgh 1996; Hinrichs and Boetius 2002; Boetius and Wenzhöfer 2013). This range in consumption is comparable to the 582 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$ released to the troposphere from all sources. AOM may consume 75–95% of the methane produced in marine sediments (Valentine 2002) and exceed some estimates of current microbial methane generated in them, e.g., 5–33 Tg CH$_4$ year$^{-1}$ (Wallmann et al. 2002). This discrepancy, i.e., the excess AOM, may partly be due to the additional oxidation
of methane from geologic seeps and gas hydrates. It is estimated that 5–25% of the methane in sediments flux into the water column, where it is mostly consumed by aerobic methanotrophs. The rates of AOM are highly variable, depending on environment, ranging at various sites from ~1 to 3,000 nM year\(^{-1}\) (up to 11 mol CH\(_4\) m\(^{-2}\) year\(^{-1}\), e.g., Hinrichs and Boetius 2002; Luff et al. 2005; Regnier et al. 2011). Torres et al. (2002) and Joye et al. (2004) noted for the cold seeps at Hydrate Ridge and the Gulf of Mexico that the high rates of AOM and SR in active seeps appear to depend on the flux of methane and fluid advection. This is analogous to the increase in culture AOM activity with higher methane partial pressures (Nauhaus et al. 2002).

The oxidation capacity of dissolved sulfate (seawater ~29 mM) plays a central role in the consumption of methane as it is typically 50–100 times that of the other electron acceptors combined (O\(_2\), NO\(_3^-\), Mn(IV), Fe(III)). Following on the early culture work of Davis and Yarbrough (1966), the process of AOM was proposed by geochemists based on interstitial fluid data (e.g., Reeburgh 1976; Claypool and Kaplan 1974; Martens and Berner 1974; Barnes and Goldberg 1976). The primary geochemical evidence for AOM was the juxtaposition of dissolved sulfate and methane in anoxic marine sediments as shown in Figs. 5 and 16, panel 4. Reeburgh (2007, Table 2) compiled an exhaustive list of similar examples.

In organic replete sediments, the dissolved sulfate in the sulfate-reduction zone (SRZ) is rapidly consumed, at a rate faster than diffusive replenishment from the overlying sediments and water column. In the SRZ, methane concentrations are low, but not necessarily zero. Beneath the SRZ, methane starts to accumulate, sometimes to levels greater than the bubble point. The depth (diagenetic) separation between the presence of dissolved sulfate and methane could potentially be explained by substrate competition between the sulfate-reducing bacteria (SRBs) and the methanogens, i.e., the latter were outcompeted and restricted in activity until the available dissolved sulfate was largely depleted. In contrast, there can be minor amounts of methanogenesis in the SRZ, e.g., by noncompetitive substrates; however, larger accumulations are generally not observed due to largely quantitative methanotrophy in the SRZ. Furthermore, Cappenberg (1975) proposed that sulfide inhibition of methanogenesis in the SRZ could prevent the production and thus buildup of methane there.

However, such interpretations are all confounded by the typical concave upward distribution of the methane concentration profile, particularly as it approaches the sulfate-methane interface (SMTZ). Simple methanogenesis with upward diffusive and advective fluxes of methane is unable to create such a profile, and there must be net consumption to maintain the observed methane gradient in Figs. 5 and 16, panel 4 (Whiticar 1978). The issue was that an organism responsible for AOM could not be found or isolated. Thorough discussions of the various microbial options and lines of evidence for AOM have been well reviewed by, e.g., Valentine and Reeburgh (2000), Hinrichs and Boetius (2002), and Valentine (2002).

The classical view of anaerobic consumption of methane coupled to sulfate reduction (AOM-SR) involves a syntrophic relationship between methane-consuming archaea and sulfate-reducing bacteria (SRB) (Alperin and Reeburgh 1985;
Hoehler and Alperin 1996; Boetius et al. 2000; Orphan et al. 2001a; Valentine 2002; Orcutt et al. 2008) according to Eq. 19 (Table B):

\[
\text{CH}_4 + \text{SO}_4^{2-} \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + \text{HS}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O} \left( \Delta G^\circ \approx 16 \text{ to } -40 \text{ kJ/mol} \right)
\] (19)

We now know that anaerobic consumption of methane is not uniquely tied to sulfate reduction (AOM-SR). Despite the varieties and uncertainties of material and energy pathways (Regnier et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2017) and the direct or indirect coupling of AOM with sulfate reduction or other terminal electron acceptors (TEAs) (Sørensen et al. 2001; Orcutt et al. 2005), AOM remains an important global CH4 sink. This is most clearly observed in high methane flux environments, such as anaerobic sediments or waste treatment facilities.

Initially, the concept of AOM by “reverse methanogenesis” was put forward by Zehnder and Brock (1979, 1980) using sulfate as the TEA. This was based on incubation experiments suggesting that methanogens are able to “...Oxidize a small amount of methane anaerobically.” This process helped explain the low rates of AOM demonstrated by AOM-SR inhibition studies. Reverse methanogenesis also likely involves the formation of acetate, although methanol and H2 were also postulated as products. They showed with 14C-labelled CH4 that the oxidation was consistently less than the concurrent methanogenesis (<1% AOM vs. methanogenesis), so net CH4 oxidation was uncertain. This led more recently to the term “trace methane oxidation” (TMO) by Moran et al. (2005). The proposed acetate formation pathway by Zehnder and Brock (1979, 1980) (Eq. 20) is

\[
\text{CH}_4 + \text{HCO}_3^- \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{COO}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O},
\] (20)

but the authors expressed concerns about the energetics, and they included the possibility of a consortium, e.g., with sulfate reducers. Pure methanogen cultures in low H2 and high CH4 concentrations by Valentine et al. (2000) could not sustain H2 production, and methane oxidation was not seen. Valentine and Reeburgh (2000) and Caldwell et al. (2008) also remarked that the many methanogens, who use acetate and methylated compounds rather than H2 for methanogenesis, would not be good candidates for reverse methanogenesis, thus limiting the range of potential archaia. Partial support for reverse methanogenesis among other options was raised by Hoehler et al. (1994) and Harder (1997). They described a variation, also put forth by Zehnder and Brock (1979, 1980), that utilized a methanogen-sulfate reducer consortium, whereby methanogens oxidize methane with water (Eq. 21).

\[
\text{Methane oxidation} : \text{CH}_4 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + 4\text{H}_2 + \text{H}^+
\] (21)

However, the buildup of molecular hydrogen from such a reaction would energetically inhibit the methanogens (Valentine et al. 2000). Sulfate reduction is evoked whereby SRBs scavenge the hydrogen syntrophically to allow methane oxidation to proceed exergonically, thereby maintaining the necessary lower H2 partial pressure (\(P_{\text{H}_2} \approx 1.1 \mu\text{atm or 0.3 nM}\)) (Eq. 22).
Sulfate reduction: \( \text{SO}_4^{2-} + 4\text{H}_2 + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{HS}^- + 4\text{H}_2\text{O} \)  

This gives rise to the frequently reported overall reaction in Eq. 16 with potentially enough energy to support ATP synthesis (e.g., Harder 1997; Valentine and Reeburgh 2000; Widdel and Rabus 2001).

Although it does address the association of SRBs with AOM, concerns were raised as to whether the sulfate reducers could account for the amount of methane oxidation required, i.e., 15–100% of the total sulfate reduced (Iversen 1984), and the energy requirements (Orcutt and Meile 2008; Regnier et al. 2011).

Hallam et al. (2004) and Timmers et al. (2017) revived this “reverse methanogenesis” hypothesis using genomic information in methane-oxidizing Archaea, whose cells contain most, but not all, of the genes typically associated with CH₄ production. The papers also suggested that a pathway of methane oxidation whereby hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis (Eq. 1) essentially runs in reverse with archaea but with assistance from bacteria, i.e., a consortium of methane-oxidizing archaea and SRBs. Associated with this is the possibility of interspecies electron carriers, for example, proposed by Hoehler et al. (1994), DeLong (2000), and Wegener et al. (2015) such that methane oxidizers directly shuttle energy to the SRBs, i.e., direct interspecies electron transfer (“DIET,” Lovley 2017). In contrast, Gao et al. (2017) pointed out that AOM is also associated with extracellular electron transfer (“EET”), especially for the reduction of solid electron acceptors.

To date, other than aerobic methane oxidation with O₂, there still has been no single microorganism identified that can oxidize methane. The suggestion that there may be a consortium of organisms that perform methane oxidation and SR was supported by phylogenetic studies but also geochemical evidence including stable isotope ratios, radiocarbon tracer experiments, and biomarker molecules. The problem of the missing isolated organisms for AOM is further complicated by the variety of possible syntrophic partners and TEAs now believed to be involved, including sulfate, iron and manganese oxides, nitrate, nitrite, and humic acids. Also uncertain is the question of the EETing and DIETing options for direct versus indirect interspecies electron transfer.

The consumption of methane by organisms is associated with predictable carbon and hydrogen kinetic isotope effects. As a consequence, AeOM and AOM consume \(^{12}\text{C}\)\(^1\text{H}_4\) faster than the heavier isotopologues \(^{13}\text{C}\)\(^1\text{H}_4\), \(^{12}\text{C}\)\(^1\text{H}_3\)\(^2\text{H}\), etc. This isotope enrichment trend due to microbial methane oxidation is shown in Fig. 9 (Whiticar 1999). The \(\delta^{13}\text{C}-\text{CH}_4-\delta^2\text{H}-\text{CH}_4\) slope for microbial oxidation generally varies from 1:5 to 1:10 and tends to be larger for AeOM than AOM (Whiticar 1999; Kinnaman et al. 2007). The range of carbon and hydrogen enrichment for methane oxidation based on empirical measurements and incubations is 5–31 for \(\varepsilon_{\text{C(CH}_4)}\) and 37.5–320 for \(\varepsilon_{\text{D(CH}_4)}\) (Whiticar and Faber 1986; Alperin et al. 1988; Whiticar 1999; Kinnaman et al. 2007; Feisthauer et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2016; Penger et al. 2012; Rasigraf et al. 2012).

Microbial methane oxidation leads to diagnostic isotope separations between the oxidized methane and the resultant products, e.g., CO₂. Figure 13 shows the general region for \(\delta^{13}\text{CO}_2-\delta^{13}\text{CH}_4\) pairs determined by AeOM or AOM and the
The approximate trajectory of the isotope shift (after Whiticar 1999). The main difficulty in using $\delta^{13}$CO$_2$–$\delta^{13}$CH$_4$ pairs to track methanotrophy is that there are multiple other sources of CO$_2$ that potentially can admix and thus confound the $\delta^{13}$CO$_2$ values and interpretation. Often, it is the shift in $\delta^{13}$CH$_4$ that is more diagnostic. The methane oxidation trend shown in Fig. 12 reflects the, perhaps obvious, fact that the trace amounts of oxidation water added by methanotrophy and thus H-isotope contribution to the formation water (e.g., Eqs. 13 and 16) essentially will not appreciably affect the isotope ratio of the formation water. Similarly, the methane oxidation trend in Fig. 13 is driven mostly by changes in $\delta^{13}$CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-H$_2$O, rather than by $\delta^{13}$CO$_2$ or $\delta^2$H-H$_2$O. However, in extremely dry systems, perhaps deep rock environments, the amount of water is so restricted that any H$_2$O involved with methanogenesis (e.g., Eqs. 1, 3, and 4), AeOM (e.g., Eqs. 18 and 19), or AOM (e.g., Eqs. 21 and 22) could conceivably have a measurable influence on the $\delta^2$H-H$_2$O of the formation water.

Biomarker molecules, in combination with isotopes, are also effective tools to track AOM. Microbial and thermogenic methane is both 12C-enriched ("isotopically light") relative to normal organic matter, so when methane is consumed, the carbon in the organisms involved will grow with a distinctively 12C-enriched signal. This is incorporated into their biomarker molecules, such as the putative archaeal compounds archaeol, biphytanediol, crocetane, hydroxyarchaeols, 2,6,10,15,19-pentamethylicosane (PMI), glyceryl dialkyl glyceryl tetraethers (GDGTs), and acyclic and cyclic biphytanes, as well as, in the bacterial biomarkers, such as diplopterol, fatty acids, and alkyl ethers (e.g., Elvert et al. 1999, 2000; Hinrichs et al. 1999, 2000; Pancost et al. 2000, 2001; Bian et al. 2001; Orphan et al. 2001b; Schouten et al. 2001; Thiel et al. 1999, 2001; Wakeham et al. 2003; Summons 2013). In fact, the most 12C-enriched naturally occurring organic compound known, the isoprenoid crocetane, has a $\delta^{13}$C of $-130\%$ (Elvert et al. 2000). These 12C-enriched compounds are strong evidence for the archaea-bacterial collaboration for AOM. In contrast, Biddle et al. (2006), based on $\delta^{13}$C of archaeal cells and intact polar lipids from OPD cores off Peru, concluded that only a small fraction, if any, of the archaeal populations relied on methane as a carbon source. So there seems to be additional processes that perhaps can mask the 12C-enriched compounds from oxidized methane. Part of the answer may lie in the rate of AOM, for example, methane seeps at the sediment-water interface surface have high rates compared with deep sediments with low rates.

Radioactive, 14C-labelled substrates (e.g., 14CH$_4$ and 14CO$_2$) have been used successfully to elucidate the pathways of anaerobic methanotrophy (e.g., Kosiur and Warford 1979; Iversen and Jørgensen 1985, and more recently by Treude et al. 2003). It is interesting to note that although these labelled experiments showed that methanotrophs could oxidize CH$_4$, the SRBs could not be shown to produce 14CO$_2$ from pure 14CH$_4$. Stable, 13C-labelled methane has also been used to track the transfer of 13CH$_4$ to 13CO$_2$ and 13C-DIC (e.g., Beal et al. 2009; Meulepas et al. 2010). The 13C-DIC formed from 13CH$_4$ is a robust measure of AOM because 13C-DIC from other natural, non-13C-enriched sources is only ~1%.
Some of the strongest evidence for the AOM pathways has come from physiologic information using molecular gene sequencing. The archaeal methanotrophs clusters, based on the archaeal 16S rRNA genes, are termed anaerobic methane-oxidizing archaea (ANArboic MEthanoتروnic archaea or ANME, e.g., Hinrichs et al. 1999; Boetius et al. 2000). In every case ANME is found to be highly intolerant of O2, e.g., restricted to anaerobic sediments. However, ANME are cosmopolitan and found over a range of temperatures, with thermophiles operating up to 95 °C (Schouten et al. 2003; Teske et al. 2002; Wegener et al. 2015) and at pHs ranging from 4 to 11 (Inagaki et al. 2006; Brazelton et al. 2006). Drake et al. (2015) identified AOM in granites from the Laxemar area, Sweden, with extremely 13C-depleted, methane-derived secondary carbonates ($\delta^{13}C_{\text{carb}}$ of $-125 \%$ VPDB) at ~750 m depth. Carbon-13 depleted carbonates filling fractures in the granitic rocks of the Swedish Stripa pluton were also reported by Clauer et al. (1989) to potentially have an AOM signal, further showing the ubiquitous nature of AOM in the anoxic subsurface.

Currently, three distinct, euryarchaeal, methanotrophic groups or clades, with subclusters, have been identified, namely, ANME-1 (subclusters a and b), ANME-2c (subclusters c and d), ANME-2a (subcluster e), and ANME-3 (subcluster f) (Niemann et al. 2006; Knittel and Boetius 2009; Bhattarai et al. 2017). ANME-1 is associated with Methanomicrobiales and Methanosarcinales, whereas ANME-2 relates to Methanosarcinales and ANME-3 to Methanococcoides spp. (Timmers et al. 2017). ANME-1 and ANME-2 are both found in the SMTZ, pointing to some association with SRBs. It appears though that ANME-2 support higher AOM rates than ANME-1 (Nauhaus et al. 2005; Michaelis et al. 2002). They also distinguish themselves in that ANME-2 is associated with the diagnostic $sn$-2-hydroxyarchaeol and lipid biomarker crocetane, whereas ANME-1 is dominated by intact tetraethers (GDGT) (Blumenberg et al. 2004; Elvert et al. 2005; Niemann and Elvert 2008).

Visualization of the putative AOM aggregates of some ANME with SRBs has been made on fluorescent-labelled oligonucleotide probes with the fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH) technique (Fig. 19). These show the syntrophic nature of the organisms (e.g., Boetius et al. 2000; Michaelis et al. 2002; Orphan et al. 2002).

On the other hand, it seems that select ANME archaea, especially certain ANME-1, appear to perform AOM alone, i.e., do not seem need a bacterial partner and thus
may be further examples of reverse methanogenesis (Knittel et al. 2005; Orphan et al. 2002). Milucka et al. (2012) reported that ANME-2 organisms were able to reduce sulfate during AOM without SRBs (Fig. 19). Their suggestion involves the reduction of sulfate to elemental sulfur and then disulfide by ANME-2 during AOM (Eq. 23). The bisulfide is then disproportionated to sulfide and sulfate by SRBs (Eq. 24). The overall reaction is equivalent to Eq. 19:

$$7\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{SO}_4^{2-} + 5\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 4\text{HS}_2^- + 7\text{HCO}_3^- + 11\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -26.5 \text{ kJ/mol}) \quad (23)$$

$$4\text{HS}_2^- + 4\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{SO}_4^{2-} + 7\text{HS}^- + 5\text{H}^+ \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -12.7 \text{ kJ/mol}) \quad (24)$$

This AOM process with the intermediate to elemental sulfur could explain SR without or limited SRBs in systems such as the deep subsurface (e.g., Lollar et al. 1993; Kotelnikova 2002). Alternatively, the elemental sulfur in the AOM path could be oxidized by Mn(IV) or Fe(III) to sulfate, as put forth by Lovley and Phillips (1994), e.g., Eq. 25:

$$\text{S}^0 + 6\text{Fe}^{3+} + 4\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{SO}_4^{2-} + 6\text{Fe}^{2+} + 8\text{H}^+ \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -71 \text{ kJ/mol}) \quad (25)$$

Adding to the AOM options, are the possibilities that nitrate, nitrite, iron, and manganese oxides can also act as electron accepters instead of, or in addition to, sulfate during methane oxidation. These are interesting examples of AOM, as their involvement in AOM instead of sulfate appears to violate the basic terminal electron acceptor sequence (Table 2). However, the amounts of these oxidizers in sediments are substantially less than dissolved sulfate, so unless there is recycling of N-, Mn-, and Fe oxides, they can only account for minor amounts of the total methane consumption in sediments. Sulfate is still thought to be the most significant oxidant in AOM.

Beal et al. (2009) proposed AOM with MnO$_2$ and Fe(OH)$_3$ reduction as shown in Eqs. 26 and 27:

$$\text{CH}_4 + 4\text{MnO}_2 + 7\text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + 4\text{Mn}^{2+} + 5\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -556 \text{ kJ/mol}) \quad (26)$$

$$\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{Fe(OH)}_3 + 15\text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + 8\text{Fe}^{2+} + 21\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -270 \text{ kJ/mol}) \quad (27)$$

By adding the manganese and iron minerals birnessite and ferrihydrite, as TEAs, to cultures with $^{13}$C-labelled methane, the authors observed enhanced AOM. The archaeal groups believed responsible belong to the Marine Benthic Group D (MBGD), as identified by 16S rRNA and methyl coenzyme M reductase (mcrA) gene diversity.
Beal et al. (2009), Oni and Friedrich (2017), and others make the argument that ANME-1 and ANME-2d can perform AOM independent of SRBs and that the mere proximity to SRBs does not necessarily indicate any direct electron transfer linkages between AOM and SR. Studies by Treude et al. (2014) in the Beaufort Sea sediment showed a coupling of Mn(IV) or Fe(III) reduction to AOM beneath the SMTZ, i.e., also without SR. Similar results were reported by several workers, including Biddle et al. (2006), Crowe et al. (2011), Sivan et al. (2011), Amos et al. (2012), Jorgensen et al. (2012), Wankel et al. (2012), Segarra et al. (2013), Riedinger et al. (2014, 2015), and Egger et al. (2014). Some of these studies are in marine, brackish, and transitional environments, illustrating that the amounts or fluxes of sulfate or SRBs may not always be key components in AOM. Gao et al. (2017) reported that AOM with MnO$_2$ as TEA ($\Delta G^\circ = -63.8$ kJ/mol e$^-$) is ~15 times higher than sulfate-driven AOM ($\Delta G^\circ = -4.1$ kJ/mol e$^-$). For comparison, AOM with Fe(OH)$_3$ ($\Delta G^\circ = -11.1$ kJ/mol e$^-$) is 2.7 times higher than SR while for nitrite ($\Delta G^\circ = -116.1$ kJ/mol e$^-$) is 28 times that of SR.

In addition to metals oxides, both nitrate and nitrite have also been implicated as electron acceptors for AOM, in lieu of sulfate. The bacterial denitrifying anaerobic oxidation of methane (DAMO) process is suggested by Raghoebarsing et al. (2006) to proceed according to Eqs. 28 and 29:

\[
5\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{NO}_3^- + 8\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 5\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{N}_2 + 14\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -765 \text{ kJ/mol}), \tag{28}
\]
\[
3\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{NO}_2^- + 8\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 3\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{N}_2 + 10\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -928 \text{ kJ/mol}), \tag{29}
\]

and by Islas-Lima et al. (2004) as Eq. 30:

\[
5\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{NO}_3^- \rightarrow 5\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{N}_2 + 8\text{OH}^- + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\Delta G^\circ = -960 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}) \tag{30}
\]

Raghoebarsing et al. (2006), using 16S rRNA gene sequence analyses, $^{13}$C-labelled methane, and $^{15}$N-labelled nitrate, documented that AOM was coupled to nitrite and/or nitrate reduction via an intra-aerobic methane oxidation pathway similar to the AOM-SR consortium. Their freshwater experiments ensured that oxygen was not involved, and hence AOM was performed only with denitrification. They found that the ANME-2 methanotrophic archaea was the dominant cluster in concert with the denitrifying bacteria “Candidatus Methylomirabilis oxyfera” (M. oxyfera). Similar AOM denitrification results with “Candidatus Methanoperedens nitroreducens” (ANME-2d) were found by Haroon et al. (2013). To complicate matters, Ettwig et al. (2008) concluded from their culture experiments with denitrifying bacteria that archaea are not required for AOM with nitrite as electron acceptor. Further, Ettwig et al. (2010) also used $^{15}$N-labelled nitrite and genomics with $^{18}$O-labelled water to show that M. oxyfera could reduce nitrite to nitric oxide and then using the in situ produced oxygen from the disproportionation of nitric oxide for methane oxidation.

Hu et al. (2015) described an analogous 3-reaction AOM process that involved the combination of anaerobic ammonium oxidation (anammox) with denitrifying
anaerobic methane oxidation DAMO (Fig. 20). Ironically, until the work on anammox by Van de Graaf et al. (1990) and Mulder et al. (1995), anaerobic ammonium oxidation, like AOM, was thought not to occur in nature. Now, it is considered to contribute critically to the ~50% of the marine N2 production (Strous and Jetten 2004). Nitrite is reduced by anammox and then AOM with nitrite and nitrate reduction by DAMO (Eqs. 31, 32, and 33, respectively):

\[
\text{NO}_2^- + 0.76\text{NH}_4^+ \rightarrow 0.77\text{N}_2 + 0.2\text{NO}_3^-, \tag{31}
\]

\[
0.38\text{CH}_4 + \text{NO}_2^- + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow 0.38\text{CO}_2 \rightarrow 0.5\text{N}_2 + 1.25\text{H}_2\text{O,} \tag{32}
\]

\[
0.25\text{CH}_4 + \text{NO}_3^- \rightarrow 0.25\text{CO}_2 + \text{NO}_2^- + 0.5\text{H}_2\text{O.} \tag{33}
\]

Initially it seemed that DAMO bacteria preferred nitrite and could utilize nitrite alone in AOM, whereas AOM decreased with nitrate (Ettwig et al. 2008). Ding et al. (2017) showed the possible decoupling of DAMO archaea from DAMO bacteria. Ultimately, DAMO culture growth depends on the mix of nitrogen utilized. He et al. (2015) required 600 days to enrich DAMO bacteria when only using nitrite, whereas a mixture of nitrite and nitrate was somewhat faster (≥480 days, Raghoebarsing et al. 2006). In comparison, the combination of nitrate and ammonium by Haroon et al. (2013) shortened the culturing time to 350 days. Subsequently, Fu et al. (2017) found that using nitrate, nitrite, and ammonium together could shorten growth times to ~80 days, approximately the same as AOM with SRBs (e.g., Knittel and Boetius 2009). Thus even though DAMO proceeds with the different N sources individually, it appears that combinations enhance growth and AOM.

ANME-2 archaea were shown by Scheller et al. (2016) to use external electron acceptors, such as humic acids and humic acid analogues, e.g., anthraquinone-2,6-disulfonic acid (AQDS) for AOM. These archaea are proposed to conduct AOM without syntrophic interactions, i.e., could directly transfer electrons to extracellular Fe(III) or Mn(IV) minerals without the need for SRBs. These AOM reactions with quinone-containing humic acids could be represented by Eq. 34 (Wang et al. 2017):
\[ \text{CH}_4 + 4\text{AQDS} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+ + \text{A}_4\text{H}_2\text{QDS}. \quad (34) \]

Wang et al. (2017) calculated that AQDS reduction coupled to ammonia oxidation was energetically viable, but not necessarily a good reaction “surrogate” for humic substances coupled with AOM. Therefore, the AOM pathway with AQDS at this point is uncertain.

The above discussion mostly pertains to marine systems replete, at least initially, in dissolved sulfate (~29 mM), supporting AOM-SR. In freshwater environments, such as oligotrophic lakes, dissolved sulfate is typically 10 to ~400 μM (Holmer and Storkholm 2001), which is thought to be too low for SR processes to be thermodynamically favorable (Smemo and Yavitt 2011). As a result of the low sulfate, it was traditionally thought that AOM, i.e., AOM-SR, was limited. There are lakes with higher sulfate, e.g., meso- and eutrophic lakes, that can have >500 μM SO_4^{2-}. Lake Cadagno, for example, has 2 mM SO_4^{2-}, and AOM-SR is suspected, although AOM-Mn/Fe could not be excluded (Schubert et al. 2011). Sulfate can be elevated in some lakes due to intense evaporation, saltwater incursions, wastewater, or drainage from mining operations, supporting AOM-SR (Martinez-Cruz et al. 2017).

Under low sulfate conditions in freshwaters, methanotrophy generally proceeds using O_2 and sometimes using NO_2^-, NO_3^-, Mn^{4+}, and Fe^{3+} as TEAs. In lakes with low [SO_4^{2-}], Mn(IV), and Fe(III), reductions coupled to AOM are favorable reactions and are known to occur (Nordi et al. 2013; Sivan et al. 2011) and where aerobic methanotrophs are likely involved (Bar-Or et al. 2017; Martinez-Cruz et al. 2017). There are also observations that organic acid-mediated AOM can be an important pathway in lakes (Reed et al. 2017).

Clearly, there are multiple, possible pathways for AOM that appear to function with and without the need for sulfate or SRBs and with and without the need for direct electron transfer and utilizing various redox couples. This leads to AOM processes and sequences far more complicated than the early juxtaposition of sulfate depletion and methane accumulation zones in sediment profiles observed by geochemists in the 1970s.

7 Atmospheric Methane

Much of the current research on methane pertains to its effects in the atmosphere and on climate as, after carbon dioxide, methane is the second most important anthropogenic greenhouse gas (GHG).

The methane residence time of ~9–11 years, a perturbation lifetime of ~12.4 year, and radiative efficiency of ~3.63 × 10^{-4} \text{Wm}^{-2} \text{ppb}^{-1} (i.e., radiative forcing per molecule, Myhre et al. 2013) together with the increase in atmospheric methane since the preindustrial era (1750) of ~1,200 ppb contribute an additional 0.48 \text{Wm}^{-2} of direct radiative forcing (CH_4, 0.33 \text{Wm}^{-2} + OH feedback, 0.11 \text{Wm}^{-2}, Schimel et al. 1996). Furthermore, the additional amount of oxidized atmospheric methane leads to an increase in tropospheric O_3 and stratospheric H_2O that contribute an additional 0.11 \text{Wm}^{-2} and 0.02 \text{Wm}^{-2}, respectively (Prather et al. 1995; Hansen and
Sato 2001; Ramaswamy et al. 2001), for a total radiative forcing of 0.57 Wm$^{-2}$ (Ramaswamy et al. 2019). The total methane radiative forcing is ~21% of the long-lived GHG budget of 2.77 Wm$^{-2}$. This does not account for the radiative forcing of CO$_2$ derived from CH$_4$ oxidation.

The magnitudes of the various sources and sink controlling the atmospheric methane burden remain incompletely constrained. In addition to individual flux estimates, the combination of methane stable carbon and hydrogen isotope ratios of the individual major sources can help produce a bottom-up budget for the measured atmospheric values, as shown in Figs. 3 and 4 (Whiticar and Schaefer 2007). These two plots also show the respective offsets between the $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ weighted inputs and the actual atmospheric isotope values. The isotope offsets are the result of the isotope effects associated with the various removal processes of methane from the troposphere. By weighting the magnitude of the different sink fluxes and their respective isotope fractionations, we can estimate the overall enrichment factors for carbon, $\varepsilon_C \sim 7.4 \permil$, and hydrogen, $\varepsilon_D \sim 200 \permil$ (Whiticar and Schaefer 2007). The averaged values of individual methane carbon and hydrogen signatures ($\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$) of the major emission sources with their respective flux strengths (tg/year) can be illustrated (Fig. 22). It must be noted that the columns in Fig. 22 only illustrate the average values for the different sources and do not show the range, which is sometimes large, in methane C- and H-isotope values for any particular source. Also the groupings of source types in the budgets differ between authors and papers. The weighted input average of the sources in Fig. 22 for $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ is $\sim$54.2 $\permil$ and for $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ is $\sim$295 $\permil$, compared with the present-day tropospheric value of $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ of $\sim$47 $\permil$ and $\sim$86 $\permil$, shifted due to the isotope effects of the sinks. Refinements of the methane flux source and sink terms and their representative $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ values continue to be made (e.g, Sherwood et al. 2017), which will improve our bottom-up flux source estimations and signatures. It should also be noted that there are latitudinal changes in tropospheric methane mixing ratio, $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$. For example, Umezawa et al. (2012) reported North-South Pacific Ocean methane transects for the time period of 2007–2009 from 33°N to 39°S. They found for the upper troposphere a continual shift in methane mixing ratio, $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ from $\sim$1810 ppb, $\sim$47 $\permil$, and $\sim$87 $\permil$ in the north to $\sim$1770 ppb, $\sim$46.9 $\permil$, and $\sim$85 $\permil$ in the south. Similarly, in the lower troposphere, they found a continual shift in methane mixing ratio, $\delta^{13}$C-CH$_4$ and $\delta^2$H-CH$_4$ from $\sim$1840 ppb, $\sim$47 $\permil$, and $\sim$93 $\permil$ in the north to $\sim$1750, $\sim$46.8 $\permil$, and $\sim$82 $\permil$ in the south. Considering the relatively rapid tropospheric mixing time of $\sim$1 year, these interhemispheric gradients can help localize changes in fluxes.

In addition to stable isotopes, carbon-14 measurements on methane (Eisma et al. 1994; Quay et al. 1999; Petrenko et al. 2016) and ethane measurements (Helmig et al. 2016; Dalsoren et al. 2018) can also be particularly useful to indicate the inputs of fossil carbon methane (thermogenic and most abiotic methane) to the atmosphere (Wahlen et al. 1989). Based on the accepted 5,730 year half-life of $^{14}$C, methane from sources $\sim$10$^5$ year, e.g., geologic sources, have diminishingly small amounts of $^{14}$C and can be considered to have only “dead” carbon. In contrast, most biologic
methane is derived from recent carbon sources. Thus the abundance of $^{14}$CH$_4$ in the atmosphere further constrains the input flux of older sources. Owing to the recent increase in unconventional natural gas production, e.g., shale gas, there are concerns about fugitive methane emissions from wells and gas processing/transmission infrastructures to the atmosphere. The amounts and isotope signatures of these gas emissions is controversial and emphasizes the further need to refine methane sources and sinks on the underconstrained atmospheric methane budgets (Whiticar and Schaefer 2007; Schaefer et al. 2016; Schwietzke et al. 2016; Howarth 2019; Milkov et al. 2020).

As of January 2020, the mean monthly global tropospheric methane reached a high of 1873.5 ± 2 ppb (esrl.noaa.gov/gmd/ccgg/trends_ch4/), which is a ~260% increase over the preindustrial Holocene mixing ratio of ~722 ppb (WMO 2018). Since 1983, tropospheric methane has increased from 1625 ppb at rates of 2–14 ppb/year (annually 0.1–0.9%), except for a short “stabilization period” or hiatus in the rise of tropospheric methane from years 2000 to 2007 (Fig. 21, Dlugokencky et al. 1994; Dlugokencky 2019). Initially, Dlugokencky et al. (2003) offered that instead of a pause, the hiatus was simply a new steady-state condition, whereas others mentioned the curtailment of emissions from other sources, including coal, oil, and gas operations, anaerobic waste treatment plants, landfills, agricultural practices, etc. However, as tropospheric methane has been increasing again since 2007, Nisbet et al. 2014, Turner et al. (2019) and others have countered that the hiatus was only an anomalous period. This appears to be true, now 13 years post-2007, there is an

![Fig. 21](image_url)  
Fig. 21 Time series of NOAA/ESRL global, marine, atmospheric methane data for (1) monthly averaged mixing ratios (ppb or nmol mol$^{-1}$, dry air mole fraction), (2) 12-month running mean of monthly averaged mixing ratios, and (3) mean annual increase (ppb/year). The hiatus is the methane stabilization period of 2000 to 2007 (Dlugokencky et al. 1994; Dlugokencky 2019)
continual increase in methane at a growth rate of ~ 9 ppb/year, similar to pre-2000 trend.

Despite the brief pause, the NOAA/ESRL database shows a long-term increase in tropospheric methane from 1625 ppb since 1983, at an overall average annual rate of 6.4 ppb/year. It is interesting to note that the rate of increase in tropospheric methane before the hiatus (1983–2000) and after the hiatus (2007–2019) is similar (average is 8.4 ppb/year vs. 7.1 ppb/year), including maximum growth rates of 14.02 (1991) and 12.74 (2014) (Fig. 21, Dlugokencky 2019). During the hiatus the increase in tropospheric methane was only 0.48 ppb/year.

Several theories are proposed to explain the hiatus from 2000 to 2007 (e.g., Pison et al. 2013; Turner et al. 2019; Saunois et al. 2019), but there is no consensus yet. Bousquet et al. (2006) suggested that a decrease in anthropogenic emissions, such as fossil emissions in the Northern Hemisphere, caused the hiatus and that interannual variability is due to wetland and fire emissions emissions. In contrast, Kai et al. (2011) with the combination of atmospheric CH₄ mixing ratios and δ¹³C-CH₄ state that the hiatus is consistent with long-term reductions in agricultural emissions or other microbial source(s) within the Northern Hemisphere, such as rice agriculture. They claim that the δ¹³C-CH₄ values preclude reduced fossil fuel emissions as the primary cause of the slowdown. This is juxtaposed with claims of a drop in fossil fuel emissions during that period by Schaefer et al. (2016) using δ¹³C-CH₄; by Aydin et al. (2011) and Simpson et al. (2012) using the decrease atmospheric ethane concentrations; and by Chen and Prinn (2006) using models. A decrease in biomass burning based on carbon monoxide data has also been suggested as the cause of the hiatus (Worden et al. 2017).

Kai et al. (2011) commented that the relatively constant atmospheric δ²H-CH₄ eliminates a change in the hydroxyl radical (OH•), the largest methane sink, as the cause for the hiatus. This position contrasts with that of Rigby et al. (2008) who postulated that decreases in OH• concentrations were responsible. Rice et al. (2016), Turner et al. (2017), and McNorton et al. (2018) also supported changes to the hydroxyl sink.

The cause of the subsequent rise in atmospheric methane mixing ratio since 2007 (Fig. 21, Saunois et al. 2019) remains uncertain, with mismatches between top-down approaches based on atmospheric inversion models compared with bottom-up models parameterized with individual source and sink types. Increasing fossil fuel emissions and lower latitude wetlands (e.g., Northern Eurasia) and agriculture are postulated sources (Kirschke et al. 2013; Pison et al. 2013; McNorton et al. 2018). Increasing emissions of atmospheric ethane and propane support renewed emissions from oil and natural gas production (Franco et al. 2016; Hausmann et al. 2016; Helmig et al. 2016). Poulter et al. (2017) staddle this by downplaying global wetlands and suggesting a combination of fossil fuels and agriculture increases and a decrease in the photochemical sink as the cause. Nisbet et al. (2019) also suggest a possible decrease in the atmospheric sink but also noted the poorly constrained options of changes in the contributions of microbial, thermogenic, and pyrogenic methane.
However, there is increasing evidence, including methane carbon isotopes and interhemispheric gradients, that high-latitude sources, such as permafrost, thermo-karst lakes, wetlands, and potentially shallow gas hydrates, could be responsible (e.g., Walter et al. 2006; Dlugokencky et al. 2011; Tan and Zhuang 2015; Dimdore-Miles et al. 2018). Possible reductions in the global methane sinks, not only increases in source emissions, must also be considered in the overall budget, i.e., decreases in (1) tropospheric/stratospheric hydroxyl radical abstraction reactions (Saueressig et al. 2001; Rice et al. 2003), (2) reactions of methane with chlorine in the marine boundary layer (Allan et al. 2005), and (3) methanotrophic uptake in soils (Ridgwell et al. 1999).

The lack of concensous explaining the renewed increase in atmospheric methane is unfortunate. It is important to identify the relevant shifts in sources and sinks to determine if and how we can effect changes to reduce emmissions from a climate change perspective (Fig. 22).

8 Summary

Methane is ubiquitous on Earth and contributes importantly to our energy economies, climate forcing, and carbon budgets. Under the present oxidizing atmosphere, methane cycles with carbon dioxide through a suite of biologic and abiotic pathways. Figure 23 shows a larger-scale, summary view of the methane cycle. Contributions to the methane pool come from the variety of methanogenic pathways, i.e., hydrogenotrophic (HM), acetoclastic (AM), and methylotrophic methanogenesis.
The catagenic formation of thermogenic methane from mature kerogens is also a major component. Abiotic sources, including methanation, radiolysis, and magmatic and mantle origins, also contribute unknown amounts to the methane budget, albeit substantially less than the biologic sources. Microbially mediated aerobic (AeOM) and anaerobic (AOM) methane oxidation (Fig. 23) are important biofilters that consume the majority of methane produced in sediments, soils, and lakes. Photochemical and abiotic oxidation of methane, e.g., fires, also reduce methane in the atmosphere. We are slowly establishing more reliable estimates of methane formation and oxidation rates, sizes of major methane pools (hydrates, hydrocarbon reservoirs, sediments/soils), and the magnitude of methane fluxes. Although the

**Fig. 23** Summary schematic of biotic and abiotic processes of methane formation and oxidation. The blue-shaded section is oxic, and the yellow shaded is anoxic. Methane formation processes are shown as thicker, solid, green arrow lines, while oxidation processes are dashed, red arrow lines. Transport mechanisms are shown as thin, blue arrow lines.
constraints on these estimates are improving, experience demonstrates that our knowledge on this topic remains incomplete and that surprises are still possible.

Looking forward, one of the most critical aspects regarding methane biogeochemistry that needs more and immediate attention is the ongoing risk that methane poses with respect to climate change. The potential for large changes in the existing methane budget, e.g., due to shelf hydrate destabilization or permafrost sources, land-use changes, and natural gas production, requires careful attention to understanding of the mechanisms and magnitudes of the processes controlling the methane sources and sinks.

Acknowledgments The ideas and information provided in this chapter are founded on the efforts and findings of a large number of researchers, a portion of whom are in the list of references. This work and the funding for it resulted from a fellowship at the Hanse-Wissenschaftskolleg (HWK), Institute for Advanced Study, Delmenhorst, Germany. The author is very grateful for the generous support of HWK.

References


Jameson R (1800) On peat or turf, theory of the formation of peat. Extracted from Jameson’s mineralogy of the Shetland Islands Transactions of the Dublin Society, Number 1, 1–10


Rhee GY, Fuhs GW (1978) Wastewater denitrification with one-carbon compounds as energy-source. J Water Pollut Control Fed 50(9):2111–2119


Söhngen NL (1906) Über bakterien, welche methan als kohlenstoffnahrung und energiequelle gebrauchen. Zentrabl Bakteriol Parasitenk Infektionskr 15:513–517


Van Delden A (1903) Beitrag zur Kenntnis der Sulfatreduktion durch Bakterien. Cent Bakt ete Abt II 11(81):113

Van Weering T (1975) Late Quaternary history of the Skagerrak; an interpretation of acoustic profiles. Geol Mijnb 54:130–145

von Hofmann AW (1866) Introduction to modern chemistry, experimental and theoretic; embodying twelve lectures delivered in the Royal College of Chemistry. Walton and Maberly, London, p 268


Marine Cold Seeps: Background and Recent Advances

Erwin Suess

Contents

1 Introduction ................................................................. 748

2 Seeps at Active Plate Margins ........................................... 750
  2.1 Oceanic Plate: Continental Plate Convergence .................... 750
  2.2 Oceanic Plate: Oceanic Plate Convergence ....................... 751
  2.3 Strike-Slip Faults, Transform Plate Margins, and Shear Zones ...... 752

3 Seeps at Passive Continental Margins ............................... 753

4 Seep Footprints ............................................................. 754
  4.1 Imaging by Hydro- and Geo-acoustic Tools ....................... 754
  4.2 Hydrocarbon-Metazoan-Microbe-Mineral Association ............ 755
  4.3 Authigenic Carbonates .................................................. 757
  4.4 Fluid-Sediment Interaction .......................................... 758

5 Unique Seep Settings ..................................................... 760
  5.1 Gulf of Mexico ......................................................... 761
  5.2 Mediterranean Sea .................................................... 761
  5.3 Black Sea ............................................................... 761

6 Research Needs ........................................................... 762
  6.1 Budgets of Volatile Emissions from Seeps and Retention of Carbon as Authigenic Carbonates ......... 762
  6.2 Fossilization of Microbial Structures Involved in AOM ............ 762
  6.3 Elusive Carbonates from Serpentinization at Subducting Margins . 763

References ........................................................................... 763
Abstract

Marine cold seeps are windows into different depth levels of the submerged geosphere. Subduction zones and organic-rich passive margins host most of the world’s cold seeps. The source of seep fluids ranges from 10s of meters (groundwater aquifers) to 10s of km (subducted oceanic plates) below the seafloor. Seeps transport dissolved and gaseous compounds upward and sustain oasis-type ecosystems at the seafloor. Hereby the single most important reaction is anoxic oxidation of methane (AOM) by Archaea. Subsequent reactions involve sulfur biogeochemistry and carbonate mineral precipitation generating an association of methane, metazoans, microbes, and minerals – a biogeochemical footprint. Currently 100s of cold seeps are known globally. Elucidating function, structure, and composition of the characteristic association are high-priority topics of cold seep research. Ancient seep sites are identified with increasing frequency as the libraries of biomarkers and fossilized microbial bodies grow aided by their fortuitous preservation as they become encased in carbonate precipitates. Seep footprints provide clues as to source depth, fluid-sediment/rock interaction during ascent, lifetime, and cyclicity of seepage events. The Gulf of Mexico, the Black Sea, and the Eastern Mediterranean Sea are sites of classic and ongoing seep studies.

1 Introduction

Transfer from the geosphere to the exosphere (biosphere, hydrosphere, atmosphere) is a fundamental process of the Earth’s material cycling. Many sub-cycles and pathways are active on different timescales, at different depth levels transferring different magnitudes of material. Tectonic plate boundaries, volcanic arcs, and passive continental margins are the geologic settings that largely determine this transfer process. Marine cold seeps provide windows into different depth levels of the geosphere where transfer processes and reactions are active. Cold seeps emit material back into the ocean and leave characteristic footprints on the seafloor. Normally they flow more slowly than hydrothermal vents and thereby adjust to ambient temperatures, but more vigorously flowing cold seeps do have elevated temperatures. Most aspects of recent cold seeps are covered in great detail in special issues (Vanreusel et al. 2009; Fouchet et al. 2009; Bohrmann and Jørgensen 2010; Greinert et al. 2010; Roberts 2010; de Batist and Khlystov 2012; Pierre et al. 2014; Kastner et al. 2014; Suess 2014), whereas this contribution provides a general background and highlights recent advances.

Seeps occur globally along active margins driven by plate convergence and strike-slip faulting and along passive margins by sediment loading and differential compaction (Fig. 1). Seep characteristics and processes at these settings are the subject of this contribution. Beyond documenting new seep systems, recent advances relate to footprints of seeps, characterization of microbe-driven methane oxidation via metal oxide reduction, life span, use as environmental archive, source
Fig. 1 Global seep distribution; locations with hydrocarbon-metazoan-microbe-carbonate associations at active margins (= blue squares); same at passive margins incl. Groundwater seeps (= orange squares); sites at transform and strike-slip faults (= green squares). Data with complete site references in Campbell (2006) and Suess (2010, 2014). New sites (= open squares, lettered): (a) asphalt seeps (Sahling et al. 2016); (b) East Siberian Shelf (Shakova et al. 2016) and Svalbard margin; (c) Atlantic margin (Skarke 2014); (d) Sakhalin strike-slip (Derkachev et al. 2015) and Africa-Eurasia strike-slip (Hensen et al. 2015); (e) South Georgia Island fjords (Römer et al. 2014)
depths, and impact of host sediments. Geologic settings, biogeochemical reactions, and biologic activities are uniquely interconnected to generate seep footprints. The magnitude of material cycled through seeps on a global scale is poorly known despite easily recognizable seep products. Considerable progress is provided on this issue by in-depth analysis and synthesis of H₂O and volatile cycling at major subduction zones that had been extensively drilled (Kastner et al. 2014). How to further improve such estimates and other research needs concludes this contribution.

2 Seeps at Active Plate Margins

2.1 Oceanic Plate: Continental Plate Convergence

By far the most frequent seeps worldwide occur at the convergence between oceanic and continental plates and extend from upper continental slopes to deep trenches. Indeed, research at global convergent margins first revealed cold seeps and their products as resulting from tectonic fluid expulsion by dewatering of sediments; for background, see Suess (2014). Dewatering occurs in response to lateral compression by plate movement whereby sediment-laden oceanic plates move underneath less dense continental plates. In the process, sediments are either scraped off and accreted onto the edge of the overriding plate or are bypassed at its base. Off-scraping and bypassing result in accretionary and erosive margins, respectively, along the global deep-sea trench system generating seep fluids and products from different depths (Schoell and von Huene 2007).

Accretionary margins consist of a series of thrust ridges oriented parallel to the trench axis that contain largely compressed, folded, and faulted turbidites and trench-fill deposits (Fig. 2). In landward troughs between the ridges, hemipelagic sediments are deposited in slope basins. The ridges as well as the basins are the source of seep fluids. Over long periods of accretion, the ridges are increasingly deformed into structural packages separated by thrust faults. These faults are pathways for extruded material. The combined thrust packages constitute the accretionary prism. Farther landward they abut against the continental framework rock (backstop or margin wedge) that comprises the upper continental plate. The surface of the accretionary wedge and framework rock continues to accumulate unconformably seaward prograding sediments.

Where the subduction angle is shallow as off Southern Chile, Cascadia, or Japan, convergence causes splay faults to develop in the framework rock that drain the upper plate (Moore et al. 2007). Where the subduction angle is steep or the surface of the descending oceanic plate is studded with volcanoes – as off Costa Rica – the base of the upper plate is eroded and/or experiences underplating of sediments that escaped being scraped off (Ranero and von Huene 2000; Meschede 2003). The underplated sediments constitute the subduction channel an increasingly recognized site for deep-seated reactions between trapped seawater-derived fluids and seawater-altered oceanic host rocks (van der Straaten et al. 2012).

Most of the global subduction zones are erosive (75% according to Schoell and von Huene (2007)). Plate edges of erosive margins subside, fracture, and eventually
are destroyed (Fig. 3). Destruction is severe where volcanic seamounts are subducted. These elevated basaltic features, riding on the oceanic crust, arrive at the trench and plough into the continent leaving scars and scarps. Ensuing slope failures, faulting, and bulging of the sediment strata greatly facilitate fluid escape and seepage (Liebetrau et al. 2014). It is near the front where seeps initially form. Farther under the overriding plate, increasing temperatures and higher pressures release mineral-bound water, forcing fluids, and fluidized sediments upward. Extruded material is preferentially aligned above subsurface isotherms consistent with clay mineral dehydration temperatures (Ranero et al. 2008; Buerk et al. 2010).

A significant input of water is through hydration (serpentinization) of the oceanic plate during subduction. Although this had been suspected for some time but not until it was shown that bend-faulting facilitates deep penetration of seawater into the oceanic lithosphere – which significantly alters seismic velocities – did it become possible to quantify the degree of serpentinization and hence water input (Rüpke et al. 2004). Bend-faulting results from flexure of a cold and rigid oceanic plate causing fractures that reach into the upper mantle.

2.2 Oceanic Plate: Oceanic Plate Convergence

When one oceanic plate is subducted under another, exothermic serpentinization reactions in the downgoing plate provide heat to drive fluid movement that generates a special type of seeps. At the Mariana Fore-Arc, deep-sourced high-alkaline fluids containing abiotic methane and hydrogen mixed with serpentinite muds are emitted.
Here the downgoing plate contains little sediment leaving its top to undergo hydration by reacting with seawater at shallow depth to form serpentine minerals. As temperature and pressure increase at greater depth (up to 30 km), its top is dehydrated again (de-serpentinization). The liberated fluids ascend and compound hydration of the overthrust oceanic plate. At Prony Bay, North New Caledonia Basin, where one oceanic plate is ab ducted over another (Monnin et al. 2014), similar high-alkaline fluids are emitted.

Understanding serpentinization reactions has been advanced by experimental work (Palandri and Reed 2004) and by investigating the Lost City site at the Mid-Atlantic Ridge (Kelley et al. 2005) that is characterized by prominent carbonate chimneys populated by highly diverse biota (Brazelton et al. 2010). Whereas, the Prony Bay site shows unique gas chemistry and high microbial diversity (Postec et al. 2015).

2.3 Strike-Slip Faults, Transform Plate Margins, and Shear Zones

Seepage is active at tectonic settings where either well-defined plates or portions of fractured plates slide past each horizontally. Here fault planes are steep and often reach basement that facilitate fluid escape upward. When faults crosscut overlying

![Diagram](image-url)
sequences, fluids are subjected to intense interaction with sediments at elevated pressure and temperature. Seeps at such settings had not previously been considered in their own right, but recently more active seep sites are identified at strike-slip settings. Transform faults at plate boundaries – a subset of strike-slip faults – pose earthquake hazards; hence, research on gas and fluid seepage and their products has recently focused on these settings (Crémière et al. 2013; Hensen et al. 2015; Derkachev et al. 2015; Dupré et al. 2015).

3 Seeps at Passive Continental Margins

On passive margins, the variety of geologic settings, the mechanisms of fluid expulsion, and the worldwide occurrence of cold seeps are immense (Fig. 4). Pockmarks on shelves and slopes are expressions of seeps fed from submerged aquifers, overpressured formations emitting volatiles, liquid and solid hydrocarbons and brines, and rapidly deposited water-rich sediments, as in deltas. Hydrocarbon seeps have long guided offshore exploration for oil and gas deposits (Judd and Hovland 2007).

Groundwater seepage from sub-seafloor extensions of aquifers has been known since the early days of seafarers. Today groundwater seepage carries pesticides, herbicides, and fertilizer residues into shelf waters off coastal areas. Pumping for drinking water depletes groundwater reservoirs and allows seawater to enter aquifers, or high tidal ranges force it back as does rising sea level. The result is

![Fig. 4](image-url) Passive margin; geologic settings and forces of fluid expulsion generate different types of cold seeps; pockmarks on shelves and slopes caused by outflow from submerged aquifers, overpressured formations containing hydrocarbons and brines, and rapidly accumulating water-rich sediments in deltas or drift deposits. Carbonate chimneys, asphalt seeps, methane hydrate mounds, seep fauna, and methane plumes in the water column are ubiquitous manifestations as are infrequently observed methane hydrate rafts (Modified from Suess (2014))
widespread salt invasion of groundwater in coastal areas and other problems adversely affecting drinking water reservoirs (Gallardo and Marui 2006). Submarine groundwater discharge may be estimated from distribution patterns of Rn nuclides (Rodellas et al. 2017).

The driving mechanism for fluid expulsion at passive margins is by sediment loading, differential compaction, overpressure, and facies changes. Hence, rapidly accumulating water-rich sediments generate seeps and mud volcanoes in deltas and in deep-sea fans. Any changes involving permeabilities of fluid-rich strata such as ash layers, turbidites, sands and silts, drift sediments, and even buried reefs where intersected by faults open up pathways for fluid migration. Other driving forces for seepage are free gas movement, hydrological and tidal pumping, and thermally driven circulation.

Permafrost thawing causes widespread methane seepage and large-scale venting from Arctic shelves with concern that this greenhouse gas would reach the atmosphere (Shakhova et al. 2015). A review of the effect on climate change by methane emission concludes that anaerobic and aerobic oxidation, bubble transport, and the effects of ice cover and circulation constitute an as yet not fully known climate feedback (James et al. 2016).

Methane release from gas hydrate destabilization receives equally much attention as a key process either currently initiated by global warming or ongoing since postglacial times along the North American Atlantic margin (Phrampus and Hornbach 2012; Skarke 2014) or the Svalbard slope (Wallmann et al. 2018). Whereas emissions on the Arctic shelf appear to be initiated recently, at the other sites, “old” seep carbonates point to past emissions. Seeps are also active on the shelves off South Georgia Island (Römer et al. 2014); here the source of methane appears to be organic-rich sediments in drowned fjords.

4 Seep Footprints

4.1 Imaging by Hydro- and Geo-acoustic Tools

Free gas in the water column, pockmarks, and mud volcanoes on the seafloor and biota-carbonate associations indicate current and past cold seep activity. Detecting and mapping the spatial extent of 100s of seeps in regional geologically defined settings have been facilitated by advanced hydroacoustic technologies. Distribution of gas flares or gas plumes allows pinpointing seep sites on the seafloor and tracing methane bubble trains through the water column. Imaging bubbles depend on the impedance of acoustic waves traveling through media with different densities, in case of seep densities of seawater and free methane. Hence, multi-beam echo sounding – the use of which in mapping seep areas has significantly increased – allows individual flares, flare clusters, and entire fields to be imaged (Schneider von Deimling et al. 2011; Skarke 2014; Weber et al. 2014; Dupré et al. 2015). Commonly stationary flares originate from pockmarks, gas-doming on the seafloor, or acoustic turbidity below the seafloor (seismic chimneys). Depending on water depths and
intensity of seepage, flares may reach several 100s of meters into the water column even breach the sea surface (Shakirov et al. 2005). Rising bubble velocity, rate of gas dissolution, and shrinkage of bubble size eventually determine the maximum height of ascent. Methane bubbles originating at water depths below the gas hydrate stability zone (500–700 m) “survive longer” as hydrate skins form an armor against dissolution (Rehder et al. 2009).

Geo-acoustic tools (side-scan sonar, sub-bottom profiler, Parasound) combined with high-resolution multi-beam bathymetry identify seep sites and are indispensable for quantifying seep fluxes. Geo-acoustic seep signatures characterize smooth areas of the seafloor with elevated backscatter intensity that result from subsurface gas accumulations and doming of the seafloor (Koch et al. 2015) and rough areas with patches of carbonates (Buerk et al. 2010; Klaucke et al. 2012).

### 4.2 Hydrocarbon-Metazoan-Microbe-Mineral Association

#### 4.2.1 Biota Sustained by Anoxic Oxidation of Methane (AOM)

The association of biota and authigenic carbonates forms massive caps and pavements on the seafloor and is by far the most widely encountered footprint. Seep communities are highly visible, persistent, and universal indicators for seep activity past and present (Suess 2010, 2014). The dominant symbiotic taxa are tube worms, clams, and mussels, whereby different microbial consortia – mostly visible as brightly colored mats – provide carbon and energy via anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM) (Boetius et al. 2000). Methane, either from subsurface gas hydrate, from ascending bubbles, or from dissolved gas, drives AOM and the resulting interaction between macrobiota and formation of carbonate and sulfide minerals (Fig. 5).

The AOM-consortia aggregate at different sub-seafloor depths is commonly referred to as the sulfate-methane transition (SMT). In reducing sulfate (Fig. 5; Reaction 1a), they generate hydrogen sulfide that is oxidized either in microbial mats at the sediment surface or by symbionts within macroorganism, using oxygen or nitrate (Fig. 5; Reaction 2). When mobile iron is present, hydrogen sulfide may be fixed as iron sulfide. Bivalves pump oxygen downward whereas tubeworms extract hydrogen sulfide through their roots. As a consequence of the AOM activity, calcium carbonate phases precipitate (Fig. 5; Reaction 3). Earlier views favored accidental reaction from the by-product of AOM; now it is thought plausible that the microbial community may actively promote precipitation even of select mineral phases (Krause et al. 2012). A proxy for sulfate-driven AOM based on δ18O and δ34S criteria appears to be preserved in calcite- and aragonite-associated sulfur of modern and ancient seep carbonates (Feng et al. 2016).

#### 4.2.2 AOM Stimulated by Metal Oxide Reduction

Metal-AOM has become one of the hottest topics in biogeochemistry (Beal et al. 2009; Sivan et al. 2014; Riedinger et al. 2014). It involves methane oxidation by reduction of Fe oxyhydroxide and Mn oxide via microbes (Fig. 5; Reactions 1b and 26 Marine Cold Seeps: Background and Recent Advances 755
Implications are that this process exerts significant control on the marine methane cycle ("benthic filter") in current and past oceans and by extension on climate. Large amounts of Fe and Mn are delivered to the ocean from multiple sources that emphasize the importance of this process. It was first reported from a cold seep setting (Beal et al. 2009) and since documented from lake sediments and brackish coastal environments (Egger et al. 2015). The importance of metal-AOM is not surprising – in hindsight – as it provides larger energy gains than sulfate-AOM does. From incubation experiments with seep sediments (Sivan et al. 2014), the research emphasizes the coexistence of sulfate reduction, iron reduction, AOM, and methanogenesis in marine seep sediments in which the presence of iron oxides vastly stimulates rates of bacterial sulfate reduction. Current research is centered on rates and microbial systematics but less so on minerals supposedly forming. Mixed Mn and Fe carbonate phases and phosphates from anoxic, methane-rich environments are very likely products from Me-AOM (Dijkstra et al. 2016).

4.2.3 Biomarkers

Function, structure, and composition of seep biota and AOM-consortia in concert with biomarkers are currently a major topic of seep research as well. Biomarkers are greatly depleted in $^{13}$C relative to their carbon source and are linked to metabolism by methanotrophic Archaea. The nearly inexhaustible reservoir of methane carbon available to AOM-consortia in seep environments maximizes the kinetic carbon isotope fractionation. Biomarkers are identified from sediments and authigenic carbonates of
recent seep sites and increasingly from deposits of ancient seeps (Peckmann and Geodert 2005). Based on lipid analyses, three distinct AOM-consortia of ANaerobic MEthanotrophic (ANME-1, -2, and -3) archaea and their sulfate reducing bacterial partners were tentatively identified as environmental indicators that respond to temperature, oxygen, and sulfate availability (Rossel et al. 2011).

4.3 Authigenic Carbonates

4.3.1 Stable Isotopes and Mineralogy
A direct consequence of anaerobic oxidation of methane is the precipitation of carbonate minerals. Edifices, chimneys, or buildups (chemoherms) reach a couple of meters to as much as 50 m above the seafloor and are believed to form in contact with bottom water (Teichert et al. 2005; Han et al. 2008; Crémère et al. 2013; Liebetrau et al. 2014). Other morphologies exist below the seafloor or are uplifted, exhumed, and eroded. Typically, chemoherms incorporate shell fragments and have a network of open or cemented fluid channels that can be traced throughout the structure. Many other shapes and sizes of seep carbonates have been observed, too numerous to detail here (Feng and Chen 2015; Tong et al. 2013). The seafloor around seeps is often covered by blocky carbonates and fragments; irregular doughnut-shaped, tabular, and tubular slabs; and concretions with open or cemented central channels. Some appear to be molds of burrows or linings of fluid channels that formed in the sediment. They resemble small chimneys after becoming exhumed by bottom currents. Generally, carbonate conduits facilitate fluid escape (Capozzi et al. 2015).

The dominant mineral phases are aragonite, Mg-calcite, and (proto)-dolomite; Fe and Mn carbonates occur infrequently. Their δ¹³C and δ¹⁸O signatures range from −60 to −30% PDB and +6 to ±0% PDB, respectively, depending on the C and O source, temperature of formation, and specific mineral phases being formed (Bohmann et al. 1998; Teichert et al. 2005; Han et al. 2014). Alteration by meteoric water significantly lowers the O-isotope signature (Tong et al. 2016), whereas clay dehydration water, gas hydrate water, and glacial seawater cause shifts to higher values. Biogenic, thermogenic, and abiotic methane with very significantly differing carbon isotope signatures is strongly fractionated during AOM which determines the eventual C-isotope signal. Stable isotopes and carbonate mineralogies provide robust criteria to characterize recent and ancient seeps including biomarkers, trace elements, and radionuclide to constrain absolute and relative ages, redox conditions, and source and type of fluid-sediment/rock interactions.

4.3.2 Age Determination
Foremost among seep research is age determination of authigenic carbonates. The first published U-Th ages from chemoherm samples of the Cascadia subduction zone showed that methane release events largely occurred during low sea-level stands (Teichert et al. 2003). This mechanism is essentially confirmed as more ages become available. Most ages (back to 65 kya) of seep carbonates from the Japan Sea coincide
with low sea-level stands (Watanabe et al. 2008). A compilation of all available U-Th ages (Feng et al. 2010) of Quaternary seeps from the Gulf of Mexico, the Black Sea, and the Congo fan shows most dates fall around the Last Glacial Maximum (LGM). From passive margins of the South China Sea, 18 sets of U-Th ages have been published (Tong et al. 2013; Han et al. 2014) of which 16 samples coincide with low sea-level stands. Ages of seep carbonates along the Atlantic margin off North America show increased sediment delivery during low sea-level stands that results in overpressure and venting from sediment compaction (Prouty et al. 2016). During Quaternary times, eustatic sea-level fluctuations are currently favored to control the activity of most seeps.

**Tales of Two Chimneys**

Intercalated seep carbonates and volcanic ash layers on the flank of a mud mound on the Costa Rica margin (Kutterolf et al. 2008) revealed at first sight contradictory ages. Several active volcanic phases with ash layers provided time markers (6, 17, 25, 69, and 84 kya) as did the U-Th ages of the carbonate core (5-65 kya). Carbonate-derived ages showed downward and inward progression instead of upward as the ash-derived ages did. Both trends are readily explained by self-plugging of fluid conduits over time as illustrated (Fig. 5 left panel). A carbonate chimney (Fig. 5 right panel) from the seafloor of the oxygen minimum zone of the Northern Arabian Sea revealed fine-scale seep carbonate laminae alternating with laminae of pelagic particles (Himmler et al. 2016). The finely laminated and highly porous structure consists of AOM-derived pure aragonite alternating with biofilm-covered layers. The authors suggest a cyclicity controlled by fluctuating particle flux from the sea surface possibly related to Indian monsoonal and tidal forcing (Fig. 6).

### 4.4 Fluid-Sediment Interaction

The type of fluids expelled back into the ocean at accretionary, erosive, and transform margins or from shelves, slopes, and deltas at passive margins – whether from deep or shallow sources – depends on the thickness and provenance of the sediment column, the rate of sedimentation, and the age, cooling history, composition, and morphology of the underlying moving or stationary plates. Organic-rich and evaporite-containing strata are extremes of that spectrum in determining the final seep fluid composition. Seep fluids contain remineralized nutrients (silica, phosphate, ammonia, and alkalinity) and hydrogen sulfide, as well as dissolved and free methane from microbial degradation of sedimentary organic matter. Thick sediments often are deposited along continental margins associated with coastal upwelling or otherwise high primary productivity in response to nutrient loading from nearby continents. Rich in organic matter and biogenic silica, these sediments accumulate rapidly and thus greatly favor sulfate reduction and methanogenesis. Hence, most sedimented margin sites generate enough biogenic methane that, when moving upward, exits as dissolved or free gas into the bottom water. Alternatively when reaching the gas hydrate stability zone, methane is retained in layers of gas hydrate.
4.4.1 Gas Hydrate Water

Much attention has been focused on Cl anomalies from the release of methane hydrate water. The anomaly is an artefact of sampling as removal of drill cores from in situ temperature and pressures destabilizes gas hydrates in the sediment. Coupled with O- and D/H-isotopes of H₂O, the resulting anomalies may be linked to gas hydrates and indeed are widely used to estimate the hydrate saturation of deposits (Matsumoto and Borowski 2000; and many others). Release of hydrate water is restricted to layers at and above the bottom-simulating reflector (BSR) diluting the Cl concentration and increasing the $\delta^{18}O_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$ of pore fluids.

Seep carbonates being precipitated during AOM are another sink of $^{18}O$ from hydrate water. This was first shown in an aragonite-calcite intergrowth retrieved from seeps at the Cascadia convergent margin (Bohrmann et al. 1998). The C-isotope ratio ($\delta^{13}C = -40$ to $-54\%$ PDB) of this intergrowth identifies both mineral phases as being derived from biogenic methane. The younger aragonite layer had formed in equilibrium with ambient bottom-water temperatures, whereas the older Mg-calcite later – increased in $\delta^{18}O$ by about $+1\%$ PDB – had formed from gas hydrate water in the precipitating fluid. Hydrate water may be enriched in $^{18}O$ of up to $3.5\%$ PDB. The term “clathrite” was proposed for this type of rock, invoking “clathrate” the family of water-caged gases, methane hydrate. The term did not stick, but what stuck is the interpretation of “heavy” $\delta^{18}O$ values of seep carbonates as sourced by methane hydrate. Currently, numerous reports of “heavy” $\delta^{18}O$ values of seep carbonates are linked to release of methane hydrate water in the subsurface (Tong et al. 2013; Lu et al. 2015; and many others), but alternative sources of “heavy” water need be seriously evaluated first.
4.4.2 Clay Dehydration

Trioctahedral clays (smectite group) lose interlayer water in three steps to form illite responding to temperatures and pressures that prevail at the plate interface in subduction zones (80–120 °C). This was shown experimentally some time ago and has been refined since (Hüpers and Kopf 2012). Depending on the percentage of smectites, dehydration generates considerable amounts of fresh water, affecting interstitial chloride contents. Incomplete dehydration from 18 Å to 15 Å-smectite also releases water but without forming illite. The expression of clay dehydration either at complete or incomplete conversion to illite is evident on a large scale in Cl dilution of pore fluids of accretionary margins (Kastner et al. 2014). Temperature and compaction at different margins are the first-order control on Cl dilution (Saffer and Kopf 2016).

The δD (−32‰ SMOW) and δ18O (+10‰ SMOW) of interlayer water differ significantly from seawater as determined from deeply buried strata of mud volcanos (Dählmann and de Lange 2003). Upon dehydration, these isotope characteristics affect δD and δ18O of pore waters. Sorbed trace elements in interlayer space or on external clay surfaces are also affected by dehydration, exemplary shown by boron.

Significant boron enrichment with diluted Cl contents in pore fluids from seep sites (mud volcanos) and the δD and δ18O isotope ratios of seep water is attributed to clay dehydration (Hensen et al. 2015). The desorption of boron from smectites is temperature dependent (complete at 100 °C and higher), and thus fluids originate 1000s of meters below the seafloor preserve a signal of high-temperature sediment-fluid interaction while moving through backstop rocks to the seafloor (Fig. 3). Temperature history and degree of compaction during subduction differentially affect clay dehydration and hence Cl and B signals such that – according to Saffer and Kopf (2016) – upon subduction of a cold sediment slab pore water freshening is maximized because clay-bound water is released into low porosity sediments but boron signature is less pronounced as B-desorption is poor at low temperatures. Whereas upon subduction of a warm sediment slab pore water freshening is less pronounced as dehydration occurs early and releases claybound water into high porosity sediments but boron signature is more pronounced. Fluids that originate from the oceanic crust and are emitted at mud volcanoes along the strike-slip fault between Africa and Eurasia show the entire spectrum of sediment-fluid interaction (Hensen et al. 2015). On the ascent to the surface, fluid composition is impacted by recrystallization of carbonates (Sr/Cl and 87Sr/86Sr/Cl), clay mineral dehydration (B/Cl, δ18O/δD), and salt dissolution (Cl).

5 Unique Seep Settings

Geologic settings that generate prolific seepage are those that accumulate organic-rich sediments in basins, in deltas, and those that are underlain by evaporites and hydrocarbon reservoirs. They provide unique characteristics expressed by mud volcanoes, pockmarks, brine lakes, asphalt, and – as with all seep settings –
authigenic carbonates. The Gulf of Mexico, the Eastern Mediterranean Sea, and the
Black Sea host unique and expansive seep settings that have been extensively
investigated.

5.1 Gulf of Mexico

Passive margin seeps of the Gulf of Mexico are generated from underlying salt strata
where loading by sediments causes salt to flow forming salt domes and salt ridges. Hereby low-density and low-viscosity salts escape the pressure of overburden by
flowing upward. Salt domes push through the overlying strata, dragging them
upward thereby developing faults along their flanks. This facilitates migration of
fluids and liquid hydrocarbons. The tops of salt domes, when reaching the seafloor,
mostly are dissolved away by circulating seawater and then collapse. Some pock-
marks contain brine pools and significant amounts of non-methane hydrocarbons.
The shelves and slopes surrounding the Western and Northern Gulf of Mexico host
such seeps, biota, and pockmarks related to salt tectonics as does the seafloor off
Yucatan (Sassen et al. 2004; Roberts 2010; Weber et al. 2014; Sahling et al. 2016).
Asphalt volcanism off the Yucatan Peninsula has now been established as a distinct
type of seepage. Heavy hydrocarbons extrude and flow over large areas of the
seafloor developing lava-like surface structures. Abundant biota – representing
most known seep organisms – colonize the flows; authigenic carbonates are present
but less abundant than at gaseous-dominated hydrocarbon seeps.

5.2 Mediterranean Sea

The Messinian salt underlying the Mediterranean Sea affects seep manifestations.
Here the driving mechanism for seepage is the convergence of the African and
Eurasian plates (Westbrook and Reston 2002). Along the subduction zone – the
Mediterranean Ridge – and at its intersection with Hellenic and Cyprus arcs mud
volcanoes, gas hydrates, brine lakes, and biota-carbonate associations have been
extensively studied (Olu-Le et al. 2004; Shank et al. 2011). Brine pools at the
seafloor (2000–3000 m) are at or close to saturation with respect to Na, Mg, and K
salts. The composition varies significantly between adjacent pools and depends on
the depths within the salt sequence from which the fluid is generated (Westbrook
et al. 1995).

5.3 Black Sea

The Black Sea is accorded a special role in seep studies for its anoxic, methane-rich
water column below about 100 m and its thick – up to 16 km – organic-rich
sedimentary cover. Over 2000 seeps were mapped off Romania and the Ukraine
(Naudts et al. 2006). The sites are concentrated at the shelf-slope break extending to
725 m water depth. In the sub-seafloor below that water depth, the stability limit of
methane hydrates has been projected from the bottom-water temperature and the
geothermal gradient implying that above that depths gaseous methane escapes into
the bottom water and below methane is retained as hydrate. The seep province
continues off the Crimean Peninsula into the eastern basin with gas hydrates,
methane plumes in the water column, and mud volcanos at 1000–2300 m depth.
Still farther east at the margin off Georgia, extensive methane seepage occurs in the
Batumi area with state-of-the-art pressure coring technology used to quantify meth-
ane emissions and subsurface gas hydrates (Pape et al. 2008; Heeschen et al. 2011).
Throughout the Black Sea, authigenic carbonates of many morphologies and com-
positions are associated with the seep provinces although seep macrofauna appears
to be scarce.

6 Research Needs

6.1 Budgets of Volatile Emissions from Seeps and Retention
of Carbon as Authigenic Carbonates

Water output from the subducting sediment packages at convergent margins is by
porosity reduction coupled to plate subduction rates (Kastner et al. 2014) and by
upscaled of direct flow measurements (Freundt et al. 2014). Large discrepancies
exist between these approaches. To improve the situation, modeled flow rates from
 pore water profiles, direct measurements of bubble and fluid escape, and the degree
of biological methane oxidation (benthic filter) need to be quantified. Deep-sea
landers equipped with flux meters deployed at single sites have recorded flow rates
between $<10^{-3}$ and $>10^2$ cm$\cdot$y$^{-1}$. GasQuant, a tool based on backscatter intensity
of bubbles, integrates bubble spectra for total gas fluxes. Large-scale acoustic
mapping techniques may help to increase the database for global upscaling.

When biota at the seafloor and in the water column consume methane aerobically,
the carbon is largely added as CO$_2$ to the seawater. If they consume methane
anaerobically (AOM), the carbon is retained in carbonates. Partitioning the
methane-C sink from biological oxidation between seawater bicarbonate and min-
eral carbonate is a scientific challenge that has not been addressed as of today.

6.2 Fossilization of Microbial Structures Involved in AOM

Geologic time for seepage based on AOM is steadily being pushed back, with
ancient plate boundaries and passive margins being recognized as characteristic
settings. Sediment fabric and organics isolated from geological material will con-
tinue to yield data on ancient seeps. The concern over contamination of geological
samples is not as serious as with recent material since fossil microbial bodies are
fully encased in a carbonate matrix. Structures of suspected fossilized microbes
await identification including fossilized bodies, resembling microbial morphologies
that consist wholly of AOM-carbonates; their biomarkers will provide considerable new knowledge. Preparatory work in isolating biomarkers from such bodies requires contamination-free samples such as the miniaturized biosignature extraction procedure recently introduced (Leefmann 2008).

### 6.3 Elusive Carbonates from Serpentinization at Subducting Margins

Fluids released from serpentinization of the subducted oceanic plate directly into bottom waters instead through thick sediments may maintain their high pH values and Mg, Ca, and aqueous SiO$_2$ contents. Mixing these fluids with slightly more acidic seawater containing DIC would result in carbonates analogous to those precipitated on serpentinized oceanic crust at hydrothermal sites. Most likely sites for emission of such fluids and precipitates are at trench-outer rise with bend-faulting, usually quite deep (>4000 m). Carbonate chimneys might have escaped detection so far. Offshore Nicaragua is underlain by serpentinized and highly fractured oceanic plate. A search here for subduction zone chimneys along with molecular hydrogen emissions would be a scientific objective for future seep research. Its relevance is seen in that the hypothetical carbonates could represent a hitherto unrecognized global CO$_2$ sink. Studies would complement estimates of CO$_2$ sequestered in onshore ophiolite massifs and ultramafic intrusions as well as offshore slow-spreading ridge segments and magmatic fore-arcs as currently debated (Kelemen 2011).

### Acknowledgments

This contribution is an expanded and updated version of earlier publications (Suess 2010, 2014) by Springer Science+Business Media New York, 2003. I thank editors and publication staff for permission to use these previously published materials from which all illustrations are updated and/or redrawn to accommodate major advances in marine cold seep research. One last time, many thanks to Zona Bolton-Suess who helped—not just with the intricacies of the English language—but provided encouragement, genuine interest, and sustained support in my scientific pursuits. I acknowledge the College of Earth, Ocean, and Atmospheric Sciences, Oregon State University, for the courtesy appointment extended to me and the associated use of facilities.

### References


Dijkstra N, Slomp CP, Behrends T (2016) Vivianite is a key sink for phosphorus in sediments of the landsort deep, an intermittently anoxic deep basin in the Baltic Sea. Chem Geol 438:58–72


Rehder G et al. (2009) Controls on methane bubble dissolution inside and outside the hydrate stability field from open ocean field experiments and numerical modeling. Mar Chem. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marchem.2009.03.004


Mud Volcanoes are frequently encountered geo-structures at active and passive continental margins. In contrast to magmatic volcanoes, mud volcanoes are marine or terrestrial, topographic elevation built from vertically rising fluidized mud or mud breccia. Commonly, these structures have a crater, hummocky rim, and caldera. Mud volcanism is triggered by various geological processes which lead to a high pore fluid pressure at great depth, sediment instabilities, and a subsequent discharge of mud, fluids, and gases such as hydrocarbons (mostly the greenhouse gas methane). Although global estimates of methane emissions from mud volcanoes vary over two orders of magnitude, mud volcanism could be an important source for atmospheric methane. However, a substantial fraction of the hydrocarbons are retained in the mud volcanoes surface sediments or, in the particular case of marine mud volcanoes, are consumed by microbes in the water.
column. In sediments, the upwelled hydrocarbons fuel a variety of free-living and symbiotic, chemosynthetic communities that oxidize these with electron acceptors such as oxygen or sulfate from the water column or the atmosphere. The activity of the chemosynthetic communities is regulated by the availability of either electron donors (hydrocarbons) or acceptors which, in return, is determined by mass transport processes. Most important in this context are the magnitudes of upward advection of electron donors and the influx of electron acceptors due to diffusion and bioirrigation.

1 Introduction

Mud volcanoes are geological structures bearing only little morphological resemblances to magmatic volcanoes. In contrast to true volcanoes which expel magmatic material at plate boundaries and mantle plumes (Schmincke 2004), mud volcanoes are formed by vigorous mud discharge that is often accompanied by fluid and gas emissions commonly originating from a deep subsurface sedimentary sequence (Brown 1990; Milkov 2000; Kopf 2002). Mud volcanoes have a long tradition of scientific investigation and references were already made in historical documents (e.g., “Naturalis Historia” by Pliny the Elder, first century AD). Nevertheless, the diversity of mud volcano shapes as well geological causes responsible for their formation leads to a variety of definitions and synonymous terms such as mud volcano, mud pie, mud mound, and gryphon (among others). Hereafter, a mud volcano is defined as a marine or terrestrial, topographic elevation built from vertically rising fluidized mud or mud breccia (a mud matrix containing clasts and, sometimes, rock fragments or evaporites originating from the geological section through which the mud ascends; Norton 1917; Cita et al. 1981; Maignien et al. 2013; Mazzini and Etiope 2017). Mud volcanism is caused by various geological processes such as tectonic accretion and faulting, rapid burial of sediments due to slope failures (olistostromes) or high sedimentation rates, and fluid emissions from mineral dehydration as well as (true) volcanic and earth quake activities (Brown 1990; Milkov 2000; Kopf et al. 2001; Dimitrov 2002; Kopf 2002; Mellors et al. 2007; Manga et al. 2009). These processes can lead to an abnormally high pore fluid pressure and sediment instabilities and consequently lead to the extrusion of mud, fluids, and gases (usually through a central conduit) to the seafloor or earth surface (Fig. 1). A crater or active center, hummocky rim, and surrounding caldera are common features of mud volcanoes. However, the shape of the structure can range from amorphous mud pies to conical formations, and their size varies from a few meters to kilometers in circumference and a few decimeters to hundreds of meters in height. The viscosity and density of the extruded material as well as the duration of eruption events and the development stage of the edifice were identified as major factors determining the shape of mud volcanoes (Lance et al. 1998; Murton and Biggs 2003; Stewart and Davies 2006). In general, flat structures are composed of comparably liquid mud matrixes, while high- and cone-shaped edifices are built of successively,
superimposed flows of more viscous material. Mud volcanoes may thus erupt in regular or irregular time intervals or emit mud, fluids, and gases continuously. In addition, they may also become inactive when the source of gas expansion and fluid flow stops (Planke et al. 2003; Mazzini et al. 2009), but also new structures evolve such as the terrestrial LUSI mud volcano in 2006 (Mazzini et al. 2007; Karyono et al. 2007).
Three types of mud volcano activity are distinguished (Dimitrov 2003 and references therein):

1. Lokbatan-type: This type of mud volcanism was named after the Lokbatan Mud volcano, Azerbaijan. Lokbatan-type mud volcanoes are characterized by violent outbreaks and long phases of dormancy.
2. Chikishlyar-type: Calm, relatively weak, and continuous venting of gas, water, and mud are typical for this type of mud volcano.
3. Shugin-type: This type of mud volcanism is transitional between the other types, characterized by long periods of weak activity interrupted by eruptive events. Dimitrov (2003) suggested that this type of mud volcanism is the most common.

This distinction is based on terrestrial mud volcanism, which has been investigated for a comparably long time. In some cases, also historical documents can be used to infer the mode of activity (Aliyev et al. 2002). In contrast, most oceanic mud volcanoes were discovered and investigated in the last decade, when appropriate high-resolution geophysical tools became available to science which can resolve a few m of difference in height above- or belowground. However, from the bathymetry and sub-bottom structure, it cannot be resolved what activity type a particular mud volcano may represent because eruptive events could be separated by (longer) periods of dormancy (Feseker et al. 2009, 2014). In addition to the temporal heterogeneity of activity, visual investigation of submarine mud volcanoes by towed video cameras, submersibles, or remotely operating vehicles showed that mud volcanism is also spatially diverse (Niemann et al. 2006b; Sauter et al. 2006, Sahling et al. 2009). In general, a mud volcano has an active center above a central conduit which is usually marked by steep temperature gradients, and seepage rates decrease toward the periphery. However, the active center may not always be the geographical center, and the activity may not follow a concentric arrangement. Our knowledge about mud volcanoes in general and specific structures in particular is therefore very sketchy.

## 2 Hydrocarbon Emissions

The processes leading to mud volcanism on the continents as well as at active and passive continental margins are generally related to fluid and gas flow. Subsurface muds and shales in mud volcano-hosting regions often contain high amounts of methane and other hydrocarbons of thermogenic and/or microbial origin. Consequently, mud flows can be accompanied by vigorous gas expulsions, which may even ignite in contact with the atmosphere in terrestrial systems (Milkov 2000; Kopf 2002; Charlou et al. 2003; Somoza et al. 2003). Good examples for violent gas emissions from such structures are the terrestrial Lokbatan and the deepwater Haakon Mosby Mud Volcano. Since the early nineteenth century, the Lokbatan Mud Volcano has erupted more than 20 times, sometimes very violently with flames reaching more than 500 m height (Aliyev et al. 2002; Mukhtarov et al. 2003).
At Haakon Mosby, a gigantic methane plume of about 600 m was visible on echo sounder systems during several cruises, and jets of methane emitted from the seafloor were observed during submersible dives (Vogt et al. 1997; Sauter et al. 2006). The annual methane discharge from Haakon Mosby was estimated with 8–35 Mmol (0.1–0.5 Gg) of which free gas accounted for 60–90% (Niemann et al. 2006b; Sauter et al. 2006). About 650 to 900 terrestrial mud volcanoes are known (Kopf 2003), but global estimates for marine mud volcanoes range between 800 and 100,000 (Milkov 2000; Dimitrov 2002, 2003; Kopf 2003; Milkov et al. 2003). For submarine mud volcanoes, it is often not known if and when these structures emit methane. As a result, global assessments of methane emissions from mud volcanoes vary considerably. It has been suggested that terrestrial and shallow-water mud volcanoes contribute between 2.2 and 6 Tg year$^{-1}$ of methane to the atmosphere (Dimitrov 2003; Milkov et al. 2003) and that 27 Tg year$^{-1}$ of methane may escape from deepwater mud volcanoes (Milkov et al. 2003). Revised estimates of the total methane emission from mud volcanoes range between 35–45 Tg year$^{-1}$ (Etiope and Milkov 2004) and 30–70 Tg year$^{-1}$ (Etiope and Klusman 2002) and – when using only known structures and correcting for the size of the edifice – between 0.3 Tg year$^{-1}$ (Kopf 2003) and 1.4 Tg year$^{-1}$ (Kopf 2002). In comparison to the annual methane emissions to the atmosphere (526–852 Tg year$^{-1}$, Kirschke et al. 2013), mud volcanism may consequently be an important source for atmospheric methane. Nevertheless, a substantial fraction of methane released from marine mud volcanoes is probably consumed by aerobic methanotrophic bacteria (see Chapters on aerobic methane oxidation in Vol. “Aerobic Utilization of Hydrocarbons, Oils, and Lipids”, edited by Rojo 2019) in the water column (Reeburgh 2007), though their activity can be very low (Damm and Budéus 2003). This might be related to current dynamics and/or water column stratification regimes, which were found to cause spatiotemporal heterogeneity of aerobic methane oxidation at other methane seeps (Steinle et al. 2015, 2016).

### 3 Geochemical Forcing

In surface sediments of mud volcanoes, potential electron donors such as hydrocarbons and hydrogen sulfide from deeper sediment layers meet electron acceptors such as oxygen, nitrate/nitrite, oxidized metals, and sulfate, which are formed in surface sediments or originate from the water column or atmosphere. In such redox transition zones, mud volcanoes were found to support a wide range of free-living and symbiotic chemosynthetic organisms utilizing the subsurface energy sources (also known as “geofuels”) (Fig. 1). Thereby, chemosynthetic organisms reduce the efflux of reduced molecules to the hydro- and atmosphere (see Chapters on hydrocarbon and sulphur oxidising microbes in Vol. “Aerobic Utilization of Hydrocarbons, Oils, and Lipids”, edited by Rojo 2019) (Olu et al. 1997; Joye et al. 2005; Alain et al. 2006; Niemann et al. 2006a, b; Jørgensen and Boetius 2007; Knittel and Boetius 2009). Furthermore, chemosynthetic communities can also serve as an important food source for other marine organisms (Niemann et al. 2013). The most important
metabolic pathways are methanotrophy (anaerobic oxidation of methane, AOM; and aerobic oxidation of methane, MOx), anaerobic and aerobic degradation of hydrocarbons, thiotrophy (sulfide oxidation), and in some systems also iron oxidation (Omoregie et al. 2008). The distribution of chemosynthetic communities strongly depends on the availability of electron donors and acceptors, which in return is regulated by physical mass transport processes and biological activities (de Beer et al. 2006; Niemann et al. 2006b; Lösekann et al. 2007, Soetaert et al. 2012). Advection accounts for the majority of upward transport of electron donors from deeper sediment layers, while diffusion and bioirrigation are responsible for most of the influx of electron acceptors from the atmosphere or the water column into the mud volcano sediments.

Advection transport at mud volcanoes is in the form of mud, fluid, and free gas flow (see Sect. 1) (Fig. 1). Direct measurements of advection are scarce (Linke et al. 1994; Brown et al. 2005; Sauter et al. 2006; Mazzini et al. 2007, Feseker et al. 2009, 2014). In particular, rates of free gas and mud flow are poorly resolved. For gas flow, this may improve in the future as a result of new echo sounder tools allowing to quantify gas bubbles in the water column (Schneider von Deimling et al. 2007; Ostrovsky et al. 2008; Nikolovska et al. 2008; Muyakshin and Sauter 2010; Veloso et al. 2015) Also, the effect of mud and free gas flow on the distribution of chemosynthetic communities is mostly unknown. Fluid flow rates, on the other hand, can be modelled from geochemical pore water gradients and heat flow measurements, which allows for a comparably high temporal and spatial resolution. Recorded values for fluid flow at active mud volcanoes are typically a few centimeters to several meters per year (Table 1). Except for the spatial and temporal heterogeneity of mud volcano activity, advective pore water transport is a linear process, and the advective flux ($J_a$), i.e., the amount of pore water solute crossing a given area per time, is determined by the flow velocity ($v_a$) and the concentration ($C$) of the solute:

$$J_a = v_a C$$

(note that $C$ has to be corrected for porosity – $\phi$).

The underlying mechanism of diffusion is Brownian motion (Einstein 1905), which, for biogeochemical reactions, can be simplified to the heat-induced, non-directional movement of atoms/molecules in water. Diffusive transport can be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>$v_a$</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haakon Mosby</td>
<td>Barents Sea</td>
<td>40–600</td>
<td>de Beer et al. 2006, Kaul et al. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dvurechenski</td>
<td>Black Sea</td>
<td>8–25</td>
<td>Aloisi et al. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capt. Arutyunov</td>
<td>Gulf of Cadiz</td>
<td>10–15</td>
<td>Hensen et al. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mound 12</td>
<td>East Pacific</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Linke et al. 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kazan</td>
<td>Mediterranean</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Haese et al. 2006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
illustrated by assuming two spatially separated entities in sediments or the water column with high and low concentrations of a given solute. The dissolved atoms/molecules will move randomly between both units. But more atoms/molecules will move from the unit of high concentration than from the unit of low concentration. This consequently leads to a net transport to the unit of low concentration until both units are equal in concentration. From this simple example, it is apparent that the concentration difference is an important factor determining diffusive flux. The second important factor is the net velocity of the movement. However, in contrast to the linear mode of advective flow, diffusion is random. A diffusing atom/molecule will not move in one direction but, in a simplified manner, forward and backward. As a result and when considering a large number of atoms/molecules, the mean travelled net distance \( L \) increases only by the square root of time \( t \):

\[
L = \sqrt{2Dt};
\]  

(2)

where \( D \), the diffusion coefficient, is a compound-specific constant usually expressed in \( \text{cm}^2 \text{ year}^{-1} \) (note that \( D \) has to be corrected for temperature (T) and \( \phi \)), e.g., Boudreau 1997). Equation (2) has the rather counterintuitive implication that the net velocity of diffusion \( v_d \) decreases with increasing diffusion distance:

\[
v_d = \frac{L}{t} = \frac{2D}{L}.
\]  

(3)

Important electron donors and acceptors at mud volcanoes only need about a ms to travel a distance of 1 \( \mu \text{m} \) but already a day for 1 cm and some month for 10 cm (Table 2)! The diffusive flux \( (J_d) \) is hence determined by the concentration difference \((dC)\), the diffusion distance \((dx)\), and \( D \). Assuming steady-state conditions, i.e., none of the factors determining the flux changes over the time period of measurement, \( J_d \), can be calculated according to Fick’s first law of diffusion (Fick 1855; Berner 1980; Boudreau 1997):

\[
J_d = D \times \frac{dC}{dx}
\]  

(4)

For short distances and high concentration differences (i.e., a steep concentration gradient – \( dC/dx \)), diffusion is hence an efficient transport mechanism.

The transport of electron acceptors due to bioirrigation activities is a known but poorly quantified phenomenon at marine mud volcanoes (Haese et al. 2006; Niemann et al. 2006b; Soetaert et al. 2012) and other types of cold seeps (Haese 2002; Treude et al. 2003; Cordes et al. 2005, Fischer et al. 2012). Many mud volcanoes host large populations of chemosynthetic megafauna such as tube worms and bivalves mining for sulfide and methane. Thereby, oxygenated and sulfate-rich sea water is flushed through, e.g., burrows into deeper sediment layers where it becomes available for free-living chemosynthetic microbes. Furthermore, some thiotrophic tube worms are known to secret sulfate actively through posterior body parts to fuel sulfate reduction in the sediment. The flux via bioirrigation \( (J_b) \) is solely dependent on the faunal (pumping) activity as well as their extension into the
sediment. $J_b$ can be calculated from the concentration differences of nonreactive tracers such, as e.g., silica or bromide (Wallmann et al. 1997; Haese 2002; Haese et al. 2006):

$$J_a = \alpha h(C_0 - C_x)$$ (5)

where $\alpha$ is the nonlocal exchange coefficient (in year$^{-1}$, dependent of faunal community composition and density) which has to be modelled from pore water concentration profiles. $h$ is the thickness of the zone in which the transport occurs, and $C_0$ and $C_x$ are the concentrations of the tracer in the bottom water and at depth, respectively. The few estimates available to date indicate that fluid flow due to bioirrigation may be 2–3 orders of magnitude higher than the purely physical transport (Wallmann et al. 1997; Haese et al. 2006). Because of the different modes and magnitudes of transport, the redox transition zones are found at various depths in mud volcano sediments ranging from the sediment surface to meters below sediment surface. For sediments devoid of burrowing megafauna, the depth is determined by the velocity of upward fluid flow (de Beer et al. 2006).

### Table 2

Diffusion distance ($L$) in relation to diffusion time ($t$) and velocity (vd) of methane, sulphate and oxygen in sediments at a “typical” submarine mud volcano (T ~3 °C; ~80%)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>methane</th>
<th>sulphate</th>
<th>oxygen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L$</td>
<td>$t$</td>
<td>$v_d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 μm</td>
<td>0.8 ms</td>
<td>40 km year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>0.3 ms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 mm</td>
<td>13.2 min</td>
<td>40 m year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>22 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 cm</td>
<td>22 h</td>
<td>4 m year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>36 h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 cm</td>
<td>92 d</td>
<td>0.4 m year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>150 d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 m</td>
<td>25 year</td>
<td>4 cm year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>41 year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 m</td>
<td>2.5 ky</td>
<td>0.4 m year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>4.1 kyr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 m</td>
<td>250 ky</td>
<td>0.4 mm year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>413 kyr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 km</td>
<td>25 My</td>
<td>40 μm year$^{-1}$</td>
<td>41 My</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Research Needs

Due to the high spatial and temporal variability of fluid flow at mud volcanoes, and the many questions remaining to the functioning and interaction of geophysical forces as drivers of mud volcanism, there are still many open questions as to the trigger, sources, and change of their activity and longevity. For submarine mud volcanoes, an important issue is the relation between gas and fluid flow, heat transport, and the formation/dissociation of gas hydrates as well as its consequences
for the distribution and activity of faunal communities. Furthermore, the magnitude and spatial heterogeneity of hydrocarbon emission from marine mud volcanoes are not well constrained, and we know very little about the dynamics of microbial degradation of hydrocarbons in the water column above active mud volcanoes. One of the best studied mud volcanoes in this regard is the Haakon Mosby Mud Volcano, which has been chosen as a site for long-term observation of geophysical and biogeochemical processes of mud volcanism. Specifically for terrestrial mud volcanoes, very little is known about the occurrence, phylogeny, ecology, and activity of chemosynthetic communities.

References


Nikolovska A, Sähling H, Bohrmann G (2008) Hydroacoustic methodology for detection, localization, and quantification of gas bubbles rising from the seafloor at gas seeps from the eastern Black Sea, Geochemistry Geophysics Geosystems, 9(10)
Methane produced by thermal decomposition of organic matter, biological methanogenesis, and abiotic reactions plays a prominent role in biogeochemical cycles and climate forcing. There are, however, microbiological processes that efficiently mitigate its release into Earth’s surface environments. Lipid biomarkers are powerful tracers for methanotrophic (methane-consuming) organisms and their metabolisms. The particular strength of the biomarker concept, as
compared to DNA- or RNA-based techniques, lies in its potential to track the methane-derived processes not only in modern settings but also on a geological time scale. In the past two decades, numerous studies have provided information on the lipid inventories of the key methanotrophic biota. In addition, compound-specific isotopic measurements have become an important tool for the recognition of tracer compounds for the turnover of methane in environmental samples. After a brief introduction about methane sources and sinks, I will provide an overview about the relevant lipid biomarkers that have been reported from aerobic and anaerobic methanotrophs and their habitats. Furthermore, the occurrence and utility of their diagenetic products as molecular fossils for methane carbon cycling in ancient environments will be illustrated.

1 Introduction: Methane Sources and Sinks

1.1 Methane Sources

1.1.1 Methanogenesis

Most methane on Earth, 85–300 Tg year\(^{-1}\), is produced by certain anaerobic microorganisms belonging to the phylum Euryarchaeota within the domain Archaea. These prokaryotes are commonly referred to as “methanogens” and constitute the largest and most diverse group within the Archaea. Methanogens are able to grow at temperatures between 4 °C and 122 °C, at pH values from 3 to 9, and at salinities ranging from brines to freshwater. Their enormous ecological range notwithstanding, the substrates that can be used by methanogens are rather limited. In a process called fermentation, some methanogens degrade simple organic compounds, such as formate, acetate, methanol, and methylamine (Whiticar 1996; see ▶ Chap. 25, “The Biogeochemical Methane Cycle,” this volume), whereby methane is being formed as a metabolic end product, e.g.,

\[
\text{CH}_3\text{COOH} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{CO}_2 \quad (\text{acetoclastic methanogenesis})
\]

Most methanogens (>70%), however, thrive on completely inorganic substrates, namely, hydrogen and CO\(_2\), which are energetically most favorable.

\[
\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\text{hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis})
\]

Methanogenesis ultimately converts some 10–20% of the reactive organic material buried in soils and sediments to methane (Knittel and Boetius 2009). Typical environments with a high abundance of methanogens are anoxic marine and lacustrine sediments, wetlands, waterlogged soils, and animal guts (termites, ruminants). Methanogens are strict anaerobes, but apart from that they are rather versatile in respect to environmental conditions. The current record for growth temperatures (122 °C), for instance, is held by a hyperthermophilic methanogen, Methanopyrus kandleri (Takai et al. 2008).
1.1.2 Other Biologically Influenced Methane Sources

The breakdown of sedimentary organic matter due to heat and pressure during burial in the Earth’s crust is another significant factor that leads to major formation of “thermogenic” methane (and other gases) in the subsurface (see Chap. 18, “Thermogenic Formation of Hydrocarbons in Sedimentary Basins,” this volume). It is, however, poorly constrained how much of the thermogenic methane actually enters the critical zone, and the atmosphere, through localized seeps (see Chap. 26, “Marine Cold Seeps: Background and Recent Advances,” this volume), diffusive flows, and/or after having been temporarily fixed as gas hydrates (Saunois et al. 2016; see Chap. 24, “Gas Hydrates as an Unconventional Hydrocarbon Resource,” this volume).

Some further biologically influenced methane sources exist, but their overall contributions have not yet been reliably integrated into global methane budgets (Xu et al. 2016). These contributions are likely to be small as compared to methanogenesis (~20%; Schubert 2011) but may be substantial in confined modern environments and/or may have been widespread in the geological past.

- **Aerobic methane production within terrestrial plant tissue** may (Keppler et al. 2006), or may not (Dueck et al. 2007), release considerable amounts of methane into the atmosphere.
- **Fungi** have recently been identified as methane sources in terrestrial habitats, with the methane being possibly produced from a methionine precursor during aerobic degradation of plant matter, e.g., wood or grass (Lenhart et al. 2012).
- **Marine algae**, namely, the widespread coccolithophorid *Emiliania huxleyi*, have been recognized as an aerobic methane source, but the underlying mechanism is as yet unknown (Lenhart et al. 2016).
- In oxygenated waters, the microbiologically mediated cleavage of the algal metabolite *methylphosphonate* has been identified as a source of methane (Karl et al. 2008). This mechanism may occur in marine as well as in lacustrine (Yao et al. 2016) environments and may relate to the so-called oceanic methane paradox, i.e., the local oversaturation of methane in certain depths of the upper, oxygenated water column (Repeta et al. 2016).

1.2 Abiotic Methane Sources

Methane can also be produced fully abiotically, either by high-temperature magmatic processes in volcanic and geothermal areas or via low-temperature (~<100 °C) gas–water–rock reactions even at shallow depths. At least nine different pathways of abiogenic methane formation in the Earth’s crust and mantle have been proposed (see Etiöpe and Sherwood Lollar 2013, for a review); selected examples are:

- **Late magmatic methane** formed by re-speciation of C–O–H fluids during magma cooling (~<600 °C);

\[
\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{O}_2 \quad (\text{often present in fluid inclusions})
\]
Metamorphism of carbonate and graphite bearing rocks – Below 400 °C, graphite in contact with CO₂ bearing fluids leads to methane production during retrograde metamorphism.

$$\text{Mg}_3\text{Si}_4\text{O}_{10}(\text{OH})_2 + 3\text{CaCO}_3 + 6\text{C} + 5\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 3 \text{CaMg(CO}_3)_2 + 4 \text{SiO}_2 + 3 \text{CH}_4$$

Talc + calcite + graphite → dolomite + quartz + methane

**Fischer–Tropsch-type (FTT) reactions** are thought to be linked to serpentinization reactions occurring in the subsurface within fractured ultramafic rocks (Proskurowski et al. 2008). Oxidation of Fe(II) in olivine to Fe(III) in magnetite produces hydrogen, which reacts with CO₂ in the presence of an iron or iron oxide catalyst.

$$6[(\text{Mg}_{1.5}\text{Fe}_{0.5})\text{SiO}_4] (\text{olivine}) + 7\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 3 [\text{Mg}_5\text{Si}_2\text{O}_5(\text{OH})_4] (\text{serpentine}) + \text{Fe}_3\text{O}_4 (\text{magnetite}) + \text{H}_2$$

The hydrogen so produced may react with CO or CO₂ in the actual Fischer–Tropsch reaction to form methane either in a one-step reaction

$$\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

or a two-step reaction

(1) $$\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$, and

(2) $$\text{CO} + 3\text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$ (reverse water – gas shift)

It is interesting to note that FTT reactions can form not only methane but also higher n-alkane homologues, n-fatty acids, and n-alcohols (Fischer and Tropsch 1923). This may occur over a temperature range of 100 to 400 °C and at water-saturated conditions resembling those prevailing in hydrothermal systems (McCollom et al. 1999; Rushdi and Simoneit 2001; see Chap. 20, “Hydrothermal Petroleum,” this volume). FTT reactions have often been invoked as pathways for the abiotic formation of hydrocarbons in ancient (e.g., Lindsay et al. 2005; McCollom 2013) and modern (Proskurowski et al. 2008) environments.

2 Methane Sinks

In soils, sediments, and waters, methane can be oxidized by microorganisms which efficiently reduce the amount of methane released into the atmosphere, and thus, climate forcing. In marine settings, microbial oxidation reduces methane to low nanomolar levels, which is why ocean water is typically undersaturated with respect to the atmosphere (Reeburgh 2007). Biological consumption of methane involves
two major pathways and functional groups of microorganisms, depending on the environmental (redox-)setting.

2.1 Aerobic Oxidation of Methane

In the presence of molecular oxygen, methane can be oxidized to CO₂ by strictly aerobic methanotrophic bacteria (methane-oxidizing bacteria, MOB; Hanson and Hanson 1996; Bürgmann 2011).

\[ \text{CH}_4 + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow 2 \text{CO}_2 + 2 \text{H}_2\text{O} \]

Most MOB fall into two well-defined phylogenetic groups within the phylum *Proteobacteria*, “Type I” (members of the *Gammaproteobacteria*) and “Type II” (members of the *Alphaproteobacteria*). Both groups possess an extensive intracytoplasmic membrane, which is the site of methane oxidation to methanol (Fig. 1), but differ in their modes of carbon assimilation. Type I methanotrophs use the ribulose monophosphate pathway and obtain all their carbon from methane. Type II methanotrophs use the serine pathway, which further involves fixation of CO₂ and is energetically less favorable (Bowman 2014; Bürgmann 2011; Madigan et al. 2003). Additionally, it has been found that some bacteria of the phylum *Verrucomicrobiaceae* also have the ability to aerobically oxidize methane (Dunfield et al. 2007; van Teeseling et al. 2014), but these are thermoacidophilic bacteria that can be expected to play a major role only in some extreme environments.

2.2 Anaerobic Oxidation of Methane

In the absence of oxygen, methane can be processed through the anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM), using alternative electron acceptors. In fact, AOM is the determining process of methane consumption in sediments. It removes more than 90% of the annually produced methane, before it can reach the open water column or the atmosphere (Knittel and Boetius 2009). In modern marine environments, AOM is largely performed by three cosmopolitan clades of anaerobic methanotrophic archaea (commonly referred to as ANME-1, -2, and -3, plus various subgroups (Fig. 2; Hinrichs et al. 1999; Boetius et al. 2000; Niemann et al. 2006; Knittel and Boetius 2009).

Typically, marine ANME thrive as obligate methane-oxidizing, autotrophic organisms, which physically associate with specific partners that are obligate autotrophic sulfate-reducing bacteria (SRB; Wegener et al. 2016). These bacteria belong either to the *Desulfoarcina–Desulfococcus* (ANME-1/DSS and ANME-2/DSS) and the *Desulfobulbus* spp. (ANME-3/DBB) branches (Hinrichs et al. 1999; Boetius et al. 2000; Michaelis et al. 2002; Knittel et al. 2003; Niemann et al. 2006).

The consortia gain energy from AOM, and with sulfate as the final electron acceptor, according to the net reaction...
Sulfate-dependent AOM results in an energy yield of only 20 to 40 kJ mol$^{-1}$ of methane oxidized under environmental conditions. The process obviously depends on a transfer of reducing equivalents from methane to sulfate, but the underlying mechanisms are still not fully known (Wegener et al. 2015). Interestingly,
a direct transfer of electrons from ANME-1 to the associated SRB via intercellular nanowire-like structures was recently shown to occur in these consortia (Wegener et al. 2015). Moreover, some ANME seem to be metabolically versatile. Lab experiments with isotopically labeled substrates indicated that ANME-1 do not necessarily thrive on methane and have the potential of additional autotrophic metabolisms (Bertram et al. 2013). This corresponds with observations of ANME-1 as monospecific aggregates or even single cells in environmental samples (Fig. 2; Orphan et al. 2002; Reitner et al. 2005).

Different ANME clades may thrive in the same environment, but typically show distinct zone formation which could be related to localized concentrations of methane, sulfate, sulfide, bottom water oxygen, and temperature (Nauhaus et al. 2005; Rosel et al. 2011; Timmers et al. 2015). For instance, ANME-1/DSS-consortia seem to prefer higher temperatures and lower oxygen concentrations in overlying bottom waters as compared to ANME-2/DSS. Recent work showed that ANME-1 archaea, with bacterial partners other than DSS, are thriving even in geothermally heated environments as hot as 70 °C (Holler et al. 2011, see also Schouten et al. 2003). High sulfate concentrations, often associated with strong, advective methane seepage, particularly favor the ANME-2/DSS. That consortium also showed highest cell-specific AOM rates in the lab (Nauhaus et al. 2005) and is obviously associated with precipitation of abundant carbonate cements at methane seeps (Leefmann et al. 2008; Peckmann et al. 2009; see also below).

Whereas sulfate-dependent AOM is certainly prevalent in marine settings, it has earlier been argued that AOM may be coupled to a larger variety of oxidants (Peckmann and Thiel 2004). Recent studies revealed microorganisms capable of using iron and manganese to oxidize methane (Beal et al. 2009), according to

$$\text{CH}_4 + 4\text{MnO}_2 + 7\text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + 4\text{Mn}^{2+} + 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

and

$$\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{Fe(OH)}_3 + 15\text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{HCO}_3^- + 8\text{Fe}^{2+} + 21\text{H}_2\text{O},$$

respectively (for implications on ancient environments, see Riedinger et al. 2014). Further possible oxidants are nitrate, according to

$$5\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{NO}_3^- + 8\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 5\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{N}_2 + 14\text{H}_2\text{O},$$

and nitrite, according to

$$3\text{CH}_4 + 8\text{NO}_2^- + 8\text{H}^+ \rightarrow 3\text{CO}_2 + 4\text{N}_2 + 10\text{H}_2\text{O}.$$

Whereas the former reaction is performed by a distinctive ANME-2 subcluster (ANME-2d in association with anaerobic ammonium-oxidizing (anammox-)
bacteria; Raghoebarsing et al. 2006; Haroon et al. 2013), the latter is conducted by “Candidatus Methylomirabilis oxyfera”, an anaerobic, denitrifying bacterium that, notably, produces molecular oxygen as an intermediate during the methane-oxidizing reaction (Ettwig et al. 2010).

Recently it has also been shown that humic organic matter may be used as an oxidant of methane by AOM-performing archaea, which are obviously different from the known ANME groups (Valenzuela et al. 2017).

2.3 Major Abiotic Methane Sinks

**Atmospheric decomposition** – After being formed by biotic or abiotic processes, methane may escape to, and decompose in, the atmosphere. The atmospheric residence time of methane is about 12 years, before it is photochemically oxidized, mainly by OH-radicals in the troposphere, to H₂O, CO, and CO₂ (IPCC 2013; Badr et al. 1992). During that time, methane acts as a potent greenhouse gas, due to its ability to absorb on the infrared band. Its “global warming potential” is deemed 15–34 times that of CO₂ on a 100 year timescale (refs. in Malyan et al. 2016, Table 1). Methane emissions caused by industrial activity, biomass and fossil fuel burning, cattle farming, and rice cultivation, currently contribute ~70% of the total atmospheric methane input and ~16% to the anthropogenic greenhouse warming of the Earth (in 2010; IPCC 2013).

There are considerable interannual and interdecadal variations in atmospheric methane concentrations that are still not well understood (Kirschke et al. 2013; Turner et al. 2017). It is commonly accepted, however, that major emissions of methane may have a striking impact on the Earth’s climate. One example of a putatively methane-driven global temperature excursion (by about 5 °C) is the Paleocene/Eocene temperature maximum, where large amounts of isotopically light carbon entered the atmosphere, possibly due to rapid melting of sedimentary gas hydrates (Dickens 2003; Zachos et al. 2008).

**Storage in sediments** – Methane may migrate into sedimentary reservoirs and accumulate either as free natural gas, dissolved in fluids, or, under certain low-temperature/high-pressure conditions, frozen as solid gas hydrates. If buried and trapped in suitable structures, both biogenic and “thermogenic” methane may thus contribute to fossil natural gas reservoirs that still play a crucial role as an energy resource for man. Apart from conventional and unconventional gas trapped in reservoir rocks, shallow sedimentary gas hydrates comprise a giant, semi-stable capacitor for the storage of methane over extended time scales (see ▶ Chap. 3, “Gas Hydrates: Formation, Structures, and Properties,” this volume). According to the latest estimates (Ruppel and Kessler 2017), sedimentary gas hydrates amount to ~1800 Gt, which is ~15% of the global mobile carbon pool. For a detailed overview, see ▶ Chap. 24, “Gas Hydrates as an Unconventional Hydrocarbon Resource” of this volume.
3 Lipid Biomarkers for the Aerobic Oxidation of Methane

3.1 Biomarkers for Organisms Involved in Aerobic Methanotrophy

Aerobic MOB produce a number of potential diagnostic lipids, including hopanoids, steroids, and fatty acids, as will be described below. The selectivity of these biomarkers for methanotrophy can further be enhanced by compound-specific δ¹³C-measurements. This is because the substrate (i.e., methane) is isotopically light as compared to other carbon sources. Whereas thermogenic methane largely inherits the δ¹³C of the organic matter source (typically −25 to −40‰), biogenic methane has even lower δ¹³C values (−50 to −80‰), with methane originating from archaeal CO₂ reduction at the lower end and fermentation at the higher end (Whiticar 1996). Moreover, assimilation of methane for lipid biosynthesis by MOB is accompanied by a strong isotopic fractionation (more than −30% under methane non-limited conditions; Summons et al. 1994). Hence, biomarkers derived from MOB (and other methanotrophs) usually display δ¹³C values in the range of −60 to −120‰. In ancient sediments, such strongly ¹³C-depleted compounds can testify to the biological assimilation of methane carbon and help to differentiate indigenous substances from allochthonous compounds and contaminants.

Hopanoids are known to occur in many MOB and range from the simple C₃₀ compounds diploptene and diplopterol to highly functionalized bacteriohopanepolyls (BHPs; Rohmer et al. 1984; Sahm et al. 1993; Summons et al. 1994). BHPs with a broad distribution in methanotrophs are aminobacteriohopanetriol (aminotriol), aminotetrol, and aminopentol, along with the more ubiquitous bacteriohopanetetrol. Particularly, the aminopentol appears to be a reasonably specific, though not unique, biomarker for Type I methanotrophs (Talbot and Farrimond 2007 and refs therein; Blumenberg et al. 2012). However, marked differences between the relative abundances of amino-BHPs in methanotrophs exist, and not all Type I methanotrophs synthesize aminopentol (Rush et al. 2016).

In addition to compounds showing the regular hopane skeleton, some widespread MOB (Methylococcaceae) synthesize hopanoids methylated at the C-3 position (Fig. 3 IV; Summons et al. 1994). An attractive feature of these compounds is that the methylation may readily persist in the sedimentary record while the functional groups attached to the carbon skeletons of the BHP precursors get degraded during diagenesis. However, 3β-methyl-BHPs have been observed not only in methanotrophs but also in acetic acid bacteria (Zundel and Rohmer 1985). Recent studies also revealed that the taxonomic distribution of the gene responsible for the 3β-methylation may extend even further into the bacteria and suggested a physiological role for 3β-methyl-BHPs in supporting bacterial cell survival in the late stationary phase (Welander and Summons 2012) and/or during substrate limitation (Summons et al. 1994; Burhan et al. 2002). Thus, the selectivity of sedimentary
3β-methylhopanoids for MOB may be limited, and should ideally be corroborated by compound-specific δ^{13}C analyses.

An interesting new group of potential BHP biomarkers for bacterial methanotrophs are amino-BHPs with methylcarbamate (MC) terminal groups (Fig. 3, V). Recently, these compounds have been consistently detected in a number of cultured Type I methanotrophs and were also found in modern marine sediments influenced by methane (Rush et al. 2016). Future studies will reveal whether MC-BHPs represent selective tracers of aerobic methane oxidation in modern environments.

**Sterols** – A somewhat outstanding trait of the widespread Type I MOB family Methylococcaceae is the capability to synthesize 4-methylsterols (Bird et al. 1971; Summons et al. 1994; Schouten et al. 2000). Steroids are commonly regarded as an attribute of the eukaryotic domain, although recent studies suggest that the
biosynthesis of sterols from squalene may be more common among the bacteria as previously thought (Wei et al. 2016). The sterols of methanotrophs encompass lanosterol (4α-methylcholesta-8(14),24-dien-3β-ol) and a number of derivatives, all showing 4α- or 4,4-methylation, a double bond located at C-8(14), but no side-chain alkylation. These compounds might be considered as “primitive” because their biosynthesis from squalene requires less enzymatic steps as needed for the more evolved 4-desmethylsterols typically found in eukaryotes. Whatevsoever, 4-methylsterols are not unique to MOB, and even animals do contain lanosterols, though mostly as biosynthetic intermediates present at low steady-state concentrations. Summarizing, the occurrence of 4-methylsterols without side-chain alkylation in ancient sediments could well be related to aerobic (Type I) methanotrophs but should be corroborated by additional indicators.

**Fatty acids** – A further distinctive feature of MOB is the presence of unusual phospholipid ester-linked fatty acids in their cell membranes that differentiate them from each other and also from many other organisms. Generally, Type I MOB have more C14- and C16 fatty acids, whereas Type II MOB contain mainly C18 fatty acids. Among these, fairly diagnostic biomarkers are 16:1ω6c, 16:1ω5t, and C16:1ω8c for Type I and C18:1ω8c, 18:1ω6c, and 18:1ω5c for Type II MOB, as well as some other exotic fatty acids (Bowman et al. 1991; Bodelier et al. 2009; Taipale et al. 2016). In ecological studies, these compounds proved valuable to estimate the abundance of MOB, and thus the extent of aerobic methanotrophy in diverse modern environments such as stratified marine waters of the Baltic Sea (Berndmeyer et al. 2013) and Lake Kivu (Zigah et al. 2015), or microbial mats at methane seeps (Paul et al. 2017).

### 3.2 Tracing Aerobic Methanotrophy in Ancient Environments

**Hopanoids** – The hopanoid fingerprint of aerobic methanotrophy may be readily preserved in the sedimentary record, and there are numerous studies reporting findings of fossil hopanoids with a putative origin from MOB. It makes sense to separate here between the primary C30 compounds, namely, diploptene/diplopterol, and the extended and/or functionalized diagenetic products of BHPs (Fig. 4).

Isotopically light diploptene/diplopterol have been reported from modern methane seeps (e.g., Elvert and Niemann 2008) as well as many contemporary aquatic sediments (Spooner et al. 1994; Elvert et al. 2001; Davies et al. 2016; Petrišič et al. 2017). Several studies reveal the preservation of these primary C30 hopanoids, and their isotopic signatures, in Quaternary sediments. For instance, diplopterol with a δ13C value of −61‰ in Santa Barbara Basin sediments was interpreted to reflect aerobic methanotrophy induced by the decay of gas hydrates during Late Pleistocene warming at around 40 kyrs b.p (Hinrichs et al. 2003). Here, high diplopterol concentrations correlated with 13Ccarbonate depletions of foraminifera and were associated with laminated sediments indicative of low oxygen concentrations in bottom waters. Similar observations were made for Last Glacial marginal sediments in the western North Pacific (Uchida et al. 2004) and the Marmara Sea (Ménot and Bard 2010). Looking further back into the geological past, it seems that the
sedimentary record of diploptene/diplopterol begins to fade out in the ~10 kyr range. However, a plausible early diagenetic product of the primary C\textsubscript{30} hopanoids is hop-17(21)-ene, and this compound has also been observed in much older methane-derived carbonates, such as the Miocene Marmorito limestone, Italy ($\delta^{13}$C = $-83\%$; Thiel et al. 1999), and the Oligocene Lincoln Creek formation, USA ($\delta^{13}$C = $-52\%$, Thiel et al. 2001a).

Methanotroph-derived BHPs have been observed in stratified marine water columns (Bermdmeier et al. 2013), cold seep deposits (Birgel et al. 2011), peat (van Winden et al. 2012), and soil (Höfle et al. 2015). However, these highly

---

**Fig. 4** Chemical structures of selected geohopanoids that may derive from the biohopanoids of MOB (Fig. 3); I, extended hopanes; II, extended 3\beta-methylhopanes; III, hop-17(21)-ene; IV, dihomohopanoic acid. Of these structures, only II has some specificity for MOB (see text)
Functionalized compounds are prone to rapid diagenetic degradation or alteration, just like BHPs from other sources. Consequently, fossil methanotroph-derived BHPs have mostly been reported from Holocene and Pleistocene sediments (Burhan et al. 2002; van Winden et al. 2012; Blumenberg et al. 2013). Recent work, however, revealed MOB-derived aminotriol, –tetrol-, and even -pentol in 115 m below sea floor in Congo fan sediments that have an estimated age of ca. 1.2 Ma (Talbot et al. 2014).

Functionalized degradation products of these BHPs occur in much older, thermally immature methane seep deposits ranging back in time to the Late Cretaceous (Birgel and Peckmann 2008). In these deposits, dihomohopanoic acids (Fig. 4, IV) and 32,35-anhydro-BHPs, together with their 3-methyl counterparts still testify to the lipids of MOB that once thrived in these environments (Burhan et al. 2002; Birgel and Peckmann 2008). In more altered ancient sediments, $^{13}$C-depleted hopane-type hydrocarbons become increasingly important as markers for methanotrophy. Strongly $^{13}$C-depleted hopanoids/hopenoids ($\delta^{13}$C = −50 to −90‰) were e.g., reported from fossil microbial mats preserved in the Pleistocene Be’eri sulfur deposit (Israel, Burhan et al. 2002), from the Eocene Green River oil shale (USA, Collister et al. 1992), and from the Eocene Huadian oil shale (China, Volkman et al. 2015). These compounds have also been reported from several Mesozoic to Cenozoic seep carbonates, such as the Miocene Marmorito and Pietralunga deposits (Italy) and Late Jurassic to Early Cretaceous forearc strata in California (Thiel et al. 1999, 2001b; Birgel et al. 2006a).

Isotopic depletions and $3\beta$-methylolation in MOB-derived geohopanoids may also persist in thermally more mature deposits. An example is the Upper Cretaceous Teepee Buttes deposit which still shows abundant 8,14-secohexahydrobenzohopanes at −110% (Birgel and Peckmann 2008). The oldest setting with a well-constrained and commonly accepted $3\beta$-methylhopane indication for ancient methanotrophy is the 1.640-Gyr-old Barney Creek Formation of the McArthur Group, northern Australia (Brocks et al. 2005). Although no $\delta^{13}$C values could be obtained for these compounds, they co-occur together with predominant aromatic 4-methylsteranes (whereas other steranes are missing), and an origin from MOB rather than eukaryotes appears the most plausible interpretation for these biomarkers.

One pitfall when using regular geohopanoids with $^{13}$C depletions as biomarkers for aerobic methanotrophs is that these compounds may also derive from bacteria associated with AOM, particularly sulfate reducers. Another problem is that methane-derived carbon may cause isotopic depletions not only in the lipids of methanotrophs and/or their symbionts but also of organisms that are further down-stream in the microbial food chain. Likewise, MOB-derived hopanoids with ubiquitous structures (e.g., diplopterol and its derivatives) may mix with the same compounds from other microbial sources, thus successively diluting the isotopic depletion. Last, but not least, recent studies indicate that hopanoids from MOB do not always show a distinct depleted $^{13}$C isotopic signature, specifically when methane carbon is used only for catabolism but not for lipid synthesis (Kool et al. 2014). Care has therefore to be exercised in the interpretation of hopanoids in methane-rich environments.
Steroids – Several findings of lanostane derivatives were reported from the geological record, such as in Cenozoic lacustrine sediments (Peng et al. 1998) and crude oils (Lu et al. 2011) from China, and in Lower Cambrian deposits of the Eastern Siberian platform (Parfenova 2011). However, there are surprisingly few reports where an origin of C-4 methylated steroid hydrocarbons from MOB was plausibly supported by compound specific δ^{13}C data and/or parallel detection of 3β-methylhopanes. Examples are nor-lanostane, lanostane, and methyllanostane with δ^{13}C-values from −92 to −75‰ in the Miocene Pietralunga seep limestone (Peckmann et al. 2004). Likewise, aromatic 4-methyl steranes lacking side-chain alkylation occur along with 3β-methylhopanes in the 1.640-Gyr-old Barney Creek Formation (Brocks et al. 2005). Currently, this latter study reported the oldest commonly accepted occurrence of MOB biomarkers, and of steroids in general (see also ▶ Chap. 15, “History of Life from the Hydrocarbon Fossil Record,” this volume).

It should be noted that biomarkers from aerobic methanotrophs often co-occur with lipids derived from anaerobic methanotrophs (e.g., Thiel et al. 1999; Birgel et al., 2006b). This is, inter alia, due to the fact that authigenic carbonates formed by AOM tend to encase the lipids of the active microbial communities before they can be degraded by heterotrophs. As a result, ancient methane seep deposits often show an excellently preserved biomarker content allowing to reconstruct facets of the methane cycling biota in great detail (see discussion on “Preservation Aspects” in Sect. 4.2). Lipid biomarkers for anaerobic methane-oxidizing communities are outlined in the following chapter.

4 Lipid Biomarkers for the Anaerobic Oxidation of Methane (AOM)

4.1 Biomarkers for Organisms Involved in AOM

Strong variations in the biomarker patterns from anoxic methane-rich settings indicate considerable diversity of the microbial taxa involved in, or associated with, AOM. However, the classical biomarkers most commonly reported from these environments are well constrained and can be narrowed down into a few categories, according to their chemical structures and most likely biological sources (Peckmann and Thiel 2004).

Archaeal biomarkers – The following lipid biomarkers found in methane-rich environments are sourced predominantly by ANME. Selected structures are shown in Fig. 5.

- Tail-to-tail linked (irregular) isoprenoid hydrocarbons, namely, crocetane and 2,6,10,15,19-pentamethylicosane (PMI; Fig. 5, I, II), which may occur either as saturated hydrocarbons or with as much as two (crocetenes) or five double bonds (PMIΔ; e.g., Elvert et al. 1999; Thiel et al. 1999; Fig. 6a). Analysts should note
**Fig. 5** Chemical structures of selected archaeal (I–IV) and bacterial (V–VIII) biomarkers found in AOM environments. I, crocetane (2,6,11,15-tetramethylhexadecane); II, PMI (2,6,10,15,19-pentamethylicosane); III, archaeols (R1 = H, R2 = H, archaeol; R1 = OH, R2 = H, sn-2-hydroxyarchaeol; R1 = H, R2 = OH, sn-3-hydroxyarchaeol; the “X”-bond is present only in macrocyclic archaeols; GDGTs (glycerol dialkyl glycerol tetraethers) with acyclic, monocyclic, or dicyclic isoprenoid chains; V, VI, non-isoprenoid sn-1,2 dialkyl glycerol (examples: 11,12-methylenehexadecyl—/n-tetradecyl-, and anteiso-pentadecyl—/anteiso-pentadecyl moieties); VII, n-tricosanoids (example: n-tricosa-7,14-diene); VIII, terminally branched fatty acids (example: 14-methyltetradecanoic acid = iso-pentadecanoic acid)
**Fig. 6** Total ion current chromatograms (subtracted for background) of hydrocarbons (C_{15}^+) extracted from selected seep deposits of modern to Late Jurassic age. Age and thermal maturity increase from (a) to (d) and illustrate the compositional changes the biomarker distributions experience during burial. Filled circles/numbers indicate \( n \)-alkanes of the respective carbon chain length. Pr = pristane (IV); Cr = crocetane; Ph = phytane (partly coeluting with Cr); 23 = \( n \)-tricosane; PMI = \( 2,6,10,15,19 \)-pentamethyllicosane; Sq = squalane; \( \Delta \) = unsaturated derivatives; \( H_{29} \), \( H_{30} \) = \( 17\alpha(H),21\beta(H) \)-30-norhopane, \( 17\alpha(H),21\beta(H) \)-hopane, respectively; open and filled triangles = 2-methyl- (iso-) alkanes and 3-methyl- (anteiso-) alkanes. IS = internal standard. (Originally published in Peckmann and Thiel (2004), published with kind permission of Elsevier B.V. All rights reserved)
that crocetane coelutes with the leading edge of the phytane peak on conventional GC columns and both compounds may be difficult to separate (Robson and Rowland 1993; Thiel et al. 1999; Greenwood and Summons 2003). Recent studies also showed the presence at seeps of longer tail-to-tail isoprenoids with squalane (C_{30}) and C_{35} carbon skeletons and up to 7 double bonds. The biological function of these hydrocarbons is not known as yet but it has been plausibly suggested that they may serve as an intracellular reversible hydrogen sink (Bertram et al. 2013).

- Glycerol dialkyl ethers with regular head-to-tail linked C_{20} isoprenyl (phytanyl) moieties, namely, archaeol, sn-2-, sn-3-hydroxyarchaeol (e.g., Hinrichs et al. 1999; Pancost et al. 2000, 2001), extended hydroxyarchaeols (i.e., with one regular C_{25} isoprenoid chain) and, occasionally, macrocyclic diphytanyl glycerol diethers (MDGDs) with 0, 1, and 2 five-membered rings (Stadnitskaia et al. 2003). These lipids have glycosidic and phospho- or only phospho-headgroups (Rossel et al. 2011).

- Glycerol dialkyl glycerol tetraethers (GDGTs) carrying head-to-head linked acyclic and cyclic phytane dimers (biphytanes, C_{40}). Individual isoprenyl units may be acyclic or contain up to two C_{5} rings. The biphytanyl chains may contain and 0–6 double bonds (Zhu et al. 2014). The GDGT core lipids carry glycosidic, phospho- and phosphoglycosyl-headgroups (Rossel et al. 2011).

- Phytanol, phytanic acid, α,ω-biphytanediols, and α,ω-diacids are often found in modern AOM settings and can be regarded as early degradation products of archaeols and GDGTs (e.g., Pancost et al. 2000; Birgel et al. 2008b; Liu et al. 2016).

Available data suggest that ANME-1 preferentially produce GDGTs and archaeol, along with PMI (particularly PMI pentaene, PMI:5), squalane, and C_{35} hydrocarbons. ANME-2 and ANME-3 are a source of archaeol, hydroxyarchaeol, crocetane, and PMI derivatives (Blumenberg et al. 2004; Thiel et al. 2007; Rossel et al. 2011; Bertram et al. 2013). However, a problem with the use of these compounds as biomarkers even in modern settings is that they may be produced not only by ANME but also by other archaea, e.g., methanogens that may thrive together with the methanotrophs. For instance, detailed biomarker surveys revealed considerable contributions from archaea other than ANME to the lipid pools at recent methane seeps (Chevalier et al. 2014; Yoshinaga et al. 2015). Again, compound-specific δ^{13}C data are useful to more confidently constrain the contribution of ANME, particularly in more heterogenous samples where relative abundances of individual biomarkers are low. The δ^{13}C values of the archaeal biomarkers listed above typically range between −60‰ and −130‰.

**Bacterial biomarkers** – In AOM environments, δ^{13}C-depleted lipids carrying non-isoprenoid carbon chains always co-occur with the archaeal isoprenoid lipids and are usually regarded as biomarkers for the bacterial partners in AOM consortia, particularly SRB. Some of these structures are shown in Fig. 5, V-VIII. The most abundant compounds are various ester-bound C_{14} to C_{18} fatty acids, namely, saturated and monoenoic (C_{16:1}ω7c, C_{16:1}ω7t, and C_{16:1}ω5c; C_{16:1}ω7c), terminally


branched (particularly iso- and anteiso-C15), and, to a lesser extent, cyclic carbon chains (10,11-cyclopentyl and ω-cyclohexyl). The fatty acids are typically accompanied by non-isoprenoid alcohols, monoalkyl glycerol ethers (MAGE), and 1,2-dialkyl glycerol ethers (DAGE) with corresponding carbon chains (Fig. 5, V, VI; e.g., Elvert et al. 2003; Pancost et al. 2000, 2001). Another group of 13C-depleted straight-chain hydrocarbon biomarkers that are often enhanced in seep environments are the n-C23 compounds n-tricos-10-ene and n-tricosa-7,14-diene (Thiel et al. 2001b; Chevalier et al. 2014; Fig. 5, VII). The biological source of the n-tricosanoids is still unknown but circumstantial evidence suggests that they derive from bacteria associated with AOM, possibly from the uncultured bacterial “Candidate Division JS1” (Chevalier et al. 2014). The structures of selected bacterial biomarkers are shown in Fig. 5, V-VIII.

In addition to these acetate-based bacterial lipids, a number of hopanoids have been reported from AOM environments. These compounds encompass the C30 compounds diplopterol (Fig. 3, I) and diploptene which have been reported along with functionalized pseudohomologues with extended side chains, such as dihomohopanol and dihomohopanoic acid (Fig. 3, IV) that obviously derive from BHPs. As mentioned above, however, these compounds may originate not only from bacteria associated with AOM (i.e., SRB) but also from aerobic methanotrophs, and the exact sources of these more unspecific hopanoids are often difficult to determine (see discussion in Sect. 3.2).

4.2 Tracing AOM in Ancient Environments

**Ancient seep carbonates as a matrix for biomarkers** – AOM is a widespread process in the marine realm and typically occurs in the sediment at the depth of the sulfate–methane transition zone. However, the biomarker traces of this process are difficult to recognize in normal marine sediments, due to dilution with the same compounds derived from water column or sedimentary biota not related to AOM. In methane-rich environments, on the other hand, AOM leads to the formation of calcium carbonate (CaCO3) deposits, i.e., methane-derived carbonates (Fig. 7). These precipitates, termed seep carbonates, or methane-derived carbonates, have frequently been reported from the geological record and often provide an excellent archive of methane-derived biomarkers (e.g., Goedert et al. 2003; Campbell 2006; Peckmann and Thiel 2004; Birgel et al. 2006b).

The classical mineralization process at seeps is driven by an increase in alkalinity due to AOM, and results in the precipitation of CaCO3 as massive reef-like bodies, irregular crusts, or regular concretions (Fig. 7). These “seep carbonates” often carry not only their inherent AOM signature but also capture detritus, aerobic seep fauna (including MOB), as well as organic matter from background sources during their ongoing precipitation.

Initially, most methane-derived carbonates are typically comprised either of microcrystalline calcite (micrite) or fibrous, often botryoidal aragonite (e.g., Teichert et al. 2005). These two phases are immediately related to the microbial activity of
AOM consortia and contain most of the biomarker signal by far (Leefmann et al. 2008). Later processes encompass re-crystallization of aragonite to calcite, or precipitation of sparry calcite cements and, sometimes, siliceous phases that may replace earlier carbonate phases to some degree (Kuechler et al. 2012; Hagemann et al. 2013). Specific carbonate fabrics include, in order of decreasing significance for seep-dominated environments, (i) inverted stromatactoid cavities, (ii) upside-down stromatolites, (iii) globular fabrics, (iv) botryoidal aragonite, (v) micritic nodules, (vi) fractures, (vii) clotted micrites, and (viii) constructive seams representing fossilized biofilms (for details, see Peckmann and Thiel 2004).

Due to the incorporation of oxidized methane carbon, seep carbonates are isotopically light, with $\delta^{13}C_{\text{carbonate}}$ values often dropping below $-30\%$. However, values

Fig. 7 Examples of modern and ancient methane-derived carbonates. Top, outcrop of Late Triassic seep deposits at Graylock Butte, Oregon, U.S.A (Peckmann et al. 2011); bottom left, block of a heavily brecciated Miocene seep carbonate showing multiple generations of (now silicified) aragonite–cements (near Knappton Site, Oregon, U.S.A.); bottom right, massive modern seep carbonate block from Hydrate Ridge (SE-Knoll vent site, Cascadia, off Oregon, U.S.A.). (Image credit: J. Peckmann (a), V.E. Hoffmann (b), V. Liebetrau (c))
**Fig. 8** Total ion current chromatograms (subtracted for background) of carboxylic acids (methyl esters) extracted from selected seep deposits. Age and thermal maturity increase from (a) to (d) and illustrate the compositional changes in the biomarker distributions during burial. Filled circles/numbers indicate \( n \)-alkanoic acids of the respective carbon chain length. Open circles = monoenoic C\(_{16}\) and C\(_{18}\)-acids, respectively; open and filled triangles = \( \omega 2 \) \((i-)\) and \( \omega 3 \) \((ai-)\) methylated alkanoic acids; Ph = phytanic acid (VII); hexagon = \( \omega \)-cyclohexylundecanoic acid (partly coeluting with Ph); BHA \( \alpha \beta \), \( \beta \beta \) = 17\( \alpha \)(H),21\( \beta \)(H)-bis-homohopanoic acid (syn. dihomohopanoic acid, Fig. 4, IV; geological configuration) and 17\( \beta \)(H),21\( \beta \)(H)-bis-homohopanoic acid (ditto, biological
even higher than +5% may occur in some individual carbonate phases, typically from those forming later in the diagenetic sequence (Peckmann and Thiel 2004). Such heavy signatures reflect methane formation rather than oxidation, if carbonate is precipitated from a residual, $^{13}$C-enriched CO$_2$ pool utilized by archaeal methanogenesis (Campbell 2006). It should also be noted that ancient petroleum seeps may likewise be associated with isotopically light carbonates and are sometimes difficult to distinguish from actual methane seep deposits. Recent work suggested the combined, phase-specific distribution of Rare Earth elements, Mo, and U as a means to discern ancient oil seeps from actual methane seeps (Smrzka et al. 2016).

**Preservation aspects** – Like for all other paleoenvironments, limitations on the use of lipid biomarkers from seep deposits arise from early biodegradation, thermal overprint, and introduction of petroleum-like compounds from other rocks via secondary migration. However, methane seep carbonates can be regarded as “biomarker-friendly” environments that often show a remarkable preservation of their indigenous compound inventory. This is due to their rapid authigenic “self-lithification” in microbial carbonate phases which provides an early sealing of organic compounds from microbial turnover (cf. Thiel et al. 1999; Leefmann et al. 2008; Peckmann et al. 2009). Another important factor may be that AOM consumes sulfate (and/or other electron acceptors) which is then no longer available for the re-mineralization of organic matter (Hinrichs et al. 2000). A further beneficial aspect when studying biomarkers in ancient seep deposits is the feasibility to differentiate in-situ biomarkers from allochthonous compounds not only by their structures but also by their δ$^{13}$C values, as outlined above. Last, but not least, seep carbonates are, unlike reef carbonates, commonly embedded in fine-grained, hemipelagic sediments, which may provide an effective sealing against diagenetic fluids (Peckmann and Thiel 2004).

Sooner or later during burial, however, methane-derived biomarkers will inevitably become influenced by thermal overprint and secondary migration which tend to erase and/or dilute the primary signal. Hence, many thermally mature seep limestones in pre-mesozoic rocks failed to provide useful biomarkers. Currently, the oldest robust biomarker evidence for AOM is from the Late Pennsylvanian of Namibia. These deposits revealed hydrocarbon biomarkers that still clearly relate to present-day lipid distributions at seeps (Birgel et al. 2008a). A number of organic geochemical studies on ancient seeps exist that allow to re-construct quite exactly the alterations that the relevant biomarkers undergo during burial (see also Figs. 6 and 8).

**Archaeal biomarkers** – Crocetenes, PMIΔ and higher unsaturated isoprenoids rapidly disappear during diagenesis, possibly because of enhanced microbial turnover, binding to macromolecules or reductive conversion to the saturated

---

**Fig. 8** (continued) configuration), respectively; open squares = α,ω-dicarboxylic acids of the respective carbon chain length; IS = internal standard. (Originally published in Peckmann and Thiel (2004), published with kind permission of Elsevier B.V. All rights reserved)
hydrocarbon counterparts. As a result, the saturated isoprenoids, most prominently crocetane and PMI, typically show enhanced relative concentrations in ancient seep deposits (Fig. 6, compare a vs. b–d). $^{13}$C-depleted crocetane, probably sourced by ANME-2, is a fairly specific biomarker for AOM. However, compared to PMI, crocetane shows a more scattered distribution at seeps, and its absence has been reported in several cases. Even worse, additional sources such as thermal breakdown of higher irregular isoprenoids, carotenoids, or direct synthesis by methanogenic archaea have been suggested for crocetane (Barber et al. 2001; Greenwood and Summons 2003; Orphan et al. 2008; for a detailed discussion, see Schinteie and Brocks 2017), making the compound-specific $\delta^{13}$C information even more inevitable for a sound interpretation.

ANME-2-derived archaeol-type diethers first lose their headgroups and subsequently hydrolyze to phytanol which will further defunctionalize to form the hydrocarbons phytane (2,6,10,14-methylhexadecane) and, to a minor extent, pristane (2,6,10,14-tetramethylpentadecane, C$_{19}$), and even shorter isoprenoids. This conversion has not been fully completed in many Cenozoic deposits, where archaeol and even hydroxyarchaeol have been found still intact (e.g., Peckmann and Thiel 2004; Birgel et al. 2008a; Hagemann et al. 2013). Exceptionally, the rare MDGDs containing 0, 1, or 2 cyclopentane rings have been found at high abundance in Eocene seep carbonates from the Balkanides foreland (De Boever et al. 2009).

GDGTs with 0–2 cyclopentyl rings probably decompose to form $\alpha$,\$\omega$-biphytanediols and/or the respective diacids (e.g., Birgel et al. 2008b). It has been discussed in the literature whether particularly the acids could have a direct biosynthetic origin (Schouten et al. 1998, Birgel et al. 2006a; Smrzka et al. 2017), but the most parsimonious interpretation is to consider them as degradation products of GDGT (Liu et al. 2016). In thermally more mature sediments, these compounds further defunctionalize to form preferentially the corresponding C$_{40}$ and C$_{39}$ head-to-head linked isoprenoid hydrocarbons, and possibly shorter homologues, with the acyclic biphytane derivatives showing a greater diagenetic stability as the cyclic varieties (Peckmann and Thiel 2004; Peckmann et al. 2009). These observations are in good agreement with earlier results from experimental pyrolysis of archaeal biomass (Rowland 1990).

**Bacterial biomarkers** – Bacteria-derived neutral lipids and fatty acids can be expected to rapidly degrade within the uppermost part of unlithified sediments at methane seeps (Teske et al. 2002). However, ancient methane-seep deposits with pronounced carbonate formation apparently sustained the persistence of SRB-derived fatty acids and alcohols, and even intact DAGE within the carbonate lattice (Peckmann and Thiel 2004). Unsaturated carbon chains which are prominent at modern seeps (Elvert et al. 2003; Fig. 6a) are missing in even the most immature rocks, indicating that these lipids have been rapidly reduced and/or degraded upon early diagenesis. $n$-Tricosenes, biomarkers for unknown bacteria associated with AOM (see above), are obviously reduced in part to $n$-tricosane, similar to the unsaturated isoprenoid hydrocarbons discussed above. As a result, the hydrocarbon fractions of many ancient seep deposits show a peak of isotopically light $n$-tricosane sticking out from the adjacent $n$-alkanes, which provides a fairly stable and specific
hydrocarbon fingerprint for the anaerobic cycling of methane carbon (see Fig. 6d; Thiel et al. 2001b).

Fatty acids found in immature Cenozoic seep deposits encompass saturated, $^{13}$C-depleted, even-numbered $n$-fatty acids, iso- and anteiso-branched, and $\omega$-cyclohexylundecanoic acids, with similar carbon skeletons as they are found in modern settings (Peckmann and Thiel 2004; Birgel et al. 2006b; 2008b; Fig. 8b). With increasing thermal overprint, bacterial fatty acids are modified such that $n$-alkanoic acids show a much lower even-over-odd carbon number preference and an increase in saturated homologues (Fig. 8c).

Likewise, the more SRB-specific, terminally branched iso- and anteiso-isomers decrease in abundance and approach more random patterns with carbon chains shorter than in the putative precursor lipids (Fig. 8b, c). Along with these changes, the extent of $\delta^{13}$C depletions in fatty acids typically decreases so that fatty acids in thermally mature, methane-derived rocks older than Jurassic are not likely to carry much information on methane-derived processes any more (Fig. 8d). Obviously, some of these compounds are partly transformed to $i$- and $ai$-alkanes that may still show isotopic depletions when compared to the adjacent $n$-alkanes (Fig. 6d; Peckmann and Thiel 2004; Birgel et al. 2006b).

5 Research Needs

Research over the last two decades has provided an enormous wealth of information about the processes prevailing in modern methane-rich environments, and the major biomarker constraints on seepage activity are well established. Yet, the use of refined techniques, particularly focusing on the study of intact polar lipids and their headgroups continue to improve our understanding of the methane-consuming processes, and reveal an ever more complex picture of the biota involved (e.g., Yoshinaga et al. 2015). Whereas the findings from modern environments are useful for the interpretation of modern and sub-recent (Quaternary) environments, they have a limited outreach for older rocks where only the reduced carbon skeletons remain which tend to be more and more erased by thermal overprint. Here, the smart combination of biomarker, petrographic, isotopic, and inorganic geochemical traits should be further established and improved to reveal better constraints on methane carbon sources, biogeochemical pathways, and the intensity of seepage (e.g., Peckmann et al. 2009; Lin et al. 2018).

Presently, the oldest biomarker record for AOM is from a 300 Ma old Late Pennsylvanian seep. It was convincingly shown that AOM involved the same consortia of ANME and SRB as in modern environments (Birgel et al. 2008a). Apart from this, the Paleozoic record of methane-derived biomarkers remains scarce and awaits to be enhanced (and pushed back) by further studies. In even older, i.e., Precambrian settings, the 1.64-Ga-old Barney Creek Formation sticks out as a notable exception, because it provides biomarkers that enable a unique look to the methane-derived biogeochemical processes in the Proterozoic (Brocks et al. 2005). However, biomarker evidence obtained from even earlier periods of Earth’s history
turned out to be elusive due to postdepositional processes, and compromised by contamination (French et al. 2015). As the contamination issues are particularly virulent for the bitumen fractions of ancient rocks, the study of kerogen-bound biomarkers could probably provide an alternative avenue for biomarker research on methane carbon cycling in very ancient rocks.

References


Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) (2013) Climate change 2013: the physical science basis. Contribution of working group I to the fifth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK/New York


Rushdi AI, Simonett BRT (2001) Lipid formation by aqueous Fischer-Tropsch type synthesis over a temperature range of 100 to 400°C. Orig Life Evol Biosph 31:103–118


Abstract

Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) in the atmosphere include saturated, unsaturated, aromatic, and a variety of other substituted hydrocarbons. They are emitted from anthropogenic and natural sources mainly as gaseous, often nonpolar, compounds of high vapor pressure. Photochemical oxidation reactions involving hydroxyl (OH) and nitrate (NO₃) radicals, but also ozone and in some cases chlorine atoms, transform these compounds into mainly polar, water-soluble compounds of low vapor pressure. These products are finally removed from the atmosphere by dry or wet deposition. At the very end of the reaction chains, the final products are water vapor and carbon dioxide. While most of the VOCs themselves, especially at the relatively low concentrations, are harmless, the products formed during the oxidation of VOCs in the atmosphere such as photooxidants like ozone or peroxyacetyl nitrate (PAN) have a significant impact on air quality and can be harmful to human health. VOCs also are a source of secondary organic aerosol (SOA), which influences the solar radiation budget.
and acts as cloud condensation nuclei. Through all these complex reactions, VOCs play an important role in atmospheric chemistry, air quality, and climate.

1 Sources of VOCs in the Atmosphere

Every day, large quantities of VOCs are emitted into the atmosphere from both human activities and natural sources. The term VOC comprises a sheer limitless number of compounds. The major classes of compounds from anthropogenic sources are saturated hydrocarbons (alkanes), unsaturated hydrocarbons (alkenes and aromatic compounds such as benzene, toluene, and xylenes), and oxygenated compounds such as aldehydes, ketones, alcohols, esters, etc. Biogenic sources, mainly terrestrial vegetation, emit unsaturated compounds, preferably isoprene, but also monoterpenes and sesquiterpenes. Almost in the same amount, also aldehydes, alcohols, and esters are emitted from vegetation. The spectrum of VOC ranges from simple hydrocarbons with 2 carbon atoms (ethane, ethene, ethyne) to complex compounds with 15 carbon atoms or more. Table 1 gives an overview of sources and amounts of emitted VOC.

Table 1 Annual global emission rates of VOC from different anthropogenic and natural sources. All data are given in Tg C per year

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Emission rates</th>
<th>Uncertainty range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fossil fuel use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkanes</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>15–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkenes</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic compounds</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biomass burning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkanes</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkenes</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic compounds</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terrestrial plants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoprene</td>
<td>590</td>
<td>200–1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum of monoterpenes</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>50–400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum of other VOC</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>150–2400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oceans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkanes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkenes</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum of anthropogenic emissions</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum of biogenic emissions (incl. oceans)</td>
<td>1272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The anthropogenic contribution to VOC emissions in the atmosphere is dominated by the production, handling, and use of fossil fuels (coal, oil, gas). Additionally, about 90% of all biomass burning events are attributed to human activities. Taken together, VOC emissions from both source types are estimated to be in the range of 100–150 Tg C per year (Müller 1992). On a global scale, terrestrial vegetation is the most important source of VOC with an estimated total emission of 1200–1300 Tg C per year (Guenther 2002). The ocean is a relatively small source of VOC with about 5 Tg C per year. The relative importance of VOC emissions and their immediate impact are determined by the geographic location and season. Anthropogenic emissions dominate in the northern hemisphere, especially in mid-latitudes with a maximum in northern hemispheric winter. Biogenic emissions dominate in the tropics with only small seasonal effects. Biomass burning emissions in South America, Africa, and Asia show a strong correlation with dry and rainy seasons and move from north to south over the continents in the course of the year.

Hydrocarbons or VOCs are present in the global atmosphere at mixing ratios of some 10 ppbv (parts per billion, $10^{-9}$, or nmol/mol) down to some ppt (parts per trillion, $10^{-12}$, or pmol/mol). Despite these low concentrations, VOCs have profound effects in the atmosphere. They are the “fuel” which keeps atmospheric photochemistry running. Therefore, their sources, sinks, residence times, and (photo)chemical reaction pathways were subject of research in the last three decades and still are an important objective of current research. They influence photochemistry on a local, regional, and even global scale. Some compounds have a potential impact on climate, both due to their properties as greenhouse gases and also through their ability to form SOA particles on oxidation.

Methane is the simplest and most abundant hydrocarbon in the atmosphere. Its mean tropospheric mixing ratio is 1.9 ppm (parts per million, $10^{-6}$). In atmospheric chemistry typically mixing ratios are used. They are mostly related to a volume, i.e., a volume of trace gases compared to a volume of air. This is sometimes written as ppmV, but in most cases, the V (for volume) is omitted. The mixing ratio can also be related to the number of carbon atoms (ppmC). This is the volume mixing ratio multiplied with the number of carbon atoms of the particular compound.

In contrast to methane, all other organic compounds are referred to as “non-methane hydrocarbons” (NMHC). Some additional abbreviations for different subgroups can be found in the literature. These are, for example, ORVOCs (other reactive VOCs) or OVOCs (oxygenated VOCs). Sometimes individual groups of compounds are mentioned and studied separately, e.g., isoprene or monoterpenes, if biogenic emissions are analyzed. The abbreviation VOCs usually covers all organic compounds, except methane.

The mixing ratios of volatile organic compounds are significantly lower than the mixing ratios of methane. However, the reactivity of most of these compounds is orders of magnitude higher than the reactivity of methane. Thus, they play an important role in atmospheric chemistry. In some situations the VOC can have a much stronger influence than methane despite its significantly higher mixing ratio, e.g., near biomass burning or above tropical rainforests.
2 Sinks of VOCs in the Atmosphere

The most important sink for VOCs in the atmosphere is chemical oxidation in the gas phase by the hydroxyl radical. Some compounds can absorb sunlight and thereby photolyze to smaller fragments. Some compounds can be removed from the atmosphere by dry or wet deposition to surfaces such as soil, vegetation, or aerosol particles. The chemical and photochemical reactions are influenced and controlled by three important factors:

- Energy (in the form of solar UV radiation, mainly through photolysis and radical formation)
- “Fuel” (carbon monoxide and organic compounds)
- Catalyst (nitrogen oxides)

The chemical decomposition of VOCs has a significant influence on atmospheric chemistry:

- In the presence of nitrogen oxides, oxidation leads to the formation of so-called photooxidants on both regional and global scales. The most important representative of photooxidants is ozone.
- VOCs are an important source for carbon monoxide, aldehydes, and ketones in the atmosphere.
- VOCs are furthermore a source for organic nitrogen oxides which are a temporary reservoir for nitrogen oxides. Thus, they enable a wide and under some circumstances global distribution of nitrogen oxides.

The degradation of VOCs in the atmosphere is initiated mainly by the reaction with the OH radical, which itself is formed by the reaction of an O(1D) atom with a water molecule following the photolysis of an ozone molecule at wavelengths of $\lambda < 340$ nm:

$$\text{O}_3 + h\nu \rightarrow \text{O}_2 + \cdot \text{O}(1\text{D})$$
$$\cdot \text{O}(1\text{D}) + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow 2\cdot \text{OH}$$

The OH radical has an average global abundance of about $10^6$ radicals/cm$^3$. Despite this low concentration, OH is the most important cleansing agent in the troposphere. In addition to OH, also ozone and the nitrate radical (NO$_3$) contribute to the degradation of VOCs, mainly unsaturated compounds. The nitrate radical, NO$_3$, is formed by the reaction

$$\text{NO}_2^* + \text{O}_3 \rightarrow \text{NO}_3^* + \text{O}_3$$

and is only present in the nighttime atmosphere due to its fast removal by photolysis during daytime. In addition, NO$_3$ also reacts with NO$_2$, forming dinitrogen pentoxide in a reversible equilibrium reaction:
\[
\text{NO}_3^+ + \text{NO}_2^+ + \text{M} \leftrightarrow \text{N}_2\text{O}_5 + \text{M}
\]

Therefore, the mixing ratios of \(\text{NO}_3\) at night are low, typically between a few ppt and a few 100 ppt. In contrast to \(\text{OH}\) and \(\text{NO}_3\) radicals, ozone is ubiquitous in the troposphere at mixing ratios of some 10 ppb in clean environments and peak values of >100 ppb during photochemical smog episodes. Under specific circumstances such as in the marine boundary layer, also the reaction with chlorine atoms may play a role in the degradation of VOCs. However, if chlorine atoms are available, their concentrations are very low, typically a few 1000 atoms per cm\(^3\). Therefore, regarding atmospheric chemistry in the troposphere on a global scale, chlorine atoms are of minor importance and usually not considered in global atmospheric chemistry models. The loss rate of any VOC is determined by the concentrations of the VOCs and the corresponding oxidants and can be calculated by

\[
\frac{d[\text{VOC}]}{dt} = -k_{\text{Oxidant}}[\text{Oxidant}][\text{VOC}]
\]

where \([X]\) is the concentration of the oxidant and the compound of interest and \(k\) the rate coefficient (i.e., the velocity) of the corresponding reaction.

The atmospheric residence times of VOCs are determined by the concentration of the oxidant and the corresponding rate coefficient:

\[
\tau_{\text{VOC}} = \frac{1}{k_{\text{Oxidant}} \cdot [\text{Oxidant}]}
\]

The lifetime of alkanes reacting only with \(\text{OH}\) is:

\[
\tau_{\text{alkane}} = \frac{1}{k_{\text{OH}} \cdot [\text{OH}]}
\]

The lifetime of alkenes reacting with \(\text{OH}\) and \(\text{O}_3\) is:

\[
\tau_{\text{alkane}} = \frac{1}{k_{\text{OH}} \cdot [\text{OH}] + k_{\text{O}_3} \cdot [\text{O}_3]}
\]

In case other reactants are involved such as \(\text{NO}_3\) or \(\text{Cl}\), the corresponding rate coefficients and concentrations have to be added accordingly. Average lifetimes of VOCs in the atmosphere range from about 8 years for methane to a few minutes for some sesquiterpenes. Table 2 gives an overview of the average atmospheric lifetimes of some compound groups and a number of selected VOCs.
A schematic of the oxidation of atmospheric VOCs is shown in Fig. 1. For further details see Atkinson and Arey (2003). In the following the atmospheric degradation of different VOC groups is discussed in more detail.

2.1 Degradation of Atmospheric Alkanes

The reaction of saturated hydrocarbons with OH radicals proceeds by the abstraction of an H-atom and the formation of a water molecule and an alkyl radical. The typical reaction pathway is shown for methane as an example:

\[ \cdot \text{OH} + \text{CH}_4 \rightarrow \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \]

The resulting alkyl radical, a methyl radical in this case, reacts very fast in a three-body reaction with O\(_2\) to form a methyl peroxy radical (M denotes any other molecule, because of their abundance typically NO\(_2\) or O\(_2\) molecules):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Average lifetime</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alkanes</td>
<td>Months – days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethane</td>
<td>2 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propane</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Pentane</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkenes</td>
<td>Days – hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethene</td>
<td>1.5 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propene</td>
<td>11 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-Butene</td>
<td>10 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclic compounds</td>
<td>Days – hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclopentane</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylcyclohexane</td>
<td>2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclohexane</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aromatic compounds</td>
<td>Weeks – hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzene</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toluene</td>
<td>2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,3,5-Trimethylbenzene</td>
<td>2.5 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biogenic compounds</td>
<td>Hours – minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoprene</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Pinene</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limonene</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


A schematic of the oxidation of atmospheric VOCs is shown in Fig. 1. For further details see Atkinson and Arey (2003). In the following the atmospheric degradation of different VOC groups is discussed in more detail.
In the presence of NO (>10 ppt), oxygen is abstracted to form a methoxy radical:

\[ \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{O}_2 + \text{M} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{O}_2^* + \text{M} \]

The \( \text{NO}_2 \) molecule formed in this reaction is photolyzed, leading to a ground state oxygen atom, which reacts almost immediately with an oxygen molecule to form ozone:

\[ \text{NO}_2^* + h\nu \rightarrow \text{NO}^* + ^*\text{O}(3\text{P}) \]
\[ ^*\text{O}(3\text{P}) + \text{O}_2 + \text{M} \rightarrow \text{O}_3 + \text{M} \]

In this way, the oxidation of VOCs in the presence of NO is the main process responsible for the production of ozone in the troposphere. Especially during smog events in summer, urban air masses contain high concentrations of both VOC and NO. Intensive photochemistry during the transport of these air masses leads to the extremely high ozone levels which are often observed in rural areas downwind from urban sources. The methoxy radical reacts with \( \text{O}_2 \) to form formaldehyde as the first stable product from this reaction chain:

\[ \text{CH}_3\text{O}^* + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{O} + \text{HO}_2^* \]
In very clean environments, the methoxy radical can also react with other peroxy radicals, (i.e., HO₂ or organic peroxy radicals). Reaction with HO₂ results in the formation of more stable methyl hydroperoxides:

\[ \text{CH}_3\text{O}^* + \text{HO}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{OOH} + \text{O}_2 \]

In the same way, higher molecular weight alkanes are attacked by OH radicals via hydrogen abstraction, as illustrated in the following using R as a symbol for an organic rest such as CH₃–CH₂– in case of ethane, for instance:

\[ \text{RH} + \cdot \text{OH} \rightarrow \cdot \text{R} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \]

For longer-chained alkanes with different types of hydrogen-carbon bonds, reaction rates for the H-abstraction are decreasing with the number of hydrogen atoms attached to the same carbon atom. Therefore, the abstraction is favored as follows: –CH– > –CH₂– > –CH₃. The resulting alkyl radical reacts fast with O₂ to form an alkyl peroxy radical:

\[ \cdot \text{R} + \text{O}_2 + \text{M} \rightarrow \text{RO}_2^* + \text{M} \]

In the presence of NO (>10–30 ppt), oxygen is abstracted to form an alkoxy radical:

\[ \text{RO}_2^* + \text{NO}^* + \text{M} \rightarrow \text{RO}^* + \text{NO}_2^* \]

Again, NO₂ is produced, leading to tropospheric ozone formation, whereas the alkoxy radical, depending on the molecule, can thermally decompose, isomerize, or react with molecular oxygen. Breaking of the carbon chain leads to the formation of a stable aldehyde and a smaller peroxy radical, which again can react as described above. Isomerization occurs by internal hydrogen abstraction and eventually leads to a hydroxycarbonyl molecule. The reaction with O₂ leads to the formation of a stable ketone via the abstraction of a hydrogen atom, which is attached to the same carbon atom as the oxygen radical. Furthermore, alkyl peroxy radicals can also attach to an NO or an NO₂ molecule. In the case of NO, this leads to the formation of relatively stable organic nitrates, whereas with NO₂ peroxyxinitrates are produced:

\[ \text{RO}_2^* + \text{NO}^* + \text{M} \rightarrow \text{RONO}_2 + \text{M} \]
\[ \text{RO}_2^* + \text{NO}_2^* + \text{M} \rightarrow \text{RO}_2\text{NO}_2 + \text{M} \]

The yields of the organic nitrates increase with the chain lengths of the alkanes. Peroxyacetyl nitrate or PAN (CH₃CO(O₂)NO₂) is the most important peroxyxinitrate. Since this compound is not directly emitted by human activities, it is an excellent measure for photochemical processing of an air mass and an important component of photochemical smog. PAN and organic nitrates are important in relation to long-range transport in the atmosphere, because they act as reservoirs for reactive nitrogen as they are fairly stable at low temperatures. In very clean environments, the peroxy
radicals can also react with other peroxy radicals (i.e., HO₂ or organic peroxy radicals). Reaction with HO₂ results in the formation of more stable organic peroxides:

\[ \text{RO}_2^* + \text{HO}_2^* \rightarrow \text{ROOH} \]

The combination with another peroxy radical is either a sink for the radicals and produces alcohols, ketones, and organic acids or leads to alkoxy radicals, which react as described above:

\[ \text{RO}_2^* + \text{RO}_2^* \rightarrow \text{RO}^* + \text{RO}^* + \text{O}_2 \]

### 2.2 Degradation of Atmospheric Alkenes

In the case of alkenes, OH radicals preferably react by addition to the C=C double bond as illustrated for ethene:

\[ \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH}_2 + \text{OH} \rightarrow \text{HO} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2 \]

This hydroxyalkyl radical reacts with an oxygen molecule to form a hydroxyalkyl peroxy radical:

\[ \text{HO} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2^* + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{HO} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2\text{O}_2^* \]

which is converted to a hydroxyalkoxy radical following the reaction with NO:

\[ \text{HO} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2\text{O}_2^* + \text{NO}^* \rightarrow \text{HO} - \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2\text{O}^* + \text{NO}_2^* \]

The hydroxyalkoxy radical can then either react with O₂ via H-abstraction to form a glycolaldehyde or by cleavage to form an aldehyde and a hydroxyalkyl radical, which can react again as described above. Furthermore, larger-chained molecules have the possibility to undergo isomerization. The second major pathway for the degradation of alkenes is their reaction by addition of an ozone molecule (O₃) to the C=C double bond leading to an instable so-called ozonide, which then decomposes to a carbonyl compound and a Criegee intermediate, as shown for ethene:

\[ \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH}_2 + \text{O}_3 \rightarrow \text{HCHO} + [\text{H}_2\text{COO}]^* \]

Criegee intermediates can either stabilize by collision with other molecules or decompose further. After stabilization, a possible pathway leads via reaction with water vapor to the formation of organic acids. The reaction of alkenes with the nitrate radical also proceeds through the addition of the radical to the double bond. This reaction leads to formation of carbonyls and nitro-oxy carbonyls. These compounds
react further to finally form intermediate and stable products, which then are oxidized as described above. For further details see Calvert et al. (2000).

2.3 Degradation of Atmospheric Aromatic VOCs

The degradation of aromatic VOCs proceeds by two different pathways, the abstraction of a hydrogen atom from one of the alkyl substitute groups or by OH-radical addition to the aromatic ring. In the first case, the stable product is an aromatic aldehyde (e.g., toluene leading to benzaldehyde). However, the OH addition is the predominant pathway for the degradation of aromatic VOCs. Following the addition of an OH radical to the aromatic ring, molecular oxygen is added to build a cyclic hydroxy peroxy radical. In the following the ring structure is opened, and epoxy compounds, saturated and unsaturated dicarbonyl radicals, and finally methylglyoxal are formed. In the last years, a large number of laboratory studies improved our knowledge of the atmospheric oxidation of aromatic hydrocarbons. However, for most of these compounds, the detailed reaction pathways in the atmosphere, especially the process of ring opening, as well as the formation of intermediate and final reaction products are still speculative. Also, their potential to form secondary organic aerosols is far from being understood and an important objective of current research.

2.4 Degradation of Atmospheric OVOCs

OVOCs are on the one hand directly emitted by anthropogenic or biogenic sources. For example, they account for the largest part of organic compounds emitted from biomass burning. On the other hand, they are also formed during the oxidation of VOCs. Again, the predominant reaction is the abstraction of a hydrogen atom from the carbon chain by an OH radical. In the case C=C double bonds are present, the addition of O₃ is also a possible initial step. The resulting peroxy radicals then react as described above. OVOCs that have UV-absorbing groups (e.g., aldehydes, ketones, organic peroxides, and organic nitrates) can also be photodissociated. Whereas formaldehyde is degraded primarily by photolysis, higher aldehydes react mainly with OH radicals. As shown for formaldehyde, products of the photolysis provide an additional source of HO₂, which can then be a source for OH radicals:

\[
\begin{align*}
HCHO + \text{hv} & \rightarrow CO + H_2 \\
HCHO + \text{hv} & \rightarrow HCO^* + H \\
HCO^* + O_2 & \rightarrow HO_2^* + CO \\
H^* + O_2 + M & \rightarrow HO_2^* + M
\end{align*}
\]

The initial steps of the aldehyde degradation by OH radicals are shown for the example of acetaldehyde:
The produced peroxy radical is a precursor for the PAN formation, if enough NO₂ is available (see above). At high NO levels, however, the peroxy radical of a Cₙ-aldehyde reacts dominantly with NO, leading to a Cₙ₋₁-aldehyde and CO₂. For the OH-radical-initiated oxidation of ketones, the reaction proceeds by H-atom abstraction and subsequent formation of alkoxy radicals. Also the oxidation of alcohols in the atmosphere is mainly initiated by the reaction with OH radicals. The H-atom is abstracted from the C-H bond of the CHOH or CH₂OH group. The following reaction of O₂ with the hydroxyl radical leads to the formation of a ketone for secondary alcohols or of an aldehyde for primary alcohols. Furthermore, OH can abstract H-atoms from other C-H bonds, which leads to reactions analogous to those for alkanes.

3 Research Needs

VOCs’ mixing ratios are measured by a number of continuous global monitoring sites within the Global Atmosphere Watch (GAW) program of the World Meteorological Organization (WMO); the Atmospheric Baseline Observatories of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration’s (NOAA) Earth System Research Laboratory (ESRL) in Boulder, Colorado, USA; and the Network for the Detection of Atmospheric Composition Change (NDACC). Between the 1980s and early 2000s, a statistically significant downward trend of the mixing ratios of many anthropogenic VOCs in the background atmosphere was observed. This was attributed to improved emission controls and stricter emission limits. However, in the last years, mixing ratios of some compounds are increasing again for reasons that can only be speculated about. This effect is especially reported for ethane and propane, the main sources of which are oil and natural gas production and handling, fossil fuel use, and biomass burning.

Almost all human activities (even breathing) lead to the emission of organic compounds into the atmosphere. Additionally, the terrestrial vegetation releases huge amounts of organic compounds into the air. If climate changes, as it is predicted to do, temperatures will increase, and convection systems and vegetation patterns will alter significantly and with it most likely the distribution and the composition of organic compounds in the atmosphere. At the same time, the increasing population with a steady growth of urban areas and an increasing number of megacities demand a basic necessity to assess and control air quality in order to maintain human health. In addition, in recent years the increasing demand for energy has led to rising emissions of some VOCs (Helmig et al., 2016). All this requires a still better understanding of the sources, sinks, and the chemistry of organic compounds in order to improve models for the prediction of future global change and develop appropriate abatement strategies. This calls unconditionally for a continuation of the monitoring programs, an identification of yet unknown and obviously missing
compounds, an improvement of emission inventories, and a further investigation of
the atmospheric chemistry of VOCs.

References

103:4605–4438
Press, New York
Guenther A (2002) The contribution of reactive carbon emissions from vegetation to the carbon
oil and natural gas production. Nat Geosci 9:490. https://doi.org/10.1038/ngeo2721
Müller JF (1992) Geographical distribution and seasonal variation of surface emissions
and deposition velocities of atmospheric trace gases. J Geophys Res, Bd. 97(D4):S. 3787–3804
Sinderlarova K et al (2014) Global data set of biogenic VOC emissions calculated by the MEGAN
model over the last 30 years. Atmos Chem Phys 14:9317–9341

Further Reading

Finlayson-Pitts BJ, Pitts JN (2000) Chemistry of the upper and lower atmosphere. Academic Press,
San Diego
Oxford
Abstract

Organic matter appears in all compartments of the hydrosphere of both natural and more and more anthropogenic origin. Aquatic organic matter exhibits a high structural diversity and corresponding physicochemical properties. Marine and terrestrial surface water bodies including their corresponding sediments as well as groundwater are affected by natural compounds of autochthonous origin from aquatic species, in particular from phyto- and zooplankton, and allochthonous material from terrestrial biota. Anthropogenic pollutants are released to aquatic ecosystems mainly as the
result of municipal, industrial, and agricultural emissions as well as shipping activities. Dominant factors controlling the fate and distribution of organic compounds in the hydrosphere are partition processes between water phase and particulate matter separating more hydrophilic from more lipophilic substances. With respect to hydrocarbon chemistry, an enhanced geoaccumulation of non-functionalized aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons in the benthic systems has to be stated.

1 Introduction

Organic matter plays an important role in aquatic ecosystems comprising surface water systems as well as groundwater reservoirs. The high diversity of organic compounds with respect to their structure and the related physicochemical properties causes a widespread and highly diverse occurrence of a multitude of organic compounds in aquatic systems. A clearly arranged and systematic description of the occurrence of organic substances in the hydrosphere is impeded by the variety of different aspects provoking the transport, transfer, and transformation of organic matter. Multiple parameters affect the singular fate of each individual organic compound in each individual aquatic compartment comprising (i) the superimposition of vertical and horizontal fluxes within most aqueous systems, (ii) different oxygen availability under anaerobic and aerobic ambiences, (iii) the different conditions in marine and terrestrial aquatic systems, (iv) transfer processes between the more lipophilic particulate matter and the polar water phase depending on the individual chemical nature of the substances, (v) the molecular size of contaminants, (vi) their different emission sources (anthropogenic vs. natural as well as autochthonous vs. allochthonous), and (vii) the huge variety of abiotic and biotic transformation in the different compartments of the hydrosphere effect a singular fate of each individual organic compound in each individual aquatic compartment.

However, this chapter represents the attempt to give a brief overview on principals regarding the occurrence and the molecular characterization of organic matter in the aquatic environment of both natural and anthropogenic origin. Microbially assisted or initiated transformation processes, affecting dominantly the molecular composition and therefore the compound spectra in the hydrosphere, are subject of many following, very detailed chapters, and, therefore, these aspects have been neglected here.

2 Terrestrial Surface Water Systems

2.1 Transfer and Transport Processes Affecting the Residence of Organic Matter in Rivers and Lakes

The most important process affecting the fate of organic compounds in the aquatic environment are the principal partition processes between the polar water phase and the more lipophilic particulate matter. These processes, dominantly adsorption and desorption, depend mainly on the polarity of the compounds.
as the result of their chemical structure and the resulting physicochemical properties (see Chap. 1, “Hydrocarbons and Lipids: An Introduction to Structure, Physicochemical Properties, and Natural Occurrence”), Wilkes et al., and, consequently, most of the organic substances accumulate either in the water phase or in the particulate matter. A quantitative estimation of the environmental behavior of organic compounds is given by the K_{OW}-values describing the partition behavior under steady-state conditions between water and 1-octanol as representative for the lipophilicity of particulate matter. This partition determines the principal transport processes and, consequently, the distribution of the organic contaminants.

The separation of dissolved organic matter (DOM) from particulate organic matter (POM) is defined operationally by a filtration pore size of 0.45 μm. Partially, the dissolved fraction is subdivided by introduction of a third phase (see Table 1), the so-called colloidal organic matter (COM), which is also analytically defined, e.g., with an upper particle size of 0.45 mm and a lowest compound mass of 1 kDa (Guo et al. 2003; Kerner et al. 2003). Anymore, a further sub-compartment, the so-called biofilms, consisting dominantly of microbes and extracellular organic matter has been taken into account for interpreting the environmental behavior of organic substances (Headley et al. 1998).

In lakes transport processes are not as complex as in riverine systems. The distribution of dissolved organic compounds is controlled by diffusive processes superimposed by an inlet and outlet flow. Particle-associated transport is dominated by aggregation and horizontal sedimentation (e.g., Berdie et al. 1995). On the contrary river systems are characterized by a much higher dynamic of the flow regime affecting also the mobility and appearance of organic compounds. The partially very high vertical water flow determines the transport of dissolved organic matter as well as the distribution of particle-associated organic substances. Their vertical transport in rivers is linked with the transportation of the suspended particulate matter (SPM), where the corresponding organic load is referred to particulate organic carbon (POC). Additionally, saltation and reptation of heavier particles near the ground level have to be considered for matter transport in flow direction of riverine systems.

Since the polarity of non-functionalized hydrocarbons is generally low, these compounds appear dominantly particle-associated, and their horizontal and vertical transport is linked with the mobility of particulate matter. On the contrary, highly functionalized compounds exhibit enhanced dipole moments inducing an elevated water solubility and, consequently, an environmental behavior closely related to the water transport. They contribute to the dissolved organic carbon (DOC) or dissolved

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1</th>
<th>Size distribution of organic carbon and nitrogen in the Chena River water. (Data from Guo et al. 2003)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Organic carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dissolved</strong></td>
<td>28% (DOC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Colloidal</strong></td>
<td>66% (COC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Particulate</strong></td>
<td>6% (POC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
organic matter (DOM). However, the partition between solid and aqueous phases is not strict but a dynamic exchange process as described in many studies, e.g., for amino acids or carbohydrates (Hedges et al. 1994).

Interestingly, this partition causes also a further important environmental aspect regarding the fate of organic substances. The water phase including the suspended particulate matter represents an aerobic environment, whereas the sedimentary matter is dominantly more anaerobic. Hence, it results in quite different transformation or degradation pathways in the distinct compartments for most of the organic compounds as the result of dissimilar microbial communities.

Noteworthy, a comprehensive review on the environmental behavior of anthropogenic contaminants in the sedimentary matter of freshwater systems has been published recently (Warren et al. 2003).

### 2.2 Natural Organic Substances

Natural organic matter (NOM) in surface water is composed of autochthonous material as the result of biological activity within the aquatic system (e.g., fresh water algae lipids) and of allochthonous substances derived from the surrounding biosphere (e.g., higher plant-derived lipids). For many compounds a clear attribution to these two pools of riverine and lacustrine organic matter can be effected, although also various substances are emitted to surface water systems by both aquatic and terrestrial biota. For instance, Countway et al. (2007) used structural differences of certain sterols to differentiate plankton-derived autochthonous contributions (represented, e.g., by cholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol, cholest-5-en-3β-ol (cholesterol), 24-methylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol) from allochthonous, higher land plant-derived material (indicated by 24-methylcholest-5-en-3β-ol (camosterol), 24-ethylcholesta-5,22-dien-3β-ol (stigmasterol), and 24-ethylcholest-5-en-3β-ol; see Fig. 1).

An important fraction of natural organic matter is the so-called refractory material which occurs with average organic carbon content of 0.5–100 mg C/L (Frimmel 1998). In contrast to the labile or metabolizable fraction that is subject to a more or less rapid transformation and degradation, the refractory matter exhibits a prolonged residence time in lakes and rivers and, consequently, contributes in particular to the terrigenous matter entering the marine environment (see Sect. 1.3). Based on chemical analysis, the relative global proportion of the labile fraction in the major river systems has been estimated to be around 35% (Ittekkot 1988).

As mentioned before, more functionalized substances appear dominantly in the polar water phase. Non-altered biochemicals exhibit widely functional groups and, consequently, elevated water solubility. Hence, with respect to NOM, the water phase exhibits huge amounts of biological molecules derived from aquatic organisms or their excretion as well as intact biomolecules from terrestrial species. Examples include macromolecular compounds like polysaccharides or fulvic acids (Repeta et al. 2002) as well as low molecular weight substances as short-chain carboxylic acids or amino acids. In contrast the organic matter accumulating in the
sedimentary system constitutes by more lipophilic biochemicals (e.g., sterols, fatty acids and alcohols, long-chain $n$-aldehydes, functionalized terpenoids, cyclic di- and triterpenes, phytol, squalene) superimposed by huge amounts of defunctionalized degradation products of biogenic precursors. Well-known examples of the latter group of compounds are loliiolide and actinidiolide, ionenes, different isomers of phytanes and the saturated phytane, steranes and unsaturated derivatives, pheophorbide and related porphyrins, as well as 4,8,12,16-tetramethylheptadecan-4-olide. They correspond to the biogenic precursors chlorophyll, carotenoids, sterols, and tocopherols (see also Cranwell 1981; Cranwell et al. 1987; Prahl and Pinto 1987; Ittekkot 1988; Riley et al. 1991; Hedges et al. 1994; Schwarzbauer et al. 2000).

Similar to the water phase, the major proportion of the sedimentary natural organic matter in rivers belongs to the humic substances that are proposed to be generated by abiotically mediated “geopolymerization” reactions. The resulting structurally complex macromolecules represent an organic pool that is not only objective of extensive structure analysis or structural discussions (e.g., Schulten and Leinweber 1996; Kumke et al. 1999; Esteves and Duarte 2000; Sutton and Sposito 2005) but appears to be also an important reagent for the interaction with naturally occurring or anthropogenic low molecular weight substances and metal ions (e.g., Klaus et al. 1998; Zwiener et al. 1999; Northcott and Jones 2000).

An overall calculation of the individual groups of main DOC constituents has been performed, e.g., for the White Clay Creek (Pennsylvania, USA). The composition was pointed out to be 75% humic substances, 13% polysaccharides, 2% amino
acids (dominantly as peptides), and 18% compounds with a molecular weight less than 100 KDa (Volk et al. 1997).

However, the composition of biogenic organic material in surface water systems including its sediments is subject to temporal variations and dynamic partition effects. For example, Hedges et al. (1994) demonstrated for the Amazon River the usefulness of studying the partition of amino acids and carbohydrates between the liquid and the solid phase in order to differentiate biogenic sources and to determine degradation processes. Studies on organic matter transported by suspended particulate material (SPM) of the Godavari River or the York River, VA, exemplified the annual fluctuations as well as varying POM sources (Gupta et al. 1997; Countway et al. 2007).

As additional remark, it has to be stated that the terms describing natural organic matter are not clearly defined. A recent review summarized the aspects on the nomenclature of “natural organic matter” (Filella 2008).

2.3 Anthropogenic Organic Contamination

Major parts of surface water systems are influenced by human activities resulting inter alia in contamination by organic pollutants. The spectrum of contaminants reflects the broad usage and application of synthetic chemicals in the anthroposphere and, therefore, varies depending on numerous aspects related to the catchment area like population density, level of industrialization, extension of agriculture, and effectiveness of waste water treatment.

Most important emission sources in highly industrialized and densely populated regions are municipal waste water and industrial effluents. As a result of insufficient waste water treatment, pharmaceuticals and bactericides (e.g., carbamazepine, clofibric acid, triclosan); personal care products comprising fragrances, repellents, and UV-protectors (N,N-diethyltoluamide DEET, galaxolide or tonalide, 4-methoxycinnamic acid 2-ethylhexyl ester); biocides (e.g., triclosan, thabendazole, cyproconazole); plasticizers and further technical additives (e.g., phthalates, N-butylbenzenesulfonamide NBBS, 2,4,4-trimethylpentane-1,3-diolidiso-butylate TPDB, hexa(methoxymethyl)melamine HMMS), flame retardants (e.g., tris(chloroethyl)phosphate TCEP); or detergent-related products (nonylphenolpolyethoxylates, ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid EDTA) have been detected in river and lake water (see Fig. 2) and partially also in the corresponding sediments (Balmer et al. 2005; Schwarzbauer and Heim 2005; Dsikowitzky et al. 2004; Dsikowitzky and Schwarzbauer 2015; Wluka et al. 2016). The knowledge on indicative substances reflecting the contamination by industrial point source emissions is much more restricted due to the high chemical diversity of the individual effluents (see also Dsikowitzky and Schwarzbauer 2014). Few information on typical industrial contaminants discharged to the surface water systems have been described, e.g., for the leather, paper, chemical, pharmaceutical, rubber, dye, and petrochemical industry (e.g., Rao et al. 1994; Reemtsma et al. 1995; Castillo et al. 1999; Czaplicka 2003; Brigden et al. 2004; Pinheiro et al. 2004;
Bilgi and Demir 2005; Lopez-Grimau et al. 2006; Dsikowitzky et al. 2015). The corresponding substances belonged among others to the substance classes of benzothiazoles, nitro compounds, chlorinated benzofuranones, volatile organic compounds (VOCs), substituted anilines and amines, alkyl phosphates, and chlorinated arenes.

Although semipolar water pollutants also appear in sedimentary systems (e.g., Kronimus et al. 2004), riverine and lacustrine sediments are contaminated dominantly by less functionalized compounds. Typical sedimentary pollutants belong to the group of halogenated compounds of both aliphatic and aromatic constitution. Examples of halogenated aromatics include chlorinated benzenes and naphthalenes, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB), polychlorinated dibenzo-\textit{p}-dioxins and dibenzofurans (PCDD/PCDF), and polybrominated diphenyl ethers. Most of these congeneric mixtures appear as the result of technical or commercial application such as technical additives, flame retardants, or lubricants. Further on, they are partially also generated as by-products in industrial synthesis and are, consequently, discharged via industrial emissions as well. Many of these compounds are of high environmental relevance due to their ecotoxicological and toxicological properties combined with a high stability under natural conditions leading to potential geo- and bioaccumulation. Hence, a number of them are classified as priority pollutants.

**Fig. 2** Load profiles of two contaminants of the Lippe River (Germany) emitted by nonpoint sources (carbamazepine) and a point source (triphenylphosphate oxide). (Adapted from Dsikowitzky et al. 2004)
Aliphatic substances with a higher degree of halogenation have to be regarded also as sedimentary pollutants. Examples include hexachlorobutadiene of potentially industrial origin as well as polychlorinated long-chain \( n \)-alkanes the so-called chlorinated paraffins widely used as technical additives.

In a less specific manner unfunctionalized aliphatic hydrocarbons as well as aromatic hydrocarbons can contribute to sedimentary pollution. Natural aliphatic compounds (like several \( n \)-alkanes, phytenes, etc.) can be superimposed by thermally generated petrogenic aliphatics which are characterized, e.g., by a different distribution pattern of the \( n \)-alkane homologues. For pollution source apportionment also petroleum-specific tricyclic aliphatics, the hopanes, have been used by differentiating their thermodynamically stable isomers from the biogenic ones (e.g., Yunker and Macdonald 2003; Faure et al. 2007).

Sedimentary aromatic compounds originate dominantly as the result of petrogenic contaminations but also from pyrogenic emissions (Stout et al. 2001; Srogi 2007). In particular polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and their alkylated derivatives are common constituents of oil and petroleum-related products but are also synthesis products during incomplete combustion of organic material, e.g., as the result of vehicular traffic. Based on these different sources, petrogenic compounds are characterized generally as primary contaminants, whereas pyrogenic hydrocarbons are entering the aquatic environment indirectly as the result of deposition of airborne particles or soil erosion. Hence, the latter ones referred to secondary contaminants. In order to discriminate both emission sources and the related pollution pathways, several indicative ratios using source-specific isomers have been introduced and applied to environmental studies on rivers and lakes as well as on marine systems (Barra et al. 2009; Grigoriadou et al. 2008). Common ratios are comparing individual isomers (e.g., anthracene-phenanthrene, fluoranthene-pyrene, chrysene-benz(\( a \))anthracene or 1,7–2,6-dimethylphenanthrene) or the relationship between parent PAHs and alkylated homologues (phenanthrene or fluoranthene and pyrene contrasted to their methylated derivatives) (e.g., Yunker et al. 2002; Geršlova and Schwarzbauber 2014).

As a new aspect related to the contamination by fossil fuels, the contribution of coaly material and its ingredients to the riverine environment is discussed currently (e.g., Curran et al. 2000; Yang et al. 2008). Also for this material, its environmental impact has been suggested to be trackable by specific PAHs (Stout and Emsbo-Mattingly 2008).

Intensive agricultural activities in rural regions lead to the discharge of agrochemicals like herbicides, insecticides, or fertilizers into rivers and lakes (Venkatesan et al. 1999; Zhang et al. 1999; Schwarzbauber et al. 2001). These effluents are to be characterized as diffuse emissions entering the aquatic environment either by soil surface runoff or by the interaction of the surface waters with corresponding agriculturally contaminated groundwater. In particular, the environmental occurrence and fate of pesticides in the hydrosphere have been given major attention. With respect to the type of pollutant, these contaminations can be roughly
divided into generations of pesticide classes, on the one hand the older generation, which includes more persistent compounds (e.g., chlorinated pesticides such as DDT, γ-HCH or lindane, hexachlorobenzene HCB, etc.). These compounds are characterized by an elevated tendency to geo- and bioaccumulation, which led to a more or less global ban of these substances. On the other hand, a new generation of more modern pesticides is characterized by higher microbial degradation rates, lower lipophilicity, and less toxicity (for comprehensive information on the toxicity of pesticides to aquatic organisms, see DeLorenzo et al. 2001). Representatives of such pesticides are based on molecular moieties comprising carbamates and thiocarbamates (e.g., carbendazim, EPTC), phosphates (e.g., malathion, dichlorvos), sulfonylureas (e.g., cinosulfuron), triazines (e.g., simazine, atrazine), and further nitrogen-, sulfur-, and phosphorous-containing moieties. Noteworthy, these pesticides are objectives of numerous investigations on abiotic transformation processes in surface water areas, e.g., by photooxidation or hydrolysis (e.g., Lartiges and Garrigues 1995; Abu-Qare and Duncan 2002). Comprehensive studies on the environmental appearance and distribution of pesticides in rivers and lakes have been performed worldwide on many river systems (for an overview see Schwarzbauer 2005).

Beside all typical pollutants described so far, also specific but not necessarily toxic or ecotoxic compounds have been analyzed to differentiate emission sources and to trace the spatial and time-related anthropogenic impact on the aquatic environment. This approach using the so-called anthropogenic markers has been applied to riverine as well as estuarine systems and has reflected the anthropogenic burden by fecal steroids (e.g., coprostanol – indicating fecal discharge), detergents and their by-products (e.g., linear alkylbenzenes and their sulfonated derivatives LAB and LAS – reflecting municipal sewage effluents), or rubber additives (e.g., 2-morpholinylthiazol – related to urban surface runoff). A comprehensive overview on the anthropogenic marker approach has been published by Takada and Eganhouse (1998).

Such marker compounds, but also other indicative substances or pollutants, have been used to describe not only the spatial distribution and lateral dynamics (temporary deposition and subsequent erosion) of contaminated particulate matter but also to obtain a retrospective insight into the long-term storage of particle-associated pollution. These were performed on accumulated sediment deposits as received by undisturbed aquatic sedimentation in estuaries as the final sedimentation area of riverine particulate matter as well as in lacustrine systems. Investigations on the terrestrial sedimentation of fluviable matter on flood plains and wetlands have been performed to a minor extent. However, all these deposits can act as ecological archives (see Fig. 3), since radiological dating of the sediment layers in combination with quantitative chemical analyses reveals a detailed record of the riverine and lacustrine pollution histories for preserved particle-bound contaminants (e.g., Gevao et al. 2000; Fox et al. 2001; Heim et al. 2006). A corresponding review has been recently published (Heim and Schwarzbauer 2013).
3 Groundwater

3.1 Influence of Redox Conditions on Organic Matter Quality in Groundwater

Organic compounds introduced to the terrestrial underground can undergo various types of transport or modification/degradation processes. In groundwater systems, a vertical flux in the water-unsaturated zone as well as a horizontal flux in the water-saturated zone has to be stated, and, consequently, an associated transport of dissolved and particle-bound substances can be observed. Concurrently, corresponding aerobic and anaerobic zones have to be differentiated with respect to the microbially assisted degradation processes of organic compounds. Since the unsaturated zone belongs more to the pedosphere, the focus of this chapter lies on the saturated aquifers. However, the composition of organic matter in aquifers is dominantly controlled by soil-derived material, which is valid for natural as well as anthropogenic contaminations. Further on, since water flow rates in aquifers are typically low as compared to rivers and the partition between water phase and particulate matter has already occurred mainly in the soil zone, the quality of organic substances in groundwater is dominated by transformation processes. Groundwater systems respond very sensitively to variations of oxygen availability. Continuous changes of the redox conditions with depth as a result of ongoing oxygen-consuming processes (in particular organic matter degradation) influence the constitution of the microbial community and, consequently, the transformation processes affecting

Fig. 3 Vertical distribution of environmental contaminants determined in a dated sediment core of the Rhine River (Germany). (Adapted from Heim et al. 2006)
3.2 Natural Organic Substances

The knowledge on natural substances in groundwater is very restricted. Similar to surface water systems, a huge proportion of humic substances is proposed to occur (e.g., Alborzfar et al. 1998). Quantitative calculations revealed, e.g., amounts of approx. 5–20 mg C/L of humic acids in shallow aquifers. However, information on low molecular weight substances is rarely reported. It is known that carboxylic acids contribute to DOC in selected aquifers (McMahon and Chapelle 1991). Furthermore, some indications for the presence of terpenoid compounds in groundwater and their possible role as humic precursors have been reported (Leenheer et al. 2003).

3.3 Anthropogenic Organic Contamination

Anthropogenic pollution is a major concern in particular with respect to shallow aquifers, which frequently represent important drinking water reservoirs. Principally, three major emission sources release organic pollutants into the groundwater systems. Firstly, a direct application of chemicals to soils and their subsequent relocation toward the aquifers contaminates groundwater resources in particular by agrochemicals like pesticides and fertilizers (e.g., Kolpin et al. 2001). Further on, two other types of emission sources are dominating the groundwater contaminations that unintentionally release pollutants toward aquifers, sometimes for decades. On the one hand, industrial facilities handling with gasoline or petroleum-related products, gas production plants, and dry-cleaning services are known to have frequently emitted huge amounts of specific pollutants in the past as the result of careless handling or leakages. Typical groundwater-relevant contaminants related to fossil fuels are monoaromatic compounds especially the BTEX (benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, xylenes) but also naphthalene and tricyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., Cozzarelli et al. 1995; Ohlenbusch et al. 2002; Zamfirescu and Grathwohl 2001; Vinzelberg et al. 2005). Further on, much attention has been given to the gasoline additive methyl tert-butyl ether MTBE, which exhibits a high water solubility and a high environmental stability in groundwater (e.g., Squillace et al. 1996; Gelmann and Binstock 2008). Dry-cleaning facilities have partially emitted high amounts of the drying agent tetrachloroethylene (PER), what resulted in groundwater contaminations by this compound and its dechlorinated metabolites (e.g., Bradley 2000; Vieth et al. 2003). In particular the metabolites exhibit extended persistence under anaerobic conditions.
Behind industrial facilities or services, a last emission source of groundwater contamination can be attributed to leakages of waste deposit landfills. Continuous discharge as a result of insufficient bottom sealings has frequently released a wide spectrum of contaminants to the aquifers, because seepage water of deposit landfills is characterized by very complex mixtures in particular of organic contaminants (e.g., Öman and Hynning 1993; Paxeus 1999; Schwarzauer et al. 2002). Several environmental studies on landfill-derived groundwater contamination focused on the distribution and fate of specific organic compounds derived from landfill leachates in the underground (e.g., Albaiges et al. 1986; Rügge et al. 1995; Heim et al. 2004).

Intensive activities are related with the remediation of contaminated groundwater either by technical measures or by the so-called natural attenuation approach (e.g., Lerner et al. 2005; Baun et al. 2003; Eganhouse et al. 2005). With respect to the latter remediation approach, information on occurrence and rate of microbial degradation is of fundamental importance (Sturchio et al. 1998). Principally two different approaches are used to figure out transformation processes, on the one hand the identification and quantification of metabolites and on the other hand the monitoring of degradation by compound-specific isotope analysis. Examples for characteristic transformations in anaerobic aquifers include the carboxylation of aromatic compounds under sulfate-reducing conditions (Vinzellberg et al. 2005; Meckenstock et al. 2000; Griebler et al. 2004; Coates et al. 2002) or the hydroxylation of chlorinated and non-chlorinated aromatics by methanotrophic microbes forming phenolic compounds (e.g., Adriaens and Grbic-Galic 1994; Coates et al. 2002). Investigations applying isotope analyses have focused mainly on the quantification of degradation processes as a key parameter for natural attenuation approaches. Compound specific analyses have used dominantly stable carbon but to a minor extent also hydrogen isotopes. A detailed summary of isotope analysis applied to groundwater has been recently published (Schmidt et al. 2004); for principles of isotope analysis, see Vieth-Hillebrand and Wilkes (Chap. 13, “Stable Isotopes in Understanding Origin and Degradation Processes of Hydrocarbons and Petroleum”, this volume).

4 Marine Environment

4.1 Occurrence and Fate of Organic Compounds in the Marine Environment

Major attention has been attributed to the occurrence and behavior of organic matter in marine systems since processes causing the natural synthesis as well as degradation or preservation of organic matter in these ecosystems are the initial steps in the generation of kerogen, petroleum, and related matter. Hence, the knowledge on the zones of preferential primary production of organic matter by photosynthesis of marine organisms as well as the factors affecting the preservation especially in the benthic environment is a main topic in the scientific field of organic geochemistry (Tissot and Welte 1984; Killops and Killops 2005).
Beside the vertical distribution as the result of global ocean currents the dominant process affecting the occurrence of organic matter in the marine environment is its vertical flux within the water column. Thereby, key aspects on the corresponding fate of organic substances are the interaction of dissolved and particle-associated matter in combination with the biological uptake and excretion, e.g., by the planktonic food web (Wakeham and Lee 1989). Principally, organic substances involved in the biological loop (including the bioavailable DOC) are affected by high turn-around times, high dynamics, and intensive transformation or degradation. However, the adsorption on particulate matter reduces its bioavailability and, therefore, implies an initial step for enhanced preservation. The importance of adsorption phenomena as stabilization processes for labile organic matter was pointed out by Keil et al. (1994) as well as Mayer (1994). Since the reversible adsorption and desorption processes depend among other parameters on the polarity or lipophilicity of the substances to be sorbed, dominantly less polar compounds tend to be more enriched in the solid phase and more effectively stabilized by particle association. This particulate matter is partially deposited by sedimentation, and the associated, more lipophilic compounds are transferred into the sediments. During sedimentation, comprising a dynamic exchange between POC and DOC by adsorption and desorption, the organic matter undergoes many diagenetic alterations. After its transport through the water column, the more anaerobic ambience in the benthic compartment provides further conditions supporting an enhanced environmental stability for many organic compounds accumulated in and incorporated into sediment deposits. The persistence or stability in the benthic and later on in the sedimentary systems over geological times and the biotic and abiotic transformation processes affecting the individual molecular structures in these systems are covered by the wide field of organic geochemistry and, therefore, are not subject of this chapter.

Noteworthy, terrigenous discharge contributes significantly to marine organic matter, in particular at the intersection of marine and terrestrial ecosystems, the estuaries, and deltas (Hedges et al. 1997). Huge amounts of organic material are discharged from rivers to the coastal regions as dissolved (DOC) but also as particulate organic carbon (POC). Calculation of terrestrial budgets is based either on carbon isotope analysis (e.g., Goni et al. 1997; Raymond and Bauer 2001; Shi et al. 2001; Countway et al. 2007) or determination of indicative chemical marker compounds reflecting unambiguously terrigenous origin, e.g., lignin (e.g., Opsahl et al. 1999; Cannuel 2001; Harvey and Mannino 2001; Jaffe et al. 2001). However, calculated budget data vary depending on the approach as well as on the aquatic systems. For the arctic environment, a riverine discharge of terrigenous matter to the Arctic Ocean of roughly 25 Tg C year\(^{-1}\) has been calculated, of which 10–40% may reach the Northern Atlantic Ocean (Opsahl et al. 1999). The riverine contribution to the Arctic Ocean is subdivided into approx. 80% of DOC and approx. 20% of POC (Dittmar and Kattner 2003). Global budget calculation on the basis of lignin analysis suggested an overall contribution of terrigenous material of approx. 0.7–2.4% to the total DOC in the oceans with a predicted shorter oceanic residence time of 20–130 years for this fraction (Opsahl and Benner 2003).
4.2 Natural Organic Substances

Organic matter in the marine ecosystems originates dominantly from the aquatic organisms and, therefore, exhibits partially high similarity to the contributions of biotic organic matter discharged to the terrestrial aquatic systems (see Sect. 1.2). Beside natural macromolecules like peptides, proteins, and polysaccharides (e.g., Khodse et al. 2008), in particular, cell membrane lipids and pigments from marine phyto- and zooplankton, contribute to the pools of DOC and POC. Well-known components comprise \( n \)-alkan-1-ols, saturated and unsaturated fatty acids, long-chain alkenones (e.g., 37:2 and 37:3 alkenones), di- and tetraphytanyl ethers, steroids (e.g., cholesterol, dinosterol, desmosterol), carotenoids (e.g., lycopene, isorenieratene, diatoxanthin, fucoxanthin, peridinin), and chlorophyll-related pigments.

According to the general partition behavior of low molecular weight organic substances as described in Sect. 1.1, the less polar substances accumulate first in the particulate matter within the water body and, later on, in the sedimentary environment. However, during the passage through the water body, strong alterations due to biotic and abiotic transformation occur. Examples are autoxidation processes, photooxidation, or microbial decomposition (e.g., Sun et al. 2004; Rontani et al. 2006).

Further on, marine humic substances contribute dominantly to the DOC but exhibit structural differences as compared to terrigenous material. A major difference is the degree of aromaticity, which has been already used to discriminate terrestrial and marine humics. Aromatic carbon content has been calculated to be 20–50% in soil humics, 20–35% in peat humics, but less than 15% in marine humics. Further on, the H/C atomic ratios vary between 1.0 to 1.5 in marine humics and 0.5 to 1.0 in soil humics (Killops and Killops 2005).

Interestingly, the relative amount of biogenic halogenated compounds is enriched in the marine ecosystems as compared to terrestrial surface water systems probably due to the elevated chloride and bromide concentrations in seawater. These substances cover a wide range of structural diversity including simple molecules like halogenated methanes and ethanes but also more complex substances like brominated and chlorinated terpenoids, heterocycles, acetogenins, macrolides, and to a higher extent aromatic compounds (Gribbles 2000; Ballschmitter 2003).

Further compounds, which are still unnoticed so far but are obviously specific marine substances, are derived from biomethylation reactions of metal ions. One example of such organometallic substances is dimethylthallium, detected in surface water samples from the Atlantic Ocean accompanied by methylated cadmium and lead species (Schedlbauer and Heumann 2000).

4.3 Anthropogenic Organic Contamination

Many of the environmental aspects of terrestrial contaminants account also for the marine ecosystems due to the discharge of terrestrial matter in coastal areas. Hence,
in addition to specific natural compounds serving as terrestrial indicators, also anthropogenic contaminants are appropriate markers to monitor the riverine impact on the marine environment (Schwarzbauer et al. 2000; Grigoriadou et al. 2008; Dsikowitzky et al. 2017). Beside river discharge, also the aeolian long-range transport of particle-associated pollutants contributes to marine contamination. Beside these allochthonous emissions, the autochthonous emissions are of major interest for the state of pollution of the marine environment. A first aspect is related with shipping activities, which release pollutants during routine operation or as a result of accidents. A common example for the former type of contamination is tin organic compounds, which have been intensively used over a prolonged time as active components in antifouling paints. Noteworthy, not only the marine environment but also rivers, lakes, and, in particular, harbors are contaminated by these substances. Most prominent example is tributyltin, an ionic molecule with lipophilic butyl moieties. As a result of its amphoteric character with respect to its lipophilic/hydrophilicity, it is accumulated on the one hand in sediments but is also present in high amounts in the water phase. Since tributyltin exhibits elevated ecotoxicological effects, it has been substituted recently by other antifouling agents.

Shipping activities also result in contamination by petroleum-derived substances, in particular, hydrocarbons. As introduced in Sect. 1.3, aromatic hydrocarbons can act as indicative substances to characterize petroleum discharge and to differentiate it from combustion-derived pollution, which are entering the marine environment via aeolian particles (e.g., Ding et al. 2007). Hence, PAHs have been frequently used (partially together with further petroleum-related hydrocarbons like hopanes) to assess the petroleum-derived impact on the marine ecosystems, in particular the coastal areas (e.g., Yunker and Macdonald 2003; Grigoriadou et al. 2008). Beside its marker properties, it is also obvious that PAHs harm the marine environment, e.g., by bioaccumulation in marine organisms (Meador et al. 1995, Ohwada et al. 2003; Hylland 2006). However, PAHs and further petroleum hydrocarbons are constituents of marine sediments not only as the result of shipping activities but also derived from offshore oil production. For example, drill cuttings have been reported to contribute significantly to sedimentary hydrocarbon pollution (Scholz-Böttcher et al. 2008; Skaare et al. 2008).

A further major source of petroleum-related contamination has to be attributed to oil spills. Many accidents of oil tankers have had an enormous impact on the marine ecosystems. The behavior of oil after release to seawater depends on various parameters comprising, e.g., wind drift with subsequent emulsification and dispersion, the chemical nature of individual oil fractions, sunlight intensity, water temperature, and the benthic microbial community. Individual fractions of crude oil undergo different degradation or transformation pathways as well as transport processes. The light components remain over a prolonged time on the water surface and can be subject to abiotic photolysis or photooxidation as well as evaporation. On the contrary, heavier fractions sink to the seafloor. Generally, after oil spills the principal components of oil, the linear alkanes, branched aliphatics, aromatic compounds, and functionalized substances, exhibit different residence times on water or in sediments as well as underlie varying weathering processes due to their different
potentials to be microbially degraded (e.g., Ezra et al. 2000; Gallego et al. 2006; Farias et al. 2008). The diverse fate of compound classes has been used to fingerprint oil spills and related sources by biomarkers (e.g., Wang et al. 2006). A high environmental impact has to be associated to the residual fraction of oil remaining in the benthic ecosystems or the beach sediments of the affected coasts over a prolonged time (e.g., Short et al. 2007a). Further long-term effects are attributed to the generation of more toxic biotic metabolites or the release of toxic constituents to the seawater after alteration, e.g., of the asphaltene fraction (DiToro et al. 2007). Oil spills that have been intensively investigated in terms of long-term effects and the distribution and fate of oil-derived hydrocarbons are, for example, the accidents of the Exxon Valdez in the Gulf of Alaska and the Prestige near the Spanish coast (Bence et al. 1996; Gallego et al. 2006). However, it should be also mentioned that a very small proportion of marine petroleum contamination arose from natural seeps discharging oil in particular from coastal regions to the sea (e.g., Short et al. 2007b).

In recent years, an interesting aspect arose concerning a so far neglected fraction of anthropogenic contaminants, the plastics. Huge amounts of plastic (polypropylene, polystyrene, etc.) in different forms (as pellets, foams, or foil) have been released to the oceans for decades, although their enormous environmental stability is well-known. The ingestion of plastic debris by marine birds and the related harmful effects have been reported since the 1980s, whereas the information on ingestion by fishes or filter-feeding organisms increased in the last years (e.g., Eriksson and Burton 2003). Also the accumulation of plastic debris in defined regions, e.g., of the Pacific Ocean, has been elucidated (Moore et al. 2001). Recently, the attention turned to very small plastic particles, the so-called microplastics. Not only the direct harmful impacts but also the effects of plastic resin pellets as transport medium for pollutants have been discussed and reported (Mato et al. 2001; Endo et al. 2005; Frias et al. 2010). Current knowledge on plastics including microplastics in the aquatic environment has been summarized in various reviews (e.g., Andrady 2011; Browne et al. 2011; Ivar do Sul and Costa 2014; Eerkes-Medrano et al. 2015).

5 Research Needs

Although the knowledge on organic matter in the hydrosphere has been expanded intensively in the last two decades there is still an enormous need to clarify further on the fate of organic substances in water. Interesting aspects of future research are comprehensive structural elucidation of more complex compounds as well as investigations on the environmental behavior of natural and anthropogenic substances. In particular, our knowledge on natural organic matter in groundwater remains on a more or less bulk characterization. Hence, intensive investigations on the characterization of dissolved groundwater constituents of low molecular as well as macromolecular weight are desirable for the future. Further on, the activities in characterization of the microbially assisted interaction of metals and organic matter resulting in organometallic compounds have to be expanded.
Further examples for future needful research activities are the investigations on the overall life cycle of natural as well as anthropogenic compounds in the marine systems or the detection and monitoring of disperse and especially dissolved xenobiotic polymers in river systems.

References


Lessons from the 2010 Deepwater Horizon Accident in the Gulf of Mexico

Terry C. Hazen

## Contents

1. Introduction ................................................................. 848
2. Lesson 1. Marine Oil Biodegradation Like All Politics Is Local and DWH Had Many Unique Aspects ........................................ 848
3. Lesson 2. Oil in the Water Column and in Coastal Sediments Biodegraded Faster Than Expected ........................................ 851
4. Lesson 3. Long-Term Adaption to Natural Seeps Played an Important Role in DWH Oil Biodegradation .................................................. 853
5. Lesson 4. Jetting and Dispersants at the Well Head Increased Oil Biodegradation ...... 853
6. Lesson 5. Comparisons of DWH with Exxon Valdez Oil Spill for Oil Biodegradation Were Not Appropriate ........................................ 855
7. Lesson 6. Models for DWH Were Inappropriate at First .......................... 856
8. Lesson 7. Cometabolic Oil Biodegradation May Be Important in Deep Marine Basins ........................................................................ 856
9. Lesson 8. Blooms of Oil Degraders in the Deep Led to a Temporal Succession of Other Bacterial Communities with Unknown Effects on Trophic Levels ............... 857
10. Lesson 9. Molecular Techniques Led to a More Thorough Understanding of DWH Oil Biodegradation ......................................................... 858
11. Lesson 10. Hydrostatic Pressure Had Little Effect on DWH Oil Biodegradation ........ 858
12. Research Needs ................................................................................. 859

References ....................................................................................... 861
Abstract

The 2010 Deepwater Horizon (DWH) accident in the Gulf of Mexico had many unique aspects to it not seen in previous marine spills. Indeed, research related to the DWH response phase, Natural Resource Damage Assessment, Gulf of Mexico Research Initiative (GoMRI), National Academy of Sciences, US agencies: NOAA, EPA, Fish & Wildlife, DOE, and Coast Guard have made this the most studied marine oil spill in the world. There are many oil biodegradation lessons learned from this experience and these will undoubtedly continue for many years.

1 Introduction

On April 20, 2010, the Deepwater Horizon (DWH) an ultra-deepwater, dynamically positioned, semi-submersible, mobile offshore drilling rig owned by Transocean caught fire while drilling at the Macondo prospect in the Mississippi Canyon Block 252 lease and exploded 77 km off the coast of Louisiana in the Gulf of Mexico with the loss of 11 lives. Several attempts to activate the blowout prevention device and the blind sheer ram failed. Two days later on April 22, 2010, the DWH sank to the seafloor at 1500 m, with the 53 cm riser pipe detaching from the rig it collapsed into a convoluted heap on the seafloor and began leaking oil in at least 3 sections. This caused the largest marine oil spill in United States history and the second largest marine oil spill in the world (Fig. 1). On June 3, 2010, the riser was cut off at the top of the blowout prevention device. After several attempts to stem the flow of oil failed, the well was successfully capped on July 15, 2010, and declared dead by the National Incident Commander on September 19, 2010. The government estimate of the amount of oil that came from the Macondo well directly into the environment was 4.1 million barrels with an additional 820,000 barrels captured via siphon tubes (Fig. 2) (FISG 2010). The cleanup effort was the largest ever in the world with more than 31,800 people involved (Fig. 2) (Deepwater Horizon Unified Command, 2010).

The DWH accident had many unique aspects to it not seen in previous marine spills. Indeed, research related to the DWH response phase, Natural Resource Damage Assessment, Gulf of Mexico Research Initiative (GoMRI), National Academy of Sciences, US agencies: NOAA, EPA, Fish & Wildlife, DOE, and Coast Guard have made this the most studied marine oil spill in the world. There are many oil biodegradation lessons learned from this experience and these will undoubtedly continue for many years.

2 Lesson 1. Marine Oil Biodegradation Like All Politics Is Local and DWH Had Many Unique Aspects

Marine oil biodegradation is affected by a large number of parameters, e.g., oil type, currents, weather, temperature, pressure, limiting nutrients, water depth, input of oil (leak, spill, failure of blowout prevention device), season, risk receptors, and ability
to apply remediation (dispersants, siphon tubes, booms, skimmers, burns). Many of these can work synergistically to impact oil biodegradation: (1) chemical dispersants + mineral fines can enhance formation and transfer of oil from the surface into the water column (Li et al. 2007), (2) autoinoculation from gyres + “memory response” of oil degraders leads to an increase in microbial abundance and accelerated oil biodegradation (Valentine et al. 2012), (3) oil droplet size + dispersion + biodegradation rates + dissolution enhances biodegradation, dissolution and dispersion rated oil hydrocarbons (Brakstad et al. 2015a), (4) cometabolic biodegradation + dispersion + secondary electron donors enhances biodegradation, dissolution, and dispersion rates of oil hydrocarbons even when the oil itself cannot be a suitable electron donor (Hazen et al. 2016), and (5) biosurfactants from multiple microorganisms can enhance bioavailability of poorly soluble hydrocarbons in the oil (Singh et al. 2007; McGenity et al. 2012).

DWH had many unique aspects, it was the deepest oil well blowout that has ever occurred, and it was the first time that dispersants were applied at the well head. It was not controlled for 84 days. It had deep water temperatures of 4 °C and simultaneous surface water temperatures of over 30 °C (Hazen et al. 2010).
It occurred during the hurricane season, but only two major storms occurred during the period. There was a deepwater gyre at 1100 m that went from the Macondo well head out 15 km to the SW before turning back (Valentine et al. 2012). Deep water plumes occurred at four depths: 25, 265, 865, 1175 m, oil at the surface was moving to the North East while oil in the 1100 m plume was moving to the South West, the other three water column plumes moved to the SE, and NW (Spier et al. 2013). The Gulf of Mexico has more natural seeps than any other deepwater basin being considered for deepwater oil production (NAS 2003).

Macondo oil is a very light crude, the Macondo well was jetting oil at high temperature (200 °C) and high pressure (676 bars) at the well head (pressure of the ocean at 1500 m was 152 bars).

---

![Figure 2](image.png)

**Fig. 2** Where the oil went? The Federal Interagency Solutions Group, Oil Budget Calculator Science and Engineering Team (November, 2010)
The *Macondo* well was also one of the deepest wells; thus, the hydrostatic pressure may have had an effect on oil degraders like we have not seen before (Marietou et al. 2018). The Macondo oil had a high proportion of methane (Kessler et al. 2011). Nutrients from the Mississippi River made the overall nutrients higher near the spill (Hazen et al. 2010), and many hydrocarbons found in the *Macondo* oil and in the CORREXIT dispersant used were also found in Mississippi River and drainage into the Gulf of Mexico from non DWH sources (Kujawinski et al. 2011; King et al. 2014a).

### 3 Lesson 2. Oil in the Water Column and in Coastal Sediments Biodegraded Faster Than Expected

One of the first studies on oil biodegradation reported that the Macondo oil average half-life of alkanes in the deep water (1100) plume was 1.2–6.1 days (Table 1) (Hazen et al. 2010). The deepwater plume contained more than 80% alkanes, and four different techniques were used to make these calculations using microcosms with water and fresh *Macondo* oil at 5 °C, mixed consortia (Venosa and Holder 2007) incubations with fresh *Macondo* oil at 5 °C, and changes in alkane concentration from in the plume from the source to 10 km down gradient with split sample analyses done by two different labs and considering whether it took 2 days or 5 days to traverse that 10 km gradient (Hazen et al. 2010; Valentine et al. 2012). This surprised a lot of people. Rapid biodegradation also occurred initially of propane and ethane (Valentine et al. 2010). A more recent study again verified these findings (Thessen and North 2017). Considering that below 700 m the temperature in the Gulf of Mexico is always 5 °C or less and it has been that way for millions of years, it should not be surprising that there are true psychrophiles that can degrade oil faster at 5 °C then at 20 °C and given there potentially long period of adaption degrade it faster than in previous studies at the surface (Baelum et al. 2012; Chakraborty et al. 2012; Dubinsky et al. 2013; Brakstad et al. 2015a; Hazen et al. 2016).

*Macondo* oil was also deposited in the sediments especially around the well head and in some other parts closer to shore as marine snow etc. (Rahsepar et al. 2017). Numerous studies also found that the sediment microbial community was degrading the *Macondo* oil faster than initially expected (Kimes et al. 2013, 2014; King et al. 2014a; Mason et al. 2014). Studies showed that a very active microbial community in the sediment was enriched in anaerobes (*Deltaproteobacteria*) in the deeper sediment and aerobes (*Gammaproteobacteria*) at the sediment surface that was very actively degrading a variety of *Macondo* well hydrocarbons including aromatic hydrocarbons (Kimes et al. 2013; Mason et al. 2014). Key hydrocarbon degradation pathways were determined by 14C-labeled substrates in order: propylene, glycol, dodecane, toluene, and phenanthrene (Mason et al. 2014).

Many studies along the coast where emulsified and weathered *Macondo* oil washed ashore also found that degradation rates of the Macondo oil were faster than previous studies at other sites around the world had shown (King et al. 2012, 2014a, b). Beach samples collected during the response phase and after showed a
dominance of *Alphaproteobacteria* and *Gammaproteobacteria* (Kostka et al. 2011; Lamendella et al. 2014). Taxonomic diversity decreased in the sands for first few months but rebounded 1 year after the oil came ashore and much of the oil had been degraded (King et al. 2014a). Initially Pensacola Beach sands oil-degraders increased two orders of magnitude within the first week, while diversity decreased 50% (Huettel et al. 2018). Half-lives of the aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons were less than 25 days. Aerobic oil degradation was significantly promoted by tidal pumping. In the coastal salt marsh (Mobile Bay), the oil degrading community increased in richness and abundance especially among the *Proteobacteria*, *Bacteroidetes*, and *Actinobacteria* (Beazley et al. 2012). This study also suggested that marsh rhizosphere microbial communities could be contributing to the hydrocarbon degradation since there was a greater decrease in Macondo oil in marsh grass sediments than in inlet sediments that lacked marsh grass (King et al. 2014a). Studies in marshes in Barataria Bay, Louisiana, also showed increases in the bacteria *Rhodobacterales* and *Sphingomonadales* and the fungi *Dothideomycetes* (Mahmoudi et al. 2013). Another study that included 11 sites in southern Louisiana found that all studied marshes had increased abundance in *Proteobacteria*, *Firmicutes*, *Bacteroidetes*, and *Actinobacteria* during the first 4 months, but after 2 years with barely detectable hydrocarbon levels the bacteria communities were more diverse and dominated by *Alphaproteobacteria* (*Rhizobiales*), *Chloroflexi* (*Dehalococcoidia*), and *Planctomycetes* (Engel et al. 2017).

### Table 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Average</th>
<th>Plume samples</th>
<th>Plume samples</th>
<th>BP data</th>
<th>BP data</th>
<th>Mixed Consortia 5 °C</th>
<th>Microcosm water, 5 °C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n-Tridecane</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Tetradecane</td>
<td>C13alk</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentadecane</td>
<td>C14alk</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-hexadecane</td>
<td>C15alk</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-heptadecane</td>
<td>C16alk</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pristane</td>
<td>C17alk</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-octadecane</td>
<td>C19alk</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytane</td>
<td>C19alk</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Nonadecane</td>
<td>C20alk</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eicosane</td>
<td>C21alk</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Docosane</td>
<td>C22alk</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricosane</td>
<td>C23alk</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetracosane</td>
<td>C24alk</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-Pentacosane</td>
<td>C25alk</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n-hexacosane</td>
<td>C26alk</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Lesson 3. Long-Term Adaption to Natural Seeps Played an Important Role in DWH Oil Biodegradation

Natural seeps in the Gulf of Mexico are the most abundant of any deepwater marine basin being considered for petroleum exploration and production (Fig. 3) (NAS 2003). A 10-year average showed that 400,000–1,000,000 barrels of oil go into the Gulf of Mexico every year from natural seeps. These seeps are episodic and are primarily due to the major salt domes in the Gulf of Mexico which allow leakage from deeper petroleum reservoirs intersected by the salt domes. Recent use of satellite imagery and Fourier transform-ion cyclotron resonance-mass spectrometry may enable an even more detailed quantification of natural seeps in the Gulf of Mexico (Krajewski et al. 2018). Natural seeps in North America are estimated to exceed 160,000 tons and 600,000 tons globally each year. Over 60% of the petroleum entering North American waters comes from natural seeps, but only 45% of the petroleum entering the marine environment worldwide is from natural seeps (NAS 2003) See “Oil Biodegradation in Deep Marine Basin” by Hazen and Techtmann (2018).

It is not surprising then that microbes have become very well adapted to oil biodegradation in the Gulf of Mexico since it is the major long-term carbon and energy source that has been episodically released over millions of years (Kimes et al. 2013; Hazen et al. 2016). This long-term adaption to episodic release of oil provided a “memory” response that allowed oil-biodegraders to respond rapidly whenever oil was being seeped. Indeed, a significant increase in Oceanospirillaceae was seen only 1 km from the well head, and calculations suggest that it would only take the prevailing several hours to reach this area (Fig. 4) (Hazen et al. 2010).

5 Lesson 4. Jetting and Dispersants at the Well Head Increased Oil Biodegradation

The pressure of the Macondo well at the well head was 676 bars at >200 °C while the ambient pressure in the water around the well head was 152 bars at <5 °C. This would cause jetting a well-known phenomenon for oil well blowouts (Agbaglah et al. 2011). This would form oil droplets that would increase biodegradation primarily because of the change in the ratio of surface/volume (Fig. 4). Microbes can biodegrade oil hydrocarbons dissolved in water or are present at the oil/water interface. During DWH it was decided that even though jetting was occurring, there was too much oil coming to the surface close to the well control operations. This presented a major safety concern since the high methane content and relative flammability of the oil increased the risk of a fire and or explosion. So, for the first time ever permission to inject Corexit 9500 at the well head was given. It was also hoped that this would increase dispersion and biodegradation of oil so that less would reach the surface. Within 4 h after subsurface injection of dispersant was started, the oil coming to the surface was much farther away from the well control operations and every time that dispersant injection was stopped within 4 h the surface slick would move closer to the well control operations. Corexit 9500 was
Fig. 3  Input of Oil in North America showing natural seeps, extraction, transportation, and consumption in deep water and the coast. (After NAS (2003))
also used at the surface by spraying on surface slicks via ships and planes. It was also used on surface slicks during the Ixtoc I blowout in the Gulf of Mexico in 1979 (Hooper and NOAA Hazardous Materials Response Project (U.S.) 1982). Corexit 9500 or analogs had been used as an oil dispersant for more than 30 years. Any droplets that were formed by jetting or dispersant that were 10–60 μm in diameter were neutrally buoyant and were entrained in the current at 1100 m. Droplets that were 300 μm or larger were positively buoyant and rose to the surface.

Several studies on the Macondo oil have clearly demonstrated that smaller droplets degrade faster (Baelum et al. 2012; Adams et al. 2013; Vilcaez et al. 2013; Brakstad et al. 2014, 2015a, b; King et al. 2014a). Some studies have suggested that Corexit 9500 may be directly inhibitory to some oil biodegraders (Kleindienst et al. 2015). However, the vast majority of papers has found no inhibition by Corexit 9500 (Baelum et al. 2012; Prince and Butler 2014; Brakstad et al. 2015a; Prince 2015; Hazen et al. 2016; Techtmann et al. 2017b).

6 Lesson 5. Comparisons of DWH with Exxon Valdez Oil Spill for Oil Biodegradation Were Not Appropriate

It was appalling that during the DWH spill the media and many scientists were comparing DWH to the Exxon Valdez oil spill. While the Exxon Valdez oil spill was the largest oil spill in US marine waters up until DWH it was in no ways similar (Atlas and Hazen 2011). Unlike the DWH, the Exxon Valdez oil spill in Prince William Sound was a tanker spill that was close to shore and was “dead” oil, i.e., it did not have any of the methane or volatile organic carbon that the Macondo oil had. The Prudhoe Bay oil was heavier than Macondo oil and inherently less biodegradable. Natural attenuation was less of an option for the Exxon Valdez oil spill since the oil accumulated on shore near risk receptors for birds, fish, and mammals so several biostimulation techniques were tried. Since DWH was nearly 50 miles off shore and was degrading rapidly in the water column, no oil could be detected only 2 weeks after the well was finally capped.
Since Prince William Sound had no natural seeps and no exposure to oil prior to completion the Trans Alaskan pipeline it was not surprising that Prudhoe Bay oil biodegraded much more slowly than the Macondo oil. For a thorough comparison of DVH with the Exxon Valdez oil spills, see Atlas and Hazen (2011).

### Lesson 6. Models for DWH Were Inappropriate at First

Because of the uniqueness of the DWH oil spill, if any, models were prepared to simulate what happened especially in terms of oil biodegradation. The SINTEF OSCAR model was tried initially but failed to predict the oil biodegradation rates in the deep plume, primarily because it used a Q(10) algorithm that assumed that for every 10 °C change in temperature, there would be a proportional change in biodegradation rate (Bagi et al. 2013). This did not take into consideration that the dominant bacteria in the deep were psychrophiles (Hazen et al. 2010, 2016; Baelum et al. 2012; Chakraborty et al. 2012). Droplet break-up models include Equilibrium correlations (Johansen et al. 2013; Li et al. 2016) and Dynamic models (Zhao et al. 2017). SINTEF since 2010 has developed several updates to the original Oil Spill Contingency and Response (OSCAR) model. The Structured Learning in Microbial Ecology (SLiME) model was found to predict the concentration of oil in DWH deep plume almost perfectly from the microbial community structure (Smith et al. 2015).

### Lesson 7. Cometabolic Oil Biodegradation May Be Important in Deep Marine Basins

The aerobic cometabolic biodegraders are dependent upon oxygenases, e.g., methane monoxygenase, toluene dioxygenase, toluene monooxygenase, and ammonia monooxygenase. These enzymes are extremely strong oxidizers, e.g., methane monoxygenase is known to transform over 1000 different compounds. However, like any bioremediation process, the proper biogeochemical conditions are necessary to maximize and maintain biodegradation, e.g., maintaining oxygen levels or other terminal electron acceptors that the cometabolic biodegrader is dependent (Hazen 1997, Hazen and Sayler 2016), and chapter on “Cometabolic Bioremediation” by Hazen 2018. In addition, co-metabolic biostimulation may require pulsing of electron donor or electron acceptor to reduce competitive inhibition between the substrate the microbe can use and the contaminant. Pulsing of methane was found to significantly improve biodegradation of trichloroethylene rates by methanotrophs (Hazen 2018). Indeed, during the DWH leak (Hazen et al. 2010), there was evidence that in the Gulf of Mexico where episodic releases of methane have occurred for millions of years from natural seeps this pulsing of methane may be removing oil and other organics via cometabolic biodegradation. The methane oxidizers bloomed during the DWH leaked above 400 m once the well was capped (Reddy et al. 2012; Redmond and Valentine 2012; Dubinsky et al. 2013). This suggests that intrinsic cometabolic bioremediation or cometabolic natural attenuation may be a
serious phenomenon in the ocean (Stackhouse et al. 2017). Methanotrophs, methane-oxidizing bacteria, oxidize methane via a series of enzymes that are unique to this group. The primary enzyme in this oxidation chain is methane monooxygenase. Methane monooxygenase is an extremely powerful oxidizer, thus giving it the capability of oxidizing a wide variety of normally recalcitrant compounds including oil constituents (Cardy et al. 1991). See chapter on “Cometabolic Bioremediation” by Hazen 2018.

9 Lesson 8. Blooms of Oil Degraders in the Deep Led to a Temporal Succession of Other Bacterial Communities with Unknown Effects on Trophic Levels

Once the oil was undetectable in the water column, many thought that the total biomass that would drastically decrease immediately and the microbial community diversity would increase to prespill levels (Hazen et al. 2010). However, once the oil degraders lost their competitive edge in using oil as a carbon and energy source, they began to die back, but there was a succession of bacteria that could use daughter products from direct oil degraders, i.e., “cheaters” bacteria that could not use the oil directly but could use some daughter product (Techtmann et al. 2016). As time progressed, even the “cheaters” could not compete so bacteria that could use the dead bacteria as a nutrient flourished (Fig. 5) (Dubinsky et al. 2013). So, the total microbial biomass slowly subsided over several months. The diversity of the microbial biomass also changed dramatically with the oil with the prespill having 951 subfamilies in 62 bacterial phyla (Fig. 6). The DWH deep oil plume had only 16 subfamilies in the Gammaproteobacteria (Hazen et al. 2010). Though bacteria do not sequester oil hydrocarbons like some organisms they basically convert oil hydrocarbons to bacterial compounds, this change in diversity could have had dramatic effects on the subsequent trophic levels since the size, shape, and compound composition of the food source had changed. This could also have a long-term effect even though the oil was gone! To date only a few studies have been published

![Fig. 5 Temporal Community Structure Changes showing sustained alterations in subsurface microbial communities and impacted the deep ocean for at least months after well containment. (After Dubinsky et al. (2013))](image-url)
considering this (Graham et al. 2010; Abbriano et al. 2011; Chanton et al. 2012; Jung et al. 2012; Carassou et al. 2014; Walsh et al. 2015).

10 Lesson 9. Molecular Techniques Led to a More Thorough Understanding of DWH Oil Biodegradation

Unlike previous major oil spills molecular techniques, especially sequencing had advanced significantly allowing a near real-time assessment of oil biodegradation microbial community structure and function, in the water column, surface, sediment and coastal areas (Hazen et al. 2010, 2013, 2016; Kostka et al. 2011; Baelum et al. 2012; Beazley et al. 2012; Dubinsky et al. 2012, 2013; Lu et al. 2012; Mason et al. 2012, 2014; King et al. 2014a). It also allowed storing of samples shipboard by freezing allowing the safe transport and subsequent analysis and archiving of critical samples (Fig. 7).

11 Lesson 10. Hydrostatic Pressure Had Little Effect on DWH Oil Biodegradation

Because of the depth of the Macondo well (1500 m), it was thought by many that the hydrostatic pressure might reduce biodegradation and/or promote biodegradation by piezophiles. Recent studies used water collected at depth during the response phase of DWH and preserved hydrostatic pressure as much as possible for simulations in the
laboratory. In the laboratory simulations, these samples were exposed to 0.1, 15, and 30 Megapascals (MPa) pressure (the Macondo well was at 15 Megapascals) (Marietou et al. 2018). Their results suggest that pressure acts synergistically with low temperature to slow microbial growth and change microbial community structure and thus oil degradation in deep-sea environments. This only happened with DWH when the water collected was exposed to 30 MPa, since DWH was actually at 15 MPa and there was little effect of pressure. However, if deep basin oil exploration continues, it is bound to get deeper and more attention should be paid to getting samples collected in situ at pressure from these deeper strata to determine the effect that pressure is having on the oil degrading microbiome (Hazen et al. 2016; Hazen and Techtmann 2018).

12 Research Needs

Because of all the new techniques that were demonstrated with DWH, Standard Operating Procedures (SOP) were in dire need during the response phase, during the subsequent investigations for National Resource and Damage Assessment (NRDA),
and during long-term investigations of effects of the DWH accident. We need a dynamic set of SOPs that are put together and peer reviewed by a multidisciplinary group of experts that can be used by the scientific community for oil biodegradation research.

**In Situ Sampling and Characterization.** During the response phase of the DWH accident, it was difficult to find many in situ sampling and characterization devices that were useful for taking critical samples. A lot of SOPs were developed on the fly many of the response phase ships used standard CTD sampling rosettes out fitted with 2 UV fluorometers which used fluorescence to detect hydrocarbons and captured water at depth with Niskin bottles. The UV fluorometers (QuanTech/Thermo Scientific) were employed in tandem to determine fluorescence intensity ratios (FIRs). One fluorometer was equipped with a pair of wavelength filters allowing excitation at 280 nm and emission at 340 nm. The second fluorometer was equipped with the same 280 nm excitation filter and a longer (445 nm) wavelength. The Niskin bottles were cleaned internally with distilled water and detergents between samplings. The sampling crews were sensitive to the problem of contamination from surface oil and used physical methods to disperse the surface slick before initiating sampling by the CTD, e.g., prop wash at the back of the ship before deployment and recovery, and detergent if prop wash was insufficient. For side deployments, the surface of the water was sprayed with freshwater to disperse surface oil; if this was insufficient, detergent was applied to the surface of the water then sprayed with freshwater to disperse surface oil. From each sample 800–2000 ml of water was filtered through sterile filter units containing 47 mm diameter polyethylysulfone membranes with 0.22 μm pore size (MO BIO Laboratories, Inc., Carlsbad, CA) and then immediately frozen and stored at −20 °C for the remainder of the cruise. Filters were shipped on dry ice to Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory and stored at −80 °C until DNA and PLFA extraction (Hazen et al. 2010). We also saw deployment of new in situ physical/chemical characterization devices like a subsurface hydrocarbon survey using an autonomous underwater vehicle and a ship-cabled sampler (Camilli et al. 2010). Recently it has also been demonstrated that oil seeps and spills can be linked to their origin by Fourier Transform Ion Cyclotron Resonance Mass Spectrometry (Krajewski et al. 2018). For sampling microbiomes in situ we need more development of devices that can be triggered remotely to filter and/or sample at depth like the large volume Stand Alone Particle Sampler (SAPS, Challenger Oceanic, UK, with controller, battery, and pump upgrades by Oceanlab, University of Aberdeen, Scotland) which can filter 62 and 123 L of seawater at depth through a 292 mm diameter nylon filter with a pore size of 0.2 μm (Techtmann et al. 2015) and the commercially available McLane Pump Large Volume water sampler (McLane Labs, Falmouth MA) which can filter 10.3 and 27 L of water per sample (Techtmann et al. 2017a).

**Mesocosms/Microcosms.** Bottle effects are real, as are sampling with consideration of ambient temperature and pressure and travel time of the sampling device (Marietou et al. 2018). It has been found that on-board ship microcosms/mesocosms start with different community structures and give different results in terms of function and diversity than water samples taken back over some days of travel for laboratory mesocosms (Liu et al. 2017).
interviewed scientists that did not have data or did not have data tied to rigorous SOPs and peer review, which gave the public the wrong impression of what was going on during the DWH accident.

References


King SM, Leaf PA, Olson AC, Ray PZ, Tarr MA (2014b) Photolytic and photocatalytic degradation of surface oil from the Deepwater Horizon spill. Chemosphere 95:415–422


Index

A
ABC transporters, 151
Abiogenic hydrocarbons, 494
Abiotic degradation, 194, 208
Abiotic formation, 582
Abiotic methane sinks
atmospheric decomposition, 788
storage in sediments, 788
Abiotic methane sources, 783
Abiotic sulphurization pathway, 363
isotopic evidence, 365
mechanism, 366–367
timing, 367–368
Abiotic transformation, 4
Accretionary margins, 750
Accretionary prism, 750
Accretionary wedge, 750
Acetate ester pheromone, 228
Acetoclastic methanogenesis, 676, 682, 694, 698
Acetogenic lipid, 105
Acid hydrolysis, 168
Acidogenesis, 674
Acoustically turbid zones, 691
Actinobacteria, 852
Activation energy, 496, 504
Active margins, 748
Acyl-coenzyme A (acyl-CoAs), 143, 146, 149
Acyltransferases, 143, 144, 147
Advective transport, 774
Aerobic methane oxidation, 700–702, 773
Aerobic methanotrophic bacteria, 773
Aerobic oxidation of methane, 774, 785
in ancient environments
hopenoids, 791
steroids, 794
in modern environments
fatty acids, 791
hopanoids, 789
sterols, 790
Age determination, 757
Alberta’s oil sands, 594
Alcohol(s), 141, 145, 149, 150
Alcohol-forming pathway, 145, 147
Aldehyde(s), 141, 145, 147, 148, 150
decarbonylase, 149
Algae, 258–262
algal lipids, 103–104
carbon isotopes in algal lipids, 104–107
hydrogen isotopes in algal lipids, 107–109
unsaturated lipid components
(see Unsaturated lipid components)
Algaenan, 168, 175
Algebraic schemes, 504
Alkane-forming pathway, 145, 148–150
Alkanes, 53, 104, 141, 148, 150, 418
n-Alkanes, 7–8, 161, 278, 376, 560, 562, 563, 565, 566, 568, 571, 575, 576, 583
Alkanoic acids, 105
n-Alkanol, 169
Alkenes, 12, 14, 40, 163, 199
See also Olefins
n-Alkenes, 161, 194, 199
Alkenoates, 173
Alkenones, 104, 169, 202, 380, 427
Alkoxyl/peroxyl radicals, 196
Alkyl alkenoates, 169
Alkylbenzenes, 16
n-Alkyl compounds, 109
Alkylecycloalkanes, 10
Alkyl diols, 173
n-Alkyl diols, 173

© Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
H. Wilkes (ed.), Hydrocarbons, Oils and Lipids: Diversity, Origin, Chemistry and Fate,
Handbook of Hydrocarbon and Lipid Microbiology,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-90569-3
Alkyl esters, 141, 145, 147
Allylic hydroperoxides, 200, 207
Z Allylic hydroperoxyacids, 205
Allylic hydroperoxyalkenones, 203
Alphaproteobacteria, 852
Alum Shale, 501, 505, 534, 536, 538
Ambient pressure conditions, 462
Ambient temperature, 860
American Petroleum Institute (API) gravity, 76, 272
Amines, 26
Amino acids, 180
Aminopentol, in methanotrophs, 789
Ammonium monooxygenase (AMO), 701
Amorphous clathrate hydrate nucleus, 86
Amorphous hydrate phase, 86
Amorphous organic matter (AOM), 487
Anaerobic ammonium oxidation, 709
Anaerobic bacteria, 417
Anaerobic biodegradation, 614
Anaerobic conditions, 597
Anaerobic degradation, 485, 632–633
Anaerobic methane oxidizing bacteria, 368
Anaerobic methanotrophic (ANME) archaea, 707, 785, 787, 803
Anaerobic oxidation of methane (AOM), 82, 460, 657, 659, 691, 702–711, 774, 785–788
in ancient environments
archaeal biomarkers, 801
bacterial biomarkers, 802
preservation aspects, 801
seep carbonates, 798
electron acceptors, 785
in modern environments
archaeal biomarkers, 794–797
bacterial biomarkers, 797
Analytical methods, 499
Ancient seep(s), 757, 762
carbonates, 755
Angiosperms, 421, 484
Anhydrous pyrolysis, 510
Anoxic bottom water, 478, 480
Anoxic conditions, 480
Anoxic environments, 290
Antarctica, 171
Anthropogenic markers, 831
Anticlineal cell walls, 128, 131, 135
Antrim Shale, 530
AOM-consortia, 755
Apedinella, 174
Aquatic ecosystems, 824
Aquatic organic matter, 477
Aquatic organisms, 100
Aqueous conditions, 582
Aqueous solubility vs. carbon number, 36
Arabian Sea, 174
Arabidopsis thaliana, 141, 145
Archaea, 250–252, 410, 448, 449, 460, 465
Archaeol, 251, 795, 797, 802
Argyrotaenia velutinana, 226
Aromatic, 577
compounds, 55–66
steroid, 599
Aromatic hydrocarbons, 285–286
aromaticity, 15
benzene, 16
PAHs, 16, 18
reactions, 42–44
structures, 17
Aromaticity, 15, 25, 507
Aromatisation, 505
Arrhenius law, 496
Arylisoprenoid degradation, 293
Arylisoprenoid ratio, 294
Aryl isoprenoids, 424
Asphalt, 580
Asphaltene, 73–74, 271, 290, 318, 328
Asphaltic petroleum, 570
Atmosphere, 620, 621
Atmospheric methane, 711–715
concentrations, 788
Atmospheric pressure chemical ionization (APCI), 247, 321
Atmospheric pressure photoionization (APPI), 321
Atmospheric pressure photoionization in positive mode (APPI-P), 602–604
Autoinoculation from gyres, 849
Autonomous underwater vehicle, 860
Autoxidation, unsaturated lipid components, *see* Unsaturated lipid components
Autoxidative damages, 197

B
Bacillus subtilis, 252
Backscatter intensity, 755
Bacteria, 177, 252–253, 410, 447, 448, 455, 460, 463, 465–467
Bactericides, 828
Bacteriohopanepolyols (BHPs), 789, 791, 792, 798
Bacteroidetes, 852
Bakken Shale, 501, 505, 524, 530, 534, 537, 538
Bark beetle pheromone, 230
Barnett Shale, 504, 512, 514, 524, 530, 532, 534, 535, 536, 538, 542
Barney Creek Formation, 793
Barophilic hyperthermophiles, 697
Bend-faulting, 751, 763
Benzene, 15, 16, 577
Benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylenes (BTEX) compounds, 55, 833
Bernard diagram, 685
Bioavailability, 9
Biochemical precursors, 114
Biochemistry, 7, 160, 161, 357
Biodegradation, 289, 301–305, 340, 341, 346, 349, 465, 579, 580, 595, 597–600, 603, 606, 616
anaerobic, 614
geological conditions for, 617
methanogenic, 621
petroleum, 614
Biodegraded oil, 616, 618
Biofilm clogging, 465
Biogenic gas, 344, 627
Biogenic lipids, 24
Biogenic methane, 494
Biogeochemistry of oil sands bitumens, see Oil sands
Biohopanoids, 790
Bioirrigation, 774, 776
Biological gas generation, 632
Biological methane oxidation, 700
Biomarkers, methanotrophs (ancient)
aerobic oxidation of methane
hopenoids, 791–793
steroids, 794
anaerobic oxidation of methane
archaeal biomarkers, 801–802
bacterial biomarkers, 802–803
preservation aspects, 801
seep carbonates, 798–801
Biomarkers, methanotrophs (modern)
aerobic oxidation of methane, 789
fatty acids, 791
hopenoids, 789–790
sterols, 790–791
anaerobic oxidation of methane
archaeal biomarkers, 794
bacterial biomarkers, 797–798
Bioproductivity, 477, 478, 480, 482, 484
Bioremediation, 463, 465
Biosphere, 4
Biosurfactants, 129, 131–135
Biosynlates, 108
Bio synthesis, 101, 170
of cuticular wax, 126
pathway, 177
Biotic organic sulphur compounds, ocean, 373–375
Biotic sulphurization, 363
α,ω-Biphytane diols, 797, 802
Biphytanes, 413, 797, 802
Birch reduction, 44
bis-allylic position, 200, 209
Bitumen, 486, 488, 534, 547
oil sands (see Oil sands)
Black Sea, 848
Blowout prevention device, 848
Boduszynski model, 602
Boiling points, 33
Bond dissociation energy, 6
Boron, 760
Botryococcenes, 163
Botryococcus, 162, 261, 421
Bottle effects, 860
Bottom water anoxia, 481
Branched alkanes, 9
Branched GDGTs (brGDGTs), 426
Bransfield Strait, Antarctica, 566
Brine(s), 753
lakes, 761
pools, 761
Bromoethanesulfonic acid, 686
Bubbles, 754, 755
Budgets, 762
Bulk compositions, 507
Bulk isotope values, 274
Bulk pyrolysis, 502–503

C
14C age data, 562
Cage occupancies, 89
Caldarchaeol, 251
Canadian oil sands, 594
Canadian oil sands bitumen (COSB), 601
“Candidatus” Methylo mirabilis oxyfera, 709, 788
Capillary columns, 173
Capillary forces, 653, 655, 658
Carbohydrates, 395
Index

Continental hydrothermal systems, 570
Continental slopes, 652
Continental systems, 570
Continuous cultures, 181
Convective circulation, 577
Conventional, 618
Coordination number, 86
Corexit 9500, 853, 855
Covalent bonding, 5–7
C3 plants, 110
C4 plants, 484
Crocetane, 794–797, 802
Crude oil(s), 50, 271, 340, 342, 344, 346, 349
aromatic hydrocarbons in, 285–286
biodegradation and preservation, 301–305
biodegradation processes in, 346
biomarkers, 282
bulk parameters, 272–275
change in molecular composition, 296–300
definition, 270–272
diamondoids, 283–285
expulsion and migration, 300–301
factors for determination of composition, 290–292
fractions, 344
hydrocarbons in, 277
impact of depositional environments, 292–294
impact of maturity, 295–296
molecular characteristics, 275–286
photosynthesis, 288–289
productivity vs. preservation, 290
sesquiterpanes, 279–280
steranes, 280–283
C-24 stereochemistry, 177
C30 tetracyclic polyprenoids, 394
Cuticle
cutin monomers and wax compounds, export of, 150–151
cutin monomer synthesis, 142–144
cutin polymerization, 144
development of, 140
wax biosynthesis (see Wax biosynthesis)
Cuticular hydrocarbons
biosynthesis, 220
components, 217
Cuticular permeability, 127, 129, 133, 135
Cuticular waxes, plant, see Plant cuticular waxes
Cutin, 140
compounds, 151
monomer synthesis, 142
polymerization, 144
synthase, 144
\( \delta^{13}C \) values, 616
C4 vegetation, 110
Cyanobacteria, 258, 391, 414–417
Cyclic hydrocarbons, 166
Cyclic steam stimulation (CSS), 604
Cycloalkanes, 10–12, 53–55
Cycloalkylalkanes, 10
\( \omega \)-Cycloheptyl fatty acids, 248
Cyclohexanes, 11
Cyclopentane fatty acids, 248
Cytochrome \( b_{5} \), 149
Cytochrome P450, 143, 148, 150, 152
D
Decarboxylation, 161
Decomposition reactions, 505
Deep biosphere, 447, 459, 462
Deep Sea Drilling Project (DSDP), 560, 577
Deforestation, 606
Degradation products, 166
Degree of unsaturation, 203
Delphineus, 179
Deltas, 760
Demosponges, 420
Dendroctonus ponderosae, 233
Denitrification, 709
Denitrifying anaerobic oxidation of methane (DAMO) process, 709
Density, 75
vs. carbon number, 34
Depositional environment, 530
Depressurization, 662, 664
Derivatization techniques, 455, 458
Desaturation, 167
Desulfooccus, 785
Desulfosarcina, 785
Detergents, 828, 831
Dewatering, 750
Diacylglycerylcarboxyhydroxymethylcholine (DGCC), 258
Diacylglyceryl hydroxymethyl trimethylalanine (DGTA), 258, 259
Diacylglyceryltrimethylhomoserine (DGTS), 258, 259
Diagenesis, 367, 486, 494, 527
Diagenetic alteration, 565
Diamondoids, 12, 283–286
Diasteranes, 179
Dibenzocarbazole, 301
Dibenzothiophenes, 60, 286
Dicarboxylic acids (DCA), 142, 144
Diels’ hydrocarbon, 576
Diethers, 802
Diffusion, 128, 131, 133–135, 694, 774, 775
coefficients, 128
layer, 87
Dihomohopanoic acid, 792, 798
β-Diketones, 150
Dilbit, 606
Dimethylsulphoniopropionate (DMSP), 372
Dimethylthallium, 836
Dinoflagellates, 103, 161, 167, 175, 177–179, 419
Dinosteranes, 388, 418
Dinosterol, 103, 161, 178, 179
Diploptene, 789, 791, 798
Diplopterol, 789–791, 793, 798
Dipole moments, 31, 32
Dipteran pheromones, 220
Direct interspecies electron transfer (DIET), 705
Dispersed sedimentary organic matter, 525
Dispersion and biodegradation, 853
Dissimilatory sulfate reduction, 363, 690
Dissociation, 659
Dissolution, 658, 849
Dissolved inorganic carbon (DIC), 658
Dissolved organic matter, 825, 826
Distillation, 272
fractions, 77
Diterpanes, 422
Diterpenoids, 109
Diversity in wax chemistry, 135
DMDS adducts, 162, 169, 173
DNA, 163, 411
Dodecane, 851
Dodecane, 851
Double-bond equivalent (DBE), 601–604
Double bond positions, 167, 169, 172, 173
Draupne Fm., 344, 498
Drimane, 279
Driving forces, 495–499
Droplet break-up models, 856
Duvernay Shale, 536
Dynamic models, 856

E
Eagle Ford Shale, 524, 530, 534, 540, 541, 547
Early diagenesis, 343
Earthquake hazards, 753
East African Rift, 570
East Pacific Rise (EPR), 569
Ebullition, 694
Economic production technology, 664
Electron acceptors, 773, 775
Electron donors, 773, 775
Electronegativity, 6
Electrophilic aromatic substitution, 43
Electrospray ionization (ESI), 74, 246, 321
Electrospray ionization Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance spectroscopy (ESI-FT-ICR), 74
Electrospray ionization in negative mode (ESI-N), 602, 603
Electrospray ionization in positive mode (ESI-P), 603, 604
Elemental analysis, 501
Emiliania huxleyi, 21, 108, 162, 170, 171, 199, 203, 380
Energy resource, 661
Energy sources, 130, 131, 135
Enoyl-CoA reductase (ECR), 145, 147
Enrichment factor, 341
Environment(s), 476, 483
conditions, 167, 171, 175, 181
gradients, 112
34 EPA priority PAHs, 56
Epi-brassicasterol, 161, 177, 178
Epicuticular wax, 124–127, 131, 132, 134, 135
Epiphytic microorganisms, 128, 131, 133–135
Episodic release of oil, 853
Epoxidation of olefins, 200
Equilibrium, 856
fractionation, 345
isotope effects, 341
state, 92
Erannis bajaria, 229
Erosive margins, 750
Escherichia coli, 252
Ethane, 851
Ethylbenzene, 577
Eukarya, 410, 412, 417–419
Eustigmatophytes, 162, 169
Euxinia, 293, 367
Evaporites, 760
Evapotranspiration, 111
Evolutionary changes, 177
Exploration equation, 494, 529, 534
Expulsinator, 510
Expulsion/extraction/migration, 579
Expulsion efficiency, 504
External environmental stress factors, 461
Extracellular matrix, 129
Extracellular microbial enzymes, 132
Extreme environments, 446, 459, 461
Extremophiles, 697
Exxon Valdez oil spill, 855

F
Fatty acid(s), 108, 140, 151, 161, 166, 247–250, 447, 451, 453, 455, 456, 460–462
  elongation, VLCFAs, 145
  epoxyhydroxy-fatty acids, 140
  ω-hydroxy-fatty acids, 143, 144
  in methanotrophs, 791, 797, 802
  polyhydroxy-fatty acids, 142
  synthase gene, 221
  VLCFAs, 150
  See also specific types of fatty acids
  Fatty acyl-CoA reductase (FAR) activity, 147, 223
  Fatty alcohols, 168
  Fayetteville Shale, 524
  Fecal steroids, 831
  Feed gas, 82, 83, 89
  Fenton’s reagent, 44
  Field ionization mass spectroscopy (FIMS), 313
  Firmicutes, 852
  First-order rate law, 496
  Fischer-Tropsch Type (FTT) reactions, 784
  Flash point, 76
  Flash pyrolysis, 175
  Fluid flow, 771, 774, 776
  Fluorescence, 500
  Fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH), 707
  Fluorometers, 860
  Flux, 774, 775
    advective, 774
    diffusive, 775
  Fourier transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectroscopy (FTICR-MS), 313, 514, 536, 545, 601–604, 607
  Fracking, 524, 526, 528
  Fractionation during production, 545
  Fractures, 542
  Free radical(s), 497
    oxidation, 196
  Free radical-mediated processes, 194, 208
  Frequency factor, 496
  Freshwater microalgae, 174
  Fossilized microbes, 762
  Fully mature products, 575
  Fulvic acids, 826
  Functionalized organic compounds and lipids, 18–30
    reactions, 45, 46

G
Galactolipid profiles, 166
Gammarcarane, 280, 295
Gammaproteobacteria, 852
Gas(es), 614, 616, 618, 655
  emissions, 770, 772
  flux, 621
  Gas chromatography (GC), 272, 274, 313, 314
  Gas chromatography-isotope ratio mass spectrometry (GC-IRMS), 274
  Gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS), 162, 169, 181, 274, 275, 487, 558, 564
  phospholipid fatty acids and phospholipid ethers, 455
  Gas hydrate(s), 82, 652, 757, 761
    deposits, 652
    destabilization, 754
    gas hydrate stability, thermodynamic controls on, 654–655
    gas production, hydrate bearing sediments, 660–664
    hydrate growth, 87–89
    interface hypothesis, nucleation at, 85
    labile cluster nucleation hypothesis, 85–87
    local structuring nucleation hypothesis, 87
    marine sediments, methane hydrate formation in, 657–660
    microbial methane formation, 655–657
    natural, 653
    sediments, effects of, 89–90
    stability, 654
    structure and composition, 83–85
    thermodynamic properties, 90–92
    water, 759
  Gas hydrate stability zone (GHSZ), 654, 656, 658, 661
  Gas-oil ratio (GOR), 534–536
  Gas plumes, 754
  GC-MSMS, 282, 285, 298
  Gel permeation chromatography (GPC), 74
  Gene-profiling, 461
  Genomics, 637
  Geocatalysis, 497
  Geochemical evidence, 617
  Geochemical mixing models, 618, 621
  Geologic age, 275
  Geological conditions, 617
Geological subsurface, 465
Geothermal gradient, 655, 656
Geranyl diphosphate synthase (GPPS), 231
Geranylgeranyl unit, 166
Ghareb formation, 369
Gibbs free energy, 495
Gibbs function, 495
Global energy market, 524
Gloeocapsomorpha prisca, 421
Glucosyl-phosphatidylglycerols, 254
Glycerol dialkyl ethers, 797
Glycerol dialkyl glycerol tetraether (GDGTs), 426–427, 678, 797, 802
Glycerol-ether lipids, 250
Glycerophospholipids, 23
Glycol, 851
Glycolipids, 448, 451
GORFit model, 512
Gorgosterol, 179
Graminoids, 113
Great Oxidation Event (GOE), 414
Greenland, 171
Grosmont carbonate reservoirs, 595
Groundwater, 753, 832
Growth conditions, 163
Growth stage, 181
Guard cells, 125, 127, 128, 131, 134, 135
Guaymas Basin, Gulf of California, 560
Gulf of Mexico, 761
Gymnosperms, 422, 482, 483, 484

H
Haakon Mosby Mud Volcano, 771, 772, 777
Halogenated organic compounds, 4
Halogens, 28, 30, 31
Hard coals, 486
Haslea, 164
Haslenes, 164
Haynesville Shale, 524, 530
Heat flow, 654
Heather Fm, 344
Heat transfer, 87, 89
Heavy vacuum gas oil (HVGO), 602
Hempel distillation, 272
Hetero-PAH, 576
Heterotrophs, 417
Hexaakidecahedrons, 83, 84
Higher land plants, 421–423
Higher plant(s)
  carbon isotopes in plant lipids, 110
  hydrogen isotopes in lipids, 112–114
  lipids, 110–112
  materials, 289
High fluid flow, 572
Highly branched isoprenoids (HBI), 386, 425
  alkenes, 104, 163, 194, 201, 202
High performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), 313
High performance liquid chromatography-electrospray ionization-mass spectrometry (HPLC-ESI-MS), 452–454
High performance liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry (HPLC-MS), 181
Phospholipids, detection of, 451–455
High pressure, 572
High-pressure closed-system hydrous-pyrolysis, 510
High-resolution shotgun lipidomics, 253
High temperature, 275, 562, 569, 570, 572, 575, 576, 579, 582, 583
Homeoviscous adaptation, 461
Homodrimane, 279
Homolytic bond dissociation energy, 38, 39
Homolytic cleavage, 196, 197, 200, 205
Honey bee queen retinue pheromone, 220
Hopane(s), 299, 416, 562, 565, 793, 830, 837
Hopanepolyols
  in ancient sediments, 792
  in methanotrophs, 789
Hoxanoids, 388, 411, 789, 791, 798
Housefly sex pheromone, 220
Humic substances, 827, 836
Hydrate growth, 85, 87
Hydrate nucleation
  interface hypothesis, nucleation at, 85
  labile cluster nucleation hypothesis, 85
  local structuring nucleation hypothesis, 87
Hydrate saturations, 658, 663
Hydrate structures, 83
Hydration, 752
Hydrocarbon(s), 270, 558, 569, 652, 654
  abiotic, 582
  aliphatic, 569, 575
  n-alkanes and n-alkenes, 161–163
  aromatic, 15–18
  compound classes, 4
  covalent bonding, 5–7
  cyclic, 166
  Diels’ hydrocarbon, 576
  distributions, 560
  emissions, 772, 777
energy resources, 4
functionalized organic compounds and lipids, 18–30
HBI alkenes in diatoms, 163–166
isoprenoid alkanes and alkenes, 163
light, 577
lipid, 571
microorganisms, 4
PAH, 562, 565, 569, 575, 582, 583
patterns, 566, 569
physical properties, 31–38
reactions, 38–46
saturated, 7–12
structures, 6
total, 560, 565
unsaturated, 12–15
volatile, 577, 579
Hydrocarbon-metazoan-microbe-mineral association, 755–757
Hydrofracking, 289
Hydrogenation, 14, 391
Hydrogen atom abstraction, 199, 200, 203–206
Hydrogen exchange reactions, 345
Hydrogen gas, 577
Hydrogen index (HI), 486, 488, 503
Hydrogen isotope composition, 173
Hydrogen isotope fractionation, 349
Hydrogenotrophic methanogenesis, 676, 679, 682, 694, 698
Hydrolytic microflora, 673
Hydroperoxides, 196
allylic, 200, 207
content, 197
formation of, 205
Δ^5-5α-hydroperoxides, 205
Δ^6-6α/6β-hydroperoxides, 205
7β-hydroperoxides, 206
instability of, 205
labile, 205
Hydrophobic cuticle, 124, 127–130
Hydrosphere, 824, 830
ground water systems, organic matter in, 832
marine environment, organic matter in, 834–838
terrestrial surface water systems, organic matter in, 824–832
Hydrostatic pressure, 655
Hydrothermal metallogenesis, 582
Hydrothermal organic synthesis, 582
Hydrothermal petroleum
analytical methods, 558–559
composition of, 575–577
continental systems, 570–571
definition, 558
East Pacific Rise, 569
expulsion/extraction/migration, 579–580
fluid interactions, 577–579
Guaymas Basin, Gulf of California, 560–562
hydrothermal organic synthesis, 582–583
Mid Atlantic Ridge, 569
mineral deposits, 582
northeastern Pacific (Escanaba Trough and Middle Valley), 562–566
organic matter alteration, 572–575
resources, 580
Hydrothermal vent systems, 558, 579
Hydrous pyrolysis, 510
β-Hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydratase (HCD), 145, 147
Hydroxyarchaeol, 795, 797, 802
Hydroxy fatty acids, 167–168
ω-Hydroxy-fatty acids, 143, 144
Hydroxy ketones, 169
Hyperconjugation, 7
Hypersaline lakes, 172
Hypersaline paleoenvironment, 385

I
Icosahedron, 83
Illite, 760
Immature organic matter, 558, 560, 565, 569, 573, 575, 579, 583
Fluid inclusions, 413, 418, 573, 579, 583
Inertinite(s), 480, 483, 484, 486, 500
Insects, 214
cuticular hydrocarbons, 217–218, 220–223
pheromones (see Pheromones)
In situ combustion, 662
In-situ physical properties of fluids, 545
In-source secondary cracking, 512
Intact polar lipids (IPLs), 447
International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC), 5
Intracuticular wax, 125, 127
Ionic mechanisms, 497
IP_{25}, 164, 200
IPSO_{25}, 165
Iron-coupled reactions, 691
Irregular dodecahedrons, 83
Iso-/anteiso fatty acids, 798, 803
Isochrysidaceae, 171
Isochrysidales, 171
Isorenieratene, 12, 18, 378, 379, 412, 424, 836
Isochrysis, 162, 170–172
Isomeric hydroperoxycarids, 205
Isomerization, 166
Isoprenoid, 411, 794, 795, 797, 802
  alkanes, 163
  lipids, 112
  thiophene ratio, 385
24-Isopropylcholestanes, 418
Isochrysis, 162, 170–172
Isomeric hydroperoxycarids, 205
Isomerization, 166
Isoprenoid, 411, 794, 795, 797, 802
  alkanes, 163
  lipids, 112
  thiophene ratio, 385
24-Isopropylcholestanes, 418

K
Kebrit and Shaban Deeps, 569
Kerogen, 291, 359, 486, 487, 527, 534, 547
  and bitumen, 488
  classifications, 501
sulfur-rich, 482
type I, 476, 477, 480
type II, 477
type III, 476, 483
types, 291
β-Ketoacyl-CoA reductase (KCR), 145, 147
β-Ketoacyl-CoA synthase (KCS), 145, 146, 152
Keto-enol-tautomerism, 21
Ketones, 141, 145, 148, 150
Killed phytoplanktonic cells, 205
Kimmeridge Clay Formation (KCF), 395
Kinetic(s), 657
  non-isothermal, 496
  isotope effects, 341, 343, 344, 681
  parameters, 489, 496, 504
Kluyveromyces thermotolerans, 257
  KOH-values, 825

L
Labile cluster nucleation hypothesis, 85
Labile hydroperoxides, 205
Laboratory studies, 621
Lactones, 23
Lacustrine, 476, 481
  sediments, 169
  settings, 480
Lake Messel, 481, 482
Lake sediments, 171
Lake Tanganyika, 570
Lanostane, 794
Lanosterol, 791
Last universal common ancestor (LUCA), 410
Late gas, 535
  potential, 512
Lateral heterogeneity, 131
Leaching, 133
Leaf flush, 113
Leaf surface(s), 124–129, 131–135
  wettability, 128, 129
Leaf transpiration, 115
Leaf wax lipids, 112
Leaf wax synthesis, 113
Lepidopteran fatty acid derived pheromones, 219
Life cycle, 166
Life marker, 447–451, 459
Light hydrocarbons, 577
Light intensity, 108
Lignin, 483, 484, 835
Lignites, 483, 486
Lindane, 831
Lipid(s), 100, 247, 412
  biomarker analysis, 459, 460
  biosynthesis, 180
  extraction, 451
  in microalgae (see Microalgae)
Lipidomics, 246
Lipid transfer proteins (LTPs), 151
Liptinite(s), 487, 500
Liquid chromatography, 316
Localization, 199
Local structuring nucleation hypothesis, 87
Lokibatan mud volcano, 772
Lokiarchaeota, 417
Long chain C37-C39 alkenones, 380
Lotus effect, 127
Lycoperdiene, 163
Lymantria dispar, 229

M
Maceral(s), 291
groups, 486
  type, 500
Macrocyclic diethers, 797, 802
Macrocyclic diphytanyl glycerol diethers (MDGDs), 797, 802
Maltenes, 271, 528
Manco (Modular Analysis and Numerical Classification of Oils)
  scale, 304, 600
Manduca sexta, 226
Marcellus Shale, 524, 530
Marine, 476, 480, 482
  biogenic origin, 566
environments, 476
ioil spill in United States history, 848
organic matter, 479, 485
sediments, 477, 479
sulphur cycle, 362–365
Marine Benthic Group D (MBGD), 708
Markownikow rule, 41
Mass balance, 539
modelling, 537–538
Mass extinction, 423
Massive sulfide deposits, 569
Mass spectrometry, ultrahigh-resolution, 320
Mass transfer, 87
Matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization (MALDI), 247, 452
Maturation, 527, 535, 560, 565, 566, 571, 575, 583
Maturity, 289, 295–296, 501
parameters, 536
Mean annual precipitation, 113
Mediterranean Sea, 761
Membrane adaptation, 457, 461–465
Membrane fluidity and functionality, 461
Membrane lipids, 165, 448, 451, 461, 462
Membrane solid to liquid phase transition temperature, 461
Mercaptans, 60
Mesocosms/Microcosms, 860
Messinian, 377, 383, 387, 388, 393, 761
Metagenesis, 494, 527
Metagenetic late dry gas generation, 512
Metagenomics, 634
Metal(s), 70–73
Metal-AOM, 756
Metastable equilibrium, 575
Metastable states, 90
Meteoric precipitation, 112
Methane, 82–86, 90, 289, 597, 614, 616, 620, 625, 655, 771, 773, 775
aerobic oxidation, 700–702
anaerobic oxidation, 702–711
atmospheric, 711–715
biological oxidation, 700
cage occupancies with, 89
discovery, 670
emissions, 788
formation from organic matter, 672
isotopic composition, 345
microbial, 82 (see Microbial methane) monooxygenase, 857
plumes, 762
Methane-derived carbonates, 798
fabrics, 799
Methane hydrate(s), 762
formation, in marine sediments, 654–660
Methane-oxidizing bacteria (MOB), 700, 785, 789, 791, 793, 857
Methane sources
abiotic, 783–784
methanogenesis, 782–783
Methanobacillus omelianskii, 676
Methanococcales burtonii, 697
Methanogenesis, 614, 616, 618, 621, 658, 782
Methanogenic microorganisms, 657
Methanogenic pathways, 630
Methanogenium frigidum, 697
Methanogens, 413
Methanopyrus kandleri, 697
Methanosarcina lacusitri, 697
Methanothermobacter thermoautotrophicus, 678
Methanotrophs, 413
2-Methylalkanes, 220
Methyl-branched alkanes, 217
Methylcarbamate hopanoids, 790
Methylphosphonates, 415
3β-Methylhopanes, 792–794
3β-Methylhopanoids, 789
Methyl ketones, 169
Methylcoccaceae, 789
Methylotrophic methanogenesis, 676
Methylphenanthrene index, 297
Methylphosphonate, 783
4α-Methylsteranes, 419
4-Methyl steranes, 793, 794
4-Methylsterol, 178
Methyl-type fermentation, 676
Methylpentadecane, 105
MGDG and DGDG, 166
Michaelis-Menten kinetics, 701
Microalgae, 160
algaenan, 175–177
alkenones and alkyl alkenoates, 169–173
alkyl diols, 173–175
biochemical constituents, 180
fatty acids, 166–168
fatty alcohols, 168–169
hydrocarbons (see Hydrocarbons)
phyla in, 160
sterols, 177–180
Microbial activity, 465, 466, 481, 484
Microbial biodegradation, 628
Microbial biomass, 857
Microbial degradation, 172
Microbial diversity, 124
Microbial humification, 630
Microbial methane, 82
biogeochemical process of formation, 673–687
in freshwater and terrestrial environments, 693–696
in marine environment, 687–693
oxidation, 705
in special environments, 697–699
Microbial methanogenesis, 625, 630, 632, 635, 637
Microbial sulphate reducers (MSR), 363
Microfossils, 411
Microorganisms, 655
Microplastics, 838
Microscale sealed vessel (MSSV), 510
pyrolysis, 511, 547
Microscopy, 531
Mid Atlantic Ridge, 569
Mineralization, 559
Model of composition (MoC), 324
phytadiol/phytol ratio, 197
Molecular biology, 180
Molecular clock, 177
Molecular fossils, 410
Monoaromatic steroid hydrocarbon, 281
Mono-unsaturated fatty acids (MUFAs), 205, 209
Mud breccia, 770, 771
Mud volcanoes, 618, 770
advective transport, 774
Chikishlyar-type, 772
electron donors and acceptors, 775
hydrocarbon emissions, 772–773
Lokbatan-type, 772
redox transition zones, 773
Shugin-type, 772
spatial and temporal variability of fluid flow, 776
submarine, 776
Multi-element isotope analysis, 350
Multiple ion detection, 277
Mycobacteria, 255–256
Mycolic acids, 255
N
NaBH₄ reduction, 169
Nanochloropsis, 162, 168, 173–175, 179
N. oceanica, 259
Nanopores, 539
Naphthalenes, 286
Naphthenes, see Cycloalkanes
Naphthenic acids, 607
Naphthoaromatic compounds, 58
Natural attenuation, 834
Natural catalysts, 497
Natural gas, 340, 342, 344, 346
hydrates occurrences, 662
Natural maturation series, 489
Natural organic matter, 826–828
Natural seeps, 850
in North America, 853
Navicula, 165
Near-critical, 574, 577
Neoproterozoic hydrates, 672
New Zealand, 570
Nickel, 270
Niobrara Fm., 524, 530, 534, 538
Nitrogen, 26–29
compounds, 69–70
Noëlaerhabdaceae, 170
Noncompetitive substrates, 674, 676, 687, 691, 703
Non-hydrocarbons, 583, 595, 597, 599, 601–604, 606–608
Norcholestanes, 419
Nördlinger Ries Lake, 482
25-Norhopanes (NHs), 305, 597, 600
Normal phase chromatography, 452
Northeastern Pacific (Escanaba Trough and Middle Valley), 562
Nucleophile, 44
Nutrients, Mississippi River, 851
O
Obligate anaerobes, 686
Ocean, 620
Ocean Drilling Program (ODP), 565
Oceanic anoxic events, 293, 479
Oceanic methane paradox, 687, 783
Oceanic plate, 750–752
Oceanospirillaceae, 853
Ochromonas, 174
Octanol-water partition coefficients vs. carbon number, 37, 38
Odd/even predominance of n-alkanes, 296
Oenocytes, 220
Oficina Formation, 595
Oil(s), 614, 616, 618
droplet size, 849
quality, 540, 542
reservoirs, 347
saturation index, 540
secondary cracking of, 535
seeps, 301
solubility, 76
spills, 606, 838
Oil composition, 50–51
alkanes, 53
aromatic compounds, 55–66
asphaltene, 73–74
cycloalkanes, 53–55
methane, 70–73
naphthenoaromatic compounds, 58
nitrogen compounds, 69–70
olefins, 55
oxygen compounds, 66–69
resins, 73
sulfur compounds, 58–60
Oil-dissolved gas, 618
Oil properties
API gravity, 76
density, 75
distillation fractions, 77
flash point, 76
oil solubility, 76
oil-water interfacial tension, 77
pour point, 76
research needs, 77
specific gravity, 76
vapor pressure, 77
viscosity, 74
Oil sands
Alberta, 594
asphaltene, 602–603
biodegradation systematics, 597
Canadian, 594
compositional continuum, 602
deposit, 595
environmental implications of, 604–608
non-hydrocarbon compounds, 603
Peace River, 595
Oil sands process-affected water (OSPW), 604, 607
Oil–water contact (OWC), 346, 597, 599
Oil-water interfacial tension, 77
Oil–water transition zones (OWTZ), 596, 597
Okenane, 413
18αH-oleanane, 280
Oleanane, 422
Olefin, 12, 14, 55
Oleic acid, 206
Oligomeric compounds, 200
Open-system analytical pyrolysis, 502
Open-system pyrolysis, 502–509
Optical activity, 274
Optical microscopy, 500
Orbital hybridization, 5
Orbitrap mass spectrometry, 321
Order of photoreactivity, 199, 208
Organic carbon, 477, 478, 480, 481, 560
cycle, 527
Organic macromolecules, 528, 532
Organic matter, 160, 166, 180, 357, 558, 582
accumulation of, 582
alteration, 572
immature, 558, 560, 565, 569, 579, 583
maturation, 583
preservation, 478
remineralization, 688
sedimentary, 558, 562
solvation capacity, 577
terrigenous, 560, 570
type, 501
Organic petrology, 528
Organic richness, 504
Organic-rich sediments and sedimentary rocks
elemental analysis, 486
geochemical transformations, 484–486
lakes, 480–482
optical microscopy, 486
pyrolysis techniques, 487
rivers and peats, 482–484
sea, 477–480
spectroscopic techniques, 487
Organic sulphur compounds (OSC)
biomarker, 357
carotenoids, 391
carbohydrates, 370, 395
C35 hopanoids, 389
13C isotope, 370
C30 tetracyclic polyprenoids, 394
desulphurization, 376
diagenesis, 367
dimethylsulfide (DMS), 372, 373
double bonds, 386
fatty acids, 377
isotopic fractionations, 365
intramolecular sulphurization, 366
intramolecular sulphurization, 366
isotope chemistry, 359
polyprenoid sulphides, 394
porphyrins, 393
preservation of OM, 370
reduced sulphur species, 366
short chain alkylthiophenes, 395
S isotope exchange, 375
steroids, 387
thiolane-C20 isomers, 386
timing of sulphurization, 368
volatile organic sulphur, 372–373
Organofacies, 291
Organolithofacies, 293
Original organic matter, shales, 530
Orinoco Heavy Oil belt, 594
Oxic environments, 290
Oxidative decarbonylation system, 223
Oxidosqualene, 418
Oxycracking, 603
Oxygen compounds, 66–69
Oxygen index (OI), 487, 503
Oxygen/sulfur acetals and hemiacetals, 22
Oxidation, 20
esters, 23
ethers, 20
hydroxyl/sulfanyl group, 18, 19
thioethers, 20, 25
thiols, 25

P
Palaeoproxies, 161, 181
Paleocene/Eocene temperature maximum, 788
Paleoclimatic investigation, 100
Paleohydrological studies, 107
Paleohydrology proxy, 115
Paleopasteurization, 305, 597
Paleotemperature estimation, 203
Paleotemperature reconstruction, 203
Palmitic acid, 107
Paraffin(s), 38, 53
Paraffinicity, 507
Parallel reactions, 496
Particulate organic matter (POC), 194, 208, 655, 657, 659, 825, 828
Passive margins, 748
Pavlova, 167, 179
Pavlovols, 179
Peace River oil sands, 595, 596
Peats, 482–484
Pentagonal dodecahedrons, 83, 84, 86, 87
2,6,10,15,19-Pentamethyllicosane (PMI), 794–797, 802
Periplaneta americana, 214
Permafrost regions, 652
Permafrost-thawing, 754
Permeability, 127, 129, 130, 133–135, 662
Petroleomics, 312–314, 601
applications, 326–327
determination, 314
gas chromatography, 314–316
liquid chromatography, 316–320
ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry, 320–324
limitation, 327–328
modeling, 324–325
prediction, 326
Petroleum, 284, 305, 312, 313, 614
accumulations, 614, 616, 618
biodegradation, 614
geological potential, 501
genealogy, stable isotope applications in
(see Stable isotopes)
hydrocarbons, 837
seeps, 616, 618
source rocks, 342, 343
type organofacies, 508, 534
See also Crude oils
Petroporphyrin, 603
pH adaptation, 463
Phaeopigments, 180
Pharmaceuticals, 828
Phase behavior, 90, 510, 545
Phase diagram, 653, 655
PhaseKinetics, 511, 547
Phase separation of CO2, 574
Phenanthrene, 286, 851
Pheromones
biosynthesis, 224–235
contact, 220
honey bee queen retinue, 220
house fly sex, 220
lepidopteran, 215
lepidopteran fatty acid derived, 219
polyene hydrocarbons, 219, 229
roles, 218
terpenoid, 219, 230–235
Phosphatidylinositol mannosides, 255
Photic Zone Euxinia (PZE), 293, 294, 378, 392, 393, 394
Phospholipid(s) (PLs), 447
analysis, 459
esters, 448, 455, 459
ethers, 455
column fractionation, 451
HPLC-MS, 452–455
intact PLs, 459
lipid extraction, 451
membrane adaptation to environmental conditions, 461–465
Index

Polar lipids, 166
Polar organic solutes, 131
Polar paths of transport, 128
Polybrominated diphenyl ethers, 30
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), 30, 829
Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, 829
Polycondensation, 505
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH), 16, 18, 55, 416, 562, 565, 568, 570, 575, 576, 582, 583, 637, 830
Polyene hydrocarbons, 219, 229–230
Polyextremophiles, 697
Polymer, 140, 142, 144–145
Polyprenoid sulphides, 394
Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), 200, 205, 208, 209, 247
Porewater, 654, 658
Porosity, 662
Porphyridium, 180
Porphyrins, 318, 393
Posidonia Shale, 481, 488, 514, 515, 526, 531, 532, 534, 537, 538, 540, 541, 544, 545
Positional isomers, 174
Pour point, 76
Prasinophytes, 160, 179
Pressure, 498, 662, 860
Primary alcohols, 141, 145, 147
Primary and secondary cracking kinetics, 512
Primary cracking, 534
Prince William Sound, 855
Priority PAHs, 56
Pristane, 278, 381, 421, 796, 797, 802
Pristane/n-C_{17} and phytane/n-C_{18} ratios, 296
Proboxia, 174
Propane, 851
Propylene, 851
Prospectivity, 529
Proteins, 411
Proteobacteria, 852
Proteogenomics, 134
Proxy, 200
Prudhoe Bay oil, 855
Pseudo van Krevelen diagram, 503
Pteridophyte, 483
Pyrethrin, 11
Pyrite, 366, 482, 485
Pyrolysate, 576, 582
Pyrolysis, 496, 499, 502
Confin, 510
experiments, 489
gas chromatography, 534, 538

Polar lipids, 166
Polar organic solutes, 131
Polar paths of transport, 128
Polybrominated diphenyl ethers, 30
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), 30, 829
Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, 829
Polycondensation, 505
Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH), 16, 18, 55, 416, 562, 565, 568, 570, 575, 576, 582, 583, 637, 830
Polyene hydrocarbons, 219, 229–230
Polyextremophiles, 697
Polymer, 140, 142, 144–145
Polyprenoid sulphides, 394
Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs), 200, 205, 208, 209, 247
Porewater, 654, 658
Porosity, 662
Porphyridium, 180
Porphyrins, 318, 393
Posidonia Shale, 481, 488, 514, 515, 526, 531, 532, 534, 537, 538, 540, 541, 544, 545
Positional isomers, 174
Pour point, 76
Prasinophytes, 160, 179
Pressure, 498, 662, 860
Primary alcohols, 141, 145, 147
Primary and secondary cracking kinetics, 512
Primary cracking, 534
Prince William Sound, 855
Priority PAHs, 56
Pristane, 278, 381, 421, 796, 802
Pristane/n-C_{17} and phytane/n-C_{18} ratios, 296
Proboxia, 174
Propane, 851
Propylene, 851
Prospectivity, 529
Proteins, 411
Proteobacteria, 852
Proteogenomics, 134
Proxy, 200
Prudhoe Bay oil, 855
Pseudo van Krevelen diagram, 503
Pteridophyte, 483
Pyrethrin, 11
Pyrite, 366, 482, 485
Pyrolysate, 576, 582
Pyrolysis, 496, 499, 502
Confin, 510
experiments, 489
gas chromatography, 534, 538

Index
Q
Quesnoin, 423

R
Radical halogenation, 39
Radical recombination, 497
Radiolysis effects, 536
Raman spectroscopy, 84, 87
Rayleigh equation, 341, 347, 348
Real-time assessment, 858
Recognition, 134
Redox ladder, 688
Redox transition zones, 773, 776
Red Sea, 566, 569
Reductive dehydration reactions, 583
Reflectance, 500
Refractory biotic organic sulphur compounds, 373–375
Resins, 73
Resource exploration, 580
Retention, 527, 538, 542
Retrogressive coupling reactions, 505
Reverse methanogenesis, 704, 705
Rhizenes, 164
Rhizosolenia, 161
Rhodophyta, 180
Ribosomal RNA, 411
Ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (RuBisCO), 105
Rock-Eval, 504
analyses, 291
pyrolysis, 487, 503
Root exudates, 696

S
Saccharomyces cerevisiae, 256
Saline lakes, 171
Salinity, 446, 461, 465, 653, 655
Saponification, 168, 451, 453, 455
Saturate(s), 50, 53, 75
Saturated fatty acids, 460, 461
Saturated hydrocarbons
n-alkanes, 7–8
branched alkanes, 9
cycloalkanes, 10–12
reactions, 38–40
structures, 8
Saturates, aromatics, resins and asphaltene (SARA), 51, 53, 55, 271, 272
Scanning electron microscopy (SEM), 528, 531
Scanning transmission X-ray microscopy, 532
Scenedesmus, 161
Seafloor, 652, 657
Sealed gold bags, 510
Sea level changes, 293
Sea-level stands, 758
Sea surface temperatures (SST), 203
8,14-Secohexahydrobenzohopanes, 793
Secondary alcohols, 141, 145, 148, 150
Secondary cracking, 509
Secondary gas, 542
Secondary microbial gas
formation of, 614, 616
in natural environments, 616, 617
petroleum accumulations, global occurrences in, 618
volumetric significance of, 618, 620
Secondary oil to gas cracking, 511
Sediment(s), 89, 160, 164, 166, 167, 169–172, 174, 177, 180, 654
Sedimentary organic matter, 558, 562, 571
Sedimentary organic sulphur compounds (OSC), see Organic sulphur compounds (OSC)
Sedimentation rates, 478, 480
Seep carbonate(s), 757, 798
laminae, 758
Seep footprints, 750, 754–760
Senescence of haptophytes, 203
Senescence of phytoplankton, unsaturated lipid components, see Unsaturated lipid components
Sequence stratigraphic models, 278
Serpentinization, 751, 763
Sesquiterpanes, 279–280
Shale, 618
oil, 526, 527
porosity and kerogen swelling, 539
prospective, 528
resource plays, 529
Shale gas, 527
definition, 525
resource potential, 525
and shale oil resources, 525
Ships and planes, 855
Signals, 135
Singlet oxygen, 194, 205
Smectites, 760
Soil moisture, 111
Solubility, 655, 656, 659
Solvation capacity, 574, 577
Solvent extraction, 181
Source rock quality, 501
Sources of nutrients, 130
Specific gravity, 76
Specific tracers of autoxidation, 199
Sphingolipids, 448
Spontaneous nucleation, 86
Squalene, 163
16S rRNA, 708
18S rRNA, 175
Stability conditions, 90, 92
Stability field, 90, 91
Stable isotopes, 630
alteration processes, in petroleum reservoirs, 346–350
of carbon and hydrogen, 340
of hydrocarbon gases, 536
sedimentary basins, petroleum formation in, 342–346
Stand Alone Particle Sampler (SAPS), 860
Standard operating procedures (SOP), 859
5α(H)-stanols, 179
Steady state conditions, 658
Steam assisted gravity drainage (SAGD), 604
Stepwise pyrolysis, 181
Steranes, 177, 277, 280–283, 416, 562, 564
Stereoisomers, 298
Steric repulsion, 7
Steroids, 387, 411
Sterol(s), 177, 826
autoxidation %, 208
biosynthesis, 177
in methanotrophs, 790
photooxidation proportion estimates, 206
Δ5-Sterols, 205
Stimulated biogenic coalbed methane, 639
Stimulation of indigenous microbes, 640
Stoke’s law, 479
Stomata, 113
Storage aquifer system, 466
Strike-slip, 748
Stromatolites, 412
Structured Learning in Microbial Ecology (SLiME) model, 856
Subduction channel, 750
Subduction zones, 750
Sugars, 180
Sulfate, 478, 480, 485, 657
Sulfate reduction, 481, 486, 658
microbes, 480
Sulfur, 295
and carbon isotope analysis, 359–362
compounds, 58–60
isotope considerations, 368, 369
vs. organic carbon cycles, 362–365
Sulphate reducing bacteria, 368, 690–694
Sulphides, 60
Sulphurization, characteristic of preservation via, 370
Sulphurized isoprenoids, 381
Supercritical fluid chromatography, 320
Supercritical water, 574, 576, 577
Superhydrophobic, 127
Surfactants, 129, 134
Suspended particulate matter, 825
Sweet spots recognition, 542
Syngeneric, 415
Synthesis products, 582
T
Tailings ponds, 606, 607
Tar sands, see Oil sands
Taxonomic information, 455, 457
PLFAs, 460–461
Taxonomy, 164
Taxon-specific biomarkers (TSBs), 412, 415, 416, 420
Tectonic plate boundaries, 748
Temperature, 446, 461, 462, 466, 662
calibrations, 172
vs. viscosity, 35
Terminal electron acceptor, 657, 676
Ternary composition diagram, 575
Terpanes, 277, 279
Terpenoid(s), 109, 827
pheromones, 219, 230
Terrestrial, 476, 480, 481, 483, 484
biota, 101
ecosystems, 835
organic matter, 479, 482, 483, 485
Terrigenous material, 835
Terrigenous organic matter, 560, 570
Tetracyclic triterpenoids, 177
Tetraether lipids, 797
Tetrakaidecahedrons, 83, 87, 88
Thermal alteration, 558, 572, 575
Thermal cracking, 497
Thermal hydrocarbon generation, 486
Thermal maturation, 343
Thermal maturity, 489
Thermal transformation, 504
Thermocatalytic reactions, 582
Thermochemical sulfate reduction (TSR), 340, 350
Thermococcus kodakarenensis, 252
Thermodynamic properties, 90
Thermogenic gas(es), 344, 616, 618, 621
Thermogenic gas(es) (cont.) origin, 82
Thermogenic hydrocarbons, 494
Thermogenic petroleum, 495 formation, 499
Thermogenic wet gases, 685
Thermophilic bacteria, 254
Thin-layer chromatography (TLC), 318 Thioesterase, 150 Thiolipins, 60 Tidal pumping, 754 Time-of-flight mass spectrometry (TOF), 247 Time-resolved fluorescence depolarization (TRFD), 74 T\textsubscript{max}-values, 487, 504 Tocopherols, 180 Toluene, 577, 851 Tomato, 144 Total hydrocarbon, 560, 565, 568 Total organic carbon (TOC), 395
total sulfur (TOC/TS) ratio, 485 Trace methane oxidation (TMO), 704 Trans-Atlantic Geotraverse (TAG), 569–570 Trans-esterification, 455 Transformation process, 90 Trebouxiophytes, 179 Tree(s), 696 of life, 410 Triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons, 299 Tributyl tin, 837 Trichomes, 125, 128, 131, 135 \textit{n}-Tricosane, 796, 802 Tricosanoids, 795, 798 \(\beta,\gamma,\delta\)-Trihydroxysterols, 206 Triaromatic steroid hydrocarbons, 299 Trilaminar structure, 175 1,2,7-Trimethylnaphthalene, 286 Trisubstituted double bond, 200, 208 Tri terpanes, 562, 665 Tri terpenoids, 109, 126 Turbidites, 750 Type II photosensitized oxidation, 196, 199, 201, 205 Type II processes, 194

U Ultrahigh-resolution mass spectrometry, 320 Unconventional crude oils, 289 Unconventional resources, 547 Underplating, 750 Unresolved complex mixture (UCM), 10 Unsaturated fatty acids, 455, 462 Unsaturated hydrocarbons alkenes, 14 \(\textit{cis}\)-and \textit{trans}\-isomers, 12 conjugated double bond, 12 olefins, 14 reactions, 40–42 structures, 13 Unsaturated lipid components, 194, 195 alkenes, 199 alkenones, 202 chlorophyll phytyl side-chain, 197 \(\Delta\text{–}\)-sterols, 205 unsaturated fatty acids, 205 Upwelling, 174, 477, 478

V Vaca Muerta Fm., 531, 537, 540, 541, 545 Vanadium, 270 van Krevelen diagram, 494, 501 Vapor pressure, 77 Vapor pressure osmometry (VPO), 74 Very-long-chain fatty acids (VLCFAs), 145, 148, 150, 152 Very-long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (VLCPUFAs), 250 Viscosity, 34, 74, 301 Visible light-induced, 194, 208 Vitrinite, 479, 483, 484, 486, 500 reflectance, 295, 487, 500, 685 Volatile hydrocarbon pheromones, 219 Volatile oil, 540 Volatile organic compounds (VOCs), in atmosphere annual global emission rates, 812 anthropogenic contribution, 813 anthropogenic emissions, 813 aromatic VOCs, 820 atmospheric alkanes, degradation of, 816–819 atmospheric alkenes, degradation of, 819–820 biogenic sources, 812 biomass burning emissions, 813 methane, 813 mixing ratios of, 813 OVOCs, 820
oxygenated compounds, 812
saturated hydrocarbons, 812
terrestrial vegetation, 821
unsaturated hydrocarbons, 812
Volatile organic sulphur, sedimentary organic sulphur compounds, 372–373

W
Wabamun Lake, 606
Waiotapu, 570
Waste deposit landfills, 834
Water, 558, 560, 566, 569, 570, 577
molecules, 82, 83, 85–87
near-critical domain of, 577
supercritical, 574, 576, 577
temperatures, 654, 656
washing, 340, 579
Wax, 289
coverage, 126
crystallites, 127
crystals, 124
layer, 126, 128, 134
melting, 131
platelets, 131, 132
Wax biosynthesis, 150
alcohol-forming pathway, 147
alkane-forming pathway, 148
fatty acid elongases, VLCFAs, 145–147
Wax synthase (WS), 147
Weathering, 607
Wetting, 128, 129, 131, 133, 135
Wolfcamp Fm., 524
Woodford Shale, 293, 524, 531

X
Xenobiotics, 5
X-ray diffraction, 84, 91
Xylenes, 577

Y
Yanchang, 540
Yarrowia lipolytica, 257
Yeast, 256–257
Yellowstone National Park, 570